Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation has become a well-established life-saving treatment procedure for many patients with hematological malignancies, inborn errors, or bone marrow failure syndromes. Starting more than 60 years as an “ultima ratio” option, hematopoietic stem cell transplantation is now integrated as an essential part in many treatment concepts and protocols. The rapid development in the field with changing in transplant practices and the increasing numbers of long-term survivors require a continuous education for physician, nurses, and healthcare providers who are involved in stem cell transplantation and cellular therapies.

This new formatted EBMT Handbook, which is part of a broader EBMT educational strategy, addresses the most recent developments and innovations in stem cell transplantation and cellular therapy presented by more than 170 authors, known as experts and well-recognized authorities in the field. In more than 90 chapters, all types of stem cell and bone marrow transplantation including haplo-identical stem cell and cord blood transplantation, indication for transplantation, and management of complications as well as the new rapidly evolving field of cellular therapies are covered. Other important issues such as quality management and JACIE accreditation, stem cell collection, conditioning, donor selection, HLA typing, graft manipulation, ethical issues, psychological support, and quality of life are also properly addressed.

The aim of this new EBMT Handbook, which follows the long tradition of the ESH-EBMT Handbook on Haematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation, is not to provide an in-depth knowledge like a textbook but rather to describe the state of practice to enhance the reader’s knowledge and practice skills. Major key points are summarized at the end of each chapter.

The EBMT Board wants to express their great gratitude to the strong effort of the Working Party chairs and all authors in planning and writing the chapters and the tremendous work of the project leader Enric Carreras and the secretarial work of Marta Herrero Hoces from the Barcelona EBMT offices but also to Nathalie L’Horset-Poulain from Springer for her continuous support.
A heartfelt thanks goes to the Fondation José Carreras pour la lutte contre la leucémie, Geneve for the unconditioned educational grant, which permits the open-access publication as well as the printed version of this EBMT Handbook.

On behalf of the EBMT board, we hope this EBMT Handbook will be of help in your daily practice.

Barcelona, Spain
Geneva, Switzerland
Paris, France
Hamburg, Germany

Enric Carreras
Carlo Dufour
Mohamad Mohty
Nicolaus Kröger
Acknowledgment

This open-access and print edition have been possible thanks to the generous contribution of the Foundation José Carreras pour la lutte contre la leucémie, Genève.
# Contents

## Part I  Introduction

1 **HSCT: Historical Perspective**  ............................................. 3  
   Rainer Storb

2 **The EBMT: History, Present, and Future**  ..................... 11  
   Alois Gratwohl, Mohamad Mohty, and Jane Apperley

3 **The Role of Unrelated Donor Registries in HSCT** ............. 19  
   Irina Evseeva, Lydia Foeken, and Alejandro Madrigal

4 **The HSCT Unit** ................................................................. 27  
   Walid Rasheed, Dietger W. Niederwieser,  
   and Mahmoud Aljurf

5 **JACIE Accreditation of HSCT Programs**  ...................... 35  
   Riccardo Saccardi, Eoin McGrath, and John A. Snowden

6 **Statistical Methods in HSCT and Cellular Therapies** ........ 41  
   Simona Iacobelli and Liesbeth C. de Wreede

## Part II  Biological Aspects

7 **Biological Properties of HSC: Scientific Basis for HSCT**  .... 49  
   Alessandro Aiuti, Serena Scala, and Christian Chabannon

8 **Biological Properties of Cells Other Than HSCs** ............... 57  
   Attilio Bondanza, Ulrike Koehl, Andrea Hoffmann,  
   and Antoine Toubert

9 **Histocompatibility** .......................................................... 61  
   Eric Spierings and Katharina Fleischhauer

10 **Clinical and Biological Concepts for Mastering Immune  
    Reconstitution After HSCT: Toward Practical  
    Guidelines and Greater Harmonization** ......................... 69  
    Jürgen Kuball and Jaap Jan Boelens
### Part III  Methodology and Clinical Aspects

11 **Evaluation and Counseling of Candidates** .......................... 77  
Enric Carreras and Alessandro Rambaldi

12 **Donor Selection for Adults and Pediatrics** ......................... 87  
Francis Ayuk and Adriana Balduzzi

13 **Conditioning** .......................................................... 99  
Arnon Nagler and Avichai Shimoni

14 **Bone Marrow Harvesting for HSCT** ................................. 109  
Norbert Claude Gorin

15 **Mobilization and Collection of HSC** ................................. 117  
Kai Hübel

16 **Collection of HSC in Children** ..................................... 123  
Volker Witt and Christina Peters

17 **Processing, Cryopreserving and Controlling the Quality of HSCs** 127  
Patrick Wuchter

18 **Procurement and Management of Cord Blood** .................... 131  
Sergio Querol and Vanderson Rocha

19 **Graft Manipulation** .................................................... 137  
Michael Schumm, Peter Lang, and Rupert Handgretinger

20 **Documentation of Engraftment and Chimerism After HSCT** .... 143  
Peter Bader

21 **Short- and Long-Term Controls After HSCT** ....................... 149  
Montserrat Rovira and Maria Suárez-Lledó

### Part IV  General Management of the Patient

22 **Vascular Access** .................................................... 157  
Simone Cesaro and Federica Minniti

23 **Transfusion Support** .................................................. 163  
Hubert Schrezenmeier, Sixten Körper, Britta Höchsmann, and Christof Weinstock

24 **Nutritional Support** ................................................... 171  
Annic Baumgartner and Philipp Schuetz

25 **GVHD Prophylaxis (Immunosuppression)** .......................... 177  
David Michonneau and Gérard Socié

26 **Management ATG (SIRS)** .............................................. 183  
Francesca Bonifazi
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
<th>Authors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Infection Control and Isolation Procedures</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>Malgorzata Mikulska</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>General Management of the Patient: Specific Aspects of Children</td>
<td>197</td>
<td>Francesca Riccardi and Elio Castagnola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Vaccinations</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>Rafael de la Cámara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Psychological Morbidity and Support</td>
<td>221</td>
<td>Alice Polomeni, Enrique Moreno, and Frank Schulz-Kindermann</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Clinically Relevant Drug Interactions in HSCT</td>
<td>229</td>
<td>Tiene Bauters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Role of Nursing in HSCT</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>Aleksandra Babic and John Murray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Ethical Issues in HSCT</td>
<td>245</td>
<td>Khaled El-Ghariani and Jean-Hugues Dalle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Quality of Life Assessment After HSCT for Pediatric and Adults</td>
<td>251</td>
<td>Anna Barata and Heather Jim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Part V  HSCT Complications and Management**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
<th>Authors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Neutropenic Fever</td>
<td>259</td>
<td>Malgorzata Mikulska</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Bacterial Infections</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>Diana Averbuch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Invasive Fungal Infections</td>
<td>273</td>
<td>Johan A. Maertens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Viral Infections</td>
<td>281</td>
<td>Per Ljungman, Jan Styczynski, and Hermann Einsele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Other Life-Threatening Infections</td>
<td>291</td>
<td>Rodrigo Martino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Bleeding and Thrombotic Complications</td>
<td>301</td>
<td>Shruti Chaturvedi, Binsah George, and Bipin N. Savani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Graft Failure</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>David Valcárcel and Anna Sureda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Early Complications of Endothelial Origin</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>Enric Carreras and Maribel Diaz-Ricart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Acute Graft-Versus-Host Disease</td>
<td>323</td>
<td>Ernst Holler, Hildegard Greinix, and Robert Zeiser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td>Section Title</td>
<td>Authors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Chronic Graft-Versus-Host Disease</td>
<td>Daniel Wolff and Anita Lawitschka</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Post transplant Lymphoproliferative Syndromes</td>
<td>Jan Styczynski and Sebastian Giebel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Iron Overload</td>
<td>Emanuele Angelucci</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Secondary Neoplasia (Other than PTLPS)</td>
<td>André Tichelli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part VI  Specific Organ Complications</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Ocular and Oral Complications</td>
<td>Shahrukh K. Hashmi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Hepatic Complications</td>
<td>Tapani Ruutu and Enric Carreras</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal Complications</td>
<td>Grzegorz W. Basak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Haemorrhagic Cystitis and Renal Dysfunction</td>
<td>Simone Cesaro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Noninfectious Pulmonary Complications</td>
<td>Enric Carreras and Kenneth R. Cooke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Neurological Complications</td>
<td>Rémy Duléry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Skin, Hair and Musculoskeletal Complications</td>
<td>Francis Ayuk and Bipin N. Savani</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Cardiovascular Diseases and Metabolic Syndrome</td>
<td>Diana M. Greenfield and John A. Snowden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Endocrine Disorders, Fertility and Sexual Health</td>
<td>Nina Salooja, Zeev Shoham, and Jean-Hugues Dalle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part VII  Prevention and Management of Relapse</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Monitoring Minimal Residual Disease in ALL and AML</td>
<td>Peter Bader, Hermann Kreyenberg, and Gert Ossenkoppele</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Prevention and Treatment of Relapse by Drugs</td>
<td>Nicolaus Kröger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Delayed Transfer of Immune Cells or the Art of Donor</td>
<td>J. H. Frederik Falkenburg, Christoph Schmid,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lymphocyte Infusion</td>
<td>Hans Joachim Kolb, Franco Locatelli, and Jürgen Kuball</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
60 Cellular Therapy with Engineered T Cells, Efficacy and Side Effects .................................................. 449
Attilio Bondanza, Chiara Bonini, Boris Fehse, and Michael Hudecek

61 Mechanisms of Immune Resistance ............................... 457
Luca Vago and Francesco Dazzi

62 Regulatory Aspects of ATMP Versus Minimally Manipulated Immune Cells .............................. 461
Eoin McGrath and Christian Chabannon

Part VIII  Specific Modalities of HSCT and Management

63 At-Home HSCT ...................................................... 467
Francesc Fernandez-Avilés and Gonzalo Gutiérrez-García

64 Umbilical Cord Blood Transplantation in Children and Adults ....................................................... 473
Jaime Sanz, Paul Veys, and Vanderson Rocha

65 Haploidentical HSCT .................................................. 479
Fabio Ciceri, Andrea Bacigalupo, Arjan Lankester, and Alice Bertaina

66 Photopheresis in Adults and Pediatrics. ......................... 487
Hildegard Greinix

67 Overweight and Obese Patients .................................... 493
Claudia Langebrake

68 HSCT in Elderly Patients ................................................ 499
Rafael F. Duarte and Isabel Sánchez-Ortega

Part IX  Indications and Results

69 Acute Myeloid Leukemia in Adults .............................. 507
Jurjen Versluis, Jan J. Cornelissen, Charles Craddock, Miguel Á. Sanz, Jonathan Canaani, and Arnon Nagler

70 Acute Myeloid Leukemia in Children ............................ 523
Brenda E. S. Gibson, Martin G. Sauer, and Persis Amrolia

71 Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia in Adults ....................... 531
Matthias Stelljes and David I. Marks

72 Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia in Children and Adolescents .............................................................. 539
Christina Peters, Franco Locatelli, and Peter Bader

73 Myelodysplastic Syndromes ............................................. 547
Marie Robin and Theo de Witte
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Authors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>Pediatric MDS Including Refractory Cytopenia and Juvenile Myelomonocytic Leukemia</td>
<td>Charlotte M. Niemeyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>Myelodysplastic/Myeloproliferative Neoplasms</td>
<td>Francesco Onida and Yves Chalandon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>Myeloproliferative Neoplasms</td>
<td>Nicolaus Kröger and Yves Chalandon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>Severe Aplastic Anemia and PNH</td>
<td>Régis Peffault de Latour, Antonio Risitano, and Carlo Dufour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>Fanconi’s Anemia and Other Hereditary Bone Marrow Failure Syndromes</td>
<td>Cristina Díaz de Heredia, Marc Bierings, Jean-Hugues Dalle, Francesca Fioredda, and Brigitte Strahm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>Hemoglobinopathies (Sickle Cell Disease and Thalassemia)</td>
<td>Barbara Cappelli, Eliane Gluckman, Khaled Ghanem, and Miguel R. Abboud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Multiple Myeloma</td>
<td>Joan Bladé, Benedetto Bruno, and Mohamad Mohty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>Systemic Light Chain Amyloidosis</td>
<td>Monique Minnema and Stefan Schönland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>POEMS Syndrome and Disease Produced by Other Monoclonal Immunoglobulins</td>
<td>Gordon Cook and Montserrat Rovira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Follicular Lymphoma</td>
<td>Stephen Robinson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia</td>
<td>Johannes Schetelig and Peter Dreger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma</td>
<td>Norbert Schmitz, Matthias Stelljes, and Ali Bazarbachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>Mantle Cell Lymphoma</td>
<td>Sascha Dietrich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>Other T- and B-Aggressive Lymphomas and Lymphomas Associated with HIV</td>
<td>Kai Hübel and Silvia Montoto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>Classical Hodgkin’s Lymphoma</td>
<td>Anna Sureda and Carmen Martínez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>Primary Immunodeficiencies</td>
<td>Michael Albert, Arjan Lankester, and Andrew Gennery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Authors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Inborn Errors of Metabolism and Osteopetrosis</td>
<td>Robert Wynn and Ansgar Schulz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>Autoimmune Disease</td>
<td>Tobias Alexander, Basil Sharrack, Montserrat Rovira, Dominique Farge, and John A. Snowden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>Solid Tumours</td>
<td>Ruth Ladenstein, Evgenia Glogova, and Francesco Lanza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Appendix: EBMT Registry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contributors

Miguel R. Abboud  Department of Pediatrics and Adolescent Medicine, American University of Beirut Medical Center, Beirut, Lebanon

Alessandro Aiuti  San Raffaele Telethon Institute for Gene Therapy (SR-TIGET)/Pediatric Immunohematology and Bone Marrow Transplantation Unit, IRCCS Ospedale San Raffaele, Vita-Salute San Raffaele University, Milan, Italy

Michael Albert  Pediatrics Department, Dr. von Hauner Children’s Hospital, LMU Munich, Munich, Germany

Tobias Alexander  Department of Rheumatology and Clinical Immunology, Charité – University Medicine Berlin, Berlin, Germany

Mahmoud Aljurf  King Faisal Specialist Hospital and Research Centre, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia

Persis Amrolia  Department of Bone Marrow Transplant, Great Ormond St Children’s Hospital, London, UK

Emanuele Angelucci  Department of Oncology and Hematology, IRCCS Ospedale Policlinico San Martino, Genova, Italy

Jane Apperley  Centre for Haematology, Hammersmith Hospital, Imperial College London, London, UK

Diana Averbuch  Pediatric Infectious Diseases, Hadassah Medical Center, Hebrew University, Jerusalem, Israel

Francis Ayuk  Department of Stem Cell Transplantation, University Medical Center Hamburg-Eppendorf (UKE), Hamburg, Germany

Aleksandra Babic  IOSI-Istituto Oncologico della Svizzera Italiana, OSG, Bellinzona, Switzerland

Andrea Bacigalupo  Istituto di Ematologia, Fondazione Polclinico Universitario A. Gemelli, Universita’ Cattolica del Sacro Cuore, Roma, Italy

Peter Bader  Division for Stem Cell Transplantation and Immunology, University Hospital for Children and Adolescents, Goethe University Frankfurt am Main, Frankfurt, Germany
Adriana Balduzzi Outpatient Hematology and Transplant Department, Clinica Pediatrica, Università degli Studi di Milano Bicocca, Ospedale San Gerardo, Monza, Italy

Anna Barata Department of Hematology, Hospital de la Santa Creu i Sant Pau, Barcelona, Spain

Institut de Recerca Contra la Leucèmia Josep Carreras, Universitat Autònoma de Barcelona, Barcelona, Spain

Grzegorz W. Basak Department of Hematology, Oncology and Internal Medicine, Independent Public Central Clinical Hospital, Medical University of Warsaw, Warsaw, Poland

Annic Baumgartner Internal Medicine and Endocrinology/Diabetology/ Clinical Nutrition and Metabolism, Medical University Clinic of Kantonsspital Aarau, University of Basel, Aarau, Switzerland

Tiene Bauters Pharmacy, Pediatric Hemato-Oncology and Stem Cell Transplantation, Ghent University Hospital, Ghent, Belgium

Ali Bazarbachi Bone Marrow Transplantation Program, Department of Internal Medicine, American University of Beirut Medical Center, Beirut, Lebanon

Alice Bertaina Division of Stem Cell Transplantation and Regenerative Medicine, Department of Pediatrics, School of Medicine, Stanford University, Stanford, CA, USA

Marc Bierings Pediatric Hematology and HSCT Division, Wilhelmina Kinderziekenhuis, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Joan Bladé Amyloidosis and Myeloma Unit, Department of Hematology, Hospital Clinic of Barcelona, IDIBAPS, Barcelona, Spain

Jaap Jan Boelens Laboratory of Translational Immunology, UMC, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Princess Maxima Center for Pediatric Oncology, Blood and Marrow Transplantation Program, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Attilio Bondanza Innovative Immunotherapies Unit, Division of Immunology, Transplantation and Infectious Diseases, University Vita-Salute San Raffaele and Ospedale San Raffaele Scientific Institute, Milan, Italy

Francesca Bonifazi Institute of Hematology "Seràgnoli", University Hospital S. Orsola-Malpighi, Bologna University, Bologna, Italy

Chiara Bonini Experimental Hematology Unit, Division of Immunology, Transplantation and Infectious Diseases, University Vita-Salute San Raffaele and Ospedale San Raffaele Scientific Institute, Milan, Italy

Benedetto Bruno Department of Oncology, AOU Città della Salute e della Scienza, University of Torino, Torino, Italy

Department of Molecular Biotechnology and Health Sciences, AOU Città della Salute e della Scienza, University of Torino, Torino, Italy
Contributors

Jonathan Canaani  Hematology and BMT Division, Chaim Sheba Medical Center, Tel-Hashomer, Israel

Barbara Cappelli  Eurocord-Monacord, Centre Scientifique de Monaco, Monaco, Monaco

Enric Carreras  Spanish Bone Marrow Donor Registry, Josep Carreras Foundation and Leukemia Research Institute, Barcelona, Catalunya, Spain
Hospital Clinic Barcelona, Barcelona University, Barcelona, Spain

Elio Castagnola  Infectious Diseases Unit, Department of Pediatrics, Istituto Giannina Gaslini, Genoa, Italy

Simone Cesaro  Pediatric Hematology Oncology, Azienda Ospedaliera Universitaria Integrata, Verona, Italy

Christian Chabannon  Institut Paoli-Calmettes, Centre de Lutte Contre le Cancer, Marseille, France
Université d’Aix-Marseille, Marseille, France
Centre d’Investigations Cliniques en Biothérapie, Marseille, France

Yves Chalandon  Department of Oncology, Hematology Division, Hôpitaux Universitaires de Genève, University of Geneva, Geneva, Switzerland

Shruti Chaturvedi  Division of Hematology, Department of Medicine, Johns Hopkins Hospital, Baltimore, MD, USA

Fabio Ciceri  IRCCS San Raffaele Scientific Institute, University Vita-Salute San Raffaele, Milan, Italy

Gordon Cook  Haematology and Myeloma Studies, Leeds Cancer Centre, St James’s University Hospital, Leeds, UK

Kenneth R. Cooke  Pediatric Blood and Marrow Transplantation Program, Oncology Department, Sidney Kimmel Comprehensive Cancer Center, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA

Jan J. Cornelissen  Department of Hematology, Erasmus Medical Center Cancer Institute, Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Charles Craddock  Centre for Clinical Haematology, Queen Elizabeth Hospital, Birmingham, UK

Jean-Hugues Dalle  Department of Pediatric Hematology-Immunology, Hospital Robert-Debré, Assistance Publique-Hôpitaux de Paris, Paris Diderot University, Paris, France

Francesco Dazzi  School of Cancer and Pharmacological Sciences, King’s College London, London, UK

Rafael de la Cámara  Department of Hematology, Hospital de la Princesa, Madrid, Spain

Cristina Díaz de Heredia  Department of Pediatric Hematology and Oncology and HSCT Hospital Universitari Vall d’Hebron, Barcelona, Spain
Maribel Diaz-Ricart  Hemostasis and Erythropathology, Hematopathology Section, Pathological Anatomy Department, CDB, Hospital Clinic, University of Barcelona, Barcelona, Spain

Sascha Dietrich  Department of Hematology, University Hospital of Heidelberg, Heidelberg, Germany

Peter Dreger  Abteilung Innere Medizin V, Universitätsklinikum Heidelberg, Heidelberg, Germany

Rafael F. Duarte  Hospital Universitario Puerta de Hierro Majadahonda, Madrid, Spain

Carlo Dufour  Hematology Unit, G. Gaslini Research Children Hospital, Genoa, Italy

Rémy Duléry  Hematology Department, Hôpital Saint Antoine, AP-HP, Paris, France

Hermann Einsele  Department of Internal Medicine II, Julius Maximilian University of Würzburg, Würzburg, Germany

Khaled El-Ghariani  Department of Hematology, Sheffield Teaching Hospitals Trust and NHSBT, The University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

Irina Evseeva  Anthony Nolan, London, UK

J. H. Frederik Falkenburg  Department of Hematology, Leiden University Medical Center, Leiden, The Netherlands

Dominique Farge  Unité Clinique de Médecine Interne, Maladies Auto-immunes et Pathologie Vasculaire, UF 04, Hôpital Saint-Louis, EA 3518, AP-HP Assistance Publique des Hôpitaux de Paris, Paris Denis Diderot University, Paris, France

Centre de Référence des Maladies auto-immunes systémiques Rares d’Île-de-France (site constitutif), Filière FAI2R, Paris, France

Boris Fehse  Research Department Cell and Gene Therapy, Department of Stem Cell Transplantation, University Medical Centre Hamburg-Eppendorf, Hamburg, Germany

Francesc Fernandez-Avilés  Department of Hematology, Hospital Clínic de Barcelona, Universitat de Barcelona, Barcelona, Catalunya, Spain

Francesca Fioredda  Hematology Unit, Istituto Giannina Gaslini, Genoa, Italy

Katharina Fleischhauer  Institute for Experimental Cellular Therapy, University Hospital, Essen, Germany

Lydia Foeken  Word Marrow Donor Association (WMDA), Leiden, The Netherlands

Andrew Gennery  Paediatric Immunology, Great North Children’s Hospital, Newcastle University, Newcastle upon Tyne, UK
Binsah George  Hematology and Stem Cell Transplantation Section, Division of Hematology/Oncology, Department of Medicine, Vanderbilt University Medical Center and Veterans Affairs Medical Center, Nashville, TN, USA

Khaled Ghanem  BASMA Pediatric Oncology Unit, Al Bairouni Hospital, Damascus, Syria

Brenda E. S. Gibson  Haematology Department, Royal Hospital for Children, University of Glasgow, Glasgow, UK

Sebastian Giebel  Department of Bone Marrow Transplantation and Onco-Hematology, Maria Sklodowska-Curie Memorial Cancer Center and Institute of Oncology, Gliwice, Poland

Evgenia Glogova  Studies and Statistics for Integrated Research and Projects, St. Anna Kinderkrebsforschung e.V., Vienna, Austria

Eliane Gluckman  Department of Hematology, Hospital Saint Louis, University Paris-Diderot, Paris, France

Norbert Claude Gorin  Department of Hematology and Cell Therapy, EBMT Paris Office, Hôpital Saint Antoine APHP, Paris, France

Paris Sorbonne University, Paris, France

Alois Gratwohl  Hematology, Medical Faculty, University of Basel, Basel, Switzerland

Diana M. Greenfield  Specialised Cancer Services, Sheffield Teaching Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust, University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

Hildegard Greinix  Division of Hematology, Department of Internal Medicine, University Hospital Graz, Graz, Austria

Gonzalo Gutiérrez-García  Department of Hematology, Hospital Clínica de Barcelona, Universitat de Barcelona, Barcelona, Catalunya, Spain

Rupert Handgretinger  Department of Hematology/Oncology and General Pediatrics, Children’s University Hospital, University of Tuebingen, Tuebingen, Germany

Shahrukh K. Hashmi  Department of Adult Hematology, King Faisal Specialist Hospital and Research Center, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia

Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN, USA

Shelley Hewerdine  Data Management Lead, EBMT, London, UK

Britta Höchsmann  Institute of Clinical Transfusion Medicine and Immunogenetics Ulm, German Red Cross Blood Transfusion Service Baden-Württemberg-Hessen and University Hospital Ulm, Ulm, Germany

Institute of Transfusion Medicine, University of Ulm, Ulm, Germany

Andrea Hoffmann  Department of Orthopaedic Surgery, Laboratory of Biomechanics and Biomaterials, Hannover Medical School, Hannover, Germany
Contributors

**Ernst Holler** Clinical and Experimental HSCT, Department of Internal Medicine 3 (Haematology/Oncology), University of Regensburg, Regensburg, Germany

**Kai Hübel** University of Cologne, Department of Internal Medicine, Cologne, Germany

**Michael Hudecek** Medizinische Klinik und Poliklinik II, Universitätsklinikum Würzburg, Würzburg, Germany

**Simona Iacobelli** Department of Biology, University of Rome Tor Vergata, Rome, Italy

EBMT, Leiden, The Netherlands

**Heather Jim** Department of Health Outcomes and Behavior, Moffitt Cancer Center, Tampa, FL, USA

**Ulrike Koehl** Institute of Clinical Immunology, University of Leipzig, Leipzig, Germany

Institute of Cellular Therapeutics, Hannover Medical School, Hannover, Germany

Fraunhofer Institute of Cellular Therapeutics and Immunology, Leipzig, Germany

**Hans Joachim Kolb** Department of Hematology-Oncology Immunology Infectious Diseases, Klinikum München-Schwabing, Munich, Germany

**Sixten Körber** Institute of Clinical Transfusion Medicine and Immunogenetics Ulm, German Red Cross Blood Transfusion Service Baden-Württemberg-Hessen and University Hospital Ulm, Ulm, Germany

Institute of Transfusion Medicine, University of Ulm, Ulm, Germany

**Nicolaus Kröger** Department of Stem Cell Transplantation, University Medical Center Hamburg-Eppendorf, Hamburg, Germany

**Hermann Kreyenberg** Division of Stem Cell Transplantation and Immunology, Center for Children and Adolescents, University Hospital Frankfurt, Frankfurt, Germany

**Jürgen Kuball** Department of Hematology, UMC, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Laboratory of Translational Immunology, UMC, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Princess Maxima Center for Pediatric Oncology, Blood and Marrow Transplantation Program, Utrecht, The Netherlands

**Ruth Ladenstein** Studies and Statistics for Integrated Research and Projects, St. Anna Children’s Hospital, Department of Paediatrics and Children’s Cancer Research Institute (CCRI), Medical University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria

**Peter Lang** Department of Hematology/Oncology, Children’s University Hospital, Eberhard Karls University, Tuebingen, Germany
Claudia Langebrake  Department of Stem Cell Transplantation and Hospital Pharmacy, University Medical Centre Hamburg-Eppendorf, Hamburg, Germany

Arjan Lankester  Department of Pediatrics, Section Immunology, Hematology and Stem Cell Transplantation, Leiden University Medical Center, Leiden, The Netherlands

Francesco Lanza  Hematology and HSCT Unit, Department of Onc-Hematology, Hospital S. Maria delle Croci, Ravenna, Italy

Anita Lawitschka  St. Anna Children’s Hospital, Medical University Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Per Ljungman  Department of Cellular Therapy and Allogeneic Stem Cell Transplantation, Karolinska University Hospital, Stockholm, Sweden
Division of Hematology, Department of Medicine Huddinge, Karolinska Institutet, Stockholm, Sweden

Franco Locatelli  Department of Pediatric Hematology and Oncology, IRCCS Bambino Gesù Children’s Hospital, Rome, Italy
Department of Pediatric Science, University of Pavia, Pavia, Italy
Department of Hematology, UMC, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Alejandro Madrigal  Anthony Nolan, London, UK
UCL Cancer Institute, Royal Free Campus, London, UK

Johan A. Maertens  Department of Haematology, University Hospital Gasthuisberg, Leuven, Belgium

David I. Marks  Department of Haematology and BMT, Bristol Haematology and Oncology Centre, Bristol, UK

Carmen Martínez  HSCT Unit, Department of Hematology, Institute of Hematology and Oncology, Hospital Clínico de Barcelona, Universitat de Barcelona, Barcelona, Spain

Rodrigo Martino  Hospital de la Santa Creu I Sant Pau, Autonomous University of Barcelona, ES, Barcelona, Spain

Eoin McGrath  European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT), Barcelona, Spain

David Michonneau  Hematology/Transplantation, AP/HP Hospital St Louis, Paris, France
University Paris VII, Denis Diderot, Paris, France
INSERM UMR 1160, Paris, France

Malgorzata Mikulska  Division of Infectious Diseases, Department of Health Sciences (DISSAL), IRCCS Ospedale Policlinico San Martino, University of Genova, Genova, Italy
Monique Minnema Department of Hematology, UMC Utrecht Cancer Center, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Federica Minniti Mother and Child Department, Ospedale della Donna e del bambino, University of Verona, Verona, Italy

Mohamad Mohty Department of Clinical Hematology and Cellular Therapy, Hospital Saint-Antoine, Sorbonne University, Paris, France

Silvia Montoto Department of Haemat-Oncology, St. Bartholomew’s and The Royal London NHS Trust, Queen Mary University of London, London, UK

Enrique Moreno Department of Psychology, Asleuval (Valencian Association of Leukemia), Valencia, Spain

John Murray Haematology and Transplant Unit, The Christie NHS Foundation Trust, Manchester, UK

Arnon Nagler Department of Medicine, Tel Aviv University, Tel-Hashomer, Israel

Hematology Division, BMT and Cord Blood Bank, Chaim Sheba Medical Center, Tel-Hashomer, Israel

Dietger W. Niederwieser University of Leipzig, Leipzig, Germany

Charlotte M. Niemeyer Department of Pediatrics and Adolescent Medicine, University Medical Center, Freiburg, Germany

Francesco Onida Department of Hematology, Fondazione IRCCS Ca’ Granda Ospedale Maggiore Policlinico, University of Milan, Milan, Italy

Gert Ossenkoppele Department of Hematology, Universitaire Medische Centra, VU University Medical Center, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Régis Peffault de Latour French Reference Center for Aplastic Anemia and Paroxysmal Nocturnal Hemoglobinuria, Saint-Louis Hospital, Paris, France

Assistance Publique–Hôpitaux de Paris, Saint-Louis Hospital, Paris, France

University Paris VII, Denis Diderot, Paris, France

Christina Peters Stem Cell Transplantation Unit, St. Anna Children’s Hospital, Vienna, Austria

Alice Polomeni Pediatric Stem Cell Transplant and Regenerative Medicine, Lucille Packard Children’s Hospital, Stanford University, Stanford, CA, USA

Sergio Querol Banc Sang i Teixits, Barcelona, Spain

Alessandro Rambaldi Department of Hematology-Oncology, Azienda Socio Sanitaria Territoriale Papa Giovanni XXIII, Bergamo, Università Statale di Milano, Milano, Italy

Walid Rasheed King Faisal Specialist Hospital and Research Centre, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia
Francesca Riccardi  Consultant Hematology Unit, Hemato-Oncology and SCT Pole, Istituto Giannina Gaslini, Genoa, Italy

Antonio Risitano  Department of Clinical Medicine and Surgery, Federico II University of Naples, Naples, Italy

Marie Robin  Department of Hematology – Transplantation, Hôpital Saint-Louis, Assistance Publique Hôpitaux de Paris, Paris, France

Stephen Robinson  Bristol Cancer Institute, University Hospital’s Bristol, Bristol, UK

Vanderson Rocha  Hospital de Clinicas, Hematology, Transfusion and Cell Therapy Service, University of São Paulo, Sao Paulo, Brazil
Churchill Hospital, NHS-BT, Oxford University, Oxford, UK

Montserrat Rovira  HSCT Unit, Hematology Department, Hospital Clínic de Barcelona, University of Barcelona, Barcelona, Catalunya, Spain
BMT Unit, Haematology Department, IDIBAPS, Hospital Clinic, Josep Carreras Leukemia Research Institute (IJC), Barcelona, Spain

Carmen Ruiz de Elvira  Registry Head, EBMT, London, UK

Tapani Ruutu  Clinical Research Institute, Helsinki University Hospital, Helsinki, Finland

Riccardo Saccardi  Department of Cellular Therapies and Transfusion Medicine, Careggi University Hospital, Florence, Italy

Nina Salooja  Imperial College, London, UK

Isabel Sánchez-Ortega  Institut Català d’Oncologia Hospitalet, Barcelona, Spain

Jaime Sanz  Department of Medicine, University Hospital La Fe, University of Valencia, Valencia, Spain
Instituto Carlos III, CIBERONC, Madrid, Spain

Miguel Á. Sanz  Department of Hematology, University Hospital La Fe, University of Valencia, Valencia, Spain

Martin G. Sauer  Pediatric Hematology, Oncology and Blood Cell Transplantation, Medizinische Hochschule Hannover, Hannover, Germany

Bipin N. Savani  Hematology and Stem Cell Transplantation Section, Division of Hematology/Oncology, Department of Medicine, Vanderbilt University Medical Center and Veterans Affairs Medical Center, Nashville, TN, USA

Serena Scala  San Raffaele Telethon Institute for Gene Therapy (SR-TIGET), IRCCS Ospedale San Raffaele, Milan, Italy

Johannes Schetelig  Medical Clinic I, Department of Hematology, University Hospital Carl Gustav Carus, Technische Universität Dresden, Dresden, Germany
Contributors

Christoph Schmid  Klinikum Augsburg, University of Munich, Munich, Germany

Norbert Schmitz  Department of Medicine A, Hematology, Oncology, Pneumonology and Hemostaseology, University Hospital Münster, Münster, Germany

Stefan Schönland  Hematology, Oncology and Rheumatology, Internal Medicine, University of Heidelberg, Heidelberg, Germany

Hubert Schrezenmeier  Institute of Clinical Transfusion Medicine and Immunogenetics Ulm, German Red Cross Blood Transfusion Service Baden-Württemberg-Hessen and University Hospital Ulm, Ulm, Germany

Institute of Transfusion Medicine, University of Ulm, Ulm, Germany

Philipp Schuetz  Department of Endocrinology, Diabetes and Metabolism and Internal Medicine, Kantonsspital Aarau, University of Basel, Aarau, Switzerland

Ansgar Schulz  Department of Pediatrics, University Medical Center Ulm, Ulm, Germany

Frank Schulz-Kindermann  Psychoncological Outpatient Department, Institute of Medical Psychology, University Cancer Center Hamburg, University of Hamburg, Hamburg, Germany

Michael Schumm  Children’s Hospital and Department of Internal Medicine, Stem Cell Laboratory, University of Tuebingen, Tuebingen, Germany

Basil Sharrack  Academic Department of Neuroscience and Sheffield NIHR Translational Neuroscience BRC, Sheffield Teaching Hospitals, NHS Foundation Trust, University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

Avichai Shimoni  Bone Marrow Transplantation, Chaim Sheba Medical Center, Tel-Aviv University, Tel Hashomer, Israel

Zeev Shoham  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Kaplan Medical Center, Rehovot, Israel

John A. Snowden  Department of Haematology, Sheffield Teaching Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust, University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

Gérard Socié  Hematology/Transplantation, AP/HP Hospital St Louis, Paris, France

University Paris VII, Denis Diderot, Paris, France

INSERM UMR 1160, Paris, France

Eric Spierings  Laboratory for Translational Immunology, University Medical Center, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Matthias Stelljes  Department of Medicine A, Hematology, Oncology, Pneumonology and Hemostaseology, University Hospital Münster, Münster, Germany
Contributors

Rainer Storb  Fred Hutchinson Cancer Research Center, University of Washington, School of Medicine, Seattle, WA, USA

Brigitte Strahm  Department of Pediatrics and Adolescent Medicine Division of Pediatric Hematology and Oncology, Medical Center Faculty of Medicine, University of Freiburg, Freiburg im Breisgau, Germany

Jan Styczynski  Department of Pediatric Hematology and Oncology, Nicolaus Copernicus University Torun, Collegium Medicum, Bydgoszcz, Poland

Maria Suárez-Lledó  HSCT Unit, Hematology Department, Hospital Clínic de Barcelona, University of Barcelona, Barcelona, Catalunya, Spain

Anna Sureda  Hematology Department and Stem Cell Transplantation Program, Institut Català d’Oncologia – Hospitalet, Barcelona, Catalunya, Spain

André Tichelli  Department of Hematology, University Hospital Basel, Basel, Switzerland

Antoine Toubert  University Paris Diderot and Hopital Saint Louis, Paris, France

Luca Vago  Unit of Immunogenetics, Leukemia Genomics and Immunobiology, Hematology and Bone Marrow Transplantation Unit, IRCCS San Raffaele Scientific Institute, Milano, Italy

David Valcárcel  Department of Hematology, Vall d’Hebron Institute of Oncology (VHIO), University Hospital Vall d’Hebron, Barcelona, Spain

Jurjen Versluis  Department of Hematology, Erasmus Medical Center Cancer Institute, Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Paul Veys  Great Ormond Street Hospital (GOSH) for Children NHS Foundation Trust, and University College London GOSH Institute of Child Health, London, UK

Christof Weinstock  Institute of Clinical Transfusion Medicine and Immunogenetics Ulm, German Red Cross Blood Transfusion Service Baden-Württemberg-Hessen and University Hospital Ulm, Ulm, Germany

Institute of Transfusion Medicine, University of Ulm, Ulm, Germany

Volker Witt  Department of Pediatric Hematology and Oncology, St. Anna Kinderspital, Medical University Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Theo de Witte  Tumor Immunology, Radboud Institute for Molecular Life Sciences, Radboud University Medical Center, Nijmegen, The Netherlands

Daniel Wolff  Department of Internal Medicine III, University Hospital Regensburg, Regensburg, Germany

Liesbeth C. de Wreede  Department of Biomedical Data Sciences, Leiden University Medical Center, Leiden, The Netherlands

DKMS Clinical Trials Unit, Dresden, Germany
Patrick Wuchter  Institute of Transfusion Medicine and Immunology, German Red Cross Blood Service Baden-Württemberg – Hessen, Medical Faculty Mannheim, Heidelberg University, Mannheim, Germany

Robert Wynn  Blood and Marrow Transplant Unit, Royal Manchester Children’s Hospital, University of Manchester, Manchester, UK

Robert Zeiser  Section for Tumor Immunology, Department of Hematology/Oncology, University Hospital Freiburg, University of Freiburg, Freiburg, Germany
About the Editors

**Enric Carreras** is Director of the Spanish Bone Marrow Donors Registry at the Josep Carreras Foundation in Barcelona, Spain, since 2010. He obtained the degree in Medicine and Surgery (1975), becoming specialist in Internal Medicine and Hematology-Hemotherapy, and Doctor of Medicine (1984) in the University of Barcelona. From 1993 to 2010, he was Director of the HSCT Program at the Hospital Clinic in Barcelona. Along these years, his main clinical/research fields of interest have been focused in early complications and endothelial dysfunction after HSCT, HSCT in autoimmune diseases, and at-home HSCT. He is also founder of the Barcelona Endothelium Team at the Hospital Clinic campus of the Josep Carreras Leukemia Research Institute and the author of more than 180 peer-reviewed international publications mainly focused on HSCT. As member of the EBMT since 1980, he participated actively in the Chronic Leukemia Working Party, Autoimmune Diseases Working Party, and Late Complications Working Party. He was Chair of the EBMT/ESH training course in 12 editions and Chair of the EBMT Educational Committee. He is also editor of more than 12 books focused on hematology and HSCT, including the three last editions of the EBMT Handbook, and nominated Project Leader for the 2019 edition. In 2018, he was nominated Honorary Member of the EBMT.

**Carlo Dufour** chairs, within in the G. Gaslini Children’s Hospital, Genova, Italy, and coordinates the “Hemato-Oncology-SCT Pole and the Hematology Unit” where the national Registry of Neutropenia, the national Registry of Alps and related disorders, and the national Database of Fanconi Anemia have seats and where 75 clinical trials were or are still conducted. He authored or coauthored over 250 international publications and various hematology textbook chapters and co-edited a textbook called Congenital and Acquired Bone Marrow Failure. He acts as reviewer for top-ranking journals including The New England Journal of Medicine, Journal of Clinical Oncology, Leukemia, Clinical Immunology, and Blood. He serves as expert evaluator for different institutions including the French Registry for
Rare Diseases, the Fanconi Anemia Research Fund Inc. (USA), the Leukemia and Lymphoma Research Foundation (UK), and the American Society of Hematology Education Program. He is also Scientific Council Education Representative up to July 2018 and currently Chairman of the Working Party of the Severe Aplastic Anemia. He also serves as the Chairman of the Scientific Working Group on Granulocyte and Constitutional Marrow Failure Disorders of the European Hematology Association (EHA). In 2015 he received by the Fanconi Anemia Research Fund Inc. the discovery award for participating to the identification of gene FANCT.

Mohamad Mohty is Professor of Hematology and Head of the Hematology and Cellular Therapy Department at Saint-Antoine Hospital and Sorbonne University (Paris, France). He has a special clinical focus on the development of reduced-toxicity conditioning regimens, immunotherapy, and different aspects of therapy of acute leukemia and multiple myeloma. He is Past-President of the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT), and the current Chairman of the Acute Leukemia Working Party of EBMT. He serves on the board of the EBMT and the “Intergroupe Francophone du Myelome” (IFM). He has published more than 550 peer-reviewed articles in the field of stem cell transplantation, leukemia, and myeloma in different hematology and immunology journals. He also serves as Editor-in-Chief of the journal Bone Marrow Transplantation.

Nicolaus Kröger is Professor of Medicine and Medical Director of the Department of Stem Cell Transplantation at the University Medical Center Hamburg-Eppendorf, Germany. He is the President of the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT) and Chairman of the German Stem Cell Working Group (DAG-KBT) and Past Chair of the Chronic Malignancies Working Party and of the Scientific Council of EBMT. He is also member of the Scientific Program Committee and the Editorial Board of the European Hematology Association (EHA) and member of the Scientific Committee of the European School for Hematology (ESH). His research interests are on stem cell biology and stem cell transplantation, the detection and treatment of minimal residual disease by adoptive immunotherapy or novel drugs, the impact of NK-cell alloreactivity, optimizing the outcome with HLA-mismatched donor, improving conditioning regimen, and prevention and treatment of acute and chronic graft-versus-host disease. For his research he received several awards including the prestigious EBMT Van Bekkum Award in 2015. Prof. Kröger has published extensively in his area of expertise and has contributed to more than 550 publications in
peer-reviewed journals such as The New England Journal of Medicine (NEJM), The Lancet, Journal of Clinical Oncology (JCO), Journal of the National Cancer Institute (JNCI), Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America (PNAS), Blood, and Leukemia.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AA</td>
<td>Aplastic anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab</td>
<td>Antibody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADA</td>
<td>Adenosine deaminase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADR</td>
<td>Adriamycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADV</td>
<td>Adenovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ag</td>
<td>Antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aGVHD</td>
<td>Acute graft-versus-host disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AID</td>
<td>Autoimmune disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIHA</td>
<td>Autoimmune hemolytic anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AKI</td>
<td>Acute kidney injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AL</td>
<td>Amyloid light-chain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALEM</td>
<td>Alemtuzumab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALG</td>
<td>Antilymphocyte globulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>Acute lymphoblastic leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allo-BMT</td>
<td>Allogeneic BMT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allo-HSCT</td>
<td>Allogeneic HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AML</td>
<td>Acute myeloid leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANC</td>
<td>Absolute neutrophil count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APL</td>
<td>Acute promyelocytic leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ara-C</td>
<td>Cytosine arabinoside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARDS</td>
<td>Acute or adult respiratory distress syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASBMT</td>
<td>American Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATG</td>
<td>Antithymocyte globulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATRA</td>
<td>All-trans-retinoic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUC</td>
<td>Area under the curve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto-BMT</td>
<td>Autologous BMT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto-HSCT</td>
<td>Autologous HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAL</td>
<td>Bronchoalveolar lavage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCNU</td>
<td>1,3-Bis(2-chloroethyl)-1-nitrosourea (carmustine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BM</td>
<td>Bone marrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMDW</td>
<td>Bone Marrow Donors Worldwide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMF</td>
<td>Bone marrow failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI</td>
<td>Body mass index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMT</td>
<td>Bone marrow transplantation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BO</td>
<td>Bronchiolitis obliterans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOP</td>
<td>Bronchiolitis obliterans organizing pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOR</td>
<td>Bortezomib</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BOS Bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome
BSA Body surface area
BU Busulfan
BUN Blood urea nitrogen
BW Body weight
CAR Chimeric antigen receptor
CB Cord blood
CBT Cord blood transplantation
CBU Cord blood unit
CC Complete chimerism
CCI Charlson Comorbidity Index
CFU Colony-forming unit
CGD Chronic granulomatous disease
cGVHD Chronic graft-versus-host disease
CHF Congestive heart failure
CI Comorbidity index
CIBMTR Center for International Blood and Marrow Transplant Research
CKD Chronic kidney disease
CLL Chronic lymphoid/lymphocytic leukemia
CML Chronic myeloid/myelogenous leukemia
CMML Chronic myelomonocytic leukemia
CMV Cytomegalovirus
CMV-IP CMV-associated interstitial pneumonia
CNI Calcineurin inhibitor
CNS Central nervous system
COP Cryptogenic organizing pneumonia
CR Complete remission
CR1 First complete remission
CRS Cytokine release syndrome
CSA Cyclosporine A
CSF Cerebrospinal fluid
CT Computed tomography
CTN Clinical Trials Network
CVC Central venous catheter
CVD Cardiovascular disease
CY Cyclophosphamide
d Days
DAH Diffuse alveolar hemorrhage
DAMP Damage-associated molecular pattern
DC Dendritic cell
DEX Dexamethasone
DFS Disease-free survival
DIC Disseminated intravascular coagulation
DLBCL Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma
DLCL Diffuse large cell lymphoma
DLCO Diffusion capacity of the lung for carbon monoxide
DLI Donor lymphocyte infusion
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DLT</td>
<td>Dose-limiting toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM</td>
<td>Diabetes mellitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMSO</td>
<td>Dimethyl sulfoxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA</td>
<td>Deoxyribonucleic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSA</td>
<td>Donor-specific antibody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBMT</td>
<td>European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBNA</td>
<td>Epstein–Barr (virus) nuclear antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBV</td>
<td>Epstein–Barr virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECG</td>
<td>Electrocardiogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECIL</td>
<td>European Conference on Infections in Leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECP</td>
<td>Extracorporeal photopheresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEG</td>
<td>Electroencephalogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS</td>
<td>Event-free survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELISA</td>
<td>Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELN</td>
<td>European LeukemiaNet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN</td>
<td>Enteral nutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EORTC</td>
<td>European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPO</td>
<td>Erythropoietin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET</td>
<td>Essential thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EWOG</td>
<td>European Working Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FA</td>
<td>Fanconi anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FACS</td>
<td>Fluorescence-activated cell sorter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FACT</td>
<td>Foundation for the Accreditation of Cellular Therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDA</td>
<td>Food and Drug Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEV1</td>
<td>Forced expiratory volume in 1 second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFP</td>
<td>Fresh frozen plasma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFS</td>
<td>Failure-free survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FISH</td>
<td>Fluorescence in situ hybridization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FL</td>
<td>Follicular lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLIPI</td>
<td>Follicular Lymphoma International Prognostic Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLU</td>
<td>Fludarabine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FVC</td>
<td>Forced vital capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G-CSF</td>
<td>Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GF</td>
<td>Graft failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFR</td>
<td>Glomerular filtration rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GI</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal (tract)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GM</td>
<td>Galactomannan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GM-CSF</td>
<td>Granulocyte–macrophage colony stimulated factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GNB</td>
<td>Gram-negative bacilli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GVH</td>
<td>Graft-versus-host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GVHD</td>
<td>Graft-versus-host disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GVL</td>
<td>Graft-versus-leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>Hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAART</td>
<td>Highly active antiretroviral therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HADS</td>
<td>Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hATG</td>
<td>Horse ATG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAV</td>
<td>Hepatitis A virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HBV</td>
<td>Hepatitis B virus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Abbreviations

HC   Hemorrhagic cystitis
HCT-CI HCT-Comorbidity Index
HCV   Hepatitis C virus
HDAC High-dose Ara-C
HDT   High-dose therapy
HEPA High-efficiency particulate air
HEV   Hepatitis E virus
HHV   Human herpesvirus
HIB   Haemophilus influenzae type B
HIV   Human immunodeficiency virus
HL    Hodgkin lymphoma
HLA   Human leukocyte antigen
HLH   Hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis
HPV   Human papillomavirus
HR    Hazard ratio
HRCT  High-resolution chest tomography
HRT   Hormone replacement therapy
HSC   Hematopoietic stem cell
HSCT  Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation
HSV   Herpes simplex virus
HTLV  Human T-cell lymphotropic virus
HU    Hydroxyurea
HUS   Hemolytic uremic syndrome
HVG   Host-versus-graft
IA    Invasive aspergillosis
IBW   Ideal body weight
ICU   Intensive care unit
IDM   Infectious disease markers
IFI   Invasive fungal infection
IFN   Interferon
Ig    Immunoglobulin
IgG   Immunoglobulin G
IL    Interleukin
IMID  Immunomodulatory drug
IND   Investigational new drug
INR   International normalized ratio
IP    Interstitial pneumonia
IPI   International Prognostic Index
IPS   Idiopathic pneumonia syndrome
IPSS  International Prognostic Scoring System
IRB   Institutional Review Board
IS    Immunosuppressive
IST   Immunosuppressive therapy
ITT   Intent-to-treat
IV    Intravenous
IVIg  Intravenous immunoglobulin
JACIE Joint Accreditation Committee of ISCT-Europe and EBMT
JCV   JC virus
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JMML</td>
<td>Juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KIR</td>
<td>Killer immunoglobulin-like receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KM</td>
<td>Kaplan–Meier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KPS</td>
<td>Karnofsky Performance Score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-asp</td>
<td>l-asparaginase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAF</td>
<td>Laminar air flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LBL</td>
<td>Lymphoblastic lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDH</td>
<td>Lactate dehydrogenase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LENA</td>
<td>Lenalidomide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LFS</td>
<td>Leukemia-free survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LN</td>
<td>Lymph node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPS</td>
<td>Lipopolysaccharide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVEF</td>
<td>Left ventricular ejection fraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Monoclonal protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MA</td>
<td>Myeloablative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC</td>
<td>Myeloablative conditioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCL</td>
<td>Mantle cell lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDS</td>
<td>Myelodysplastic syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEL</td>
<td>Melphalan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesna</td>
<td>Sodium 2-mercaptoethanesulfonate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>methylPRD</td>
<td>Methylprednisolone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MF</td>
<td>Myelofibrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFD</td>
<td>Matched family donor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGUS</td>
<td>Monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MHC</td>
<td>Major histocompatibility complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIC</td>
<td>Minimum inhibitory concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min</td>
<td>Minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIPI</td>
<td>Mantle Cell Prognostic Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miRNA</td>
<td>Micro-RNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLC</td>
<td>Mixed leukocyte culture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM</td>
<td>Multiple myeloma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMF</td>
<td>Mycophenolate mofetil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMRD</td>
<td>Mismatched related donor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMSD</td>
<td>Mismatched sibling donor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMUD</td>
<td>Mismatched unrelated donor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MoAb</td>
<td>Monoclonal antibody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MODS</td>
<td>Multiple-organ dysfunction syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOF</td>
<td>Multiorgan failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPN</td>
<td>Myeloproliferative neoplasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRC</td>
<td>Medical Research Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRD</td>
<td>Minimal residual disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI</td>
<td>Magnetic resonance imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRSA</td>
<td>Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>Multiple sclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSC</td>
<td>Mesenchymal stem cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSD</td>
<td>Matched sibling donor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTX</td>
<td>Methotrexate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUD</td>
<td>Matched unrelated donor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>Nucleic acid amplification test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Nucleated cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCI</td>
<td>National Cancer Institute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NGS</td>
<td>Next-generation sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHL</td>
<td>Non-Hodgkin lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIH</td>
<td>National Institutes of Health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIMA</td>
<td>Non-inherited maternal antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NK</td>
<td>Natural killer (cell)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMA</td>
<td>Non-myeloabative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMDP</td>
<td>National Marrow Donor Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRM</td>
<td>Non-relapse mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSAID</td>
<td>Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>Odds ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Overall survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAM</td>
<td>Pretransplant assessment of mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PB</td>
<td>Peripheral blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBSC</td>
<td>Peripheral blood stem cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBSCT</td>
<td>Peripheral blood HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR</td>
<td>Polymerase chain reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERDS</td>
<td>Peri-engraftment respiratory distress syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PET</td>
<td>Positron emission tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFS</td>
<td>Progression-free survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFT</td>
<td>Pulmonary function test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ph</td>
<td>Philadelphia (chromosome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHQ-9</td>
<td>Patient Health Questionnaire-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PICC</td>
<td>Peripherally inserted central venous catheter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PID</td>
<td>Primary immunodeficiency disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PJP</td>
<td>Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PK</td>
<td>Pharmacokinetic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMF</td>
<td>Primary myelofibrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMN</td>
<td>Polymorphonuclear neutrophil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PN</td>
<td>Parenteral nutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PNH</td>
<td>Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PO</td>
<td>Per os</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POEMS</td>
<td>Polyneuropathy, organomegaly, endocrinopathy, M protein, skin changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR</td>
<td>Partial remission or partial response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRCA</td>
<td>Pure red cell aplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRD</td>
<td>Prednisone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRES</td>
<td>Posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PT-CY</td>
<td>Post-HSCT cyclophosphamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTLD</td>
<td>Post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUVA</td>
<td>Psoralen–ultraviolet A irradiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV</td>
<td>Polycythemia vera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QLQ</td>
<td>Quality of Life Questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QOL</td>
<td>Quality of life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qRT-PCR</td>
<td>Quantitative reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QW</td>
<td>Once weekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RA</td>
<td>Refractory anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAEB</td>
<td>Refractory anemia with excess blasts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAEB-T</td>
<td>Refractory anemia with excess blasts in transformation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RARS</td>
<td>Refractory anemia with ringed sideroblasts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RBC</td>
<td>Red blood cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCMD</td>
<td>Refractory cytopenia with multilineage dysplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFS</td>
<td>Relapse-free survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rh</td>
<td>Rhesus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
<td>Relapse incidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RIC</td>
<td>Reduced-intensity conditioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R/R</td>
<td>Relapsing/resistant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR</td>
<td>Relapse rate/Relative risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RRT</td>
<td>Regimen-related toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSV</td>
<td>Respiratory syncytial virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RT-PCR</td>
<td>Real-time polymerase chain reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTx</td>
<td>Radiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTX</td>
<td>Rituximab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAA</td>
<td>Severe aplastic anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SARS</td>
<td>Severe acute respiratory syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC</td>
<td>Subcutaneous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCD</td>
<td>Sickle cell disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCF</td>
<td>Stem-cell factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCID</td>
<td>Severe combined immunodeficiency syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>Standard deviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE</td>
<td>Standard error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIR</td>
<td>Sirolimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLE</td>
<td>Systemic lupus erythematous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNP</td>
<td>Single nucleotide polymorphism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOP</td>
<td>Standard operating procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOS</td>
<td>Sinusoidal obstruction syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOT</td>
<td>Solid organ transplantation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPECT</td>
<td>Single-photon emission computed tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SR</td>
<td>Standard risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td>Sézary syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSc</td>
<td>Systemic sclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSOP</td>
<td>Sequence-specific oligonucleotide probe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t-AML</td>
<td>Therapy-related acute myeloid leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t-MDS</td>
<td>Therapy-related myelodysplastic syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TA-GVHD</td>
<td>Transfusion-associated GVHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAC</td>
<td>Tacrolimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAI</td>
<td>Thoracoabdominal irradiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAM</td>
<td>Transplant-associated microangiopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBI</td>
<td>Total body irradiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCD</td>
<td>T-cell depletion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TED</td>
<td>Thromboembolic disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TGF-β</td>
<td>Transforming growth factor beta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THAL</td>
<td>Thalidomide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TKI</td>
<td>Tyrosine kinase inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLC</td>
<td>Total lung capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLI</td>
<td>Total lymphoid irradiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLR</td>
<td>Toll-like receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS</td>
<td>Tumor lysis syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TM</td>
<td>Thalassemia major</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMA</td>
<td>Thrombotic microangiopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMP–SMX</td>
<td>Trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNC</td>
<td>Total nucleated cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNF</td>
<td>Tumor necrosis factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNF-α</td>
<td>Tumor necrosis factor α</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPN</td>
<td>Total parenteral nutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRALI</td>
<td>Transfusion-related acute lung injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TREC</td>
<td>T-cell receptor excision circles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treg</td>
<td>Regulatory T (cell)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TREO</td>
<td>Treosulfan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRM</td>
<td>Transplant-related mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRT</td>
<td>Transplant-related toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TT</td>
<td>N-Triethylenethiophosphoramide, thioTEPA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTP</td>
<td>Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tx</td>
<td>Therapy/Treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UBC</td>
<td>Umbilical cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCB</td>
<td>Umbilical cord blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCBT</td>
<td>Umbilical cord blood transplant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URD</td>
<td>Unrelated donor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UV</td>
<td>Ultraviolet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCR</td>
<td>Vincristine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VEGF</td>
<td>Vascular endothelial growth factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VGPR</td>
<td>Very good partial remission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIN</td>
<td>Vinblastine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIND</td>
<td>Vindesine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VINO</td>
<td>Vinorelbine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOD</td>
<td>Veno-occlusive disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP</td>
<td>Etoposide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VRE</td>
<td>Vancomycin-resistant <em>Enterococcus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vWF</td>
<td>von Willebrand factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VZig</td>
<td>Varicella zoster immune globulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VZV</td>
<td>Varicella zoster virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WBC</td>
<td>White blood cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WBMT</td>
<td>Worldwide Network for Blood &amp; Marrow Transplantation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WMDA</td>
<td>World Marrow Donor Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wt</td>
<td>Wild-type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-ALD</td>
<td>X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZAP-70</td>
<td>Zeta-associated protein</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Part I

Introduction

Topic leaders: Mohamad Mohty and Jane Apperley
1.1 Introduction

HSCT has evolved from a field that was declared dead in the 1960s to the amazing clinical results obtained today in the treatment of otherwise fatal blood disorders. This chapter will reflect upon how HSCT has progressed from the laboratory to clinical reality.

1.2 Early Enthusiasm and Disappointment

Research efforts on how to repair radiation effects resulted from observations on radiation damage among survivors of the atomic bomb explosions in Japan (reviewed in van Bekkum and de Vries 1967). In 1949, Jacobson and colleagues discovered protection of mice from TBI by shielding their spleens with lead. Two years later, Lorenz and colleagues reported radiation protection of mice and guinea pigs by infusing marrow cells. Initially many investigators, including Jacobson, thought that the radiation protection was from some humoral factor(s) in spleen or marrow. However, by the mid-1950s, this “humoral hypothesis” was firmly rejected, and several laboratories convincingly demonstrated that the radiation protection was due to seeding of the marrow by donor cells.

This discovery was greeted with enthusiasm because of the implications for cell biology and for therapy of patients with life-threatening blood disorders. The principle of HSCT was simple: high-dose radiation/chemotherapy would both destroy the diseased marrow and suppress the patient’s immune cells for a donor graft to be accepted. Within 1 year of the pivotal rodent studies, Thomas and colleagues showed that marrow could safely be infused into leukemia patients and engraft, even though, in the end, the leukemia relapsed. In 1958, Mathé’s group attempted the rescue, by marrow transplantation, of six nuclear reactor workers accidentally exposed to TBI. Four of the six survived, although donor cells persisted only transiently. In 1965, Mathé and colleagues treated a leukemia patient with TBI and then marrows from six relatives, absent any knowledge of histocompatibility (Mathe et al. 1965). A brother’s marrow engrafted. The patient went into remission but eventually succumbed to a complication, GVHD. Following up on early observations by Barnes and Loutit in mice, Mathé coined the term “graft-vs.-leukemia effect.” In 1970, Bortin summarized results of 200 human marrow grafts reported between 1957 and 1967 (Bortin 1970). All 200 patients died of either graft failure, GVHD, infections, or recurrence of leukemia.
These transplants were performed before a clear understanding of conditioning regimens, histocompatibility matching, and control of GVHD. They were based directly on work in inbred mice, for which histocompatibility matching is not absolutely required. In 1967, van Bekkum and de Vries stated, “These failures have occurred mainly because the clinical applications were undertaken too soon, most of them before even the minimum basic knowledge required to bridge the gap between mouse and patient had been obtained.” Clinical HSCT was declared a total failure and prominent immunologists pronounced that the barrier between individuals could never be crossed.

1.3 Back to the Laboratory: Focus on Animal Studies

Most investigators left the field, pronouncing it a dead end. However, a few laboratories continued animal studies aimed at understanding and eventually overcoming the obstacles encountered in human allogeneic HSCT. Van Bekkum’s group in Holland used primates, George Santos at Johns Hopkins chose rats, and the Seattle group chose outbred dogs as experimental models. One reason behind using dogs was that, besides humans, only dogs combine unusual genetic diversity with a widespread, well-mixed gene pool. Also, dogs share spontaneous diseases with humans, such as non-Hodgkin lymphoma and X-linked SCID. In addition to determining the best ways to administer TBI, new drugs with myeloablative or immunosuppressive qualities were introduced, including cyclophosphamide, ATG, and BU (Santos 1995). These agents improved engraftment and provided for tumor cell killing similar to TBI. Based on the mouse histocompatibility system defined 10 years earlier, in vitro histocompatibility typing for dogs was developed. Studies from 1968 showed that dogs given grafts from dog leukocyte antigen (DLA)-matched littermates or unrelated donors survived significantly longer than their DLA-mismatched counterparts, even though typing techniques were very primitive and the complexity of the genetic region coding for major antigens was far from understood (Epstein et al. 1968). Serious GVHD was first described in H-2 mismatched mice and in randomly selected monkeys. However, the canine studies first drew attention to fatal GVHD across minor histocompatibility barriers.

These pivotal observations drove the search for Post transplant drug regimens to control GVHD. The most promising drug was the folic acid antagonist, MTX (Storb et al. 1970). Further work in canines showed that transfusion-induced sensitization to minor antigens caused rejection of DLA-identical grafts (reviewed in Georges and Storb 2016). Subsequent canine studies eventually led to ways of understanding, preventing, and overcoming transfusion-induced sensitization. Next, mechanisms of graft-host tolerance were investigated. It turned out that IS could often be discontinued after 3–6 months, and donor-derived T lymphocytes were identified that downregulated immune reactions of other donor T cells against GVHD targets. Immune reconstitution was found to be complete in long-term canine chimeras, enabling them to live in an unprotected environment. Techniques for isolating transplantable stem cells from peripheral blood were refined in dogs and primates. Importantly, studies in pet dogs with non-Hodgkin lymphoma showed cures, in part due to graft-vs.-tumor effects.

1.4 Resuming Clinical Transplantation: 1968–1980s

The second half of the 1960s saw the refinement of high-intensity conditioning regimens, including fractionated TBI and maximally tolerated doses of CY or BU (Santos 1995). Histocompatibility matching was confirmed to be of utmost importance for reducing both graft rejection and GVHD (Thomas et al. 1975). However, even when donor and recipient were well matched, GVHD was a problem unless postgrafting MTX was given, which slowed donor lymphocyte replication. Rapid progress in understanding the molecular nature of the major human
By 1968, the stage was set to resume clinical trials. The first successful transplants were for patients with primary immune deficiency disorders. A 5-month-old boy with “thymic alymphoplasia and agammaglobulinemia” was not perfectly matched with his sister (Gatti et al. 1968). Marrow and peripheral blood cells were infused intraperitoneally without conditioning. After a booster infusion several months later, the patient fully recovered with donor hematopoiesis and is well. A patient with Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome received a first unsuccessful marrow infusion from an HLA-identical sister without conditioning (Bach et al. 1968). A second transplant following CY conditioning resulted in full T- and B-cell recovery, but thrombocytopenia persisted.

During the first 7 or 8 years, most clinical studies were for patients with advanced hematological malignancies and SAA, who were in poor condition and presented tremendous challenges in supportive care (Thomas et al. 1975). They required transfusions and prophylaxis or treatment of bacterial, fungal, and viral infections. Therefore, in addition to discoveries made in marrow transplantation, these early trials stimulated advances in infectious diseases and transfusions (reviewed in Forman et al. 2016). The longest survivors from that era are patients with aplastic anemia who are approaching their 47th anniversary from HSCT with fully recovered donor-derived hematopoiesis and leading normal lives. Chronic GVHD emerged as a new problem among long-term survivors.

The initial studies saw GVHD among approximately half of the patients, despite HLA matching and despite receiving methotrexate. This stimulated further research in the canine system. Major improvements in GVHD control and patient survival were made when combining MTX with CNI inhibitors such as CSA or TAC (Storb et al. 1986). Combinations of drugs have remained a mainstay in GVHD prevention. GVHD treatment with PRD was introduced.

Early results with marrow grafts from HLA-identical siblings after CY for SAA showed 45% long-term survival (reviewed in Georges and Storb 2016). The major cause of failure was graft rejection as expected from canine studies on transfusion-induced sensitization to minor antigens. Canine studies identified dendritic cells in transfusions to be the key element in sensitization. Depleting transfusions of white cells, therefore, reduced the rejection risk. Further canine studies generated a clinical conditioning regimen that alternated CY and ATG, which greatly reduced the rates of both graft rejection and chronic GVHD (Storb et al. 1994). Finally, irradiation of blood products with 2000 cGy in vitro almost completely averted sensitization to minor antigens. Consequently, graft rejection in transplantation for AA has become the exception, and current survivals with HLA-identical sibling and HLA-matched unrelated grafts range from 90% to 100%. First successful grafts for thalassemia (Thomas et al. 1982) and sickle cell disease were reported.

For patients with leukemia and other malignant blood diseases, disease relapse after HSCT has remained a major problem. Attempts to reduce relapse by increasing the intensity of systemic conditioning regimens have met with success, but this benefit was offset by higher non-relapse mortality. Reports by Weiden and the Seattle group in 1979/1981 firmly established the existence of graft-vs.-leukemia (GvL) effects in humans (Weiden et al. 1979). DLI to combat relapse were introduced by Kolb and colleagues in 1990 (Kolb et al. 1990) (see Chap. 59).

Some investigators have removed T cells from the marrow as a means of preventing GVHD (reviewed in Soiffer 2016). Early studies showed high incidences of graft rejection, relapse of underlying malignancies, and infections. More recent studies showed that relapse seemed a lesser problem in patients with acute leukemia. Others have used T-cell depletion with close disease monitoring and treating recurrence with DLI in hopes of initiating GvL responses without causing GVHD. Most recently, younger patients have been given high-intensity conditioning for grafts which were depleted of naïve T cells with a resulting decrease in GVHD (Bleakley et al. 2015).

The late 1980s saw the introduction of G-CSF-mobilized PBSC (reviewed in Schmitz and
Dreger 2016). These were equivalent to marrow as far as engraftment and survival were concerned; however, they seemed to increase the risk of chronic GVHD. For patients with nonmalignant diseases, marrow has therefore remained the preferred source of stem cells in order to keep the rate of chronic GVHD low.

Only approximately 35% of patients have HLA-identical siblings. Therefore, alternative donors have been explored, predominantly HLA-matched unrelated volunteers. The first successful unrelated transplant for leukemia was reported in 1980. In order to expand the donor pool, national registries were established, with currently more than 30 million HLA-typed unrelated volunteers (reviewed in Confer et al. 2016). The likelihood of finding suitable unrelated donors is approximately 80% for Caucasians, although this percentage declines dramatically for patients from minority groups. A second, important alternative stem cell source has been unrelated cord blood (Gluckman et al. 1989), not requiring complete HLA matching and resulting in encouraging outcomes among patients with malignant blood diseases. First attempts with yet another donor source have included TCD megadose CD34+ cell grafts from related HLA-haploidentical donors to treat acute leukemia (Aversa et al. 1998).

1.5 Moving Ahead: The 1990s and Beyond

Conventional HSCT following high-intensity conditioning is risky and requires specialized intensive care wards. The associated toxicities restrict the therapy to younger, medically fit patients. To allow the inclusion of older (highest prevalence of hematological malignancies), medically infirm or very young immunodeficiency patients, less intensive conditioning programs have been developed. In patients with malignancies, these rely less on high-dose chemoradiation therapy and more on graft-vs.-tumor effects. One outpatient transplant strategy combines FLU and 2–3 Gy TBI conditioning with Post transplant IS using an inhibitor of purine synthesis MMF and CSA or TAC. Figure 1.1 illustrates the spectrum of current conditioning regimens (reviewed in Storb and Sandmaier 2016).

A transplant regimen combining fludarabine and 2 Gy TBI conditioning with additional cyclophosphamide before and after HSCT has encouraged widespread use of unmodified HLA-haploidentical grafts (Luznik et al. 2008). It is well tolerated with low incidences of graft rejection and of acute and chronic GVHD, but relapse remains a problem. Strategies addressing relapse include infused donor lymphocytes or NK cells. Retrospective multicenter analyses show comparable outcomes after HLA-matched vs. HLA-haploidentical HSCT.

While reduced-intensity regimens have been well tolerated, relapse and GVHD need improving. Adding targeted radioimmunotherapy against host hematopoietic cells, using anti-CD45 antibody coupled to beta and alpha emitting radionuclides to standard conditioning, has the potential to decrease the pre-transplant tumor burden, thereby lessening the relapse risk (Chen et al. 2012; Pagel et al. 2009). As for GVHD, a recent phase III randomized trial convincingly demonstrated that a triple combination of MMF/cyclosporine/sirolimus significantly reduced both acute GVHD and non-relapse mortality and improved survival (Sandmaier et al. 2016).

Survival of patients with primary immune deficiency diseases given NMA conditioning before HLA-matched and HLA-mismatched grafts between 1998 and 2006 has stabilized at 82% (Moratto et al. 2011).

In the future, better understanding of hematopoietic cell-specific polymorphic minor histocompatibility antigens might result in ways of directing donor immune cells toward hematopoietic targets, thereby controlling relapse without inducing GVHD. Another major research target is containment of chronic GVHD.
Key Points

- Radiation protection of rodents by shielding the spleen or marrow infusion
- First human transplants all failed
- Allogeneic HSCT called a total failure
- HSCT studies in large animals: Histocompatibility matching; MTX for GVHD prevention; Cy, ATG, and Bu; rejection from transfusion-induced sensitization; PBSC; graft-versus-lymphoma effect
- Fractionated TBI
- HSCT for patients with immunodeficiency diseases, aplastic anemia, leukemia, hemoglobinopathies

- Advances in infection prophylaxis and treatment
- Graft-versus-leukemia effects
- Donor lymphocyte infusions
- ATG conditioning
- Unrelated donors
- Cord blood transplants
- Mega CD34+ HLA-haploidentical grafts
- MTX/CNI GVHD prophylaxis
- Reduced and minimal intensity conditioning
- Outpatient transplantation
- PT-CY GVHD prophylaxis
- Targeted radioimmunotherapy
References


HSCT: Historical Perspective

Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
2.1 Introduction

“Only he/she who knows the past has a future” is a proverb attributed to Wilhelm von Humboldt (1767–1835), a great historian, scientist, and philosopher (Spier 2015). It appears as an ideal introduction to a chapter on the history of EBMT. The context by which HSCT evolved in the middle of last century fits with modern views on history. The novel “big history” concept attempts to integrate major events in the past, beginning with the “big bang” up to today’s industrial revolution number IV (Spier 2015). According to this model, nothing “just happens.” Progress occurs when the conditions fit, at the right time and at the right place. Such circumstances are called “Goldilocks conditions,” according to the novel by Robert Southey (https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Goldilocks_and_the_Three_Bears. accessed November 6, 2018). They hold true for the formation of galaxies, suns, and planets, for the appearance of life on earth, or for the evolution of mankind. They apply specifically to the latter: as the one and only species, Homo sapiens managed to create “Goldilocks conditions” by him or herself. They allowed man to fit religion, art, or beliefs in such ways to master society. In our perspective, big history thinking helps to understand the development of HSCT and EBMT and to view it in a broader framework. It provides as well a caveat for the future.

2.2 The Past: Development of HSCT and EBMT

The use of bone marrow (BM) for healing purposes dates back long in history, and BM from hunted animals might have contributed as rich nourishment to the evolution of Homo sapiens (McCann 2016). Its recognition as primary hematopoietic organ in adult life with a hematopoietic stem cell as source of the circulating blood cells began in the middle of the nineteenth century (Schinck 1920). It did result in some early recommendations on the potential therapeutic use of bone marrow (JAMA 1997; Osgood et al. 1939), but with no broader application. All changed after the explosions of atomic bombs in Hiroshima and Nagasaki in World War II, when survivors of the immediate exposure died from BM failure (Van Bekkum and De Vries 1967). Research was directed to find ways to treat this lethal complication. It led to the discovery that bone marrow-derived stem cells
from a healthy donor could replace hematopoiesis after total body irradiation (TBI); it provided at the same time, a tool, TBI, to eradicate aberrant hematopoiesis (Van Bekkum and De Vries 1967; Jacobson et al. 1949; Lorenz et al. 1951; Ford et al. 1956). The concept of HSCT was born, and “the conditions were right.” It is to no surprise that the first clinical BMT centers in Europe started in hospitals with close links to radiobiology research institutes in the UK, the Netherlands, France, and Germany. Funding of radiobiology fostered basic research and stimulated clinical application. In the first series of patients reported in the NEJM in 1957 by the late Nobel Prize winner ED Thomas, all six patients died but two of them with clear signs of donor chimerism (Thomas et al. 1957). And, BMT “saved” accidentally irradiated workers of a radiation facility in Vinca, a town in former Jugoslawia (Mathé et al. 1959). Hence, the clinical results confirmed the “proof of principle” obtained in mice: TBI could eradicate normal and malignant bone marrow cells, and the infusion of healthy donor bone marrow cells could restore the recipient’s depleted hematopoiesis with functioning donor cells. In reality, of more than 200 patients reported by M. Bortin for the IBMTR, all patients with leukemia had died, many of them free of their disease. Three patients survived, all with congenital immune deficiency and transplanted from HLA-identical sibling donors (Bortin 1970). Despite the dismal results, Goldilocks conditions prevailed. Armed forces were convinced of the need for a rescue tool in the event of a nuclear war, physicians viewed BMT as an instrument to treat hitherto incurable blood disorders, and patients envisioned a cure of their lethal disease.

In order to improve outcome, the “believers” joined forces. They met each other, openly reviewed their cases and charts one by one, exchanged views on hurdles and opportunities, spent time together on the slopes in the Alps, and became friendly rivals: EBMT was born. Goldilocks conditions still prevailed. Leukemia could be eradicated. BMT with haploidentical donor bone marrow for SAA after conditioning with ATG yielded spectacular results (Speck et al. 1977). Today, we know that ATG, rather than the cells, was responsible for the outcome. The introduction of intensive induction regimens for AML enabled stable phases of complete first remission (CR1) (Crowther et al. 1970). The discovery of CSA, as the first of its kind of novel IS agents, opened new dimensions in BMT and other organ transplantation (Kay et al. 1980). It became acceptable to transplant patients in early phase of their disease, e.g., CR1 or first chronic phase (CP1) (Thomas et al. 1975). The boom of BMT began (Thomas 2007; Gratwohl et al. 2015a). The first patient in the EBMT database dates back to 1965. In 1973, at the first informal gathering in St. Moritz, the database comprised 13 patients; 4 transplanted in that year. In 1980, a total of 285 HSCT were performed, increasing to 4025 10 years later.

HSCT rapidly diversified in terms of donor type, by including autologous and allogeneic stem cells from related and unrelated donors, and of stem cell source, from bone marrow and peripheral blood to cord blood. Indications expanded from the early congenital immunodeficiency, leukemia, and aplastic anemia to a full variety of severe congenital disorders of the hematopoietic system, to other hematological malignancies such as myeloma and lymphoma, and to non-hematological malignancies, e.g., germ cell tumors. The HSCT technology improved to encompass a variety of in vivo and ex vivo GvHD prevention methods and conditioning regimens of varying intensities with or without TBI. HSCT became open to centers with no links to radiobiology institutes and was no longer bound to “sterile units” and to selected countries (Gratwohl et al. 2015a; Copelan, 2006).

The previously informal gatherings and the database no longer sufficed to share the urgently needed information exchange. EBMT became a formal structure, with elections for presidents and working party chairs. It was listed in PubMed for the first time in 1985 (EBMT 1985). The meetings were no longer confined to ski resorts and became open to all involved in patient care and scientific analyses (Table 2.1). Obviously, organization of the annual meeting is today a major undertaking and only possible with the support of corporate sponsors. Still, the initial spirit remains.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Location annual meeting</th>
<th>Participating groups</th>
<th>EBMT president</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1974</td>
<td>Informal gathering</td>
<td></td>
<td>Informal gathering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1975</td>
<td>St. Moritz, Switzerland</td>
<td>1st P</td>
<td>B. Speck a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1976</td>
<td>St. Moritz, Switzerland</td>
<td>2nd P</td>
<td>B. Speck a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1977</td>
<td>Courchevel, France</td>
<td>3rd P</td>
<td>B. Speck a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1978</td>
<td>Courchevel, France</td>
<td>4th P</td>
<td>B. Speck a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1979</td>
<td>St. Moritz, Switzerland</td>
<td>5th P</td>
<td>E. Gluckman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1980</td>
<td>Sils-Maria, Switzerland</td>
<td>6th P</td>
<td>E. Gluckman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1981</td>
<td>Courchevel, France</td>
<td>7th P</td>
<td>E. Kubanek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1982</td>
<td>Courmayeur, Italy</td>
<td>8th P</td>
<td>E. Gordon-Smith</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1983</td>
<td>Oberstdorf, Germany</td>
<td>9th P</td>
<td>E. Gordon-Smith</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1984</td>
<td>Granada, Spain</td>
<td>10th P</td>
<td>J. Barrett</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1985</td>
<td>Bad Hofgastein, Austria</td>
<td>11th P, 1st N</td>
<td>J. Barrett</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1986</td>
<td>Courmayeur, Italy</td>
<td>12th P, 2nd N</td>
<td>A. Marmont a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1987</td>
<td>Interlaken, Switzerland</td>
<td>13th P, 3rd N</td>
<td>A. Marmont a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1988</td>
<td>Chamonix, France</td>
<td>14th P, 4th N</td>
<td>G. Gharton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1989</td>
<td>Bad Hofgastein, Austria</td>
<td>15th P, 5th N</td>
<td>A. Marmont a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1990</td>
<td>The Hague, Netherlands</td>
<td>16th P, 6th N</td>
<td>J. Goldman a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1991</td>
<td>Cortina d’Ampezzo, Italy</td>
<td>17th P, 7th N</td>
<td>J. Goldman a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1992</td>
<td>Stockholm, Sweden</td>
<td>18th P, 8th N</td>
<td>J. Goldman a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Garmisch-Partenkirchen, Germany</td>
<td>19th P, 9th N</td>
<td>J. Goldman a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1994</td>
<td>Harrogate, UK</td>
<td>20th P, 10th N</td>
<td>A. Gratwohl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1995</td>
<td>Davos, Switzerland</td>
<td>21st P, 11th N</td>
<td>A. Gratwohl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1996</td>
<td>Vienna, Austria</td>
<td>22nd P, 12th N</td>
<td>A. Gratwohl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1997</td>
<td>Aix-les-bains, France</td>
<td>23rd P, 13th N</td>
<td>A. Gratwohl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1998</td>
<td>Courmayeur, Italy</td>
<td>24th P, 14th N</td>
<td>A. Bacigalupo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Hamburg, Germany</td>
<td>25th P, 15th N</td>
<td>A. Bacigalupo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Innsbruck, Germany</td>
<td>26th P, 16th N</td>
<td>A. Bacigalupo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Maastricht, Netherlands</td>
<td>27th P, 17th N</td>
<td>A. Bacigalupo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Montreux, Switzerland</td>
<td>28th P, 18th N, 1st DM</td>
<td>J. Apperley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Istanbul, Turkey</td>
<td>29th P, 19th N, 2nd DM</td>
<td>J. Apperley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2004</td>
<td>Barcelona, Spain</td>
<td>30th P, 20th N, 3d DM</td>
<td>J. Apperley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Prague, Czech Republic</td>
<td>31st P, 21st N, 4th DM</td>
<td>J. Apperley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Hamburg, Germany</td>
<td>32nd P, 22nd N, 5th DM</td>
<td>D. Niederwieser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2007</td>
<td>Lyon, France</td>
<td>33rd P, 23rd N, 6th DM, 1st P&amp;F</td>
<td>D. Niederwieser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Florence, Italy</td>
<td>34th P, 24th N, 7th DM, 2nd P&amp;F</td>
<td>D. Niederwieser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2010</td>
<td>Vienna, Austria</td>
<td>36th P, 26th N, 9th DM, 4th P&amp;F</td>
<td>A. Madrigal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Milan, Italy</td>
<td>40th P, 30th N, 13th DM, 8th P&amp;F, 3d QM, 3d Ped</td>
<td>A. Madrigal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Istanbul, Turkey</td>
<td>41st P, 31st N, 14th DM, 9th P&amp;F, 4th QM, 4th Ped</td>
<td>M. Mohty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2016</td>
<td>Valencia, Spain</td>
<td>42nd P, 32nd N, 15th DM, 10th P&amp;F, 5th QM, 5thPed, 1stPha</td>
<td>M. Mohty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Marseille, France</td>
<td>43rd P, 33rd N, 16th DM, 11th P&amp;F, 6th QM, 6thPed, 2nd Pha</td>
<td>M. Mohty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2018</td>
<td>Lisbon, Portugal</td>
<td>44th P, 34th N, 17th DM, 12th P&amp;F, 7th QM, 7thPed, 3d Pha</td>
<td>M. Mohty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2019</td>
<td>Frankfurt, Germany</td>
<td>45th P, 35th N, 18th DM, 13th P&amp;F, 8th QM, 8th Ped, 4th Pha</td>
<td>N. Kröger</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Participating groups: P physicians, N nurses, DM data manager, P&F patient and family day, QM quality manager, Ped pediatricians, Pha pharmacists

a deceased
2.3 The Present

Today, EBMT (www.ebmt.org) is a nonprofit organization with a clear mission statement: “To save the lives of patients with blood cancers and other life-threatening diseases by advancing the fields of blood and marrow transplantation and cell therapy worldwide through science, education and advocacy” (https://portal.ebmt.org/Contents/About-EBMT/Mission-Vision/Pages/Mission%2D%2DVision.aspx. Accessed 26 Feb 2018). It is formally a professional society with legal residence in the Netherlands and an administrative office in Barcelona, Spain. EBMT is chaired by the president, who is elected by the members for 2 years and for a maximum of two terms. He/she is supported by the board of association as the executive committee and the board of counselors as external advisors. The scientific council which represents the 11 working parties, the seven committees, and the groups guides the scientific work with the help of the seven offices (Table 2.2). The main task of the organizational body of EBMT is to collect, analyze, and disseminate scientific data; to conduct clinical trials; to improve quality through the close cooperation with JACIE and FACT; to plan the annual meeting, the educational events, and training courses, including the EBMT Handbook; and to provide assistance to patients, donors, physicians, and competent authorities.

Members of the EBMT are mainly centers active in transplantation of hematopoietic stem cells (HSC) or any other organization involved in the care of donors and recipients of HSC. Currently (January 1, 2018), EBMT holds 509 full center members and 55 associate center members, 122 individual, and 35 honorary members, from 65 different countries. EBMT is supported in its activities through the membership fees and the revenue of the annual meetings and by its corporate sponsors (https://www2.ebmt.org/Contents/Members-Sponsors/Sponsors/Listofcorporatesponsors/Pages/List-of-corporate-sponsors.aspx. Accessed 26 Feb 2018). EBMT is part of the global network of organizations involved in HSCT, the Worldwide Network for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (WBMT), and in close link with national and other international professional organizations involved in HSCT, such as AFBMT, APBMT, CIBMTR, EMBMT, LABMT, or WMDA. The EBMT database now holds information on more than 500,000 transplants. Over 35,000 new patients were treated annually over the last 5 years and more than 40,000 HSCT performed (Fig. 2.1). An estimated number of more than 400,000 patients are currently alive after HSCT in Europe; they reflect the EBMT achievements and the challenges ahead.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Working parties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADWP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALWP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMWP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTIWP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDWP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEWP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LWP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDWP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAAWP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STWP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCWP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Committees</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nuclear Accident Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donor Outcomes Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistical Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registry Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JACIE Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legal &amp; Regulatory Affairs Committee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EBMT nurses’ group with its own president</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data managers’ group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statisticians’ group</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EBMT units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EBMT Executive Office, Barcelona, Spain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JACIE Accreditation Office, Barcelona, Spain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBMT Central Registry Office, London, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBMT Data Office, Leiden, The Netherlands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBMT Clinical Trials Office, Leiden, The Netherlands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBMT Data Office/CEREST-TC, Paris, France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBMT Activity Survey Office, Basel, Switzerland</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.2 EBMT working parties, committees, groups and offices

Courtesy: EBMT office Barcelona, Marta Herrero Hoces
2.4 The Future

Again, according to the Big History concept, predicting the future is a difficult task: “There are no data about the future; from an empirical scientific point of view, it is impossible to say what lies ahead of us.” (Spier 2015). But we can project scenarios; we know the past, and we see the today. We live in the rapidly evolving world of the industrial revolution IV, dominated by globalization, digitization, and personalized medicine. Targeted therapies promise cures; gene-modified cells destroy hitherto untreatable cancers; immunomodulation with checkpoint inhibitors has become a reality (Hochhaus et al. 2017; Tran et al. 2017; Le et al. 2015). If HSCT is to remain a valuable treatment, mentalities and methods of the past no longer suffice. The idea of beliefs, hence physicians creating their own Goldilocks conditions, will lead to the end of HSCT. It has to be replaced by a stringent scientific approach. The sad story of HSCT for breast cancer, with more than 40,000 transplants but no clear answer, must not to be repeated (Gratwohl et al. 2010).

Hence, prediction number one: The idea of “a donor for everybody” will be abandoned. HSCT has to provide for the individual patient the best outcome regarding overall survival, quality of life and costs. The outcome after HSCT must be superior, in these three aspects, to any of the modern drugs or treatments, including “watch and wait” strategies or palliation. Assessment of risks needs to integrate risk factors relating to the patient, his or her disease, the donor, the stem cell source, the transplant technology, as well as micro- and macroeconomic risk factors (Gratwohl et al. 2015b; Gratwohl et al. 2017). For some patients, early transplant will be the optimal approach; for others, HSCT may need to be delayed. For others, HSCT will never be the preferred option. Obviously, the transplant physician is no longer in a position to adequately assess risk in comparison to the multiple alternative strategies, as it was possible in the old times of the simple EBMT risk score. Machine-learning algorithms will replace risk assessment; the competent physician will still be needed to discuss the results with his or her patients and their families and to conduct the transplant (Verghe et al. 2018).
Hence, prediction number two: The WHO guiding principles for cell, organ, and tissue transplants, “data collection and data analysis are integral parts of the therapy”, need to become a mandatory reality for all transplant teams (WHO 2010). The gap between transplant numbers and reports (Fig. 2.1) has to be closed. Reporting has to become real-time and life-long. The EBMT and transplant centers have to adapt. Data and quality management will become a “condition sine qua non” for all, with close interactions between local, national, and international organizations. Machine learning will end the individualistic center unique transplant techniques. It will no longer be possible to apply hundreds of different GvHD prevention methods and a multitude of conditioning regimens, just by the argument “I have good experience with my method.” Standardization will permit correct personalized medicine, as outlined above. Obviously, assessment of outcome can no longer be restricted to transplanted patients; it will need the correct comparison with non-transplant strategies on a routine basis.

Hence, prediction number three: HSCT centers and the EBMT will no longer be isolated in the treatment landscape. HSCT will need to be integrated into the treatment chain, from diagnosis to early treatment, transplant decisions, and secondary treatment, up to life-long follow-up. Not all of these steps have to occur at the transplant center, but they need to be coordinated by the expert team. Data have clearly shown that transplant experience, as measured in patient numbers and years, is associated with outcome (Gratwohl et al. 2015b). No center will have sufficient expertise for all diseases amenable to HSCT or for all transplant techniques, e.g., bone marrow harvest. HSCT centers will have to decide on their priorities, jointly with their referral and their after-care chain, within their city, their country, or with neighboring countries for coordination.

Hence, final prediction: EBMT can take the science-based lead for coordination and standardization, guide in reorganization of networks with non-transplant treatment chains, and prioritize comparative studies, independent of pressure groups. Then, history will tell, whether the proverb from a contemporary of von Humboldt, Georg Wilhelm Friedrich Hegel (1770–1831) “History teaches us that man learns nothing from history.” (Spier 2015), can be overcome. The potential is here.

References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 From Anthony Nolan to 32 Million Volunteer Donors Worldwide

Bone marrow donor registries (hereinafter referred to as registries) have been playing an important role in developing the treatment of HSCT for more than four decades. In 1974, the world’s first registry was founded by Shirley Nolan in London. Shirley’s son, a 3-year-old, Anthony, had been diagnosed with Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome and needed a transplant. Following the example of Anthony Nolan, a large number of registries have been established around the world, mainly in the late 1980s to early 1990s and have increased over the years. The growing pool of donors has contributed to the development of stem cell transplantation as a treatment method and a field of science (Fig. 3.1).

3.1.2 Registry: Structure and Duties

A registry is “an organisation responsible for coordination of the search for haematopoietic progenitor cells from donors (including cord blood) unrelated to the potential recipient” (WMDA International Standards 2017).

Registries play the main role in communication between the physician in the transplant centre and the healthcare professional contacting the donor at national and international level. Search requests for adult unrelated donors (AUDs) and cord blood units (CBUs) are usually sent to the national registry, which facilitates all stages of search and provision of the graft for a patient.

A typical registry performs different interrelated functions, including donor recruitment and management and search and interact with HLA-typing laboratories, apheresis and marrow collection centres, cord blood banks (CBBs), stem cell couriers and transplant centres.

Some registries recruit donors themselves, while others have an agreement with blood banks, donor centres or donor recruitment groups. The donor’s or cord blood information is provided by the donor centre or CBB to a registry. The registry is responsible for listing the donors on the global database and handling communication with national and international transplant centres (through their national registries) if a potential match for a patient has been found.

The search for a suitable stem cell source is based on the HLA-type of the patient.
Transplant centres and search coordinators within donor registries have access to the Search & Match Service of WMDA (https://search.wmda.info/login), where they can register patient data and get a match list to see if there is a potential stem cell source in the global database.

When the transplant centre identifies a potentially matched stem cell source, the national registry will contact the relevant organisation and facilitate the delivery of stem cells for the patient. Annually, more than 20,000 stem cell products of different sources are shipped within and across borders to patients in need of a HSCT (see Fig. 3.2).

3.2 Current Landscape

3.2.1 Ethnic Diversity and Chance to Find a Donor

As of January 2018, more than 32 million potential AUDs and CBUs are listed in the global Search & Match Service of WMDA. Almost 95%
of these donors have DNA-based HLA-A, HLA-B and HLA-DRB1 phenotype presented, and more than half are listed with additional information on HLA-C, HLA-DQB1 and HLA-DPB1. Every year, registries across the world add approximately two million new volunteer donors to the worldwide pool, with the vast majority being HLA-typed at high and allelic level resolution.

The chance of finding a well-matched donor varies for patients belonging to different ethnic groups. In 2014, the National Marrow Donor Program (NMDP) study demonstrated that whereas approximately 75% of Caucasian patients are likely to identify an 8/8 HLA-matched AUD, the rate is much lower for ethnic minority and mixed-race patients. This is due to the higher genetic diversity of HLA haplotypes in African and Asian populations compared to Europeans and the lower representation and poorer availability of ethnic minority donors in the worldwide pool (Gragert et al. 2014).

3.2.2 Donor Profile

WMDA defines an unrelated donor as “a person who is the source of cells or tissue for cellular therapy product. Donors are unrelated to the patient seeking a transplant”.

Donor centres recruit volunteer donors from 16 to 55 years of age with variations in individual policies. Although donors can remain on the database until they are 60, donor centres try to recruit more young volunteers, as donor age has been proven to be linked to better HSCT outcomes (Kollman et al. 2016). According to the World Marrow Donor Association (WMDA) data, approximately 50% of donors listed globally are younger than 35 (see Fig. 3.3).

Medical suitability for donation, gender diversity, behaviour and psychological risks are constantly changing factors in donor recruitment and management. Donor centres align their policies with national and international standards and recommendations, including donor suitability guidelines produced by the WMDA on https://share.wmda.info/x/FABtEQ and published in 2014 (Lown et al. 2014).

Unrelated donors are acting voluntarily and altruistically and have a right to withdraw from the process at any stage. To avoid such cases, donor centres focus on informing volunteers about all aspects of donation, including risks, at the very early stage of recruitment. When a donor is identified as a potential match for a patient and is asked to provide a blood sample for verification or extended testing, healthcare professionals will have further detailed conversations with the donor addressing any possible questions and concerns. Full informed consent is usually given at the donor’s medical, prior to the conditioning of the patient for transplant.

Fig. 3.3 Age and gender of unrelated donors and percentage of donors in each category
3.2.3 Recruitment, Retention and Data Confidentiality

Recruiting volunteer donors is challenging. Registries and donor centres must ensure they are recruiting the preferred donors (usually younger donors) who are appropriately counselled to fully understand their commitment.

Registries and donor centres use a combination of methods to recruit potential donors including patient-related drives, targeting special groups, e.g. universities, uniformed services, engaging blood donors or online recruitment. The approach depends on the laws of the country and takes traditions, religion and habits into account. The same factors influence donor retention. Considering several options and alternative donors in urgent cases is a recommended practice.

By signing to a donor centre or registry, a potential donor agrees that his/her data are registered in the global database. The donor also provides biological material (blood sample, saliva or buccal swab) for tests, such as HLA typing and infectious disease markers, along with their personal details, in order to be searched as a match for a patient. The registry or donor centre has an obligation to adhere to national and international data protection laws and to keep donor personal and medical information confidentially and use it strictly in line with the donor’s informed consent.

While social media helps enormously with donor recruitment and retention, it can present a challenge for confidentiality of both the donor and the recipient. Registries and donor centres in different countries have different policies on donor/patient post-donation contact and on the level of information provided to each other. These should be respected by all sides involved.

3.3 Connections and Worldwide Collaboration

3.3.1 WMDA

In 1988, three pioneers in the field of transplantation, Professors John M. Goldman (United Kingdom), E. Donnell Thomas (United States) and Jon J. van Rood (the Netherlands), informally initiated the WMDA, which became a formal organization in 1994. It is made up of individuals and organizations who promote global collaboration and best practices for the benefit of stem cell donors and patients requiring HSCT. It aims to give all patients worldwide equal access to high-quality stem cells from donors, whose rights and safety are carefully protected.

3.3.2 Quality and Accreditation

In 2017, WMDA took the lead role in the merging of three key organizations: WMDA, BMDW and the NetCord Foundation. This allowed WMDA to streamline resources to provide a global platform for facilitating international search, to support members to develop and grow and to promote safety, quality and global collaboration through accreditation and standardisation. Eighty-four percent of AUDs available for search are provided by WMDA qualified/accredited registries (WMDA Annual Report 2017). WMDA accreditation of the registries along with FACT-NetCord accreditation of the CBBs reassures recipients in the quality of product and services provided. A complete list of the accreditation status of organisations can be found on WMDA Share: https://share.wmda.info/x/4gdcAQ.

3.3.3 Network Formalities

All registries, donor centres and CBBs providing stem cells for HSCT nationally and internationally have legal agreements and contracts with each other within the network. The contracts cover legal, financial and ethical questions of collaboration in respect of obtaining, testing and shipment of stem cells.

3.4 Challenges and Opportunities

3.4.1 Donor Attrition

Time to transplant is reported to be a factor of overall survival (Craddock et al. 2011). Formal search for an unrelated donor on average takes
about 2 months. However, more and more urgent search requests are made to the registries, where transplant centres are hoping to get a donor work-up in weeks rather than months.

Not all potential donors listed on the database will be available for donation due to different reasons, including medical or personal circumstances or loss of contact with the registry. It varies in different countries. According to WMDA annual questionnaire, in 2017, the recommended target for donor availability at verification typing stage was 80% and at work-up stage 95%. Registries and donor centres are working hard to keep in contact with their donors to have updated information to help reach the donor without delays. Some donor centres use private healthcare providers to speed-up blood sample collection and increase the number of apheresis centres in order to meet desirable turnaround times.

3.4.2 Ethical Challenges

HSCT is an evolving field of medical science. Volunteer donors can be asked to be a subject of research and clinical trials as part of their stem cell donation for a particular patient or not. In the majority of cases, this is covered by the informed consent given at the recruitment and donor medical stages, but in some cases, additional consent is required. It is the obligation of registries and donor centres to make sure that donors are well informed and free to withdraw.

3.4.3 Donor Pool HLA Diversity

Current trends in HSCT (with high requirements for patient/donor matching, complexity of standard and research protocols and a growing index of indications) present challenges for registries, donor centres and CBBs. Different strategies need to be applied to recruit not only a larger number of potential donors but also increase HLA diversity of the pool. As HLA allele and haplotype frequencies have population-specific patterns, there are limitations to how many different phenotypes can be obtained by adding new donors. In 2016, the WMDA reported no more than 50 different phenotypes per thousand new AUDs and CBUs submitted to the global database. This can be addressed by recruiting among ethnic minority groups or in parts of the world with a wider genetic diversity, e.g. Africa (see Fig. 3.4).

![Fig. 3.4 Relative percentage of unique HLA-A, HLA-B and HLA-DR split phenotypes of stem cell donors per country contributed to the entire database of BMDW](image-url)
Although the majority of stem cell provisions worldwide are currently coming from Northern America and Europe, a few large registries arose in South America and Asia over recent years. WMDA is encouraging and supporting new and growing registries. The WMDA handbook: “A gift for life: the essential WMDA handbook for stem cell donor registries & cord blood banks” (2016) provides all necessary information and advice for starting a registry in your country.

3.5 Future Developments

3.5.1 New Level of HLA Matching

As of January 2018, classic criterion for HLA matching with a patient is 10/10 at HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C, HLA-DRB1 and HLA-DQB1 for AUDs and 8/8 on HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C and HLA-DRB1 for CBUs, all at high-resolution level, with mismatches associated with inferior patient outcome (Shaw et al. 2017, Eapen et al. 2017). Many transplant centres are now considering HLA-DPB1 allele or epitope matching (Fleischhauer et al. 2012). There are also trends to include other genes like MICA and MICB in donor selection (Fuerst et al. 2016; Carapito et al. 2016; Kitcharoen et al. 2006).

The resolution of HLA matching is important. The advantage of allelic/ultrahigh-resolution HLA matching on OS and NRM compared to high-resolution level was presented by Anthony Nolan at the 2018 BMT Tandem meetings (Mayor et al. 2018). Full/extended gene sequencing results in fully phased phenotypes, thus significantly reduced allelic ambiguity, and can reveal mismatches not otherwise identified by high-resolution typing.

Following these developments, some registries and donor centres have already implemented HLA allelic level typing for their donors and make additional non-HLA genetic information available for transplant centres at the search stage. It is expected that transplant centres will also be able to type patients at this level of resolution to achieve better matching and additional survival advantages.

3.5.2 Related Donors Provision and Follow-Up

Historically, registries have not been closely involved with the provision of related donors. However, in recent years, many registries have begun to support related donors internationally (i.e. where the patient is living in one country and their related donor is living in another) and domestically (e.g. where the patient and donor live far apart or the transplant centre cannot facilitate a collection). Some registries also provide support in following-up related donors post-collection and in providing information and support for related donors.

3.5.3 Advisory Services Provided by Registries

Nowadays, many registries are taking additional advisory roles in supporting transplant centres in stem cell searches as they accumulate knowledge and expertise over an ever-growing number of stem cell provisions. Working closely with clinical teams, national registries may offer advice and consultancy in donor selection, product quality evaluation, education and training.

As part of research and business development strategy, registries are looking at other products and services to further support HSCT. A range of cell therapy products may be provided along with standard stem cell donation or under a separate service agreement.
Acknowledgements  The authors are grateful to Ms. Ann O’Leary, Ms. Nicola Alderson, Dr. Neema Mayor and Mrs. Pauline Dodi at Anthony Nolan for providing information and advising on the content of this chapter.

References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
The HSCT Unit

Walid Rasheed, Dietger W. Niederwieser, and Mahmoud Aljurf

4.1 Introduction

HSCT is an advanced therapeutic intervention that is required for a number of malignant and nonmalignant medical conditions, often for critically ill patients. The establishment of an HSCT program requires the efforts of experienced and appropriately trained personnel to lead the program. Clearly, this also requires financial, legal, ethical, and other institutional support. For newly starting programs, it would be essential to identify minimal requirements for establishing an HSCT unit in order to optimize resource utilization as well as maintain safe patient care. While these minimal requirements also apply to well-established units, its structure helps to understand and implement additional steps for larger units which plan to offer additional transplant services and have access to more resources.

Approximately 20 years ago, the EBMT and the ISCT (International Society for Cellular Therapy) formed the Joint Accreditation Committee—ISCT and EBMT (JACIE) based on the FACT (Foundation for the Accreditation of Cellular Therapy) program. Efforts of these bodies have culminated in the establishment of standards related to HSCT and cellular therapies to assure quality and safety in the practice of HSCT. Although program accreditation with JACIE is not mandatory worldwide, these standards are very helpful as guidelines to understand requirements to establish an HSCT unit. Table 4.1 summarizes basic minimal requirements of an HSCT unit, which are discussed in more details in the following sections.

4.2 Inpatient Unit

The inpatient HSCT unit should have a minimum number of single-bedded rooms with isolation capability. The number and space of rooms should be adequate for the type and volume of transplant activity performed at the transplant center. These rooms must adhere to the standards of safety and comfort of patients in a tertiary care hospital facility. Every location or room should have a sink and tap for hand washing.

There needs to be a working station or room for nurses involved in patient care. A similar working space for physicians is required. Medical and nursing staff coverage should be available 24 h a day, including public holidays. The ratio of nurses to patient beds depends on the type and intensity of transplants being performed, e.g., autologous versus allogeneic, but generally, a ratio one nurse to three patients is reasonable. Emergency cart with drugs for resuscitation should be available in the inpatient unit.
Infections, including bacterial, viral, or fungal infections, are potential significant complications in transplant recipient and may lead to significant morbidity and mortality. Therefore, HSCT units should have established measures for infection control. Guidelines for infection prevention and prophylaxis in HSCT patients, endorsed by several scientific organizations, are available and highly recommended to follow. HSCT recipients should be placed in single-patient rooms. Furthermore, at a minimum, standard precautions should be followed in all patients including hand hygiene and wearing of appropriate protective equipment (gloves, surgical masks or eye/face protection, gowns) during procedures/activities that are likely to generate splashes or spray of blood, body fluids, or secretions. Hand hygiene is essential, using alcohol-based hand rubs or washing with soap and water. In patients with suspected or proven of having an infection, additional precautions are required accordingly, e.g., airborne, droplet, or contact isolation. HSCT units should be cleaned at least daily with special attention to dust control. During building construction, intensified mold control measures are required, and a multidisciplinary team should be involved.

Other important infection control measures include well-sealed rooms, positive pressure...
differential between patient rooms and the hallway, self-closing doors, more than 12 air exchanges per hour, and continuous pressure monitoring. HEPA (high efficiency particulate air) filters have shown efficacy in providing protection against acquisition of fungal infections in immune-compromised hematology patients, including HSCT patients, and during hospital construction or renovation works. While HEPA filters are not absolutely required as a minimal requirement in newly established centers with less complicated transplant activities, they are certainly preferred and highly recommended as newly established centers expand their activities to include more complicated (especially allogeneic) transplant activities.

There is no agreed upon minimum number of transplants to be performed in a program. However, to ensure continuing proficiency in a transplant program, the ASBMT recommends for programs performing only one type of HSCT (autologous or allogeneic), at least ten transplants of that type are to be performed per annum; programs performing both allogeneic and autologous transplantations should perform a minimum of ten transplants of each kind per annum.

4.3 Ancillary Medical Services

HSCT patients often require other medical specialties involvement in their complicated care. This includes the risk of developing life-threatening infections or other post transplant complications, hence the importance of having access to emergency room as well as intensive care services at the same tertiary care hospital facility where transplant program is being established. Intensive care units should have the ability of providing inotropic support, respiratory support (including mechanical ventilation) as well as renal replacement (hemodialysis) if required.

Input from infectious disease physicians can be valuable in HSCT patients who are at risk of a multitude of opportunistic and potentially life-threatening infections; this is especially important for programs that perform allogeneic transplants. Availability of gastroenterology specialist with endoscopy services is critical for allogeneic programs, as often diagnostic endoscopy is required to differentiate GVHD from other etiologies of gastrointestinal complications. Similarly, pulmonary medicine service with access to diagnostic bronchoscopies is required for such patients with pulmonary abnormalities.

HSCT programs that perform transplants using radiotherapy as part of conditioning regimen (total body irradiation) should have available radiation oncology service on site. The radiation oncology team, including the radiation oncologist and physicist, should have adequate training in the technique of total body irradiation and appropriate equipment, and procedures must be in place to deliver successful and safe radiation component of these conditioning regimen.

4.4 Outpatient Unit

HSCT patients attend to the outpatient unit, both for pretransplant assessment and work-up and post transplant follow-up and management. Single patient examination rooms are a minimal requirement for the outpatient service of the program. These rooms should be adequately equipped to allow clinical assessment of patients. It is important to implement infection control measures to minimize risk of transmitting infections, including hand hygiene measures and availability of appropriate room to isolate patients who are identified to be potentially infectious to others, e.g., due to herpes zoster infection. A dedicated infusion area would be ideal as transplant recipients often require IV fluid and electrolyte replacement or blood product administration.

4.5 Blood Bank

Availability of blood banking services is a critical component of a successful transplant program. A 24-h on-site blood banking service is required for ABO typing, cross match, and urgent supply of red blood cells and platelets for transfusion. Meeting minimal standard criteria according to
recognized international blood bank societies such as the American Association of Blood Banks (AABB) or equivalent is important. Blood bank staff, including blood bank director, scientists, and technicians should be adequately qualified and trained in blood banking procedures.

Transplant recipients are severely immune-compromised and are at risk of transfusion-associated GVHD, caused by unrestricted proliferation of donor lymphocytes in the immune-compromised host. Hence, it is critical that transplant recipients receive irradiated blood products to prevent this complication. The use of leukocyte-depleted blood products is recommended to reduce the risk of HLA alloimmunization in the multiply transfused hematology patients, as well as to reduce the incidence of transfusion reactions. In allogeneic programs, clear documented pathways for transfusion support in cases of ABO mismatch should be available for both blood bank and clinical staff as guidance.

4.6 Laboratory

A 24-h on-site hematology cell count and basic chemistry lab are required. Furthermore, microbiology laboratory service is essential in the clinical management of transplant recipients, including routine bacterial and fungal cultures of various patient specimens. Serology screening for relevant viral and bacterial infections is also required for pretransplant work-up of recipients as well as donor screening. For allogeneic transplant recipients, monitoring for cytomegalovirus (CMV) reactivation is essential, and results must be available in a timely manner to allow therapeutic intervention; both molecular technique by quantitative PCR (preferable) and antigenemia method are acceptable. In the allogeneic setting, monitoring drug levels, e.g., cyclosporine or tacrolimus, is required, and same-day service is recommended to allow interventions aiming at keeping levels of these important drugs within the target therapeutic range.

4.7 HLA Typing Lab

Access to HLA typing laboratory is mandatory for allogeneic programs. Such service can be available on-site or alternatively provided in reference laboratory. JACIE standards state that clinical programs performing allogeneic transplantation shall use HLA testing laboratories that are capable of carrying out DNA-based intermediate and high-resolution HLA typing and are appropriately accredited by the American Society for Histocompatibility and Immunogenetics (ASHI), European Federation for Immunogenetics (EFI), or other accrediting organizations providing histocompatibility services appropriate for hematopoietic cellular therapy transplant patients.

4.8 Stem Cell Collection

Access to peripheral blood stem cell apheresis service on-site is a minimal requirement in each program. This is often part of the blood bank service or alternatively under the administration of the clinical program. Having at least two cell separators would be beneficial, as the second cell separator would be a backup in situations of unexpected machine faults and for routine servicing. Daily operation of apheresis facility requires appropriately trained and experienced nursing staff and a medical director with adequate qualification and experience in clinical and laboratory aspects of the apheresis procedure. Institutional written protocols and policies covering all aspects of apheresis procedure should be available for guidance. JACIE standards require a minimum average of ten cellular therapy products collected by apheresis per year for program accreditation.

A bone marrow stem cell source is sometimes recommended for better patient outcome, e.g., patients with bone marrow failure. Programs performing allogeneic transplants for such indication should have a bone marrow harvest facility on-site. This requires convenient and easy access to surgical operating room with anesthesia service. Appropriate equipment for the bone mar-
row harvest procedure are required. Physicians with adequate training and experience in bone marrow harvesting are crucial to perform the procedure successfully.

4.9 Stem Cell Processing Facility

The stem cell processing facility requires a designated area, usually within the laboratory. It should be appropriately equipped for the processing of various stem cell products depending on the types of transplants performed and the size of the program. Availability of flow cytometry for the enumeration of CD34 cell count is mandatory. Controlled cryopreservation capability, using liquid nitrogen, for freezing of autologous stem cell product is essential. This may also be used in allogeneic sibling products. Standard quality control measures, including systems to closely monitor and record the temperature in all freezers and refrigerators, are critical. Allogeneic programs should have appropriate equipment and expertise on-site for the timely and safe processing of ABO-mismatched stem cell products as required, including the need to perform red cell or plasma depletion procedures when indicated. The processing facility should be operated by adequately trained staff, including scientist, technicians, and a medical director. Written standard operating procedures explaining all aspects of stem cell processing performed at the facility are required.

4.10 Radiology

Standard routine (X-ray), ultrasound, and computed tomography (CT scan) imaging services are the minimal requirements and should be available on site for the routine diagnostic imaging. Availability of magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is preferred, as it is often useful in the diagnosis of specific clinical conditions relevant to stem cell transplant recipients, such as iron overload, CNS infections, and posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome (PRES) related to calcineurin inhibitor toxicity. Placement of central venous catheters in transplant recipients is obviously required in each program. Depending on the institutional setting, this service may be provided by various hospital services; often this is done by the radiology service under ultrasound guidance. Having well trained and experienced interventional radiologist to perform this procedure is crucial for the safety of patients.

4.11 Pharmacy

Pharmacy services are essential in each HSCT program. Availability of conditioning chemotherapy agents is clearly required; specific drugs depend on the type and complexity of transplant procedures performed in each program. Commonly used agents in conditioning regimens include BU, CY, FLU, and MEL. ATG may also be required in the allogeneic setting (e.g., in aplastic anemia) and requires special attention and training by nursing, pharmaceutical, and medical staff in relation to its administration.

Broad-spectrum antibiotics should be available for urgent use as required in transplant recipient. Likewise, access to antiviral and antifungal agents is important for both prophylaxis and treatment. Allogeneic programs should also have access to immunosuppressive drugs used for GVHD prophylaxis such as CSA, MTX, and TAC.

A trained pharmacist is crucial for the HSCT program. The pharmacist should review all conditioning chemotherapy protocols and ensure appropriate dispensing and administration of cytotoxic agents.

4.12 Staffing and Human Resources

Appropriately trained and experienced medical and nursing staffs are crucial for the HSCT program. The clinical medical director of the program should be a licensed physician (specialty certification in hematology, oncol-
ogy, or immunology) with adequate training at a BMT program. A minimal BMT training duration of 6–12 months is suggested. JACIE standards indicate that the clinical program director shall have 2 years of experience as an attending physician responsible for the direct clinical management of HSCT patients in the inpatient and outpatient settings. A minimum of one (1) additional attending transplant physician is required in the program.

The success of a transplant program relies heavily on the presence of appropriately trained and experienced nursing staff. This includes training in chemotherapy administration, infection control, management of neutropenic patients, and handling of stem cell products.

Other important staff includes appropriately trained and experienced personnel in the laboratory (including laboratory director, scientist, and technicians), trained pharmacist, as well as medical professionals of ancillary medical services. Continuous education activities are required for all healthcare professionals involved in the management of HSCT patients.

### 4.13 Institutional Database and Data Manager

Monitoring patient demographics, treatment details, and outcomes is an essential minimal requirement. Each program should keep complete and accurate patient records, and a database containing relevant patient data should be established and regularly maintained. Appropriate patient consent needs to be obtained for such database. An example of the minimal data required to be obtained on each transplant patient is the information required in the CIBMTR or EBMT mid A forms. Having a data manager in a transplant program to initiate and maintain this institutional transplant database is highly recommended. Often data managers have nursing background with experience in stem cell transplantation. Attending training data management courses during international meetings or through links with other experienced and well-established programs would be valuable.

### 4.14 Quality Control

The JACIE standards require that all essential clinical collection and processing facilities in the transplant center evaluate and report patient outcomes. Regular audits of various HSCT procedures and patient treatment outcomes are required. Essentially, a system is required to be in place to detect errors/adverse events, so that these can be evaluated in order to implement preventative measures to minimize the risk of recurrence of these incidents. Furthermore, each program should have written institutional clinical protocols in relation to the various aspects of the transplant patient care to standardize practice. Likewise, stem cell collection and processing facilities should have standard operating procedures that serve as a guidance for all staff to follow to enhance patient’s safety. Access to or relationship with experienced HSCT program is often very helpful and highly recommended via shared protocols/telemedicine and/or web-based conferencing.

### 4.15 Transplant Coordinator

HSCT is a complex therapeutic intervention, and coordination of the pretransplant, transplant, and post transplant patient care is important. A transplant coordinator can play pivotal role in this context, acting as a facilitator, educator, as well as a point of contact for the patient and their families. Transplant coordinators ensure the smooth and safe running of the HSCT service starting from scheduling and arranging pretransplant work-up of patient and planning the roadmap for the transplant recipient with continued involvement and education of the patients and their families until the time of admission. Furthermore, transplant coordinator would play a significant role in the coordination of post HSCT follow-up and care in clinics. For allo-HSCT, the transplant coordinator would be very valuable in arranging donor search starting from HLA typing of the recipient and his/her family members, in addition to initiating and following a search for unrelated donor in national or international registries.
The transplant coordinator involvement may extend to organizing the logistics of getting the stem cells from the donor from the donor center where the recipient may be in another health facility (national or international). Moreover, transplant coordinators will often lead the HSCT team weekly planning meetings and discussions with the arrangement of the HSCT waiting list. Typically, transplant coordinators have nursing background with significant experience in stem cell transplantation.

**Key Points**

- The inpatients unit should have single-bedded rooms with isolation capabilities. Single outpatient examination rooms are also required.
- Laboratory, blood bank, and pharmacy services are critical to the success of HSCT programs.
- Stem cell collection and processing capabilities are minimal requirements for any HSCT program; the level of such capabilities depends on the type and complexity of HSCT performed in each center.
- Ancillary medical services are essential components of successful HSCT programs, including intensive care and emergency and radiology services. Additional medical services are required in allogeneic programs.
- Appropriately trained and experienced staff (medical, nursing, laboratory, pharmacy) are crucial for the HSCT program.
- Monitoring patient characteristics and transplant outcomes is essential.
- A local quality control system is required in all aspects involved in the HSCT procedure.
- Having a data manager for the HSCT program, to initiate and maintain institutional minimal transplant data base is highly recommended.

- Transplant coordinators play pivotal role the management of HSCT patients, starting from pre SCT work up, right through post transplant care.

**Recommended References**


5 JACIE Accreditation of HSCT Programs

Riccardo Saccardi, Eoin McGrath, and John A. Snowden

5.1 Introduction

The complexity of HSCT as a medical technology and the frequent need for close interaction and interdependence between different services, teams, and external providers (donor registries, typing laboratories, etc.) distinguish it from many other medical fields. Approximately 20 years ago, this complexity led to efforts by transplantation professionals to standardize processes based on consensus as a way to better manage inherent risks of this treatment. HSCT was, and continues to be, a pioneer in the area of quality and standards.

5.2 Background

In 1998, EBMT and the International Society for Cell & Gene Therapy (ISCT) established the Joint Accreditation Committee, ISCT and EBMT (JACIE), aimed to offer an inspection-based accreditation process in HSCT against established international standards. JACIE is a committee of the EBMT, its members are appointed by and are accountable to the EBMT Board, and ISCT is represented through two members of the Committee. JACIE collaborates with the US-based Foundation for the Accreditation of Cellular Therapy (FACT) to develop and maintain global standards for the provision of quality medical and laboratory practice in cellular therapy.

The JACIE and FACT accreditation systems stand out as examples of profession-driven initiatives to improve quality in transplantation and which have subsequently been incorporated by third parties, such as healthcare payers (health insurers, social security) and competent authorities (treatment authorization). The JACIE Accreditation Program was supported in 2004 by the European Commission under the public health program 2003–2008 and was acknowledged as an exemplary project in a 2011 review of spending under the public health program.

R. Saccardi (*)
Department of Cellular Therapies and Transfusion Medicine, Careggi University Hospital, Florence, Italy
e-mail: riccardo.saccardi@unifi.it

E. McGrath
European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT), Barcelona, Spain

J. A. Snowden
Department of Haematology, Sheffield Teaching Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust, University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK
5.3 Impact of Accreditation in Clinical Practice

Much literature indicating a better clinical outcome in teaching hospitals and centers of excellence has been available since the 1990s (Hartz et al. 1989; Birkmeyer et al. 2005; Loberiza et al. 2005). Initial evidence of a positive relationship between the implementation of a quality management system and outcome of HSCT in Europe was published in 2011 (Gratwohl et al. 2011). In this paper, patients’ outcome was systematically better when the transplantation center was at a more advanced phase of JACIE accreditation, independent of year of transplantation and other risk factors.

Another analysis (Gratwohl et al. 2014) was performed on a large cohort of patients who received either an allogeneic or an autologous transplantation between 1996 and 2006 and reported to the EBMT database. The authors showed that the decrease of overall mortality in allogeneic procedures over the 14-year observation period was significantly faster in JACIE-accredited centers, thus resulting in a higher relapse-free survival and overall survival at 72 months from transplant. Such improvement was not shown in autologous transplantation.

Similar results published by Marmor et al. (2015) in an American study showed that centers accredited by both FACT and Clinical Trial Network (CTN) demonstrated significantly better results for more complex HSCT such as HLA-mismatched transplants.

These data reinforce the concept that clinical improvement is driven by the implementation of a quality management system embedded in external accreditation standards, especially in the context of more complex procedures. This process also results in a wider standardization of procedures across different countries and geographic areas, therefore contributing to providing patients with similar treatment expectations even when accessing different health management systems. A comprehensive review of this was recently published (Snowden et al. 2017).

5.4 JACIE-FACT Accreditation System

JACIE and FACT accreditation systems are based on the development and continuous update of standards covering the entire transplantation process, from selection of the donor/patient to follow-up, including collection, characterization, processing, and storage of the graft. Considering the different competences included in the process, the standards are articulated in four parts:

- Clinical Program,
- Bone Marrow Collection,
- Apheresis Collection and
- Processing Facility.

A quality management (QM) section is embedded in each section, aimed at providing a tool for both the applicants to develop a comprehensive system of quality assessment and for the inspectors to check the compliance of the program to the standard. Stand-alone processing labs can apply; however, the target of the accreditation is the transplantation program, intended as a process in its entirety, thus requiring a full integration of units, laboratories, services, and professionals. Each section focuses on the competence of personnel, listing topics for which the evidence of a specific training is required which also includes the minimum experience requirements for positions of responsibility. Maintaining these competences is also required for all professionals.

The standards are revised on a 3-year basis by a commission formed of experts appointed by JACIE and FACT, including HSCT administration, cell processing and storage, blood apheresis, transplant registries, and QM specialists. The standards are based on published evidence and, when this is not available, on expert consensus. A legal review and comparison with current regulations are carried out for each version. When the developmental phase is finalized, the standards are published for public review and comment and finally approved by JACIE and FACT.
The standards incorporate sound principles of quality medical and laboratory practice in cellular therapy, but do not cover legal requirements of local competent authorities.

The compliance to the standards is ensured through an inspection system, carried out by voluntary inspectors, trained and coordinated by the JACIE office in Barcelona. The JACIE inspection is a multistep procedure: the applicant center is provided with all the application documents and is then required to submit a set of documentation to the JACIE accreditation coordinators. If the first review is positive, the on-site inspection is then planned in agreement with the applicant.

JACIE inspections are carried out in most cases in the language of the applicant. The inspectors’ report is then assessed by the JACIE accreditation committee, which may request supplementary information, modifications, or another on-site visit. If all aspects are shown to be compliant, accreditation is awarded. An accreditation cycle is 4 years for JACIE, and facilities must complete an interim desk-based audit after 2 years post-accreditation. Accredited facilities must reapply for reaccreditation and may also be reinspected in response to complaints or information that a facility may be non-compliant with the standards, in response to significant changes in the program and/or facility or as determined by JACIE.

Many tools are made available to prepare the accreditation through the JACIE website, including a quality management guide, the welcome guide, and webinars. JACIE runs training courses throughout the year, and the Barcelona-based staff are available to support the applicants. An accreditation manual provides detailed explanations and examples for each single item of the standards. A special approach is under development for transplant programs in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs), where full accreditation might not be feasible due to resources and/or cultural issues. In this case, a stepped process toward accreditation is being developed, based on the selection of organizational items of the standard which may be fulfilled by the implementation of a QM system, without requiring specific investments in infrastructures and/or equipment. This “stepwise” option will also encourage the programs to connect with an international network of professionals and may also stimulate local authorities to support further progress toward full accreditation in the interests of patients, donors, and the professional community.

The standards cover the use of different sources of hematopoietic stem cells and nucleated cells from any hematopoietic tissue source administered in the context of the transplant process, such as DLI. The term “hematopoietic” in the title is to define the scope of these standards, due to an increasing number of accredited facilities that also support non-hematopoietic cellular therapies. Starting with version 6.1, the standards include new items specifically developed for other cellular therapy products, with special reference to immune effector cells (IECs). This reflects the rapidly evolving field of cellular therapy through mainly, but not exclusively, genetically modified cells, such as CAR-T cells. The standards do not cover the manufacturing of such cells but include the chain of responsibilities where the product is provided by a third party and ensure the competence of the personnel in the management of adverse events related to the infusion.

Another recent development has been the introduction of “benchmarking” standards related to 1-year survival and other patient outcomes. If center performance is below the expected range, then a corrective action plan is mandated. The requirement for a risk-adapted “benchmarking” system is being addressed in the development of the new EBMT MACRO registry, which will enable centers to address these new JACIE standards within their own BMT community and across international boundaries.

JACIE is run on a non-profit basis, resourced almost entirely on application fees. Fees depend on the configuration of the program and its EBMT membership status. At the time of writing in February 2018, the application fee for a transplant
program made up of collection, processing, and clinical units is €14,600 for EBMT members and €29,200 for non-EBMT members. Supplementary fees for additional sites and discounts for active inspectors in the team are applied (see JACIE website for details).

Overall, over 600 accreditation inspections have been carried out in 25 countries, representing over 40% transplant centers in Europe (Figs. 5.1 and 5.2), many of which have been through more than one accreditation cycle. JACIE accreditation is now mandatory in several European countries, to apply for reimbursement of the procedure and/or to be authorized to perform HSCT. JACIE also represents an opportunity for centers in LMICs to align their organizations with practice in the more advanced HSCT programs.

Fig. 5.1 JACIE-accredited programs March 2018
Key Points

- JACIE accreditation is based on an internationally agreed quality standard system led and delivered by HSCT and cell therapy professionals.
- The standards are regularly updated, incorporating advances in the evidence base while reflecting the practical view of experienced experts on clinical and laboratory practice of HSCT and cell therapy.
- Published data support a positive improvement in the clinical outcome related to the accreditation process, also promoting a progressive standardization of HSCT practice across different countries.
- Recent developments in the standards include development of standards for CAR-T and other immune effector cells (IEC), “benchmarking” of patient survival and access of centers in LMIC to the “stepwise” accreditation.

References

Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
6.1 Introduction

The analysis of data describing the outcomes of patients who have received an HSCT is not only fundamental to assessing the effectiveness of the treatment but can provide invaluable information on the prognostic role of disease and patient factors. Thus, the appropriate analysis and understanding of such data are of paramount importance. This document provides an overview of the main and well-established statistical methods, as well as a brief introduction of more novel techniques. More insight is provided in the EBMT Statistical Guidelines (Iacobelli 2013).

6.2 Endpoints

The outcomes most commonly studied in HSCT analyses are the key events occurring at varying times post HSCT, e.g., engraftment, GVHD, relapse/progression, and death. Besides the clinical definition of the event of interest, it is important to define the corresponding statistical endpoint and to use a proper method of measuring the occurrence of the event (Guidelines 2.1).

The main distinction is between events that occur with certainty during a sufficiently long observation period (follow-up), like death, and events which are precluded from occurring once another event occurs, e.g., not all patients will experience a relapse of their disease because some die before. We define death without prior relapse (usually called NRM; see Guidelines 2.1.2) as the “competing event” of relapse. The name “NRM” is preferable to TRM, the proper analysis of which requires individual adjudication of causes of death.

Survival endpoints: In addition to death, other examples of events of the first type are the combinations of (negative) events of interest, which in total have 100% probability of occurrence, for example, PFS which considers as failure of the event “either relapse/progression or death.” The components of PFS are the two competing events mentioned above, relapse/progression and NRM.

Competing risks endpoints: In addition to relapse/progression and NRM, other examples are death of a specific cause and all intermediate events during a HSCT history (engraftment, GVHD, achievement of CR, CMV infection) including the long-term (secondary malignancy). Notice that the definition of an endpoint requires specifying which are the competing events. Usually, this will be death without prior event of...
interest, but depending on the disease and the aims of the analysis, other competing events might be included in the analysis, e.g., a second transplantation or other treatment can be considered as competing event for achievement of response.

6.3 Analysis of Time-to-Event Outcomes

Each event of interest may occur at variable times post transplant, so in statistical terms, it has two components—whether it occurs at all and, if it does, when. However, at the end of the follow-up, there can be patients who have not yet had the event of interest but are still at risk for it: their observation times are called “censored.” Censoring occurs at different timepoints for different patients. The inclusion of censored data precludes the use of simple statistical methods such as the Chi-Squared or T-test and requires the methods of survival (or competing risks) analysis. The crucial assumption of most methods in survival analysis is that the patients censored at a timepoint are “represented” by those who remain under follow-up beyond that timepoint. In other words, the fact that a patient is censored should not indicate that his/her prognosis is worse or better than the prognosis of a similar patient who remains under observation. This assumption is called “independent and uninformative” censoring.

6.3.1 Kaplan-Meier Curves

The main method to summarize survival endpoints is the Kaplan-Meier curve (Kaplan and Meier 1958), estimating for each point in time \( t \) after HSCT the probability \( S(t) \) of surviving beyond that time. This curve is decreasing from 100% and will reach 0% with complete follow-up. A long flat tail of the curve (often called “plateau”) is often based on a few censored observations at late times, corresponding to very unreliable estimates of the long-term survival. It is useful to report each \( S(t) \) with its 95% CI (confidence interval at 95% level, best obtained using the Greenwood formula) or at least the number of patients still at risk at different timepoints. The median survival time is the minimum time when \( S(t) \) is equal to 50% (Fig. 6.1).

6.3.2 Cumulative Incidence Curves

The appropriate method to summarize endpoints with competing risks is the cumulative incidence

![Fig. 6.1 Probability curves of the four main outcomes after HSCT. CIR Cumulative Incidence of Relapse. CIR and NRM add up to 1-RFS. Number at risk indicates the number of patients in follow-up who have not experienced an event so far. The grey zones indicate 95% confidence intervals](image)
(CI) curve (Gooley et al. 1999), estimating for each point in time \( t \) the probability \( F(t) \) of having had the event of interest before that time. This curve is increasing from 0% and will not reach 100% even with complete follow-up if the competing event was observed for some patients. It is always useful to interpret CI curves of competing events together, to understand, e.g., when a category of patients has a small risk of relapse, if this means that they have a good prognosis or that they died too early from complications to experience a relapse (shown by a high NRM curve) (Fig. 6.1).

### 6.3.3 Comparison of Groups

The main method to compare survival curves for two or more independent groups is the Log-Rank test. This test is based on the comparison of the underlying hazard functions, which express the instantaneous probability of the event at a time \( t \) among patients currently at risk. It has good properties in the situation of proportional hazards (PH, described in the next section), but it should be avoided (or considered carefully) when the survival curves cross; with converging curve alternatives like the Wilcoxon Signed-Rank test should be preferred.

In the comparison of cumulative incidence curves, the main method is the Gray test. Also the Log-Rank test can be applied to compare groups in the case of competing risks, when the object of interest is not the cumulative probability of occurrence of the event but its instantaneous probability among the cases at risk at each time, which is called “cause-specific hazard.” For the interesting difference of the two approaches to the analysis of competing risks endpoints, see Dignam and Kocherginsky (2008).

We refer to Sects. 1.3 and 1.4 of the Guidelines for remarks on statistical testing and about proper settings for comparisons of groups. Importantly, the simple methods described in this chapter can be applied only to groups defined at or before the time origin (e.g., transplantation); assessing differences between groups defined during the follow-up requires other approaches, as those described in Sect. 6.4.1 (Guidelines page 14).

### 6.3.4 Proportional Hazards Regression Analysis

The above tests do not give a summary measure of the difference in outcomes between groups, nor can they be used when the impact of a continuous risk factor (e.g., age) has to be assessed. Furthermore, any comparison could be affected by confounding. These limitations are typically overcome by applying a (multivariable) regression model. The one most commonly used for survival endpoints is the proportional hazards (PH) Cox model (Cox 1972). Results are provided in terms of hazard ratios (HR), which are assumed to be constant during the whole follow-up (Guidelines 4.3.1). The Cox model in its simplest form is thus not appropriate when a factor has an effect that strongly decreases (or increases) over time, but time-varying effects can be accommodated for in more complex models. Effects of characteristics which change during follow-up can be assessed by including them as time-dependent covariates.

For endpoints with competing risks, two methods can be used, which have a different focus: the Cox model can be used to analyse cause-specific hazards, whereas a regression model for cumulative incidence curves was proposed by Fine and Gray (1999).

The use of these regression models requires a sound statistical knowledge, as there are many potential difficulties with the methods both in application and interpretation of results.

### 6.4 Advanced Methods

Many more advanced methods than the ones described above exist that help to get more insights from the available data. A good application of these needs expert statistical knowledge. The brief introductions given below are primarily meant to
help understanding papers where these methods have been applied. For a more in-depth discussion, see, e.g., Therneau and Grambsch (2000).

### 6.4.1 Multistate Models

The methodology of multistate models (Putter et al. 2007) has been developed to understand the interplay between different clinical events and interventions after HSCT and their impact on subsequent prognosis. Their primary advantage is that sequences of events, such as HSCT, DLI, GVHD, and death, and competing events, such as relapse and NRM, can be modeled simultaneously (see Fig. 6.2 for an example). This is in contrast to analyzing composite survival outcomes such as GVHD-free survival where all failures are combined and resolution of GVHD is not considered. Some studies applying this method that offer new insights into the outcomes after HSCT are Klein et al. (2000) about current leukemia-free survival, Iacobelli et al. (2015) about the role of second HSCT and CR for MM patients, and Eefting et al. (2016) about evaluation of a TCD-based strategy incorporating DLI for AML patients.

### 6.4.2 Random Effect Models

In standard methods, all patients are considered as independent, and each patient only contributes one observation for each endpoint. There are, however, situations when this does not hold, for instance, when patients within the same centre tend to have more similar outcomes than those from another centre or when one patient can experience more than one outcome of the same kind, e.g., infections. In these cases, the outcomes within one “cluster” (a centre or a patient) are more correlated than the outcomes between clusters, which has to be accounted for in the analysis. This is usually done by random effect models, which assume that each cluster shares an unobserved random effect. In survival analysis, these are called frailty models (Therneau and Grambsch 2000, Chap. 9). If the outcome is not an event but a value measured over time, e.g., CD8 counts, the appropriate regression models are called mixed models.

### 6.4.3 Long-Term Outcomes: Relative Survival/Cure Models

With improved long-term outcomes and increasing numbers of older patients, a substantial number of patients will die from other causes than the disease for which they have been transplanted and the direct and indirect consequences of its treatment. This so-called population mortality can be quantified by methods from relative survival, based on population tables describing mortality of the general population (Pohar Perme et al. 2016).

---

**Fig. 6.2** Example of a multistate model. All patients start in state 1 (event-free after HSCT). They can then proceed through the states by different routes. Each arrow indicates a possible transition.
Especially for transplanted children, a period with a high risk of mortality can be followed by a very long and stable period where the death risk is (almost) zero. When the focus of an analysis is on the probability of long-term cure, cure models can be used that assess the impact of risk factors on this but only if follow-up is sufficiently long (Spoto 2002).

### 6.4.4 Propensity Scores

Propensity scores (PS) are useful to compare the outcomes of two treatments in the absence of randomization, to control confounding due to the fact that usually the choice of the treatment depends on patient’s characteristics (confounding by indication) (Rosenbaum and Rubin 1983). First, the PS, defined as the probability of receiving one treatment instead of the other, is estimated for each patient. Then PS can be used in various ways (mainly stratification or pair matching), allowing comparison of treatment outcomes among cases with a similar risk profile.

### 6.4.5 Methods for Missing Values

Missing values in risk predictors are a common problem in clinical studies. The simplest solution is to exclude the patients with missing values from the analysis (complete case analysis). This solution is not optimal, however: firstly, not all information is used (an excluded patient might have other characteristics known), and secondly, this approach can lead to bias if patients with missing values have on average a different outcome from the patients with observed values.

If values can be imputed on the basis of observed values in the dataset, these patients can be retained in the analysis to increase precision of estimates and avoid bias. The method most commonly used is called multiple imputation (White et al. 2011). A major advantage of this method is that it properly takes into account the uncertainty caused by the imputation in the estimates. If data are missing not at random—meaning their values cannot be predicted from the observed variables—multiple imputation can at most decrease the bias but not fully remove it.

**Acknowledgements** We thank Myriam Labopin, Richard Szydlo and Hein Putter for their contributions to this chapter.

**Key Points**
- Survival and competing risk endpoints need specific methods.
- Survival analysis methods: Kaplan-Meier, Log-Rank test, Cox model.
- Competing risks methods: Cumulative incidence curve, Gray test, Cox model, and Fine and Gray model.
- Including events/changes of status occurring during follow-up in an analysis requires specific (advanced) methods, like multistate models.

**References**


Therneau TM, Grambsch PM. Modeling survival data: extending the Cox model. New York: Springer; 2000.


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Part II

Biological Aspects

Topic leaders: Chiara Bonini and Jürgen Kuball
Biological Properties of HSC: Scientific Basis for HSCT

Alessandro Aiuti, Serena Scala, and Christian Chabannon

7.1 Introduction

Hematopoiesis—from the Greek term for “blood making”—is the adaptive process by which mature and functional blood cells are continuously replaced over the entire lifetime of an individual. Erythrocytes, platelets, and the various subsets of leukocytes all have finite although different life spans. As a consequence, the daily production of red blood cells, platelets, and neutrophils in homeostatic conditions amount to more than 300 billion cells.

In mammals, after the emergence of the first hematopoietic progenitors in extra-embryonic structures such as the yolk sac in mice, cells of hematopoietic nature are first detected in the aorto-gonado-mesonephric (AGM) region of the developing embryo (Costa et al. 2012). The site of hematopoiesis then moves to the fetal liver and next to the BM where it remains established until the death of the individual. Extramedullary hematopoiesis in humans denotes a myeloproliferative syndrome.

The considerable knowledge accumulated over more than a century of experimental hematology led to the early understanding that all hematopoietic lineages are derived from a small subpopulation of undifferentiating and self-renewing stem cells. HSC represent the most accurately explored model of somatic stem cells that are present in most if not all tissues and organs, contributing to tissue homeostasis and repair. Existence of a population of HSC also has practical implications in terms of developing innovative therapies aiming at the definitive replacement or enhancement of a function in cells from one or several hematopoietic lineages, including the possibility to establish durable hematopoietic chimerism in recipients of allogeneic HSCT.

7.2 Self-Renewal

A general property of stem cells is self-renewal, assuming that when these cells divide, at least one of the “daughter cells” fully recapitulate the biological properties of the “mother stem cell.” Self-renewal of the HSC population prevents...
exhaustion, while the hematopoietic tissue extensively proliferates and differentiates in steady-state conditions, as well as to repair various damages. Demonstration of self-renewal at the clonal level remains an arduous task, even though high-throughput analytical tools have been adapted. There is a growing body of evidence suggesting aging of the HSC population and decline of stem cell function with age (for a review, see Goodell and Rando 2015; de Haan and Lazare 2018). Appearance of “passenger mutations” in clonal hematopoiesis is one hallmark of aging (Cooper and Young 2017); the significance of such observations remains to be fully elucidated, but obviously raises questions when it comes to solicit elderly individuals to donate HSC for the benefit of a related patient.

7.3 Commitment and Differentiation: New Data Challenge the Historical View of Hematopoietic Hierarchy

The traditional view of HSC differentiation is a hierarchical representation of an inverted tree, where discrete and homogenous populations branch from one another, with successive restrictions in differentiation potentials. This oversimplifying view is increasingly challenged by recent studies reporting on noninvasive genetic experiments and clonal analyses in mice (for a review, see Laurenti and Göttgens 2018; Busch and Rodewald 2016). These studies suggest that hematopoietic differentiation uses different mechanisms under steady-state and stress conditions (Goyal and Zandstra 2015); however, both in steady-state conditions and transplantation models, only a small fraction of HSC contribute to long-term and stable reconstitution without compromising reestablishment of hematopoiesis (Schoedel et al. 2016; Höfer and Rodewald 2016), while most stem cells remain quiescent or proliferate infrequently. Single-cell transcriptional landscapes also suggest that differentiation occurs as a continuous rather than discrete physiological process and that restriction of differentiation is not the result of a “symmetric split” between the myeloid and lymphoid compartments as long thought through the phenotypic identification of “common myeloid progenitors” (CMP) and “common lymphoid progenitors” (CLP).

Commitment to one or several lineages, or conversely restriction in differentiation abilities, results from the expression of a controlled genetic and epigenetic program (Pouzolles et al. 2016; Antoniani et al. 2017; Gottgens, 2015); these mechanisms remain partially understood and thus can only be partially harnessed for in vitro engineering of HSC and their progeny (Rowe et al. 2016). The fate of HSC and their progeny is additionally regulated by extrinsic signals, among which hematopoietic growth factors and cytokines play an important role in survival, proliferation, and amplification (Kaushansky, 2006).

7.4 The Bone Marrow Niches and Maintenance of Stemness (Fig. 7.1)

Recent years have witnessed considerable progress in our understanding of organization and function of the bone marrow microenvironment. HSC establish interactions in the context of microanatomical organizations termed “niches.” Progress has been made both in understanding the heterogeneity of niches at and within successive hematopoietic sites and in identifying various categories of cells—either of non-hematopoietic or of hematopoietic origin—that interact with HSC. The various types of bone marrow niches closely associate with the neurovascular network that infiltrates the central bone marrow as well as the endosteal region. The nature of the signaling between these different cell populations is also increasingly deciphered and involves many pathways, some of them unexpected at first (for a review, see Crane et al. 2017; Calvi and Link 2015). Replicating some of these interactions in vitro is key to successful expansion or genetic engineering of isolated HSC. Among the many molecular actors that govern interactions between HSC and the various cells present in niches, the CXCL12 chemokine and its most important
receptor CXCR4 are of particular interest: direct or indirect modulation of this axis is clinically exploited to amplify the compartment of circulating stem cells that exist at low numbers in steady-state conditions.

7.5 Preclinical Models of HSCT

Most of the current knowledge on the biology of HSC and on therapeutic mechanisms of HSCT derives from studies in animal models (Eaves, 2015; Sykes and Scadden 2013). Classical murine transplantation studies showed that single or few engrafting HSC were sufficient and necessary to sustain long-term hematopoiesis in a reconstituted mouse. Human-in-mouse xenografts have become a fundamental tool to study hematopoietic dynamics upon HSCT. The generation of immune-deficient mice bearing a deletion of the interleukin-2 receptor gamma chain on the NOD-SCID background (NSG mice) was instrumental for studying HSC homing, engraftment, lineage differentiation, and serial transplantation capacity. This model has been further modified by introducing human myeloid cytokine genes to increase myeloid differentiation (Doulatov et al. 2012) or loss-of-function mutation in KIT receptor to efficiently support engraftment of human HSC without the need for conditioning therapy (Cosgun et al. 2014). To overcome the lack of human components in the murine BM, humanized-BM niche systems have been recently developed which are based on human stromal cells implanted on specific scaffold or directly injected with extracellular matrix to generate BM micro-ossicles (Di Maggio et al. 2011; Reinisch et al. 2016). These strategies provide novel tools to study the behavior of human HSC in their physiological context and to dissect
the role of the niche upon transplantation. However, homing and engraftment parameters in xenografts may be different from the natural setting, and most HSCT models follow recipient mice for few months after transplantations, thus making long-term outcome difficult to assess.

Dogs provide an ideal preclinical modeling system for HSCT studies due to their large body size, life span, and high genetic diversity, which more appropriately recapitulate the human scenario. Preclinical canine modeling has been fundamental for the clinical translation of conditioning regimens and the importance of MHC donor/recipient matching. However, the lack of canine reagents and the logistic difficulties of working with large animal models have precluded widespread availability (Stolfi et al. 2016). Auto-HSCT in nonhuman primates is arguably the experimental model most closely resembling humans; their treatment conditions—including the use of CD34+ cells, mobilization, and conditioning regimens—all parallel those commonly exploited in human transplantation. While the ethical issues and costs have limited their use to selected centers, these animals are able to maintain long-term hematopoiesis up to several years after transplantation allowing the study of HSCT dynamics in a close-to-human fashion (Koelle et al. 2017).

7.6 Gene Transfer/Gene Editing/Gene Therapy Targeting HSC (Fig. 7.2)

Ex vivo HSC gene therapy (GT) is based on the genetic modification of autologous HSC to correct monogenic disorders or to provide novel features to hematopoietic cells for treating infectious diseases or cancers (Naldini, 2011). It is now well established that HSC can be efficiently gene modified to continuously produce a cell progeny expressing the therapeutic gene while maintaining the ability to engraft long-term, for at least 15 years (Cicalese et al. 2016). Potential advantages of this approach over allogeneic HSCT include the lack of GVHD or rejection and the possibility of engineering HSC in order to achieve supra-physiological level of the corrected protein (Naldini, 2011; Aiuti and Naldini 2016).

Currently, integrating vectors derived from retroviruses represent the most efficient platform for engineering HSC and to provide permanent and heritable gene correction. γ-Retroviral vectors (RV) have been used in many clinical applications including GT of inherited blood disorders and cancer therapy. HSC-GT in primary immunodeficiencies was shown to provide clinical benefit, but the use of γ-RV was associated with risks of insertional mutagenesis due to activation of proto-oncogenes with the exception of ADA deficiency (Cicalese et al. 2016). Self-inactivating (SIN)-lentiviral vectors (LV) are currently the tools of choice for most of the HSC-GT applications given their ability to transduce at higher efficiency non-dividing cells, to carry larger and more complex gene cassettes, and to display a safer insertion site (InS) pattern in human HSC (Naldini, 2011). The recent development of designer endonucleases led to the advent of gene targeting approaches. In contrast to viral vectors, which can mediate only one type of gene modification (gene addition), genome-editing technologies can mediate gene addition, gene disruption, gene correction, and other targeted genome modifications (Dunbar et al. 2018). These strategies have the potential to overcome vector InS genotoxicity and to handle diseases due to dominant negative mutations. Despite the great promises, several challenges need to be addressed. Primitive, slow-cycling human BM-derived HSC are very resistant to ex vivo manipulations required for gene targeting, and the current efficiency of gene editing into repopulating HSC may not be suitable for clinical applications requiring high levels of correction (Dunbar et al. 2018; Kohn, 2017).

Thus, there remains a pressing need to develop methods to expand HSC or gene-corrected HSC while maintaining their repopulating capacity. Various cytokines and growth factors derived from BM niche, such as SCF, TPO, and Flt-3 ligand, are able to regulate HSC stemness and differentiation and are commonly used in HSC transduction protocols. However, even efficiently supporting GT, the balance between self-renewal/differentiation still hangs toward differentiation. High-throughput screening of chemical compounds has resulted in the identification of two promising molecules (StemRegenin1, SR1 (Wagner et al. 2016) and a
pyrimidole derivative UM171 (Fares et al. 2014) that are able to achieve great expansion of long-term repopulating HSC. Several small molecules have been identified that may support modest degrees of HSC expansion, but the ideal drug or combination has not yet been reported.

7.7 Studying Dynamics of Hematopoietic Reconstitution upon HSCT (Fig. 7.3)

Upon gene correction, each transduced cell and its progeny become univocally marked by a specific insertion site (InS). The analysis of RV or LV InS has emerged as one of the most effective strategies allowing tracing the activity of genetically engineered hematopoietic cells directly in vivo in animal models as well as in GT-treated patients. Retrieving InS from mature blood cells after HSCT allowed studying the kinetics of blood cell production from individual stem cells within a heterogeneous population (Scala et al. 2016).

In the murine setting, the finding that the vast majority of the InS after transplant were present in either lymphoid or myeloid cells with few InS shared by both lineages led to the concept that murine HSC are heterogeneous and already biased for their fate. The possibility to directly translate these models on human beings is currently under investigation (Lu et al. 2011; Yamamoto et al. 2013).

Clonal tracking studies in nonhuman primates have been pivotal in studying HSCT dynamics in an experimental setting close to humans. The results of these works showed common pattern of hematopoietic reconstitution upon transplantation: clonal fluctuation in the early phases post-HSCT, potentially due to the initial contribution to the hematopoiesis of short-term unilineage progenitors, followed by a recovery of a stable hematopoietic output likely related to the takeover of long-term multipotent HSC contribution. Thus, differently from murine studies, long-term HSC are able to provide multi-lineage engraftment, and there is no evidence of predetermined lineage choice at stem cell level in primates (Koelle et al. 2017; Kim et al. 2014).
To date, few cutting-edge studies have exploited InS retrieval from GT-treated patients allowing for the first time to study the complexity of hematopoietic system and hematopoietic reconstitution upon HSCT in humans (Biasco et al. 2016; Wang et al. 2010). These studies showed that transplanted gene-repaired HSC are able to engraft and to generate polyclonal multi-lineage output over-time. Longitudinal analyses allowed unveiling that unilineage clones active during the first 6 months after GT tend to be replaced by multilineage long-term clones, indicating HSC-derived activity. Finally, based on the number of InS recaptured overtime, it has been estimated that about 1 in $10^5$–$10^6$ infused gene-corrected cells had the potential to engraft long term. Recently our group unveiled for the first time that primitive HSPC have a distinct role in sustaining human hematopoiesis after transplantation. While MPP are more active in the early phases, long-living HSC are on top of the hematopoietic hierarchy at steady state. Importantly we found that long-term HSC, that were activated in vitro, were capable of homing and resilience upon re-infusion (Scala et al. 2018). These approaches represent a prototypical example of the power of translational studies, providing information relevant on human hematopoietic system complementing and expanding the data derived from animal models.

7.8 From Experimental Hematology to Medical Practices and Hematopoietic Cellular Therapies

As already stressed in this brief review, a considerable amount of knowledge has accumulated over years allowing us to understand part of the mechanisms that control HSC behavior and take advantage of this knowledge; many of these observations cross-fertilized other disciplines. A large gap however persists between the technological sophistication of research tools and the rudimentary nature of clinical grade reagents, devices, and laboratory tests. In clinical transplantation or even in the most modern forms of hematopoietic cellular therapies, stem cells remain identified as “CD34+ cells,” which can at best be considered as a gross approach to stemness; functional assays are limited to clonogenic activated cell sorting barely entered the clinical field, and most cell selection procedures rely on
immune selection with magnetic beads. Despite these limitations, and as can be seen from the content of the other chapters in this book, HSCT remains as the only example of a worldwide and widely used cell transplant procedure, with many of its underlying conceptual aspects and techniques being used to design innovative and highly personalized somatic cell therapy or gene therapy medicinal products.

**Key Points**

**HSC characteristics**

- **Self-renewal**: ability of HSC to divide maintaining their biological properties
- **Multipotency**: ability of HSC to generate all mature hematopoietic cell types
- **Quiescence**: ability of HSC to remain inactive and unresponsive to external stimuli

**Models of hematopoietic hierarchy**

- **Classical model**: HSC differentiate into discrete and homogenous populations with successive restrictions in differentiation potentials
- **Functional model**: HSC differentiate according to hematopoietic state (stressed vs. unperturbed hematopoiesis)
- **Progressive model**: HSC differentiate through a continuous rather than discrete physiological process as result of a controlled genetic and epigenetic programs

**Preclinical models of HSCT**

- **Murine models**: study of HSC homing, engraftment, lineage differentiation, and serial transplantation capacity
- **Canine models**: validation of conditioning regimens and assessment of MHC donor/recipient matching significance
- **Nonhuman primates**: evaluation of mobilization procedures, conditioning regimens, and long-term maintenance of hematopoiesis

**Ex vivo gene therapy**

- Integrating vectors: \( \gamma \)-retroviral vectors (RV) and self-inactivating (SIN)-lentiviral vectors
- Genome editing: zinc-finger nucleases (ZFN), transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALEN), and clustered, regularly interspaced, short palindromic repeat (CRISPR) nucleases

**References**


Biological Properties of Cells Other Than HSCs

Attilio Bondanza, Ulrike Koehl, Andrea Hoffmann, and Antoine Toubert

8.1 Introduction

The array of cellular players involved in the biology of HSCT clearly extends beyond HSC themselves and, in the case of transplantation from allogeneic sources, importantly includes cells of the innate and adaptive immune system. Historically, the discovery of the HLA system and the functional characterization of the different immune cell types had a transformational impact on our current understanding of the pathobiological sequelae of allo-HSCT (rejection, GVHD, the GVL effect). This body of knowledge coupled to the most recent exploit of biotechnology nowadays allows us to design strategies for in vivo stimulation or adoptive transfer of specific immune cell types with the potential to dramatically improve transplantation outcome.

In this chapter, we will review the biological properties of cells other than HSCs that so far have Since apart from vaccination antigen presenting cells and myeloid cells at large have seldom been subject of this type of studies been therapeutically investigated in human allo-HSCT, they will not be discussed here. Conversely, we will briefly touch on mesenchymal stromal cells (MSCs), which, although not classifiable as immune cells stricte sensu, have been widely employed in allo-HSCT.

8.2 Conventional or Alpha-Beta T Cells

The majority of mature T cells is characterized by the expression of the αβ TCR, which endows MHC-restricted recognition of peptides derived from non-self-proteins. Mutually exclusive co-expression of CD8 or CD4 further conveys specificity for MHC class I/MHC class II/peptide complexes, respectively. CD8+ T cells recognize intracellular peptides, mainly derived from viruses or mutated genes, mediating cytotoxicity of infected or transformed cells, thence the name cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs). Conversely, CD4+ T cells recognize extracellular pathogen-derived peptides, providing antigen-specific
specific “help” to bystander immune cells, such as B cells in antibody production and phagocytes in killing of engulfed pathogens. Alloreactivity occurs because of αβ TCR-mediated recognition of mismatched HLAs or of non-HLA polymorphic peptides presented in the context of matched HLAs, e.g., those derived from H-Y (male-specific histocompatibility antigen). The latter are known as minor histocompatibility antigens (mHag) and play a major role in GVHD and the GVL effect after HLA-matched transplantation.

The adoptive transfer of CTLs specific for important opportunistic viruses in allo-HSCT (CMV, EBV, ADV) has been one of the first manipulated cellular immunotherapies to be tested in humans (Bollard and Heslop 2016) and in some EU countries is now available as an off-the-shelf therapy from HLA-matched donors. Conversely, it has been proposed that naïve T cells, i.e., cells that have never encountered their cognate antigen, may be more alloreactive than memory T cells, i.e., antigen-experienced cells that have persisted after clearing the infection. This concept is at the basis of protocols for the depletion of naïve T cells from the graft as a way to prevent GVHD while retaining a strong GVL effect after HLA-matched transplantation. This is not surprising that during evolution, some immune cell types have evolved with the specific task of immune regulation. T regulatory cells (Tregs) are thymus-derived cells characterized by constitutive expression of the transcription factor FoxP3. Tregs are potent suppressors of alloreactivity and are now being investigated for GVHD management after their ex vivo expansion (Brunstein et al. 2016).

### 8.3 Unconventional T Cells

Unconventional T cells include T cells expressing the γδ TCR, invariant natural killer T cells (iNKT) cells, and mucosal-associated invariant (MAIT) T cells—which will not be treated here—and are an abundant component of the immune system. Although originating from the thymus, they all share lack of MHC-restricted peptide recognition and mainly reside within epithelial tissues. They have a limited TCR repertoire diversity and get activated quickly, bridging innate to adaptive immunity.

1. A subset of γδ T cells (Vγ2Vδ9) are activated by phosphoantigens, non-peptidic metabolites produced by mammalian cells and intracellular pathogens (M. tuberculosis, M. leprae, Listeria species, Plasmodium species) after interacting with intracellular butyrophilin 3A1. Gamma-delta T cells can also recognize stress molecules such as MICA, MICB, and ULBPs through the NK receptor NKG2D. The possibility to expand Vγ2Vδ9 effector T cells in vivo by administering the therapeutic bisphosphonate zoledronate has originated many clinical trials in hematological tumors, also in the context of transplantation (Airoldi et al. 2015).

2. Type I invariant NKT is a distinct population of αβ T cells characterized in humans by the expression of α24-Jα18 preferentially paired to Vβ11. They recognize lipids presented in the context of broadly distributed CD1d (monocytes/macrophages, B cells, epithelial cells). Upon activation, iNKT cells produce immune regulatory cytokines and kill tumor targets. Failure to reconstitute iNKT cells after Allo-HSCT (Rubio et al. 2012) or lower iNKT cells in the graft (Chaidos et al. 2012) has been linked to GVHD and relapse. Alpha-galactosyl ceramide is a marine sponge-derived lipid antigen known to expand iNKT cells in vivo and is currently under investigation in Allo-HSCT (Chen et al. 2017).

### 8.4 NK Cells

Natural killer (NK) cells belong to the innate immune system and provide immediate reactivity against virally infected, as well as tumor targets. NK cytotoxicity is controlled by a balance of several germ-line encoded inhibitory and activating receptors, such as killer immunoglob-
ulin-like receptors (KIRs) and natural cytotoxicity receptors (Vivier et al. 2011). The importance of NK cells in allo-HSCT has surfaced after the demonstration of their pivotal role in preventing leukemia relapse and decreasing GVHD risk after grafting from HLA-haploidentical donors (Ruggeri et al. 2002). Since then, there has been a growing interest in using both autologous and allogeneic NK cells in patients with leukemia or other high-risk hematological tumors, also in the non-transplant setting (Koehl et al. 2016). These trials have uniformly shown safety and potential efficacy of infused NK cells. Nevertheless, they have also documented the emergence of powerful immune escape mechanisms, raising the question on how to improve NK cell-based therapies (Koehl et al. 2018). Various trials are under way in order to investigate ways to achieve better NK cell cytotoxicity and overcome the immunosuppressive tumor microenvironment, including:

1. Combination of novel checkpoint inhibitors with activated NK cells
2. Bi- or tri-specific antibodies for directly binding NK cells to cancer cells
3. Chimeric antigen receptor (CAR)-modified NK cells for direct targeting of cancer cells

The latter strategy is particularly interesting since CAR-NK cells are expected to retain their natural antitumor reactivity, opening for potentially synergistic effects. The first clinical CAR-NK cell studies targeting CD19 and NKG2D ligands have been initiated (ClinGov. No NCT03056339, NCT01974479, NCT00995137, NCT03415100) and will likely be instrumental to demonstrate proof of concept.

### 8.5 Mesenchymal Stromal Cells

Mesenchymal stroma cells (MSCs) are multipotent cells capable of differentiating into cells and tissues of the mesodermal lineage (bone, cartilage, and adipose cells) (Pittenger et al. 1999). Apart from their regenerative properties, MSCs have been discovered to secrete a variety of soluble factors and exosomes with paracrine actions. Instead of focusing on MSC regenerative properties, most clinical studies have investigated their immunomodulatory (often immunosuppressive) properties, as well as their trophic influence on tissue repair, especially in GVHD (Fibbe et al. 2013). Interestingly, subsequent to hematopoietic stem cells, MSCs are the second most frequently used cell source for therapeutic applications. Notwithstanding their widespread use, MSCs are currently the stem cell population with the least defined identity and properties (Hoffmann et al. 2017).

Important studies have demonstrated that the physiological counterpart of ex vivo-expanded MSCs can be both CD146+ adventitial reticular cells in the subendothelial layer of microvessels (Tormin et al. 2011) and CD146- pericytes surrounding large vessels (Corselli et al. 2013). MSC biological functions are also highly debated and conflicting results were reported in vitro and, more importantly, in clinical trials (Fibbe et al. 2013). Considerable lack of consensus exists within the field as to how MSCs exert their multi-pronged effects. This is due to several facts: Firstly, MSCs are isolated from many tissues and by different protocols. Secondly, due to the mode of isolation, these cells present heterogeneous cell populations. Thirdly, protocols for in vitro expansion, including the culture conditions (culture vessels, media, additives, passaging), are different. Fourthly, MSCs have often been reported to survive in vivo only for short time (days). A recent comparison of MSC preparations from eight different centers using BM aspirates as starting material for GMP-guided processes revealed considerable variability between the centers (Liu et al. 2017). Cells from six centers were compared in vivo for bone formation and hematopoiesis support. The quantity of deriving bone was highly variable, and only MSCs from three centers supported hematopoiesis. A critical reappraisal of these cell populations and harmonization of the methods for their isolation and expansion, as well as the development of validated potency assays, is therefore necessary for harnessing their full therapeutic potential.
Key Points

• HSCT rather than a solo play is an orchestral concert, where different cellular players contribute to the overall final result of the symphony.
• Besides obviously HSCs, key contributors are cells of the innate and adaptive immune system. Both have evolved for the key task of self/non-self-discrimination, each however focusing on the recognition of different class of molecules, from proteins to glycolipids.
• The tremendous knowledge in immunobiology acquired in the last few decades has enabled to start exploiting the properties of these cells or ameliorating the outcome of HSCT.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
9.1 Introduction

Immune-mediated rejection of tissue allografts was first described in 1945 by the British immunologist Peter Medawar, followed by the discovery of the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) carrying the histocompatibility genes by Peter Gorer and George Snell in 1948, and of the human leukocyte antigen (HLA) molecules by Jean Dausset, Jon van Rood, and Rose Payne a decade later (Thorsby 2009). The importance of these discoveries was recognized by the Nobel Prices in Physiology and Medicine to Medawar, Snell, and Dausset in 1960 and 1980, respectively. Since then, the MHC has emerged as the single most polymorphic gene locus in eukaryotes, with 17,695 HLA alleles reported to date in the IMGT/HLA database, Release 3.31.0, 2018/01/19 (Robinson et al. 2015). While the main barrier to successful tissue grafting remain the HLA incompatibilities, also non-HLA polymorphisms have been recognized as important players, in particular minor histocompatibility antigens (mHAgs), killer immunoglobulin-like receptors (KIR), and other polymorphic gene systems (Dickinson and Holler 2008; Gam et al. 2017; Heidenreich and Kröger 2017; Spierings 2014).

9.2 The Biology of Histocompatibility

9.2.1 Major Histocompatibility Antigens

The human MHC is located within ~4 Mbp of DNA on the short arm of chromosome 6 (6p21.3) and contains ~260 genes, many of which with immune-related functions (Trowsdale and Knight 2013). The MHC falls into three main regions, class I, II, and III, containing HLA A, B, and C; HLA DR, DQ, and DP; and complement factor as well as tumor necrosis factor genes, respectively. MHC genes are codominantly expressed and inherited following Mendelian rules, with a resulting 25% probability for two siblings to be genotypically HLA identical, i.e., to have inherited the same MHC from both parents. An additional hallmark of the MHC is linkage disequilibrium (LD), i.e., the nonrandom association of alleles at different HLA loci, and relatively high recombination rates of over 1%, also referred to as “crossing over” (Martin et al. 1995).
9.2.2 HLA Class I and II Structure and Function

The classical HLA class I and II molecules are cell surface immunoglobulins (Ig) presenting peptides in their highly polymorphic antigen-binding groove (Madden 1995). HLA class I A, B, and C molecules are heterodimers of a polymorphic α chain of higher molecular weight (MW) than the monomorphic β2 microglobulin (heavy and light chain of 45 kDa and 12 kDa, respectively). The α-chain contains three hypervariable Ig-like domains, two of which form the antigen-binding groove while the third is involved in contacting the CD8 coreceptor on T cells, and the transmembrane region. HLA class I molecules are expressed on all healthy nucleated cells. They present peptides, i.e., protein fragments of mostly intracellular origin generated by proteasomal cleavage and transported to the endoplasmic reticulum via the transporter associated with antigen processing (TAP) (Vyas et al. 2008). Cell surface HLA class I peptide complexes can be recognized by the T cell receptor (TCR) of CD8+ T cells, leading to the activation of cytotoxic and/or cytokine effector functions, or by KIR on natural killer (NK) cells, leading to the inhibition of effector functions. HLA class II DR, DQ, and DP molecules are heterodimers of an α- and a β-chain of similar MW of approximately 30 KDa each, both with a transmembrane part anchored to the cell membrane. Most of the polymorphism is clustered in the β-chain Ig-like domain forming the antigen-binding groove, whose overall structure is similar to that of HLA class I, and the region contacting the CD4 coreceptor on T cells is also located in the β-chain. HLA class II proteins are expressed on professional antigen-presenting cells, as, for example, B cells, macrophages, and dendritic cells. Moreover, HLA class II protein expression on various cell types can be upregulated by proinflammatory cytokines such as IFNγ and TNFα. HLA class II presents peptides generally of extracellular origin generated through degradation of proteins in the phagolysosome (Vyas et al. 2008). Peptide loading onto HLA class II molecules takes place in the dedicated MIIC compartment and is catalyzed by two nonclassical HLA molecules equally encoded in the MHC, HLA DM, and DO. After transport to the cell surface, HLA class II peptide complexes can be recognized by the TCR of CD4+ T cells, leading to the activation of cytokine-mediated helper or regulatory functions. HLA class II receptors on NK cells, analogous to KIR for HLA class I, have not been described to date.

9.2.3 HLA Polymorphism and Tissue Typing

HLA molecules were first detected by serological methods, through the ability of sera from sensitized individuals to agglutinate some but not all leukocytes (hence the term “human leukocyte antigen”) (Thorsby 2009). Until the mid-1990s, serological typing was the main method for tissue typing. With the advent of polymerase chain reaction (PCR) techniques, molecular tissue typing took over and unraveled a far greater degree of HLA allelic polymorphism than previously appreciated (Erlich 2012). HLA nucleotide polymorphism is clustered in so-called hypervariable regions (HvR) mainly in exons 2, 3, and 4 of HLA class I and exons 2 and 3 of HLA class II, encoding the functional antigen-binding groove and CD4/CD8 coreceptor-binding regions. Therefore, PCR-based molecular typing focused on these exons, leading to different levels of typing resolution (Table 9.1). With the advent of next-generation sequencing (NGS) for tissue typing purposes (Gabriel et al. 2014), allelic or at least high-resolution typing can be achieved in most cases. Moreover, NGS enables high-throughput sequencing of the entire HLA coding and noncoding regions, unraveling an additional layer of polymorphism with hundreds of new alleles reported to the IMGT/HLA database every month.

9.2.4 T Cell Alloreactivity

The ability of T cells to specifically recognize non-self, allogeneic tissues is called T cell
alloreactivity. It can be either direct or indirect. Direct T cell alloreactivity is targeted to intact mismatched HLA peptide complexes expressed on the cell surface of allogeneic cells and can be mediated by both naïve and memory T cells (Archbold et al. 2008). Indirect T cell alloreactivity refers to the recognition of peptides derived by proteasomal cleavage from mismatched HLA and presented in the antigen-binding groove of self HLA molecules (Gokmen et al. 2008). These peptides are also referred to as Predicted Indirectly ReCognizable HLA Epitopes (PIRCHE, see Sect. 9.3.3) (Geneugelijken and Spierings 2018). A special form of indirect T cell alloreactivity is the recognition of foreign peptides not deriving from mismatched HLA but from any other expressed polymorphic gene and presented by self HLA molecules. These peptides are referred to as minor histocompatibility antigens (mHAg) (Spierings 2014). mHAg are the only targets of T cell alloreactivity in HLA-matched hematopoietic cell transplantation (HSCT) and are mainly recognized by naïve T cells. T cell alloreactivity is the main mediator of both the major benefit and the major toxicity of allogeneic HSCT, represented by immune control of residual malignant disease (graft versus leukemia; GvL) and immune attack of healthy tissues (graft versus host disease; GvHD), respectively.

### 9.3 HLA Matching in Allogeneic HSCT

#### 9.3.1 Donor Types

In HLA identical sibling HSCT, patient and donor have inherited the same parental MHCs, an event occurring with a likelihood of 25% according to Mendelian rules. Genotypic HLA identity should be confirmed by family studies for all six HLA loci (to exclude recombination). Haploidentical donors share only one MHC haplotype while the other haplotype is different. These donors are available for more than 90% of patients and can be found in parents or offsprings (100% likelihood), siblings (50% likelihood), as well as the extended family. Also HLA
haploidentity should be confirmed by family studies wherever possible. Unrelated donors (UD) can be found among over 30 million volunteers enrolled in the worldwide registries or from over 700,000 banked cord blood units. The probability to find a volunteer UD matched for 8/8 HLA A, B, C, and DRB1 alleles varies according to the ethnic group of the patient between 30% and over 90% (Gragert et al. 2014). For UD HSCT, HLA identity should be confirmed at the highest resolution level possible (allelic, high, or intermediate resolution, Table 9.1), to be agreed between the transplant center and the tissue typing laboratory.

9.3.2 Clinical Impact of HLA Mismatches

The clinical relevance of histocompatibility for the outcome of HSCT is significantly influenced by different patient-, donor-, and transplant-related factors (Table 9.2). The most striking example for the impact of these confounding factors is the advent of haploidentical HSCT, in which successful transplantation across an entire mismatched haplotype was rendered possible by extensive T cell depletion of the graft and, more recently, by innovative schemes of pharmacological GvHD prophylaxis (Slade et al. 2017). On the other hand, haploidentical HSCT has been associated with a particular form of immune escape relapse characterized by the selective genomic loss of the mismatched HLA haplotype, with important implications for treatment strategies (Vago et al. 2012). In UD HSCT, high-resolution matching for 8/8 HLA A, B, C, and DRB1 alleles has been shown to be associated with the best clinical outcomes, with an approximately 10% decrease in survival probabilities for every (antigenic or allelic) HLA mismatch at these four loci (Lee et al. 2007). On the other hand, the impact of HLA disparity was shown to be significantly reduced by advanced disease status at transplant, again demonstrating the inextricable link between HLA mismatches and confounding factors. The notion that there will be no “one-size-fits-all” solution to the question on the impact of histocompatibility in HSCT has to be taken into account when critically interpreting studies in this complex field.

9.3.3 Models of High-Risk/Nonpermissive HLA Mismatches

HLA mismatches that are clinically less well tolerated than others are referred to as high risk or nonpermissive. This is based on the observation that limited T cell alloreactivity is generally sufficient for the beneficial effect of GvL without inducing clinically uncontrollable GvHD, while intolerable toxicity can be induced by excessive T cell alloreactivity leading to severe treatment refractory GvHD. Therefore, high-risk or nonpermissive HLA mismatches are those associated with excessive T cell alloreactivity compared to their low-risk or permissive counterparts. Different models have been developed over the past years for their identification (Table 9.3). They rely on the presence of shared or nonshared T cell epitope (TCE) groups between mismatched HLA DPB1 alleles (Fleischhauer and Shaw 2017), genetically controlled expression levels of mismatched HLA C or DPB1 alleles in the patient (Petersdorf et al. 2014, 2015), specific high-risk HLA C and DPB1 allele mismatch combinations identified by retrospective statistical association between mismatch status and clinical outcome (Fernandez-Vina et al. 2014; Kawase et al. 2009), and the total number of PIRCHEI (presented by HLA class I) and PIRCHEII (presented by HLA class II) as a measure of the potential level of indirect alloreactivity after transplantation (Geneugelijk and

---

Table 9.2 Confounding factors of HLA/non-HLA immunogenetics and HSCT outcome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Confounding factor</th>
<th>Patient related</th>
<th>Donor related</th>
<th>Transplant related</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age, sex, ABO, CMV serostatus, diagnosis, disease status</td>
<td>Age, sex, ABO, CMV serostatus</td>
<td>Conditioning, GvHD prophylaxis, stem cell source, and composition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The impact of HLA matching is additionally confounded by non-HLA immunogenetic factors and vice versa*
It should be noted that HLA DPB1 mismatches are present in over 80% of 8/8 matched UD HSCT, and models for high-risk or nonpermissive mismatches at this locus are therefore of particular practical relevance. The PIRCHE model is attractive since it is potentially applicable to any HLA-mismatched donor transplantation including <8/8 matched UD and haploidentical HSCT; on the other hand, clinical evidence for its validity in HSCT has so far been obtained only on relatively limited transplant cohorts. As stated above (Sect. 9.3.2), it is crucial that any of these or future models be tested in independent cohorts of sufficient statistical size and that they be continuously revalidated as clinical transplant practice and hence potential confounding factors evolve.

### 9.3.4 Guidelines for UD Selection by Histocompatibility

Consensus guidelines for donor selection have been established in many countries both in Europe and overseas, through the collaboration between donor registries and national immunogenetic societies. The general recommendation is the selection of an 8/8 HLA A, B, C, and DR (in Europe often 10/10, i.e., including the HLA DQ locus) matched UD if an HLA identical sibling is not available, followed by a 7/8 (or 9/10) UD or a haploidentical donor. Avoidance of high-risk or nonpermissive HLA mismatches according to any of the models outlined in Table 9.3 is usually regarded as optional, with particular emphasis on the avoidance of nonpermissive HLA DPB1 TCE mismatches since the TCE model is the only one to have been validated in different independent clinical studies to date (Fleischhauer and Shaw 2017). Also the inclusion of some of the non-HLA immunogenetic factors outlined in Sect. 9.4 can be considered, in particular with regard to donor KIR typing in haploidentical HSCT (Heidenreich and Kröger 2017).

### Table 9.3 Models of high-risk/nonpermissive HLA mismatches

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>HLA locus, donor type, and clinical association</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T cell epitope (TCE) groups</td>
<td>HLA-DPB1; 8/8 UD; mortality and acute GvHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression levels</td>
<td>HLA C and DPB1; 7–8/8 UD; acute GvHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mismatch combinations</td>
<td>HLA C and DPB1; 7–8/8 UD; mortality, acute GvHD and relapse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIRCHE</td>
<td>HLA C and DPB1; 8/8 UD; acute GvHD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* TCE groups: HLA DPB1 mismatches involving alleles from the same (permissive) or different (nonpermissive) TCE groups (Fleischhauer and Shaw 2017)

* Expression levels: HLA C or DPB1 mismatches involving a high-expression allele in the patient, as predicted by noncoding single nucleotide expression polymorphisms (Petersdorf et al. 2014, 2015)

* Mismatch combinations: high-risk allele mismatches defined by statistical associations (Fernandez-Vina et al. 2014; Kawase et al. 2009)

* PIRCHE, predicted indirectly recognizable HLA epitope numbers as predicted by online tools (Geneugelijk and Spierings 2018)
9.4 Non-HLA Immunogenetic Factors

9.4.1 Overview

HLA alleles are the most but not the only polymorphic genes in humans. Overall, interindividual gene variability by single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) or copy-number variation (CNV) affects 0.5% of the $3 \times 10^9$ bp in the human genome. Although most of these polymorphisms are probably nonfunctional, some of them can give rise to polymorphic proteins that can be mHAg as described in Sect. 9.2.2, affect the expression of different genes including those encoding immunologically active cytokines, or act themselves as immune ligands or receptors relevant to transplantation biology. Among the latter, the KIR gene locus on the long arm of human chromosome 19 displays considerable polymorphism, with 907 alleles reported to the IPD/KIR database, Release 2.7.0, July 2017 (Robinson et al. 2005). Similar to high-risk or nonpermissive HLA mismatches, the role of non-HLA polymorphism in allo-HSCT is still incompletely defined. It is impossible to give a comprehensive overview of all non-HLA factors under study, and the list of factors listed in Table 9.4 and discussed in Sect. 9.4.2 is only a selection based on existing evidence for their clinical impact in certain transplant settings.

9.4.2 Clinical Impact of Non-HLA Immunogenetic Factors

mHAg are the only targets of T cell alloreactivity in HLA identical HSCT (see Sect. 9.2.2) and as such play an important role for both GvHD and GvL (Spierings 2014). This dual function is related to their different modes of tissue and cell expression, i.e., hematopoietic system restricted or broad. Broadly expressed mHAg can cause both GvHD and GvL, and donor-recipient matching for these mHAg is therefore desirable yet virtually impossible due to their large number, with many of them probably currently undefined. In contrast, mHAg restricted to hematopoietic cells are more prone to induce selective GvL. The latter are being explored as targets for HSCT-based immunotherapy of hematological malignancies, in which mHAg-specific responses are specifically enhanced to promote GvL.

KIR are predominantly expressed by NK cells and recognize certain HLA class I specificities on target cells. KIR have either long inhibitory or short activating cytoplasmic domains and are stochastically coexpressed on NK cells. The eventual outcome of KIR interaction (or lack thereof) with its HLA class I ligand (inhibition or activation) is a complex process that depends on the relative number of inhibitory or activatory KIR.

Table 9.4 Non-HLA immunogenetic factors and HSCT outcome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Non-HLA factor</th>
<th>Clinical outcome association</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mHAg$^a$</td>
<td>GvHD and relapse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KIR$^b$</td>
<td>Relapse and mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIC$^c$</td>
<td>GvHD, relapse, and transplant-related mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others$^d$</td>
<td>GvHD and transplant-related mortality</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^a$Minor histocompatibility antigens (Spierings 2014)
$^b$Killer Ig-like receptors (Heidenreich and Kröger 2017; Shaffer and Hsu 2016)
$^c$MHC class I-related chain (Isernhagen et al. 2016)
$^d$Cytokine, chemokine, and immune response gene polymorphisms including tumor necrosis factor, interleukin (IL)10, the IL1 gene family, IL2, IL6, interferon γ, tumor growth factor β and their receptors, NOD-like receptors (NOD2/CARD15), toll-like receptors, micro-RNAs (Dickinson and Holler 2008; Gam et al. 2017; Chen and Zeiser 2018)
and on the state of education of the NK cell. Educated NK cells from individuals expressing the cognate HLA ligand are strongly reactive against cells missing that ligand. This “missing self” reactivity is at the basis for the potent GvL effect attributed to NK cells in the setting of HLA-mismatched transplantation, in particular haploidentical HSCT (Heidenreich and Kröger 2017). Depending on the donor KIR gene asset, a role for NK cell-mediated GvL has also been postulated in the HLA-matched setting (Shaffer and Hsu 2016). Based on all this evidence, KIR typing is increasingly being adopted as an additional criterion for donor selection.

MHC class I chain-related (MIC) A and B are nonclassical MHC class I genes. MICA encodes a ligand for NKG2D, an activating NK receptor. The SNP Val/Met at position 129 of the MICA protein results in isoforms with high (Met) and low affinities (Val) for NKG2D. Consequently, various studies suggest a role for this SNP in SCT outcome, including GvHD, relapse and survival (Isernhagen et al. 2016).

Immune response gene polymorphisms have also been reported to contribute to the risks associated with HSCT (Dickinson and Holler 2008; Gam et al. 2017; Chen and Zeiser 2018). They often comprise SNPs in cytokine or chemokine-coding genes or their regulatory elements such as micro-RNAs (miRNAs). These variations in both the donor and the recipient can have a significant impact on transplant outcome and the development of GvHD; however, their relative role in different transplant settings is not yet fully elucidated.

Key Points

- Non-HLA immunogenetic factors that have been associated with clinical outcome of HSCT include polymorphic mHAg, KIR, MIC, and immune response genes.
- Hematopoietic tissue-specific mHAg are being exploited for specific cellular immunotherapy of hematologic malignancies.

- Polymorphic KIR are responsible for “missing self” recognition by alloreactive NK cells mediating selective GvL after HSCT, and KIR genotyping is therefore increasingly included into donor selection algorithms.

References


10.1 Introduction/Background

The main mechanisms of action resulting in a long-term cure, but also in many life-threatening side effects after HSCT, are mediated by the rapidly reconstituting immune repertoire, which depends on the conditioning regimen, cell dose and graft composition, as well as the type of immune suppression. However, knowledge of these mechanisms is limited, due to many variations in clinical programs, including the specific type of transplantation procedure, as well as a lack of standardized immune monitoring after HSCT.

To date, only the process of donor selection has been significantly impacted by new biological insights, but little attention has been given to the design of the cell product in terms of numbers and composition, to avoid variations between different patients. In addition, high variations between patients in the clearance of agents used during the conditioning are rarely investigated. Given the dearth of prospective clinical studies addressing these important concepts, and the fact that such studies will most likely never be performed, due to the lack of interest from pharmaceutical companies, we aim to initiate a consensus discussion. Our goal is to harmonize the intervention HSCT by exploring how individual differences between patients and overall transplantation strategies impact the final effector mechanisms of HSCT, namely, a timely and well-balanced immune reconstitution.

10.2 Impact of Conditioning Regimens on Immune Reconstitution and Outcomes: Pharmacokinetics-Pharmacodynamics (PK-PD), Individualized Dosing

Various groups have recently demonstrated that agents administered as part of the conditioning regimen, as well as after HSCT, will influence both short-term and long-term immune reconstitution (Soiffer and Chen 2017; Admiraal et al. 2015). These agents may, therefore, have an unknown effect on also other cell-based therapeutics. In the context of HSCT, “predictable” immune reconstitution is important when studying maintenance therapies with novel drugs, DLI,
and advanced cell therapy interventions. Therefore, it is essential to understand the impact of the agents used on the immune reconstitution. Comprehensive pharmacokinetic (PK) and pharmacodynamic (PD) information can help to illuminate the effects that exposure of agents in the conditioning have on immune reconstitution and subsequent outcomes (e.g., GvHD, relapse and non-relapse mortality).

The recent discovery that the pharmacokinetics of serotherapy (e.g., ATG and ATLG) is highly dependent on receptor load (represented by absolute lymphocyte count; ALC) before the first dosing is one example. In adults, receptor load was the only predictor for ATG clearance, while in pediatric patients (<40 kg), weight also influenced clearance. While prospective validation trials of novel ATG nomograms currently include patients linked to defined transplantation regimens, initial recommendations for dosing serotherapy on lymphocyte count rather than body weight seem to be reasonable, e.g., within the context of T cell-replete reduced conditioning regimens (Admiraal et al. 2015) (Table 10.1). From a post hoc analysis of a recent randomized controlled trial allowing three different types of regimens, we learned that different regimens had the reverse effects of ATLG on the outcomes, resulting in overlapping curves for the primary endpoint, chronic-GvHD-free, leukemia-free survival (Soiffer et al. 2017).

Serotherapy is not the only agent in a conditioning regimen with variable PK that can have a dramatic impact on the chances for survival. In a recent retrospective cohort analysis that included more than 650 pediatric and young adult patients, cumulative exposure to BU was found to influence outcomes (Bartelink et al. 2016). The optimal BU exposure, for the main outcome of EFS, was found to be independent of indication, combination (BU/FLU, BU/CY, or BU/CY/MEL), age, and donor source. BU/FLU within the optimal BU exposure (80–100 mg*h/L) was associated with the highest survival chances and lowest toxicity compared to other combinations. More recently, fludarabine exposure was also found to influence survival (in an ATG-FLU/BU: Boelens et al. 2018). These studies further illustrate that pharmacokinetic variations in individuals can have significant effects on survival. Historically, and still in daily practice, a variety of conditioning regimens are used, which complicates comparisons of HSCT outcomes across different centers and even within trials.

### Table 10.1 Suggested novel ATG dosing nomograms based on PK-PD modeling for (non-)myelo-ablative settings in pediatrics and adults

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Dosing on</th>
<th>Target AUC after HSCT (AU*d/mL) and donor source</th>
<th>Starting day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pediatrics; MAC Admiraal et al. (2015)</td>
<td>Weight ALC Cell source</td>
<td>&lt;20 for cord blood</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adults: Non-MAC Admiraal et al. (2017)</td>
<td>ALC</td>
<td>60–90 for peripherally mobilized stem cells</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ALC** absolute lymphocyte count, **AUC** area under the curve

*Level C evidence (retrospective studies)*

10.3 **Graft Composition as an Additional Predictor for Immune Reconstitution and Clinical Outcomes**

Although transplant physicians carefully monitor the levels of many drugs, such as CSA or antibiotics, an additional opportunity to further harmonize the transplantation procedure arises from the surprising clinical observation that substantial cell dose variations are currently accepted across patients. The hesitation to monitor cell numbers in the graft or after HSCT, and to act on them, is of course partially driven by the confusing magnitude of immunological subsets, the narrow nature of many immunological programs with a lack of consensus on immune monitoring, and also rather limited immunological education across the majority of transplant physicians. However, currently available retrospective and prospective studies can provide guidance. A retrospective EBMT study indicated that T cell numbers vary frequently between 50 and
885 × 10^6/kg and the highest quartile in CD34+ cells, as well as T cells associate with an inferior clinical outcome (5). As we cannot expect in the future randomized trials addressing the impact of different graft compositions in T cell-replete transplantations on clinical outcomes, avoiding higher numbers of CD34 and T cells within the highest quartile might be reasonable (Czerw et al. 2016). Higher numbers of NKT cells (Malard et al. 2016) and γδT cells (Perko et al. 2015) in the graft have been reported to associate with favorable immune reconstitution, and a positive clinical outcome, most likely due to their impact on controlling GVHD (Du et al. 2017) and acting on CMV, as well as on leukemia (Scheper et al. 2013; de Witte et al. 2018). However, these variables are more difficult to control in daily clinical practice. Direct ex vivo graft engineering provides an elegant solution to further control immune subsets in the graft and the consecutive immune reconstitution. It also allows for the standardization of cell numbers, as well as subsets per patient, e.g., selecting CD34-positive stem cells alone has been reported to associate with less chronic GVHD, while the graft versus leukemia effect is maintained (Pasquini et al. 2012). As the next generation of graft engineering, depletion of αβT cells has been reported to associate with lower frequencies of infection and very low GVHD rates (Locatelli et al. 2017).

4. What is the functional response of these cells to additional immunotherapeutic or drug interventions after transplantation (Table 10.1)?

These questions are particularly important in an era when post-HSCT pharmaceutical maintenance interventions and DLI or the administration of other ATMPs (advanced therapy medicinal products) have become daily practice for many different disease categories (Soiffer and Chen 2017).

Flow cytometry is often available for comprehensive immune phenotyping, usually in accredited laboratories within transplant centers. Markers identifying the most common leukocyte subsets are broadly used and can therefore be considered as a “standard” panel: CD45 (lymphocytes), CD3 (T cells), CD19 (B cells), αβTCR, γδTCR, and CD16/CD56 (NK) cells. In some centers/studies, this panel has been extended to identify the differentiation and activation state of subsets of T (T-helper, regulatory T cells), B, and NK(T) cells, as well as cells from the myeloid lineage (monocytes, dendritic cell subsets). This knowledge is important because the success of cell-based immunotherapies, as well as agents modulating the immune system after transplantation, will significantly depend on the presence or absence of different immune subsets. Mastering the diversity might allow for the definition of subpopulations who would benefit from checkpoint-inhibitor treatment after HSCT, as well as characterize patients who would be at high risk for GVHD, while currently this intervention is considered to be very toxic (Davids et al. 2016). Also, other subsets may be suitable as biomarkers to predict clinical efficacy. Given the potential impact of sorafenib on post-HSCT outcomes through the induction of IL15 (Mathew et al. 2018), additional immune subsets associating with improved leukemia control need to be identified. In another study, high baseline frequencies of peripheral blood dendritic cells (DC) correlated with a clinical response to high-dose IL-2 (Finkelstein et al. 2010). These data emphasize the importance of DC in endogenous and therapy-induced antitumor immunity and arguably warrant the incorporation of DC markers in immune-monitoring panels.

## 10.4 Immune Monitoring

### 10.4.1 Immune Cell Phenotyping

The most important questions that arise when monitoring immune therapeutic interventions are:

1. How many cells within each leukocyte subset are present in patients at different stages of disease, before immune intervention?
2. What is the immune composition of the graft?
3. Which immune subsets are reconstituting at what points in time?
Taken together, a variety of specialized subsets may have potential as predictive markers for clinical efficacy, but they require more sophisticated staining protocols, making more cumbersome staining techniques less broadly applicable for harmonized panels across centers or in multicenter clinical trials. Furthermore, it is important to note that trials using whole blood assays may produce different percentages of cell subsets when compared with studies using PBMCs. The same is true when comparing freshly isolated PBMCs with biobanked material, which has been subjected to freeze/thaw procedures that affect expression levels of various markers. Even when the same samples are collected, variations can be introduced by the selection of antibody clones, combination of clones and fluorochromes, and the gating strategies. In sum, minimizing the variability in sample handling and the pre-analysis phase is critical for standardization.

10.4.2 Immune Monitoring: Secretome Analyses

Measuring the production of cytokines, chemokines, and growth factors and their profiles (i.e., the secretome) represents an integral part of immunomonitoring during immunotherapeutic treatments. These biomarkers may distinguish diverse disease/response patterns, identify surrogate markers of efficacy, and provide additional insight into the therapeutic mode of action. Peripheral blood is often the only source for protein analysis, which may lack the sensitivity to reflect local responses in affected tissues. As examples, proteins, such as interleukin-6, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), hepatocyte growth factor (HGF), ST2 (suppressor of tumorigenicity), and soluble IL-2a, have been suggested as potential biomarkers for GvHD, whereas increased levels of TNF-a and IL-6 are associated with robust immune responses to viral reactivation (de Koning et al. 2016).

The most commonly used methods to identify these markers include antibody-based ELISA or multiplex platforms, such as protein microarrays, liquid chromatography-mass spectrometry (LC-MS), electro-chemiluminescence, and bead-based multiplex immunoassays (MIA). Again, different technologies and reagents (e.g., antibodies and recombinants for standard curves) may lead to different concentrations and dramatic variability in results, depending on how the preanalytic samples are handled (e.g., differences in processing and storage, including duration of storage). Cytokine levels differ considerably between serum and plasma samples obtained from the same donor, due to release of platelet-associated molecules into serum. Moreover, the type of anticoagulant used in plasma isolation and time- and/or temperature-sensitive changes need to be considered (Keustermans et al. 2013). These phenomena underscore the need for extensive documentation with respect to all biomarker analysis before any conclusions can be made when comparing patient cohorts treated at multiple sites.

10.5 Summary

The failure or success of HSCT is significantly impacted by the patient’s immune status. However, only a minority of HSCT programs systematically consider individualized drug monitoring during conditioning, graft design, and immune monitoring as key for patient surveillance, in order to maximally control and capture essential details of the intervention HSCT. Therefore, guidelines are needed to further harmonize the procedure HSCT as well as standardized immune monitoring to allow for distillation of key features for success and failure. First, careful recommendations for individualized drug dosing as well as graft compositions can be made based on available data sets. However, it will be key to register within the new cellular therapy registry of EBMT additional details of drug dosages, graft compositions, as well as immune reconstitution, to capture clinical variations in programs, as well as defined immune reconstitutions. This will enable a retrospective
increase in insight into daily clinical practice, and its impact on immune reconstitution, as well as clinical outcome. Also, clinical trials should adopt such consensus measurements. Nevertheless, the markers and phenotypes studied in one setting may not be considered relevant in another, supporting the definition of a set of general recommended protocols and a set of add-on trial-specific parameters (Table 10.2). A consensus panel is currently prepared by the cellular therapy and immunobiology working party (CTIWP) of EBMT (Greco et al. 2018). A harmonization procedure to achieve a more balanced immune reconstitution might have a more profound impact on patient survival than any other novel maintenance therapy (Admiraal et al. 2017; Boelens et al. 2018) and allow for a better success rate for novel drugs tested as maintenance therapy.

Table 10.2  Panels under consideration in the panel discussion of the CTIWP (Greco et al. 2018)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Graft composition</th>
<th>General</th>
<th>Advanced</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Intracellular cytokines after PMA/ionomycin stimulation Specific TCR by multimer approach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cell phenotyping pre- and post transplantation</td>
<td>αβ T, γδ T, Treg, B, NK/NKT DC/mono</td>
<td>αβ TCR, CD45RO/RA, CD3, CD4, CD8, CD27, γδ TCR, CD45RO/RA, CD3, CD27, CD45, CD4, CD25, CD127, FoxP3, CD45, CD19, CD38, CD27, IgM/G/D, CD21, CD45, CD3, CD56, TCRα24/β11) CD11c, HLA-DR, CD14, CD16, CD1c, CD141, CD303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Intracellular cytokines after PMA/ionomycin stimulation Specific TCR by multimer approach αβ TCR and γδ TCR repertoire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretome</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiplex panel (e.g., IL-7, ST2, TNF-a, IL-6, HGF, IL-2R, IL-8, GM-CSF, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cell function</td>
<td></td>
<td>NK cell lyses T cell proliferation upon antigens and mitogens B cell maturation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PK</td>
<td>BU, FLU, ATG, Campath (if part of conditioning)</td>
<td>Trial drug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRD</td>
<td>qPCR (targets expressed, flow cytometry)</td>
<td>Next-generation sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viral load</td>
<td>CMV, EBV, HV6, adenovirus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*General parameters that could be included in harmonized immune-monitoring protocols across most studies/centers and advanced parameters that may be of great value in specific studies and that can only be performed in specialized immunology labs or analyzed in a central laboratory

Key Points
- The failure or success of HCT is significantly impacted by the patient’s immune status.
- Harmonizing individualized drug monitoring during conditioning, graft design, and immune monitoring is key for patient surveillance and needs to be registered within the new cellular therapy registry of EBMT.
- A harmonization procedure to achieve a more balanced immune reconstitution might have a more profound impact on patient survival than any other novel maintenance therapy and allow for a better success rate for novel drugs tested as maintenance therapy.
References


Part III

Methodology and Clinical Aspects

Topic leaders: Arnon Nagler and Nicolaus Kröger
11. Evaluation of Candidates and Risk Factors for HSCT

Enric Carreras

11.1.1 Introduction

The evaluation of candidates and the analysis of individual risk factors for HSCT permit to establish four fundamental aspects:

1. The HSCT indication
2. To inform the patient properly
3. To choose the best donor, conditioning, and post-HSCT IS
4. To evaluate the results of the transplant in large series

11.1.2 Candidates’ Evaluation Work Flow

11.1.2.1 First Visit

The most relevant aspects to take into account in this first visit are:

- Medical history (past and present) and physical examination (see Sect. 11.1.2.4).
- Review of diagnostic tests (in referred patients).
- Reevaluate HLA typing of patient and potential donors (if allo-HSCT).
- Preliminary information on:
  - Therapeutic options and results
  - HSCT procedure
  - Possible complications and side effects (see specific chapters in Part V)
- Schedule reevaluation of the current status of the disease (see Sect. 11.1.3).
- Schedule visits with radiation therapist (if TBI), dentist, gynecologist, blood bank (list of blood/platelet donors), HSCT unit supervisor nurse, etc.
- Signature of the informed consent for HSCT and for procurement of HSC (if auto-HSCT).

11.1.2.2 Visit Preharvesting (Auto-HSCT)

- Assess the results of complementary explorations.
- Complete information on the procedure.
• If PBSC, assess the status of venous accesses. Program CVC (if necessary) and mobilization schedule.
• If BM: preanesthetic visit.
• Program manipulation of HSCT (if applicable) and/or cryopreservation.

11.1.2.3 Last Visit Before Admission
• Final and complete patient information (see Sect. 11.1.2.5).
• Evaluate reevaluation studies performed (see Sect. 11.1.3).
• Schedule admission and conditioning treatment.
• If necessary, program CVC placement.
• If allo-HSCT: confirm that the donor’s evaluation is correct and there are no contraindications for donation (see Chap. 12).
• If auto-HSCT: confirm that the cryopreserved cellularity is correct.
• Submit donor and recipient information to the blood bank (group, CMV serology, previous transfusions, etc.).
• If TBI: confirm that the dosimetry has been carried out and the RT has been programmed.
• Confirm storage of patient and donor samples for serotheque and cellular library.

11.1.2.4 Medical History
Collect information on:
Medical background; childhood illnesses and vaccines; allergies and adverse drug reactions; surgical interventions (previous anesthesia); medications not related to the basic process; previous transfusion history, family tree, and family history valuable; in women, menarche/ menopause, pregnancy and childbirth, contraceptive methods, date last rule, and gynecological checkups
Travel to malaria, trypanosomiasis, and HTLV-I/II endemic areas
Previous relevant infections
Data about the current illness:
• Start date and initial symptomatology
• Diagnostic methodology used (staging)
• Chemotherapy and radiotherapy treatments (doses and dates)
• Complications from such treatments
• Result of these treatments
• Recurrences and their treatment
• Transfusions received
• Current state of the disease
Social aspects
• Smoking, alcoholism, and other drug use
• Sexual habits
• Availability of accommodation close to the center and means of transport
• Support family members
• Ethnic, cultural, and intellectual aspects

11.1.2.5 Information to Provide
(See Detailed Information in Counseling Section)
Ask the patient (privately) which escorts he or she wishes to have present in this session. For adolescents follow the rules of each country respecting the right of information. Transmit as much information as possible in writing. She/he must be informed about:
• Most frequent early and late complications (see specific chapters in Parts V and VI) including graft failure, GI complications, alopecia, SOS/VOD, acute GVHD, early infections, chronic GVHD, late infections, relapse of the disease, infertility, endocrine complications, neoplasms, and other secondary.
• Treat specifically serious complications (ICU admissions) and possibility of death. Inform about the advance directive registry. Agreeing with the patient on an interlocutor in case at some point they may not be able to make decisions.
• Estimated duration of admission, approximate day of admission.
• Most frequent complications on discharge, outpatient follow-up, likelihood of readmission, and need for caregivers at discharge.

11.1.3 Complementary Explorations
All the following studies must be performed within 30 days prior to the HSCT except the assessment of baseline disease status (7–15 days) and the pregnancy test (7 days):
• CBC and basic coagulation; complete biochemistry (including ferritin); blood type and
Rh/irregular antibodies; dosage of Igs; serology CMV, EBV, VHS, VVZ, toxoplasma, syphilis, HBsAg, HBeAb, and anti-HBsAb (HTLV-I/II, and Chagas disease according to the patient’s origin); NAT for HCV, HBV, and HIV; pregnancy test

- Chest x-ray; respiratory function tests (including FEV1 and DLCO); electrocardiogram; echocardiogram or isotopic ventriculography (depending on previous treatment)
- Reevaluation of the disease (MRD) (see specific chapters in part IX)
- Dental evaluation; gynecological evaluation; psychological/psychiatric evaluation
- Nutritional assessment
- HLA typing (recheck) (see Chap. 9)

### 11.1.4 Risk Assessment

#### 11.1.4.1 Individual Risk Factors

There are a group of variables that have a prognostic value in all predictive models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variables</th>
<th>High risk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>Older. Do not use as a single criterion. Relative importance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General condition</td>
<td>Karnofsky index &lt;80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disease</td>
<td>Not in remission. See specific chapters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of donor</td>
<td>Others than HLA-identical siblings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLA compatibility</td>
<td>Any HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C, and DRB1 difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMV serology</td>
<td>Different serology than the donor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donor</td>
<td>Age &gt;35–40 years For male recipient, female donor (especially if multiparous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval diagnosis-HSCT</td>
<td>Prolonged (relevant in CML and SAA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comorbidities</td>
<td>See HCT-CI model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron overload</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Experience of the center</td>
<td>Non-JACIE/FACT accredited centers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.1.4.2 Predictive Models

#### Disease Risk Index (DRI) (Armand et al. 2012, 2014)

Prognostic index based in the disease and its status at HSCT. It doesn’t take into account factors as age or comorbidities. This score index classifies the disease in four prognostic groups and anticipates overall survival, progression-free survival, cumulative incidence of relapse, and cumulative incidence of non-relapse mortality (see Table 11.1).

#### EBMT Risk Score (Gratwohl et al. 1998, 2009)

This predictive score, validated with 56,505 patients, permits to predict approximately the 5-year probability of OS and the TRM for the main diseases (see Tables 11.2, 11.3, and 11.4).

EBMT risk score is also useful to predict OS and TRM in patients receiving a second HSCT (Rezvani et al. 2012) and in those receiving a TCD HSCT (Lodewyck et al. 2011).

Some authors have introduced modifications in this risk score (including the concept of disease stage) to improve its predictivity (Terwey et al. 2010; Hemmati et al. 2011). Similarly, it has been associated with the HCT-CI (Barba et al. 2014).

This score has been validated by many groups and for many diseases (AML, ALL, PMF, CLL, and CML, among others).

### Table 11.1 Disease risk index (Armand 2012, 2014)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk</th>
<th>Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>AML with favorable cyt., CLL, CML, indolent B-cell NHL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>AML intermediate cyt., MDS intermediate cyt., myeloproliferative neoplasms, MM, HL, DLBCL/transformed indolent B-NHL, MCL, T-cell lymphoma nodal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>AML adverse cyt., MDS adverse cyt., T-cell lymphoma extranodal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease risk</th>
<th>Stage risk</th>
<th>Overall risk</th>
<th>OS at 4 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low Low</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>64% (56–70%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low Intermediate</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>46% (42–50%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>26% (21–31%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High High</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Very high</td>
<td>6 (0–21%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adapted from Armand (2012). Cyt. cytogenetics
Table 11.2 EBMT risk score (Gratwohl 2009)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variables</th>
<th>Value of variables</th>
<th>Points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>&lt;20 years</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20–40 years</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;40 years</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disease status^a</td>
<td>Early</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval diagnosis-HSCT^b</td>
<td>&lt;12 months</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥12 months</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donor</td>
<td>HLA-identical sibling</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unrelated donor</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>donor – recipient</td>
<td>Female to male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Other combinations</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adapted from Gratwohl (2009)
\^aDo not apply in patients with SAA. Early = AL in CR1; MDS in CR1 or untreated; CML in 1st chronic phase; NHL/MM untreated or in CR1. Intermediate = AL in CR2; CML in other status than accelerated phase or blastic phase; MDS in CR2 or in PR; NHL/MM in CR2, PR, or stable dis. Late = AL in other stages; CML in blastic crisis; MDS in all other stages; NHL/MM in all other stages
\^bDo not apply to patients in CR1

Table 11.3 Probability (%) of TRM at 5 years applying the EBMT risk score

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Points</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6–7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AML</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CML</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDS</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHL</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Extracted from Gratwohl (2009)

Table 11.4 Probability (%) of OS at 5 years applying the EBMT risk score

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Points</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6–7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AML</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CML</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDS</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHL</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Extracted from Gratwohl (2009)

HCT-Comorbidity Index (HCT-CI) (Sorror et al. 2005)
Developed in Seattle in 2005. It is an adaptation to the HSCT of the classical Charlson Comorbidity Index (CCI). Validated in several cohorts and widely used. The score analyzes 17 comorbidities as well as their degree (see Table 11.5).

Given the impact of age on outcomes, the authors modified the model (Sorror et al. 2014), including a 1-point score for patients aged 40. This modification significantly improved the predictive capacity of the model. Consequently, the patients could be classified in three different risk groups (0 points, low risk; 1–2 points, intermediate risk; 3 or more, high risk) that clearly correlated with 2-year NRM.

Other authors re-stratified the HCT-CI index (flexible HCT-CI) as low risk, 0–3 points; intermediate risk, 4–5 points; and high risk, >5 points, being this classification a better predictor for NRM. In RIC setting, the 100-day and 2-year NRM incidence in these risk categories was 4%, 16%, and 29% and 19%, 33%, and 40%, respectively. They do find this predictive NRM value using neither the original HCT-CI nor the PAM or CCI models. Regarding the 2-year OS, this flexible HCT-CI score was also associated with the highest predictive hazard ratio (Barba et al. 2010).

HCT-CI has also been validated in CD34+ selected HSCT (Barba et al. 2017) and associated with the EBMT risk score that permits a better stratification (Barba et al. 2014).

Pretransplantation Assessment of Mortality (PAM) Score (Parimon et al. 2006; Au et al. 2015)
Developed in Seattle in 2006 but underused and poorly validated. It combines eight variables from patients and HSCT. Only useful for assessing mortality at 2 years.

Variables included age, type of donor, risk of disease, intensity of conditioning, DLCO, FEV1, creatinine, and ALT.

EBMT Machine Learning Algorithm (Shouval et al. 2015)
Based in an alternating decision tree able to detect variables associated with the primary
outcome, assigning weights and ignoring redundancies. This score was developed to analyze the NRM at day +100 in patients with acute leukemia but also predict NRM, LFS, and OS at 2 years.

The variables included in the model are age, Karnofsky (≥80; <80), diagnostic (AML; ALL), disease stage (CR1; CR2; all other stages), interval diagnostic-HSCT (<142 days; ≥142 days), donor-recipient CMV status (both (sero +); both (sero -); any other combination), donor type (MSD; MUD), conditioning (MAC; RIC), and annual allo-HSCT performed in the center (<20; ≥21). The total +100 NRM and 2-year NRM, LFS, and OS could be obtained through a web page: [http://bioinfo.lnx.biu.ac.il/~bondi/web1.html](http://bioinfo.lnx.biu.ac.il/~bondi/web1.html).

Recently this algorithm has also been validated by an independent set of data from GITMO (Shouval et al. 2017).

### 11.1.4.3 Predictive Capacity of These Models

Unfortunately, all these models have a relatively low predictive capacity, and none of them stand out more than the rest.

#### Table 11.5 HSCT-comorbidity index including age variable (Sorror 2005, 2014)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comorbidity/definition</th>
<th>Points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age</strong> ≤40 years</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arrhythmia</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrial fibrillation, flutter, sick sinus node syndrome, or ventricular arrhythmias</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cardiac</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coronary heart disease, congestive heart failure, IAM, FEVE ≤50%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inflammatory bowel disease</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crohn’s disease or ulcerative colitis that has required treatment</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diabetes</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requiring insulin or oral antidiabetic medication in the 4 weeks prior to HSCT</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cerebrovascular</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVA or TIA or cerebral thrombosis</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Psychiatric</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depression or anxiety or others requiring ongoing treatment (not on demand)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mild liver</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic hepatitis, elevated bilirubin &lt;1.5 × NV or AST/ALT &lt;2.5 × NV</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous HBV or HCV infection</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Obesity</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI &gt;35 kg/m²</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Previous infection</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection in admission requiring continuation of treatment beyond day 0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Moderate lung</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLCO and/or FEV1 66–80% or minimal stress dyspnea</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rheumatology</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic lupus, rheumatoid arthritis, polymyositis, polymyalgia rheumatica, connective tissue disease</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Peptic ulcer</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endoscopic or radiological diagnosis (does not score if only reflux or gastritis)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Renal</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creatinine &gt;176 mcmol/L, dialysis, or previous kidney transplant</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Previous tumor</strong></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neoplasia at some point (excludes non-melanoma skin tumor)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heart valve</strong></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosed (except mitral prolapse)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Severe pulmonary</strong></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLCO and/or FEV1 ≤%, dyspnea at rest or oxygen at home</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Severe liver disease</strong></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilirubin ≥0.5 for VN or AST or ALT ≥0.5 for VN or cirrhosis</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*A Most recent version also includes in this category hematological/tumors of a different lineage to that which motivates the transplant (e.g., lymphoma in an AML patient but not previous MDS in AML patient)*
### Predictive/Model/s Predictive capacity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Model/s</th>
<th>Predictive capacity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sorror et al. (2005)</td>
<td>HCT-CI</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xhaard (2008)</td>
<td>rHCT-CT, PAM</td>
<td>0.49, 0.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gratwohl (2009)</td>
<td>EBMT</td>
<td>0.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barba et al. (2010)</td>
<td>fHCT-CI, PAM</td>
<td>0.67, 0.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barba et al. (2014)</td>
<td>HCT-CI, EBMT</td>
<td>0.60, 0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versluis (2015)</td>
<td>(HCT-CI-EBMT)</td>
<td>0.58, 0.58 (0.64)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Courtesy of P. Barba, MD. rHCT-CI = reduced model, without PFTs; fHSCT = flexible model (modified scale)

### 11.1.5 Practical Applications of Risk Assessment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Election of the conditioning</th>
<th>In patients with a high risk of NRM following one of the mentioned risk scores, a RIC should be considered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relative contraindications</td>
<td>Uncontrolled infection, severe or chronic liver disease (excluding cirrhosis), severe disturbances in heart function (FEV &lt;40%), respiratory (DLCO &lt;40%) or renal (creatinine clearance &lt;30 mL/min)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolute contraindications</td>
<td>Pregnancy, Cirrhosis. Even compensated cirrhosis receiving RIC have a high likelihood of hepatic decompensation (Hogan et al. 2004)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Key Points
- The evaluation of a candidate must be carried out according to a preestablished work plan designed by each institution. The use of standardized procedures reduces the risk of errors or omissions.
- Several pretransplant variables (such as age) have a clear impact on the results of the procedure but, when assessed in isolation, are highly insufficient to predict the results.
- Predictive models (DRI, EBMT risk score, HCT-CI, PAM) allow a much more realistic approach to the real possibilities of a given candidate and adapt the procedure to their needs.

### 11.2 Counseling of Candidates

Alessandro Rambaldi

### 11.2.1 Introduction

Allo-HSCT is a potentially curative treatment modality for otherwise incurable diseases. Unfortunately, after transplantation patients may experience not only the persistence or recurrence of their own disease but also some dramatic clinical complications and toxicities, including death. The clinical indications to transplant have been addressed in the section “indications” of this book, but in general, when the allo-HSCT is advised, the strength of the indication (the likelihood to be cured by transplant), the patient fitness, and his/her personal commitment to transplant must be carefully evaluated for each candidate.

Obviously, a first distinction must be done between patients with a neoplastic versus a non-neoplastic disease, and the transplant option should be progressively discussed with the patient during the course of the disease, particularly in the case of hematologic malignancies. Many professionals should concur to illustrate the patients the curative potential of an allo-HSCT and to help understanding the severe complications that can eventually develop. It is clear that different indications remarkably affect the way a patient is advised. However, there is a time when the transplant option must be formally presented and advised. Therefore, evaluation of each transplant candidate must be based on well-predefined formal standard operating procedures to collect exhaustive clinical, instrumental, and laboratory data that may lead to a robust definition of the risks and benefits related to allo-HSCT. All in all, the counseling is to tailor such evaluation to the individual patients (Shouval et al. 2015), according to both objective data and subjective data such as patient propensity and fear of side effects. At the end of this process, the patient should be aware of the rationale, the
benefit and the toxicity associated with each step, and component of the transplant procedure. In this chapter, I will hereby summarize the main topics I cover with my patients when they come to my office to discuss the option of the allo-HSCT.

11.2.2 Understanding the Benefit and Risk of Allogeneic Transplant

Patients must be informed that allo-HSCT is a therapeutic option that is always proposed with the intent to achieve a permanent cure of the underlying disease, but despite this premise, disease progression or relapse may eventually happen. The indication to allo-HSCT depends not only on the disease characteristics but also on patient-related factors such as age and comorbidities (Sorror et al. 2007) so that the transplant proposal is the result of an accurate and wise evaluation of both these factors (Sorror et al. 2013; Wang et al. 2014).

The patient should understand the specific risk/benefit balance associated with a conventional versus a transplant-based proposal, and this may be remarkably different if he has been diagnosed with a non-neoplastic disease such as thalassemia or sickle cell anemia, a bone marrow failure syndrome like aplastic anemia, or a blood cancer, such as an acute leukemia. Even when allo-HSCT may in theory represent the most efficacious treatment modality to get a permanent cure of a specific disease, an accurate description of the available alternatives must be presented. This is particularly important when the non-transplant options, albeit not curative, may have the chance to keep the patient alive for a long time (Samuelson Bannow et al. 2018) or, even more importantly, when the conventional treatment may lead to a definitive cure such as in the case of some patients with acute leukemia with intermediate-risk genetic factors or those achieving a deep molecular remission after conventional chemotherapy (Cornelissen and Blaise 2016).

11.2.3 Understanding the Transplant Procedure: The Donor, the Conditioning Regimen, and the Clinical Complications

Once the indication to transplant has been confirmed, patients and their relatives must be informed on how the transplant is performed. Patients should understand that identifying a stem cell donor is an absolute prerequisite to perform a transplant. Accordingly, patients should be informed about the human leukocyte antigen (HLA) genetic system, its specificity for each individual, how it is inherited by parents according to the Mendelian laws, and what is the probability to find a compatible donor in the family group. Understanding the HLA system is crucial to explain why the use of a HLA family-matched sibling donors is considered standard and when such a sibling is not available; an international search has to be performed to identify a HLA-compatible unrelated donor. It is important to underline that more than 30 million of potentially available donors are registered by the World Marrow Donor Association (WMDA), and the probability to find a compatible donor is between 50 and 80% according to the ethnical origin of each patient.

Once such matched unrelated donor is identified, this type of transplant is considered a standard of care, and its clinical outcome is fully comparable to what was observed when using an HLA-identical sibling. In patients for whom a MSD or a MUD is not available, the patient should be informed that two additional options are available, namely, the use of HSC obtained by a family mismatched donor (commonly defined as haploidentical because sharing only one of the patient’s HLA haplotypes) or a banked cord blood units. Patients should understand how the HLA diversity between patient and donor has been overcome by specific programs of in vitro or in vivo manipulation of the graft.

Patients should be reassured that the incidence and severity of GvHD, the most important side effect of allo-HSCT, seems not to be higher than observed with MUD. In addition, patients should know that many single-arm studies reported that
transplants performed with these alternative stem cell sources proved to be effective and safe even when offered to patients of advanced age and/or with existing accompanying illnesses or when the disease was refractory to conventional treatment. All in all, at the present time, the clinical outcome of these alternative types of transplants compares reasonably well with those achieved with MUD. Therefore, the decision to use this type of stem cell source only when an HLA-matched donor is not available is mostly related to the lack of randomized clinical trials that are planned to be performed in the near future.

The goal of an allo-HSCT is to eradicate the patient’s hematopoiesis either neoplastic or normal. This is achieved by the delivery of the conditioning regimen and by the lifelong in vivo effect played by the donor’s immune system. Most often, high doses of chemotherapy and/or radiation are included in the preparations although remarkable differences exist depending on the disease needing transplant and patient tolerance. The patient should understand that the intensity of the conditioning regimen may be particularly important in the case of hematologic malignancies when the aim to remove most of the neoplastic cells present in the patient’s body is the first goal. However, to avoid at least part of the treatment toxicity, the intensity of the preparative regimen can be down-modulated leading to the definition of this preparative regimen as non-myeloablative or reduced intensity. The depletion of the patient bone marrow stem cells induces a prolonged pancytopenia and the need of donor-derived healthy stem cells to grow and establish a new blood cell production system.

The allogeneic HSC, collected from the donor’s BM or PB or a frozen CBU, are infused through the central venous catheter into the bloodstream: HSCT is not a surgical procedure and it is very similar to receiving a blood transfusion. The stem cells find their way into the bone marrow and begin reproducing and growing new, healthy blood cells. It is very important to explain how the donor immune system will develop progressively after transplantation and will either exert a crucial beneficial role against residual neoplastic cells or restore the immune competence against infections, but it could mediate the most harmful GvHD effect against the patient.

After the transplant, supportive care is given to prevent and treat infections, side effects of treatments, and complications. Prolonged anemia, thrombocytopenia, and leukopenia can be dangerous and even life-threatening. A low platelet count can be potentially associated with bleeding in the lungs, GI tract, and brain. Leukopenia, including either a defect of neutrophils and lymphocytes, leads to the development of frequent infections, the most common clinical complications after transplantation. Infections can include not only bacterial, most likely when the patient has a severe bone marrow suppression, but also viral and fungal pathogens. Infections can require an extended hospital stay, prevent or delay engraftment, and/or cause permanent organ damage. On average the time to hematologic engraftment (recovery of the neutrophil and platelet function) is about 2–3 weeks, but a protective recovery of the immune system can take months and sometimes years. High doses of chemotherapy and radiation can cause remarkable toxicities that include but not limited to severe mucositis (inflammation of the mouth and GI tract) that favors bacterial translocation with related infections and GvHD and multi-organ failure mainly the lung, heart, liver, and kidney.

A particular attention should be paid to risk of graft failure that can occur early or late after transplantation. A graft failure is more frequent in some diseases such as myelofibrosis or as the results of infections or when the stem cell content of the graft is insufficient to guarantee a durable engraftment. A graft rejection can also happen after reduced intensity conditioning regimen (when the immune system of the host is not completely eradicated and can actively reject the donor stem cells).

Finally, and most importantly, patients must be aware of what GvHD is, when and how it may develop, and why it represents the most serious complication of a HSCT, being not only life-threatening but also the principal reason of a long-lasting poor quality of life. Transplant candidates should be aware that GvHD is the negative counterpart of the deep interaction of the donor immune system within patient body that at the same time may lead to definitive cure of an
otherwise incurable disease. In other words, when transplant is advised, patients must realize that they are accepting the possible onset of a chronic, often invalidating, autoimmune disease. GVHD can appear at any time after transplant. GvHD is conventionally distinguished in an acute form that usually develops within the first 100 days after transplant and the chronic form that occurs later in the transplant course. Patients who develop acute GVHD are more likely to also develop the chronic form of GVHD. Patients must understand the importance of their compliance to all the treatments given post transplant to prevent GvHD and how this is instrumental for a successful transplant. GvHD occurs when the donor’s immune system reacts against the recipient’s tissue. At variance to what happens after a solid organ transplant where the patient’s immune system is driven to reject only the transplanted organ, in GVHD, the donor immune system can react against many different organs of the recipient. This is why the new cells do not recognize the tissues and organs of the recipient’s body as self. Over time, thanks to the effect of immune suppressive drugs, a progressive tolerance can develop. The most common sites for GVHD are the GI tract, liver, skin, and lungs.

11.2.4 Logistics

After discharge for the transplant ward, patients are followed up in the outpatient clinic two to three times per week until day +100. Patients should be helped to realize how complex is the transplant procedure and that the time spent in the hospital represents only the first part of the treatment program. All allo-HSCT patients should ideally stay within 1 h of the hospital until it is about 3 months from the day of the transplant. Patients and their families should also realize that the overall recovery time varies from person to person and in general this process takes about 1 year to be satisfactory. Allogeneic transplantation is therefore a long-lasting immunotherapy, and the interaction between the donor immune system and the patient requires a careful and prolonged medical assistance, quite often long life.

References


Donor Selection for Adults and Pediatrics

Francis Ayuk and Adriana Balduzzi

12.1 Introduction

It is known that multiple factors impact on transplantation outcome; the heaviest ones are disease-related (disease refractoriness, phase, clonal abnormalities, etc. in malignancies and disease type and associated rejection risk in non-malignant diseases) and patient-related (age, comorbidities, infectious diseases/colonization, etc.). Moreover, donor-related issues and stem cell source may influence the extent of disease control and transplant-related mortality.

The availability of a suitable stem cell graft is an absolute prerequisite for the performance of allo-HSCT. Beyond donor-recipient histocompatibility, other factors such as stem cell source, donor age and gender, donor-recipient CMV status, and ABO compatibility may play a role on transplant outcome.

In this chapter we discuss results of studies investigating these factors and conclude with an algorithm for donor selection. Issues which are peculiar to pediatric recipients are also analyzed and discussed.

F. Ayuk
Department of Stem Cell Transplantation, University Medical Center Hamburg-Eppendorf (UKE), Hamburg, Germany

A. Balduzzi (*)
Outpatient Hematology and Transplant Department, Clinica Pediatrica, Università degli Studi di Milano Bicocca, Ospedale San Gerardo, Monza, Italy
e-mail: abalduzzi@fondazionembbm.it

12.2 Donor HLA Compatibility

(See Chap. 9)

The outcome of HSCT depends in part on the matching between the donor and the recipient for the human leukocyte antigens (HLA), encoded by a group of genes on chromosome 6; genes and products are labelled as major histocompatibility complex (MHC). The HLA system is the most polymorphic genetic region known in the human genome. A set of HLA gene alleles, called haplotype, is inherited from each parent; therefore, the probability that a child inherited and shares both parental haplotypes with a full sibling is 25%. Such HLA-identical sibling is still considered an optimal donor.

The most relevant genes for transplantation belong to class I (HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-Cw) and class II (HLA-DR, HLA-DQ, and HLA-DP). HLA compatibility with the donor is usually defined by high-resolution typing (four digits) for ten alleles, HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C, HLA-DR, and HLA-DQ (Petersdorf 2013), even though there is an increasing evidence supporting the relevance of DPB1 matching (reviewed by Fleischhauer and Shaw 2017).

The concept of “compatibility” for CB donor-recipient pairs is still under debate. Any CB unit which was 6/6 or 5/6 matched was labelled HLA compatible (MD), in the past as defined by low-resolution typing at A and B loci and high-resolution typing at the DRB1 locus; more recently, high resolution for at least A, B,
C, and DRB1 loci is requested, and progressively the same criteria used for volunteer donors are considered to define CB HLA matching (Eapen et al. 2017).

### 12.3 Donor Selection for Adult Patients

#### 12.3.1 Donor Type (Summarized in Fig. 12.1)

**12.3.1.1 Matched Related Siblings and Unrelated Donors**

Donor-recipient histocompatibility is one of the key variables in allo-HSCT. An HLA-identical sibling donor is generally considered the best donor for allo-HSCT; however less than a third of patients will have one available. Unrelated donor registries worldwide now include more than about 30 million volunteer donors, most of them in North America and Europe (www.bmdw.org). The probability of finding a fully MUD (8/8 or 10/10) varies on average between 16% and 75% (Gragert et al. 2014; Buck et al. 2016) depending on ethnicity, with lowest and highest probabilities in patients of African and European descent, respectively. Increasing ethnic diversity will with time further limit the chances of finding a fully matched unrelated donor.

Till date no randomized trial has compared outcome of transplants from different donors. However, one prospective (Yakoub-Agha et al. 2006) and several retrospective analyses indicate that outcomes after MSD and fully MUD (8/8 or 10/10) HSCT are comparable (Schetelig et al. 2008; Szydlo et al. 1997; Arora et al. 2009; Ringden 2009; Gupta et al. 2010; Woolfrey et al. 2010; Saber et al. 2012). Increase in donor-recipient HLA disparity in HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C, or HLA-DRB1 is associated with poorer outcome after unrelated donor transplantation (Lee et al. 2007; Shaw et al. 2010; Woolfrey et al. 2011; Horan et al. 2012; Fürst et al. 2013; Pidala et al. 2014; Verneris et al. 2015). The overall decrease in survival can be explained by the increase in NRM with no positive effect on relapse. Disparities in HLA-DQB1 as well as C-allele disparities in C*03:03 vs 03:04 have been reported to be permissive with no negative effects on outcome (Lee et al. 2007; Fürst et al. 2013; Morishima et al. 2015; Pidala et al. 2014; Crivello et al. 2016). Disparities in HLA-DPB1 are observed in the majority of HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C, and HLA-DQB1

---

**Algorithm for donor selection for adult patients with hematological malignancies**

- **HLA-identical sibling donor**

- **HLA-10/10 matched unrelated donor**
  - Beyond HLA: donor age< CMV-matching, sex-matching, ABO-matching

- **HLA-9/10 matched unrelated donor;**
  - HLA-mismatched related donor; cord blood
  - Beyond HLA: donor specific antibodies, specific center experience

---

**Fig. 12.1** Algorithm for donor selection
(10/10) MUD transplants. Nonpermissive mismatches in DPB1 defined according to T-cell epitope matching (Zino et al. 2004; Crocchiolo et al. 2009; Fleischhauer et al. 2012; Pidala et al. 2014; Oran et al. 2018) or allele cell-surface expression levels (Petersdorf et al. 2015) are associated with poorer outcome compared to full matches or permissive mismatches. Associations of permissive DPB1 mismatches with lower relapse incidence are currently being explored (Fleischhauer and Beelen 2016; Fleischhauer and Shaw 2017).

12.3.1.2 Haploidentical Related Donors

Improvements in transplant technology including pre-transplant ATG (Huang et al. 2006), PT-CY (Luznik et al. 2008), and alpha-beta TCD (Bertaina et al. 2014) have led to improved outcome and rapidly increasing use of haploidentical related donor transplantation (Passweg et al. 2014). Several retrospective comparison studies have reported similar outcome for haploidentical and MUD transplants (summarized by Fuchs 2017). The results of prospective comparative trials are eagerly awaited.

12.3.2 Role of Non-HLA Donor Characteristics

Besides donor-recipient histocompatibility, donor age is now considered one of, if not the most relevant, the non-HLA donor characteristics in unrelated donor HSCT (Kollman et al. 2001, 2016; Wang et al. 2018) with a 2-year survival being 3% better when a donor 10 years younger is selected (Shaw et al. 2018). These findings have impacted daily practice such that the percentage of selected donors under 30 years of age has increased from 36% in the period 1988–2006 to 51% in 1999–2011 up to 69% in 2012–2014 (Kollman et al. 2016).

Matching for patient/recipient CMV serostatus also seems to be a determinant of transplant outcome with best outcome seen in seronegative patients receiving seronegative grafts (Ljungman 2014; Kalra et al. 2016; Shaw et al. 2017).

The impact of sex mismatch on outcome is more controversial, possibly reflecting different definitions of sex mismatch, which has been considered only for male recipients (Gratwohl et al. 2009, 2017; Nakasone et al. 2015) or for both male and female in others (Kollman et al. 2016). Interestingly, all three studies confining sex mismatch to male recipients reported a significant impact for this variable, albeit possibly dependent on conditioning regimen.

The impact of ABO (blood group) compatibility on outcome has been reported to be modest and seems to have further diminished in recent years probably due to changes in transplant practice including less frequent use of bone marrow grafts (Seebach et al. 2005; Kollman et al. 2016; Shaw et al. 2018).

The impact of non-HLA donor characteristics may be less conspicuous in matched and mismatched related donor transplantations using PT-CY. It must however be taken into consideration that the close association of donor age and donor-patient relation on the one hand with patient age on the other hand makes these analyses more complex (McCurdy et al. 2018; Robinson et al. 2018). Larger patient cohorts and prospective studies are required for more definite conclusions.

12.3.3 Donor Choice According to Stem Cell Source

The three graft sources for allo-HSCT are BM, PBSC, and CB. In matched related donor and unrelated donor HSCT, survival outcome has been similar for BM and PBSC. However hematological recovery is more rapid and graft rejection less frequent after PB compared to BM HSCT, while the incidence of chronic GvHD and, to a lesser extent, acute GvHD tends to be higher after PB HSCT (Bensinger et al. 2001; Couban et al. 2002; Schmitz et al. 2002; Couban et al. 2016; Anasetti et al. 2012). In allo-HSCT for nonmalignant diseases, in particular for SAA, BM is still the preferred stem cell source in high-income countries, despite improvements in outcome after PB HSCT (Schrezenmeier et al. 2007; Schrezenmeier et al. 2017).
Traditionally BM has been used as stem cell source for haploidentical HSCT with PT-CY (Luznik et al. 2008), while GCSF-stimulated BM has been used for haploidentical HSCT with ATG (Huang et al. 2006) and PBSC for haploidentical HSCT with alpha-beta T-cell depletion (Bertaina et al. 2014). There are no prospective studies comparing different stem cell sources within these strategies. When PT-CY is used, PBSC seems to be associated with a higher risk of acute and chronic GvHD and lower risk of relapse in patients with leukemia (Bashey et al. 2017).

The use of umbilical CB grafts continues to decrease with the rise in numbers of haploidentical transplants performed (Passweg et al. 2014). Due to the limited number of stem cells per unit, CB grafts have been more frequently used in pediatric HSCT and will be discussed in that section and in the specific CB Chapter.

12.3.4 Anti-HLA Antibodies

The abovementioned improvements in transplant technology have led to an increased use of grafts from HLA-mismatched donors. Detection of donor-specific anti-HLA antibodies in the patients’ serum has been associated with increased risk of graft failure and also poorer survival of those patients with graft failure (Ciurea et al. 2015) after haploidentical HSCT. The risk of graft failure and overall mortality may however also depend on the type and intensity of TCD used. The EBMT recently published a consensus guideline on detection and treatment of donor-specific antibodies in haploidentical HSCT (Ciurea et al. 2018).

12.4 Donor Selection for Pediatric Patients

Donor selection criteria may vary between adult and pediatric recipients. According to the “motto” of the Pediatric Disease Working Party, “children are not small adults,” besides the size, what makes HSCT in children different is mainly related with indications and the biology of a growing individual.

12.4.1 Pediatric Recipient Size

In terms of size, the recipient weight may vary between few Kg in most patients transplanted for immunodeficiencies and a full adult size in some adolescents. The recommended cell dose in the graft is shown in Table 12.1 (Gluckmann 2012). The lower the recipient weight, the smaller is the amount of the requested absolute count in the graft, which makes the harvest easier, often matching the transplant center requests. An appropriate cell dose in the graft yields a lower risk of rejection, which is actually lowest in pediatrics. On the other hand, the lower amount of cells requested to ensure engraftment in children makes CB a more valuable source than in adults.

12.4.2 Indications

In terms of indications, according to the EBMT, nowadays 46% of the patients younger than 18 years who undergo HSCT are affected with non-malignant diseases (Passweg et al. 2014), which are mainly inherited disorders, namely, immunodeficiencies, hemoglobinopaties, inborn errors of...
metabolism, and congenital bone marrow failures. As nonmalignant diseases do not benefit of any alloreactivity, the closest HLA matching (possibly “10 out of 10” HLA alleles) is recommended. On the contrary, a small degree of HLA incompatibility is tolerated in malignancies, as the detrimental effect of HLA disparity, triggering higher risk of GvHD and consequent higher risks of toxicity and mortality, might be counterbalanced by the so-called “graft-versus-leukemia” or “graft-versus-tumor” effect, which is the alloreactivity of immunocompetent donor cells potentially eradicating residual malignant cells in the patient and playing a role in the prevention of malignant disease recurrence.

12.4.3 Donor Type

Due to the decreasing size of modern families in the so-called Western countries, HLA-identical siblings are available in less than 25% of the children in need of a transplant, as shown by the few studies performing a “randomization by genetic chance,” based on the availability of an HLA-identical sibling or not (Balduzzi et al. 2005). As a consequence, 75% of the patients may need to run a search for an unrelated donor.

Eligibility criteria for HSCT in malignant diseases varied overtime, resulting from the balance between the outcome of frontline and relapse chemotherapy protocols and the outcome of transplantation, which partially depends on the degree of compatibility within each donor-recipient pair. Similarly, the eligibility for transplantation in nonmalignant diseases increased as the safety profile of the procedure improved. Some patients are considered eligible for transplantation only in case an HLA-identical sibling is available; as the risk profile of the patient worsens, a broader degree of HLA mismatching is considered acceptable.

Within the International BFM Study Group, regardless of their relationship with their recipient, donors are defined as HLA-matched (MD) if the donor-recipient pairs are fully matched (10/10) or have a single allelic or antigenic disparity (9/10) or are defined mismatched donor (MMD) if the donor-recipient pairs have two (8/10) or more allelic or antigenic disparities, up to a different haplotype (Peters et al. 2015). Any donor who is not an HLA-identical sibling or a MD, as defined above, is considered a MMD. Both MD and MMD could be either related or unrelated to their recipient. A related donor who is not an HLA-identical sibling is actually regarded as a MD, and GvHD prophylaxis is planned accordingly (Peters et al. 2015).

Recently, results from a BFM study showed that transplantation from a “10 or 9 out of 10” matched donor, either related or unrelated, was not inferior to transplantation from an HLA-identical sibling in terms of EFS, OS, and CIR in pediatric patients with ALL (Peters et al. 2015). As a consequence eligibility criteria for HSCT might be reviewed and extended to those for MSD HSCT, at least in ALL, and, possibly, considered for other malignant diseases. Therefore, an unrelated donor search activation and transplantation might be recommended in the future virtually for every child for whom an allo-HSCT is indicated. Disparities within donor-recipient pairs are progressively accepted as the risk profile of the patient increases.

Unfortunately some inherited disorders, in particular sickle cell disease (Gluckman et al. 2017) or other recessively inherited disease, which incidence is highly increased by a parental blood relation, have higher incidences in non-Caucasian ethnicities, which are less represented within stem cell donor banks. The consequence is that well-matched donors often lack when a perfect matching is crucial; progresses in haploidentical HSCT broadened its indications and may overcome this issue.

Depending on each transplant center experience, MMD might be preferred, carrying the advantage of prompt donor availability and flexible schedule and bringing higher degree of alloreactivity, potentially associated with lower relapse risk. HSCT from MMD is widely recommended when timing adjustment is crucial, as in
advanced disease phase in malignancies and in case of post transplant relapse.

**12.4.4 Haploidentical Donors in Pediatrics**

Successful haploidentical HSCT mainly evolved in pediatrics over the last two decades from ex vivo T-cell depletion by CD34+-positive selection, to CD34+-negative selection, up to selective CD3 αβ depletion, to allow other cells in the graft, potentially protecting from viral infections (Handgretinger et al. 2001; Klingebiel et al. 2010). In pediatrics, an improved immune recovery after TCR αβ-depleted haploidentical HSCT (Lang et al. 2015), a similar outcome between TCR αβ-depleted and matched sibling and matched unrelated donors HSCT in children with acute leukemia (Locatelli et al. 2017) and in nonmalignant diseases (Bertaina et al. 2014), was recently reported and confirmed by a multicenter phase I/II study (Lang et al. 2017). Moreover, some reports of PT-CY in pediatric show promising results (Jaiswal et al. 2016; Sawada et al. 2014; Wiebking et al. 2017).

One of the parents mostly serves as a donor in haploidentical donors for pediatric recipients. The choice between the mother and the father is still debated. Better survival was shown in patients transplanted from the mother than from the father (51% vs 11%; \( P < 0.001 \)), due to both reduced incidence of relapse and TRM, with a protective effect on the risk of failure (HR 0.42; \( P = 0.003 \)), possibly explained by transplacental leukocyte trafficking during pregnancy, inducing long-term, stable, reciprocal microchimerism in mother and child (Stern et al. 2008).

As donor-derived alloreactive NK cells have been shown to play a key role in the eradication of leukemic cells, favorable NK matching should guide donor selection (Stringaris and Barrett 2017; Mavers and Bertaina 2018). Moreover, anti-HLA antibodies should be checked and accounted for to guide donor selection.

**12.4.5 Stem Cell Source**

BM is usually recommended as stem cell source. A donor with a body weight allowing for a graft containing at least \( 3 \times 10^8 \) nucleated cells/kg recipient body weight and \( 3 \times 10^6 \) CD34+ cells/kg body weight should be selected, in order to yield more than 95% neutrophil engraftment chances at a median of 21 days in the setting of hematological malignant diseases (Simonin et al. 2017).

It is rare in pediatrics to require PB just in order to obtain an adequate amount of cells to ensure engraftment, as the absolute cell dose needed rarely overcomes the maximum amount which could be harvested from a donor. As higher numbers of CD3 cells are obtained in PB grafts, it is recommended not to exceed an amount of \( 10 \times 10^8 \) CD3+ cells/kg recipient body weight.

The increased risk of chronic GvHD, and possibly acute, after PBSC transplantation, as compared to BM, is commonly reported. In a recent European retrospective study, including 2584 pediatric patients transplanted from 2003 to 2012 for ALL, both TRM and chronic GvHD appeared significantly higher after PBSC, as compared with other SC sources, despite the overall survival was similar for both stem cell sources (Simonin et al. 2017). In the prospective ALL-SCT-BFM 2003 study, the same OS was reported, and no difference could be demonstrated in TRM, acute GvHD, and relapse, whichever the stem cell source in the two cohorts of patients transplanted from HLA-identical siblings and other matched donors. Nevertheless, within patients transplanted from HLA-identical siblings, the cumulative incidence of chronic GvHD was higher in PB compared with BM recipients (Peters et al. 2015).

Reinforced GvHD prophylaxis may be recommended when PBSC are used, mainly when no serotherapy is included as for GvHD prophylaxis, as in most protocols in the HLA-identical sibling setting in malignancies (Simonin et al. 2017).
Nowadays, in the ongoing prospective ALL-I-BFM HSCT trial (FORUM), the algorithm for choosing stem cell source recommends BM as the first choice. To date, there is no demonstration for a better GVL effect after PB HSCT in the pediatric population.

Due to the increased risk of cGvHD after PB transplant, which is almost consistent among investigators, it is definitely recommended to avoid PB in nonmalignant disorders.

From the first CB transplantation performed for a Fanconi anemia patient in 1987, CB appeared as a useful and an efficient stem cell source, due to two major features: high proliferative capacity, allowing engraftment despite 1-log fewer cells, and immune plasticity, allowing a wider HLA disparity within each donor recipient pair (Gluckman et al. 1989).

The possibility to adopt less stringent HLA-matching criteria enlarged the availability of grafts to at least 90% of the pediatric patients in need of an allogeneic transplant (Eapen et al. 2017). According to Eurocord consortium recommendations, unrelated CB with two or less HLA disparities typed in low resolution (i.e., two digit) for class I (A and B loci) and high resolution (i.e., four-digit) for class II (DRB1 locus) and with more than $2.5 \times 10^7$ nucleated cell dose/kg or $2 \times 10^5$ CD34+ cells/kg are suitable for engraftment (Gratwohl et al. 2009). Recent studies from both Eurocord, NetCord, EBMT, and CIBMTR recommend high-resolution HLA typing for A, B, C, and DRB1 and a maximum of 1 or 2 mismatched loci with a cellularity of $3 \times 10^7$ TNC/kg or higher (Eapen et al. 2014).

Two prospective studies could demonstrate no benefit of double CB in pediatric patients transplanted for malignant diseases (Wagner et al. 2014; Michel et al. 2016).

12.4.6 Other Donor-Recipient-Related Factors

Besides HLA compatibility and stem cell source, also donor age, gender, female parity, weight, ABO blood group, and viral serological status should be considered in the decision-making process for donor selection, whenever more than one donor were available, which may not be often the case (Wang et al. 2018).

Most studies report that a young donor is better than an older one. Few studies also report that a male donor is better for a male recipient and better than a multiparous woman for any recipient, even though this finding is not consistent through the literature. The donor gender effect may be mild and need larger series of patients to be demonstrated (Friedrich et al. 2018). Unfavorable weight disparity, with donors weighing less than their recipient, should be avoided, when possible (Styczynski et al. 2012). CMV-IgG, as well as EBV-positive patients, should be grafted from CMV- and EBV-positive donors, respectively (Jeljeli et al. 2014; Bontant et al. 2014). ABO matching is usually preferred, especially instead of a major or even minor incompatibility (Booth et al. 2013). Donor location might also be considered, as overseas deliveries increase the time elapsing between collection and infusion, thus reduce cell viability and potentially jeopardize engraftment. More recently, KIR genotyping would allow to identify alloreactive donors who may contribute to prevent relapse also in the non-haploidentical setting (Mavers and Bertaina 2018).

Even though it is mainly clear which variant should be preferred within each variable, there is no consensus regarding the hierarchical order by which the factors above should be combined. In a recent survey within the Pediatric Diseases Working Party of the EBMT, the features above were listed in the following order of importance, on the average, but evaluations widely differed among responders:

1. HLA compatibility, with 10/10 better than 9/10 or worse matching
2. CMV serological status of positive donors in case of positive recipients
3. BM as stem cell source
4. Donor age, being preferable a younger donor compared with an older one
5. Donor gender, with a male donor preferred, particularly for a male recipient
6. ABO major compatibility
7. Donor center location
8. ABO minor compatibility (unpublished data)

Moreover, the presence of anti-HLA antibodies directed to any mismatched HLA alleles should be ruled out, mainly in heavily transfused nonmalignant diseases, such as hemoglobinopathies or bone marrow failures (Ciurea et al. 2018).

Key Points
• An HLA-identical sibling is considered a donor of first choice.
• For patients with hematological malignancies, transplantation from fully HLA-MUD (8/8 or 10/10) is not inferior to transplantation from HLA-identical siblings in terms of EFS.
• The choice of alternative donors (haploidentical related donors, cord blood, mismatched unrelated donors) depends on center experience, urgency of transplant procedure, and detection of donor-specific anti-HLA antibodies.
• For pediatric patients and patients with nonmalignant disorders, BM is the preferred stem cell source.
• For adult patients with hematological malignancies, survival outcome after HSCT with PBSC and BM is comparable.
• In URD transplantation, donor age is probably the most relevant non-HLA donor factor.


Gluckmann E (2012) Choice of the donor according to HLA typing and stem cell source. EBMT handbook.


Shaw BE, Mayor NP, Szydlo RM, et al. Recipient/donor HLA and CMV matching in recipients of T-cell-
**13.1 Overview**

HSCT is a therapeutic procedure that can cure and/or prolong life in a broad range of hematologic disorders including malignant and nonmalignant pathologies. Conditioning is the preparative regimen that is administered to the patients undergoing HSCT before the infusion of the stem cell grafts. Historically, the pre-HSCT conditioning had to:

1. Eradicate the hematologic malignancy in case of malignant indication for HSCT.
2. Provide sufficient IS to ensure engraftment and to prevent both rejection and GVHD.
3. Provide stem cell niches in the host BM for the new stem cells.

The third purpose is controversial as it was demonstrated in animal models that with mega doses of HSC and repeated administrations engraftment can be achieved without conditioning.

From the theoretic point of view, the conditioning consisted of two components:

1. Myelo-depletion which targets the host stem cells
2. Lymphodepletion which targets the host lymphoid system, respectively

Some of the compounds used in the conditioning are more myeloablative (MA) in nature, for example, MEL or BU, while some are more lymphodepleting like FLU or CY. The pretransplant conditioning may include TBI or in rare and specific instances other types of irradiations like TLI that is applied, for example, in haplo-HSCT, or TAI that was used in the past in Fanconi anemia. Alternatively, the pre-HSCT conditioning can be radiation-free including only chemotherapy. In recent years, serotherapy, specific targeted novel compounds, and MoAb and radiolabeled Ab started to be incorporated into specific disease-oriented conditioning regimens.

Not just the constituents but also the schedule (days) of administration and doses may differ in the various conditioning regimen protocols. The pretransplantation conditioning regimens depend on the type of the HSC donor. For example, in auto-HSCT, the pre-HSCT conditioning consisted of chemotherapy alone, and in some transplant centers, it may include also irradiation, while, in allo-HSCT from unrelated or mismatched donors

---

**A. Nagler (✉)**
Department of Medicine, Tel Aviv University, Tel-Hashomer, Israel

Hematology Division, BMT and Cord Blood Bank, Chaim Sheba Medical Center, Tel-Hashomer, Israel
e-mail: arnon.nagler@sheba.health.gov.il

A. Shimoni
Bone Marrow Transplantation, Chaim Sheba Medical Center, Tel-Aviv University, Tel Hashomer, Israel
as well as in HSCT from alternative donors, the pre-HSCT conditioning usually includes serotherapy with ATG or ALEM (Campath; anti-CDW52 MoAb). Similarly, the intensity of the conditioning is traditionally higher in unrelated and mismatched transplants as well as in transplants from alternative donors in comparison to transplants from HLA MSD. The pre-HSCT conditioning regimen takes into account also the specific disease for which the HSCT is being performed, more so in auto-HSCT than in the allogeneic setting aiming to include an effective anti-disease-specific chemotherapy, for example, MEL for MM or BCNU and CY in lymphoma.

Other factors to be taken into account while choosing the optimal conditioning for a specific patient besides the disease he is afflicted with and the type of donor are age, comorbidities, and organ-specific toxicity risk. The conditioning protocols also differ between pediatrics and adults as in pediatric more emphasis should be given to growth and puberty issues. It also differs between nonmalignant and malignant disorders; the former are not just more frequent in pediatrics, but of major importance is the fact that in nonmalignant indications, there is no need for the GVL, and a main goal is to ensure absolutely no GVHD.

Historically, the conditioning protocols were MA in nature, and the two most popular ones were the CY/TBI (TBI 12Gy followed by IV CY 60 mg/kg × 2 days) and the BU/CY protocol (BU 4 mg/kg × 4 days and CY 60 mg/kg × 2 days). However, MAC is associated with significant organ- and transplant-related toxicity (TRT), limiting allo-HSCT to younger patients in good medical conditioning, typically up to age of 55 and 50 years old in allo-HSCT from sibling and URD, respectively. During the past two decades, non-MA (NMA), RIC, and reduced toxicity conditioning (RTC) regimens have been developed aiming in reducing the organ and TRM while keeping the anti-malignant effect and allowing allo-HSCT in elderly and medically infirm patients. These are relatively nontoxic and tolerable regimens designed not to maximally eradicate the malignancy but rather to provide sufficient IS to achieve engraftment and to allow induction of GVL as the primary treatment. Furthermore, special conditioning protocols have been developed for allo-HSCT from alternative donors including from MMUD, CB donors, and haploidentical family-related donors. These relatively new pre-HSCT conditioning typically includes new drug formulations like IV BU, compounds from the oncology field that are newcomers in HSCT like TREO or TT, new compounds like clofarabine (CLO), or new schedules sequentially administrating novel chemotherapy combination (FLAMSA) to be followed by RIC containing reduced doses of TBI.

### 13.2 Total Body Irradiation

TBI is a major constituent of MAC regimens. Historically, TBI combined with CY has been the standard regimen used to condition patients with acute leukemia prior to HSCT. TBI is typically given at a dose of 12 Gy (Thomas et al. 1982). Higher doses of TBI up to 14.25 Gy resulted in improved antileukemic effect, but this was counterbalanced by increased toxicity and TRM (Clift et al. 1990). TBI provides both MA and IS ensuring engraftment in combination with optimal antileukemic effect. It provides homogeneous dose distribution in the whole body including sanctuaries for systemic chemotherapy such as the CNS and testicles. Fractionation of 12 Gy TBI in six doses of 2 Gy delivered twice a day over 3 days became the standard over time (Thomas et al. 1982).

The Acute Leukemia Working Party (ALWP) of the EBMT recently showed that 12 Gy fractionated TBI dose delivered either in two fractions or in one fraction per day over 3 or 4 days prior to HSCT resulted in similar outcome, in both ALL and AML patients (Belkacemi et al. 2018). Dose fractionation and dose rate have been shown to be of importance determining both efficacy and toxicity which includes mucositis, interstitial pneumonia, SOS/VOD, hemorrhagic cystitis, and long-term toxicity including growth retardation, endocrine problems, cataracts, and secondary malignancies.

As for mode of TBI administration across Europe, the ALWP of the EBMT performed a
questionnaire-based study focusing on technical practices across 56 EBMT centers and 23 countries demonstrating an extremely high heterogeneity of fractionation schedules. The total doses delivered ranged between 8 and 14.4 Gy with dose per fraction varying between 1.65 and 8 Gy. The dose rate at the source ranged between 2.25 and 37.5 Gy/min. This resulted in 40 different reported schedules, to which variations in beam energy, dosimetry, in vivo techniques, and organ shielding disparities had to be added (Giebel et al. 2014). Regarding TBI-mediated antileukemic effect, most studies have shown the equivalence of chemotherapy-based MAC mostly BU/CY and CY/TBI conditioning for AML (Nagler et al. 2013). In contrast, despite the absence of consensus, TBI has remained the first choice in many centers for ALL (Cahu et al. 2016).

### 13.3 Myeloablative Non-TBI-Containing Conditioning

The MAC are a high-dose chemotherapy mostly alkylating agent-based regimens used in both auto- and allo-HSCT. They cause by definition profound and prolong cytopenia that lasts up to 21 days and necessitates stem cell graft in order to recover (Bacigalupo et al. 2009). Historically, BU/CY is the prototype of chemotherapy-based MAC. It was developed by the Johns Hopkins group as early as 1983 as an alternative to TBI in an effort to reduce the incidence of long-term radiation-induced toxicities and improve the planning of HSCT in institutions lacking easy availability of linear accelerators (Tutschka et al. 1987). A considerable number of studies have shown the equivalence of BU/CY and CY/TBI for allo-HSCT in AML (Nagler et al. 2013) and recently also in ALL (Mohty et al. 2010) although most centers still use TBI-based MAC as the preferred pre-HSCT conditioning for ALL in fit patients with low comorbidities.

The original studies used oral BU that has an erratic and unpredictable absorption with wide inter- and also intra-patient variability with the risk of increased toxicity mainly SOS/VOD in patients with a high area under the curve of BU plasma concentration versus time, while low BU concentrations may be associated with a higher risk of graft rejection and relapse (Hassan 1999). The common solution was monitoring of BU levels and dose adjustments that allowed for better control of the dose administered and reduction of the abovementioned risks (Deeg et al. 2002). The development of the IV BU with more predictable pharmacokinetics, achieving tight control of plasma levels, and less need for plasma level testing and dose adjustments significantly reduced BU-mediated SOS/VOD and TRM (Nagler et al. 2014).

Some other MAC regimens include MEL in combination with BU (Vey et al. 1996), while others incorporated VP (Czyz et al. 2018). Subsequently, in an attempt to further reduce regimen-related toxicity, CY was replaced with FLU, a nucleoside analog with considerable IS properties that also has a synergizing effect with alkylators by inhibiting DNA repair. The combination of BU and FLU used in patients with AML was found to have more favorable toxicity profile with similar efficacy. Recently a well-designed two-arm study compared BU/CY to BU/FLU, demonstrating a significant reduction of TRM in the FLU/BU arm with no difference in RI (Rambaldi et al. 2015). Recently, other alkylators like TT (Eder et al. 2017) and CLO (Chevallier et al. 2012) have been incorporated into MAC protocols for both AML and ALL in an attempt to reduce risk of relapse with equivalent results to TBI-containing conditioning protocols.

### 13.4 Nonmyeloablative, Reduced Intensity and Reduced Toxicity Conditioning

NMA and RIC have been widely introduced over the past 20 years in an attempt to reduce organ toxicity and TRM allowing HSCT in elderly and medically infirm patients not eligible for standard MAC (Slavin et al. 1998). In addition, RTC based on FLU and MA alkylating agent doses were designed to allow safer administration of dose-intensive therapy. Multiple such protocols have been reported over the years with somewhat
overlapping dose intensity and to a certain extent unclear categorization among NMA versus RIC and RTC.

A group of experts had an attempt to define and dissect the conditioning regimen intensity based on the expected duration and reversibility of cytopenia after HSCT (Bacigalupo et al. 2009). MAC was defined as a conditioning regimen that results in irreversible cytopenia in most patients, and stem cell support after HSCT is required. Truly NMA regimens cause minimal cytopenia and can theoretically be given without stem cell support. RIC regimens cause profound cytopenia and should be given with stem cells, but cytopenia may not be irreversible. The original NMA conditioning protocols were the TBI 2 Gy in combination with MMF and CSA (the so-called Seattle protocol that subsequently incorporated FLU 90 mg because of high non-engraftment in the original protocol) (McSweeney et al. 2001) and the FLAG conditioning protocol (FLU, Ara-C, idarubicin, and G-CSF) pioneered in MD Anderson (Giralt et al. 1997).

Additional very popular protocol is the FLU/BU conditioning regimen we pioneered in Jerusalem initially with oral but subsequently with the IV formulation of BU that is given 2–4 days determining the intensity of the conditioning being NMA, RIC/RTC, and MAC, respectively (Kharfan-Dabaja et al. 2014). Overall multiple studies indicated that the conditioning dose intensity is highly correlated with outcome after HSCT. Increased dose intensity is associated with reduced RI but also with higher NRM (Aoudjhane et al. 2005). For example, few studies compared the FLU/BU RIC to another frequently used RIC regimen, namely, the FLU/MEL protocol demonstrating lower RI but higher toxicity with the FLU/MEL protocol which is more intense (Shimoni et al. 2007). Subsequently TREO (L-threitol-1,4-bis-methanesulfonate, dihydroxybusulfan) with activity against both on committed and noncommitted stem cells as well as potent IS properties (Danylesko et al. 2012) was combined with FLU as an effective conditioning regimen pre-HSCT for both myeloid and lymphatic malignancies with a favorable toxicity profile with little extramedullary toxicity (Nagler et al. 2017).

Overall outcome comparing these low-intensity conditioning protocols versus MAC was determined by the net effect of the opposing effects, i.e., reduction in TRM, while higher RI, leading to similar LFS and OS with patient age, comorbidities, and disease status at transplantation being significant prognostic factors. Retrospective comparative trials showed that while outcome may be similar with the various regimens in patients given HSCT in remission, NMA/RIC are inferior when HSCT is given in advanced disease, due to high RI. These observations were confirmed in some of the long-term studies but not in others (Shimoni et al. 2016). Interestingly, no disadvantage was observed for the low-intensity protocols in comparison to MAC even in high-risk disease like AML with monosomal karyotype or secondary leukemia (Poiré et al. 2015). RTC regimens are typically with more intensive antileukemic activity but limited toxicity and thus better tolerated by patients not eligible for myeloablative conditioning (Shimoni et al. 2018).

New novel conditioning protocols that may be categorized in this family of conditioning although no consensus was established are the regimens that incorporate CLO and TT and especially the TBF regimen (TT, BU, FLU) (Saraceni et al. 2017). Another worth mentioning conditioning that was developed for high-risk leukemia with encouraging results is the FLAMSA conditioning which comprised sequential chemotherapy including FLU, Ara-C, and amsacrine followed by RIC pre-allo-HSCT (Malard et al. 2017). Only few randomized studies compared head-to-head MAC to RIC or RTC regimens mostly confirming the above findings. A French well-designed two-arm study compared BU/FLU to TBI (low dose)/FLU demonstrating less RI with the BU/FLU regimen but higher TRM resulting in similar LFS and OS (Blaise et al. 2013). Similarly, a German randomized study compared RIC regimen of four doses of 2 Gy of TBI and 150 mg/m² FLU versus MAC of six doses of 2 Gy of TBI and 120 mg/kg CY demon-
strating reduced toxicity in the RIC arm but similar RI, TRM, LFS, and OS between both study arms (Bornhäuser et al. 2012). These results were recently confirmed with longer follow-up.

Finally, a recent CTN phase III randomized trial compared MAC (BU/CY, FLU/BU, or CY/TBI) with RIC (FLU/BU or FLU/MEL) in patients with AML and MDS (Scott et al. 2017). RIC resulted in lower TRM but higher RI compared with MAC, with a statistically significant advantage in RFS and a trend to an advantage in OS with MAC. Another randomized study comparing RIC and MAC in patients with MDS demonstrated similar 2-year RFS and OS with no difference between the two conditioning regimens (Kröger et al. 2017). As for the issue of higher risk of RI post RIC, novel immunological and pharmacologic approaches are being currently explored (as will be discussed in Chap. 69). Treatment options include second HSCT or DLI with similar results (Kharfan-Dabaja et al. 2018).

13.5 Conditioning Regimens for Allo-HSCT from Alternative Donors: MMUD, CB, and Haploidentical

Historically, these types of allo-HSCT were the most challenging ones with relatively high incidence of non-engraftment and high TRM. Notably, recent development in the field of transplantation including novel conditioning regimens resulted in major improvement in the results of allo-HSCT from alternative donors with the haplo-HSCT being of the most interest (Lee et al. 2017). A key component of the conditioning regimen for MMUD and haplo-HSCT is ATG, recently reviewed for the ALWP of the EBMT (Baron et al. 2017). In previous well-designed randomized clinical trials in allo-HSCT from URD and in a single study also from MSD, ATG was demonstrated to reduce GVHD and TRM without jeopardizing the GVL effect, and thus there is no increase in RI (Baron et al. 2017).

In contrast and somewhat still puzzling in CBT, ATG is a negative factor associated with decreased OS and EFS rates and a high incidence of NRM (Pascal et al. 2015).

In an analysis performed by Eurocord, the MAC regimen for CBT included TBI 12 Gy—or BU—with or without FLU, TBI 12 Gy + CY, and more recently TBF (TT, BU, FLU) (Ruggeri et al. 2014). Comparing these regimens in single (s) (with \( >2.5 \times 10^7 \) cells/kg) and double (d) CBT resulted in similar outcomes, NRM and RI incidence, which were not statistically different among the groups. LFS was 30% for sUCBT using TBI- or BU-based MAC compared with 48% for sUCBT TBF and 48% for dUCBT \((P = 0.02\) and \(P = 0.03\), respectively), and it was not statistically different between sUCBT with TBF and dUCBT. They concluded that the choice of TBF conditioning regimen for sUCBT may improve results, and whether this regimen may be effective in dUCBT should be further analyzed (Ruggeri et al. 2014). In the haploidentical setting, the field moved from T-depleted to T-repleted haplo-HSCT and in recent years from ATG-based anti-GVHD prophylaxis to PT-CY pioneered by the Baltimore group (reviewed in Lee et al. 2017). Initial conditioning protocols in the Baltimore approach were RIC with BM grafts, but subsequently MAC regimens and PB grafts were introduced. In recent years, the TBF conditioning is increasingly used for haplo-HSCT in Europe. Similarly, the PT-CY strategy for GVHD prophylaxis is being adopted to allo-HSCT from MUD, MMUD, and sibling donors (Ruggeri et al. 2018). In general comparing RIC to MAC for MMUD, CBT, and haplo-HSCT demonstrated in large similar transplantation global outcome for RIC versus MAC with some differences in the various alternative donors (Baron et al. 2016). For example, in the allo-HSCT from MMUD in patients >50 years, RIC resulted in reduced TRM and better LFS and OS in comparison to MAC, while in those <50 years, no difference was observed (Savani et al. 2016). In CBT, RIC resulted in a higher RI and a lower NRM, translating to comparable LFS, GVHD
and relapse-free survival (GRFS), and OS (Baron et al. 2016). In the haplo-setting, no significant difference was observed (Rubio et al. 2016).

13.6 Preparative Conditioning for Autologous HSCT

Auto-HSCT are performed mainly for malignant lymphoma and MM. The most popular conditioning protocol for auto-HSCT in lymphoma is BEAM (BCNU, VP, Ara-C, and MEL) (Mills et al. 1995) or BEAC (with CY instead of MEL), while some centers substitute the BCNU with TT (the so-called TEAM or TECAM protocol), especially in patients with pulmonary problems in order to prevent the BCNU-mediated lung toxicity. Others tried to replace the BCNU by bendamustine (the so-called BeEAM protocol). Adding anti-CD20 radiolabeled MoAb like yttrium-90-ibritumomab tiuxetan (Zevalin) to the condition improved results in some studies, but a large randomized multicenter study with 131I-tositumomab (Bexxar) was negative (Vose et al. 2013).

As for auto-HSCT in MM, high-dose MEL has been shown to be superior to TBI/MEL. Recently some centers incorporated IV BU into the auto-HSCT in MM, while others included BOR. The numbers of auto-HSCT in acute leukemia went down in the last two decades in parallel to the increase in the numbers of allo-HSCT with RIC and from alternative donors (Gorin et al. 2015). The most popular preparative regimen for AML is BU/CY. Recently on behalf of the ALWP of the EBMT, we demonstrated that BU/MEL is a better preparative regimen as compared to BU/CY with lower RI, better LFS and OS, and no difference in TRM. Similar results were obtained in the subgroup of patients with high-risk AML. Patients with negative MRD before auto-HSCT did better (Gorin et al. 2017).

Key Points

- Conditioning regimens are integral and important part of HSCT enabling engraftment and provide an antitumor effect.
- The conditioning regimen pretransplantation should take into consideration patient and disease characteristics including age, comorbidities, disease status, and most probably measurable residual disease.
- Conditioning regimens may include irradiation, chemotherapy, serotherapy, monoclonal antibodies, and targeted therapy which varied in different malignancies and types of donors.
- The dose intensity of the pre-HSCT conditioning varied between MAC, RTC, RIC, and NMA in decreasing intensity order.
- The NMA and RIC significantly reduced transplant-related organ toxicity and mortality enabling transplant in elderly and medically infirm patients.
- The conditioning regimens for allo-HSCT from cord blood and haploidentical donors are somewhat specific.

References


Open Access. This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
14.1 Introduction

Historically, the bone marrow (BM) has been the first source of stem cells considered since the early 1960s for HSCT (Santos 1990; Thomas et al. 1979; Mathe 1964; Gorin et al. 1990). Parallel attempts at using fetal liver cells at that time have remained unsuccessful. In 1986 the first success of an unrelated cord blood (UCB) transplantation in a child promoted UCB (Gluckman et al. 1997) as an alternative source in certain settings.

Since 1994 and the initial demonstration that PBSC mobilized by cytokines (G-CSF first and more recently when needed plerixafor) could be used as well as BM, the proportion of PB transplants has considerably increased to reach about 70–95% of all stem cell transplants (Passweg et al. 2012, 2016), so that nowadays BM transplantation accounts for a minority of transplants.

There remain however several situations where and when a marrow harvest can still be of interest or even is highly recommended.

This chapter indicates the principal indications of BM transplantation, compares schematically the advantages of BM versus PB, and details the technique of BM harvesting.

14.2 Indications for Considering and Possibly Selecting BM as a Preferred Source of HSC

It is not the purpose of this chapter to review the benefit/risk ratio of BM versus peripheral mobilized blood as sources of HSC. Several studies, including prospective randomized studies, have shown in general with BM when compared to PB slower engraftment but lower incidence and lower severity of acute and chronic GVHD with in the end similar disease free and overall survivals (Schmitz et al. 2005). However, some retrospective studies for both auto- and allo-HSCT have shown better survival with rich BM collections (Gorin et al. 2003) or BM versus PB (Gorin et al. 2009, 2010). Also, the quality of life has not been carefully analyzed (Sun et al. 2010), and further studies may be in favor of BM (Ruggeri et al. 2018; Lee et al. 2016).

Time and cost constraints have however in general favored leukaphereses and PB transplants which represent about 95% of all auto-HSCT and 70% of allo-HSCT (Passweg et al. 2016). Table 14.1 lists the situations when nowadays marrow may appear as a better choice.

For allo-HSCT, BM is preferred/mandatory whenever the wish to reduce toxicity, NRM, and most of all GVHD (particularly extensive chronic)
is considered as priority, such as for children with aplastic anemia and for some teams for haploidentical transplantation (see Table 14.1). The outcome considered to favor this choice is the GRFS (GVHD and relapse-free survival) as defined by EBMT (Ruggeri et al. 2016).

Conversely, PB can be a first choice in patients with hematological malignancies at high or very high risk of progression/relapse, such as AML FLT3ITD positive, lymphomas in progression after relapse from auto-HSCT, etc. for whom the risk of relapse is considered as first priority despite the risk of increasing NRM. Usually, this choice is made in parallel to the decision whether the conditioning regimen should be MAC or RIC (Gilleece et al. 2018).

For autologous HSCT (Table 14.2) the two major reasons for using BM are autologous transplantation for AML in remission and attempts at increasing the stem cell dose infused following poor marrow collections.

### 14.3 Mobilized or Primed Marrow

Following the discovery of cytokines, G-CSF in particular, the use of BM collected after 2–4 days of GCSF administration has been investigated in the year 2000–2005. G-CSF-primed marrow harvesting results in a graft with more mononuclear cells collected and higher CD34(+) stem and progenitor cell doses (Grupp et al. 2006). The clinical significance of different HSC sources (primed marrow, mobilized blood, and steady-state marrow) in auto- and allo-HSCT was reviewed in 2004 (Elfenbein and Sackstein 2004). Mobilized marrow speeds up engraftment for both auto- and allo-HSCT, with a possible (unproven) reduction of GVHD rate and severity. Its use nowadays is rare, but it is for some teams the preferred stem cell source or part of a combination of primed marrow + PB as stem cell source for haploidentical donor transplantation (Huang et al. 2009; Ly et al. 2015).

### 14.4 Technique of BM Collection and Impact of the Dose of Nucleated Cells Infused

Marrow is collected from the posterior superior iliac crests, usually under general anesthesia, although few teams have used sedation or locoregional anesthesia (Fig. 14.1).

Marrow is aspirated with bone needles with multiple holes all around, which makes collection easier and the procedure more rapid. However, to avoid large dilution with blood, it is recommended to limit each aspiration to a volume of less than 5 mL, before transferring the

| **Table 14.1** Preferences for BM as source of stem cells in ALLO-HSCT |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| **Allo-HSCT** | **Rationale** | **Justification 1** | **Justification 2** | **Reference** |
| Children donors and/or recipients | Administration of GCSF to and leukapheresis of the donor more difficult to set | More cGVHD and NRM after PB compared with BM | In some countries, the use of GCSF (and plerixafor) is not allowed in children | Simonin et al. (2017) |
| Aplastic anemia | BM mandatory, associated with better results | Higher risk of GVHD with PB | Included in EBMT and CIBMTR guidelines | Bhella et al. (2018), Schrezenmeier et al. (2007), Bacigalupo et al. (2012), Eapen et al. (2011), and Barone et al. (2015) |
| MAC with a MUD and no ATG | BM associated with better results and less cGVH | Randomized trial with no ATG showing less cGVH and better QOL with BM | If a suitable BM donor is available. Otherwise PB with ATG | Anasetti et al. (2012), Lee et al. (2016), Eapen et al. (2007), and Walker et al. (2016) |
| Haploidentical transplantation | BM or combination of PB and BM favored by some teams | Team choice or clinical trial | High-dose CY for GVH prevention | Kasamon et al. (2017) and Luznik et al. (2010) |
aspirate through a three-way tap to the collection bag. The collection bag contains ACD anticoagulant solution and the syringes are rinsed with heparin (5,000 U/mL).

The goal is nowadays to obtain typically at least $3 \times 10^8$ nucleated cells/kg, although $2 \times 10^8$ nucleated cells/kg has long been in the past the usual target and remains acceptable. However, it should be kept in mind that old studies in the early development of BMT have indicated better results both in terms of engraftment but also decrease in NRM and RI and better outcome, with higher marrow doses (Gorin et al. 1999, 2003; Sierra et al. 1997):

- For Allo-HSCT with identical siblings, an early EBMT retrospective study evaluated the impact of the marrow cell dose infused: The median BM cell dose was $2.7 \times 10^8$/kg (0.17–29 $\times 10^8$/kg). In multivariate analyses, high-dose BM compared to PB was associated with lower NRM, better LFS, and better OS ($RR = 0.64$; 95% CI, 0.44–0.92; $P = 0.016$). Results in patients with AML receiving allografts in CR1 indicated a better outcome with BM as compared to PB, when the dose of BM infused was above the median value.
- For Allo-HSCT fully with matched unrelated donors (Sierra et al. 1997), transplantation of a marrow cell dose above the median value of $3.65 \times 10^8$/kg was associated with faster neutrophil and platelet engraftment and decreased incidence of severe acute GVHD. Transplant in remission of acute leukemia with a high dose of marrow cells was associated with the best outcome in both children and adults.

If the targeted goal cannot be achieved, additional collection can be made from the anterior iliac crests, although it is time consuming and potentially more harmful for the patient or the donor, who must be turned over with all sterile fields to be reinstalled.

All things considered the maximum accepted volume collected should not go over 20 mL/kg donor body weight. Depending on the volume collected, three attitudes regarding transfusion during marrow collection may be followed: no transfusion and liquid replacement is the first option for many teams. Autotransfusion (to prepare beforehand in the 3 weeks preceding marrow collection, which adds some constraint) is the other recommended transfusional option. In rare circumstances allo-transfusion remains possible; usually two packs of concentrated red cells are enough.

Another option to consider to increase the stem cell dose to infuse when marrow collection has been insufficiently productive is the addition of PBSC. This however can be a complex decision which should take into account the disease and disease status, whether it concerns an autograft or an allograft or in this last situation whether a possible increase in the incidence and severity of GVHD associated with GVL/tumor is potentially beneficial or harmful. Two examples of this dilemma are summarized below:

1. In the context of auto-HSCT for leukemias or lymphomas, when analyzing patients receiving combinations of BM and PBSC (either because PBSC were collected to supplement poor BM or the reverse), outcomes are poor. One likely explanation is the existence of a bias since in most of these patients, poor collections (either BM or PBSC or both) are surrogate markers of multiple previous lines of chemotherapy for resistant/progressing diseases.

2. In contrast, for some teams, the combination of BM and PBSC has become the standard stem cell source for HSCT (see Table 14.1).
### Complications of Bone Marrow Collections

One cannot ignore that on theoretical grounds two major hazards of marrow collection although very rare are death secondary to general anesthesia (<1/200,000) and major organ damage by mechanical mismanipulation of the bone needles that may sideslip if sufficient expertise and caution are not present.

The NMDP analyzed in 1993, 493 volunteers who donated unrelated marrow from October 1991 in 42 centers (Stroncek et al. 1993). The median volume of marrow collected was 1050 mL (range 180–2983 mL). Autologous red blood cells were transfused to 90% of donors, but only three donors received allogeneic blood. Apnea during anesthesia occurred in one donor. Other acute complications related to the collection procedure occurred in 6% of donors. Following marrow collection 75% experienced tiredness, 68% experienced pain at the marrow collection site, and 52% of the donors experienced low back pain. Mean recovery time was 16 days, but 42 donors felt that it took them at least 30 days to recover fully. The duration of the marrow collection procedure and duration of anesthesia both positively correlated with donor pain and/or fatigue following the collection. The recommendation of this study was the duration of the collection procedure and probably the duration of anesthesia, and therefore the volume of marrow collected should be kept to a minimum, but this conclusion is to be weighed against the wish to collect stem cell doses as high as possible to ensure fast engraftment and improve outcome.

### Bone Marrow Cryopreservation

In the context of auto-HSCT, BM and PBSC are almost always cryopreserved and stored either in liquid nitrogen (−196 °C) or the gas phase of liquid nitrogen (−140 °C). The technique of freezing at −1 °C/min with dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) and the technique of rapid thawing are well established (Gorin 1986). Harmless long duration of storage has been reported up to 11 years (Aird et al. 1992). Recently some attempts at avoiding cryopreservation to replace it by storage at 4 °C in the refrigerator have produced interesting results, but using refrigerator storage is not presently validated and cannot be recommended by EBMT (Sarmiento et al. 2018).

Cryopreservation and storage of a marrow in view of an allo-HSCT is possible. However, it should be kept in mind that any cryopreservation procedure, would it seem perfect, results in some measurable (CFU-GM, BFU-E) and many less measurable (immune functions, etc.) damages. Therefore, it should be reserved to special situations when, for instance, the donor cannot be available at the very time of the transplantation procedure. As a rule, fresh marrow is preferable to frozen marrow.

### Quality Control for BM Harvesting and Cryopreservation

The major indicator for successful BM collection is the dose collected, as discussed above, i.e., the number of nucleated cells expressed per kg of

---

**Table 14.2** Preferences for BM as source of stem cells in AUTO-HSCT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auto-HSCT</th>
<th>Rationale</th>
<th>Justification</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Poor PB collection</td>
<td>Increase the dose of HSC in the autograft</td>
<td>Ensure safer engraftment</td>
<td>However, poor mobilizers are likely to also produce poor marrow collection*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AML</td>
<td>Outcome better when compared to PB</td>
<td>Several EBMT retrospective studies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Although there are biases, data from the EBMT registry indicate that poor mobilizers (often previously heavily treated with chemotherapy) have a poor outcome Shouval et al. (2018)
body weight for the recipient. It is very usual to have a blood count done at the mid time of the collection to ensure proper richness. With a goal of a minimum of $3 \times 10^8$ nucleated cells/kg, any richness above this value can be seen as a bonus. Harvest below this level, around $2 \times 10^8$ or even lower, however has been associated with correct engraftment.

CD34+ evaluation is not routinely performed for BM, while it is the rule for PB.

For cryopreserved marrow, some teams routinely cryopreserve small samples in minibags or ampoules, enabling viability testing before thawing the graft (usually an autograft). However, and importantly, a technical bias has been observed with ampoules since differences in cooling rates prevent ampoules from being a reliable index of HSC cryopreservation in large volumes (Douay et al. 1986a).

More pertinent testing consists in the evaluation of CFU-GM which represents in this setting the most reliable functional viability indicator (Douay et al. 1986b). Although there is no guideline, experience has shown that the results in CFU-GM/kg are about 1–1.5 log below the expected or calculated results in CD34+ cells /kg (therefore expressed in $10^5$/kg). CFU-GM evaluation is not a consensual prerequisite since it is an additional time-consuming effort, but it may bring important information in some cases, for instance, when dealing with marrow collections below $2 \times 10^8$/kg.

### 14.8 Conclusions

PB collections and transplantation nowadays represent 70–90% of all stem cell sources for transplants.

However, BM transplantation has not disappeared and is likely to persist in some limited situations and indications.

Further studies may revisit and increase the choice of marrow as stem cell source.

---

#### The Five Key Points of Marrow Collection

- Harvest with small (2–5 mL) aspirate volumes to avoid dilution with blood.
- The goal should be at least $3 \times 10^8$ nucleated cells per kg, but the more the better. The maximum volume collected should not go over 20 mL/kg donor body weight. Decision for no transfusion with liquid replacement (recommended) or autotransfusion (second best option) or in rare cases Allo-transfusion during collection relies on the judgment of the local medical team.
- Cryopreservation is the rule for auto-BMT, while it should be avoided and used only in rare specific conditions for allogeneic transplantation.
- BM is mandatory in children and patients with aplastic anemias. It is presently favored by some teams in the context of haploidentical transplantation.
- BM when compared with PBSC results in less NRM, less GVHD (in particular less chronic extensive GVHD), but less GVL/lymphoma/tumor effect.

---

#### References


and marrow transplantation and Canadian blood and marrow transplant group’s list of 5 tests and treatments to question in blood and marrow transplantation. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2018;24:909–13.


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Mobilization and Collection of HSC

Kai Hübel

15.1 Introduction

The intravenous infusion of patient’s own HSC to restore BM damage is the basic principle of high-dose chemotherapy, since otherwise the patient would expect long-lasting aplasia with life-threatening infections. Therefore, a sufficient collection of HSC before application of high-dose therapy is mandatory. Since HSC expresses CD34 on their surface, the number of CD34+ cells in the transplant material is considered as an indicator of the HSC content.

In principle, there are two ways how to collect stem cell: by repeated aspiration of BM from the pelvic crest or by leukapheresis after mobilization of HSC into the PB. The latter one is favored and considered as standard because it is less stressful for the patient and leads to faster engraftment and hematologic reconstitution which may improve patient outcomes (Gertz 2010).

Usually, HSC circulates in a very small number in the PB. Therefore, mobilization of HSC from the BM to the PB is an essential part of auto-HSCT programs. Following sufficient mobilization, patient will need leukapheresis which is often performed by central lines to facilitate the procedure. Finally, HSC will be cryopreserved using dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) until transfusion.

15.2 Strategies of Mobilization

There are two different strategies to mobilize HSC from the BM to the PB: the so-called “steady-state” mobilization and the mobilization by chemotherapy.

15.2.1 Mobilization Without Chemotherapy (“Steady State”)

Using this approach, HSC will be mobilized by the use of cytokines only. The only recommended cytokine for mobilization is G-CSF, since GM-CSF is no longer available in many countries after commercial failure and withdrawal. G-CSF induces myeloid hyperplasia and the release of CD34+ cells into the circulation through proteolytic cleavage of adhesion molecules (Lapidot and Petit 2002). Currently, the G-CSF cytokines filgrastim and lenograstim have market approval for mobilization of HSC in Europe.

The recommended doses are filgrastim 10 μg/kg/day SC for 5–7 consecutive days and lenograstim 10 μg/kg/day SC for 4–6 consecutive days. The use of biosimilar G-CSF has equivalent efficacy (Schmitt et al. 2016).

K. Hübel (*)
University of Cologne, Department of Internal Medicine, Cologne, Germany
e-mail: kai.huebel@uni-koeln.de

© EBMT and the Author(s) 2019
E. Carreras et al. (eds.), The EBMT Handbook, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-02278-5_15
Leukapheresis usually is performed on day 5 independent whether filgrastim or lenograstim was used for mobilization. The measurement of CD34+ cells in the PB before leukapheresis is not mandatory but could help to estimate the expected collection yield and the duration of leukapheresis. If the number of cells collected is inadequate, mobilization with G-CSF may be continued for 1–2 days. However, if the collection goal is not reached after the third leukapheresis, a successful mobilization is unlikely.

The major advantages of steady-state mobilization are the relatively low toxicity, the predictable time of leukapheresis, the outpatient administration, and the reduced costs compared to chemo-mobilization. The major disadvantages are variable mobilization failure rates and the lower CD34+ cell yields compared to chemo-mobilization. Mobilization with G-CSF only may be used in patients without further need of chemotherapy, e.g., in patients with a stable remission of the underlying disease.

### 15.2.2 Mobilization with Chemotherapy

The use of chemotherapy in combination with G-CSF is the preferred way of mobilization for all patients who will need further decrease of tumor burden and/or who have to collect a high number of HSC.

CY in a dose of 2–4 g/m² is widely used for HSC mobilization. It is also possible to mobilize HSC not by a separate chemotherapy but as part of the disease-specific chemotherapy, e.g., to mobilize HSC following salvage treatment with R-DHAP or R-ICE in lymphoma patients. The choice of a specific chemo-mobilization approach is based on patient’s disease characteristics and local clinical practice guidelines.

Approved doses of G-CSF for HSC mobilization after myelosuppressive therapy are filgrastim 5 μg/kg/day SC and lenograstim 150 μg/m²/day SC. There are reports of the use of higher doses of G-CSF (Romeo et al. 2010), but there are no randomized trials and additional side effects are possible. Mobilization with G-CSF should start after completion of chemotherapy at the earliest and at the leukocyte nadir at the latest and should continue until the last leukapheresis. Most protocols recommend the initiation of G-CSF within 1–5 days after the end of chemotherapy.

The major advantage of adding chemotherapy to cytokines, besides the effect on the tumor, is the expected improvement of the collection yield with fewer apheresis sessions (Sung et al. 2013). The major disadvantages of chemo-mobilization are the therapy-related toxicity, the requirement of in-hospital treatment in most cases, the bone marrow damage by the chemotherapy which may impair future mobilizations, and higher mobilization costs. Furthermore, an exact prognosis of the CD34+ cell peak in the PB and the optimal start of leukapheresis are difficult and require daily monitoring of CD34+ cells in the PB. Table 15.1 summarizes a recommendation of timing of G-CSF following most used chemotherapy regimens and start of monitoring of CD34+ cells in the PB.

In several clinical trials, it was documented that relapse rate after auto-HSCT following mobilization with and without chemotherapy is comparable (Tuchman et al. 2015).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemotherapy</th>
<th>Start G-CSF</th>
<th>Start CD34+ monitoring</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CY 2 g/m²</td>
<td>Day 5</td>
<td>Day 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAD</td>
<td>Day 9</td>
<td>Day 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(R)CHOP/CHOEP</td>
<td>Day 6</td>
<td>Day 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(R)DHAP</td>
<td>Day 9</td>
<td>Day 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(R)ICE</td>
<td>Day 6</td>
<td>Day 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(R)AraC/TT</td>
<td>Day 5</td>
<td>Day 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Day 1: first day of chemotherapy application (without rituximab). Adapted from (Kriegsmann et al. 2018).
15.3 CD34+ Cell Count and Timing of Leukapheresis

Up to date, CD34+ cell count in mobilized peripheral blood product is the most important parameter of graft quality, as it is the only recognized predictor of stable hematopoietic engraftment after auto-HSCT (Saraceni et al. 2015). Monitoring of CD34+ cells in the PB is optional in steady-state mobilization but an essential part of chemo-mobilization. Following chemotherapy, the daily measurement of leukocytes and thrombocytes is recommended. If not otherwise specified by the protocol, CD34 monitoring should be initiated at the latest if leukocytes increase up to 1000/μL during recovering from aplasia. This increase of leukocytes is mostly accompanied with an increase of thrombocytes. A prompt start of leukapheresis is required of CD34+ cell count of ≥20/μL (Mohty et al. 2014); for more details, please see Sect. 15.6.

15.4 Target HSC Collection Count

The target quantity of HSC to be collected is dependent on the underlying disease. Most patients with NHL or HL (expect for rare case of patients with HL who require double auto-HSCT) will need one autograft. The generally accepted minimum CD34+ cell yield to proceed to transplantation is 2 × 10^6 cells/kg (Mohty et al. 2014); however, higher yields of 4–5 × 10^6 CD34+ cells/kg are aimed for at many centers since they have been associated with faster neutrophil and platelet recovery, reduced hospitalization, blood transfusions, and antibiotic therapy (Stiff et al. 2011; Giralt et al. 2014). Patients mobilizing >8–10 × 10^6 cells/kg are called “super mobilizer”; however, the reported positive effect after infusion of such a high number of HSC on the outcome and prognosis of the patient is highly speculative. For patients with a chance of two or even more transplantations (mainly patients with MM), it is essential to collect the required number of HSC before the first high-dose therapy since mobilization after high-dose therapy has an increased risk of failure. For tandem transplantation, the required cell dose for one transplantation is also at least 2 × 10^6 CD34+ cells/kg.

15.5 Leukapheresis

Collection of peripheral HSC for auto-HSCT is a well-established process. The duration of one leukapheresis session should not exceed 5 h, and the total number of leukapheresis session should not exceed four procedures since more sessions are useless in most cases and will stress the patient. CD34+ cell collection has been shown to be more effective with larger apheresis volume (4.0–5.3 times the patient’s total blood volume), and no difference in CD34+ cell viability was observed compared with normal-volume apheresis (2.7–3.5 times the patient’s total blood volume) (Abrahamsen et al. 2005). Enhanced volumes are especially recommended for patients with a high risk of mobilization failure or for patients with a high individual CD34+ cell collection goal. However, not all patients are eligible for enhanced volume strategies. Larger transfusion volumes and related higher DMSO contents have been associated with increased risk of cardiac side effects (Donmez et al. 2007).

15.6 Poor Mobilizer

Despite widespread and established practice, current mobilization strategies vary between centers and differ in terms of feasibility and outcome. Although the majority of patients are able to mobilize sufficient CD34+ cells for at least a single auto-HSCT, approximately 15% fail to do so (Wuchter et al. 2010).
Poor mobilizers are usually defined as patients with less than $2 \times 10^6$ CD34+ cells/kg collected or patients mobilizing less than 10–20 CD34+ cells/µL into the PB. In general, there are two groups of poor mobilizers: predicted poor mobilizers and proven poor mobilizers (Olivieri et al. 2012). Proven poor mobilizers have low CD34+ peripheral counts circulating or do not achieve adequate HSC on day 1 of apheresis. Based on CD34+ cells, it is possible to identify the following subgroups: “borderline poor mobilizer” (11–19 CD34+ cells/µL), “relative poor mobilizer” (6–10 CD34+ cells/µL), and “absolute poor mobilizer” (0–5 CD34+ cells/µL) (Wuchter et al. 2010). If a patient has $\geq 20$ CD34+ cells/µL at time of apheresis, the collection process should start. Between 15 and 20 CD34+ cells/µL, collection might be sufficient if not more than two transplantations are planned and the patient has no risk factors for poor mobilization (see below).

Otherwise, the use of plerixafor (recommended dose 0.24 mg/kg/day SC) should be considered. If a patient has 10–15 CD34+ cells/µL, plerixafor application should be discussed. Below 10 CD34+ cells/µL, the use of plerixafor is clearly indicated to avoid mobilization failure. That means that there is a “gray area” between 10 and 20 CD34+ cells/µL, and the decision to use plerixafor in this situation is based on disease characteristics and treatment history (Fig. 15.1). Furthermore, if it is not possible to collect at least one third of the collection goal with the first apheresis, plerixafor should be applied because of high risk of mobilization failure (Mohty et al. 2014; Cheng et al. 2015).

Predicted poor mobilizers are defined by baseline patient or disease characteristics which are

---

**Fig. 15.1** Proactive intervention to rescue mobilization failure (Adapted from Mohty et al. 2014). *No active intervention required*
Table 15.2 Factors described as predictive of poor mobilization or mobilization failure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk factors for poor mobilization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age &gt;60 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced stage of underlying disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High number of prior treatment lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Therapy with fludarabine, melphalan, and lenalidomide (controversial)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low CD34+ cell count before apheresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low platelet count before mobilization (controversial)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adapted from (Mohty et al. 2014)

associated with poor mobilization. These factors are listed in Table 15.2. In patients with one or more of these risk factors, the preemptive use of plerixafor should be considered. It is generally accepted that the most robust predictive factor for poor mobilization is the CD34+ cell count in PB before apheresis.

The use of plerixafor is not only valuable to avoid a failed mobilization in the described risk groups, but it has also a documented effect on the resources of the centers. With the use of plerixafor, patients spend less time on apheresis with less blood volume processed and collect more CD34+ cells with the first apheresis, leading to a decreased number of apheresis sessions needed (Mohty et al. 2018). This has a direct effect on reducing mobilization costs. In case of a failed first mobilization attempt, the use of plerixafor for remobilization is clearly indicated (Hubel et al. 2011).

15.7 Future Directions

At this time, the number of CD34+ cells in the graft is the major and most important indicator for graft quality. A sufficient number of CD34+ cells are essential to overcome the toxicity of high-dose chemotherapy and to facilitate hematopoietic recovery. However, there is an increasing understanding that other graft subsets, e.g., CD34+ subpopulations or immune cell subsets (B cells, T cells, NK cells, dendritic cells), influence immune recovery. There are also reports that the mobilization regimen has a major impact on graft immune composition and patient’s outcome (Saraceni et al. 2015). Therefore, stem cell mobilization could not only be an important part of high-dose therapies but could also be part of an effective immunotherapy. The delineation of this approach has just began.

Key Points

- Mobilization with chemotherapy plus G-CSF is the preferred method for patients who will need decrease of tumor burden or who have to collect a high number of HSC.
- Up to date, CD34+ cell count in the PB is the most important parameter of graft quality.
- The required HSC dose for one transplantation is at least $2 \times 10^6$ CD34+ cells/kg.
- The indication for the use of plerixafor depends on the CD34+ cell count in the PB, the collection goal, the collection yield with the first apheresis, and/or the presence of risk factors.

References

16.1 Introduction

Collecting or harvesting HSCs from children is a challenge, not only because children have different physiological and therefore anatomical situations but also because psychological, legal and ethical concerns in minors are sometimes more difficult compared to adult donors. In addition, parents and/or legal guardians have to be addressed in all issues. This chapter will focus on the technical, physiological, and ethical problems in the field of HSC collection from children rather than indications.

The main difference to the adult setting is the small bodyweight; the difficulties in accessing venous access, especially in the leukapheresis setting; and the need for blood cell substitution in case of BM harvest. In children the indications for autologous HSC harvesting is well-established (Passweg et al. 2014). Using children in the allogeneic setting as donors is a complete different issue (Bitan et al. 2016). Children should not donate HSCs if a comparable compatible adult volunteer HSC donor is available, if the indication for the stem cell therapy is not first line, or if the therapy is experimental (Sheldon 2004; Zinner 2004).

The main resources to harvest HSCs are BM and PBSCs. The basic techniques are quite similar to the techniques used in adults. For BM collection punctures of the iliac crests or in very small children, the tibia is used. For harvesting HSCs from the PB, leukapheresis is used with the same apheresis systems as in adults.

To perform these procedures in children, physicians and nursing practitioners must have working knowledge about the normal age-dependent physiological parameters, like vital signs, growth, and psychological and motorical development, and should be trained in the communication with children, parents, and/or their legal guardians (Anthias et al. 2016).

16.2 Bone Marrow Harvest
(See Chap. 14)

The collection of HSCs from the BM is the historical oldest technique. Multiple punctures of the iliac crest are performed in general anesthesia by experienced physicians and practitioners. The bone marrow is harvested by aspirations through adequately dimensioned needles. In very small children and if the iliac crest is anatomically not suitable for punctures, the aspirations could also be performed by punctures of the proximal tibia.
For successful HSCT, it is necessary to obtain enough progenitor cells during the BM harvesting procedure. Most centers are using multiple aspirations of maximum 2 mL BM, while other centers are using few larger amount aspirations for BM harvesting (20–100–250 mL). It could be shown that the latter methods result in comparable grafts for transplantation (Witt et al. 2016). For some young donors with anatomically tiny situations or in diseases where a suitable donor should be used for more than one recipient a minimal harming procedure is warranted for the bone marrow harvest (Biral et al. 2008; Furey et al. 2018).

More recently, adult donors have received G-CSF because stimulated BM is richer in HSCs and therefore results in quicker engraftment (Ji et al. 2002). Experience with G-CSF-mobilized BM in pediatrics is limited. Recent data showed that a dose of 3–5 × 10^6 CD34+ HPC/kg of recipient bodyweight is the optimal CD34+ cell dose infused to attain GVHD relapse-free survival in children with an HLA-matched sibling donor. A higher CD34+ cell dose did not impact clinical outcome. G-CSF-primed BM harvest might have a better impact on smaller amount of BM harvest volume needed for a sufficient stem cell graft, but the study was underpowered to give an answer on this urgent question (Frangoul et al. 2007; Furey et al. 2018).

16.3 Peripheral Blood Stem Cell Harvest

PBSCs are harvested by leukapheresis in very small children even below 6 kg bodyweight and are described since the 1990s of the last century (Kanold et al. 1994; Klingebiel et al. 1995; Diaz et al. 1996; Moon et al. 2013). Special experience and techniques are required to perform safe leukapheresis procedures in pediatric patients using apheresis systems which are constructed for the use in adults. Due to the large extracorporeal volume of the apheresis systems available on the market (ca. 160–220 mL), there is a need to calculate the expected blood loss in the set during procedure (Witt et al. 2007). This has to be done in each procedure to decide whether a priming of the set is needed with blood (Moon et al. 2013). In most of the newest versions of the apheresis systems, an algorithm guides the user through this pediatric priming procedure. For priming only irradiated and leukodepleted packed RBCs should be used.

In order to gain enough flow for the apheresis systems in very small children, a central venous catheter is needed, but also alternative line management with arterial lines is possible (Goldstein 2012; Even-Or et al. 2013; Hunt et al. 2013). It is important to know that in reports from registries, up to 50% of vascular access lines were peripheral venous access lines only in pediatric patients (Witt et al. 2008). For anticoagulation, citrate is used even in very small children. To avoid side effect, a calcium substitution is recommended (Kreuzer et al. 2011; Maitta et al. 2014).

For mobilization of the HPC into the PB, the longest experience exists with G-CSF in combination with chemotherapy in the autologous setting, but also plerixafor is reported in case series as suitable and safe in the use in children (Chambon et al. 2013). As in adults, a leukapheresis should be performed if a meaningful number of CD34+ HPCs are mobilized in the peripheral blood, to achieve the harvest of 2–5 × 10^6/kg recipient with a minimum number of procedures (Fritsch et al. 2010).

16.4 Risk Analysis BM Versus PBMNC

A study from the EBMT Pediatric Diseases Working Party describes which factors influenced the safety of HSC collection. In this prospective evaluation, 453 pediatric donors were included. The children donated either BM or PBSCs according to center policy. A large variability in approach to donor issues was observed between the participating centers. Significant differences were observed between BM and PBSC donors regarding pain, need for blood allo-transfusion, duration of hospital stay, and iron supplementation; however, differences between the groups undergoing BM vs PBSC donation preclude direct risk comparisons between the two procedures. The most common adverse event was pain, reported mainly by older children after BM
harvest but also observed after CVC placement for PBSC collection. With regard to severe adverse events, one patient developed a pneumothorax with hydrothorax after CVC placement for PBSC collection. The risk of allo-transfusion after BM harvest was associated with a donor age of <4 years and a BM harvest volume of >20 mL/kg. Children <4 years were at higher risk than older children for allo-transfusion after BM harvest, and there was a higher risk of complications from CVC placement before apheresis. It was concluded that PBSC and BM collection are both safe procedures in children (Styczynski et al. 2012).

16.5 Pediatrics as Allogeneic Donors

Pediatric-aged donors vary widely in their ability to assent or consent to the risks of a donation procedure. There are key regulations and ethical imperatives, which must be addressed in deciding which donation procedure is appropriate for minors (van Walraven et al. 2013). In order to have general guidance, the American Academy of Pediatrics published in 2010 a recommendation on this issue. The authors strongly recommend the inclusion of the potential child donor in all decision-making process to the extent that they are capable. A minor’s advocate should be an independent person who will help to prevent the delay of the donation procedure (Chan and Tipoe 2013).

The decision to take a minor family donor especially in inherited diseases is complicated to the fact that phenotypically healthy or minor symptomatic siblings with mild carrier status might be eligible for the severely ill recipient. One simple example is a sibling with thalassemia minor for a recipient with a thalassemia major (Biral et al. 2008). There are many other major diseases, including primary immunodeficiencies, chronic granulomatus disease, or sickle cell disease, where carriers are used as HSC donors. Potential family sibling donors with medical or psychological reasons not to donate should not be HLA typed (Bitan et al. 2016).

Key Points

- Pediatric donors can safely donate HSCs if an experienced team is performing the harvest procedure.
- Donors below 4 years of age have a higher risk for harvest-associated complications: With BM harvest, they have a higher need for Allo-transfusions, and there is a higher risk of complications from CVC placement before apheresis.
- Minors should only be recruited as HSC donors if no medically equivalent histocompatible adult person is available for donation and if there is a reasonable likelihood that the recipient will benefit.
- An informed consent (child assent) for the HSC donation has to be obtained by the legal guardians and from the pediatric donor. A donor advocate with expertise in pediatric development should be appointed for all individuals who have not reached the age of majority and who are considered as potential HSC donor.
- Long-term follow-up data should be collected to help determine the actual medical and psychological benefits and risks of child donors.

References

Chambon F, Merlin E, Rochette E, et al. Mobilization of hematopoietic stem cells by plerixafor alone in


17.1 Assessment of HSCs by Measuring CD34 and the Presence of Other Cell Subsets

The efficiency of an autologous, as well as an allogeneic, HSCs graft is mainly determined by the number of CD34+ cells present. The dose of transplanted CD34+ cells per kg body weight (BW) determines the kinetics of the neutrophil and platelet engraftment after auto-HSCT (Weaver et al. 1995). The measurement of CD34+ cells by flow cytometry is, therefore, an important method to assess the graft quantity.

The minimal number of CD34+ cells for an autologous transplant is $\geq 2.0 \times 10^6$ CD34+ cells/kg BW. Transplants below this threshold should only be used in cases where no additional stem cell collection is feasible and there is a vital indication for the autologous stem cell transplantation. Most transplant centres regard a cell dose of 2.5–6 $\times 10^6$ CD34+ cells/kg BW as optimal, based on published clinical data (Duong et al. 2014; Perez-Simon et al. 1999; Giralt et al. 2014; Lisenko et al. 2017b; Mohty et al. 2014). For an allo-HSCT, a cell dose of $\geq 4.0 \times 10^6$ CD34+ cells/kg BW is regarded as adequate.

In the autologous setting, it has been speculated that the quality of CD34+ cells from poor mobilizers may be inferior. However, studies have found that the proportions of primitive and quiescent CD34+ subsets were comparable across mobilization groups (Jiang et al. 2012), and leukocyte and platelet recovery after transplantation was not different (Wuchter et al. 2010).

The application of plerixafor in order to overcome insufficient HSCs mobilization not only increases the number of CD34+ cells but also the proportion of more primitive HSCs subsets, the absolute lymphocyte count and the numbers of lymphocytes in various subsets (CD19+ cells, CD3+ cells, T-cells and NK-cells) in the autograft (Fruehauf et al. 2009; Taubert et al. 2011; Varmavuo et al. 2013). However, these variances do not translate into relevant clinical differences regarding haematopoietic recovery. Taken together, the graft quality from poor mobilizers can be regarded equivalent compared to that from good mobilizers, regardless of the use of plerixafor.

It was further speculated that the composition of cellular subsets in the transplant may have an influence on the haematopoietic reconstitution. However, based on the currently published data, no final conclusion can be drawn, and further investigations are warranted to determine the potential effects of autograft cell subsets on the patients’ clinical outcomes. As delineated in an EBMT position statement from 2014, determination of cell subsets other than CD34+ cells is not routinely performed in clinical practice but only...
in clinical trials (Mohty et al. 2014). Accordingly, assessment of tumour cell contamination is usually not part of the clinical routine but can be of interest in clinical trials.

17.2 HSCs Cryopreservation

HSCs should be processed and stored in accordance with the respective Medical Council, responsible local and overarching authorities as well as scientific society’s guidelines (e.g. EU: Guideline 2004/23/EG and 2006/17/EG, EU-GMP-Guideline).

If necessary, collected cells can be stored for a maximum of up to 72 h at 2–6 °C before cryopreservation. However, cryopreservation within 48 h or less is recommended to maintain an optimal viability of the cells. In the case of storage for >24 h prior to cryopreservation, the maximum nucleated cell (NC) concentration should not exceed $2 \times 10^8$/mL.

For cryopreservation, a number of different protocols are used worldwide. Usually, the maximum accepted NC concentration is $\leq 4 \times 10^8$/mL. If necessary, PBSC products can be diluted with autologous plasma or commercial resuspension medium. Increasing the cell concentration by volume depletion minimizes the number of cryostored bags needed, but the upper limit of the NC concentration needs to be considered. The final product includes 5–10% dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) as a cryoprotectant and 0.05–0.25 mL of ACD-A stabilizer solution per mL of transplant. Freezing at a controlled rate of 1–2 °C per minute is recommended. Cells need to be stored in vapour phase nitrogen at a temperature of $\leq -140$ °C. Cross-contamination while preparing and storing the cells must be prevented by taking appropriate measures.

At the time of auto-HSCT, cryopreserved bags must be thawed at the site of transplantation, and PBSCs should be reinfused within a maximum time span of 10–20 min of thawing using standard transfusion filters in order to minimize the detrimental effect of DMSO upon HSCs. Previous washing for purposes of DMSO depletion is not routinely performed, as the loss and damage of HSCs are regarded as too high.

Several studies demonstrated that under these storage conditions, CD34+ HSCs remained viable for up to 19 years (Fernyhough et al. 2013; McCullough et al. 2010; Spurr et al. 2002). In addition, a recent study demonstrated that the duration of cryostorage of the transplant had no impact on the haematologic reconstitution after transplantation (Lisenko et al. 2017a).

17.3 HSCs Quality Assessment

HSCs product quality assessment needs to be performed at several time points during cell processing and storage. Volume measurement, enumeration of NC and red blood cells and flow cytometry-based CD34+ cell quantification should be performed directly after PBSC collection in accordance with the Stem Cell Enumeration Committee Guidelines of the International Society of Hematotherapy and Graft Engineering (ISHAGE) (Sutherland et al. 1996). A validated protocol and external quality control (e.g. the round robin test) is strongly recommended (Whitby et al. 2012).

Shortly before freezing, microbiological culture samples must be obtained. NC enumeration and NC viability measurement (e.g. by staining with trypan blue, 7-aminoactinomycin D [7-AAD] or propidium iodide) should be performed from aliquots of the final cell product after freezing and thawing. This viability testing is only valid for a defined and limited time span, often 2–5 years based on local guidelines, before it needs to be repeated prior to transplantation. As a result, a sufficient number of reference samples should be prepared for each HSCs product (the recommended minimum number is 3).

Target values need to be defined for the final product, mostly in accordance with local authorities. In most transplant centres in Europe, the following criteria are mandatory (together with additional criteria) for the release of an autologous transplant: NC concentration $\leq 4 \times 10^8$/mL, CD34+ cell number $\geq 2 \times 10^6$/kg BW, red blood concentration $\leq 0.1$ mL per mL of transplant, no microbial growth and minimum NC viability of $>50\%$ after freezing and thawing.
17.4 Collection of Reference (Retention) Samples for Quality Control

Reference samples for quality control must be taken and stored from the cell product. These samples allow the proof of quality and potency of the transplant in terms of sterility, purity and viability of the cells. In the case of an allo-HSCT, reference samples may also need to be collected from the donor, depending on the respective local legal situation, to allow for a retrospective analysis in terms of serological testing.

Reference samples are prepared in parallel with the cell product and stored under the same cryoconditions until they are analysed. As a release criterion for an autologous stem cell transplant, a reference sample should be cryopreserved for >24 h under the identical conditions as the cell product before the viability of CD34+/CD45+ cells is analysed. Performing a clonogenic assay (e.g. colony-forming assay) from the reference samples can assess the haematopoietic potency of the cells. However, this is not regarded as a release criterion but should be performed for process validation or in the case of prolonged cryostorage of a transplant (>2–5 years).

The final cell product must be labelled in accordance with respective legal requirements. In order to transport cryopreserved HSCs products, a validated shipping container is required, preferably with continuous temperature monitoring. The treating physician is responsible for application of the HSCs transplant after evaluating its integrity and the accompanying documents.

Key Points

- Minimal number of CD34+ cells is ≥2.0 × 10^6/kg BW for an auto-HSCT and ≥4.0 × 10^6/kg BW for an Allo-HSCT.
- Determination of cell subsets other than CD34+ is not routinely required.
- Cryopreservation needs to be performed within 72 h, preferably <48 h.

- The maximum NC concentration in the cryostored transplant should be ≤4 × 10^8/mL.
- The final product includes 5–10% DMSO as a cryoprotectant and 0.05–0.25 mL of ACD-A stabilizer solution per ml of transplant.
- Freezing at a controlled rate of 1–2 °C per minute is recommended, and cells need to be stored in vapour phase nitrogen at a temperature of ≤−140 °C.
- NC viability should be >50% after freezing and thawing.
- At the time of ABSCT, cryopreserved bags must be thawed and reinfused within a maximum of 10–20 min of thawing.
- Reference samples for quality control must be prepared and cryostored in parallel and under identical conditions as the cell product.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Procurement and Management of Cord Blood

Sergio Querol and Vanderson Rocha

18.1 Introduction

Umbilical cord blood (UCB) cells for allogeneic use are collected and frozen in more than 130 public CB banks worldwide. More than seven hundred and fifty thousands CB units (CBU) are available for transplantation. In this chapter we will describe some procedures for cord blood collection, processing, banking and recommendations on how to choose a single or double UCB unit for transplantation (Garcia 2010).

18.2 Collection

Donor recruitment usually starts during the antenatal period, with objective information given by woman’s health-care provider. After consent, trained personnel need to determine donor eligibility to ensure that donation is safe for future patients. To assess donor eligibility, a donor medical history interview shall be conducted identifying risk factors for transmissible and genetic disease. In addition, infectious disease markers (IDM) performed to maternal blood samples will be obtained within 7 days before or after the collection of the UCB unit. These samples will be tested for evidence of infection of HIV-1, HIV-2, hepatitis B, hepatitis C, HTLV-I, HTLV-II, syphilis and any additional markers according to local regulations.

Collection must not interfere with normal delivery attention. A successful collection should have a high collection volume and a high total nucleated cell count, be non-contaminated and have the proper documentation. A UCB collection typically involves cord clamping (delayed clamping up to 1–2 min is still compatible with public donations) (Frändberg et al. 2016), disinfection, venipuncturing of umbilical vein and draining by gravity avoiding clotting. Collection bag should be appropriately labelled.

There are two main techniques to collect UCB from the cord vein: before the placenta is delivered (in utero) or after the placenta is delivered (ex utero). Both collection techniques have their own unique advantages and disadvantages, but both techniques require that the individuals performing the collections be adequately trained.

After collection, typically health-care provider will complete a report describing labour and completing variables that could be useful to release the unit like the presence of fever, complications, type of delivery, etc. In case of unexpected adverse reactions during collection they need to be communicated to the competent authority. After collection, it may be required a follow-up of the donor including health questionnaires. Additionally, if

S. Querol (✉)
Banc Sang i Teixits, Barcelona, Spain
e-mail: squerol@bst.cat

V. Rocha
University of São Paulo, São Paulo, Brazil
University of Oxford, Oxford, UK
any abnormal result is detected during testing, a counseling process should be in place.

UCB units shall be transported to the processing facility, and sometimes, these facilities could be far away from the collection sites. A validated procedure for transportation between these two facilities is needed to demonstrate a reliable method. Standard procedures shall be in place to describe time and temperature of storage and transportation methods. All transportation records shall allow tracking back from the collection site to the UCB bank, and any deviation should be recorded.

18.3 Processing and Banking

18.3.1 UCB Cell Processing

Unrelated UCB unit must arrive at the processing laboratory in time to allow initiation of cryopreservation within 48 h of collection (this time is extended to 72 h for related or directed UCB donations). The decision as to whether a collected UCB unit will be acceptable for processing and banking will be made based on the acceptance criteria specified by the UCB bank. Many banks have further refined their acceptance criteria based on economics and the desire to build an international inventory of UCB units with very high TNC or percentage of ethnic minorities. Many UCB banks are now committed to processing and storing only those UCB units with high TNC (e.g. \(>20 \times 10^7\) TNC or higher), based on the greater likelihood of these units being used (Saccardi et al. 2016).

Volume reduction of UCB is considered essential to the provision of a high-quality product and cost-effective UCB banking. Reducing the volume of the final product allows for storage efficiency in terms of space and cost and, most importantly, reduces the risk of ABO incompatibility and DMSO toxicity to the potential recipient. Despite some loss of cells, volume reduction has additional practical and clinical benefits; the process yields RBC and plasma components as waste products that can be used for immediate or future testing, thereby minimizing the loss of the actual stem cell product for testing purposes. Different methods for volume reduction are available (Hough et al. 2016).

The selection of a suitable protocol for cryopreservation of UCB for use in transplantation is critical to optimize the recovery of functionally viable progenitor cells, most of which lie within the CD34+ compartment. Some important considerations that are potential sources of cell damage include the type and concentration of cryoprotectant, the cell concentration and the cooling and warming rates. UCB units must be stored in freezing bags designed and approved for the cryopreservation of human cells and placed into metal canisters to afford protection during freezing, storage, transportation and shipping. It is important that after filling, each freezing bag is visually examined for possible leaking and breakage of seals.

UCB units should be cryopreserved using a controlled rate freezer with a validated freezing programme. Liquid nitrogen-based controlled rate freezers have been used to ensure long-term maintenance. Minimizing transient-warming events is very important for that. Stability programmes should be designed in order to establish the expiration time of the UCB stored.

18.3.2 Testing and Quality Assessment

Table 18.1 shows release specification for UCB units. Quality assessment is written below:

**Safety** It is essential that UCB is screened for those infectious diseases which can be transmitted via blood (as described above). In addition, product should be free of microbial contamination (or with an appropriate antibiogram for related uses). Prior to release for administration, each UCB unit must have undergone hemoglobinopathy screening.

**Identity** At least, HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C and DRB1 loci must be determined using DNA-based methods and result included when listing a UCB unit on the search registries. It is recommended that HLA typing is performed in an accredited laboratory. ABO blood group and Rh type must be reported prior to listing a UCB
Prior to release of a UCB unit for administration, it is imperative that HLA identity is confirmed. Ideally, confirmatory typing will be performed on a sample taken from a contiguous segment. HLA typing on maternal blood may also be performed prior to release of a UCB unit. Haplotype matching between maternal donor and infant donor confirms linkage between the two and serves as a secondary confirmation of identity.

**Purity** UCB unit specifications report total nucleated cells, total nucleated RBC count and CD34+ cells, and a cell blood count with differential should be performed, with parameters for neutrophils, lymphocytes, monocytes and platelets defined.

**Potency** Potency testing to determine the growth potential and viability of progenitor cells in a UCB unit should be performed post-processing (prior to cryopreservation), in addition to being performed on a representative thawed sample prior to release for administration.

### Table 18.1 Lists the specification requirements for CBU stored for clinical application, according to the sixth edition NetCord-FACT International Standards for Cord Blood Collection, Banking, and Release for Administration (www.factwebsite.org)

| Specification requirements for cord blood units stored for clinical administration |
| Test                                           | Unrelated specification                                             | Related specification                                             |
| Total nucleated cell count                     | Fresh post-processing sample                                        | Post-thaw attached segment or representative sample prior to release |
| Total nucleated cell recovery                  | Should be $\geq 60\%$                                              | Should be $\geq 60\%$                                            |
| Total viability                               | $\geq 85\%$                                                      | $\geq 70\%$                                                     |
| Viable CD34 count                              | $\geq 1.25 \times 10^6$                                           |                                                            |
| Viability of CD34 cells                        | $\geq 85\%$                                                      | $\geq 70\%$                                                     |
| Viability of CD45 cells                        | $\geq 40\%$                                                      | $\geq 40\%$                                                     |
| CFU (or other validated potency assay)*        | Growth (or positive result for potency)                            | Growth (or positive result for potency)                          |
| Sterility                                     | Negative for aerobes, anaerobes, fungus                            | Negative for aerobic and anaerobic bacteria and fungi—OR—identify and provide results of antibiotic sensitivities |
| Donor screening and testing                    | Acceptable as defined by Applicable Law and NetCord-FACT standards | Acceptable as defined by Applicable Law and NetCord-FACT standards |
| Identity                                      | Verified                                                         | Verified                                                        |

*There should be evidence of potency by CFU or other validated potency assay on a fresh post-processing sample.
Table 18.2 Recommendations for unrelated CBU selection and transplantation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial selection of single CBU should be based upon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) HLA matching of the recipient and CBU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) CBU collected cell dose (TNC ± CD34⁺)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Patient’s diagnosis (malignant versus non-malignant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Avoiding CBU containing Ag that match the specificity of any pre-transplant donor-specific anti-HLA Ab in the recipient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Initial selection of single CBU should be based upon**

**HLA matching**

**Malignant disorders** (Eapen et al. 2014)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HLA matching should be based upon allelic typing for HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C and HLA-DRB1 for single CBT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Select an HLA-matched (8/8) CBU. TNC dose should be ≥3 × 10⁷/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. If an HLA-matched (8/8) CBU is unavailable, select a CBU matched at 7/8 HLA loci. HLA-A or HLA-B mismatches are preferable to HLA-DRB1 mismatches. TNC dose should be ≥5 × 10⁷/kg for 5–7/8 matched units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. If a CBU matched at 8/8 or 7/8 HLA loci is unavailable, consider a CBU matched at 5 or 6/8 HLA loci. Avoid mismatches in HLA-DRB1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. If CBU 4/8 matched, CBU may rarely be considered as a single CB graft if no other option is available. TNC dose should be ≥5 × 10⁷/kg for 4/8 matched units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. CBU 3/8 HLA-matched CBU are not recommended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Non-malignant disorders** (Eapen et al. 2017)

| 1. CBU with HLA 8/8 or 7/8 give same survival results |
| 2. CBU with HLA 6/8 and 5/8 give inferior survival rates and are alternative options |
| 3. We do not recommend selecting cord blood units with more HLA disparities |

**TNC and CD34⁺ cell dose**

**Malignant disorders**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nucleated cell doseᵇ</th>
<th>At freezing, minimum TNC dose 3.0 × 10⁷/kg, or</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CD34⁺ cell doseᶜ</td>
<td>After thawing, minimum TNC of 2.0–2.5 × 10⁷/kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Non-malignant disordersᵈ**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nucleated cell dose</th>
<th>At freezing, minimum cell dose 3.5 × 10⁷/kg, or</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CD34⁺ cell dose</td>
<td>After thawing, minimum cell dose 3.0 × 10⁷/kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Colony-forming unit assay:** This assay is important to evaluate the functional capacity of HPCs after thawing an aliquot or after thawing the product; however it is difficult to establish a generalized CFU-GM dose due to variations of colony setup and counting between centres

**Other considerations when selecting single CB units**

If many CBU meeting the criteria above are available, the following factors should also be considered

- **Use accredited cord blood banks.** For safety, only accredited banks recognized by national and international organizations should be used
- **ABO compatibility:** ABO compatibility may be associated with improved outcomes, although the data are conflicting
- **NIMA:** If the cord banks have the mother’s HLA typing, the potential effect of NIMA should be noted in context of clinical trials
- **KIR ligand:** Due to conflicting data, KIR ligand matching should not be used in the selection of CBUs
- **Sex matching:** Sex matching between CBUs and patients in single or double UCBT is not necessary

Based on Eurocord and British Society of Blood and Marrow Transplantation recommendations (Hough et al. 2016, modified)

If the infused TNC dose is 1.0–2.0 × 10⁷/kg, the number of CD34⁺ cells or CFU-GM should be taken into consideration to predict the probability of neutrophil recovery and to discuss the possibility of a second transplant. If both cell doses are lower than recommended, a BM aspirate and chimerism analysis should be performed between days 20–28. The absence of engraftment indicates the need for a second transplant; preliminary data shows that haploidentical or double CBT should be considered

Due to variation in counting CD34⁺ cells, this recommendation should be taken with caution. However, if colonies are not growing, the transplant physicians should consider a second transplant after day +30

For patients with BMF syndromes (aplastic anaemia or congenital bone marrow failure states) or haemoglobinopathies, the number of TNC at freezing should be greater than 5 × 10⁷/kg
Key Points

- Cord blood donation comprises the following steps: informative and consent process, revision of eligibility criteria, cord blood collection and finally fresh storage before a standardized transportation to the processing cell lab.
- Cell processing labs require coordination of production and quality control labs to transform the altruistically donated raw material in a medicinal product with predefined specifications that ensure its safety, identity, purity and potency.
- A public cord blood bank is a stem cell registry that provides ready-to-use banked medicinal products for any patient in need through international networking of stem cell donor organizations.
- Cord blood selection is based on sorting CB units using primary criteria (cell content and HLA matching) followed by ranking based in secondary criteria depending on disease status, conditioning, age and recipient’s weight.

Table 18.3 Additional criteria for double CBU selection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cell dose</th>
<th>HLA matching</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nucleated cell dose</td>
<td>- When a single CBU unit contains insufficient cells (as specified above), double UCBT is recommended for the treatment of malignant disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD34+ cell dose</td>
<td>- There are currently insufficient data to make recommendations for double UCBT in the treatment of non-malignant disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At freezing, the sum of both CBUs &gt;3.5 × 10^7/kg</td>
<td>• The historical stringency of HLA matching for CBUs with the recipient for double UCBTs should be used, i.e. the minimum acceptable HLA matching between either CBU and the recipient is 4/6 using low/intermediate typing (antigen) for HLA-A and HLA-B and high-resolution typing (allelic) for HLA-DRB1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The minimum cell dose of each unit should be &gt;1.5 × 10^7/kg</td>
<td>• There is no requirement for inter-cord HLA matching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At freezing or after thawing, the sum of both CBUs &gt;1.8 × 10^5/kg</td>
<td>• The role of high-resolution (allele) typing is not yet defined for double CBT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
19.1 Introduction

Graft manipulation is performed to define and to optimize the volume and cellular composition of stem cell sources like apheresis products, bone marrow, or umbilical cord blood.

Basic manipulations comprise centrifugation procedures for depletion of erythrocytes and volume reduction and are required to cryopreserve grafts in the presence of cryoprotectants like DMSO (Dimethylsulfoxide) (Rowley 1992). These are standard procedures for BM and CB, while apheresis products usually can be cryopreserved without further manipulation.

More complex manipulations are used to optimize the cellular composition and to meet requirements of the individual transplant regimen. Selection of CD34+ or AC133+ progenitors from apheresis or BM has been used to produce concentrated stem cell grafts. In recent years, the selective depletion of unwanted cells like CD3+ T cells, TcRαβ+ T cells, and others provides a custom-tailored graft. For both enrichment and depletion, immunomagnetic cell sorting using monoclonal antibodies and paramagnetic microbeads in combination with semi- or fully automated devices has become the standard technique in most laboratories.

19.2 Graft Manipulation

19.2.1 Physical Manipulations

19.2.1.1 Volume Reduction
Volume reduction might be necessary in small children and is done by a simple centrifugation process and removal of the supernatant.

19.2.1.2 Washing to Reduce Plasma Antibodies or Anticoagulants
Washing might be necessary in case of unwanted isoagglutinins or to lower the heparin concentration and is also done by centrifugation in a bag or dedicated devices and by exchange of plasma with a suitable solution like 0.9% NaCl. Addition of anticoagulant is not necessary as coagulating agents are washed out by the treatment.

19.2.1.3 Depletion of Erythrocytes
Depletion of erythrocytes is necessary in case of blood group incompatibilities and usually confined to bone marrow. Several procedures...
are employed including centrifugation with an apheresis device or centrifugation in bags or tubes and subsequent harvest of the buffy coat. In special cases, a separation using density gradient centrifugation (e.g., Ficoll) might be useful with an even stronger depletion of erythrocytes.

19.2.2 Immunomagnetic Procedures

19.2.2.1 CD34 Enrichment

Enrichment of CD34+ stem cells was the first method which provided grafts with a very low number of T cells and therefore allowed to avoid GvHD highly effective even in haploidentical HSCT (Ringhoffer et al. 2004; Handgretinger et al. 2001).

The method has also been successfully used in MSD and MUD HSCT to minimize the rate of GvHD (Pasquini et al. 2012; Lang et al. 2003) and showed a clear advantage regarding combined cGVHD-free and relapse-free survival compared to unmanipulated grafts in myeloid diseases (Tamari et al. 2018).

Moreover, CD34 selection is used as a graft backbone to which other cell types (unmanipulated DLI, CD45RA depleted DLI, and others) can be added.

Enrichment can be performed with the Miltenyi Biotec CD34 reagent system which uses a mAb for the CD34 class 2 epitope and therefore has to be detected by an Ab to a different epitope (normally class 3). Stem cells after separation normally show a high purity with extremely low amounts of other contaminating cell types. In some cases various amounts of monocytes are found without detrimental effect on the graft. Due to the small size of the graft, absolute numbers of contaminating T cells remain low even if a significant percentage persists. B cells are passively depleted as well, whereas CD34+CD19+ B-cell precursors are retained: 1–3% in PB, up to 30% in BM preparations.

Recovery of CD34+ cells is in the range of 50–90% (Schumm et al. 1999).

19.2.2.2 CD133 Enrichment

CD133 detects a slightly smaller subpopulation of CD34+ cells and can also be used for enrichment of stem cells with similar results (Koehl et al. 2002; Lang et al. 2004).

19.2.2.3 T-Cell Depletion

Immunomagnetic TCD is technically more demanding than CD34+ enrichment as the processed grafts contain a much higher overall number of cells and even extremely low percentages of contaminating T cells can endanger the success of the manipulation. Moreover, the correct enumeration of T cells in a depleted graft is challenging and needs special protocols.

CD3 Depletion

Depletion of CD3+ T cells provides almost untouched grafts with potential antileukemic effectors (e.g., NK cells) enabling fast engraftment and reliable prevention of GvHD. Prospective phase I/II trials showed low TRM rates after haplo-HSCT in combination with toxicity- and intensity-reduced conditioning regimens in children and adults (Lang et al. 2014; Federmann et al. 2012).

Depletion can be done using the CliniMACS LS tubing set or the DTS tubing set. In both cases the depletion efficacy can be 0.5 log lower than in CD34+ selection. Since in haplo-HSCT residual T cells should not exceed $50 \times 10^3$/kg, it might be occasionally necessary to perform a CD34+ selection with parts of the apheresis to remain below the requested thresholds and to guarantee a sufficient number of progenitor cells (Lang et al. 2014; Federmann et al. 2012; Huenecke et al. 2016).

It should be ensured that during the incubation process, all cells come into contact with the CD3 reagent to avoid unstained T cells which can impair the result of the depletion significantly. This may happen when transferring stained cells into a second bag system leaving unstained cells in the tubing ends and crinkles of the bag behind. Even smallest amounts of 20–50 μL can contain more T cells than the whole graft should have.
Analysis of CD3 depleted grafts needs special protocols and has to take into account the rare number of T cells among the huge overall number of cells. Therefore, a multigating strategy should be implemented and validated, and T cells should be determined using several parameters. Exclusion of myeloid cells by CD33 could be helpful as well as the use of CD3 in a bright fluorochrome like APC. Gating can be facilitated by using a “spiked” probe with cells of the negative fraction and a small percentage of cells from the positive fraction added to set the gate for subsequent analysis of the negative fraction. For statistical reasons, a minimum of $1 \times 10^6$ events should be acquired. To prevent takeover of cells from a previous tube, special care should be taken like flushing the cannula with water before the actual acquisition or to clean the cannula on the outside (Schumm et al. 2013).

**TCRαβ Depletion**

This procedure removes αβ+ T lymphocytes via a biotinylated anti-TCRAβ Ab followed by an anti-biotin Ab conjugated to magnetic microbeads while retaining both γδ+ T lymphocytes and natural killer cells in the graft.

Depletion with the TCRAβ reagent has been shown to be associated with a high depletion efficacy (4.7 log), better than after CD3 depletion (4.0 log) and similar to CD34+ enrichment (4.6 log). Moreover, the results differ less than those after CD3 depletion, resulting in $<50 \times 10^3$/kg infused residual TCRαβ+ T cells, even in small children (Schumm et al. 2013).

Compared to CD34 selected grafts, a faster expansion was seen for CD3+ and for CD56+ in the early phase after haplo-HSCT, probably caused by expansion of co-transfused γδ T cells and NK cells (Lang et al. 2015). Moreover, clinical trials in children and adults demonstrated a very low incidence of acute and chronic GvHD as well as favorable engraftment and TRM rates (Locatelli et al. 2017; Kaynar et al. 2017). The method was successfully used to avoid GvHD also in MUD HSCT (Maschan et al. 2016).

Detection of TCRαβ+ T cells should be done with the same precaution used for CD3 depleted cells, with a minimum of $1 \times 10^6$ events and several parameters for the identification of the TCRαβ+ cells. Pregating on CD3-PE vs 7-AAD has been shown to be very helpful as well as gating on TCRαβ and TCRγδ cells in the consecutive dot plot (Schumm et al. 2013).

**CD19 Depletion**

Depletion of CD19+ B cells can be done together with CD3 or TCRαβ depletion and prevents effectively the occurrence of EBV-associated PTLD. Although the threshold dose of contaminating B cells is still not defined, no cases of PTLD were observed in two multicenter trials with 104 children and adults after infusion of median numbers of 28 and $7 \times 10^3$ CD20+ cells/kg BW, respectively (Lang et al. 2014; Federmann et al. 2012).

Alternatively, B-cell depletion can be done in vivo by infusion of therapeutic anti-CD20 mAbs (Locatelli et al. 2017).

Detection of CD19+ B cells needs special attention as the binding of fluorescence-labeled antibody is impaired when cells were preincubated with the CD19 reagent. Therefore, the detection has to be done with an antibody for CD20 which is co-expressed on B cells (Schumm et al. 2006).

**Stem Cell Boosts**

Poor graft function after HSCT is a relevant complication and is defined as at least bilinear severe cytopenia and/or transfusion requirement, which occurs in a situation of full donor chimerism. Administration of stem cell boosts from the original donor offers a therapeutic option (Remberger et al. 1998).

To reduce the risk of GvHD, ex vivo TCD procedures as mentioned above are recommended (Olsson et al. 2013). Most experience exists with CD34 selected boosts. Response rates of 80% and a low risk of de novo GvHD between 6% and 22% were observed, even in the case of mismatched donors (Askaa et al. 2014; Mainardi et al. 2018).
19.2.3 DLI and T Cells

T cells may be added to a graft or administered post transplant to provide T cell immunity in various situations. The tolerable dose of T cells varies strongly depending on the HLA disparity, the T cell chimerism in the patient, and the time after transplantation. In MUD HSCT or in haploidentical HSCT, it can be helpful to cryopreserve a number of vials with a defined number of T cells (i.e., $100 \times 10^3 \text{CD3}+/\text{kg}$ and $25 \times 10^3 \text{CD3}+/\text{kg}$, respectively) for easy access in case of increasing recipient chimerism.

19.2.3.1 CD45RA Depletion

DLI with CD45RA+-depleted T cells takes advantage of the CD45R0+ T cells which obviously exert little graft-versus-host reaction but can provide antileukemic and antiviral activity. Depletion can be done using the same equipment and reagents for depletion. Depletion is highly effective, and contaminating CD45RA+ cells cannot be found at all (Teschner et al. 2014).

19.2.3.2 DLI in Relapse

DLI has been first used in CML patients after relapse and was given as unmanipulated non-mobilized apheresis in the HLA-matched setting.

19.2.3.3 DLI in Mixed Chimerism

Repetitive DLI can be used to revert a mixed T cell chimerism. Depending on the type of the donor, various cell numbers are employed. In MSD or MUD HSCT, doses between $1 \times 10^5$ and $1 \times 10^6/\text{kg}$ are usual, whereas after mismatched or haploidentical HSCT, starting doses of $25 \times 10^3 \text{CD3}+/\text{kg}$ are recommended (Haines et al. 2015) (and own experience).

19.2.3.4 Virus-Specific T Cells

Virus-specific T cells can be enriched from peripheral blood or an unstimulated apheresis of the original (seropositive) stem cell donor or—if not possible—alternatively from a partially matched third-party donor.

Donor-derived-specific T cells against ADV-, CMV-, or EBV-associated antigens have been already used in many patients suffering from life-threatening infections post transplant, and clinical or virological response rates between 70% and 86% were observed (Icheva et al. 2013; Feucht et al. 2015; Feuchtinger et al. 2010).

The most common technique in the field of graft manipulation is the cytokine capture system which employs the secretion of IFNg after stimulation with appropriate Ag or peptide mixtures for immunomagnetic selection of specific T cells. Simultaneous stimulation with several Ag is possible and generates multispecific T cells.

The selection procedure can be done with a ClinMACS Prodigy® from a maximum of $1 \times 10^9$ cells from a non-mobilized or a mobilized apheresis and yields 6–7 ml of cells, with $0.1–2 \times 10^6 \text{CD3+IFNg}+$ target cells.

Accompanying debris and dead cells require an accurate analysis. Moreover, the small amount of target cells limits the sample size available for analysis, and therefore a single platform procedure including cell count and viability in one measurement is recommended. The first step should be done without washing and includes a cell gate to exclude debris. CD45 and 7-AAD can be used for proper determination of cell viability. A second sample can be analyzed after washing for CD3+, CD4+, and CD8+ numbers and the percentage of IFNg+ cells in these subsets. Bystander cells like B cells, monocytes, and granulocytes can be found in low numbers (Feuchtinger et al. 2006).

19.3 Regulatory Issues

Graft manipulation is regarded as drug manufacturing in most countries and has to follow the requirements of the EU GMP guidelines, the European Pharmacopoeia, and several EU directives. Therefore clean room areas are required for the manufacturing and a manufacturing license, and a marketing authorization is mandatory for distribution of the product. A quality assurance system has to be implemented, and specifications have to be in place for both raw material and drug product. In most cases, volume, cell number, cell dose, viability, and composition are minimum...
parameters. Sterility in the form of microbiological examination of cell-based preparations according to Pharm. Eu. 2.6.27 has to be shown either before release of the product or, in the case of limited stability, after release.

Peripheral blood stem cells from both blood and bone marrow for hematopoietic reconstitution are regarded as non-ATMP.

Key Points
- CD34 enrichment yields stem cell preparations with low contaminating T and B cells
- CD3/CD19 depletion preserves large numbers of NK cells in the grafts
- TcRαβ/CD19 depletion provides large numbers of NK cells and γδ T cells with very low amounts of TcRαβ T cells
- DLI with CD45RA-depleted T cells might reduce the risk of GvHD
- Virus antigen-specific donor- or third-party-derived T cells can be utilized post-transplant in patients with therapy-refractory viral infections

References


20.1 Introduction

It is of central interest to document that the newly developing hematopoiesis post-transplant is of donor or recipient origin. The investigations of the genotype origin of post-transplant hematopoiesis are called chimerism analysis. The term “chimerism” was first introduced into medicine in 1951. Andresen wrote that an organism with cells from two or more distinct zygote lineages is a “chimera.” Since 1956 this term was used in field of transplantation (Ford et al. 1956). Chimera refers itself to the Greek mythology where Homer described a fire-spitting monster with the head of a lion, a tail of a serpent, and the body of a goat terrorizing Lycia, a region in Minor Asia.

For a long time, it was believed that complete donor hematopoiesis is necessary to maintain engraftment after allo-HSCT. A few decades ago, it became apparent that donor and recipient hematopoiesis may coexist. This state of coexistence of hematopoietic cells is called mixed chimerism (MC). If all cells are of donor origin, the patient is referred to as “complete chimera,” and he shows a “complete chimerism.”

It is important to note that the state of hematopoietic chimerism may underlay a certain dynamic. Patients with a complete chimerism may develop a “mixed chimerism” at a later time point or vice versa. In the later patients, the amount of autologous cells may “increase” or “decrease.” The patients then develop an “increasing mixed chimerism” or a decreasing mixed chimerism. To avoid misunderstandings as to whether donor or recipient hematopoiesis changes, it is recommended to report “increasing mixed donor chimerism” or “increasing mixed recipient chimerism.”

Nowadays, it has become possible to analyze hematopoietic chimerism also in single cell subpopulations. If a patient’s hematopoiesis is mixed only in different cell lines, these patients are referred to have a “split chimerism.” Finally the applied method for chimerism analysis has also an impact on the degree of chimerism. A patient could be complete chimera with a method detecting about 1% autologous cells, whereas recipient cells could have been detected with a more sensitive technique (Bader et al. 2005).

20.2 Methods for Chimerism Analysis

Different methods have been developed for the assessment of hematopoietic chimerism. All these methods followed the same principle using...
differences in polymorphic genetic markers and their products. Historically restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP), cytogenetics, red cell phenotyping, and fluorescence in situ hybridization techniques were used for the assessment of hematopoietic chimerism. All of these techniques have been very time-consuming and did not always offer the possibility to be used in every patient-donor constellation.

Widespread and timely clinical applicability has become possible after polymerase-chain-reaction (PCR) techniques were developed. During the 1990s, these analyses were mainly performed by amplification of variable number of tandem repeats (VNTR). Later in the decade short tandem repeats (STR) were used. Fluorescent labeling of the primers and resolution of PCR products with capillary electrophoresis allowed immediate and accurate quantification of the degree of chimerism. Semiautomated PCR analysis using the appropriate hardware allowed moreover high sample throughput. This made it possible to study chimerism in all patients and in short time intervals already early after transplantation. Accurate monitoring of engraftment as well as surveillance of impending graft rejection in patients transplanted for nonmalignant disease has become possible (McCann and Lawler 1993; Alizadeh et al. 2002; Thiede et al. 2001).

Recently, real-time PCR (rPCR) approaches using single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) have also become available for the detection of chimerism. SNPs are biallelic variants that differ from each other only at a single nucleotide and occur on average every 1.3 kb in the human genome. This rPCR has an even higher sensitivity compared to STR-PCR assays, but their quantitative accuracy with a variation coefficient of only 30–50% is lower compared to 1–5% of the STR systems.

The latest developments for the detection of chimerism are the analysis using digital PCR (dPCR) procedures. This technology allows accurate and absolute quantification of DNA. This dPCR system is based on deletion/insertion polymorphism (DIP/INDEL) analysis. Clinical studies using this technique, however, are not yet performed (Jacque et al. 2015; Clark et al. 2015).

Based on these issues, the STR-PCR with fluorescent-labeled primers and resolution of the fragments with capillary electrophoresis is currently still considered to be the gold standard for the assessment of post-transplant chimerism. It is important to stress that whatever method is employed to study chimerism, it is important that the procedure is standardized and the chimerism laboratory is accredited and is participating in quality control rounds (Lion et al. 2012).

### 20.3 Chimerism Investigation in the Clinical Setting

#### 20.3.1 Chimerism in Nonmalignant Diseases

Allo-HSCT is the only curative treatment option for many patients with inherited or acquired nonmalignant diseases such as immunodeficiency, storage diseases, osteopetrosis, thalassemia, sickle cell disease, severe aplastic anemia, bone marrow failure syndromes, and many others.

The aim of the transplant procedure in these diseases is to achieve stable and durable engraftment to (1) improve the hematopoietic function, to (2) correct the immune competence, and/or to (3) increase or normalize the respective enzyme shortage. As a consequence, it is not always necessary to replace the recipient hematopoiesis completely. For many diseases, it is sufficient to implement a state of mixed hematopoietic chimerism to improve the patients’ well-being. To minimize toxic side effects intensity of conditioning regimens in these diseases is often reduced and therefore less myeloablative. MC is more likely, and graft rejection or non-engraftment remained the major causes of treatment failures in these patients (Bader et al. 2005; Thiede et al. 2001).

It could be shown that rapid donor cell presence and maintenance of early complete donor chimerism in NK and T cells may play an important role in achieving sustained engraftment especially in patients who were treated with reduced intensity conditioning regimens. Analysis of chimerism in disease characterizing
cell subpopulations in patients with nonmalignant disease, e.g., in patients with severe combined immune deficiencies (SCID) or in patients with storages disease, enables the documentation of success of the transplant procedures (Preuner et al. 2016).

### 20.3.1.1 Intervention to Influence the Evolution of Chimerism: Transfusion of DLI

In patients with nonmalignant diseases, MC occurs frequently. The question whether individual patients with MC are at risk to reject their graft depends on the diagnosis and on the conditioning regimens. Studies have clearly shown that MC can be influenced by DLI. MC can be stabilized or even converted to complete donor chimerism by DLI. However, in treating patients with MC and DLI, physicians have to bear in mind the potential risk to induce GVHD which should be avoided in patients with nonmalignant disease with all efforts.

#### Hemoglobinopathies

In thalassemia patients, large studies have been published already from the Pesaro group of Guido Lucarelli, evaluating the influence of MC and disease recurrence. In general it was found that patients whose recipient MC increased to >30% autologous cells were by far more likely to ultimately reject and be transfusion dependent. However, there are patients with persisting high level MC who remained transfusion independent. Retrospective studies have been performed evaluating the possibility of influencing MC by DLI. It could be shown that a state of MC may be sufficient to remain transfusion independent. It was also shown that DLI is capable to convert MC to CC. However, no general recommendation could be given at the time being (Fitzhugh et al. 2014; Karasu et al. 2012; Abraham et al. 2017).

In sickle cell disease (SCD), the impact of MC has been studied intensively as more and more patients with SCD were transplanted from matched but also from mismatched donors. In the late 1990s, first studies concluded that 10% of donor cell engraftment and persistence were needed for effective treatment of SCD in patients who were treated with a homozygous healthy donor; however, if the patient was grafted with the stem cells of a heterozygous HbAS donor, 30–40% donor cells are required. The presence of MC in patients transplanted for sickle cell disease does not warrant DLI per se. In patients with less than 30% of donor chimerism, DLI might be considered. In a most recent study, Fitzhugh and colleagues developed a mathematical model by which they could show that a donor chimerism in the myeloid compartment of 20% is necessary to reverse the sickle cell phenotype and to prevent patients from disease recurrence (Fitzhugh et al. 2017).

### 20.3.2 Chimerism in Malignant Diseases

Chimerism detected by molecular methods allows the assessment of persisting or reappearing recipient cells after allo-HSCT. These cells might be a reflection of either survival of malignant cells or of survival or recurrence of recipient hematopoietic cells or a combination of both. It could be shown by prospective studies already in the early 1990s that a MC frequently occurs in the mononuclear cell fraction, weakens thereby the GvL effect, and facilitates recurrence of the underlying leukemia.

Chimerism analysis does provide information about the alloreactivity and/tolerance induction of the graft and thereby serves more likely a “prognostic factor” than as an indirect marker for MRD. It has become evident that the development of post-transplant chimerism is a dynamic process. Hence, if chimerism analyses are performed in the intention to detect impending relapse, investigations need to be performed in short time intervals (Bader et al. 2004b; Thiede et al. 2001; Kröger et al. 2010a, b).

Initially, many pediatric studies using serial analysis of chimerism could clearly demonstrate that patients who develop a MC Post transplant have an increased risk for future relapse of their leukemia. This could later also be confirmed by studies in adult patients.
Moreover these and subsequent studies undoubtedly showed that by immunotherapeutic interventions, e.g., withdrawal of IS or transfusion of DLI, MC could be converted to complete chimerism, GvL effect restored, and many patients prevented from developing overt hematological relapse (Platzbecker et al. 2012; Bader et al. 2004a).

Based on its limited sensitivity to detect minor cell population of about 1%, chimerism analysis in the whole blood is not suitable to serve as a MRD marker. For the assessment of MRD, other techniques should be used, if possible. In patients and diseases lacking a disease-specific marker, for example, regularly in patients with MDS and often in patients with AML, chimerism analysis could be performed in cell subpopulations. Thiede et al. could clearly demonstrate that by the characterization of chimerism in the CD34-positive cell fraction, leukemia relapse could be anticipated in advance in many patients with AML and MDS. In ALL patients, several studies have been performed investigating the impact of MC after enrichment of entity specific subpopulation, e.g., CD 10, CD19, and CD 34 for precursor B ALL and CD3, CD4, CD5, and CD8 for T-lineages. Remarkable correlation between MRD and chimerism in different subsets could be proven (Platzbecker et al. 2012; Bornhäuser et al. 2009; Rettinger et al. 2011).

Serial and quantitative analysis of chimerism allows the identification of patients at highest risk for relapse. Not all patients can be identified, and time interval between the onset of MS and relapse is often short. It is essential to perform the analysis frequently and ideally: chimerism should be combined with MRD analysis to optimize the predictive value. These investigations can form the basis for individual preemptive immunotherapy strategies to prevent recurrence of the underlying disease.

Key Points

- Documentation of engraftment is the important step on the way to successful HSCT
- Post-transplant patients are carrying two different genetic profiles and are called chimera
- Analysis of hematopoietic chimerism offers the possibility to realize impending graft rejection and may also serve as an indicator for the recurrence of the underlying disease
- Since several years, these investigations have become the basis for intervention strategies to:
  - Avoid graft rejection
  - Maintain engraftment
  - To treat imminent relapse by preemptive immunotherapy

References


McCann SR, Lawler M. Mixed chimaerism; detection and significance following BMT. Bone Marrow Transplant. 1993;11:91–4.


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
21 Short- and Long-Term Controls After HSCT

Montserrat Rovira and Maria Suárez-Lledó

21.1 Introduction

Patients undergoing HSCT (mainly allo-HSCT) have a risk of developing complications related to pre-, peri-, and post-HSCT. The resulting morbidity of the HSCT process makes it necessary for patients to adopt a healthy lifestyle that promotes health and contemplate preventive measures for the detection and treatment of possible complications.

The short- and long-term controls allow for regular and systematic screening and at the same time are an opportunity to give advice on healthy lifestyle habits. Monitoring should be multidisciplinary with involvement of hematology, other medical specialties, physicians of primary care, nursing, and mental health professionals.

Early and late complications, as well as psychological problems, are discussed in Parts IV, V and VI of the Handbook.

After discharge, it is important that the patient has a summary of the treatment received and a long-term follow-up plan appropriate to the exposure and individual risk factors.

The recommendations related to screening and prevention post-HSCT can be consulted in several web pages (see references).
21.2  Monitoring Depending on the Type of HSCT

21.2.1  Autologous HSCT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Timing</th>
<th>Monitoring</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| From discharge to day +100 | Until full hematologic recovery, it is recommended to live near the hospital  
|                           | Recommended controls*:  
|                           | – Clinical evaluation and transfusions when necessary  
|                           | – Basic hematological and biochemical tests  
|                           | – Specific markers for different diseases  
| At +3 months              | Evaluate the status of the primary disease  
|                           | Recommended controls*:  
|                           | – Hematological and biochemical tests, specific tumoral markers  
|                           | – MRD evaluation: Immunophenotype and molecular specific adapted to each disease  
|                           | – BM biopsy in case of NHL, HL, MPS, and solid neoplasms with previous marrow affectation, in the remaining disease BM smears (see specific chapters)  
|                           | – Imaging tests depending on primary disease  
| Long term                 | Visits every 6 months up to 2 years and then annually  
|                           | Recommended controls*:  
|                           | – Analytical and complementary explorations: See Table 21.1  
|                           | – Baseline disease: Control of possible progression or relapse during at least 5 years  
|                           | – In patients treated with chemotherapy + radiotherapy, assess the risk of second malignancies or MDS after HSCT  

*aVariable frequency depending on the patient’s condition

21.2.2  Allogeneic HSCT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Timing</th>
<th>Monitoring</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| From discharge to day +100 | It is recommended that the patient resides near the transplant center during the first 3–6 months after HSCT  
|                           | Recommended controls*:  
|                           | – Weekly clinical evaluation, during the first month, every other week until 2 m, and then monthly up to 6–12 m, unless problems arise. It must include complete physical examination, with special emphasis on data of acute GvHD, infections, and pulmonary complications  
|                           | – Blood samples: Complete blood count, liver and kidney function, Mg, levels of IS agents, quantify CMV by PCR (and EBV if ATG); chimerism evaluation at 1 month  
|                           | – BM aspirate (or biopsy) in diseases with previous marrow affectation (usually within 1 month of HSCT)  
| At 3 months               | Usually, this moment marks the turning point so that, if the patient does not have major problems, he/she can be monitored by the referring doctor. However, the patient should be periodically reevaluated at the transplant center (every 3–4 months during the first year, every 4–6 months during the second year, and annually after the third year)  
|                           | Recommended controls*:  
|                           | – Visit and complete physical exploration with special emphasis on the signs of acute and chronic GvHD (assessment by organs as indicated in Chaps. 43 and 44 and paragraph 21.3)  
|                           | – Blood test: Complete blood count, kidney function, liver function, clearance creatinine, IS levels; chimerism and sample for MRD follow-up. In patients aged <17 years, weight and height every 3 months  
| Long term                 | It depends on the complications that arise during follow-up. If there are no complications, it is recommended that a patient visits to the center every 6 months up to 3 years and annually thereafter  
|                           | Recommended controls:  
|                           | – Visit and complete physical examination including gynecological evaluation and endocrinological, if appropriate  
|                           | – Analytical and complementary explorations: See Sect. 21.3  
|                           | – Specific controls: Specific MRD studies on diseases with markers (see corresponding chapters)  
|                           | – In patients treated with chemotherapy + radiotherapy, the risk of secondary neoplasms  

*aVariable frequency depending on the patient’s condition
## 21.3 Organ-Specific Long-Term Monitoring

Table 21.1 analyzes organ by organ the long-term follow-up recommendations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommended screening</th>
<th>6 months</th>
<th>1 year</th>
<th>An.</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ocular (see Chap. 48)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Clinical symptom evaluation</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>– Immediate exam if visual symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Visual acuity and fundus exam</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>– Special attention to sicca syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Oral (Chap. 50)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Preventive oral health and dental maintenance</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>– Avoid smoking, sugar beverages, or oral piercing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Clinical assessment</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>– If oral cGVHD, high-risk squamous cell cancer; evaluation every 6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Dental assessment (+children)</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Respiratory (Chap. 52)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Clinical pulmonary assessment</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>* Active or passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Smoking tobacco avoidance*</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>– If cGVHD, spirometry test in each control (recommended for many authors)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– PFT (+chest Rx if symptoms)</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cardiac and vascular (Chap. 55)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– CV risk factor assessment</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>– Counseling on heart healthy lifestyle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Active treatment of risk factors</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Active treatment of risk factors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Liver (Chaps. 38 and 49)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Liver function testing</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>– Monitor viral load by PCR if HCV or HBV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Serum ferritin testing</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>– Additional testing if high ferritin levels (MRI/FerriScan®)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kidney (Chap. 51)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Blood pressure screening</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>– Hypertension should be investigated and treated appropriately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Urine protein screening</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>– Avoid nephrotoxins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– BUN/creatinine testing</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Muscle and connective (Chap. 54)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Physical activity counseling</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>– If risk of cGVHD, test joint mobility and touch skin to detect sclerotic changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Evaluation muscle weakness</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>– Treat cramps symptomatically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Skeletal (Chap. 54)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Bone density testingd</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td>– Prevent bone loss and fractures with exercise, vitamin D, and calcium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nervous system (Chap. 53)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Neurologic clinical evaluation</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>* Special attention of cognitive development in pediatric patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Cognitive development*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Endocrine (Chap. 56)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Thyroid function testing</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>– Annual gynecological evaluation in women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Growth speed in children</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>– Hormonal replacement if necessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Gonadal function assessment</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Gonadal function assessment</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Gonadal function assessment</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 21.1 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommended screeningb</th>
<th>6 months</th>
<th>1 year</th>
<th>An. Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mucocutaneous (Chap. 54)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Skin self-exam, sun counseling</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Gynecological exam in women</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Immunity</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Encapsulated Microorg. Prophylaxis*</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– PJP prophylaxis (see Chap. 39)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Immunizations (see Chap. 29)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Secondary neoplasia (Chap. 47)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Counseling and autoexamination</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Same population screening</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Endocarditis prophylaxis (see Chap. 38)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Psychosocial and sexual</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Psychosocial assessment (see Chap. 30)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– QOL assessment (see Chap. 34)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Evaluation of Sexual function</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*An. annually, 1 recommended for all transplant recipients, 2 recommended for patients with ongoing chronic GvHD or IS, + reassessment recommended for abnormal testing in a previous time period or for new signs/symptoms

1Adapted from Majhail et al. (2012). Similar recommendations but focused in children have been elaborated by the Children’s Oncology Group http://www.survivorshipguidelines.org

2In patients with chronic GVHD, these controls should be tightened, and their frequency increased

3Follow the American Heart Association for endocarditis prophylaxis in high-risk HSCT recipients

4Adult women, all allo-HSCT, and patients at high risk for bone loss

5Prepubertal men and women

6Postpubertal women

7Postpubertal men

---

### 21.4 Fertility (See Chap. 56)

- Monitoring should be multidisciplinary with involvement of hematology, other medical specialties, physicians of primary care, nursing, and mental health professionals

### 21.5 Quality of Life (See Chap. 34)

- Monitoring should be multidisciplinary with involvement of hematology, other medical specialties, physicians of primary care, nursing, and mental health professionals

---

**Recommended References**


Part IV

General Management of the Patient

Topic leaders: Carlo Dufour, Silvia Montoto and John Murray
22.1 Introduction

The central venous catheter (CVC) is a key tool for patients undergoing a HSCT, and its introduction in the oncology setting has represented a clear improvement in the quality of patient health care. The use of a CVC requires correct maintenance to prevent malfunctioning due to partial or complete occlusion, dislodgement, kinking, rupture, thrombosis, or life-threatening complications such as catheter-related bloodstream infections (CRBSI).

CVCs are being designated by:

- Duration (e.g., temporary or short-term versus permanent or long-term)
- Site of insertion (e.g., subclavian vein, femoral vein, jugular vein, basilic vein)
- Number of lumens (single, double, or triple lumen)
- Characteristic of tip (open tip or closed tip)
- Materials to reduce complications (e.g., impregnation with heparin, antibiotics, or silver)

Table 22.1 shows the main maintenance actions for CVC (Cesaro et al. 2016).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 22.1 CVC maintenance: suggested main rules</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Assessment of line functionality and dressing site daily for inpatients or every 2–3 days for outpatients</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 2. CVC care and maintenance as dictated by local policy or standard operating procedure
t
| 3. Vigorous mechanical scrub for manual disinfection prior to each CVC access and allow it to dry. Acceptable disinfecting agents include 70% isopropyl alcohol, iodophors (i.e., povidone-iodine), or >0.5% chlorhexidine in alcohol solution |
| 4. Change gauze dressing every 7 days or before in case of soiled, dampened, and loosened |
| 5. Change the transfusion administration set and filter after the completion of each unit or every 4 h. If more than 1 unit can be infused in 4 h, the transfusion set can be used for a 4-h period |
| 6. Change intermittent administration sets every 24 h |
| 7. Replace administration sets for parenteral nutrition solutions at least every 24 h |
| 8. Replace administration sets used for intravenous fat emulsions infused separately every 12 h |
| 9. Change caps every 72 h (or 7 days if pressure-positive device is used) |

*There may be a variability among EBMT centers regarding the practice of CVC care and maintenance such as the use of sterile gloves and mask by provider/assistant, the adoption of aseptic technique for all catheter entries, the use of prepackaged dressing change kit, the frequency of flushing, and the type of solution used for flushing CVC.
22.2 Type of CVC Materials

Catheter materials should be biocompatible, kink resistant, inherently chemically resistant and neutral, biostable, soft, and deformable and should have a high tensile strength (Lim et al. 2018; Frasca et al. 2010). The most commonly used materials are polyurethane, polyethylene and polytetrafluoroethylene (Teflon), polyvinylchloride (PVC), silicone, and Vialon (Borretta et al. 2018). Silicone catheters are flexible, chemically stable, and well tolerated. Polyurethane catheters are preferred to those made of polyethylene or PVC because of their lower rate of CRBSI and their lower friability (Frasca et al. 2010). Polytetrafluoroethylene catheters are rigid and lose X-ray transparency when injected with opaque solutions. Polyurethane has a superior tensile strength.

Non-tunneled, semirigid catheters are usually made of polyurethane, while tunneled catheters are usually made of both silicone and polyurethane (Lim et al. 2018). The superiority of polyurethane catheters compared with silicone is debated. The two catheter types have no difference in surface degradation; however, silicone catheters are more prone to material failure as a result of the development of surface irregularities due to loss of barium sulfate molecules and thrombotic occlusion. Conversely, polyurethane catheters have a higher susceptibility for catheter-induced venous thrombosis and CRBSI (Blanco-Guzman 2018; Wildgruber et al. 2016).

22.3 Type of CVC

CVCs are classified in two main categories: tunneled and non-tunneled, according to whether or not they follow a subcutaneous route before accessing the central vein. Non-tunneled catheters are directly inserted into a peripheral or large central vein. Both tunneled and non-tunneled CVCs may have a single or multiple lumen. Tunnelization of CVCs was introduced to reduce the risk of infectious and mechanical (dislodgement) complications, and this type of CVC is ideal for long-term care (Cesaro et al. 2009). Non-tunneled CVCs are usually inserted for a short to medium period (from 2–4 weeks to 1–3 months) (Lee and Ramaswamy 2018; Padmanabhan 2018). Tunneled CVCs are in turn classifiable in two subgroups: partially implanted and totally implanted. Partially implanted CVCs are characterized by an external part outside the patient’s body whose extremity (hub) is used to draw blood sampling or to connect the infusion lines, a tunneled subcutaneous part with a Dacron cuff at a few centimeters from the skin entry point, and a final intravenous part with the tip positioned at the border between the superior vena cava and the right atrium (Padmanabhan 2018; Blanco-Guzman 2018). The Dacron cuff stimulates a fibrotic reaction of the subcutaneous tissues over 2–4 weeks ensuring stability and CVC securement. Both cuff and subcutaneous course are fundamental to prevent the CVC from becoming infected due to the migration of external microbes along the CVC. Broviac, Hickman, and Groshong CVCs belong to this group. Broviac-Hickman CVCs have an open tip and require the clamping of the external part of the CVC when they are not in use to avoid the backflow of the blood from the tip with breath or body movements. Groshong CVCs have a closed tip with lateral valves on their terminal part that open as fluid is withdrawn or infused, while they remain closed when the CVC is not in use. The CVC has to be clamped only if the catheter does not have a needle-free connector. The ideal situation to avoid backflow of blood is a neutral pressure needle-free connector with an open clamp (Padmanabhan 2018).

Totally implanted catheters (porth) consist of a reservoir (port) placed in a pocket in the subcutaneous tissue anteriorly on the chest wall, below the clavicle, that is connected to the catheter (Padmanabhan 2018; Blanco-Guzman 2018). This type of CVC has no part outside of the body, thus preserving the patient’s body image and ensuring almost no limitations on sports activities, and body hygiene. The main drawback of this type of CVC is that its accessing needs a skin puncture with a special “non-coring” needle (Huber needle or gripper system). In case of frequently repeated port accesses, the
procedure can be painful or discomforting for the patient, requiring the application of topical skin anesthetics for its prevention. Moreover, the needle does not permit the infusion or the extraction of high volumes making it less suitable for patients requiring high infusion or blood extraction rates. The recent introduction of port models with a modified reservoir chamber (vortex, tidal, power port) has allowed to obtain a higher flow rate suitable for leukapheresis, red blood cell exchange, extracorporeal photopheresis, and therapeutic plasma exchange (Blanco-Guzman 2018; Lim et al. 2018).

The peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC) is a CVC inserted into a vein of the arm, usually the basilic or cephalic veins; its tip is advanced through the axillary and subclavian veins up to the cavoatrial junction (Hashimoto et al. 2017; Cornillon et al. 2017). For more information on PICCs, see Chap. 32.

### 22.4 Venous Access

Central lines are usually inserted through the subclavian, the jugular, or, less frequently, the femoral vein. This last venous access is associated with a higher risk of infectious complications (O’Leary 2016), and it is more commonly used in critically ill patients admitted to intensive care units who require a non-tunneled CVC. Using the subclavian or jugular access, the tip of the catheter has to lie in the superior vena cava, just before the entrance of the right atrium, about 29–55 mm below the level of trachea carina (in adults). The incidence of pneumothorax after CVC insertion is about 1.5–3.1%, and it is higher with subclavian vein catheterization, whereas the risk of hemorrhage and bruise is slightly more common with the jugular venous line access.

In the positioning of a PICC, the incannulation of the basilic vein is preferred to that of the cephalic vein as it has low risk of complications. To minimize the risk of complications due to venous catheterizations, the routine use of ultrasound guidance to cannulate the vein is recommended instead of the classical (blind) technique (Cornillon et al. 2017; Crocoli et al. 2015).

A chest X-ray must be performed at the end of the CVC insertion procedure to confirm that the line is positioned inside the superior vena cava and, for the cannulation of subclavian or jugular veins, no pneumothorax was inadvertently caused. Recently, the use of intracavitary ECG (electrocardiographic method) has also been approved for clinical use to evaluate the correct position of the catheter tip (Borretta et al. 2018).

### 22.5 CVC Complications

Catheter-related complications may be classified into infectious (local or systemic) and mechanical (occlusion, rupture, dislodgement, accidental self-removal, and thrombosis) (Cesaro et al. 2009). As the catheter is itself a risk for developing complications, when there is no further need for a catheter, it should be removed. Removal of the catheter must also be considered in the event of catheter dysfunction; CRBSI by *Candida* spp., *Pseudomonas* spp., *Klebsiella* spp., and *Staphylococcus aureus*; persistent bacteria colonization or recurrent CRBSI; or contraindications against anticoagulant therapy.

#### 22.5.1 Special Measures to Prevent Catheter-Related Infections

The key rules to prevent infections are proper handwashing by the performing provider, the use of aseptic technique over the patient at insertion time, thorough cleaning of the insertion site, and periodic review of the CVC exit site (Cesaro et al. 2016). Impregnation of the CVC with heparin may reduce the incidence of infectious and thrombotic complications. To prevent CRBSI and tunnel or exit-site infection, medication-impregnated dressings with different antimicrobial materials were developed to decrease the production of the biofilm by microorganisms and decrease the adhesion of them to the catheter walls. The most commonly used impregnating medications are chlorhexidine gluconate, silver sulfadiazine, rifampin, and minocycline (Frasca et al. 2010). Chlorhexidine gluconate impreg-
nates the whole dressing or is applied using an impregnated sponge (e.g., Biopatch®) and covered by a transparent polyurethane semipermeable transparent dressing (Ullman 2015).

22.6 Catheters for Leukapheresis

The procedure of stem cell collection by apheresis is performed both for auto- and allo-HSCT to obtain PBSC (O’Leary 2016). As the procedure requires sustained high blood flow rates (50–100 mL/min), an adequate venous access is needed (O’Leary 2016). Peripheral access placed in the basilic, cephalic, brachial, median cubital and radial veins is recommended (Padmanabhan 2018; Lim et al. 2018; Hölig et al. 2012). Considering that the placement of a central CVC is associated with potentially life-threatening complications such as pneumothorax, bleeding, and embolism (Hölig et al. 2012), its use is not recommended for PBSC collection of a healthy volunteer donor. Conversely, in the case of auto-PBSC, if the patient has no adequate peripheral or central venous access, a temporary nontunneled CVC may be placed in the internal jugular, subclavian, or femoral veins (Padmanabhan 2018; Lim et al. 2018; Vacca et al. 2014; Hölig et al. 2012; Cooling 2017a). Catheter removal is performed on donor laboratory values (PLT >50 × 10⁹/L) or after the assessment of an adequate CD34+ dose and successful cryopreservation of the HPC product (O’Leary 2016; Vacca et al. 2014).

Partially implanted silicone CVCs are often used by pediatric oncologists-hematologists because they are most suitable for long-term complex treatment (Wildgruber et al. 2016). In the case of leukapheresis procedure, silicone CVCs are not ideal because they are more prone to collapse during automatic apheresis (Ridyard et al. 2017). On the other hand, the harvesting procedure of PBSC, which requires high blood flow rates and a large needle, may be difficult in children below 10 kg using a temporary peripheral venous access due to the small size of veins (Padmanabhan 2018; Cesaro et al. 2016). In this case, the placement of a short-term CVC made of polyurethane may be needed (Cooling 2017a, b). However, in younger children, the rigidity of such material and the narrower lumens of the veins may represent a potential risk for thrombosis and infection (Ridyard et al. 2017; Cooling 2017b; Vacca et al. 2014).

### Key Points

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CVC Indications and Insertion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Type of CVC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Number of lumens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Insertion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### References

Blanco-Guzman MO. Implanted vascular access device options: a focus review on safety and outcomes. Transfusion. 2018;58:558–68.


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
23.1 General Aspects

Transfusions are an essential part of supportive care in the context of HSCT. RBC and platelet concentrates (PCs) are the main blood products transfused in the peri-transplant period. Many recommendations in this chapter are based on evidence from studies including a broad variety of diseases. Only a few studies addressed transfusion strategy specifically in patients undergoing HSCT (see review Christou et al. 2016). Many recommendations are derived from patients with cytopenia in non-transplant settings. There are both need and opportunity to address issues regarding transfusion of HSCT patients in clinical trials. So far, there is a paucity of studies on the impact of transfusion on HSCT-specific outcomes.

RBC, PC, and FFP for patients who are candidates for HSCT should be leukocyte-reduced, i.e., should contain $<$1 $\times$ 10$^6$ leukocytes/unit. Leukocyte reduction reduces febrile non-hemolytic transfusion reactions and decreases the incidence of alloimmunization to leukocyte antigens and the risk of CMV transmission. Also all cellular blood components (RBC, PC, granulocyte transfusions) must be irradiated (see below).

23.2 Irradiation for Prevention of Transfusion-Associated GvHD (ta-GvHD)

Ta-GvHD is a rare complication of transfusion wherein viable donor T lymphocytes in cellular blood products mount an immune response against the recipient (Kopolovic et al. 2015). Some of the clinical presentations of ta-GvHD resemble that of GvHD (fever, cutaneous eruption, diarrhea, liver function abnormalities). Also many patients develop pancytopenia. Since mortality is high (>90%), prevention of ta-GvHD is critical (Kopolovic et al. 2015). HSCT recipients are at risk of ta-GvHD and should receive irradiated cellular blood products (Kopolovic et al. 2015). It is recommended that no part of the component receives a dose <25 Gy and >50 Gy (European Committee (Partial Agreement) on Blood Transfusion (CD-P-TS) 2017). Some pathogen-reduction technologies have been shown to inactivate lymphocytes, and additional gamma-irradiation is not required (Cid 2017).

There is no consensus on the duration of the use of irradiated blood products in HSCT recipients. Standard practice is (1) auto-HSCT, at
least 2 weeks prior to stem cell collection until at least 3 months after HSCT, and (2) allo-HSCT, at the latest starting with conditioning until at least 6 months after HSCT or until immune reconstitution. However, some centers recommend lifetime use of irradiated products since it is difficult to confirm complete and sustained immunological reconstitution.

23.3 Prevention of CMV Transmission

The highest risk of transfusion-transmitted CMV (TT-CMV) remains in CMV-seronegative recipients of matched CMV-negative HSCT (Ljungman 2014). Risk of TT-CMV can be reduced by transfusion of leukocyte-reduced blood products (i.e., <1 to 5 × 10⁶ residual leukocytes per unit) or by transfusion of blood components from CMV-seronegative donors (Ziemann and Thiele 2017). However, it is unclear whether the “belt and suspenders approach,” i.e., the use of both leukocyte-reduced and seronegative products, further reduces the risk of TT-CMV. Donations from newly CMV-IgG-positive donors bear the highest risk for transmitting CMV infections (Ziemann and Thiele 2017). Currently no international consensus on risk mitigation for CMV transmission exists. A recent snapshot of current practice revealed that about half of the countries use either leukocyte-reduced or seronegative products and the other half use the combination of both (Lieberman et al. 2014). Also, there is no consensus how long CMV-seronegative products should be given to transplant recipients: the current practice ranges from 100 days after transplant till lifelong (or until CMV seroconversion) (Lieberman et al. 2014).

23.4 Red Blood Cell Concentrates (RBCs)

A restrictive RBC transfusion threshold of 7–8 g/dL hemoglobin is recommended for adult patients who are hemodynamically stable. A restrictive RBC transfusion threshold of 8 g/dL is recommended for patients with existing cardiovascular disease (Carson et al. 2016). These cutoffs are derived from studies on a broad range of indications. Only one randomized clinical trial is available specifically for patients undergoing HSCT (TRIST trial, NCT01237639). It compared a liberal strategy (Hb threshold <90 g/L) with a restrictive strategy (Hb threshold <70 g/L). Health-related quality of life was similar between groups, and no appreciable differences in HSCT-associated outcomes were reported (Tay et al. 2016). The median number of RBC units transfused was lower in the restrictive strategy compared to the liberal strategy group, but this did not reach statistical significance (Tay et al. 2016).

In adult recipients, one unit of RBC increases the hemoglobin concentration by about 1 g/dl. In children, the dose should be calculated by the formula:

\[
\text{Volume (mL RBC): Target Hb after transfusion (g/dL)} - \text{pretransfusion Hb (g/dL)} \times 4 \times \text{weight (kg)}
\]

In recent years, several randomized trials showed no evidence that transfusion of fresh RBC reduced morbidity or mortality compared to standard issue RBCs. Thus, the AABB recommends that patients should receive RBC selected at any point within their licensed dating period (Carson et al. 2016).

Chronic RBC transfusions result in iron overload. Hyperferritinemia and iron overload before HSCT are associated with reduced overall survival and incidence of non-relapse mortality after allo-HSCT. However, a meta-analysis (Armand et al. 2014) and a prospective cohort study suggest that iron overload, as assessed by liver iron content, is not a strong prognostic factor for overall survival in a general adult HSCT population. Thus, ferritin alone is an inadequate surrogate for iron overload in HSCT.

23.5 Platelet Concentrates (PCs)

PC should be transfused prophylactically to non-bleeding, nonfebrile patients when platelet counts are ≤10 × 10⁹/L (Schiffer et al. 2018). Prophylactic platelet transfusions may be administered at higher counts based on clinical judgment (Schiffer
et al. 2018). Patients with active bleeding, febrile conditions, or active infections should receive prophylactic PC transfusions at a threshold of $20 \times 10^9$ L. Also, in case of specific transplant-related toxicity which might increase the risk of bleeding (acute GvHD, mucositis, hemorrhagic cystitis, or diffuse alveolar hemorrhage), a threshold of $20 \times 10^9$ L or even higher, based on careful clinical observation, might be justified.

Two prospective randomized control trials comparing prophylactic versus therapeutic PC transfusion in adult patients (≥16 years) suggest that a therapeutic transfusion strategy might be feasible in patients after auto-PBSCT but cannot be easily transferred to other indications (AML, allo-HSCT) for whom special attention to the increased risk of bleeding, in particular, CNS bleeding, is needed (Stanworth et al. 2013; Wandt et al. 2012). The results may not be generalizable to children since a subset analysis of the PLADO trial demonstrated that bleeding rates were significantly increased among children, particularly among those undergoing autologous HSCT (Josephson et al. 2012).

The randomized PLADO trial compared different doses of PC transfusions (“low dose,” “medium dose,” and “high dose” defined as $1.1 \times 10^{11}$, $2.2 \times 10^{11}$, and $4.4 \times 10^{11}$ platelets per m$^2$ BSA) (Slichter et al. 2010). While a strategy of “low-dose” transfusion significantly reduces the overall quantity of platelets transfused, patients required more frequent PC transfusion events (Slichter et al. 2010). At doses between $1.1 \times 10^{11}$ and $4.4 \times 10^{11}$ platelets/m$^2$, the number of platelets in the prophylactic transfusions had no effect on the incidence of bleeding.

Both apheresis PC and pooled PC from whole blood donations are safe and effective. Available data suggest equivalence of the products in non-allosensitized recipients (Schrezenmeier and Seifried 2010). A clear advantage of apheresis PCs can only be demonstrated in allosensitized patients with HLA- and/or HPA-antibodies who receive antigen-compatible apheresis PCs.

Some patients experience inadequate increment after PC transfusions, i.e., a corrected count increment (CCI) below 5000/μL at 1 h after transfusion of fresh, ABO-identical PCs on at least two subsequent transfusions. Refractoriness can be caused by non-immunological factors (>80%) or immunological factors (<20%) (Fig. 23.1). If platelet refractoriness is suspected and no apparent nonimmune causes can be identified, screening for the presence of HLA-Ab is recommended. If HLA-Ab are present, the patient should receive apheresis PCs from matched donors (Juskwewitch et al. 2017; Stanworth et al. 2015): ideally all four antigens (HLA-A, HLA-B) of donor and

![Fig. 23.1](image-url)  
Etiology of platelet transfusion refractoriness (modified according to Pavenski et al. 2012)
recipient are identical. Also PCs from donors expressing only antigens which are present in the recipient can be used. If PCs from such donors are not available, donors with “permissive” mismatches in HLA-A or HLA-B shall be selected (e.g., based on cross-reactive groups or computer algorithms that determine HLA compatibility at the epitope level). If no better-matched donor is available, antigen-negative platelets, i.e., not expressing the target antigen(s) of the recipients’ HLA allo-Ab, can be transfused. Screening for antibodies against human platelet antigens (HPA) should be performed if refractoriness persists also after transfusion of HLA-matched PCs and nonimmune causes are unlikely. Approaches for patients without compatible platelet donors are autologous cryopreserved platelets (e.g., collected in remission prior to allogeneic HSCT), IS (e.g., rituximab), and high-dose IVIg and plasmapheresis.

### 23.6 Immunohematological Consequences of ABO-Mismatched Transplantation

About 40–50% of allo-HSCT are ABO mismatched. While transplantation across the ABO barrier is possible, immunohematological problems have to be taken into account. There is a risk that ABO incompatibility between donor and recipient causes hemolytic transfusion reactions. In case of major ABO mismatch and a recipient anti-donor isoagglutinin titer $\geq 1:32$, the red cell contamination in PBSC graft should be kept $<20$ mL, and RBC depletion of BM grafts must be performed. If recipient anti-donor isoagglutinin titers are low ($\leq 1:16$), no manipulation of the PBSC graft is required, and RBC depletion of a BM graft might be considered in this situation but is not mandatory. In case of minor ABO incompatibility and a high donor anti-recipient isoagglutinin titer ($\geq 1:256$), plasma depletion of both PBSC and BM grafts should be performed. If the donor anti-recipient isoagglutinin titer is low ($\leq 1:128$), no manipulation of the PBSC graft is required, and plasma depletion of a BM graft might be considered but is not mandatory. In case of bidirectional ABO incompatibility and high titers of anti-recipient isoagglutinins, both RBC and plasma depletion is required.

Delayed hemolysis can occur in minor ABO-mismatched HSCT, in particular after RIC, due to hemolysis of remaining recipient red cells by isoagglutinins produced by donor B lymphocytes. Major or bidirectional ABO-incompatible HSCT can cause pure red cell aplasia (PRCA), delayed engraftment, and increased RBC transfusion requirement. The risk is higher if a group O recipient with high-titer anti-A isoagglutinins receives a group A graft. If no spontaneous remission of PRCA occurs and anti-donor isoagglutinins persist, various treatments to remove isoagglutinins, to reduce their production, or to stimulate erythropoiesis can be used (see review Worel 2016).

### 23.7 Transfusion in ABO- or RhD-Incompatible HSCT

The change of blood group and the persistence of recipient isoagglutinins require a special approach for transfusion support in ABO-incompatible HSCT considering several aspects: isoagglutinins might target engrafting progenitors and transfused platelets to which variable amounts of ABO antigens can be bound. ABO blood group antigens are expressed in many nonhematopoietic tissues which continue to express the recipients’ ABO antigens also after engraftment. ABO antigens can be secreted into body fluids. If possible, exposure of HSC recipients to isoagglutinins should be avoided. RBCs which are ABO compatible with both HSC donor and recipient are mandatory. Plasma and PCs which are compatible with both the donor and the recipient should be preferred. Table 23.1 summarizes the recommendation for ABO preference of transfusions in ABO-incompatible HSCT.

For PCs, some choices of blood groups might not always be available. To reduce the risk of adverse events due to isoagglutinins, apheresis PC donors with high-titer ABO antibodies should be excluded. However, a preferred strategy is the use of plasma-reduced PC (both for apheresis PC and pooled PC from whole blood donations). These are suspended in platelet additive solution with only about 30% plasma volume remaining.
HSC recipients should receive RhD-negative RBC and also RhD-negative PC except when both HSC donor and recipient are RhD-positive. If the HSC donor is RhD-positive and the recipient is RhD-negative, platelet transfusion can be switched to RhD-positive products after erythroid engraftment, i.e., appearance of RhD-positive red cells.

Whenever possible, RBC should be compatible both with HSCT donor and recipient for CeEe antigens. If Rh antigens of HSCT donor and recipient differ in a way that compatibility with both is not possible (e.g., recipient CCD.ee, donor ccD.EE), then RBC compatible with the recipient shall be chosen in the period until engraftment. After the appearance of donor-derived red cells, RBC supply should switch to compatibility with the graft. Patients should receive K-negative RBC except when both recipient and donor are K positive.

### 23.8 Granulocyte Concentrates

In life-threatening non-viral infections during neutropenia, the use of irradiated granulocyte transfusions should be considered. Response and survival after granulocyte transfusion correlate strongly with hematopoietic recovery. Thus, granulocyte transfusions may mainly bridge the gap between specific treatment and neutrophil recovery. Granulocyte transfusions can help to control active fungal infections in a very high-risk population of patients who otherwise are denied by transplant program. A retrospective study suggested that granulocyte transfusion might maintain the mucosal integrity and thus reduces bacterial translocation and triggers for GvHD. In the randomized RING trial, success rates for granulocyte and control arms did not differ within any infection type. The overall success rates for the control and granulocyte transfusion group were 41% and 49% (n.s.) (Price 2015). However, patients who received high dose (≥0.6 × 10^9 granulocytes/kg per transfusion) fared better than patients who received lower doses. The collection center should ensure to provide a high-dose concentrate by appropriate donor selection, pre-collection stimulation, and apheresis techniques. The optimal number of granulocyte transfusions is unclear. Adverse events of granulocyte infusions are fever, chills, pulmonary reactions, and alloimmunization. Studies demonstrated that overall risk of alloimmunizations was low and there

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ABO incompatibility</th>
<th>Recipient</th>
<th>Donor</th>
<th>Phase Ic Phase II and phase IIIc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RBC</td>
<td>Platelets</td>
<td>Plasma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All products</td>
<td>First choice</td>
<td>Second choice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>O A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>O B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>AB</td>
<td>O AB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>AB</td>
<td>A O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>AB</td>
<td>B O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minor</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AB</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O AB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AB</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AB</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bidirectional</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>O AB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>O AB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

– not applicable

aChoices are listed in the order of preference

bFor practical reasons, the use of donor type platelets might be defined as first choice, in phase III, i.e., after complete engraftment

cPhase I until preparative regimen, phase II until complete engraftment, phase III after complete engraftment.
was no effect of alloimmunization on the primary outcome (survival, microbial response), the occurrence of transfusion reactions, or post transfusion neutrophil increments. Alloimmunization remains a problem because of its negative impact on increments after platelet transfusion and potential increase of graft failure after HSCT. Donor-specific HLA-Ab might be implicated in early graft failure (Spellman et al. 2010). If granulocyte transfusions are used prior to a planned unrelated HSCT, recipients should be monitored for the development of HLA-Ab, and the search algorithm for the UD should take into account donor-specific antibodies. All granulocyte concentrates must be gamma-irradiated and should be obtained from CMV-seronegative donors, ideally also confirmed by CMV-PCR to avoid donations in the serological window period.

**Key Points**

- Patients undergoing HSCT must be transfused with irradiated blood products (at least 2 weeks prior to stem cell collection in auto- and starting with the conditioning in allo-HSCT)
- A restrictive RBC transfusion threshold of 7–8 g/dL hemoglobin is recommended for adult patients who are hemodynamically stable
- RBC must be compatible with both the HSC donor and the recipients
- Platelet concentrates should be transfused to non-bleeding, nonfebrile patients when platelet counts are ≤10 × 10⁹/L
- Prophylactic platelet transfusion remains the standard of care for thrombocytopenic patients undergoing allogeneic HSCT
- RBC must be compatible with both the HSC donor and the recipient

**References**


24 Nutritional Support

Annic Baumgartner and Philipp Schuetz

24.1 Introduction

Patients undergoing HSCT, particularly allo-HSCT, are at risk for malnutrition (Fuji et al. 2012). Malnutrition is associated with poor clinical outcome, decreased OS, higher risk of infectious and immunologic complications, delayed neutrophil engraftment and prolonged hospital stay (Baumgartner et al. 2016, 2017). Importantly, most patients are well-nourished or even overweight upon admission to HSCT but experience rapid deterioration of nutritional status during treatment (Fuji et al. 2014). Weight loss results from a complex interplay of toxic, inflammatory and immunological mechanisms leading to caloric deficits by anorexia as well as a catabolism of the metabolism.

Nutritional support is meant to reduce caloric deficit and reduce the risks for negative metabolic effects. However, there is a lack of large-scale trials proving benefit of nutritional interventions in this setting (Baumgartner et al. 2017). The current nutritional approach is thus based on physiological considerations and results of observational and some smaller interventional trials and needs to be adapted to an individual patient’s situation.

24.2 Screening for Malnutrition

Pre-existing malnutrition is an important additional risk factor in patients undergoing HSCT. International guidelines such as the European Society of Enteral and Parenteral Nutrition (ESPEN) recommend screening for malnutrition at admission for transplantation (Bozzetti et al. 2009). There is no international consensus on how to assess malnutrition in this patient population. For reasons of practicability, the use of the NRS 2002 is generally recommended (Bozzetti et al. 2009). In the acute setting, weight assessment may be inaccurate because of inflammatory fluid retention.

Based on “Supportive Care” in EBMT Handbook, 2009, by Tamás Masszi and Arno Mank.

A. Baumgartner (*)
Internal Medicine and Endocrinology/Diabetology/
Clinical Nutrition and Metabolism, Medical
University Clinic of Kantonsspital Aarau, University
of Basel, Aarau, Switzerland
e-mail: annic.baumgartner@ksa.ch

P. Schuetz
Department of Endocrinology, Diabetes
and Metabolism and Internal Medicine, Kantonsspital
Aarau, University of Basel, Aarau, Switzerland
24.3 Nutritional Recommendations (See General Recommendations in Table 24.1 and Fig. 24.1; Monitoring in Table 24.2 and Nutritional Strategies in Fig. 24.1)

24.3.1 Nutrition in Allo-HSCT

24.3.1.1 Route of Administration

Due to its positive effects on GI integrity and microbiome, enteral nutritional (EN) support is generally preferred over parenteral nutrition (PN) in case of a functioning GI tract. During allo-HSCT, patients often experience GI failure so PN is used instead. Yet, higher risk of central line infections as well as hyperglycaemia associated with PN demand restricted use (Seguy et al. 2012).

Small, prospective, non-randomized trials on EN found satisfying results on feasibility and safety with lower infection rates as well as beneficial effects such as earlier neutrophil engraftment and lower rates of severe GI GvHD (Seguy et al. 2012; Guièze et al. 2014). Some studies even report higher OS (Seguy et al. 2012). Results of a large prospective trial are expected (Lemal et al. 2015).

We encourage the use of EN as a first-line measure. Indication for PN should be limited to

Table 24.1 Summary of general recommendations for nutritional support

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Screening for malnutrition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tools</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nutritional support</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Early involvement of dietitians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Consider placement of nasogastric tube on day +1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Standardized monitoring of nutritional intake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Nutritional reassessment every 3 days using the NRS 2002</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication of intervention</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Oral intake &lt;60% for 3 days consecutively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Consider nutritional support in all patients with preexisting malnutrition and/or BMI &lt; 18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Discontinuation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral intake &gt;50% for 3 days consecutively</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Estimation of caloric needs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>According to Harris Benedict formula (ideal body weight) OR BASA-ROT table/(25–30 kcal/kg ideal body weight)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Route of nutritional support</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Intensification of oral nutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Enteral nutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Parenteral nutrition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forms of nutritional support</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intensified oral nutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indication:</strong> Malnutrition or underweight (BMI &lt; 18 kg/m²) and preserved oral intake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Options:</strong> Additional snacks rich in proteins and energy, protein or calorie enrichment of main courses, additional protein and energy drinks (ONS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Standardized supplementation:</strong> None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enteral nutrition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indication:</strong> If nutritional goals cannot be reached by oral support alone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Standardized supplementation:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin K once weekly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parenteral nutrition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indication:</strong> If nutritional goals cannot be reached in patients with gastrointestinal failure and/or intolerance for NGT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Standardized supplementation:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipid-soluble vitamins (ADEK)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water-soluble vitamins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trace elements</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vitamin and trace elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multivitamin generally recommended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D: Supplementation recommended (Bolus of 40000E at admission, maintenance therapy with 1500E orally per day)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other vitamins or trace elements if overt deficiency</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Immunonutrition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Generally not recommended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nutrition Risk Screening (NRS 2002) within 24-48hs. after admission

**Nutritional aims**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Calories</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Micronutrients</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Harris Benedict formula</td>
<td>- Generally 1.2-1.5g/kg/d</td>
<td>- Vitamin D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- OR indir. calorimetry</td>
<td>- 1.5-2.0g/kg/d in severe</td>
<td>- Rest according to laboratory values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- OR Basa-Rot Table</td>
<td>- enteral GvHD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General recommendations:**
1. Placement of NGT at Day +1
2. Standardized documentation of consumed calories and proteins
3. Nutritional reassessment every 3 days
4. Daily trial of oral food tolerance
5. Stop EN or PN if oral food intake >50% daily needs

---

**Nutritional Strategies**

**STEP 1: oral nutritional Support (ON)**

Adaptation of main courses to personal food preferences (+)

Additional snacks (+)

Protein/caloric enrichment of food (powder) (+)

Energy/protein dense drinks

Re-Assessment every 24-48 hs: caloric intake ≥60% for >3 consecutive days?

**YES:** No change Reassessment in 3d

**NO**

Contraindication for EN?
(Severe malabsorption OR Intolerance for NGT*)

**NO:** Start EN

**YES:** Start PN

**STEP 2: enteral nutritional Support (EN)**

Nutritional aims not met
OR severe malabsorption
OR Intolerance for NGT*

**STEP 3: parenteral nutritional Support (PN)**

*NGT = naso gastric tube

---

**Fig. 24.1** Algorithm for guided nutritional support
intolerance for nasogastric tube and GI failure including severe malabsorption or limited gastroenteral passage.

### 24.3.1.2 Indications and Timing

There are few study data regarding optimal timing of nutrition. The ESPEN guidelines recommend implementation of nutritional support if oral caloric intake falls below 60–70% of basic requirements for 3 days consecutively (Bozzetti et al. 2009).

Discontinuation of EN or PN should be considered, if >50% of daily requirements are met by oral intake (Bozzetti et al. 2009). To enhance early return to oral food intake patients should be encouraged to maintain minimal oral intake throughout therapy.

### 24.3.1.3 Estimation of Caloric Needs

Most studies investigating energy expenditure by indirect calorimetry have been performed in small paediatric populations. Validity of the data for adults therefore is limited, and results are controversial (Sharma et al. 2012; Duro et al. 2008).

Determination of energy requirements based on calculations, e.g., by the BASA-ROT table or Harris-Benedict Formula, does not differ significantly from results by indirect calorimetry (Sharma et al. 2012; Valentini 2012; Harris 1918). Therefore, we recommend estimation of energy requirements according to an adjusted Harris-Benedict formula.

### 24.3.2 Nutrition in Auto-HSCT

In general, effects of auto-HSCT on nutritional status are less pronounced. Nutritional support is not generally recommended and has to be evaluated individually in patients experiencing severe complications or in patients with pre-existing malnutrition.

---

**Table 24.2** Monitoring of nutritional parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Frequency of assessment</th>
<th>Significance and implications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anthropometry</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>Daily</td>
<td>Correlation with fluid balance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Evaluation of diuretics and Albumin supplementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bioimpedance assessment</td>
<td>Individually</td>
<td>Uncontrolled, unexplained weight loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Severe, prolonged inflammation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutritional assessment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral food consumption</td>
<td>3× daily</td>
<td>Evaluation of nutritional support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Laboratory parameter</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albumine</td>
<td>Weekly</td>
<td>Evaluation of supplementation in anasarca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium, Potassium</td>
<td>Daily</td>
<td>Adaptation of potassium supplementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium, Magnesium, Phosphate</td>
<td>Twice weekly</td>
<td>Adaptation of supplementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CAVEAT refeeding, gastrointestinal loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INR, Quick</td>
<td>Twice weekly</td>
<td>Evaluation of supplementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CAVEAT low content in certain products for EN/PN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>3–6× daily if PN or preexisting diabetes mellitus otherwise twice weekly</td>
<td>Adaptation of insulin dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creatinine</td>
<td>Daily</td>
<td>Correction of fluid balance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CAVEAT toxic damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver function tests</td>
<td>Twice weekly</td>
<td>Evaluation of toxic damage, infection, hepatic GvHD, VOD or relapse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triglycerides</td>
<td>Twice weekly if PN</td>
<td>Adaptation of PN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
<td>At admission</td>
<td>Begin routine supplementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B12</td>
<td>At admission</td>
<td>Supplementation pretransplantational individually</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
24.3.3 Nutrition in Acute Gastrointestinal GvHD

GvHD of the digestive tract leads to excessive diarrhoea, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, gastrointestinal bleeding, dysphagia and malabsorption. Patients experience malnutrition to a higher extent and show significantly more additional complications (van der Meij et al. 2013).

Caloric demands are mainly driven by energy loss through diarrhoea. Enteral solutions should be low in fibre and fat and not contain lactose. Maintaining a minimal amount of oral or enteral nutrition facilitates early dietary recovery (Imataki et al. 2006; Andermann et al. 2016). Complete bowel rest and total PN are indicated in severe GvHD grade IV and stool volume >1500 ml in 24 h (Bozzetti et al. 2009; Imataki et al. 2006).

Protein requirements are elevated. Recommendations range from 1.2 to 2.5 g/kg/day. We recommend aiming for 1.5–2 g/kg/day in the absence of severe renal impairment (Bozzetti et al. 2009; Muscaritoli et al. 2002).

Vitamin and trace elements are often deficient and need to be measured regularly to evaluate need of supplementation.

24.3.4 Low Bacterial Diet/Low Microbial Diet/Neutropenic Diet

A low microbial diet has been installed in the 1980s to prevent potential threat of food-borne infections from organisms colonizing the gastrointestinal tract.

There is no standardized protocol, and variations amongst centres, contradictions even, are high. Yet, there is no proof of efficacy in preventing infections or death.

In line with most current publications, we recommend safe food handling and strict hand hygiene as proposed by the FDA or the EC over a neutropenic diet.

24.4 Immunonutrition

A meta-analysis on glutamine found reduced severity and duration of mucositis and GvHD (Kota and Chamberlain 2017). To date, no randomized controlled trial showed a benefit on overall survival or reduction of infection rates (Crowther et al. 2009).

Pre- and probiotics may enhance diversity of the GI microbiome. So far, no study has evaluated their effects compared to placebo. Again, there might be a benefit on severity of GvHD (Ladas et al. 2016). Safety has been evaluated in a pilot study in children and adolescents and proved satisfying.

There are no randomized controlled trials assessing the benefits of omega-3 fatty acids or trace elements. Except for vitamin D, there is no proven benefit of a routine supplementation (Hall and Juckett 2013). Based on this data, we do not recommend routine use of immunonutrients.

24.5 Long-Term Follow-Up

Follow-up should include regular nutritional screening and documentation of weight, BMI, appetite and functional status based on patients’ history. A balanced, Mediterranean diet can be recommended along with regular physical training to regain muscle mass. An increase in weight should be addressed early to avoid full development of a metabolic syndrome because of high baseline cardiovascular risk in transplanted patients.

Persisting malnutrition, especially in chronic GvHD, should be handled by an interdisciplinary team. Caloric needs seem to be elevated and often require in- and out-hospital nutritional support.

Key Points

- There is high risk for malnutrition upon HSCT treatment
- Malnutrition is an independent risk factor in these patients
- The potential benefit of all nutritional interventions remains largely unproven
- All dietary recommendations are based on physiological considerations and results of mainly observational trials
- Adherence to a systematic approach to nutritional support improves transparency, comparability and generally reduces use of unnecessary PN
• Oral and enteral nutritional support is recommended over parenteral support in case of functioning gastrointestinal tract
• A minimal oral or enteral food intake is beneficial for recovery of mucosa and microbiome
• Immunonutrients did not show significant beneficial effects and therefore are not recommended for routine use
• Neutropenic diets did not show a benefit over safe food handling approaches

References


Fuji S, Mori T, Khattry N, et al. Severe weight loss in 3 months after allogeneic hematopoietic SCT was associated with an increased risk of subsequent non-relapse mortality. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2014;50:100–5.


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
GVHD Prophylaxis (Immunosuppression)

David Michonneau and Gérard Socié

25.1 Introduction

The most life-threatening complication of allo-HSCT is the graft-versus-host disease (GVHD) which occurs when T cells from the recipient recognize the host as foreign. Despite 50 years of history and nearly half a million of procedures performed worldwide, GVHD remains the most challenging issue physicians are facing on a daily basis.

Overall, 30–50% of the patients will develop acute GVHD, and around 15% will have severe GVHD (grades III–IV). The main risk factor for developing chronic GVHD is the previous development of the acute form of the disease.

The pathophysiology, diagnosis, and management of both acute and chronic GVHD will be covered by other chapters in this Handbook (Chaps. 43 and 44). This chapter will summarize the use of IS to prevent the development of acute GVHD since attempt to prevent chronic GVHD basically rely on the ability to prevent the acute disease. Readers with interest on a more detailed overview of the acute GVHD biological process, prevention, and therapy can refer to an excellent recent review (Zeiser and Blazar 2017).

25.2 GVHD Prophylaxis After MAC; The “Gold” Standard; CNI in Combination with MTX

Back in the mid-1980s, Storb and colleagues reported that the combination of CSA/MTX (Table 25.1) was superior to CSA in a series of prospective randomized phase 3 trials (Storb et al. 1986). This gold standard regimen remains the most widely used in Europe today as prophylaxis regimen especially after MAC.

In the late 1990s, another CNI-based prophylactic regimen using tacrolimus (TAC) in conjunction with MTX was developed, and two randomized phase 3 trials were published after MAC in HLA-identical and URD, respectively (Ratanatharathorn et al. 1998; Nash et al. 2000). Although both reported a significant decreased in the incidence of grade II–IV acute GVHD, none of the two could demonstrate an improved survival rate with TAC/MTX as compared to CSA/MTX. The reasons for this lack of improvement are twofold: (1) in the trial performed from HLA-identical sibling D, there was an imbalanced of disease risk among the two groups with higher risk patients with leukemia among patients receiving TAC/MTX, and (2) for the trial in URD, the HLA-typing methodology at

D. Michonneau · G. Socié (*)
Hematology/Transplantation, AP/HP Hospital St Louis, Paris, France
University Paris VII, Denis Diderot, Paris, France
INSERM UMR 1160, Paris, France
e-mail: gerard.socie@aphp.fr

© EBMT and the Author(s) 2019
E. Carreras et al. (eds.), The EBMT Handbook, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-02278-5_25
that time was serologically based and thus included a very high proportion of patients with almost certainly high degree of mismatching. Nevertheless it should be stressed that the TAC/MTX regimen is currently considered as the American gold standard, while it never reached popularity in Europe.

CSA and TAC inhibit GVHD by preventing the activation of the nuclear factor of activated T-cell (NFAT) family of transcription factors, thereby reducing the transcription of interleukin-2 and the activation of effector T cells, albeit with a concurrent reduction in levels of interleukin-2-dependent anti-inflammatory Tregs.

### Table 25.1 CSA/MTX for GVHD prophylaxis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug posology</th>
<th>Cyclosporine</th>
<th>Methotrexate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 mg/kg/day IV till engraftment then orally</td>
<td>15 mg/m² day +1, 10 mg/m² day +3, +6, +11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting dose</td>
<td>Target dose to 150–200 ng/mL; adjust to renal function</td>
<td>Day 11 may be omitted if grade III/IV mucositis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interaction</td>
<td>Numerous; ++ with azoles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary effects</td>
<td>Numerous Renal insufficiency, CNS, and endothelial toxicities</td>
<td>Mucositis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is a recent bloom in the use of haploidentical donor during the past few years worldwide. While initial attempt was to use megadose of CD34+ selected HSC, the advent of PT-CY has really revolutionized this procedure. The PT-CY designed by Baltimore’s group includes CY 50 mg/kg on day +3 and +4 followed by TAC/MMF. Toxicities include those associated with CNI and MMF. Specific toxicity associated with CY includes hemorrhagic cystitis and the rare but potentially serious early cardiologic dysfunction. Although the incidence of acute GVHD remains significant (in around 1/3 of the patients), there is now some evidence that PT-CY might be associated with low rate of chronic GVHD (reviewed in; Fuchs 2017).

Furthermore, beyond the setting of haploidentical transplant, PT-CY has gained popularity in other setting including transplantation from URD and HLA-identical sibling. Although it seems unlikely today that any formal randomized trial (vs. ATG) will be launched after haplo-HSCT, it would be of major scientific interest to prospectively compare within a phase 3 trial ATG vs. PT-CY.

Finally, whether PT-CY is equally effective after RIC and MAC regimen is currently unknown as it is unknown if other combination like sirolimus (SIR) + MMF can be as effective as (or less effective as) CNI/MMF in addition to PT-CY in the haploidentical situation or even if PT-CY can safely be used as a single agent after HLA-identical sibling transplants, as recently reported (Mielcarek et al. 2016).
CY administered in two doses scheduled soon after transplantation depletes highly proliferating alloreactive conventional T cells while helping to preserve Tregs.

25.5 **ATG or Alemtuzumab for GVHD Prophylaxis in HSCT**

Since almost two decades, both ATG and alemtuzumab (ALEM) have been used to prevent GVHD especially after transplantation from URD. ALEM although efficacious in preventing acute GVHD has never been tested prospectively in a randomized phase 3 trial and has almost exclusively been developed in the UK. ATG however has been tested in four prospective randomized phase 3 trials. Three out of these four used anti-T-lymphocyte globulin (ATLG) and one rabbit ATG (rATG). However, the design, the time period, patients’ selection, donor type, and primary end point of these four randomized trials differ (see Table 25.2 for references). From the perspective of GVHD prophylaxis efficacy, all four trials demonstrated a significant decrease in chronic GVHD rate and in three out of the four a statistical significant decrease in the rate of acute GVHD. Other end points varied among the four trials. In particular the American trial by Soiffer et al. was the only one in which patients who received ATLG experienced an increased rate of relapse mainly in patients with AML who received TBI as part of a MAC pre-transplant.

25.6 **New Immunosuppressive Regimens for GVHD Prophylaxis**

With current treatment strategies summarized above, the rate of moderate to severe acute GVHD remains of concern in the range of 20–50%. As reviewed elsewhere in the Handbook, the treatment of acute and of chronic GVHD with high-dose steroids remains unsatisfactory with 30–50% of the patients being steroid resistant or dependent. There is thus an unmet clinical need in GVHD prophylaxis. After years of lack of new agent in this setting, the better knowledge of basic T-cell immunology, of the pathophysiology of the disease, and new drug development by the industry, new agents have been tested mostly in phase 2 trials which appeared to be promising. This section summarized the drugs with most advanced development that reported an acute GVHD incidence in the 20% range (i.e., a range that may warrant development of subsequent phase 3 trials). Readers with interest on a more detailed portfolio of current drug development and new targets could refer to a recent review (Zeiser and Blazar 2017).

In contrast to CNI, SIR, an mTOR inhibitor, is a more potent suppressor of the expansion of conventional T cells than Tregs, owing to the greater dependence of conventional T cells on the mTOR-protein kinase B pathway. This was the basis of the development by the Dana-Farber Cancer Institute (DFCI) group of a regimen that leads to an estimated cumulative incidence of acute GVHD grades II–IV of 20.5% and of less than 5%.

### Table 25.2 Four randomized trials using ATG as a GVHD prophylaxis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>254</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>ATLG</td>
<td>ATLG</td>
<td>ATLG</td>
<td>rATG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary end point</td>
<td>GVHD</td>
<td>cGVHD</td>
<td>cGVHD-free survival</td>
<td>Freedom from all IST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditioning</td>
<td>MAC</td>
<td>MAC</td>
<td>MAC</td>
<td>MAC+RIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donor</td>
<td>URD</td>
<td>Id. Sibling</td>
<td>URD</td>
<td>URD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GvHD prophylaxis</td>
<td>CSA +MTX</td>
<td>CSA +MTX</td>
<td>TAC +MTX</td>
<td>CSA or TAC+MTX or MMF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute GVHD</td>
<td>33 vs. 51% (grade II–IV)</td>
<td>11 vs. 18% (grade II–IV)</td>
<td>23 vs. 40% (grade II–IV)</td>
<td>50 vs. 65% (any grade)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic GVHD</td>
<td>Decreased</td>
<td>Decreased</td>
<td>Decreased</td>
<td>Decreased</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
grades III–IV. This prompted a large trial of the BMTCTN comparing TAC/SIR to TAC/MTX. The primary end point of the trial was to compare grade II–IV acute GVHD-free survival using an intention-to-treat analysis of 304 randomized subjects. There was no difference in the probability of day 114 grade II–IV acute GVHD-free survival (67% vs. 62%, \( P = 0.38 \)). Grade II–IV GVHD was similar in the TAC/SIR and TAC/MTX arms (26% vs. 34%, \( P = 0.48 \)) (Cutler et al. 2014). A smaller randomized single-center phase 2 study found however less cumulative incidence with 43% grade II–IV after TAC/SIR (as compared to an unexpected high rate of 89% after TAC/MTX) (Pidala et al. 2012).

Encouraging rates have also been reported by two other compounds: Bortezomib (BOR) (Koreth et al. 2012) and Maraviroc in 2012 (Reshef et al. 2012) delivered in addition to TAC/MTX. These two drugs as well as CY have been then tested in randomized phase 2 trials in the setting of HSCT (BMTCTN 1203 trial) after RIC in a pick-the-winner-designed trial (i.e., aimed to test in a multicenter setting the three drugs) and compared to prospective contemporary cohort of patients who received TAC/MTX. The final results of this trial closed for recruitment will be available in 2018. Finally, in an open-label three-arm phase 2 randomized controlled trial, investigator at the DFCI compared grade II–IV acute GVHD between conventional TAC/MTX (A) vs. BOR/TAC/MTX (B) and vs. BOR/SIR/TAC (C), in RIC-HSCT recipients from URD in 138 patients. Day +180 grade II–IV acute GVHD rates were similar (A 32.6%, B 31.1%, C 21%) as was the 2-year NRM. Overall, the BOR-based regimens evaluated did not seem to improve outcomes compared with TAC/MTX therapy (Koreth et al. 2018).

Finally, based on preclinical works in mice models, two drugs Vorinostat and Tocilizumab provided exciting results and were supported by ancillary biological data in humans.

- Vorinostat, a histone deacetylase inhibitor, at low concentration has anti-inflammatory and immunoregulatory effects. Pavan Reddy’s group in Michigan provided compelling evidences that in preclinical models Vorinostat reduced GVHD rate, suppressed pro-inflammatory cytokines, regulated APCs, and enhanced Treg functions. In two separate trials (Choi et al. 2014, 2017), authors translated their findings in the clinical setting. In one trial where Vorinostat was added to standard prophylaxis after RIC in HLA-identical siblings, acute GVHD grade II–IV rate was 22% and that of grades III–IV of 6%. In another trial after MAC in URD, the acute GVHD rates were similar.

- The addition of Tocilizumab to CNI+ MTX standard prophylaxis has been tested by two different groups (Kenedy et al. 2014; Dorobyski et al. 2018). Tocilizumab is a humanized anti-IL-6 receptor monoclonal antibody. IL-6 levels are increased early during GVHD and are present in all target tissues. Blockade of the IL-6 signaling pathway has been shown to reduce the severity of GVHD and to prolong survival in experimental models. Investigators in Milwaukee and in Brisbane conducted two separate phase 2 trials using Tocilizumab, and both found very low rate of grade II–IV acute GVHD (less than 15%).

Other new agents are currently either tested in preclinical models or are in the early stage of development in clinical trials (reviewed in Zeiser and Blazar 2017). New strategies that have shown efficacy in preclinical models of GVHD include the inhibition of Janus kinase (JAK) and rho-associated protein kinase 1 (ROCK-1). The blockade of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K), mitogen-activated protein kinase (MEK) proteins 1 and 2, aurora A kinase, and cyclin-dependent kinase 2 (CDK2) have been shown to reduce acute GVHD in murine models.

25.7 Conclusion and Perspective

Despite decades of experience with transplantation, GVHD still occurs in over 40% of the patients. When acute GVHD develops, the main treatment is high-dose steroids. However around one third of the patients will be steroid resistant.
Steroid resistance remains associated with a dismal prognosis (30–40% 1-year survival). These data urge for developing new strategies to prevent GVHD. Fortunately enough, based on preclinical findings and improved knowledge on the immune biology of HSCT, recent drug combination opens the gate for future development.

Key Points
- Current GVHD prophylaxis relies on CNI + short-term MTX after MAC and of CSA ± MMF after RIC
- ATG has been demonstrated to decrease acute GVHD after URD transplant and of chronic GVHD
- Despite the above two points, new prophylactic regimens are clearly warranted since severe GVHD rates still lie on the 25% range

References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
26.1 Introduction

Currently horse and rabbit anti-lymphoglobulins (ATLG) or antithymocyte globulin (ATG) is available; the main, although not exclusive, use is for the treatment of aplastic anemia (horse) and for GVHD prophylaxis (rabbit). They differ in the manufacturing process (i.e., used animal, pulsed antigens, antibody specificities, and cellular targets): for this reason, dose, timing, and setting cannot be interchangeable, and also clinical results are different. As they are polyclonal serum-derived products from nonhuman organisms, they can cause serum sickness and infusion reactions.

26.2 ATLG/ATG Infusion Protocol (See Table 26.1)

ATLG/ATG infusion should be performed in trained centers. Standard hygienic handling of the injection site, careful evaluation of the infusion speed, and appropriate choice of the venous access are crucial. Medical personnel should carefully watch over patients for adverse events not only during but also after infusion.

During administration, the patient needs to be monitored for symptoms related to infusion reactions or anaphylaxis. The first dose should be administered at a reduced speed for the first 30 min. If no symptoms of intolerance occur, infusion rate may be increased. In case of anaphylactic or anaphylactoid reactions, physicians must be prepared to promptly manage this event, and appropriate medical treatment has to be implemented.

A central venous catheter is preferred, although a peripheral large high-flow access may be acceptable, if a central line is not available. Thrombophlebitis is the major risk when a peripheral vein is used. The availability of a high-flow access is important in case of treatment of infusion reactions.

Premedication is mandatory in order to improve systemic and local tolerance (see later). Stability, compatibility, and dilution are different for each product, and specific manufacturer recommendations should be followed carefully.

Preinfusion intraepidermal tests are not yet validated for rabbit ATG but, according to manufacturer indications, are recommended for horse ATLG.

— Although standard infusion time is between 4 and 12 h, a longer administration time correlates with milder side effects, thus making infusions of 12 h highly advised.

F. Bonifazi (*)
Institute of Hematology “Seràgnoli”, University Hospital S. Orsola-Malpighi, Bologna University, Bologna, Italy
e-mail: francesca.bonifazi@unibo.it

The currently used doses of ATLG/ATG are calculated and validated in clinical trials, according to body weight. A strong rationale and some preliminary data (Admiraal et al. 2017) suggest that calculating the ATG/ATLG dose according to the cellular target, i.e., the number of total lymphocyte before infusion of the first dose, can provide the optimal drug exposure and therefore maximize the benefit (GVHD decrease) over the potential risks (increase of relapses and infections). Since ATLG and ATG are different preparations arising from different manufacturing processes and different pulsed antigens, no dose equivalence can be established.

### Table 26.1 Infusion of ATLG/ATG

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factors</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infusion site</td>
<td>– Central line is highly preferred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Risk of thrombophlebitis and drug precipitation are higher in peripheral veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dilution</td>
<td>Avoid to inject undiluted preparation; follow the manufacturer instructions for each ATLG/ATG type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compatibility</td>
<td>– rATLG-Grafalon: avoid to mix concentrate solution with glucose, blood, blood derivatives, sodium heparin, and lipid-containing solutions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– rATG-Thymoglobulin: avoid dilutions with other than saline and dextrose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Horse ATGAM: avoid dextrose injection or acidic solution because of precipitation or instability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stability</td>
<td>Diluted solutions up to 24 h (infusion time included) stored in refrigerator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of infusion</td>
<td>4–12 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Slower infusion results in a lower incidence and severity of infusion reactions; therefore ≥12 h infusion is recommended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Start first administration at low infusion rate (at least for the first 30–60 min)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug interactions</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Premedication</td>
<td>Mandatory; steroids, acetaminophen, antihistamines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preinfusion test</td>
<td>– Not advised for rabbit sera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Recommended for ATGAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Skin and conjunctival tests not extensively validated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Criteria for permanent discontinuation</td>
<td>Anaphylaxis: severe anaphylaxis, always. De-sensitization protocols: not validated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What does D/C stand for?</td>
<td>SIRS: depending on grading and clinical evaluation of pros and cons. In case of rechallenge, more stringent monitoring is required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 26.3 ATLG/ATG Dose

ATLG/ATG administration can be complicated by several infusion reactions including fever, chills, erythema, dyspnea, oxygen desaturation, nausea/vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain, hyperkalemia, tachycardia, hypo- or hypertension, malaise, rash, urticaria, headache, arthralgia, myalgia (serum sickness, after 5–15 days from infusion), hepatic cytolysis, and even systemic anaphylaxis.

Even if the NCI Terminology Criteria for Adverse Events (CTCAE) use different scales for grading reactions to infusion of chemotherapy and allergic/anaphylaxis reactions, there are no specific symptoms enabling to distinguish “standard” infusion reaction from an allergic one that can evolve to anaphylaxis.

Anaphylaxis and acute allergic reactions are based on IgE effect and histamine release by mastocytes, but the vast majority of symptoms can be...
attributed to the cytokine release syndrome (CRS) and are generally reversible. CRS is a form of systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) (Matsuda and Hattori 2006; Balk 2014). CRS can follow not only ATG/ATLG infusion but also chemotherapy, MoAb (Rembarger et al. 1999; Feng et al. 2014), bispecific antibodies, or CAR-T cell therapies (Lee et al. 2014). All these (both allergic and nonallergic, such as CRS) are infusion reactions. Serum sickness is a hypersensitivity phenomenon that can develop after 5–15 days after the infusion, and it is well responsive to steroid treatment.

### 26.5 SIRS

SIRS is a clinical syndrome due to dysregulated inflammation. SIRS may occur in several conditions, such as infection, autoimmune disorders, vasculitis, thromboembolism, chemotherapy infusion, surgery, and burns. The denomination originates from changes of some parameters (temperature, heart and respiratory rates, and white blood cell count) occurring after infection/sepsis according to Bone (Bone et al. 1992). A pediatric version tailored on patient age is also available (Goldstein 2005). More recently, some authors (Lee et al. 2014) revised the classification of the cytokine release syndrome according to the treatment required (oxygen, vasopressors, organ toxicity).

#### 26.5.1 Risk Factors for SIRS

SIRS after ATLG/ATG infusion cannot be predicted and the risk factors are not well known.

The binding of ATLG/ATG to the surface of target cells (lymphocytes, monocytes, dendritic cells) elicits cytokine production and systemic inflammation (Bone et al. 1992).

Thus, that the higher the number of lymphocytes at the moment of the (first) infusion, the more likely is the risk of systemic activation of inflammation and then SIRS.

Accordingly, RIC regimens are reported to be associated with greater cytokine release syndrome (Rembarger and Sundberg 2004) because of the likely higher number of residual lymphocytes in RIC in comparison with MAC regimens.

### 26.5.2 Management of SIRS

#### 26.5.2.1 Prophylaxis

ATLG/ATG infusion reactions can be reduced in frequency and severity by two factors: premedication and speed of infusion. Premedication is performed with steroids, antihistamine, and acetaminophen. The optimal schedule of premedication is not yet well established. Doses of prednisolone of 250 mg (higher than 1 mg/kg), given before the first infusion and followed by an additional dose in the same day, reduce the incidence of infusion reactions and cytokine release as reported (Pihusch et al. 2002).

The rate of infusion is one of the most important factors to reduce the incidence and severity of infusion reactions since lower infusion rates are associated with a lower incidence and the severity of reactions. Administration time ≥12 h is the preferred schedule to yield high compliance to ATLG/ATG infusion.

#### 26.5.2.2 Treatment

If symptoms of SIRS appear, the drug should be discontinued, at least temporarily.

Treatment is symptomatic and depends upon the clinical manifestations. Intensive care for respiratory and hemodynamic support should be given according to international guidelines for critical patients, and the intervention of an intensive specialist may be requested. SIRS after ATLG/ATG is different from sepsis-induced SIRS where steroids failed to achieve a significant benefit (Cronin et al. 1995). Symptoms due to ATLG/ATG-related SIRS are more pronounced on day +1 and then tend to decrease. Steroids, widely used preemptively, provide high response rates also as a treatment measure.
Permanent Discontinuation/Rechallenge

Rechallenge after anaphylaxis and after standard infusion reactions >3 is strongly discouraged.

Non-controlled life-threatening infections are contraindications to transplant and should not modify ATLG/ATG administration per se.

Desensitization protocols are not yet clearly validated.

Key Points

- SIRS is a systemic reaction related to cytokine release after ATLG/ATG infusion.
- The infusion reactions can be reduced by premedication (steroids, antihistamines, and acetaminophen) and by a low infusion rate (12 h or longer).

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Infection Control and Isolation Procedures

Malgorzata Mikulska

27.1 Introduction

Infection control is defined as a set of measures aimed at preventing or stopping the spread of infections in healthcare settings. All HSCT recipients should follow general guidelines (e.g. CDC) for preventing healthcare-associated infections through hand hygiene, disinfection and sterilization, environmental infection control, isolation precautions and prevention of intravascular catheter-related infection (Sehulster et al. 2004; Guidelines for Hand Hygiene in Healthcare Settings (2002), Guideline for Isolation Precautions: Preventing Transmission of Infectious Agents in Healthcare Settings (2007), Guidelines for Environmental Infection Control in Health-Care Facilities (2003), all available at https://www.cdc.gov/infectioncontrol/guidelines/index.html; Freifeld et al. 2011).

Dedicated and detailed international recommendations for HSCT recipients on preventing infectious complications have been published in 2009 (Tomblyn et al. 2009; Yokoe et al. 2009). As there were no well-executed randomized or controlled trials and little evidence to hand from cohort case-controlled or multiple time-series studies or uncontrolled experiments, reliance had to be placed on descriptive studies, reports of expert committees or on the opinions of respected authorities. Hence, most of these recommendations on infection control could only be graded as level III.

Isolation procedures in HSCT recipient comprise precautions universal for all healthcare settings (Standard Precautions and Transmission-Based Precautions) and those specific for HSCT and employed to prevent transmission of spores of filamentous fungi, mainly Aspergillus, with unfiltered air.

There is no consensus on specific protective environment, called also reverse isolation, for neutropenic patients. HSCT recipients should be placed in single-patient room, with adequate ventilation system (see below), if possible. However, no clear benefit of routine footwear exchange, or use of disposable gloves and gowns on the rate of infections have been demonstrated, and procedures vary significantly between institutions, with routine use of masks and disposable gloves and gowns in some but not others. On the contrary, the negative effect of strict protective isolation on patient’s quality of life and well-being should be acknowledged and weighted against the evidence of benefits of single protective measures (Abad et al. 2010).

M. Mikulska (*)
Division of Infectious Diseases, Department of Health Sciences (DISSAL), IRCCS Ospedale Policlinico San Martino, University of Genova, Genova, Italy
e-mail: m.mikulska@unige.it
27.2 Standard Precautions

Should be used universally for all patients and they include:

1. Proper hand hygiene
2. Use of standard personal protective equipment (PPE)
3. Appropriate cleaning and disinfection protocols (including those for shared equipment or toys and play areas in paediatric units)
4. Safe injection practices
5. Infection control practices for special procedures (e.g. surgical masks for lumbar puncture)

27.2.1 Hand Hygiene

It is by far the most effective means of prevention of pathogen transmission (Freifeld et al. 2011; Tomblyn et al. 2009). The preferred method of hand decontamination is with an alcohol-based hand rub, due to its superior convenience and reduced drying of the skin. Handwashing with soap and water is recommended if hands are visibly soiled, for example, with blood or body fluids, or after potential contact with spores of *Clostridium difficile* or with Norovirus. Of note, 15–30 s is the minimum necessary handwashing time.

PPE used routinely by healthcare workers during patient care and procedures are gloves, gowns (used if direct contact with patient’s fluids is expected) and mouth, nose and eye protection (used during procedures which are likely to generate splashes or sprays of blood, body fluids, secretions and excretions). Routine donning of gowns upon entrance into a high-risk unit, including HSCT unit, is not indicated.

27.3 Transmission-Based Precautions

These are the measures used in addition to standard precautions for patients with documented or suspected infection or colonization with highly transmissible or epidemiologically important pathogens for which additional precautions are necessary to prevent transmission. The main types of transmission-based precautions are contact precautions, airborne precautions and droplet precautions. The specific PPE and the examples of pathogens which require each type of transmission-based precautions are outlined in Table 27.1.

*Contact precaution* should be also applied in a pre-emptive way, e.g. in case of patients transferred from high-risk facilities, pending the results of surveillance cultures. Clear criteria should be provided for appropriate discontinuation of contact precautions (usually when three different swabs from a known multidrug-resistant (MDR) positive site, taken 1–7 days apart, are negative). In case of contact precautions, and particularly if a patient is still colonized with a resistant pathogen, this information should be clearly stated on the discharge information form for the centres which will care for this patient subsequently. In case of MDR Gram-negative pathogens, full antibiotic susceptibility results should be provided to allow appropriate empirical therapy in case of severe subsequent infection.

*Cough etiquette* should be promoted. Additionally, transplant recipients, particularly those with respiratory symptoms, should use surgical masks and maintain special separation from others in common waiting areas, ideally a distance of at least 1 m.

Upon entering HSCT unit, *visitors* should be screened for the presence of symptoms of easily transmissible diseases such as *viral respiratory tract infections*, gastroenteritis, etc. and, if present, advised to postpone their visit until no longer symptomatic. Also, healthcare workers with respiratory symptoms should refrain from direct patient care until the symptoms resolve. Sero negative persons who were exposed to communicable diseases such as measles or chickenpox should refrain from contact with HSCT recipients or transplant candidates until the incubation period passes without developing the disease. Instructional materials for patients and visitors on recommended hand hygiene, respiratory hygiene/cough etiquette practices and the application of transmission-based precautions should be provided. Vaccination of healthcare workers
and household contacts is paramount and discussed in the dedicated chapter.

### 27.4 Management of the Threat of MDR Bacteria

In the era of increasing bacterial resistance, an important part of infection control deals with prevention of colonization and infection with MDR bacteria (Siegel et al. 2007). Active surveillance, for example, with rectal swabs for detecting colonization with vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE) or carbapenem-resistant *Enterobacteriaceae* or nasal swabs for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, should be performed in institutions where these pathogens are regularly encountered or in patients coming from such institutions.

The need for screening for different pathogens may vary according to local epidemiology. For instance, Italian statement on the management of carbapenem-resistant *Klebsiella pneumoniae* (CR-Kp) infections in HSCT was published (Girmenia et al. 2015). Briefly, they recommended active detection of CR-Kp carriers before and after HSCT, since the carriers have approximately 30% risk of developing CR-Kp bloodstream infection; staff education and monitoring of adherence to contact precautions; a cautious approach to declare a patient no longer colonized and a need for coordinated effort to intra- or inter-hospital transmission. HSCT is not contraindicated in MDR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of precaution</th>
<th>Patients placement and PPE to be used by patients</th>
<th>PPE for healthcare personnel</th>
<th>Example of pathogens and comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Contact            | – Single room; if not available, cohorting of those colonized/infected by the same pathogen  
– During transport, cover patient’s colonized/infected areas | – Disposable gloves and gowns  
– Use patient-dedicated or disposable equipment; if not feasible, clean and disinfect thoroughly | – Infection with *Clostridium difficile*  
– Colonization or infection with MDR pathogens  
– Infectious diarrhoea due to pathogens such as *Salmonella, Norovirus, Rotavirus*, etc. All the units or other hospitals involved in patient’s care should be notified about all the isolated pathogens requiring contact precautions |
| Droplet            | – Single room; if not available, cohorting of those infected by the same pathogen  
– Surgical mask  
– Follow CDC’s respiratory hygiene/cough etiquette in healthcare setting | – Mask (surgical)  
– Disposable gloves and gowns | – Pathogens transmitted by respiratory droplets (i.e. large-particle droplets >5 μ in size) that are generated by a patient who is coughing, sneezing or talking, e.g. influenza or other respiratory viruses. In case of transplant recipients, the duration of precautions should be extended due to the possibility of prolonged shedding caused by immunodeficiency |
| Airborne           | – Rooms with at least 6 (existing facility) or 12 (new construction/renovation) air changes per hour and direct exhaust of air to the outside (if not possible, the air may be returned to the air-handling system or adjacent spaces if all air is directed through HEPA filters)  
– Surgical mask  
– Follow CDC’s respiratory hygiene/cough etiquette in healthcare setting | – N95 or higher-level respirator for respiratory protection | – *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (patients with respiratory tuberculosis and sputum with direct evidence of mycobacteria)  
– Measles, chickenpox and disseminated herpes zoster |

*HEPA* high-efficiency particulate air, *MDR* multidrug resistant, *PPE* personal protective equipment
carriers, but establishing upfront the appropriate empirical therapy to be administered in case of fever during neutropenia is mandatory, and careful evaluation of the possibility of decolonization in selected cases through oral administration of non-absorbable molecules or faecal microbiota transplantation is warranted (Girmenia et al. 2015; Bilinski et al. 2017).

In order to counteract the threat of MDR pathogens and the shortage of agents active against Gram-negative MDR bacteria, antimicrobial stewardship program should be implemented in every centre (Gyssens et al. 2013). Additionally, national systems for surveillance, with obligation for notification and recommendations for containment and infection control measures, should be put in place (Tacconelli et al. 2014).

The aim of antimicrobial stewardship is to limit the negative impact of MDR pathogens on patients’ outcome, and its main elements are detailed in Table 27.2.

Successful implementation of antimicrobial stewardship is based on a multidisciplinary approach and close collaboration between the treating haematologists, microbiology laboratory and infectious diseases consultation service, including infection control unit, hospital pharmacy and hospital authorities who should recognize that this is an important step in high-quality management of infectious complications after HSCT.

Surveillance of effectiveness of infection control practices should be put in place, with regular monitoring of adherence. In case of contact-transmission pathogens, such as Clostridium difficile or MDR bacteria, laboratory data should be regularly analysed to detect any trends indicating possible increase in transmission.

### Table 27.2 Main elements of antimicrobial stewardship program

| 1. | Regularly updated (e.g. every 6–12 months) surveillance of local epidemiology of infections in HSCT recipients, through reports on: |
|    | (a) Resistance rates to main antibiotics in top 10 most frequent pathogens |
|    | (b) Data on antibiotic consumption |
|    | (c) Data on patient outcomes in case of most frequent/difficult infections |
| 2. | Implementation of updated diagnostic methods and prompt reporting of microbiologic results by the laboratory in order to provide clinicians with |
|    | (a) Correct and timely diagnosis (e.g. of viral or fungal infections or Clostridium difficile, which may allow to avoid unnecessary antibiotic therapy) |
|    | (b) Rapid results of antimicrobial susceptibility testing to allow choosing the best targeted antibiotic therapy |
| 3. | Promoting appropriate antibiotic use, for example |
|    | (a) Implementing timely de-escalation or discontinuation of antibiotic treatment, particularly during neutropenia |
|    | (b) Appropriate dosing for different indications |
|    | (c) Optimized infusion strategies for time- and dose-dependent molecules, e.g. use of extended or continuous infusion of time-dependent molecules such as beta-lactams |
| 4. | Establishing and regularly updating protocols for prevention and treatment of infections, e.g. identifying antibiotic and antifungal regimens for empirical therapy in accordance with local epidemiology (e.g. prevalence of extended spectrum beta-lactamase (ESBL) producing Enterobacteriaceae, methicillin-resistant staphylococci, azole-resistant aspergilli, etc.) |

#### 27.5 HSCT Environment

Flowers, fountains, water leaks and water-retaining bath toys carry the risk of water-associated infections with Gram-negative bacilli such as Pseudomonas aeruginosa or Legionella and thus should be avoided in the areas where severely immunocompromised patients are being cared for (Yokoe et al. 2009). In addition, there are issues specific for HSCT recipients, such as room ventilation, intensified protective measures applied during hospital construction and renovations, avoidance of contact with soil (including potted plants) and avoidance of dust both permanently (e.g. non-carpeting and no porous surfaces) and while cleaning, all aimed at decreasing the risk of invasive aspergillosis (Yokoe et al. 2009).

CIBMTR/ASBMT/EBMT global recommendations on protective environment concerning hospital room design and ventilation are available (Yokoe et al. 2009). Briefly, allo-HSCT recipients should ideally be placed in protective
environment rooms that incorporate several features including central or point-of-use HEPA (high-efficiency particulate air) filters with 99.97% efficiency for removing particles ≤0.3 μm in diameter and ≥12 air exchanges/hours, with directed airflow and consistent positive air pressure differential between the patient’s room and the hallway ≥2.5 Pa. All these measures remove airborne fungal spores and are aimed at preventing airborne infections with filamentous fungi such as aspergilli. The efficacy of protective isolation measures in case of auto-HSCT recipients is less well established.

Currently HEPA-filtered rooms are probably available in almost all centres, while few centres fulfilled all the CIBMTR/ASBMT/EBMT requirements. However, the knowledge on the details and maintenance of protective environments in the HSCT setting was recently found inadequate, requiring education efforts and cooperation with hospital infection control and the hospital maintenance services (Styczynski et al. 2018).

During construction and renovations, due to high density of fungal spores, protective environmental measures are particularly important, and mould-control measures should be intensified and filtration efficiency should be monitored frequently to best determine appropriate time for replacement. Specific recommendations are available and should be followed (Sehulster et al. 2004). For example, construction and renovation areas should have negative air pressure relative to HSCT patient care areas to ensure that air flows from patient care areas toward construction areas, and a portable, industrial-grade HEPA filter should be used between a construction zone and the HSCT unit if a large area is under construction and negative pressure differential cannot be guaranteed. In addition, HSCT recipients may benefit from wearing N95 respirators outside HEPA-filtered areas, particularly during ongoing constructions, since unlike surgical masks, higher efficiency ones offer protection against Aspergillus spores. Active monitoring of cases of invasive mould infections should be performed in order to detect any possible outbreak.

### 27.6 Food Safety in Transplant Recipients

Drinking water should be safe; thus boiled or bottled water is to be preferred. Tap water in highly populated areas is usually regarded as safe from bacterial contamination because regularly tested for it. However, it may still contain Cryptosporidiums. Water from private wells should be avoided.

The use of low-microbial diet, which prohibits fresh fruits and vegetables and unprocessed food, did not result in a decreased incidence of infections in neutropenic patients (Sonbol et al. 2015; van Dalen et al. 2016). Standard food safety practices that emphasize safe handling and washing or thoroughly cooking food were found to be just as safe and produced no increase in infection rates or incidence of neutropenic fever. Similarly, to other immunocompromised patients, HSCT recipients should avoid foods possibly contaminated by *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Campylobacter jejuni*, *Salmonella enteritidis*, *Toxoplasma gondii*, etc. Main high-risk foods to avoid include:

- Raw or undercooked meat, poultry, fish or shellfish
- Refrigerated smoked fish
- Unpasteurized milk
- Foods with raw or undercooked eggs
- Unwashed fruits and vegetables
- Raw sprouts
- Soft cheeses made from unpasteurized milk like brie, camembert and blue-veined and fresh cheese (can be eaten if cooked)
- Hot dogs, deli meats and luncheon meats that have not been reheated to steaming hot or to 75 °C
- Unsafe water and ice made of it

Food safety practices for food handling should be followed, and specific information for cancer patients is available online (https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Food/FoodborneIllnessContaminants/
Too restrictive diet recommendations, in the absence of the clear benefit of avoiding foods other than abovementioned, may have negative impact on patient’s nutritional status and/or quality of life.

Key Points
- General guidelines for preventing healthcare-associated infections should be followed, and hand hygiene is the single most effective measure.
- Mandatory isolation procedures comprise Standard Precautions and Transmission-Based Precautions if appropriate: airborne, contact or droplets.
- Specific recommendations on ventilation, room design and protective environment during construction/renovation are provided to protect HSCT from transmission of spores of filamentous fungi, mainly Aspergillus.
- Protocols for prevention of colonization and infection with multidrug-resistant bacteria should be put in place, particularly in centres where these bacteria are already present.
- Antimicrobial stewardship program should be implemented in every centre to promote optimal use of antibiotics.
- Standard food safety practices should be applied, and only selected foods should be avoided (e.g. raw/undercook/under-heated meat, fish or eggs, unpasteurized milk, unwashed fruits and vegetables, unsafe water).

References


28.1 Introduction

Many of the conditions requiring allo-HSCT and related complications are similar in adults and children and are covered in other chapters of this handbook.

However, since pediatric age is a continuum between newborns and adults, there are at least two aspects, psychological and infectious disease issues, that may require a dedicated approach for the following reason:

1. **Psychological aspects.** Childhood encompasses different ages and consequently different cognitive, decisional, and emotional capacities that make psychological intervention far more faceted than in adults. In addition, psychological intervention should also take in charge at higher extent the needs and the expectations of the patient’s family.

2. **Infectious diseases.** Data on epidemiology and management of infections in children are far less numerous and consistent than in adults. In addition most of the available data are derived from studies in adults, and they cannot always simply be transposed to children for an effective application.

In the following paragraphs, we will analyze the specific approaches related to these aspects in children undergoing HSCT.

28.2 Psychological Aspects

Children who undergo HSCT experience several numerous psychological reactions: anxiety, depression, behavioral and social problems, and post-traumatic stress symptoms. In the stages before HSCT, anxiety increases, and the emotional distress continues to rise until 1 week after transplant, whereas depression is heightened by hospitalization and physical isolation. Age (<7 years) and severity of the illness influence the level of emotional reactions. Especially, children <5 years are more likely to withdraw and to be deprived of their self-help skills and even of their mobility and speech skills. The level of pre-HSCT emotional disturbance is strongly predictive of post-HSCT emotional functioning; therefore early intervention appears of critical importance (Packman et al. 2010).

The most studied psychological treatments for children with cancer are cognitive behavioral therapies (CBT) that are considered to improve emotional adjustment, compliance with medical...
treatment, and behavioral problems associated with HSCT. Effective interventions are clearly largely dependent on social skills and emotional well-being. Techniques such as guided imagery, distraction, rhythmic breathing, and relaxation are commonly used to decrease the acute psychological distress due to medical procedures including HSCT (Packman et al. 2010). Psychiatric assessment and pharmacological approach should be advisable when other approaches are not sufficient for children with preexisting psychiatric diagnoses who are vulnerable to worsening of the psychiatric disorders (Steele et al. 2015).

Health-related quality of life (HRQOL) compromise is usually evident prior to and soon after transplant and starts to improve between 4 and 6 months after HSCT. Child psychosocial problems, caregiver stress, and social support emerged as significant predictors of physical and emotional outcome after discharging. Indeed, high level of stress of caregivers and/or low perceived social support was associated with higher risk of psychologically complicated outcome. On the contrary emotional and behavioral problems of the child at discharge were not associated to substantially slower improvements in overall HRQOL that usually occurred between 3 and 9 months after discharge. This is because reestablishment of usual activities that were precluded during HSCT outbalances emotional problems due to the return to “normal” life (Loiselle et al. 2016).

As for neurocognitive functions, long-term studies are not fully concordant, but some findings (Kelly et al. 2018) seem to suggest that children’s intelligence quotient (IQ) scores post HSCT are inferior to those before HSCT. In particular adaptive skills and social competence domains are affected in the first year after HSCT and so do self-esteem and emotional well-being. Impairment in neurocognitive area is associated with younger age at diagnosis and treatment. Clinical assessment is recommended before the recovery period 1 year after HSCT annually thereafter.

### Table 28.1 Main psychological problems in HSCT in pediatric age

| Patients | Emotional disturbance: anxiety, depression, behavioral and social problems, post traumatic stress symptoms  
HRQOL: compromise is evident before and soon after HSCT. Start to improve between 4 and 6 months after HSCT  
Neurocognitive area: impairment is associated with younger age at diagnosis and treatment. Adaptive skills and social competence are affected in the first year after HSCT | – Individual therapies to improve emotional adjustment, compliance with medical treatment and behavioral problems associated with HSCT  
– Guided imagery, distraction, rhythmic breathing, relaxation to decrease the distress due to medical procedures  
– Clinical assessment is recommended: before the recovery period 1 year after HSCT annually thereafter |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Siblings | Post-traumatic stress reactions, anxiety, low self-esteem, feelings of guilt and school problems | Open communication  
Facilitate the access of sibling to the hospital |
| Parents  | Parental distress, anxiety, depression, post traumatic stress symptoms. Take care of additional burden due to medical complications | Familial intervention  
Crisis intervention approach  
Stress and coping models |

Kelly et al. 2018
*Siblings*, either donors or non-donors, are at risk of developing emotional disturbances such as post-traumatic stress reactions, anxiety, low self-esteem, feelings of guilt, and school problems. Indeed, researches are needed to identify the most useful intervention to cope with negative effects of HSCT on siblings (Packman et al. 2010; Gerhardt et al. 2015). Currently adopted strategies include open communication about the patient’s medical situation and transplant process, favoring the idea of accepting help from friends and family members, and facilitating the access of sibling to the hospital arranging visits in a way that they look like a special event or assigning a sibling a special role (Gerhardt et al. 2015; White et al. 2017).

*Parental distress* anxiety, and depression levels are often increased as a result of their child undergoing HSCT. The distress and anxiety may be even greater for parents whose healthy child also becomes part of the HSCT process through donating his/her marrow (Packman et al. 2010). Significant determinants of parental distress include prior parent and patient experience of distress associated with the child’s illness, the child’s tendency of internalizing or externalizing behavior problems, the family’s attitude to provide support, and a parental proneness toward avoidant coping behaviors (Phipps et al. 2005). Parents mostly experience post-traumatic stress symptoms that manifest in cognitive and behavioral efforts to avoid reminders of the HSCT and intrusive thoughts about it (Virtue et al. 2014).

*Early and late HSCT medical complications* significantly increase the psychological involvement of the caregiver. HSCT healthcare professionals should also take care of the additional burden that complications generate on the parents and should proactively link parents to resources aimed to help them coping with this extra load (Heinze et al. 2015). Despite the recognized needs, very few caregivers seek out psychological service. The most frequent barriers are that clinicians prioritize medical patient’s needs and cover tasks usually deemed to social support, lack of adequate locations, and embarrassment about seeking psychological counseling (Devine et al. 2016).

*Familial interventions* aimed to enhance protective factors, improve communication, and decrease parental anxiety and depression are crucial. In this respect, cancer-specific psychological interventions may serve as a template to delivering HSCT-tailored interventions (Packman et al. 2010). Traditional individual therapy is very useful even if in adapted forms. Usually it includes crisis intervention approach and stress and coping models to reduce HSCT-related stress. CBT can encompass different strategies such as the expression of emotional feelings, identification of distorted automatic thoughts, the use of problem-focused coping skills, discussion of psychosocial impact on the family, and training in assertiveness and communication skills (Steele et al. 2015).

### 28.3 Infectious Diseases

Infections represent one of the most frequently occurring and feared complications of HSCT. *Antibacterial prophylaxis* for febrile neutropenia is frequently administered in pediatric HSCT but never specifically analyzed in a randomized clinical trial. Its use can be associated with selection of resistant strains.

In the pre-engraftment phases, *empirical antibiotic therapy* for febrile neutropenia could be represented by monotherapy with an anti-*Pseudomonas* beta-lactam, but it is mandatory its adaptation to local epidemiological data (Lehrnbecher et al. 2017). Moreover, empirical antibiotic therapy should be considered also after engraftment because of the important risk of morbidity and mortality. Antibiotic-resistant pathogens represent a new challenge because of the high mortality rates (>50%) observed in pediatric HSCT (Girmenia et al. 2015; Caselli et al. 2016).

*Clostridium difficile* may represent a cause of severe, and sometimes recurrent, disease, but it must be kept in mind that children aged below 2 years may harbor this pathogen in their intestinal tract (Lees et al. 2016;
Enoch et al. 2011) and that other pathogens (e.g., viruses or *Cryptosporidium*) could be the cause of gastroenteritis (Castagnola et al. 2016). Table 28.2 summarizes antibacterial drugs for prophylaxis and treatment of invasive diseases.

**Invasive fungal disease** (IFD) is associated with high mortality in pediatric HSCT (Cesaro et al. 2017; Castagnola et al. 2018b). Increasing age has been identified as a risk factor for the development of IFD (Fisher et al. 2017), but recent multivariable analyses showed that age is no longer significant in the presence of severe acute or chronic extensive GvHD or in cases of primary graft failure or rejection (Castagnola et al. 2014, 2018a).

*Primary prophylaxis* should be implemented in the highest-risk groups like patients with primary graft failure or rejection, or with severe acute or chronic extensive GvHD, or in centers with high incidence of IFD (Groll et al. 2014).

### Table 28.2 Prophylaxis and therapy of invasive bacterial infections in children undergoing allogeneic HSCT

| **Prophylaxis for febrile neutropenia** | 
| Ciprofloxacin | Oral or IV until neutrophil recovery or start of empirical therapy for febrile neutropenia  
*Notes:* Never analyzed in a randomized clinical trial in HSCT. Risk of selection of resistant strains |
| Amoxicillin-clavulanate | Oral or IV until neutrophil recovery or start of empirical therapy for febrile neutropenia  
*Notes:* Never analyzed in a randomized clinical trial in HSCT. Risk of selection of resistant strains |

| **Empirical therapy for febrile neutropenia, or fever after engraftment, especially in presence of GvHD** |
| Pipera-tazo | 100 mg/kg (max 4000 mg) of piperacillin q6h |
| Cefepime | 33 mg/kg (max 2000 mg) q8h |
| Ceftazidime | 33 mg/kg (max 2000 mg) |
| Meropenem | 20 mg/kg (max 1000 mg) q8h  
*Notes:* Risk of selection of resistant Gram-negatives or *C. difficile* associated disease. Higher doses could be necessary for treatment of carbapenem resistant pathogen when MIC is ≤16 mg/L. For higher MIC values carbapenems are not indicated |

*Combination therapy*  
Aminoglycoside [e.g. amikacin 20 mg/kg (max 1500 mg) q24h] + beta-lactam  
*Notes:* According to local susceptibility, and proportions of resistance to beta-lactams indicated for monotherapy

| **Documented infections: according with localizations and antibiotic susceptibility tests** |
| Antibiotics for resistant pathogens, combinations could be needed | *Gram-positives:* vancomycin, teicoplanin daptomycin, linezolid, tigecycline, fosfomycin  
*Gram-negatives:* ciprofloxacin, colistin, tigecycline (not active against P. aeruginosas), fosfomycin, ceftazidime-avibactam (not active against metallo beta-lactamases), ceftolozane-tazobactam (not active against carbapenemases)  
*Notes:*  
– According to ATB susceptibility tests in documented infections  
– Beta-lactams should be preferred to glycopeptides in case of infections due to oxacillin-susceptible staphylococci  
– Do not use empirical glycopeptides for persistent fever without signs of localizations attributable to Gram-positives or high suspicion or risk by patient’s history or local epidemiology of oxacillin-resistant staphylococci or ampicillin-resistant enterococci  
– For vancomycin resistant staphylococci or enterococci daptomycin, linezolid or tigecycline could represent therapeutic options  
– No PK data for ceftazidime-avibactam or ceftolozane-tazobactam available in children |

| **Clostridium difficile associated disease** |
| Vancomycin, metronidazole, fidaxomicin | Oral therapy, vancomycin 10 mg/kg (max 125 mg) q6h as 1st choice  
*Fidaxomicin is not registered for <18 years*  
*Notes:* No data are available for fecal transplantation in immunocompromised children. Different dosages proposed for recurrent disease |

MIC minimally inhibitory concentration, GvHD graft vs. host disease, *Pipera-tazo* Piperacillin-Tazobactam
Diagnosis of IFD is based on isolation of fungal pathogens from cultures of sterile sites or tissue invasion demonstrated by histology or by the presence of fungal antigens in blood or cerebrospinal fluid or bronchoalveolar lavage, associated with suggestive imaging (Castagnola et al. 2016; Tomà et al. 2016) in children with a compatible clinical picture. Detection of galactomannan and 1-3-beta-D-glucan is widely used for the diagnosis of (probable) IFD also in children. However, a recent meta-analysis (Lehrnbecher et al. 2016) and new clinical data (Calitri et al. 2017) showed highly variable and generally poor sensitivity, specificity, and predictive values of these tests, especially when used for screening. PCR should still be considered as an investigative test (Lehrnbecher et al. 2016).

Also, for the use of antifungal drugs, there are caveats.

Treatment: Voriconazole frequently needs to be administered at higher dosages in the youngest patients (<5 years) to achieve and maintain effective plasma concentrations (Xu et al. 2016; Soler-Palacin et al. 2012; Neely et al. 2015; Castagnola and Mesini 2018). Inflammation, steroid administration, or obesity can further modify its concentrations (Castagnola and Mesini 2018; Natale et al. 2017) and so do genetic factors (Teusink et al. 2016). Finally, severe cutaneous adverse events can be observed also in children when voriconazole is administered for prolonged periods, especially in concomitance with sun exposure (Goyal et al. 2014; Bernhard et al. 2012). Posaconazole oral suspension has variable absorption implying the risk of sub-therapeutic concentrations (Jancel et al. 2017), especially in the presence of intestinal acute GvHD (Heinz et al. 2016). This can be at least partially avoided by fatty meal and/or other “bundle” measures or using doses based on body surface area (Castagnola and Mesini 2018). Posaconazole tablets have no absorption problems, and pediatric pharmacological data show that their use determines effective concentrations also in children (Castagnola and Mesini 2018). However, tablets are slightly less than 2 cm long and should be swallowed whole with water and should not be crushed, chewed, or broken (EMA 2018) thus limiting their use in youngest patients, but alternate day administration could represent an effective strategy (Mesini et al. 2018). Triazoles have also many drug interactions that must be kept in mind during their use. For all these reasons, therapeutic drug monitoring is mandatory both for prophylactic and therapeutic uses (Groll et al. 2014).

Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia is a severe, life-threatening fungal infection in allo-HSCT recipients. Primary prophylaxis is highly recommended in children undergoing allo-HSCT at least in the post-engraftment. Prophylaxis is highly effective, and in case of documented failure, especially in adolescents, compliance must be checked (Castagnola and Mesini 2018). Table 28.3 summarizes dosages of drugs for prevention or treatment of IFD in children.

Viral Infections No major differences between children and adults are expected. However, primary viral infections are more frequent in pediatrics, and in this setting, it must be stressed that healthy household contacts and healthcare workers may represent important sources, with possible hospital spreading.

Screening and Isolation Application of bundle procedures for patients as well as correct hand hygiene, correct vascular access manipulation, correct isolation procedures according to the via of pathogen spreading, and the use of HEPA filters can be all of great utility in the prevention of difficult to treat infections in HSCT.

Vaccines represent also an important tool for prevention of viral and bacterial (S. pneumoniae) infections in the post transplant setting.
Table 28.3 Prophylaxis and therapy of IFI in children undergoing allogeneic HSCT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spectrum of activity: molds, yeasts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Voriconazole</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Prophylaxis:</em> No evidence to support this indication in children. Dosage in children aged 2 to &lt;12 years or 12–14 years with weight &lt;50 kg: 9 mg/kg q12h; In children aged ≥15 years or 12–14 years and with weight ≥50 kg: 4 mg/kg q12h (1st day, 6 mg/kg). Target concentration &gt;1 and &lt;6 mg/L at steady state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Therapy:</em> Dosage in children aged 2 to &lt;12 years or 12–14 years with weight &lt;50 kg: 9 mg/kg q12h; In children aged ≥15 years or 12–14 years and with weight ≥50 kg: 4 mg/kg q12h (1st day, 6 mg/kg). Target concentration &gt;1 and &lt;6 mg/L at steady state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Notes:</strong> Measure serum concentrations (mandatory) before the 5th dose (2 days of treatment); before the 5th dose following any dose adjustment; routinely every 1–2 weeks after achievement of steady-state; when interacting drugs start or stop in case of potential clinical or laboratory manifestations of toxicity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spectrum of activity: molds, yeasts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Posaconazole</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Prophylaxis:</em> Oral suspension: 120 mg/m² q8h for children who can not swallow tablets. Tablets: loading dose of 300 mg q12h (1st day) then maintenance 300 q24h, independently from meal. According with BW:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Body weight</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15–21 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22–30 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31–35 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35–40 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;40 kg or 13 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target concentration for prophylaxis 0.7 mg/L at steady state. Not registered for use &lt;18 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Therapy:</em> Oral suspension: 120 mg/m² q8h for children who cannot swallow tablets. Tablets: loading dose of 300 mg q12h (1st day) then maintenance 300 q24h, independently from meal. According with BW:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Body weight</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15–21 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22–30 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31–35 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35–40 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;40 kg or 13 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target concentration for therapy ≥1 mg/L at steady state. Not registered for use &lt;18 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Notes:</strong> When using oral suspension remove acid suppression if possible and use “posaconazole bundle”:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– ascorbic acid 500 mg per os with each dose of posaconazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– 120–180 mL of carbonated soda beverage (i.e.: cola or ginger ale) or acidic fruit juice (e.g.: cranberry or orange juice) with each dose of posaconazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– heavy snack or food with each dose, preferably high-fat, including</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– use a more fractionated schedule (q 6-8h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With any formulation measure serum concentrations (mandatory): 7 days after initiation of therapy or following dose adjustment or when interacting drugs start or stop or in case of concerns about GI absorption, especially for prolonged periods of time or in case of potential clinical or laboratory manifestations of toxicity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spectrum of activity: molds, yeasts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Itraconazole</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Prophylaxis:</em> Moderate evidence to support a recommendation in children. Oral solution 2.5 mg/kg per day orally (in children aged ≥2 years) q12h, with empty stomach. Target concentration for prophylaxis 0.5 mg/L at steady state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Notes:</em> Measure serum concentrations. For oral administration use oral solution. Administer with empty stomach</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spectrum of activity: yeast</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fluconazole</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Prophylaxis:</em> Not highly recommendable because of the narrow spectrum (yeasts only). 6 mg/kg/ day (maximum 400 mg/ day) intravenously or orally q24h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Therapy:</em> 10–20 mg/kg/day, maximum 800 mg/day) intravenously or orally q24h</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spectrum of activity: molds, yeasts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Liposomal amphotericin B</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Prophylaxis:</em> Moderate evidence to support intravenous, no evidence for nebulized administration Intravenous: 1 mg/ kg q24h every other day or 2.5 mg/kg q24h twice weekly; Nebulized: 25 mg q12h on 2 consecutive days per week associated with fluconazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Therapy:</em> Intravenous: 3–5 mg/kg according to etiology. Doses up to 10 mg/kg have been proposed for mucormycosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 28.3 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication</th>
<th>Spectrum of activity</th>
<th>Prophylaxis</th>
<th>Therapy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Micafungin</td>
<td>Spectrum of activity: yeast (not Cryptococcus) (molds?)</td>
<td>Prophylaxis: Not highly recommendable because of the narrow spectrum (yeasts only)</td>
<td>1 mg/kg (in children weighing ≥50 kg, 50 mg) q24h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Therapy: 2–4 mg/kg (max 100 mg/kg) q24h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isavuconazole</td>
<td>Spectrum of action: molds, yeasts</td>
<td>Prophylaxis: No evidence for this indication. No data for pediatric use and dosage. Not registered &lt;18 years</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Therapy: No data for pediatric use and dosage. Not registered &lt;18 years</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Notes: In case of pneumonia add prednisone at 2 mg/kg/day. Nebulized pentamidine requires special tools for administration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Key Points

Many of the conditions requiring allo-HSCT and related complications are similar in adults and children and are covered in other chapters of this handbook.

However, since pediatric age is a continuum between newborns and adults, there are at least two aspects:

- **Psychological aspects.** Childhood encompasses different ages and consequently different cognitive, decisional, and emotional capacities that make psychological intervention far more faceted than in adults.
- **Infectious diseases.** Data on epidemiology and management of infections in children are far less numerous and consistent than in adults. Despite that there are many differential aspects in its management.

### References


29 Vaccinations

Rafael de la Cámara

29.1 General Concepts

Vaccination should be considered a routine practice for all HSCT receptors, either autologous or allogeneic, adults or children. It should be implemented in all HSCT programs. Adult cover is particularly important as they represent 90% of HSCTs. To obtain this objective, the following are necessary:

- To have in place a standardized program specific for HSCT patients.
- The collaboration of the Preventive Department of the hospital and primary care physicians.
- The program must be simple, with a clear chronology, and convenient for the patient and physician (no increase in the number of visits).
- FACT-JACIE Standards (version 7.0, March 2018) require that policies/SOP are in place for post transplant vaccination schedules and indications.

There is no a unique vaccine schedule for all HSCT patients. Each center should discuss and adapt a specific vaccine program.

- The practical application of the immunization programs shows important variations across centers (Miller et al. 2017).
- Auto-HSCT is generally vaccinated with the schedule used for allogeneic patients with small differences (see Tables 29.1 and 29.2).

Reasons for universal vaccination of HSCT patients:

- General interest: as a general healthcare principle, all the population should be correctly vaccinated, including adults and of course HSCT patients. If an increasing collective of patients, like HSCT, is not well vaccinated, that can generate holes of immunity that can be a risk for the health of the general population.
- Individual interest for each HSCT patient: vaccination protects the patient against infections that can cause important morbimortality. There are frequent infections in HSCT that have safe vaccines (pneumococcus, influenza, HBV) and other rare infections associated with high mortality that have an unsatisfactory prevention/treatment but can be prevented by immunization (tetanus, diphtheria, measles, polio).
29.2 General Principles of Vaccination in HSCT Patients

29.2.1 The Pretransplant Vaccination

The pretransplant vaccination is not effective to maintain a prolonged post transplant immunity. In order to protect the HSCT patient, a complete series of post transplant vaccinations is required. This is different from what is recommended for solid organ transplant (SOT) recipients for whom pretransplant vaccination is an essential part of the vaccination program. Post-HSCT patients should be viewed as “never vaccinated” regardless of the pre-HSCT vaccination history of the patient or the donor (Rubin et al. 2014).

29.2.2 The Pre-HSCT Immunity

The pre-HSCT immunity for a specific pathogen is not a reason to withhold vaccination after transplant. The majority of patients will lose their immunity after HSCT.

As general rule, live vaccines should be considered contraindicated (there are exceptions, see later). The inactivated, subunit, or protein/poly-saccharide vaccines can be safely administered.

There are few randomized trials in HSCT patients, and many of the studies have been done in patients transplanted with BM/PB, using

---

Table 29.1 International consensus recommendations (Ljungman et al. 2009)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vaccine</th>
<th>No. of doses</th>
<th>Time post-HSCT to initiate vaccine</th>
<th>Grading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Influenza (inactivated)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6–12 months</td>
<td>BII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measles*</td>
<td>1 (2 in children)</td>
<td>24 months</td>
<td>AII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mumps*</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6–12 months</td>
<td>BII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubella* (in adults for sero(-) females with pregnancy potential)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6–12 months</td>
<td>BII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human papillomavirus</td>
<td>Follow recommendations for general population in each country</td>
<td>CIII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inactivated polio</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6–12 months</td>
<td>BII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumococcal conjugate (PCV)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3–6 months after last PCV</td>
<td>BII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– polysaccharide pneumococcal vaccine (PPS)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3–6 months after last PCV</td>
<td>BII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in case of GVHD, use PCV instead of PPS for this 4th dose</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6 months after last PCV</td>
<td>CIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningococcal conjugate (follow country recommend for general population)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6–12 months</td>
<td>BII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemophilus influenzae conjugate</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6–12 months</td>
<td>BII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diphtheria-tetanus (DT preferred over Td)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6–12 months</td>
<td>BII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pertussis (acellular) (DTaP preferred over Tdap)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6–12 months</td>
<td>CIII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*MMR. These vaccines are contraindicated (EIII) before 24 months post-HSCT or in case of active GVHD or IS. These vaccines are usually given together as a combination vaccine

*VHB. Vaccination is recommended for HBV surface Ag-negative or HBV core Ab-positive patients, as vaccination can reduce the risk of reverse seroconversion (BII). For HBV surface Ag-negative or HBV core Ab-negative HSCT patients, recommendations for the general population in their country of residence should be followed
Table 29.2  ECIL recommendations for allo-HSCT recipients (Cordonnier et al. 2017)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vaccine</th>
<th>No. of doses(^a)</th>
<th>Time post-HSCT to initiate vaccine</th>
<th>Grading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Influenza (inactivated)</td>
<td>1 (or 2, special cases)(^b)</td>
<td>≥6 months As long as patient is judged to be IS Yearly, lifelong from 3 months in case of a community outbreak</td>
<td>AIIr BIIr BIIr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measles–mumps–rubella</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Measles</td>
<td>1 (2 in children) MMR</td>
<td>≥24 months ≥12 months in case of measles outbreak in patients with low grade IS</td>
<td>BIIu CIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rubella</td>
<td>1 MMR</td>
<td>≥24 months</td>
<td>CIIu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virus hepatitis B(^c)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sero(-) patients before HSCT and patients vaccinated pre-HSCT but lost their immunity at 6 months)</td>
<td>3(^d)</td>
<td>6–12 months</td>
<td>BIIt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Previously infected and anti-HBs &lt;10 IU/L</td>
<td></td>
<td>6–12 months</td>
<td>BIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sero(-) patients with a donor with positive anti-HBc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Vaccine before transplant</td>
<td>BIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human papilloma virus (HPV) Follow recommendations for general population in each country</td>
<td>According to official label</td>
<td>From 6–12 months</td>
<td>BIIu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inactivated polio</td>
<td>3(^e)</td>
<td>6–12 months</td>
<td>BIIu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live-attenuated varicella vaccine</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Can be considered in sero(-) patients, with ALL the following: ≥24 m from HSCT, no GVHD, no IS, no REL of the underlying disease, and no IGIV in the last 8 months</td>
<td>BIIr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live-attenuated zoster vaccine</td>
<td>Not recommended</td>
<td>The addition of a second dose in adults may be considered in patients who were sero(-) before HSCT or had no history of VZ infect</td>
<td>DIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumococcal conjugate (PCV)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3 months 12 months (no earlier than 8 weeks after last PCV)</td>
<td>AI BI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polysaccharidic vaccine</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In case of GVHD, use PCV instead of PPS for this 4th dose (BIIr)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>From 6 months For men-C or tetravalent vaccine For men-B vaccine</td>
<td>BIIu BIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningococcal conjugate (in accordance with country recommendations and local prevalence)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3 months or 6 months</td>
<td>BIIr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemophilus influenzae conjugate</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3 months</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diphtheria-tetanus (DT is preferred to Td)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>From 6 months</td>
<td>BIIr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pertussis (acellular) (DTaP is preferred over Tdap)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>From 6–12 months</td>
<td>BIII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)If not specified otherwise, the interval between dose is 1 month

\(^b\)Influenza: A second dose of influenza vaccine, after 3–4 weeks from the first, may have a marginal benefit and should preferably be considered in patients with severe GVHD or low lymphocyte count (B II r) and also for the patients vaccinated early (from 3 months after transplant) (B II r). Children ≥6 months through 8 years, receiving influenza for the first time after transplant, should receive a second dose at least 4 weeks after the first dose

\(^c\)HBV. After post transplant vaccination, if anti-HBs is <10 mIU/mL, an additional three doses should be considered, but the benefit of this second series of vaccination is uncertain. IDSA guidelines (Rubin et al. 2014) give the same recommendations (strong, low). For adolescents and adults, a high dose of vaccine (40 μg) is recommended for these booster doses (strong, low)

\(^d\)Three doses: interval 0, 1, and 6 months

\(^e\)At 1–2 months interval

Note for auto-HSCT: same recommendations but grading changes for some vaccines: influenza BIIr (instead AII); PCV BIII (instead AI)
MAC. The experience with other sources (CBU), conditioning regimens (RIC), and donors (haplo) is scarce.

Many vaccines are administered by intramuscular route, which can be a problem for severe thrombocytopenic patients (less than $50 \times 10^9$ platelets/L). For severe thrombocytopenic patients, some vaccines can be safely administered SC (inactivated poliomyelitis, conjugate pneumococcal vaccine) or even intradermic route (for influenza vaccine). Clinical experience suggests that intramuscular injections are safe if the platelet count is $\geq 30$ to $50 \times 10^9$/L, a $\leq 23$-gauge needle is used, and constant pressure is maintained at the injection site for 2 min (Rubin et al. 2014).

**29.2.3 The Dose of Vaccine**

The dose of vaccine used is the same for general population, with some exceptions (see Table 29.2). A uniform specific interval between doses cannot be recommended, as various intervals have been used in studies. As a general guideline, a minimum of 1 month between doses may be reasonable.

**29.2.4 Several Patient and Vaccine Characteristics Impact on the Vaccine Response**

**Time from Transplantation** As a general rule, the later time a vaccine is administered, the better response is obtained (there are exceptions; see pneumococcal vaccine section). Usually $>12$ months from transplant is associated with better responses.

**Type of Vaccine** T-cell-dependent vaccine obtains better response than T-cell-independent vaccines, because it triggers memory response that leads to a longer protection compared with T-cell-independent vaccine.

The presence of GVHD or ongoing IS treatment has been associated with a decrease in vaccine response, particularly for polysaccharide-based vaccines.

- Some vaccine responses seem to be not impaired by the presence of GVHD/IS treatment. This is the case of conjugated Haemophilus vaccine, conjugated pneumococcal vaccine, conjugated meningococcal vaccine, inactivated polio vaccine, and diphtheria-tetanus vaccine.
- International guidelines recommend different attitudes in patients with GVHD for the moment of vaccine administration.
- The international consensus guidelines (Ljungman et al. 2009) recommend to not postpone vaccinations with non-live vaccines in patients with ongoing active or resolved cGVHD of any severity grade.
- However, the International Consensus Conference on Clinical Practice in chronic GVHD (Hilgendorf et al. 2011) recommends postponing vaccination in patients with GVHD: if patients receive prednisone $>0.5$ mg/kg bodyweight as part of a combination therapy or a three-agent IS treatment is given, vaccination may be postponed until IS is reduced to a double combination or prednisone $<0.5$ mg/kg bodyweight in order to achieve better vaccine response. In any case, IS therapy should not lead to postponing vaccination for more than 3 months, and this applies for patients with ongoing active or resolved cGVHD of any severity grade.
- In practices, the majority of centers seems to delay vaccinations if GVHD is present (Miller et al. 2017).

The use of rituximab decreases serological vaccine response at least to tetanus and influenza.

- ECIL 2017 guidelines (Cordonnier et al. 2017): patients who have received rituximab from transplant should have their vaccine
program delayed at least more than 6 months after the last dose.

- As the antibody response is uncertain, specific antibody assessment after vaccination can be helpful.

### 29.2.5 Types of Vaccines in HSCT Patients

*Generally recommended for all HSCT* (auto and allogeneic)

- Influenza (inactivated/subunit), poliomyelitis (inactivated), human papillomavirus, pneumococcus, *Haemophilus influenzae*, hepatitis B, meningococcus, tetanus, diphtheria, pertussis, and measles–mumps–rubella (special conditions, see Sects. 29.4 and 29.5).

*Optional/special situations*, to cover situations such as after disease exposure or before travel to areas endemic for infections:

- Hepatitis A, tick-borne encephalitis, Japanese B encephalitis, rabies, yellow fever (live), varicella (Varivax®, live).

*Contraindicated*: As general rule, *all live vaccines*:

- Oral polio vaccine, bacillus Calmette-Guérin, oral typhoid, zoster vaccine (Zostavax®), intranasal influenza vaccine, oral rotavirus vaccine.
- The exceptions for this rule are live vaccines for measles–mumps–rubella that are recommended following strict safety rules (see Sect. 29.4), yellow fever (live) (see specific section), and varicella (Varivax®, live); all these vaccines are contraindicated (EIII) before 24 m post-HSCT or in case of active GVHD or IS.

#### Use of IVIG and Vaccines

For inactivated vaccines, Ig do not inhibit immune responses. For live virus vaccines, vaccination should be delayed 8 months after the last dose of Ig administration.

### 29.3 Benefits and Risks of Vaccination in HSCT Patients

#### 29.3.1 Benefits

**Direct Benefits** The prevention of the specific infectious disease, as shown by influenza and varicella vaccination. Nonetheless, the majority of the efficacy studies in HSCT patients are based on surrogate markers (serology response) and not on the demonstration of a reduced risk of the infectious disease.

**Indirect Benefits** The benefits of vaccination can go beyond the prevention of a particular infection, as shown by influenza vaccine. Influenza immunization with inactivated vaccine is recommended by cardiologists as part of comprehensive secondary prevention with the same enthusiasm as the control of cholesterol, blood pressure, and other modifiable risk factors (Davis et al. 2006). It reduces cardiovascular mortality (risk ratio (RR) 0.45) (Clar et al. 2015), all-cause mortality (odds ratio (OR) 0.61), myocardial infarction (OR 0.73), and major adverse cardiovascular events (OR 0.47) (Loomba et al. 2012). Although all these studies were performed in general population, it is logical to assume a similar trend in HSCT patients.

#### 29.3.2 Risks

Limited evidence indicates that *inactivated vaccines* have the same safety profile in immunocompromised patients as in immunocompetent individuals (Beck et al. 2012; Rubin et al. 2014; Cordonnier et al. 2017), and there is no evidence that they induce or aggravate GVHD (Cordonnier et al. 2017).
Live vaccines represent a real risk for HSCT and should not be used except in special situations with strict requirements (see section of varicella vaccine and ECIL vaccination guidelines table). Fatal disseminated VZV infections due to vaccine strain have been reported in HSCT patients after varicella vaccine and zoster vaccine, even when vaccine was administered several years after transplant (Cordonnier et al. 2017).

29.4 Vaccination Recommendations

There are several international recommendations focused on HSCT patients. The best known are those by the Infectious Disease Working Party (IDWP) of the EBMTC, ECIL, CDC, and Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA).

The IDWP of the EBMTC was one of the first cooperative groups that published recommendations specific for HSCT patients. The first ones were published in 1995, with updates in 1999 and 2005. In 2017 guidelines were reviewed and updated under the umbrella of the ECIL group, available online (Cordonnier et al. 2017) (Table 29.2).

In 2009 an international consensus guideline was published cosponsored by the main groups involved in HSCT and immunocompromised hosts (Ljungman et al. 2009) and probably is the most widely used in practice (Table 29.1).

The IDSA published their last recommendations in 2014 (Rubin et al. 2014).

There are other more specific guidelines focused on one pathogen (Engelhard et al. 2013) or on patients with GVHD (Hilgendorf et al. 2011).

29.5 Specific Vaccines

29.5.1 Influenza

29.5.1.1 Clinical Manifestations

(Ljungman et al. 2011; Engelhard et al. 2013)

Twenty percent of HSCT with confirmed influenza are afebrile.

It is a serious disease in HSCT: One third develop pneumonia, 10% require mechanical ventilation, and 6% died (Ljungman et al. 2011) (i.e., 100–300 times higher the mortality of influenza in general population). Other complications include encephalitis that can be lethal and myocarditis.

29.5.1.2 Influenza and Cardiovascular Disease (CVD)

The majority of influenza deaths are related to lung complications. Nonetheless, in general population up to a third of deaths related to influenza are CV deaths (Loomba et al. 2012).

The risk of acute myocardial infarction is significantly increased after laboratory-confirmed influenza infection (Kwong et al. 2018).

HSCT patients are at high risk of developing CVD. At 10 years, 8% will develop CVD (Armenian et al. 2012).

29.5.1.3 Vaccine

Evidence of Vaccine Efficacy

• A retrospective study showed a protection rate of 80% in the rates of virologically confirmed influenza (Machado et al. 2005).

• A systematic review and meta-analysis showed significantly lower odds of influenza-like illness after vaccination in transplant recipients (HSCT and SOT) compared with patients receiving placebo or no vaccination (Beck et al. 2012). Seroconversion and seroprotection were lower in transplant recipients compared with immunocompetent controls.

• Given the suboptimal immunogenicity in HSCT patients, family members and healthcare professionals involved in the care of these populations should be vaccinated.

Vaccine Response (Engelhard et al. 2013; Cordonnier et al. 2017)

• Longer interval from transplant is associated with better serology response. Vaccination within the first 6 months after transplant produces poor serology responses. Nonetheless, seasonal vaccination against
influenza can boost the cellular immune response in HSCT patients as early as 3 months after HSCT, but the protective effect is lower compared with healthy controls (Engelhard et al. 2013).

- Conflicting data exist on the benefit of a second dose of vaccine, and marginal benefit was seen with the use of GM-CSF.
- In HSCT the superiority of high-dose influenza vaccine has not been demonstrated (Halasa et al. 2016).
- Rituximab administration during the year before vaccination was associated with a lack of seroprotective titer.
- Active GVHD and low lymphocyte counts at vaccination are associated with poor immune response.

*Live, attenuated influenza vaccine* is contraindicated in HSCT patients (Rubin et al. 2014).

There is a difference in the duration of influenza vaccine recommendation in the European (Cordonnier et al. 2017) and US guidelines (Rubin et al. 2014):

- ECIL recommends vaccination as long as patient is judged to be immunosuppressed (A II r) although considered, with a lower strength, the use of yearly, lifelong (B II r) (Cordonnier et al. 2017).
- IDSA recommends lifelong immunization (Rubin et al. 2014).
- There are no trials to support one or other recommendations, but a lifelong immunization seems logical as fatal influenza illness can occur several years after HSCT, without clear risk factors in some patients, particularly in auto-HSCT (Ljungman et al. 2011), and the proved safety of influenza vaccine in this population. Moreover, for general population, the CDC recommends routine annual influenza vaccination for all persons aged ≥6 months (Grohskopf et al. 2017).

For severe thrombocytopenic patients, the intradermic influenza vaccine can be safely administered although it has not yet been evaluated in transplant recipients.

### 29.5.2 Measles, Mumps, and Rubella

The clinical impact and the reasons for immunization in HSCT patients differ among these viruses:

- **Measles**: Severe and also fatal measles infections (pneumonia, encephalitis) have been reported in SCT recipients. The aim of vaccination is to protect the patient of severe consequences of infection.
- **Rubella**: There are no reports of severe rubella disease occurring in HSCT recipients. The main indication for rubella vaccination is prevention of congenital rubella in fertile women.
- **Mumps**: There are no reports of severe mumps occurring in HSCT recipients. The indication for mumps vaccination is therefore weak. There is no indication for routine mumps vaccination after HSCT. However, mumps is included in combination vaccines with measles and rubella.

#### Vaccines


### 29.5.3 Hepatitis B Virus (HBV)

**Prevention of infection and reverse seroconversion**:

- Approximately 40–70% of HSCT patients obtain a titer of anti-HBs of >10 mIU/mL after post-HSCT vaccination, a rather low response compared with healthy controls. Even those who fail to obtain a response may benefit from vaccination as it can prevent reverse seroconversion.
- Patients that have evidence of a previously resolved hepatitis B infection prior to the transplant (i.e., HBsAg negative but anti-HBs and/or anti-HBc) are at risk or reverse seroconversion.
• Immunization for HBV can prevent HBV reverse seroconversion even in non-responders to hepatitis B vaccine after allo-HSCT (Takahata et al. 2014). Probably, antigen-specific memory T cells and cytotoxic T cells induced by hepatitis B vaccine are largely responsible for prevention of reverse seroconversion in non-responders to the vaccine. This reinforces the need of HBV vaccination.

29.5.4 Human Papilloma Virus (HPV)

In HSCT women nearly 40% will have genital HPV infection in long-term follow-up (Shanis et al. 2018). HPV is associated with cervical, vulvar, and vaginal cancer in females, penile cancer in males, and anal cancer and oropharyngeal cancer in both females and males.

In long-term survivors, second neoplasias are a significant complication after allo-HSCT. Cervix cancer is one of the most frequent. Squamous cell cancers, the commonest post transplant solid tumors, are associated with HPV infection. Genital HPV disease is a significant late complication of allo-HSCT, occurring in one third of women. Prolonged systemic IS treatment for cGVHD is associated with a higher risk of developing HPV-related squamous intraepithelial lesions.

Regular gynecologic examination, cervical cytology, and HPV testing after HSCT is recommended for all women (Majhail et al. 2012) as preventing measure for HPV-related cancer and as a tool for early diagnose and treatment of genital GVHD.

29.5.4.1 Vaccine

• HPV vaccine is a noninfectious, virus-like particle (VLP) vaccine. There are three formulations of HPV vaccines that differ in the number of HPV covered: a 9-valent HPV vaccine (6, 11, 16, 18, 31, 33, 45, 52, and 58 VLPs) (Gardasil®), quadrivalent HPV vaccine (6, 11, 16, and 18 VLPs) (Gardasil®), and bivalent vaccine (16, 18 VLPs) (Cervarix®).

• The experience with HPV vaccine in HSCT is limited, 20 children (MacIntyre et al. 2016) and 64 adults (Stratton et al. 2018), but shows a good immune response, similar to health women, with no specific safety issue.

• HPV vaccine is recommended in all guidelines (Ljungman et al. 2009; Hilgendorf et al. 2011; Rubin et al. 2014; Cordonnier et al. 2017) but with a low grade of recommendation (B II u to C III) due to the limited experience in HSCT patients. The recommended number of doses is three (Hilgendorf et al. 2011; Rubin et al. 2014).

29.5.5 Poliovirus

The WHO European Region was declared polio-free in 2002. Imported wild-type and vaccine-type polioviruses still remain a threat to unvaccinated people in the EU/EEA. Maintaining high vaccination coverage in all population groups remain an essential tool for keeping Europe polio-free.

Only inactivated poliovirus vaccines are used in all EU/EEA countries.

Oral polio vaccine (OPV) is contraindicated for HSCT patients due to the risk of paralytic poliomyelitis. This complication has occurred after vaccination of patients with severe combined immune deficiency but has not been described in HSCT patients.

29.5.6 Varicella Zoster Virus (VZV)

Prevention of VZV After HSCT Antiviral prophylaxis (acyclovir/valacyclovir) is the primary mode of prevention. It should be given for at least 1 year after allo-HSCT and for 3–6 months after auto-HSCT (Cordonnier et al. 2017).

Types of Vaccines There are three types of available vaccines and one not commercially available. None is licensed for use in IS patients.

• Live-attenuated varicella vaccine, a low-titer VZV vaccine (Varivax®, Varilix®). It is also available in combination in the same vaccine with measles, mumps, and rubella.
Varicella vaccine can be used in HSCT following strict requirements (see ECIL and IDSA vaccination guidelines) (Cordonnier et al. 2017; Rubin et al. 2014). Although vaccination with varicella-attenuated vaccine is indicated/considered in guidelines, in practice it is rarely used due to concerns of safety, particularly in adults (Miller et al. 2017). The commercial availability of the VZ subunit vaccine and maybe in the future the inactivated vaccine will make the use of the attenuated vaccines even lower.

- Live-attenuated zoster vaccine, a high-titer vaccine (Zostavax®). It contains more than 14 times more virus than varicella vaccine. In all guidelines, this vaccine is contraindicated in HSCT patients.
- New phase III studies with new VZL vaccines in auto-HSCT.
  - Adjuvanted VZV subunit vaccine (Shingrix®) (de la Serna et al. 2018; Sullivan et al. 2018) consists of recombinant VZV gE antigen mixed with AS01B adjuvant. It was recently approved by the FDA (October 2017) and EMA (March 2018) for prevention of herpes zoster (HZ) and post-herpetic neuralgia, in adults 50 years of age or older. It is administered IM in two doses separated by 60 days.
  - Inactivated VZV-vaccine (V212), in auto-HSCT (Winston et al. 2018), is not yet commercially available. It is administered in four doses by SC injection, beginning ~5 days prior to chemotherapy or ~30 days prior to auto-HSCT and the remaining doses being administered at 30, 60, and 90 days later.
  - Both vaccines showed a high vaccine efficacy for preventing zoster which was 68–64%, post-herpetic neuralgia 89–84%, VZV-related hospitalizations 85%, and for other VZV complications 78–75%. The positive results of these studies probably are going to change the prevention of VZV complications after auto-HSCT.

### 29.5.7 Pneumococcus

Pneumococcus is a frequent and serious complication in HSCT. The incidence of invasive pneumococcal disease (IPD) in HSCT is 50 times higher compared to the general population (Shigayeva et al. 2016). In spite of this high incidence of IPD, less than one in five HSCT patients with IPD had received pneumococcal vaccine.

#### 29.5.7.1 Types of Vaccine

- Polysaccharidic (PS) vaccine
  - 23-valent polysaccharidic (PS) vaccine (Pneumo 23®, Pneumovax23®): poor immunogenic, T-cell-independent response, no boost benefit
  - Poor responses, particularly in patients with GVHD
  - PS after PCV vaccine increases and expands the response obtained with PCV. Some non-responders to PCV will achieve a response with PS vaccine.
- Conjugate vaccine (PCV): highly immunogenic, T-cell-dependent response, with boost benefit
  - 13-valent in the majority of countries (Prevenar 13r®) (that replace the previous 7-valent vaccine) or 10-valent available in some countries (Synflorix®).
  - Five trials have shown a good response to PCV after three doses (range 54–98%). Four trials used 7-valent conjugated vaccine and one the 13-valent vaccine (Cordonnier et al. 2017). These responses are much better compared with what is obtained with PS vaccine.
  - Early vaccination at 3 months is not inferior to late vaccination (9 months) after allo-HSCT.
  - PCV should always be administered before PS vaccine.

### 29.5.8 Diphtheria-Tetanus-Pertussis

The exposure to tetanus in the environment is a real risk for HSCT patients, so the aim of vaccination after transplant is to protect the patient.
Diphtheria has essentially been eradicated but ongoing vaccination is critical for immunity. Diphtheria cases are still happening in Europe with an increase of 280% from 2009 to 2014. The reappearance of diphtheria cases in countries like Spain diphtheria-free for more than 30 years (Jane et al. 2018) is alarming and another reason to vaccine all our HSCT patients.

There are very limited published data of pertussis in HSCT and no reported case of severe or fatal pertussis infection after SCT in adults. Therefore, the objective of vaccination in these patients is avoiding pertussis transmission by HSCT patients.

29.6 Vaccinations Before Travel to Areas Endemic for Infections
(See Table 29.3)
(Ljungman et al. 2009)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vaccination</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Tick-borne and Japanese B encephalitis | • According to local policy in endemic areas (CIII)
| Rabies                         | • Rabies vaccine is made from killed virus and cannot cause rabies. Nonetheless, there are no data regarding safety, immunogenicity, or efficacy among HCT recipients
|                               | • Preexposure rabies vaccination should probably be delayed until 12–24 months after HCT
|                               | • Postexposure administration of rabies vaccine with human rabies Ig can be administered any time after HCT, as indicated |
| Yellow fever (live)            | • Limited data regarding safety and efficacy (C III). Yellow fever vaccine has been safely administered to a limited number of post-HSCT patients (Rubin et al. 2014)
|                               | • The risk–benefit balance may favor the use of the vaccine in patients residing in or traveling to endemic areas |
| Hepatitis A                    | • Follow recommendations for general population in each country (CIII)
|                               | • Ig should be administered to hepatitis A-susceptible HCT recipients who anticipate hepatitis A exposure (for example, during travel to endemic areas) and for postexposure prophylaxis |
| Typhoid (IM), inactivated vaccine | • No data were found regarding safety, immunogenicity, or efficacy among HCT recipients. DIII. Remember that typhoid oral vaccine is live attenuated and is contraindicated in HSCT patients (EIII) |
| Cholera                        | • No data were found regarding safety and immunogenicity among HCT recipients. Vaccine is not recommended (DIII) |

29.7 Serological Testing

For the majority of vaccines, no pre- or postvaccination serology is recommended. Nonetheless, there are exceptions for this rule (Ljungman et al. 2009).

29.7.1 Pre-Vaccination

Testing for Abs to measles is recommended in adults, with vaccination performed only if the patient is seronegative (CIII).

If vaccination against varicella is contemplated, testing of immunity should be carried out and vaccination should be administered to seronegative patients only (CIII).

29.7.2 Postvaccination

Pneumococcal vaccine: Testing to assess the response to vaccination is recommended at
1 month or later after the third or fourth dose of pneumococcal vaccine (BIII). As a widely accepted definition of adequate response to pneumococcal vaccine is lacking, guidelines for revaccination of non-responders are not given. Testing for immunity to pneumococcus might reasonably be repeated every 2 years for the first 4 years (BIII).

Hepatitis B: Testing should be carried out 1 month or later after the third vaccine dose (BIII). A second three-dose vaccination schedule is recommended in non-responders (CIII).

Testing should be conducted approximately every 4–5 years to assess for immunity to HBV, measles, tetanus, diphtheria, and polio (BIII).

### Table 29.4 Vaccinations for donors, close contacts/family, and HCWs of HCT recipients

#### General comments

Inactivated vaccines can be safely given for donors, close contacts, and HCWs of HSCT patients. For live vaccines a careful evaluation should be done (see below). Some have no safety issues for HSCT recipients but other can cause severe damage.

#### Donors

Guidelines do not recommend donor vaccination for the benefit of the recipient\(^{a,b}\)

- Only vaccines that are indicated and recommended based on the donor’s age, vaccination history, and exposure history should be administered.
- Nonetheless, vaccination of the donor has been shown to improve the post transplant immunity of the patient in the case of tetanus, diphtheria, 7-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine (PCV), and *Haemophilus influenzae* type b-conjugate vaccines. Donation is an opportunity to update the donor vaccination calendar. If the donor has to receive any of these vaccines in his/her own interest, the administration of at least one dose pre-collection of stem cells could benefit also the receptor.

Administration of MMR, MMRV, varicella, and zoster vaccines should be avoided within 4 weeks of stem cell harvest\(^{c}\). By extension, all live vaccines should be avoided before stem cell collection due to the risk of transmission of the pathogen with the graft\(^{d}\).

#### Vaccines recommended for close contacts and HCWs of HSCT recipients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Who?</th>
<th>Vaccine Dose/notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Influenza, inactivated • Annually, as long as there is contact with an IS recipient(^{a}): Close contacts: AII(^{a})-AIII(^{c}); HCWs: AI(^{a})-AII(^{c})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All sero(-) VZ</td>
<td>Varicella: AIII(^{c}) • 2 doses, separated by at least 28 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCWs Sero(-)</td>
<td>Measles • AIII(^{c}); recommended, not graded(^{b,e})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Live vaccines given for close contacts or HCWs of HSCT patients: precautions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intranasal influenza vaccine</th>
<th>* If live influenza vaccine is administered to a close contact/HCWs, contact between the IS patient and household member should be avoided for 7 days (weak, very low)(^{b})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Measles-mumps-rubella</td>
<td>* No risk for the HSCT patient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Varicella                  | \* The vaccination dose or doses should be completed ≥4 weeks before the conditioning regimen begins or ≥6 weeks (42 days) before contact with the HCT recipient is planned (BIII)\(^{b}\)  
\* If a varicella vaccinee develops a postvaccination rash within 42 days of vaccination, the vaccinee should avoid contact with HCT recipients until all rash lesions are crusted or the rash has resolved\(^{a}\) |

(continued)
Table 29.4 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vaccine</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral polio vaccine (OPV)</td>
<td>• Oral polio vaccine (OPV) should not be administered to individuals who live in a household with IS patients (strong, moderate). These vaccinated contacts shed the live-attenuated poliovirus strains of the vaccine in the stools that can induce paralytic poliomyelitis in immunocompromised patients like HSCT. If live-attenuated oral polio vaccine, that is still available in some non-US/non-European countries, is given to a household contact, a 4- to 6-week furlough is advised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotavirus</td>
<td>• Rotavirus vaccine is included in the children vaccine calendar of many countries, so it will be frequent that a HSCT patient has a child candidate for the vaccine. Virus is shed in stools for 2–4 weeks after vaccination. Transmission from vaccinated to IS person has been confirmed, but there are no reported cases of symptomatic infection in contacts. Highly IS patients should avoid handling diapers of infants who have been vaccinated with rotavirus vaccine for 4 weeks after vaccination (strong, very low). HSCT recipients should have no contact with the stools or diapers of vaccinated children for 4 weeks following vaccination.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vaccines for travel: yellow fever vaccine; oral typhoid vaccine

- Can safely be administeredb

HCWs healthcare workers

aLjungman et al. (2009)
bRubin et al. (2014)
cCordonnier et al. (2017)

Key Points

- Vaccination should be considered a routine practice for all HSCT receptors, either autologous or allogeneic, adults or children. It should be implemented in all HSCT programs.
- There is no a unique vaccine schedule for all HSCT patients. Each center should discuss and adapt a specific vaccine program.
- To obtain this objective, it is necessary to have in place a standardized program specific for HSCT patients with a simple and clear chronology and the collaboration of the Preventive Department of the hospital and primary care physicians.
- The vaccination program should include not only the patient but also those who live with the patient and the healthcare workers (HCWs).
- There are two main reasons for universal vaccination of HSCT patients: (a) the general interest as all the population should be correctly vaccinated to avoid holes of immunity that can be a risk for the health of the general population and (b) individual interest for each HSCT patient.

References


Grohskopf LA, Sokolow LZ, Broder KB, Walter EB, Bresee JS, Fry AM, et al. Prevention and control of


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
30 Psychological Morbidity and Support

Alice Polomeni, Enrique Moreno, and Frank Schulz-Kindermann

30.1 Introduction

Allo-HSCT is associated with significant physical and psychological morbidity that may have a negative impact on patients’ and on their relatives’ health-related quality of life (HRQoL) (Majhail and Rizzo 2013). Patients suffer a broad range of acute and chronic impairments of health-related quality of life (HRQoL), concerning physical, emotional, cognitive and social constraints. Psychosocial difficulties have been identified throughout the HSCT process, from pre-transplant to recovery phase and even for long-term survivors. Insofar, psychological support of HSCT recipients and caregivers is based on a—where ever possible—preventive, concrete and sustainable approach, comprising a broad range of aspects of HRQoL. Psychooncological interventions are planned and conducted regularly in an interdisciplinary approach, taking into consideration medical, social and nursing issues.

30.2 The Period Preceding HSCT

Since HSCT often appears to be the only therapeutic cure, this can cause high expectations in patients and their families, who may overestimate HSCT’s benefits and underestimate the procedure’s morbidity and mortality risks. Several authors are adamant about the importance of pragmatic information, specifically regarding prognosis, post-transplant effects and the impact of HSCT on QOL. This information not only could guide patients in their decision to undergo the treatment (or not) but could also help them and their close relatives to face the persistent side effects post-HSCT (Jim et al. 2014). Studies show that specific pre-transplant distress predicts psychosocial problems during and after HSCT (Schulz-Kindermann et al. 2002). This suggests a thorough medical as well as psychosocial preparation about risks and challenges with concomitant illustration of possible coping resources. Understanding of the information about the prognosis can be associated with depression and a worsening QOL over time (Applebaum et al. 2016).

Frequently described are anxious-depressive symptoms and sleep disruption pre-HSCT, linked to the burden of uncertainty about treatment outcomes. Baseline anxiety and depression predict...
worsening HRQoL during hospitalisation and post-treatment adjustment, even identifying these symptoms as risk factors for survival (Artherholt et al. 2014). This suggests a thorough survey of the psychosocial anamnesis and a brief screening in the course of treatment and survivorship. To avoid evitable strain, short instruments to measure distress, anxiety, depression and HRQoL—like the Distress Thermometer, Patient Health Questionnaire, Cancer Treatment-Related Distress Scale and EORTC QLQ-C30—should be implemented. Attention should always involve caregivers as well as minor children of patients. Finally, HSCT teams should screen patients’ and families’ met and unmet needs, including psychosocial support. Regarding preparation for HSCT, patients who are in a fairly stable physical state should take advantage of psychological support before admission to inpatient treatment. Psychological interventions cover different approaches like psychodynamic interviews, introduction in relaxation techniques, communication skills (regarding problem-focused communication with staff and with caregivers) and coping with side effects (pain, nausea, fatigue, restlessness, sleep disorder; see Syrjala et al. 2012).

### 30.3 Hospitalisation for HSCT

During hospitalisation, patients grapple with considerable changes, including a loss of physical abilities and autonomy. HSCT hospitalisation constraints, combined with poor physical condition, may increase patients’ feelings of isolation and dependence, negatively affecting psychological well-being (Tecchio et al. 2013). Symptoms of depression, anxiety, sleep disruption and adjustment disorders are frequently reported (El Jawahri 2015). Unlike anxiety, which does not change over time, depression levels increase more than twofold after 2 weeks of isolation (Tecchio et al. 2013).

These symptoms can go unrecognised and have been known to interfere with HSCT medical treatment. Depression during hospitalisation is associated with longer hospital stay, increased risk of mortality (Prieto et al. 2005), post transplant anxio-depressive symptoms and post traumatic stress syndrome (PTSS) (El-Jawahri et al. 2016).

Depressive symptoms are risk factors for a poorer outcome after HSCT. It is noteworthy to follow a precise diagnostic process, differentiating depression and demoralisation. The latter focuses on an attitude of senselessness and hopelessness, while depression has a pronounced somatic level, overlapping with fatigue. Recent research has explored psychoneuroendocrinology and psychoneuroimmunology to identify pathways that may mediate between psychosocial factors and disease outcomes (Costanzo et al. 2013). These authors have recommended the treatment of sleep and circadian disturbances, as well as the option of psychotropic medications and cognitive-behavioural interventions in the HSCT setting.

A significantly positive correlation between the presence of a family caregiver (FC) during hospitalisation and HSCT survival has been established (Foster et al. 2013). The support provided by the HSCT team can also help patients to better cope with hospitalisation and facilitate psychological adjustment after discharge, reducing difficulties in the transition towards outpatient care.

Psychooncological interventions concerning depressive and anxious symptomatology rely on psychoeducational, psychodynamic and biobehavioural approaches, incorporating adequate coping potential. Specific techniques to ameliorate anxiety but also side effects like pain, sleeplessness, nausea or restlessness comprise relaxation, imagery and hypnotherapeutic approaches. Particularly in cases of fear and panic, pharmacological approaches with benzodiazepines and certain antidepressants should be taken into account.

Precise and repeated pain diagnostics are paramount, deriving multidisciplinary pain management, including medication, ongoing information about pain management and psychological interventions. There is some evidence for effectiveness of relaxation, imagery, hypnosis and cognitive-behavioral therapy (Syrjala 2014).
**30.4 Post-HSCT**

Data show that patients in remission for 2–5 years post-HSCT have a high probability of long-term survival. Nevertheless, HSCT-related morbidity is substantial, negatively affecting psychological functioning and social integration. HSCT’s late effects on physical and psychic well-being have been well described, notably for chronic graft versus host disease, the severity of which is significantly related to impaired psychosocial functioning and diminished QOL (Majhail and Rizzo 2013).

Regarding psychopathology post-HSCT, several studies reported high rates of anxiety and depression, even several years after transplantation. Notwithstanding, research on psychological issues after HSCT has shown inconsistent results due to varying outcome measures, participation biases and cohort size and composition (Sun et al. 2011).

Although some studies have shown that depression and anxiety rates do not differ significantly from those of siblings or population norms, others reveal rates of psychological distress of 14% to 90% in survivors of HSCT (Sun et al. 2011). Even though some results demonstrate that physical morbidity tends to decrease by 1-year post-HSCT and psychosocial condition improves gradually over 1–5 years (Sun et al. 2013), other research reports depressive symptoms as long as 5 or even 10 years after HSCT (Jim et al. 2016). An unsettling fact is that depression post-HSCT has been associated with higher mortality and increased risk of suicide (Tichelli et al. 2013).

Depressive symptoms and sleep disorders are related to cognitive dysfunctions. Sleep disruption remains an issue for 43% of HSCT patients after transplant (Jim et al. 2016). These rates of disruption are substantially higher than those of the general population. Incidence of cognitive dysfunction in the first 5 years after HSCT is up to 60% (Scherwath et al. 2013). Poor neurocognitive functioning and psychosocial outcomes lead to lax medication management and adherence to recommended monitoring guidelines, which in turn may increase post-treatment morbi-mortality risks (Mayo et al. 2016).

Psychological interventions for depressive symptoms focus on dysfunctional, exaggerated cognitions and on an increase of activities. Psychopharmacological treatment is often recommended additionally, offering a broad range of substances, which can and should be adapted to respective indications and to the broad range of further medication. In the case of severe demoralisation, existential and meaning-centred approaches are advisable and show some evidence.

Concerning lasting traumatic experiences, in cross-sectional studies between 5 and 19% fulfilled a diagnosis of post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD). In one of the rare prospective studies, PTSD symptomatology was observable at all time points (Esser et al. 2017a). Therefore, psychological support should not only be offered in the acute phase but already before HSCT and in the long term. Impairment by pain and pain intensity were risk factors for elevated levels of PTSD symptomatology. This highlights the importance of informing patients early enough that pain might occur and to introduce techniques for dealing with it. Since medical complications predicted severity of PTSD symptomatology 1 year after HSCT, medical professionals should be aware of psychological strain among patients suffering from long-term medical complications.

Psychosocial issues have also been explored in QOL research. Some studies in this domain stated that even if medical problems remain, the patients’ emotional well-being seems to improve throughout the rehabilitation period. Nonetheless, fatigue, sleep disorders, neurocognitive impairment, neurobehavioural problems and sexual dysfunction persist. Esser et al. (2017b) identified in a prospective study three stable symptom complexes: exhausted (incl. fatigue), affective (incl. irritability and depressive symptoms) and gastrointestinal (incl. nausea). Fatigue was most persistent and also most severe and predictive for HRQoL. Fear of relapse, feelings of disability and barriers to social rehabilitation are frequent concerns, even several years after the procedure, with only a minority of disease-free transplant survivors consider themselves having ‘returned to normal’ (Syrjala et al. 2012).
These psychosocial difficulties are not systematically approached in current HSCT follow-up: despite their incidence, anxious-depressive symptoms are not often reported which should be treated by HSCT physicians. Barriers to approaching psychosocial issues are, on one hand, patients’ fear of being stigmatised and, on the other hand, doctors who tend to prioritise strictly medical aspects. Health professionals often poorly evaluate psychological symptoms: anxiety is overrated, depression is underestimated, and consistency between the patients and the medical team’s evaluations seems insufficient. Most patients receive prescriptions for these lingering symptoms, even over long periods, yet half of them benefit of follow-up by specialised professionals due to organisational and emotional obstacles (Mosher et al. 2010).

Anxieties after HSCT may be treated in a cognitive-behavioural approach, relying on working directly with fear-related contents and applying this to the broad range of oversimplified anxieties. For progression anxiety, manualised psychooncological therapies are well-tried, combining psychoeducational elements with group-format psychological therapy. Cognitive-behavioural therapy has demonstrated effectiveness in the treatment of PTSD with cancer patients in a significant number of studies, including patients with HSCT (DuHamel et al. 2010). Concerning fatigue, there are several promising approaches combining psychosocial counselling with physical training.

### 30.5 Close Relatives

Family caregivers (FC) can contribute to patients’ recovery and to better survival following HSCT (Ehrlich et al. 2016). That said, the HSCT impact on FC has not been sufficiently explored, with most studies suffering from limitations due to small and heterogeneous samples.

Current research shows that FC experience a significant burden across the treatment trajectory. At the time of transplant, FC report high levels of fatigue, sleep disorders, depression and anxiety (El Jawahri 2015). FC may have more emotional difficulties than patients, and their well-being can be impaired well past post transplant. FC face negative effects in their own family and professional and social lives and express marital dissatisfaction after HSCT (Langer et al. 2017).

Qualitative data indicate that the main FC difficulties are related to long-term HSCT consequences and the unpredictable, uncertain character of their evolution. Assuming not only daily tasks but also the patients’ psychological support, FC may feel overwhelmed by the complex demands of the caregiving role and the social impact of a lengthy rehabilitation (Applebaum et al. 2016).

In spite of the obstacles met during this post transplant period, FC rarely benefit from regular psychosocial support. Attention should also involve patients’ minor children. The current trend has been to outsource part of the patient care. Research should better explore FC’s real-life experience in order to propose targeted interventions during HSCT’s various stages.

### 30.6 Related Donors

Related donors (RDs) deserve particular attention. Although positive effects of related donation have been demonstrated—such as deep personal satisfaction and a higher degree of self-esteem—there is also a negative impact. The incidence of pain and depressive symptoms is higher in RDs than in unrelated donors. Unexplained chronic pain could be associated with psychological distress related to the recipient’s medical condition and HSCT outcomes. Data suggest that psychological support and follow-up should also be offered to RD (Garcia et al. 2013).

Like for patients, sufficient information, preparation and guidance should be available for FC and RD. That is, not only the tremendous task should be emphasised but also probable problems and risks, as well as available resources of
care. Several interventions were developed to support FC, like problem-solving skills, cognitive-behavioural interventions and expressive talking (Applebaum et al. 2016).

### 30.7 Adolescents and Young Adults (AYA)

The adolescent and young adult group (AYA) represents a particular group that significantly varies from non-AYA patients, especially in psychosocial aspects (Pulewka et al. 2017). Research reveals that a quarter of AYA patients who experienced HSCT reported depression and anxiety symptoms, with nearly half meeting the criteria for post-traumatic stress (Syrjala et al. 2012).

HSCT appears to be a risk factor for poor health-related quality of life (HRQoL) and social functioning in AYA cancer survivors (Tremolada et al. 2016). Qualitative studies show that this population encounters difficulties in physical (sexuality and fatigue), psychological (depression, adherence and dependency issues, fear of the future, uncertainty) and social domains (changes in roles and relationships, educations and financial issues, family problems). Evidence-based psychosocial interventions in this population are sparse and should include specific problems, such as family relationships and social integration (school and work). Recent approaches use group formats enhancing self-help resources of peers, activity coaching and motivational interviewing.

### 30.8 Paediatric Patients

In their review of the literature, Packman et al. (2010) shows that HSCT paediatric patients experience acute psychological symptoms such as anxiety and depression before and during hospitalisation, as well as significant peer isolation, behavioural problems and post-traumatic stress symptoms after HSCT. Declines in cognitive abilities, social functioning and self-esteem have also been observed.

It is noteworthy that the accord between parent and child is better regarding physical conditions than it is with psychological issues. This discrepancy between the child’s and the parents’ evaluations also holds true regarding HRQoL post-HSCT (Chang et al. 2012).

HSCT may lead to disruptions in family life: parents and siblings (notably, donors) also report high levels of anxiety, depression and post-traumatic stress symptoms (Packman et al. 2010).

Paediatric HSCT survivors report psychosocial difficulties and decreased QOL with a high risk for anxiety, depression and behavioural problems. Childhood survivors’ specific issues are related to sexual dysfunction, impoverished self-image and social adjustment. As follow-up of childhood HSCT patients is fundamental, special attention should be paid to the risk of withdrawal as they journey towards adulthood (Cupit et al. 2016).

**Key Points**

- The previously discussed rates of psychological morbidity in HSCT patients emphasise the need for clinical assessment throughout the procedure and at regular intervals.
- Given their vital role in the patients’ recovery process, HSCT teams should also assess FC for psychological adjustment and family functioning.
- Particular attention should be given to RDs, who do not benefit systematically from a medical and psychological follow-up.
- Regardless of the overwhelming evidence of psychological morbidity in HSCT patients and in FC, barriers still exist in discussing psychosocial issues in routine care.
- Systematic screening may contribute to stimulate discussion of psychological symptoms, but quality psychosocial
care requires team training and an effective multidisciplinary approach.

- Psychological support should be installed low threshold and as far as possible attached to the transplant centre.
- Effectiveness of psychooncological interventions is proven widely and should be adapted to patients and FCs all along the course of HSCT.

References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
31.1 Introduction

Patients undergoing HSCT often receive poly-medication which carries the potential to result in drug interactions. To avoid unexpected outcomes, attention to drug interactions is crucial especially when drugs with a narrow therapeutic index or inherent toxicity profile are involved (Leather 2004; Glotzbecker et al. 2012; Gholaminezhad et al. 2014).

Drug interactions can be defined as changes in a drug’s effect due to recent or concurrent use of another drug, food, or environmental agent. The net effect of the combination can result in enhanced activity of the affected drug, possibly leading to toxicity, or reduced activity leading to therapeutic failure (Thanacoody 2012).

In general, drug interactions can be categorized as being pharmacodynamic, pharmacokinetic, or pharmaceutical in nature.

31.1.1 Pharmacodynamic Interactions

Pharmacodynamic interactions occur when the effect of one drug is changed by the presence of another drug at its site of action. They compete for specific receptor sites or interfere indirectly with physiological systems.

The effect can be additive/synergistic or antagonistic. An example of an additive interaction is the concurrent use of QT-prolonging drugs (e.g., ciprofloxacin and fluconazole) which substantially increases the risk of torsades de pointes or other ventricular tachyarrhythmias.

Specific antagonists can be used to reverse the effect of another drug at the receptor site (e.g., naloxone, an opioid receptor antagonist which reverses signs of opioid intoxication) (Lexicomp Drug® Interactions 2018).

31.1.2 Pharmacokinetic Interactions

Pharmacokinetic interactions (PK) occur when one drug alters the rate or extent of absorption, distribution, metabolism, or elimination of another drug resulting in diminished effects or drug potentiation (Palleria et al. 2013). The most frequent and significant drug interactions relate to drug metabolism. These will be further discussed here.

31.1.2.1 Cytochrome P450 Enzyme System

Several enzyme families are involved in drug metabolism, cytochrome P450 (CYP450) being the most important one. CYP450 consists of a unique group of isoenzymes grouped into families (1–3) and divided into subfamilies (A–E).
They are primarily found in the liver and are genetically encoded (Ingelman-Sundberg and Rodriguez-Antona 2005; Lynch and Price 2007).

The effect of a CYP450 isoenzyme on a particular substrate can be altered by interaction with other drugs. Drugs can be substrates for a CYP450 isoenzyme and/or may inhibit or induce the isoenzyme (Larson 2018; Glotzbecker et al. 2012; Leather 2004):

**Inhibition:** Leads to reduced metabolism of the substrate with an increase in the steady-state concentration. It potentiates the effect and might lead to enhanced or toxic effects, especially in drugs with a narrow therapeutic index like cyclosporine and tacrolimus. Its onset occurs within 1–3 days for drugs with a short half-life, while the maximal effect may be delayed for drugs with a long half-life.

**Induction:** Increases the activity of CYP450 enzymes and usually results in decreased concentration/effect of the affected drug with the risk of therapeutic failure. Since the process of enzyme induction requires new protein synthesis, the effect usually occurs over days to weeks after starting an inducer.

Prodrugs rely on CYP450 enzymes for conversion to their active form(s). The combination of a prodrug (e.g., CFM) with a CYP450 inhibitor may result in therapeutic failure because of little or no production of the active drug. Conversely, an exaggerated therapeutic effect or adverse effect can be expected when a CYP450 inducer is added (Lynch and Price 2007).

In general, any drug metabolized by one of the CYP450 enzymes has the potential for PK-interaction, and concurrent use should be done with caution. As CYP3A4 is responsible for the metabolism of more than 50% of clinically administered drugs (Ingelman-Sundberg and Rodriguez-Antona 2005; Larson 2018), examples of CYP3A4 substrates, inhibitors, and inducers used in HSCT are presented in Table 31.1.

Mutations in CYP genes give rise to four major phenotypes: poor metabolizers, intermediate metabolizers, extensive metabolizers, and ultrarapid metabolizers (Ingelman-Sundberg and Rodriguez-Antona 2005; Ahmed et al. 2016). Polymorphisms in CYP450 are of concern in the study of interindividual altered drug metabolisms and/or adverse drug reactions.

### 31.1.2.2 Drug Transportation

P-glycoprotein (PgP) is a plasma membrane transporter involved in the excretion of drugs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substrates</th>
<th>Inhibitors</th>
<th>Inducers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Benzodiazepines&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Amiodarone</td>
<td>Barbiturates (phenobarbital)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Budesonide</td>
<td>Aprepitant</td>
<td>Carbamazepine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium Channel Blockers&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Cimetidine</td>
<td>Corticosteroids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbamazepine</td>
<td>Ciprofloxacin</td>
<td>Phenytoin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corticosteroids</td>
<td>Clarithromycin</td>
<td>Rifampicin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etoposide</td>
<td>Diltiazem</td>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunosuppressives&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Erythromycin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macrolide antibiotics&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Fluconazole</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statins&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Grapefruit juice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steroids&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Itraconazole</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous&lt;sup&gt;g&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Ketoconazole</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Posaconazole</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Voriconazole</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Verapamil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bold font indicates strong inhibitors/inducers

<sup>a</sup>Alprazolam, diazepam, midazolam
<sup>b</sup>Amlodipine, diltiazem, verapamil
<sup>c</sup>Cyclosporine, tacrolimus, sirolimus
<sup>d</sup>Clarithromycin, erythromycin, NOT azithromycin
<sup>e</sup>Atorvastatin, NOT pravastatin, simvastatin
<sup>f</sup>Estradiol, progesterone, testosterone
<sup>g</sup>Aprepitant, fentanyl, ondansetron, thiotepa, zolpidem
Its activity can be inhibited or induced by other drugs, resulting in increased or decreased bioavailability/clearance of P-glycoprotein substrates (Ingelman-Sundberg and Rodriguez-Antona 2005; Thanacoody 2012).

Monoclonal Antibodies
Metabolism of monoclonal antibodies (MABs) does not involve CYP450 enzymes or drug transporters; therefore, PK interactions between MABs and conventional drugs are very limited. However, current information in this area is not abundant and more research is needed (Ferri et al. 2016).

### Table 31.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interacting drug</th>
<th>Proposed mechanism</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Recommended action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Paracetamol      | Competition for glutathione | Increased BU levels | – Avoid paracetamol within 72 h prior to or concurrently with BU  
|                  |                    |        | – Monitor for increased BU concentrations/toxicity when used concurrently |
| Metronidazole    | CYP3A4 inhibition  |        | – Monitor for increased BU concentrations/toxicity when used concurrently |
| Itraconazole     | Glutathione-S-transferase induction | Decreased BU levels | – Use alternative antiepileptic (levetiracetam) |

*Lexicomp® Drug interactions (2018) and Glotzbecker et al. (2012)*

Monoclonal Antibodies
Metabolism of monoclonal antibodies (MABs) does not involve CYP450 enzymes or drug transporters; therefore, PK interactions between MABs and conventional drugs are very limited. However, current information in this area is not abundant and more research is needed (Ferri et al. 2016).

### 31.1.3 Pharmaceutical Interactions

Pharmaceutical interactions manifest when two or more drugs and their diluents are mixed in the same infusion bag/syringe or when infusion lines meet at a Y-site junction. They are the result of incompatibilities as physicochemical reactions (changes in color, turbidimetry, and precipitation). Amphotericin B, for example, should not be diluted or mixed with physiological saline as microprecipitation will occur immediately.

### 31.2 Drug Interactions in HSCT Practice

Drug interactions can occur as early as during the conditioning regimen. Drugs as etoposide and thiotepa rely on CYP450 enzymes for metabolism, while cyclophosphamide needs to be converted to become functional. A non-limitative list of PK interactions with busulfan and recommendations for management are summarized in Table 31.2. Many clinically relevant interactions have been reported with calcineurin inhibitors (cyclosporine and tacrolimus) and sirolimus. A non-limitative overview of PK interactions with these drugs is presented in Table 31.3.

### 31.3 Interactions with Herbal Drugs and Food

#### 31.3.1 Herbal Drugs

The use of herbal drugs is growing worldwide, and a number of serious interactions with conventional drugs have been reported (Enioutina et al. 2017). Patients often do not perceive herbal supplements as drugs and prescribers are not always aware that patients are taking these products. A thorough drug history anamnesis is important and should be performed by asking very specific questions about herbal drug use.

An example of an herbal drug frequently involved in major drug interactions is St John’s wort (SJW) (*Hypericum perforatum*). SJW is an over-the-counter product commonly used in HSCT patients for the treatment of mild depression. SJW can reduce the serum concentration of CYP3A4 substrates as cyclosporine and tacrolimus by induction of CYP3A4 or by increasing PgP expression, resulting in lack of response. Concomitant use of SJW with drugs metabolized by CYP3A4 should be avoided or monitored if no
Table 31.3  Pharmacokinetic interactions with cyclosporine (C), tacrolimus (T) and sirolimus (S) (non-limitative list)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interacting drug</th>
<th>Proposed mechanism</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Recommended action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anti-epileptics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbamazepine, Phenobarbital, Phenytoin</td>
<td>CYP3A4 induction</td>
<td>▼ C/T/S level</td>
<td>• Monitor C/T/S levels • Increased C/T/S doses will likely be needed • Consider therapy modification (levetiracetam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antifungals</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caspofungin</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>▼ C/T/S level</td>
<td>• Monitor liver function/hepatotoxicity in combination with C • Monitor T/S levels and adjust as necessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluconazole, Itraconazole, Posaconazole, Voriconazole</td>
<td>CYP3A4 and/or PgP inhibition</td>
<td>▼ C/T/S level</td>
<td>• Monitor clinical response of C/T/S closely • Monitor C/T/S levels closely • Decreased C/T/S doses will likely be needed • Itraconazole: consider therapy modification (C/T/S) • Posaconazole/voriconazole: consider therapy modification (C/T), avoid combination (S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Calcium channel blockers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diltiazem, Verapamil</td>
<td>CYP3A4 inhibition</td>
<td>▼ C/T/S level</td>
<td>• Monitor C/T/S levels • Decreased doses of C/T/S might be needed • Monitor for decreases in blood pressure (C) • Consider therapy modification (C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Calcineurin inhibitors</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>CYP3A4 competition</td>
<td>T: ▲ levels/nephrotoxicity of C/T • S: ▲ levels of S (of specific concern with modified C)</td>
<td>• Discontinue C/T therapy at least 24 h prior to initiating therapy with the other agent • C/T: avoid combination • Monitor for toxic effects of S • S: ▲ risk of C-induced HUS/TTP/TMA • Administer oral doses of S 4 h after doses of C • C/S: consider therapy modification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tacrolimus</td>
<td></td>
<td>▼ C/T/S level</td>
<td>• Avoid combination with C/S (enhanced toxicity of C/T/S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Corticosteroids</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CYP3A4/PgP induction CYP3A4 substrate</td>
<td>▲/▼ C/T levels • ▲ corticosteroid levels</td>
<td>• Monitor for changes in C/T levels (likely initial increase, possibly decrease thereafter) and toxic effects of corticosteroids and/or C/T if used concomitantly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macrolide antibiotics (not azithromycin)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarithromycin, Erythromycin</td>
<td>CYP3A4/PgP inhibition</td>
<td>▼ C/T/S levels • ▲ level of erythromycin</td>
<td>• Monitor C/T/S levels and adjust dose accordingly • Avoid concurrent use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proton pump inhibitors (PPI, not pantoprazole)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omeprazole, Lansoprazole</td>
<td>C: unclear T: CYP3A4/CYP2C19 inhibition</td>
<td>▲ C/T level</td>
<td>• Monitor C/T levels closely when starting or stopping therapy with PPI and adjust dosage if necessary (T) • Inconsistent data (omeprazole), rabeprazole or pantoprazole: less likely to significantly interact</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 31.3 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interacting drug</th>
<th>Proposed mechanism</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Recommended action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Statin</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atorvastatin</td>
<td>CYP3A4 inhibition and inhibition of OATP1B1-mediated hepatic uptake</td>
<td>– C: ▲ level of atorvastatin/simvastatin – T: limited effect</td>
<td>• Monitor for increased risk for statin-related toxicities (myopathy and rhabdomyolysis) • C: Avoid concurrent use atorvastatin/simvastatin • Consider changing to pravastatin or fluvastatin (less sensitive to this interaction) or alternative therapy • Warn patients to report any unexplained muscle pains or weakness • T: No action needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simvastatin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Miscellaneous** |                    |        |                    |
| Grapefruit juice | CYP3A4 inhibition (intestinal) | – ▲ C/T/S levels (C/T: primarily limited to orally administered C/T) | • Monitor C/T/S levels • Avoid combination with C/S/T |
| Metronidazole    | CYP3A4 inhibition | – ▲ C/T/S levels | • Monitor C/T/S levels |
| Mycophenolate mofetil (MMF) | Decreased enterohepatic recirculation | – C: ▲ glucuronide metabolite concentrations (associated with mycophenolate adverse effects) – MMF: ▼ C exposure in children – T: does not affect PK of mycophenolic acid (one study suggests ▲ T exposure) | • Monitor MMF dosing and response to therapy particularly closely when adjusting concurrent C (starting, stopping, or changing dose) or if changing from C to T/S |
| Rifampicin       | CYP3A4/PgP induction | – ▼ C/T/S levels | • Monitor levels, increase dose C/T/S accordingly • Avoid combination if possible |
| St John’s wort (SJW) | CYP3A4/PgP induction | – ▼ C/T/S levels | • Consider alternatives to SJW • If it cannot be avoided, monitor C/T/S levels |

▼ = decreased; ▲ = increased

*Lexicomp® Drug Interactions (2018) and Glotzbecker et al. (2012)*

Alternative for SJW is available (Enioutina et al. 2017; Lexicomp® Drug Interactions 2018).

#### 31.3.2 Food

Drug interactions with food and drinks are known to occur. Grapefruit juice is a potent inhibitor of intestinal CYP3A4, and many clinically relevant interactions have been reported (e.g., with simvastatin and calcineurin inhibitors). Cruciferous vegetables (Brussels sprouts, cabbage, and broccoli) contain substances that are inducers of CYP1A2 but do not appear to cause clinically important drug interactions (Thanacoody 2012).

#### 31.4 Resources for Drug Interactions

Drug interactions in HSCT can be numerous. Whenever a potential clinically relevant drug interaction is recognized, a management plan should be recommended (modification in drug therapy or closer monitoring of efficacy and
adverse reactions) (Tannenbaum and Sheehan 2014). A number of resources are available to help identifying and managing drug interactions (e.g., Lexicomp® Drug Interactions 2018; Clinical Pharmacology® 2018; Medicines Complete® 2018). Interpretation of interactions must be performed carefully to avoid the risk of over-alerting. The patient’s clinical status, comorbidities, and severity of the drug interactions presented should always be taken into account.

31.5 Conclusion

Drug interactions can occur at all levels during HSCT. Attention to and management of interactions is crucial to prevent severe clinical consequences. Due to the complexity of the therapy and the risk of drug interactions, an active collaboration in a HSCT multidisciplinary team, including physicians, pharmacists, and nurses, is of paramount importance.

Key Points

- Drug interactions in HSCT are common and can occur at all levels
- Knowledge of mechanisms involved in drug metabolism might help in anticipating interactions
- A multidisciplinary approach is important to reduce the risk of drug interactions

References


Larson AM. Drugs and the liver: metabolism and mechanisms of injury. UpToDate, Post TW (Ed), UpToDate, Waltham, MA. Accessed 16 Jan 2018.


Lexicomp Drug Interactions. UpToDate, Post TW (Ed), UpToDate, Waltham, MA. Accessed 16 Jan 2018.


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Role of Nursing in HSCT

Aleksandra Babic and John Murray

32.1 Introduction: HSCT Nursing

With the progress of HSCT in the early 1960s, it became clear that nurses play a crucial role within the multidisciplinary team (MDT) caring for patients and their families undergoing this intense treatment. The distress during the time prior to undergoing HSCT, during isolation, in the recovery phase and the time after (long-term recovery) is not to be underestimated.

The best compliment towards nursing was made by Prof. Edward Donnall Thomas, the 1990 Nobel Prize winner in Medicine who stated that ‘nurses and nursing are my secret weapon without whom I could not have achieved my goals’ (Appelbaum 2013).

Continuity of care is vital to patient’s right from their initial attendance in hospital. Nurses are an advocate throughout the transplant and often act as a motivating force, supporting and advising as well as supplying physical, psychological and emotional care whilst patient’s transition from acute care to long-term follow-up clinics. Experienced nurses with high levels of technical competencies offer patients and families excellent care and support in this challenging area.

Patient preparation for HSCT involves the use of chemotherapy and/or radiotherapy to eradicate the underlying disease of the patient. Throughout the transplant procedure, the patient needs special care to overcome the complications associated with treatment. Nurses must be aware of the possible complications in order to play a role in prevention or early detection of alarming signs, such as sepsis, fluid overload and organ dysfunction, taking appropriate measures to minimize adverse effects and restore the clinical balance of the patient. This care is very complex and requires a high level of skill (Wallhut and Quinn 2017).

The field of nursing research in HSCT has evolved from reflecting on symptom management and service development to quality of life and long-term survival topics. The FACT-JACIE International Standards Accreditation requires that the clinical programme has access to personnel who are formally trained, experienced and competent in the management of patients receiving cellular therapy (JACIE 7th edition n.d.). Thus, it is important that training and competency programmes are structured and ongoing, with documented evidence of training topics and dates (Babic 2015).
32.2 Role of Nursing Throughout HSCT Patient Pathway

HSCT is a standard therapy in a number of malignant and non-malignant conditions.

Pre-transplant assessments must be undertaken, and the results of these along with suitable donor medical clearance and cell availability are essential to ascertain that transplant is a valid option and can proceed safely.

Nurses are pivotal in implementing practices to prevent and manage infections and other serious effects following HSCT (Sureda et al. 2015; Kenyon and Babic 2018) as:

- Bleeding risk caused by thrombocytopenia
- Tiredness and fatigue caused by the decreased haemoglobin levels and lasting effects of chemo-/radiotherapy and associated medications
- Pain due to mucositis
- Sepsis
- Reduced nutrition
- Psychosocial distress
- Isolation

32.2.1 The Role of the Transplant Coordinator (TC)

Many transplant coordinators are nurse specialists who focus their role on the individual needs of the patient and families; however, some centres have medical staff that organize transplants. TC is the person who should:

- Ensure that timely events occur for each patient and their families undergoing HSCT and that the patients are physically and psychologically prepared for the treatment.
- Provide a high level of care and management, inform and educate the patient, have holistic knowledge of the patient, participate in specific or advanced nursing practices (bone marrow sampling, HLA typing, transplant recipient care) and coordinate all the transplant logistics.

- Ensure that a suitable source of cells is available following the high-dose chemotherapy or immunosuppressive treatment that the patient will receive. Make requests to donor search panels, and order cells once the ideal match has been identified by the transplant physician.
- Support the patient with verbal and written information, and educate them about the whole process from typing to transplant. The TC will coordinate all of the care and embodies a clinical nursing function where emphasis is placed on specialization in a clearly defined area of care.
- Actively participate in the JACIE process of accreditation of transplant centres by writing and evaluating SOPs and being a valued member of the MDT and ward team offering teaching and advice.

32.3 Specific Aspects with a Prominent Role for Nurses

32.3.1 Venous Access Device (VAD)

Education and training should not be limited to the care and maintenance after insertion of the VAD but should be focused on well-being and patient safety. An algorithm for choosing the right VAD for the right patient should start with the diagnosis and treatment plan. The best VAD should be chosen based on the pH and osmolarity of the drugs used during the whole treatment period and the vein condition and should include the option for (partial) home infusion treatment.

Within the range of CVAD (central VAD), a peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC) is seen frequently in haematology patients, often as an alternative for a tunnelled CICC (centrally inserted central catheter) such as a Hickman catheter (see Chap. 22).

Nurses are responsible for the safe administration of drugs such as chemotherapy, IS immunosuppressive drugs and blood products as well as
parenteral nutrition and symptom control drugs. The accurate handling and taking care of the central venous catheter and infusion pump systems are vital in the process because the catheter is related to the highest risk of infections. The use of an Aseptic Non Touch Technique (ANTT) (Pratt et al. 2007) and its ten principles of care have led to a decrease in catheter-related infections.

GAVeCeLT (Gli Accessi Venosi Centrali a Lungo Termine) (Pittiruti and Scoppettuolo 2017) has developed an algorithm for the choice of the most appropriate VAD, based on the best evidence available in the international guidelines, the bundle for the safe implantation of PICCs (see Table 32.1).

### 32.3.2 Early and Acute Complications

They occur following transplantation when the patient has reduced tolerance due to neutropenia and/or increased intestinal permeability. In neutropenia, the number of white blood cells decreases significantly, resulting in aplasia with an increased risk of infection. An increased permeability of the intestinal wall is caused by intensive chemotherapy damaging the gastrointestinal mucosa. As a result, pathogenic bacteria (bodily bacteria or bacteria from the diet) can enter the bloodstream and cause sepsis.

Early complications generally occur within 100 days post HSCT. In the early phase of HSCT, the main risk factors for infections are neutropenia-barrier breakdown due to mucositis, indwelling catheters, depressed T-cell and B-cell function and aGvHD.

Two of the most common early complications are oral mucositis and sepsis. Some other relatively rare complications are HC, ES, IPS and DAH. TAM and SOS/VOD are analysed in Chaps. 42, 49 and 50. For all complications there are locally agreed recommendations for prevention and principles for nursing care, with monitoring and prompt intervention that may have an influence on patients’ morbidity and mortality.

#### 32.3.2.1 Oral Mucositis (OM)

Oral mucositis (OM) has been defined (Rubenstein et al. 2004) as the inflammation of the mucosal membrane, characterized by ulceration, which may result in pain, swallowing difficulties and impairment of the ability to talk. The mucosal injury caused by OM provides an opportunity for infection to flourish and in particular putting the severely immunocompromised patient in the HSCT setting at risk of sepsis and septicemia.

OM and oral problems in the HSCT setting can be expected to occur in as many as 68% of patients undergoing autologous HSCT and 98% of patients undergoing allogeneic HSCT (EORTC Guidelines). With the increasing use of targeted drug therapies and approaches in the cancer and

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 32.1 The bundle for the safe implantation of PICCs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>The goals of the bundle are to minimize</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Complications related to venipuncture: failure,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repeated punctures, nerve injury, arterial injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Malposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Venous thrombosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Dislocation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In order to reach the goal, the SIP protocol was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>developed and needs to be followed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Bilateral US scan of all veins at the arm and neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Handwashing, aseptic technique and maximal barrier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Choice of the appropriate vein at the midarm (vein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm = or &gt;cath Fr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Clear identification of median nerve and brachial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Ultrasound-guided venipuncture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. US tip navigation during introduction of the PICC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Electrocardiography method for assessing tip position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Securing the PICC with cyanoacrylate glue, sutureless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devise and transparent dressing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infections in PICCs to be close to zero if a bundle of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preventive measures are taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Site selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Skin disinfection with 2% chlorhexidine in 70% gluconate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hand hygiene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Maximum barrier precautions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Daily control on indication and on complications</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aPittiruti and Scoppettuolo (2017)
bHarnage (2012)
haematology setting, problems in the oral cavity will increase and become even more of a challenge (Quinn et al. 2015).

All treatment strategies aimed at improving mouth care are dependent on four key principles: accurate assessment of the oral cavity, individualized plan of care, initiating timely preventative measures and correct treatment (Quinn et al. 2008). The assessment process should begin prior to HSCT by identifying all the patient risks most likely to increase oral damage.

The choice of prevention regimens should be guided by evidence based on expert opinion interventions, working with the patient to reduce their potential risk of oral mucositis occurring.

All treatment plans should be based upon the grading of oral damage and patient reports, and these may include the use of topical analgesics and the use of opiates (Elad et al. 2015).

### 32.3.2.2 Sepsis

Sepsis is a life-threatening condition caused by aberrant and dysregulated host response to infection (Elad et al. 2015). The most important action to prevent infections acquired by exogenous organisms is good hand hygiene performed correctly (Hand Hygiene Guidelines). Appropriate clean work clothes, with short sleeves, no jewellery and no neck tie are the responsibility of all staff. Protective isolation during the neutropenic phase is recommended, and the patient should not be in contact with any staff or visitors with symptoms of infection. For prevention of endogenous infections, oral hygiene and skin care to maintain the mucosal and skin barrier and use of prophylactic antibiotics are the most important actions. Correct handling of any indwelling catheters is also a key nursing responsibility in infection control.

Other areas where infections can be prevented are air and water quality, food hygiene and environmental cleaning. Environmental cleaning includes medical equipment as well.

Early recognition and treatment are vital for a successful outcome of sepsis. Temperature, pulse, blood pressure, respirations and saturation (vital signs) should be frequently monitored. Signs of infection are not always obvious, but if the patient has a temperature ≥38.0 °C, cultures should be taken, IV antibiotics and IV fluids started or increased and oxygen therapy initiated.

The goal is always to start antibiotic treatment within 1 h from detection of fever and is the most critical period in the patient’s survival from sepsis. Early recognition and intervention are achieved by frequent monitoring of the patient’s vital signs and general condition and paying attention to subtle changes that should be promptly reported, such as mental state alteration or mottled skin.

Alert for immediate action are when a previously well patient only responds to pain or becomes unresponsive, becomes confused and has a systolic blood pressure of <90 mmHg or a fall of >40 mmHg from baseline; an elevated heart rate >130 bpm; a respiratory rate of >25 per min, requiring oxygen to maintain saturations >92%; a non-blanching rash or mottled, ashen or cyanotic skin, not passed urine in the last 18 h; an output of <0.5 ml/kg/h; a lactate of >2 mmol/l; or received recent chemotherapy.

Immediate action is required at the first indication of sepsis. The concept of the sepsis six and the severe sepsis resuscitation bundle (Daniels et al. 2011) has been developed as a guide to prioritize interventions in patients where sepsis is suspected:

1. Oxygen therapy aims to keep saturations >94% (88–92% if at risk of CO2 retention, e.g. COPD).
2. Blood cultures, at least a peripheral set, consider CSF, urine, sputum, chest X-ray and urinalysis.
3. IV antibiotics, according to hospital policy, consider allergies prior to administration.
4. Fluid resuscitation, if hypotensive or lactate >2 mmol/l, 500 ml bolus stat, may be repeated if clinically indicated. Do not exceed 30 ml/kg.
5. Serial serum lactates corroborate high VBG lactate with arterial sample. If lactate >4 mmol/l, call critical care for support. Recheck after each 10 ml/kg challenge.
6. Assess urine output which may require catheterization, and ensure fluid balance chart commenced and completed hourly.

When treatment has been initiated, the patient must be continually monitored to determine the effect of treatment or worsening of the condition. This includes vital signs, fluid balance including weight and assessment of identified and/or potential infection sites (mouth, skin, all indwelling catheters, urine, stools, etc.), mental status, signs of bleeding, pain and general appearance and well-being.

Antibiotics should be delivered with strict adherence to the prescribed time schedule. Antipyretic agents should be avoided since they may mask fever but may under certain circumstances be used to alleviate patient discomfort and pain.

### 32.3.2.3 Pain

Pain in the HSCT setting is most commonly experienced as a result of mucositis, but patients will also report other pain such as bone pain associated with G-CSF, abdominal pain due to diarrhoea or general discomfort with fluid accumulation. A comprehensive evaluation of the pain, location, characteristics, onset, duration, frequency and severity, exacerbating and relieving factors, should be included. This assessment should be supported by the patient’s non-verbal reactions such as facial expression, pallor, tempo of speech, body position, etc. as well as their vital signs.

### 32.3.2.4 GvHD

GvHD remains a leading cause of non-relapse mortality and is associated with a high morbidity that increasingly affects quality of life (Lee et al. 2003; Dignan 2012). Nursing care of patients with GvHD is highly complex and extremely stressful especially in the acute setting in patients with grades 3–4 skin and GI involvement (Table 32.2). Supportive nursing care to complement medical interventions aims to offer symptomatic comfort and relief.

There are many manifestations of GvHD, and nurses are able to advise patients with respect to many of these including eye, mouth and genital care. Further readings: GvHD chapter in the EBMT Textbook for nurses 2018 (Kenyon and Babic 2018).

### Table 32.2 Nursing care of patients with skin and gastrointestinal GvHD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skin care</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Maintain integrity of the skin; regular application of cream, ointment or gel; patient choice of vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Emollient application, high or low water content to be considered, QV, hydromol or diprobase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. At least 30-min gap between emollient and steroid cream applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Topical steroids, strength decided by site and length of treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Menthol cream for painful and pruritic skin, cooling effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Use high-factor sunscreen SPF 50+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Always apply creams to make the skin appear shiny; adult body will require 500 g per week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Apply in one direction, direction of hair growth, do not scrub on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Medical grade silk clothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Good fluid intake and nutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Organic coconut oil or other natural lipids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Aloe vera gels; do not use alone as they will dry the skin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gastrointestinal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Ensure stool samples are taken to exclude infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Adequate oral intake with strict fluid balance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Small and frequent high-calorie food and drinks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Antiemetics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Loperamide, codeine and octreotide may be used to stem diarrhoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Rest bowel and use parenteral feeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Consider the use of radiologically inserted gastrostomy (RIG) feeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Flexi-seal faecal collection device</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 32.3.3 Long-Term Complications and Side Effects Post Allo-HCST

Long-term side effects after allo-HSCT include non-malignant organ or tissue dysfunction, changes in quality of life, infections related to abnormal immune reconstitution and secondary cancers. Many of these can be attributed to effects of chronic graft-versus-host disease (Dignan 2012; Bhatia 2011; Mohty and Mohty 2011). With advances achieved in terms of supportive care, it is reasonable to expect outcomes to improve steadily, and consequently increasing numbers of transplant survivors will be facing life after the initial
transplant experience. For some survivors the burden of long-term morbidity is substantial, and long-term follow-up of patients who received allo-HSCT is now widely recommended.

**Key Points**

- Specific technical care activities require nursing knowledge and specific skills in the field of HSCT such as instrument manipulation, knowledge of technologies and the use of special protocols to effectively intervene in complex situations and deal with acute and chronic HSCT complications.
- As patients become more complex, so does the care that they require.
- It is essential that nursing adapts to these challenges and improves in both the quality and expertise that is vital to improve patient survival and overall experience of this life-changing treatment.
- The predominant role for nurses is focused to vascular access device, oral mucositis and other early complications as HC, ES, IPS and DAH. TAM and SOS/VOD, sepsis, pain, GVHD and several late complications.

**References**


Babic A. Transplant unit personnel competency maintenance: online testing by sharepoint application. EBMT 2015. Oral presentation N003.


Wallhult E, Quinn B. Early and acute complications and the principles of HSCT nursing care. In: Wallhult E, Quinn B, Kenyon M, Babic A, editors. The European blood and marrow transplantation textbook for nurses. 2017. [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-50026-3_9](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-50026-3_9).
Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
33.1 Introduction

Ethics is a branch of philosophy, and, like mathematics, moral philosophy does not give ready-made answers to questions but teaches how one could systematically analyse and resolve a problem. Philosophy’s main tool, to achieve this, is logic, where accurate premises are linked together to support a conclusion within a sound and valid ethical argument (West 2009). This chapter aims to explain this process using examples from blood and marrow transplantation practices.

Ethical discourse requires a theory of ethics (Thompson 2005). One requires a landmark to understand their ethical position. One needs to know on what basis one can decide if an action is wrong or right, bad or good; a theory of ethics should help this. It will also allow better understanding of common threats to ethics such as appealing to religion, using relativism to justify accepting different truths to different situations or explaining that ethical stands are unreasonably demanding (Blackburn 2001).

The most known ethical theories are Kant’s deontological theory and Bentham and Mill’s utilitarianism (Vardy and Grosch 1999). Kant argued for our duty to pursue a set of intrinsically ethical rules that can be universally applied. Ethics is the search for such rules. On the other hand, utilitarianism argues that an action or a rule is moral if their outcomes bring the greatest pleasure and happiness to the greatest numbers of people. No doubt, these theories would ignite an interesting discussion on transplant ethics but may not provide clear enough guidance to healthcare practitioners to help tackle the dilemmas that they regularly encounter.

During the last four decades, Beauchamp and Childress (2013) defended, and significantly developed, the four principles ethical theory for healthcare profession. These principles include:

1. Respect for autonomy: respecting the decision-making capacity of autonomous persons
2. Non-maleficence: avoiding the causation of harm
3. Beneficence: providing benefits as well as balancing such benefits against risks and cost

According to Beauchamp and Childress (2013)
Beneficence is the primary goal of medicine and healthcare, whereas respect for autonomy, along with non-maleficence and justice, sets the moral limits on the professional’s actions in pursuit of this goal.

Ethical obligations towards patients (and sometimes their relatives) are well known to healthcare professionals. In the field of transplantation, management of donors adds another dimension to the ethical complexity. Two more areas of work are morally challenging, and although less well argued for, they are critical and have wide implications: firstly, the moral obligations of professionals to engage with fundholders, commissioners and insurers to ensure fair funding of service and, secondly, the ethical role of experts in the management, reporting and publishing of data and information to ensure accurate practice evidence to inform decision-making. Ethical practice requires one to apply the above four principles to all field of work, every time an ethical issue is raised. Transplantation practice is full with issues that can raise serious and sometimes disturbing ethical concerns. The following is a discussion of some aspects of the ethical implications of high-risk treatment, lack of enough funding for healthcare and issues with donor care.

### 33.2 Ethical Challenges of High-Risk Treatment

Blood and marrow transplantation is mostly used to treat life-threatening illnesses, but also it carries serious complications that are themselves life threatening. Resistance disease or a recipient with significant comorbidities can make transplant risks too high and brings risks of futility to the equation. Although guidelines and outcomes data are available in the literature, the application of such evidence may require the support of colleagues or other experts within a multidisciplinary team. This should help in striking the desirable balance between expected benefits and possible harm (the beneficence and the non-maleficence principles). Although risks may be too high, one ought to ask ‘is it the best option available for that particular patient with that particular disease?’ (Snyder 2016). Moreover, the implications of undertaking a transplant procedure with limited benefits on resources and other patients ought to be considered. The limitation of transplant rooms, for example, may explain how a decision to transplant a particular patient could affect another.

A transplant procedure that carries only 10–20% chance of success can be a source of worry to staff as it brings the beneficence/non-maleficence balance to a critical point. However, the other two ethical principles may help. What the patient wants to do? And will such a transplant jeopardise other patients care or face funding rejection? Obviously for a keen patient and supportive healthcare payers, the decision is less problematic. The balance of forces may be different in another situation with the same clinical ground. This brings uncomfortable variations into practice which can only be minimised by the development of constructive ethical discourse.

An unbiased list of options ought to be discussed with the patient (and possibly with their relatives and even healthcare payers). To obtain an autonomous consent, staff have to ensure that the patient has fully understood all options and has made a choice that is not influenced by any coercive factors. Obtaining such a valid consent requires arrangements and it will take some time and effort. This, however, not only meets our moral obligations but also has practical benefits, as a well-consented patient is likely to cooperate with the demand of treatment and work with staff to fight complications. Respect of autonomy dictates that patients are well informed about decisions that they make, and it also dictates that staff accept such decisions even if decisions sound counterintuitive. A self-funding patient who refuses life-saving transplant to save the money for their young children may pose difficult and very uncomfortable challenges to staff. This patient can be helped through exploring charitable funds for their treatment, but ignoring their autonomous decisions is not an ethical option.
33.3 Engagement with Funding Issues as a Professional Moral Obligation

Establishing funding rules for transplantation treatment has been, on many occasions, considered the job of healthcare payers or insurers. Medical staff are involved in setting up guidelines, publishing data on outcomes and advising in some complex cases. However, an ethical assessment of the issue will put medical staff in the centre of decision-making. After all, healthcare payers and insurers will base all their decisions not only on medical information but also on the interpretation of such information as provided by medical staff. It is prudent to think that it is unethical that medical staff do not engage actively in this process. The same ethical desire that drives staff to treat illness and complications ought to drive their engagement in mending funding practices that do not meet patients’ needs, as both issues are detrimental to patients’ outcomes.

The respect to autonomy principle dictates involvement of patients’ representatives in funding decisions. Most healthcare services have such an arrangement, and the job of the medical staff is to educate representatives to be able to make valid and informed decisions. The principle of beneficent, in this setting, can be applied by gathering, analysing and publishing good data to support funding decisions. Whilst publishing papers may have been considered as an option for academic progression, it seems that it has become an ethical obligation. Non-maleficence means that delays in introducing new development in the field must be avoided. Transplant field is rapidly changing (for the better), and such delays could devote patients from a helpful treatment modality that could make a difference to them. The principle of justice is in the heart of healthcare funding. However, this ought to not mean ‘sticking to the rule’. Most rules have legitimate exceptions and the job of the transplant physician to fight the corner of the patients in this regard. Some healthcare services support cord transplant but not the use of double cord, because of cost implications. This would disadvantage many adult patients with body weight that is too high for a cord blood unit to support. The desire to establish an ethical process of funding may have led the English National Healthcare Service to establish Clinical Reference Groups, including one for transplantation. This group is composed of a medical chair, eight other transplant physicians and three members to represent patient and public voice (NHS England 2018). Medical ethics is mainly seen as a direct issue between a professional and a patient. This discussion showed the ethical obligations of professionals outside the clinic and the hospital ward. This is obviously demanding but also more helpful to patients.

33.4 The Ethical Issues in Donor Management

Transplant donation is a fertile subject for ethical debate as all types of donation carry some moral concerns. These are mainly around respect of donor autonomy, risk of exploitation or possible harm to donor. Unrelated donors are supported by professionals other than staff who look after the recipient, and this is according to national and international guidance. Unrelated donations have some financial and reputational benefits to the donor registries. However, given existing professionalism and code of practice, this has rarely raised concerns. On the other hand, family donors receive less structured protection. The recent success in haploidentical transplantation means that more family donors will be involved, and so ethical grounds of such process needs to be established.

Whilst the balance of risks and benefits of most types of treatment offered to a particular patient can be established, a major dilemma in donor ethics is the fact that assessing harm and inconvenience to one person (the donor) in relation to expected benefits to another (the recipient) is highly problematic. Staff occasionally make the decision themselves and argue that some temporary aches and pains and minimal risks of ruptured spleen (G-CSF side effects) are acceptable risks to justify a life-saving donation, particularly to a family member. Staff position makes 'some
sense’, but it does not respect donor autonomy, and so it cannot be accepted as a universal rule that could be practiced widely, i.e. it lacks ethical grounds.

Child donors, pregnancies conceived for HCT and donation from a family member who lack capacity have been debated. Minor sibling donors require particular consideration as their autonomy is harder to prove. There is evidence that a child donor is subjected to both physical and psychological implications. This prompted (the) American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Bioethics to recommend that five conditions are met to ensure morally justified donations from children (AAP 2010). These include lack of suitable adult donor, the expected benefit to recipient is reasonably high, strong relationship between donor and recipient, potential physical and psychological harms to donor must be minimised and, finally, obtaining parents’ consent and child assent. Child assent and agreement are hard to confirm, and the availability of independent committee or assessor to look after such donors has been recommended.

Moreover, a family donation from an adult with full capacity can be morally challenging for two reasons. Firstly, not all family members want to donate. Some of them find the process too demanding, and if they were ‘given the choice’, they will rather not. The story of one such donor was in the news. A newspaper (the Daily Mail, UK) reported the situation using the following headline: ‘Sentenced to die by my sister, leukemia victim refused her only chance of transplant’ (Oldfield 1997). The sister refused to donate bone marrow because of the phobia of hospitals. The subsequent media debate led the donor to reconsider her position. This is a moral position that is hard to defend. Secondly, the health risks to family donors are not minimum or negligible. They are more likely to encounter significant complications than unrelated donors (Halter et al. 2009). Documented experience from unrelated donations cannot be used to advise family donors, and the comparison between harm to donor and benefit to recipient is even harder in the family donor situation. Many authors (van Walraven et al. 2010; Brand et al. 2011) attempted to raise awareness of these issues, and many argued that a system that is separate to and not influenced by patient care ought to be in place to manage family donors.

Transplantation, like other healthcare practices, requires an accurate balance between expected benefits and possible harm as well as valid patient consent. Given limited resources, the implication of one transplant on another ought to be considered. Given the life-saving and life-threatening nature of this modality of treatment, ethical issues with transplantation are likely to be challenging. Staff are expected to let patients decide for themselves. Moreover, staff ought to escalate complex issues to the legal system or more commonly to the ethics committee within their institution. In the European Union, Directive 2001/20/EC established ethics committees as an independent body to agree complex ethical challenges.

Key Points
• Clinical ethics teaches skills to tackle moral dilemmas but does not provide ready-made answers.
• Clinical ethics now extends, beyond patient clinician relationship, to donor care as well as engagement with fund holders and insurers.
• The four principles ethical theory (autonomy, beneficent, non-maleficence and justices) provides reasonable basis for moral assessment of ethical issues in most fields of practice.
• The donation process requires ethical vigilance. Family donors have high health risks and, given the potential social pressure, are not always autonomous.

References
Thompson M. Ethical theory. 2nd ed. Coventry: Hodder Murray; 2005.

Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
34.1 Introduction

Methodological advances in the HCT field have increased the population of survivors worldwide. However, HCT is associated with significant morbidity that impairs survivors’ recovery and adversely affects their QoL. A significant body of literature has addressed QoL after HCT and highlights significant deficiencies in physical, psychological, social, and role functioning both in adult and pediatric survivors (Pidala et al. 2010). These data are clinically relevant as they help to understand the impact of HCT on patient’s lives. Clinically, assessment of QoL can inform patient education and be used to evaluate the benefit of supportive care interventions.

34.2 QoL Assessment

QoL can be considered a patient-reported outcome (PRO). PROs are defined by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) as the “measurement of any aspect of a patient’s health status that comes directly from the patient, without the interpretation of the patient’s response by a clinician or anyone else” (US Food and Drug Administration 2009). Thus, PROs specifically describe the impact that HCT has on patients’ lives and provide information unavailable from other sources (Kurosawa et al. 2017; Russell et al. 2006). PROs are also used in pediatric populations, although parents or other proxies might be used as source of information when children are unable to report their own QoL. However, the use of patients’ own reports is clearly recommended because significant discrepancies are found when comparing patients’ self-reported QoL to reports of physicians, parents, or other proxies (Kurosawa et al. 2017; Russell et al. 2006). In general, measures to assess patient- and proxy-reported QoL are questionnaires.

These instruments can be broadly categorized as general or disease- or procedure-specific. General measures assess QoL of the general population and can also be administered to specific populations, such as HCT recipients. These questionnaires allow comparisons of QoL across populations, such as between HCT survivors and individuals without cancer. In contrast, disease- and procedure-specific instruments examine specific aspects of the health conditions assessed. These measures capture specific PROs that are likely to be important to patients.
34.3 Measures to Assess QoL in Adults and Pediatric Patients Undergoing HCT

There are numerous measures assessing QoL on adults and pediatric HCT recipients. Measures used have been both general and disease-specific. The following sections list some of the most common used questionnaires in the field of HCT.

34.3.1 Adults

Interest in assessing QoL in adult HCT recipients is reflected in the variety of measures used to assess this outcome. However, there is a need for the scientific community to reach consensus about which questionnaires to use in order to facilitate comparison across studies (Shaw et al. 2016). Table 34.1 summarizes alphabetically some of the most common questionnaires to assess QoL in adults.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 34.1 QoL questionnaires assessing QoL in adult HCT survivors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>(a) General</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>European Quality of Life - 5 Dimensions (EQ-5D-5L)</em> (van Reenen and Jansen 2015)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domains/subscales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Medical Outcomes Study-Short Form (MOS SF-36)</em> (Ware et al. 1994)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domains/subscales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Patient-Reported Outcomes Measurement Information System (PROMIS)</em> (Cella et al. 2010)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domains/subscales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(b) Cancer and HCT specific</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer QoL Questionnaire Core 30 (EORTC QLQ-C30)</em> version 3.0 (Aaronson et al. 1993)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domains/subscales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
34.3.2 Pediatrics

There is less research on QoL on pediatric patients than adult patients. Initial pediatric studies focused on a single aspect of functioning, such as psychosocial and physical limitations. It was not until the early 1990s that pediatric QoL began to be addressed as a multidimensional construct. Most of the measures used in pediatric studies were originally developed to be used in the general population or in children with specific illnesses. Table 34.2 lists alphabetically the most common measures used to assess QoL in pediatric population.

34.4 Challenges when implementing QoL assessment

Improvement in patients’ QoL is included among the strategic goals of major cancer organizations such as the American Society of Clinical Oncology and regulatory agencies such as the FDA and the European Medicines Agency. Recognition of the importance of the patient experience is reflected in the increasing incorporation of patient-reported QoL measures in observational research and clinical trials. However, some aspects should be considered when implementing patient-reported QoL measures.

Historically, studies and clinical trials performed in the USA have often used the FACT instruments, whereas studies performed in Europe have chosen the EORTC. This divergence makes results difficult to compare (Shaw et al. 2016), although efforts are underway to map common QoL measures such as the EORTC QLQ-C30 and FACT-G to one another (Young et al. 2015). Second, the mode of administration should also be considered. PRO measures have traditionally been administered by paper and pencil, but new technologies offer the potential to use electronic measures. Electronic measures administered before or during a clinic visit allow results to be available at the time of consultation and may facilitate symptom monitoring to guide supportive treatment. One example is the PROMIS instrument, which is available using computer adaptive testing or through REDCap software. Computer adaptive testing selects questions based on the previous responses that patients have provided to approximate the construct being measured in the fewest number of questions. The implementation of routine assessment of patients’ QoL on clinical care and clinical trials has the potential to improve patients’ well-being.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 34.2</th>
<th>QoL questionnaires assessing QoL in pediatric HCT survivors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>(a) General</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child Health Questionnaire (CHQ) (Landgraf et al. 1996)</strong></td>
<td>Aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versions</td>
<td>Parent-reported versions feature 50 items (CHQ-PF50) or 28 items (CHQ-PF28) and are intended for parents of children aged 5–18 years. The child-report version (CHQ-87) has 87 items and is appropriate for children aged 10–18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domains/subscales</td>
<td>Global health, physical functioning, role/social-physical functioning, bodily pain/discomfort, role/social-emotional functioning, role/social-behavior, parental impact-time, parental impact-emotional, self-esteem, mental health, global behavior, family activities, family cohesion, and changes in health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Results</td>
<td>Higher scores indicate higher physical and psychosocial wellbeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translations</td>
<td>The CHQ-PF50 and CHQ-PF28 are available in more than 80 languages, and the CHQ-87 to 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Patient-Reported Outcomes Measurement Information System (PROMIS) (Hinds et al. 2013)</strong></td>
<td>Aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versions</td>
<td>Multi-item measures varying in length and complexity: PROMIS-25 has 25 items, PROMIS-37 37 items, and PROMIS-49 49 items. PROMIS measures are child- and parent-reported. Child-report measures are intended for children aged 8–17, and parent-report for children 5–17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domains/subscales</td>
<td>Physical, mental and social health, and a global QoL score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Results</td>
<td>Higher scores indicate more of the concept being measured. PROMIS use standardized T-score metric against normative data for the US population</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translations</td>
<td>Children and proxy measures are available in Spanish and in several other languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pediatric Quality of Life Inventory (PedsQL™) 4.0 Generic Score Scales (Varni et al. 2001)</strong></td>
<td>Aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versions</td>
<td>Parent-report form for children aged 2–4 has 21 items, and child and parent reports for children aged 5–18 have 23 items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domains/subscales</td>
<td>Physical, emotional, social, and school functioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Results</td>
<td>Physical health summary score; Psychosocial health summary score; Total score. Higher scores indicate better QoL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translations</td>
<td>Available in more than 70 languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>(b) Cancer and HCT specific</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child Health Rating Inventories (CHRIs) and Disease-Specific Impairment Inventory-Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation (DSII-HCT) (Parsons 2005)</strong></td>
<td>Aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versions</td>
<td>10-item module intended to child-report (aged 5–12), adolescent-report (13–18) and parents-report (5–18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domains/subscales</td>
<td>Items are grouped in three domains reported by parents and patients to be most salient to the HCT experience: worry, hassles, and body image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Results</td>
<td>Higher scores indicate better QoL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translations</td>
<td>The questionnaire is available in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Peds Quality of Life Cancer Module 3.0 (PedsQL CM™) (Varni et al. 2002)</strong></td>
<td>Aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versions</td>
<td>Parent-report form for children aged 2–4 has 25 items, child and parent reports for children aged 5–7 has 26 items, and child and parents reports for children more than 8 years has 27 items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domains/subscales</td>
<td>Pain and hurt, nausea, procedural anxiety, treatment anxiety, worry, cognitive problems, perceived physical appearance and communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Results</td>
<td>Higher scores indicate better QoL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translations</td>
<td>Available in more than 100 languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Behavioral, Affective and Somatic Experiences Scales (BASES) (Phipps et al. 1994)</strong></td>
<td>Aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versions</td>
<td>There are separate versions to be completed by nurses (BASES-N), parents (BASES-P) and children (BASES-C). The BASES-N and BASES-P have 38 items and the BASES-C has 14 items. The questionnaire is intended to be used in child aged 5–17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domains/subscales</td>
<td>Somatic distress, mood disturbance, compliance, quality of interactions and activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Results</td>
<td>Higher scores indicate more distress/impairment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translations</td>
<td>Available in English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Key Points

- Assessing HCT survivors’ QoL is essential in order to know the impact that the HCT, its morbidity, its treatments, and related interventions have on survivors’ well-being.
- Enhanced efforts should be made to include QoL assessment in routine clinical practice. Engaging clinicians in using QoL assessments, potentially by means of electronic administration, as well as broadening the interpretation of their scores into the clinical field, might facilitate incorporation.
- Further efforts should elucidate to what extent QoL results are incorporated into management decisions, treatment recommendations, and patients’ education.
- Additional efforts should also be made to include QoL outcomes in clinical trials.
- The incorporation of QoL assessment into clinical and research practice has the potential to improve HCT outcomes.

References


Landgraf JM, Abetz L, Ware JE. Child health questionnaire (CHQ): a user’s manual. Boston: Health Institute, New England Medical Center; 1996.


Varni JW, Seid M, Kurtin PS. PedsQL 4.0: reliability and validity of the Pediatric Quality of Life Inventory version 4.0 generic core scales in healthy and patient populations. Med Care. 2001;39:800–12.


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
HSCT Complications and Management

Topic leaders: Jan Styczynski, Enric Carreras and Per Ljungman
Neutropenic Fever

Malgorzata Mikulska

35.1 Introduction

Fever during neutropenia is almost universal after a HSCT. In neutropenic HSCT recipients, clinicians are faced with a unique combination of two issues: (1) high incidence of bacterial bloodstream infections and (2) high mortality in case of infections due to Gram-negative bacteria unless effective antibiotic treatment is provided promptly.

Additionally, in the absence of neutrophils which are responsible for most of clinical signs or symptoms during a localized bacterial infection (abscess formation, prominent lung infiltrates, pyuria, etc.), fever is frequently the only symptom present also in these cases. On the other hand, fever is a highly unspecific sign, and there are numerous causes of fever during neutropenia other than bacterial infections, including (a) viral infections, (b) fungal infections, (c) drug reactions (e.g. ATG), (d) transfusion reactions, (e) mucositis, (f) underlying disease, (g) engraftment syndrome, (h) GvHD, (i) cytokine release syndrome, (j) rejection and (k) haemophagocytosis.

However, since infection due to Gram-negative bacteria, including *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, can result in rapid deterioration of clinical conditions and death, this possibility should be always considered and appropriate empirical antibiotic therapy started while awaiting the results pointing to the actual cause of fever. The issue of prevention of fever and infections during neutropenia through antibiotic prophylaxis with fluoroquinolones has been seriously challenged by a worldwide increase in antibiotic resistance (Mikulska et al. 2018).

35.2 Initial Management of Fever During Neutropenia

Initial management of fever during neutropenia should include all the following (Freifeld et al. 2011; Averbuch 2013; Lehrnbecher et al. 2017).

35.2.1 Diagnostic Procedures

(a). Two sets (1 set = 1 aerobic and 1 anaerobic bottle) of blood cultures

1. Including at least one set from the central venous catheter (CVC), if present
2. Using an aseptic methodology to reduce the risk of contamination
3. Providing adequate blood volume (20 ml in each bottle), since the volume of blood is essential to ensure optimal detection of bacteraemia or candidaemia

(b) Clinical exam with particular attention to subtle signs of a localized infection

4. Signs of infection of exit/entry of CVC
35.2.2 Evaluation of the Risk of Clinically Severe Infection

Such an evaluation, based on comorbidities, current clinical presentation, etc., leads to the decision on hospital admission and the need for close monitoring for signs of further clinical deterioration.

35.2.3 Evaluation of the Risk of Infection Due to Resistant Bacteria

This risk is considered high in case of:

(a) Colonization with a resistant bacterial strain
(b) Previous infection caused by resistant bacterial strain
(c) Local epidemiology with high incidence of infections caused by resistant pathogens

35.2.4 Choice of the Appropriate Empirical Antibiotic Therapy

It comprised the choice between escalation and de-escalation strategy (see Table 35.1) and the subsequent choice of antibiotic agent(s).

35.2.5 In High-Risk Patient’s Assessment of the Need for Antifungal Therapy

(a) Assessing the risk of candidaemia in patients not receiving antifungal prophylaxis and presenting with septic shock
(b) Assessing the risk of invasive aspergillosis (IA) based on the incidence of IA (taking into account risk factors, mould-active prophylaxis, etc.) and the results of galactomannan (GM) screening or targeted testing.

Empirical antifungal therapy (adding antifungal agent in patients persistently febrile despite broad-spectrum antibiotics) could be replaced by diagnostic-driven strategy based on the use of diagnostic tools, such as a chest computed tomography scan, fungal serum markers (mainly GM, possibly also β-d-glucan or PCR) and targeted treatment following diagnosis (see Chap. 37).

35.3 Main Changes in the Last Decade and Empirical Therapy Modalities

The main change in the management of febrile neutropenia is due to an increasing rate of multidrug-resistant (MDR) bacteria in certain countries or centres, in particular Gram-negative rods resistant to almost all antibiotics available (e.g. Enterobacteriaceae resistant to third-generation cephalosporins ± piperacillin-tazobactam, i.e. producers of extended-spectrum β-lactamases [ESBLs]; Enterobacteriaceae or Pseudomonas aeruginosa or Acinetobacter baumannii resistant to carbapenems).

35.3.1 De-escalation Strategy

Thus, it might be no longer possible to imagine a single empirical antibiotic regimen which would be appropriate for all the patients and to use a traditional escalation approach, which means changing empirical antibiotic regimen in case of
persistent (48–72 h) fever. Indeed, patients who are at high risk of infections due to resistant bacteria, particularly if presenting in severe clinical conditions, should immediately receive agents targeting these strains since any delay in starting effective antimicrobial therapy has been associated with an increased mortality (Tumbarello et al. 2008). Therefore, a de-escalation strategy, typically used in critically ill patients in intensive care units, has been proposed also for neutropenic haematology patients (Averbuch et al. 2013).

Traditional *escalation empirical therapy* is defined as starting with piperacillin-tazobactam or ceftazidime or cefepime and then changing/adding antibiotics if necessary. This approach is still appropriate in most of cases, especially in countries or centres when resistance rates are low among pathogens commonly causing infections in neutropenia. With this approach, carbapenems are used as second-line therapy in patients either failing the initial therapy or in case of a documented infection, and adding an aminoglycoside to a β-lactam, which has been shown in numerous studies as associated with more toxicity and no clinical advantage, is avoided (Averbuch et al. 2013; Drgona et al. 2007). The empirical use of an antibiotic active against resistant Gram-positive bacteria (such as vancomycin) is not recommended neither as initial therapy nor in persistently febrile patients, unless the patient has signs or symptoms suggesting a Gram-positive aetiology (e.g. skin or CVC involvement or pneumonia) or a documented Gram-positive infection (Freifeld et al. 2011; Beyar-Katz et al. 2017).

*De-escalation strategy* consists of starting with a very broad initial empirical regimen, chosen due to on the severity of the patient’s clinical presentation and the risk of infection due to resistant (mainly Gram-negative) bacteria based on individual factors for harbouring MDR bacteria and the local bacterial epidemiology.

---

**Table 35.1** The main characteristics of escalation and de-escalation strategy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strategy</th>
<th>Escalation</th>
<th>De-escalation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Empirical treatment active against susceptible <em>Enterobacteriaceae</em> and <em>P. aeruginosa</em></td>
<td>Starting upfront an empirical coverage of MDR bacteria, particularly Gram-negatives, which is later (72–96 h) reduced (de-escalated) if a MDR pathogen is not isolated:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Susceptible strain isolated</td>
<td>• Susceptible strain isolated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• No microbiological results</td>
<td>• No microbiological results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibiotics usually used</td>
<td>Monotherapy with anti-pseudomonal cephalosporin (cefepine, ceftazidime) or piperacillin-tazobactam</td>
<td>• Carbapenem or potentially a new β-lactam such as ceftolozane/tazobactam or ceftazidime/avibactam (although none of them studied in neutropenic patients yet), to cover ESBL-producers and some resistant <em>P. aeruginosa</em> Combinations, examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• β-lactam + aminoglycoside</td>
<td>• β-lactam + coverage of resistant Gram-positives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• β-lactam + coverage of resistant Gram-positives</td>
<td>• Colistin-based combinations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main advantages</td>
<td>Less induction or selection of resistant strains (carbapenem sparing). Less toxicity</td>
<td>Appropriate therapy before culture results are available &gt; lower mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main limitations</td>
<td>In case of infection due to a resistant Gram-negatives, prognosis is significantly worsened</td>
<td>Overuse of broad-spectrum antibiotics/combinations &gt; high antibiotic pressure, particularly in case of failure to de-escalate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who</td>
<td>All patients, unless criteria for de-escalation approach are present</td>
<td>Patients at risk for infections due to resistant bacteria, such as:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Colonization with a resistant pathogen</td>
<td>• Colonization with a resistant pathogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Previous infection with a resistant pathogen</td>
<td>• Previous infection with a resistant pathogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Centres in which resistant pathogens are frequently isolated</td>
<td>• Centres in which resistant pathogens are frequently isolated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Particularly if presenting in severe clinical conditions</td>
<td>Particularly if presenting in severe clinical conditions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*MDR* multidrug resistant
The key issues of de-escalation approach are (1) providing immediately effective treatment of a potentially life-threatening MDR pathogen and (2) reducing as much as possible the unnecessary use of precious broad-spectrum drugs, such as carbapenems, colistin, novel beta-lactams or anti-MRSA agents. Data from neutropenic cancer patients in ICU, and more recently from neutropenic haematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients, showed that de-escalation approach is safe and feasible (Mokart et al. 2014; Snyder et al. 2017; Gustinetti et al. 2018). Main characteristics of escalation and de-escalation approach are reported in Table 35.1.

### 35.3.2 Antibiotic Discontinuation

Another issue of management of febrile neutropenia is the length of antibiotic therapy, particularly in the absence of clinically or microbiologically documented infection. Traditionally, antibiotic treatment was continued until neutrophil recovery, with the aim of avoiding infection relapse. In the last decade, this issue has been challenged by IDSA and ECIL guidelines, with the latter stating that antibiotics can be safely discontinued after ≥72 h of IV therapy in patients that are and have been haemodynamically stable since the onset of fever and are without fever for ≥48 h, irrespective of the granulocyte count and the expected duration of neutropenia. The rational for this recommendation was the fact that alteration of patient’s microbiota leads to an increased risk of colonization/selection of resistant pathogens, which might subsequently cause life-threatening infections.

The safety of discontinuation of empirical antibiotic therapy after few days of treatment, provided the antibiotic treatment is restarted immediately if case of fever reappearance, has been reported and demonstrated in several studies (Orasch et al. 2015). Recently, the first randomized multicentre, open-label superiority trial was performed in 157 high-risk haematology patients with febrile neutropenia without etiological diagnosis. It showed that antimicrobial therapy can be safely discontinued after 72 h of apyrexia and clinical recovery, irrespective of the neutrophils count, and it saves exposure to antimicrobials (mean difference of 4.5 days of antibiotics in the per-protocol analyses). Of note, there were no differences in the number of total days of fever and the crude mortality, and the incidence of recurrent fever during neutropenia and secondary infections was also similar in both groups (Aguilar-Guisado et al. 2017).

### 35.4 Fever Persistent Despite Empirical Antibiotic Therapy

Fever persistent despite empirical antibiotic therapy is not an infrequent event. Patient’s general clinical conditions are the most important factor to consider.

*If no signs or symptoms of clinical deterioration (e.g. septic shock, confusion, worsening respiratory function) are present, slow response to antibiotic treatment should be considered, particularly if accompanied by improvement in inflammatory markers such as C-reactive protein, or procalcitonin (particularly for Gram-negative bloodstream infections). In alternative, nonbacterial infections (e.g. viral) or non-infectious causes, such as mucositis, should be considered. Usually, changes in antibiotic regimen are not necessary if clinical conditions are stable. Routine addition of antibiotics against resistant Gram-positives (glycopeptides) has not been shown effective (Beyar-Katz et al. 2017).*

Results of GM or other non-invasive fungal tests, performed either in screening or at the onset of fever, should be available by day 2–3 of fever and should guide antifungal treatment. In selected patients at high risk of IA, lung CT scan may be performed to exclude pulmonary fungal disease. *Empirical antifungal treatment* has been introduced when non-invasive diagnostic tests were not available and CT scan availability was extremely limited. When these diagnostic measures became available, *pre-emptive approach* has been shown able to provide earlier treatment than empirical approach (Maertens et al. 2005) (see Chap. 37). Empirical antifungals might be
provided while awaiting the results of diagnostic tests or, in case of mould-active prophylaxis, the confirmation of adequate blood levels, but every effort should be made to confirm or exclude the presence of invasive fungal disease. Two meta-analyses in which empirical treatment was compared with no treatment or pre-emptive therapy confirmed that empirical antifungal treatment was associated with a lower rate of (diagnosed) invasive fungal diseases and higher exposure to antifungals but gave no significant advantage in terms of overall mortality (Goldberg et al. 2008; Fung et al. 2015). Similar results were provided by a randomized trial comparing empirical vs. pre-emptive antifungal treatment in which 30% of patient received autologous SCT (Cordonnier et al. 2009).

If clinical conditions deteriorate, usual management steps are:

1. Aggressive diagnostic workup (repeated blood cultures, CT scan, BAL lavage in case of pneumonia, lumbar puncture in case of CNS symptoms, etc.)
2. Escalation of antibacterial treatment
3. Starting an antifungal therapy

There is no universal scheme for antibiotic escalation therapy, but it usually covers resistant Gram-negatives (including those producing extended-spectrum beta-lactamases, ESBLs, e.g. with a carbapenem or an addition of aminoglycoside) and methicillin-resistant staphylococci or ampicillin-resistant enterococci (e.g. with vancomycin or novel agents). Coverage of other resistant bacteria should be based on the local epidemiology, the epidemiology of a centre where the patient was cared for before transplant and on patient’s past history of infections and colonization. Less frequent agents, such as legionella, mycobacteria, Nocardia and nonbacterial infections (viral, fungal and parasitic) should be considered in differential diagnosis and tested for, based on clinical presentation and patient’s past exposure. Empirical antifungal treatment in this setting might be warranted while awaiting the results of all diagnostic workup.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.

[Creative Commons License Icon]
**Bacterial Infections**

Diana Averbuch

### 36.1 Introduction

Bloodstream infections (BSI) are the most frequent bacterial infections in HSCT patients; they occur in 5–10% of auto-HSCT and 20–50% of allo-HSCT patients, with higher rates before engraftment, and are associated with increased morbidity and mortality (Tomblyn et al. 2009; Girmenia et al. 2017; Weisser et al. 2017; Mikulska et al. 2018a). Microbiological documentation of skin and soft tissue infection, pneumonia, and typhlitis is frequently missing.

Patient-related risk factors for bacterial infections include older age, comorbidities, low functional capacity, and high-risk hematological disease (active malignancy, aplastic anemia).

Transplant-related risk factors are specific to the post-HSCT period. During the early pre-engraftment phase, neutropenia and disruption of anatomical barriers (mucosal damage and vascular devices) predispose to infections resulting from Gram-positive cocci (GPC) and Gram-negative bacilli (GNB)—mainly bacteremia/sepsis, pneumonia, sinusitis, proctitis, and cellulitis. In regimens with minimal myelosuppression and mucosal toxicity, as with some non-myeloablative protocols, the risk of infection in the immediate post transplant period is reduced. Conversely, CBT is associated with slower engraftment delayed immune reconstitution, and higher infection risks. During the intermediate phase, starting at engraftment (days +30 to +100), the main risk factors are CVC, GVHD-related organ damage and its treatment, and lack of immune reconstitution. Later, incompetent humoral and cellular immunity (resulting from GVHD, among other factors) predisposes to encapsulated pathogen-associated infections (*Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *Haemophilus influenzae*).

### 36.2 Epidemiology of Bacteremia

GNB has become an increasingly common cause of bacteremia. They almost equal GPC in a review of studies and ECIL-4 survey (2011) on bacteremia surveillance in European centers. A remarkable variation between centers was shown, from 85%/15% to 26%/74% GPC to GNB ratio (Mikulska et al. 2014). Attribute mortality and TRM are usually higher in patients with GNB-BSI compared with GPC-BSI (Girmenia et al. 2017; Mikulska et al. 2018a).

Emergence of antibacterial resistance complicates treatment of infections. An increase in infections caused by multidrug-resistant (MDR) bacteria (non-susceptible to ≥1 agent in ≥3 therapeutically relevant antimicrobial categories) has been observed in some centers.

---

D. Averbuch

Pediatric Infectious Diseases, Hadassah Medical Center, Hebrew University, Jerusalem, Israel

e-mail: adiana@hadassah.org.il
Extensively, drug-resistant bacteria (susceptible to ≤2 antimicrobial categories) have also been reported (Averbuch et al. 2017). Prevalence of resistance is influenced by local antibiotic use policies in prophylaxis and treatment, infection control measures, as well as local resistance patterns throughout the specific hospital and countrywide.

In this session, we address infections caused by the most frequent GPC and GNB.

### 36.3 Gram-Positive Infections

Coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus* (CoNS) is the most frequent etiology of BSI (Mikulśka et al. 2014). True CoNS BSI, defined as at least two consecutive positive blood cultures, is usually CVC-related. Methicillin resistance is frequent (>50%), prompting treatment with glycopeptides. The prognosis is usually good.

*Staphylococcus aureus* is rare, reported in a median 6% of HSCT patients, and its attribute mortality is high (12–40%). Cefazolin and oxacillin are the therapeutic mainstays against methicillin-susceptible *Staphylococci*. Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) is frequent; these bacteria are usually susceptible to glycopeptides (vancomycin and teicoplanin). Reduced vancomycin susceptibility has, however, been reported (VISA). Other active agents include daptomycin, linezolid, and tigecycline. The main disadvantages of these agents include:

(a) Linezolid: myelosuppression.
(b) Daptomycin: inactivation by surfactant, it should not be used to treat pneumonia; reduced susceptibility among VISA.
(c) Tigecycline: monotherapy for BSI is not recommended due to low blood levels. Increased mortality has been reported, in comparison with other agents for treating severe infections; a better outcome has been, however, reported with loading and increased daily dosages.

Some newer antibiotics are active against MRSA: ceftaroline, ceftobiprole, dalbavancin, oritavancin, telavancin, and tedizolid.

*Enterococci* cause a median 5–8% of BSI in HSCT patients, usually occurring later after HSCT, near the time of neutrophil recovery; *E. faecium* is more common than *E. faecalis* (Satlin and Walsh 2017). VRE is an increasing threat in some centers. Previous colonization, mucositis, and broad-spectrum antimicrobial exposure predispose to VRE BSI, which typically occurs in patients in poor clinical condition, perhaps explaining high associated mortality. Main treatment options include linezolid and daptomycin, with VRE sometimes susceptible to quinupristin–dalfopristin (*E. faecium* only), tigecycline, fosfomycin, tedizolid, oritavancin, dalbavancin, and telavancin. Reduced daptomycin susceptibility was reported among VRE; thus, increased dosage (>8 mg/kg/day) is recommended.

*Streptococcus viridans* (VS) (Freifeld et al. 2011) causes median 5–13% of BSI, usually occurring soon after HSCT (median 4 days); ARDS and septic shock accompany 7–39% of episodes. Mucositis, especially following cytarabine, exposure to fluoroquinolone or ceftazidime, antiacids, MAC, and haploidentical HSCT predispose to VS infections. VS is usually susceptible to most β-lactams used in empirical therapy for febrile neutropenia, with the exception of ceftazidime. The possibility of β-lactam-resistant VS infections, mainly observed after exposure to β-lactams or in nosocomial BSI, justifies addition of vancomycin in neutropenic patients with septic shock.

HSCT patients are at risk for *invasive pneumococcal disease* (IPD), mainly bacteremia and pneumonia, late (median 17 months, range 4 months to 10 years) after HSCT (Engelhard et al. 2002), with a mortality rate of 13–20%. Predisposing factors include allo- versus auto-HSCT, BM versus PBSCT, hypogammaglobulinemia, specific antipneumococcal antibody, and IgG2 deficiency; memory cell defects, as in cGVHD, may also affect the response to vaccines.
36.4 Gram-Negative Infections

(Gram-Negative Infections (Averbuch et al. 2013a, b, 2017; Mikulska et al. 2014, 2018a; Trecarichi et al. 2015; Girmenia et al. 2017)

GNB infecting HSCT patients include *Enterobacteriaceae* (~70%) and non-fermentative GNB (NFGNB, ~24%); others are rare. GNB infections may present with bactemia, sepsis, enterocolitis, soft tissue infections, such as ecthyma gangrenosum (typically associated with *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*), and septic shock; death may occur within hours in the absence of appropriate supportive and antibiotic treatment.

Several studies report an increase in MDR-GNB infections in HSCT patients, leading to inadequate empirical therapy and increased mortality. In the multinational prospective EBMT study, half of GNB were resistant to non-carbapenem β-lactams, the first-line treatment for febrile neutropenia; 18.5% (40% in some southwestern regions) were carbapenem-resistant (CR); and 35% were MDR (Averbuch et al. 2017). Higher rates of resistance were reported in allo- versus auto-HSCT patients and in the southeastern Europe, as compared with the northwest. The main risk factors for CRGNB are previous colonization, breakthrough on carbapenems, and hospitalization in an ICU. The main Gram-negatives and their resistance pattern are:

36.4.1 Broad-Spectrum β-Lactamase-Producing Enterobacteriaceae

The main resistance mechanism to empirical therapy in *Enterobacteriaceae* is broad-spectrum β-lactamase production. This includes (a) extended-spectrum β-lactamase (ESBL), reported in 2–44% of *Enterobacteriaceae* in HSCT patients, and (b) AmpC enzymes, typically produced by *Serratia, Providencia, Proteus, Citrobacter*, and *Enterobacter* spp. These can be induced by non-carbapenem β-lactam treatment.

ESBL- or AmpC-producing organisms may appear susceptible in vitro to third-generation cephalosporins (e.g., ceftazidime) or inhibited by β-lactam/β-lactamase inhibitors (BLBLI: sulbactam, clavulanate, tazobactam) yet still be functionally resistant to these agents (Satlin and Walsh 2017). They are frequently fluoroquinolone-resistant. Carbapenems should be the preferred option for treating severely ill patients with broad-spectrum β-lactamase-producing organisms. High-dose prolonged BLBLI infusion can be used under close clinical monitoring in certain stable patients infected with ESBL+ bacteria, susceptible in vitro to BLBLI (Perez et al. 2014; Gudiol et al. 2017).

36.4.2 Carbapenemase-Producing Enterobacteriaceae (CPE)

(Averbuch et al. 2013a, 2017; Satlin and Walsh 2017; Bassetti et al. 2018)

The main carbapenem resistance mechanism in *Enterobacteriaceae* is production of carbapenemases, including *Klebsiella pneumoniae* carbapenemase (KPC), New Delhi metallo-β-lactamase (NDM), and OXA-type enzymes. Among *Enterobacteriaceae*, carbapenem resistance is more frequent in *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. Delay in appropriate therapy can explain high mortality (~60%) in CPE infections in the allo-HSCT setting. CPE are frequently resistant to “last resource” antibiotics, e.g., fluoroquinolones (in 80%), amikacin or gentamicin (~40%), tigecycline (30%), and colistin (18%). Colistin/polymyxin B is active against a majority of GNB but not *Proteus, Serratia, and Providencia* spp. Increased mortality has been demonstrated in some retrospective studies, in comparison with other appropriate regimens. Its main side effects include nephrotoxicity and neurotoxicity. Adequate dosing is important (9 million IU loading dose; 4.5 million IU BID maintenance dose). Emergence of plasmid-associated colistin resistance challenges its utility.
Fosfomycin is in vitro active against some resistant GNB. Intravenous formulation is, however, unavailable in some countries; resistance can develop on treatment.

Two or more active agent combinations, including aminoglycosides, polymyxins, tigecycline, fosfomycin, and high-dose (2 g TID), prolonged infusion meropenem (if MIC is ≤8 mg/L), should be preferred in severely ill patients with CPE infections (Gutierrez-Gutierrez et al. 2017). Other treatment modalities include:

- For KPC-CPE infections:
  - TDM-guided meropenem treatment for more resistant bacteria (MIC >8 mg/L)
  - Double carbapenem therapy (ertapenem + meropenem/doripenem)
  - Ceftazidime/avibactam (also active against some OXA-producing GNB); resistance can, however, develop during treatment
  - Meropenem-vaborbactam
- For NDM-producing GNB: aztreonam + ceftazidime/avibactam

### 36.4.3 Pseudomonas aeruginosa (PA)
(Mikulska et al. 2014; Averbuch et al. 2017; Satlin and Walsh 2017)

PA Causes 5–15% of BSI, carrying 39–79% mortality, especially in ICU-acquired and resistant PA infections. In a multicenter Italian study, <40% of patients with MDR PA BSI survived longer than 4 months following HSCT (Girmenia et al. 2017). PA in HSCT patients is frequently resistant to fluoroquinolones, aminoglycosides, and β-lactams; 25–71% are MDR. As prognosis is poor, combination therapy, using β-lactam with aminoglycoside or fluoroquinolone, is frequently used in treating severe PA infections, at least initially until the patient is stabilized. Nephrotoxicity is, however, a concern, and no survival benefit of combination therapy has been demonstrated by meta-analysis (Vardakas et al. 2013). A high-dose extended β-lactam infusion regimen was associated with better survival. Ceftolozane-tazobactam was successfully used in severely ill patients with carbapenem-resistant PA.

### 36.4.4 Other NFGNB

Other NFGNR rarely cause infections in HSCT patients. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* is intrinsically resistant to carbapenems and frequently resistant to aminoglycosides and β-lactams. While TMP/SMX should be considered as the primary therapeutic agent, resistance has been reported, and the sulfonamide can be poorly tolerated. Experience with alternative agents, such as ticarcillin-clavulanate, ceftazidime, fluoroquinolones, and minocycline, is limited. Combination of TMP/SMX with either ticarcillin/clavulanate or ceftazidime can be considered in severely ill patients.

MDR *Acinetobacter* infections have been associated with 49–95% mortality rate in HSCT patients. These bacteria can be susceptible to ampicillin/sulbactam, colistin, and tigecycline. Combination therapy was not associated with decreased mortality.

### 36.5 Bacterial Infection Syndromes

#### 36.5.1 Central Line-Associated BSI (CLABSI)

CVC infections should be suspected when blood cultures are persistently positive, at the presence of exit site or tunnel infection and when fever and chills develop during CVC flushing. This can be proved by a differential time to positivity of >120 min in blood cultures simultaneously drawn from the CVC and a vein. Catheter removal, in addition to systemic antimicrobial therapy, is recommended for tunnel or port pocket site infection, septic thrombosis, endocarditis, hemodynamic instability, persistently positive (>72 h) blood cultures under appropriate antibiotics, and CLABSI caused by *S. aureus*, *P. aeruginosa*, fungi, or mycobacteria (Freifeld
CVC salvage can be attempted by antimicrobial lock.

### 36.5.2 Pneumonia

Bacterial pneumonia during the neutropenic phase is due to GNB (including PA) and GPC typical to this stage. Specific entities include *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* hemorrhagic pneumonia, VS-associated ARDS, and nosocomial legionellosis. In the late post-engraftment phase, IPD and *Haemophilus influenzae* should be considered. Symptoms and signs can be atypical and scarce, rapid progression can nonetheless occur. Hypoxemia can be the sole finding and should prompt chest CT; diagnostic bronchoscopy, if feasible; and immediate antibiotic therapy. Empirical therapy should reflect the history of colonization with resistant bacteria.

### 36.5.3 Diarrhea

*Clostridium difficile*-associated infection (CDI) is a typical bacterial toxin cause of diarrhea, occurring in 5–30% of HSCT patients following exposure to broad-spectrum antibiotics and chemotherapy. Clinical manifestation may paradoxically be mild. Severe complications, such as toxic megacolon and perforation, can, however, occur. Treatment choice is determined by the severity of CDI, patient’s ability to take oral treatment, and recurrence (Debast et al. 2014).

Bacterial diarrhea due to *Shigella, Salmonella, Yersinia, Campylobacter* spp., and enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* is rare and usually occurs in a community-acquired setting. Routine stool culture is, thus, recommended for patients with diarrhea only within 3 days of admission.

### 36.5.4 CNS Infections

Bacteria rarely cause brain abscess (*Streptococcus epidermidis, Staphylococcus aureus, Klebsiella pneumonia*) or meningoencephalitis (*Listeria, IPD*). Clinical manifestations include fever, headache, altered mental state, and focal neurological signs and seizures. MRI is more sensitive than CT in identifying brain lesions.

### 36.6 Improving Management of Bacterial Infection

(Averbuch et al. 2013a, b; Satlin and Walsh 2017)

Empirical therapy for febrile neutropenia should be individualized using escalation/de-escalation approach based on local epidemiology and patients’ risk factors for infection with resistant bacteria and for complicated course. Early initiation of appropriate therapy improves prognosis and can be achieved by:

(a) Monitoring local department bacterial resistance patterns.

(b) Monitoring colonization with resistant bacteria and empirical administration of active antibiotics in colonized or previously infected febrile neutropenic patients, such as carbapenems in patients colonized with ESBL-GNB. Therapy streamlining, de-escalation, and discontinuation of unnecessary antibiotics should follow culture and susceptibility results.

(c) Novel laboratory techniques (e.g., matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization–time of flight, MALDI-TOF) that reduce the time for pathogen identification and antibiotic susceptibility testing.

Antibiotic therapy should be optimized in line with pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic principles:

1. A loading dose, followed by prolonged or continuous infusion of time-dependent antibiotics, such as β-lactams, has been associated with lower mortality than short-term infusion.

2. Once-daily infusion for concentration-dependent drugs, such as aminoglycosides or daptomycin.
3. A loading dose, when appropriate (tigecycline and colistin).

36.7 Prevention of Bacterial Infection (Tomblyn et al. 2009; Tacconelli et al. 2014; Cordonnier et al. 2015; ECIL-meeting 2017)

General measures to prevent infection include patient’s personal hygiene, safe diet, bathing with chlorhexidine-impregnated washcloths, and use of single-patient rooms. Important infection control measures include standard precautions, especially hand hygiene, use of gloves and gowns when soiling is likely, and environmental cleaning. Multifaceted interventions should be practiced to prevent MDR bacteria spread, including patient’s screening for colonization in the epidemic setting, using contact precautions, isolation, and cohorting of colonized and/or infected patients and staff (this last, for CPE-colonized patients). Routine CPE-targeted decolonization with nonabsorbable oral antibiotics is not supported; it can select for resistance to the last treatment options.

Antimicrobial stewardship should aim to limit unnecessary antibiotic exposure and to optimize antimicrobial therapy, e.g., using escalation empirical approach (non-carbapenem monotherapy) for stable febrile patients without previous MDR bacteria colonization/infection.

CLABSI prevention includes sterile insertion by a specialized team, avoiding femoral sites, chlorhexidine cleaning during use, and removal of unnecessary catheters.

Fluoroquinolone prophylaxis is recommended in high-risk neutropenic patients with expected neutropenia ≥7 days (Freifeld et al. 2011). Meta-analysis of studies published prior to 2010 demonstrated significantly reduced all-cause mortality, fewer febrile episodes, and reduced GNB-BSI in patients receiving prophylaxis (Gafter-Gvili et al. 2012). Currently, prophylaxis benefit may be less, as fluoroquinolone resistance rates among GNB are high (Averbuch et al. 2017). Meta-analysis of studies published during 2006–2014 does not demonstrate reduction in mortality on fluoroquinolone prophylaxis. The possible benefits of prophylaxis should be weighed against its potential harm, including CDI risk, side effects, and association with colonization or infection with fluoroquinolone- or multidrug-resistant strains (Mikulska et al. 2018b).

Late infection prevention (>100 days post-HCT), targeting mainly encapsulated bacteria, includes:

1. Oral prophylaxis with penicillin (or other agents, according to local antibiotic resistance patterns) in patients with cGVHD or hypogammaglobulinemia
2. IVIg in patients with severe hypogammaglobulinemia (serum IgG level <400 mg/dL)
3. Vaccinations (Table 36.1; also see Chap. 29)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vaccine</th>
<th>Start after HSCT (months)</th>
<th>Interval between doses (months)</th>
<th>Doses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pneumococcal conjugate vaccine, PCV13</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine, PPV23</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>6 months after last PCV13</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemophilus influenzae B&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3–6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTP vaccines</td>
<td>6–12</td>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MenC or MCV4&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>6–12</td>
<td>≥2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men-B&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>6–12</td>
<td>1–6</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>A fourth dose (6 months after the third dose) if there is GVHD  
<sup>b</sup>If no GVHD  
<sup>c</sup>Can use combination vaccines  
<sup>d</sup>According to country recommendations
Key Points

- GNB increasingly cause infections in HSCT patients; prognosis is frequently poor.
- Resistant bacteria, such as broad-spectrum β-lactamase-producing (mainly ESBL) Enterobacteriaceae, carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae (CPE), MDR Pseudomonas aeruginosa, and VRE, are causing an increased number of infections, leading to delay in appropriate therapy and increased mortality.
- Targeted therapy against the main resistant bacteria includes:
  - Linezolid and daptomycin against VRE
  - Carbapenem preferred against severe ESBL+ infections
  - Combination therapy (colistin, aminoglycoside, and carbapenem if low-level resistance) preferred against severe CPE infections
  - β-Lactam with aminoglycoside or fluoroquinolone combination preferred for initial treatment of severe Pseudomonas aeruginosa infections
- Antimicrobial stewardship is aimed to individualize empirical approach (escalation vs. de-escalation) to patients with suspected infection, limit unnecessary antibiotic use, and optimize treatment based on pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic principles.
- Infection control is crucial to limit the spread of MDR pathogens.
- Fluoroquinolone prophylaxis is recommended for high-risk neutropenic patients; its efficacy, however, can be reduced.
- Encapsulated bacteria (Streptococcus pneumoniae and Haemophilus influenzae) cause infections during late post-engraftment period; preventive measures include oral prophylaxis, IVIg, and vaccinations.

References


37.1 Epidemiology

Invasive fungal diseases (IFD) are frequent infectious complications of HSCT. The 12 m cumulative incidence approaches 8–10% in URD or mismatched allo-HSCT, 6% in MRD allo-HSCT, and less than 2% following auto-HSCT (Kontoyiannis et al. 2010). However, higher incidences (up to 17%) have been reported in haplo-identical HSCT and CBT.

Classical risk periods for IFD include (a) the pre-engraftment period when neutropenia and mucosal damage are most profound, (b) the early post-engraftment period (days +40 to +100) when patients are at highest risk for acute GvHD and viral reactivations due to defective T-cell immunity, and (c) the late post-engraftment period (beyond day +100) complicated by chronic GvHD, delayed immune reconstitution, and occasionally secondary neutropenia. The Gruppo Italiano Trapianto Midollo Osseo (GITMO) has identified period-specific risk factors for proven and probable IFD (Girmenia et al. 2014). The presence of a proven or probable IFD is an independent and strong negative predictor of overall mortality at 1 year after allogeneic HSCT.

Before the introduction of antifungal prophylaxis, *Candida* infections were prevalent in as many as 18–20% of HSCT recipients. However, the widespread use of fluconazole prophylaxis since the late 1990s has significantly reduced the incidence of systemic *Candida* infections and has decreased the transplant-related mortality secondary to *Candida* infections and to gut GvHD. But, this successful approach has also resulted in an epidemiological shift from fluconazole-susceptible *Candida albicans* infections to predominantly fluconazole-resistant non-albicans *Candida* infections (including *Candida glabrata* and *Candida krusei*). Based on a recent EBMT study, the incidence of candidemia by day +100 has now dropped to 1.2% but remains associated with increased NRM and lower short- and long-term OS (with candidemia being an independent risk factor for NRM and OS) (Cesaro et al. 2018).

Over the past two decades, respiratory mould infections caused by *Aspergillus* species (and to a much lesser extent non-*Aspergillus* moulds such as *Mucorales*, *Fusarium* species, and some rare other pathogens) have become much more prevalent. Unlike yeasts, which are acquired through indwelling lines or via intestinal translocation, mould infections are usually acquired by inhalation of airborne spores. In HSCT recipients, the primary lines of defence, including phagocytosing alveolar macrophages and neutrophils, are often nonfunctional in the presence of IS drugs and/or corticosteroids. Hence, *Aspergillus* spores...
may germinate and produce hyphae, which then invade blood vessels, followed by vascular occlusion and infarction and dissemination to distant organs. The crude mortality rate of invasive mould disease in HSCT recipients can be as high as 60%.

37.2 Diagnosis of Fungal Disease

37.2.1 Mould Infections

Despite a high index of clinical suspicion, diagnosing invasive mould disease remains challenging. The clinical presentation in HSCT patients is often nonspecific and difficult to distinguish from non-fungal infections and even noninfectious complications. A diagnosis of mould disease is based on histopathological examination of infected tissue, imaging (in particular chest CT scan) and microbiological tests, both culture based and non-culture based.

Although histopathology remains the gold standard for making a definite diagnosis, many clinicians are reluctant to ask for invasive procedures with biopsy in these vulnerable patients with underlying coagulation problems. As a result, the majority of invasive mould diseases are categorised as probable or even possible.

Culture and direct microscopic examination of sputum, BAL and other body fluids, and skin samples, using staining techniques that allow diagnosis on the same day (e.g. optical brighteners such as calcofluor white), have been the cornerstones for making a microbiological diagnosis of invasive mould disease. Culture has the additional advantage of allowing fungal species identification and determining antifungal susceptibility. Unfortunately, culture is time-consuming and requires considerable expertise. In addition, blood cultures are notoriously negative for moulds, even in disseminated disease, and culture from any respiratory specimen has only low to moderate sensitivity and predictive value.

The (ongoing) development of serological tests has been a major advance in the field (Maertens et al. 2016a, b). Galactomannan (GM), a fungal cell wall molecule that is released during fungal growth, can be detected by a commercial enzyme immunoassay (Bio-Rad Platelia™ Aspergillus EIA). Earlier studies used an index of \( \geq 1.5 \) to define positivity. The ECIL guidelines now support the use of a single serum or plasma value of \( \geq 0.7 \) or multiple (consecutive) values of \( \geq 0.5 \) to define positivity. This lower cutoff permits detection of fungal infection before the clinico-radiological manifestations appear. However, improved sensitivity with the use of lower cutoffs comes with a loss of specificity. In addition, false-positive results as well as false-negative results are not uncommon (Table 37.1) and cross-reactivity with non-Aspergillus moulds (including but not limited to Fusarium spp., Penicillium spp., Acremonium spp., Alternaria spp., and Histoplasma capsulatum) may occur, although the assay does not detect Mucorales. GM testing can also be applied to other types of specimens, including BAL fluid. Cutoff values of 1.0 have been recommended although it is likely that higher thresholds are needed. Recently, an index cutoff of 1.0 has also been suggested for analysing cerebrospinal fluid samples from patients with (suspected) cerebral aspergillosis.

Unlike GM, \( \beta-d-glucan \) (BDG) is a component of the cell wall of many pathogenic fungi including Candida spp., Fusarium spp., and Pneumocystis (Maertens et al. 2016a, b). The main exceptions are Mucorales and some Cryptococcus species. The Fungitell® assay (Associates of Cape Cod) has been approved by the US FDA and carries the European CE label for the presumptive diagnosis of invasive fungal infection. Most studies report good sensitivity, but specificity and positive predictive value are poor due to a high rate of false-positive results (Table 37.1), regardless of the specimen. However, the negative predictive value is around 80–90%.

PCR-based methods have also been developed. Lack of standardisation has for a long time hampered the acceptance of these diagnostic assays. Fortunately, over the past decade, the
European Aspergillus PCR Initiative (EAPCRI) has made tremendous progress in standardising protocols for efficient DNA extraction and amplification (White et al. 2015). Recently a lateral-flow device (LFD) was developed for the point-of-care diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis (Hoenigl et al. 2018); clinical validation studies are currently ongoing.

The sensitivity and specificity of conventional radiology are too low to diagnose or to exclude a fungal infection. Thin-section multislice CT scan nowadays is the preferred imaging technique; more recently, computed tomography pulmonary angiography is rapidly gaining popularity as an alternative diagnostic technique (Stanzani et al. 2015). Nodules, with or without a halo sign, are suggestive of invasive mould disease; this ‘halo sign’ appears early in the course of the infection; thereafter the lesions become more nonspecific. Following neutrophil recovery, an air crescent sign may develop, usually associated with a good outcome. An inverted halo sign has been described as more suggestive of invasive mucormycosis. The added value of PET scan is currently being investigated.

### 37.2.2 Yeast Infections

Cryptococcal Ag assays have become very sensitive and should be used where cryptococcal meningitis is suspected. Microbiologic cultures, the gold standard diagnostic method for invasive Candida infections and candidemia, have low sensitivity (especially for chronic disseminated candidiasis) and take up to 2–5 days to grow (from blood samples). The T2Candida panel is a novel, fully automated qualitative diagnostic platform for diagnosis of candidemia in whole blood specimens with a mean time to species identification of less than 5 h. The negative predictive value is almost 100% in a population with 5–10% prevalence of candidemia (Mylonakis et al. 2015). Unfortunately, the assay detects only five different Candida species.

### 37.2.3 Pneumocystis jirovecii Pneumonia (PJP)

Immunofluorescence assays remain recommended as the most sensitive microscopic
method. Real-time PCR on BAL fluid can be used to rule out the diagnosis of PJP. However, a positive PCR test does not necessarily mean that the patient has PJP, since low fungal loads will be picked up in colonised patients. BDG positivity in serum can further contribute to the diagnosis, although a positive test result may also indicate other fungal infections (Alanio et al. 2016).

37.3 Prevention and Prophylaxis

37.3.1 Protective Environment Measures

Protective environment measures (such as the use of HEPA-filtered isolation rooms or the use of portable HEPA filters) are useful to prevent in-hospital acquisition of airborne fungal pathogens. However, many patients develop IFD during the outpatient follow-up period, when these isolation measures are not applicable.

37.3.2 Pharmacological Antifungal Prophylaxis

Pharmacological antifungal prophylaxis; updated ECIL recommendations are phase-specific (ECIL-5 2013).

37.3.2.1 During the (Neutropenic) Pre-engraftment Phase

Fluconazole (400 mg/day) is still recommended for centres with a low incidence of mould infections [i.e. below 5%] but only when combined with a mould-directed diagnostic approach (biomarker and/or CT scan based) or a mould-directed therapeutic approach (empirical antifungal therapy). Centres with a higher incidence of mould infections are advised to adopt an alternative approach.

Voriconazole (400 mg/day following loading) failed to show a difference in fungal-free survival, overall survival, incidence of IFD, invasive aspergillosis, empirical use of antifungals, and toxicity compared with fluconazole. When tested against itraconazole oral solution, voriconazole was superior for the composite endpoint, but the difference was driven by a lower use of systemic antifungals with voriconazole, which could be given for a longer duration than itraconazole, not by better efficacy. Itraconazole (200 mg IV q24h, followed by oral solution 200 mg q12) provided better protection against invasive mould infections than fluconazole. However, drug toxicities and tolerability limited its usefulness as prophylactic agent. Therefore, voriconazole and itraconazole were both given a B-I recommendation.

Data for the echinocandins are limited to micafungin (50 mg IV q24h). The study comparing micafungin versus fluconazole had significant shortcomings, including the overrepresentation of a low-risk population and the lack of a predefined workup for diagnosing IFD. Hence, prophylaxis with micafungin received a B-I recommendation for centres with a low incidence of mould infections and C-I for those with a high incidence.

The addition of aerosolised liposomal amphotericin B (AmB) to fluconazole is not recommended for centres with a low incidence of mould infections, although there is some evidence to do so in higher-risk centres (B-II). IV liposomal AmB for prophylaxis was given a C-II recommendation.

Although there are no specific studies of posaconazole prophylaxis during the pre-engraftment phase, the drug (oral solution 200 mg q8h or gastro-resistant tablet/IV formulation 300 mg q24h following a loading dose of 300 mg q12h on the first day) was given a B-II recommendation based on results inferred from data during the neutropenic phase in AML/MDS patients.

37.3.2.2 During the (GVHD) Post-engraftment Phase

Given the significantly increased risk of invasive mould infection during GVHD (and its associated high mortality), ECIL strongly recommends against the use of fluconazole for prophylaxis in patients with high-risk GVHD. Based on the results of a large, double-blind study, posaconazole (oral solution or gastro-resistant tablet/IV formulation) is the drug of choice for antifungal
prophylaxis (AI), although no difference was observed in patients with chronic GvHD.

### 37.3.2.3 PJP Prophylaxis

Oral TMP/SMX given 2–3 times weekly is the drug of choice for the primary prophylaxis of PJP and should be given during the entire period at risk (from engraftment to ≥6 months and as long as IS is ongoing). All other drugs, including aerosolised or IV pentamidine, atovaquone, and dapsone, are considered second-line alternatives when TMP/SMX is poorly tolerated or contraindicated (Maertens et al. 2016a).

### 37.4 Treatment of Fungal Disease

Over the last few decades, three basic strategies (apart from prophylaxis) have been developed and investigated in clinical studies to deal with IFD (Mercier and Maertens 2017). For a long time, profound and prolonged neutropenia accompanied by persistent or relapsing fever after 5–7 days of adequate antibacterial coverage has been regarded as a sufficient trigger for starting broad-spectrum antifungals, a strategy referred to as empirical antifungal therapy. This practice has never been supported by robust scientific evidence and has important drawbacks, including drug-related toxicity and increased cost due to overtreatment. In spite of this, the empirical use of antifungals became standard of care in many centres. It was also endorsed by consensus guidelines and is relied on by centres that have limited or no access to radiological and mycological diagnostic tools. If relying on this approach, ECIL guidelines recommend the use of caspofungin (50 mg/day following 70 mg on day 1) or liposomal amphotericin B at 3 mg/kg (both have an AI recommendation).

A diagnostic-driven approach (also called pre-emptive) has been advocated by some centres and guidelines following recent improvements in diagnostic techniques. The aim is to start antifungal therapy in at-risk patients only when they present with an early marker of fungal infections, such as a positive GM, BDG, or PCR screening assay, or a suggestive lesion on imaging. Unfortunately, such a strategy is restricted to centres that perform non-culture-based testing twice weekly and readily have access to chest CT scan and other imaging modalities.

Directed antifungal treatment is used for patients with documented fungal disease, either proven or probable (Table 37.2).

- Voriconazole and isavuconazole are recommended as the first-line treatment for invasive aspergillosis, including cerebral aspergillosis (Tissot et al. 2017). In a randomised clinical trial, voriconazole and isavuconazole had the same efficacy (all-cause mortality at day 42 around 20%), although isavuconazole has a better toxicity profile (including hepatotoxicity) and somewhat fewer drug-drug interactions compared to voriconazole (Maertens et al. 2016c). The upfront combination of antifungals with different mechanisms of action (e.g. an azole plus an echinocandin) is not recommended because superiority over monotherapy could not be demonstrated in a recent trial (Marr et al. 2015). Liposomal AMB at 3 mg/kg is the recommended alternative for primary therapy if these azoles cannot be used due to intolerance, drug interactions, prior exposure to broad-spectrum azoles (e.g. prophylaxis), or documented azole resistance (Resendiz Sharpe et al. 2018), an emerging problem in some European centres. For salvage therapy, the global response is around 40%, irrespective of the antifungal used. Treatment duration is typically between 6 and 12 weeks, followed by secondary prophylaxis in patients with ongoing IS therapy. During the first week of treatment, pulmonary lesions can grow on imaging; this is in line with the normal kinetics of the disease and does not correlate with a poor outcome. When elevated at baseline, reduction in serum GM correlates with treatment response.

- Treatment of mucormycosis includes control of the underlying condition, surgical debridement (often destructive), and antifungal therapy. At present, lipid-based formulations of AmB (at doses of 5–10 mg/kg) are the first-line therapy of choice (Tissot et al. 2017; Cornely et al.
Both posaconazole and isavuconazole can be used for oral outpatient therapy following initial stabilisation of the disease.

- Hyalohyphomycosis constitutes a heterogeneous group of fungi, including (but not limited to) *Fusarium*, *Scedosporium*, *Acremonium*, and *Scopulariopsis* species. Clinical manifestations range from colonisation to localised infections to acute invasive and/or disseminated disease. First-line therapy of fusariosis should include voriconazole and surgical debridement where possible; posaconazole can be used as salvage treatment. Voriconazole is also the recommended first-line treatment of *Scedosporium* infections (except for *Lomentospora prolificans*, previously named *S. prolificans*, for which there is no standard treatment available). The optimal antifungal treatment has not been established for *Acremonium* spp., *Scopulariopsis* spp., and other hyalohyphomycosis (Tortorano et al. 2014).

- Echinocandins are the drugs of choice for the first-line therapy of invasive candidiasis/candidemia, followed by a step-down approach in clinically stable patients upon receipt of the species identification and antifungal susceptibility testing results (Andes et al. 2012). Catheter removal is strongly recommended in patients with candidemia or with *C. parapsilosis* bloodstream infection. Treatment duration typically is 14 days after the last positive blood culture. Of note, echinocandin resistance is on the rise (particularly for *C. glabrata*), and recent outbreaks of multiresistant *C. auris* infections have been reported (Lamoth and Kontoyiannis 2018).

- High-dose trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole is the treatment of choice for patients with documented PJP; the combination of primaquine plus clindamycin is the preferred alternative. Treatment duration typically is 3 weeks, and secondary anti-PJP prophylaxis

---

### Table 37.2 ECIL-6 guidelines for the first-line antifungal treatment of IA and mucormycosis in HSCT patients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Invasive aspergillosis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voriconazole</td>
<td>AI</td>
<td>Daily adult dose 2 × 6 mg/kg on day 1 followed by 2 × 4 mg/kg (initiation oral therapy: CIII) Need for therapeutic drug monitoring Check for drug-drug interactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isavuconazole</td>
<td>AI</td>
<td>Adult dose 200 mg t.i.d. for 2 days, thereafter 200 mg daily As effective as voriconazole but better tolerated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liposomal amphotericin B</td>
<td>BI</td>
<td>Daily adult dose, 3 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphotericin B lipid complex</td>
<td>BII</td>
<td>Daily adult dose, 5 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphotericin B colloidal dispersion</td>
<td>CI</td>
<td>Not more effective than AmB deoxycholate but less nephrotoxic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caspofungin</td>
<td>CII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Itraconazole</td>
<td>CIII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination anidulafungin + voriconazole</td>
<td>CI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other combinations</td>
<td>CIII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommendation against the use of amphotericin B deoxycholate</td>
<td>AI</td>
<td>Less effective and more toxic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Invasive mucormycosis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amphotericin B deoxycholate</td>
<td>CII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liposomal amphotericin B</td>
<td>BII</td>
<td>Daily adult dose, 5 mg/kg. Liposomal Amb should be preferred in CNS infection and/or renal failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphotericin B lipid complex</td>
<td>BII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphotericin B colloidal dispersion</td>
<td>CII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posaconazole</td>
<td>CIII</td>
<td>No data to support its use as first-line treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination therapy</td>
<td>CIII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Management of mucormycosis includes antifungal therapy, surgery, and control of the underlying condition*
is indicated thereafter. The administration of glucocorticoids must be decided on a case-by-case basis (Maschmeyer et al. 2016).

- Of note, uncertainty about exposure and drug interactions is common when using azole antifungals. Therapeutic drug monitoring for voriconazole (plasma target 1–6 mg/L for prophylaxis and treatment) and posaconazole (plasma target >0.7 mg/L for prophylaxis; >1 mg/L for treatment) is therefore recommended (ECIL-6 guidelines).

Key Points
- *Aspergillus, Candida, and Pneumocystis jirovecii* are the cause of almost 90% of the invasive fungal diseases following HSCT. Most infections are diagnosed post-engraftment during episodes of acute and/or chronic GvHD.
- Chest and sinus CT scan and non-invasive mycological tools (serology, PCR) are crucial for making an early diagnosis.
- Antifungal prophylaxis, targeting yeast and/or mould infections depending on the post transplant risk period, is highly recommended. TMP/SMX remains the drug of choice for preventing PJP.
- Echinocandins are the preferred first-line therapy for invasive *Candida* infections and candidemia. Voriconazole or isavuconazole is the recommended first-line options for invasive aspergillosis, whereas lipid-based formulations of AmB are the recommended first-line option for mucormycosis.

References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
38.1 Herpes Viruses

38.1.1 Cytomegalovirus (CMV)

38.1.1.1 Clinical Symptoms

CMV can cause symptoms from almost any organ as well as unspecific symptoms such as fever, malaise, and bone marrow suppression in stem cell transplant patients. However, the most important clinical entities in allo-HSCT patients are pneumonia, gastroenteritis, and retinitis.

The likelihood for symptomatic infection is much higher after allo-HSCT compared to auto-HSCT. Being CMV seropositive (CMV (+)) is also associated with decreased OS after allo-HSCT as is the use of a CMV (+) donor to a CMV-seronegative (CMV (−)) patient.

In patients undergoing MAC allo-HSCT, the use of a CMV (−) donor to a CMV (+) patient has been associated with an increased risk for NRM and decreased OS. In addition, proof of CMV replication is associated with increased NRM, while the effect on the risk for leukemia relapse is controversial.

38.1.1.2 Diagnostics

CMV antibody status should be determined pre-transplant in all patients undergoing HSCT and in allogeneic stem cell donors. Allo-HSCT patients should be monitored weekly for CMV replication with a sensitive diagnostic technique at least the first 3 months after HSCT. Patients with GVHD and those with documented CMV replication should be monitored longer. There is no need to routinely monitor patients after autologous HSCT.

The most commonly used technique is qPCR, but also the so-called pp65 antigenemia assay and other tests detecting CMV nucleic acids can be used. Recently tests detecting CMV-specific T-cells have become available, but further evaluation of these tests’ usefulness in routine care is necessary.

To diagnose CMV disease, it is important to combine symptoms and signs with documentation of the presence of CMV in affected tissue. An exception is CMV retinitis where ophthalmologic findings are characteristic although to detect CMV in vitreous fluid can be helpful. Established techniques for detection of CMV in tissue are

P. Ljungman (✉)
Department of Cellular Therapy and Allogeneic Stem Cell Transplantation, Karolinska University Hospital, Stockholm, Sweden
Division of Hematology, Department of Medicine Huddinge, Karolinska Institutet, Stockholm, Sweden
e-mail: per.ljungman@ki.se

J. Styczynski
Department of Pediatric Hematology and Oncology, Collegium Medicum, Nicolaus Copernicus University, Bydgoszcz, Poland

H. Einsele
Department of Internal Medicine II, Julius Maximilian University of Würzburg, Würzburg, Germany
histopathology, immunohistochemistry, and DNA hybridization. High levels of CMV DNA in BAL are associated with CMV pneumonia, while its absence almost excludes CMV pneumonia. PCR in CSF supports the diagnosis of CMV encephalitis. For other end-organ diseases, qPCR needs additional study.

38.1.1.3 Prophylaxis
Letermovir has been shown in a placebo-controlled randomized trial to decrease the risk for clinically significant CMV infection (need for preemptive antiviral therapy and/or CMV disease) and also decrease all-cause mortality in CMV (+) patients.

Ganciclovir can reduce the risk for CMV disease but is associated with significant toxicity.

High-dose acyclovir/valaciclovir can reduce the risk for CMV replication.

The data regarding prophylactic Ig is conflicting and its use is currently not recommended.

38.1.1.4 Treatment
Ganciclovir, valganciclovir, and foscarnet have all been shown to be effective to prevent development of CMV disease in allo-HSCT recipients when used for so-called preemptive therapy based on detection of CMV in blood. Their efficacy is similar, so the choice should be based on the risk for side effects and practical aspects.

It is not possible to give a recommendation on what CMV DNA level preemptive therapy should be initiated since this depends on patient factors, the material used for monitoring (plasma/whole blood), and the performance of the assay used.

Therapy is usually given for at least 2 weeks, but longer therapy courses might be needed. Second episodes of CMV replication are common, and second-line therapy can be given with either the same or other antiviral drugs mentioned above.

Ganciclovir (valganciclovir) and foscarnet are the most used drugs for CMV disease. The addition of high-dose Ig for treatment of CMV pneumonia has been commonly used, but the data supporting this combination is limited. There is no data supporting the addition of Ig to antiviral treatment for other types of CMV disease.

Cidofovir can be considered as failure therapy. The duration of therapy has to be decided on a case-by-case basis, but normally longer therapy is needed compared to preemptive therapy (6–8 weeks).

Cidofovir is also a possibility for second- or third-line antiviral therapy. New antiviral drugs are in development but have not been proven efficacious on this indication. Leflunomide and artemether have been tested, but data supporting their use is very limited.

38.1.1.5 Cellular Immunotherapy
Several groups have tried to prevent or treat CMV infection and disease following allo-HSCT by the transfer of CMV-specific T-cells. The T-cell lines and clones specific for CMV were mostly derived from the HSC donor but in some studies also from a third-party donor or even patient-derived CMV-specific T-cells obtained from the patient prior to conditioning therapy.

New strategies were applied to select CMV-specific T-cell without long-term in vitro culture. Thus, techniques like the cytokine capture assay combined with the Miltenyi CliniMACS system or tetramers, pentamers, or streptamers were applied to generate CMV-specific T-cells for prophylactic or therapeutic transfer. The transfer of these cells was shown to reconstitute virus-specific T-cell immunity. When given therapeutically to patients with chemotherapy-refractory CMV infection, a drop in the viral load after an increase in the number of CMV-specific T-cells could be documented. In patients with chemotherapy-refractory CMV infection post-HSCT, adoptive T-cell therapy is a valid therapeutic option.

The efficacy in patients receiving high-dose (≥2 mg/kg) corticosteroids is likely to be low.

38.1.2 HHV-6

38.1.2.1 Clinical Symptoms
HHV-6A primary infection has so far not been associated with specific symptoms.

HHV-6B primary infection is the main cause of exanthema subitum in young children. It has
also been associated with febrile seizures. Almost all children are infected by the age of 2 years.

HHV-6B is the main cause of viral encephalitis after allo-HSCT, but HHV-6A has also been documented. Patients undergoing CBT are at an increased risk. Other symptoms suggested to be associated with HHV-6 are bone marrow suppression, pneumonia, and acute GVHD.

38.1.2.2 Diagnostics
Serology is not helpful. HHV-6 DNA can be analyzed in blood by qPCR. The usefulness of monitoring is not established. HHV-6 can be integrated in germline, and these individuals are strongly positive in qPCR, and this is not a proof of viral replication.

MRI is recommended for diagnosis of HHV-6 encephalitis. The typical finding is of limbic encephalitis, but other patterns are also seen. HHV-6 DNA is usually positive in the CSF in patients with encephalitis.

38.1.2.3 Prophylaxis
Foscarnet has been used but its usefulness is not established.

38.1.2.4 Treatment
Either ganciclovir or foscarnet can be used for treatment of HHV-6 encephalitis. There is no established treatment for HHV-6 infection or patients with other suspected HHV-6-associated complications. Cellular immunotherapy was only performed in a few patients.

38.1.3 HHV-7

38.1.3.1 Clinical Symptoms
HHV-7 primary infection in young children occasionally causes exanthema subitum (roseola) and rarely status epilepticus with fever. Nearly all children are infected with HHV-7 by the age of 5 years.

HHV-7 detection after HSCT is relatively infrequent, with rare cases in which HHV-7 has been associated with CNS disease (encephalitis, myelitis).

The risk of infection in HSCT patients: allo > auto, TBI-based > chemo-based, children > adults.

Reactivation of HHV-7 occurs in about 10% of patients after allo-HSCT.

38.1.3.2 Diagnostics
HHV-7 DNA by qPCR. HHV-7 might be a cofactor of CMV reactivation.

38.1.3.3 Prophylaxis
Not used.

38.1.3.4 Treatment
Infection by HHV-7 does not require specific treatment.

38.1.4 HHV-8

38.1.4.1 Clinical Symptoms
HHV-8 (KSHV, Kaposi’s sarcoma-associated herpesvirus) is the cause of Kaposi’s sarcoma (KS), primary effusion lymphoma, or multicentric Castleman’s disease.

The prevalence of KSHV infection is high in Africa and parts of the Amazon basin. KS is very rare after HSCT (only 14 cases are described).

Fever and marrow aplasia with plasmacytosis after HSCT can occur. Skin involvement is the dominant clinical presentation in adults, while pediatric cases have visceral involvement.

38.1.4.2 Diagnostics
Detection of HHV-8 DNA by qPCR. KS can be clinically defined on the basis of characteristic skin lesions or histopathologically defined in a malignant tumor.

38.1.4.3 Prophylaxis
Not recommended.

38.1.4.4 Treatment
In disease limited to the skin only, surgical excision or electrochemotherapy is the most preferable approach.

For visceral or disseminated disease, possible options include the use of interferon alpha or
chemotherapy. The use of antiviral treatment is considered without benefit. Imatinib showed promising results in HIV-related KS patients.

38.1.5 EBV

38.1.5.1 Clinical Symptoms
Syndromes caused by primary EBV infection include infectious mononucleosis, chronic active EBV infection, and X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome.

In HCT patients EBV can cause life-threatening complication: post transplant lymphoproliferative disorder (PTLD) or end-organ diseases such as encephalitis/myelitis, pneumonia, or hepatitis. Details on EBV-PTLD are presented in Chap. 45.

Donor EBV seropositivity contributes also to the risk of cGVHD in patients with acute leukemia.

38.1.5.2 Diagnostics
All allo-HCT patients and donors should be tested for EBV Ab before HCT.

38.1.5.3 Prophylaxis
Since EBV sero-mismatch is a risk factor for PTLD, the selection of an EBV-matched donor, if possible, might be beneficial.

As EBV-PTLD after HCT is usually of donor origin and EBV might be transmitted with the graft, the risk of EBV-PTLD is higher when the donor is seropositive.

38.1.5.4 Treatment
Most EBV reactivations are subclinical and require no therapy. Details on treatment of EBV-PTLD are presented in Chap. 45.

38.1.6 Herpes Simplex Virus (HSV)

38.1.6.1 Clinical Symptoms
HSV reactivation can be caused by either type 1 or 2 and is usually associated with localized mucocutaneous disease in the orofacial region (85–90%) and less frequently in the esophageal and genital area. Uncommon manifestations are pneumonia, hepatitis, meningitis (HSV-2), and encephalitis (HSV-1).

38.1.6.2 Diagnostics
All patients should be tested for HSV antibodies before HSCT. The diagnosis of mucocutaneous HSV disease is suspected on clinical grounds, and the diagnosis is usually verified by PCR. PCR in CSF is the technique of choice for the diagnosis of HSV meningitis and encephalitis.

38.1.6.3 Prophylaxis
Primary HSV infection in HSCT patients is unusual, and antiviral drug prophylaxis is thus not recommended in HSV-seronegative patients after HSCT (but might be needed against VZV; see below).

HSV-seropositive patients undergoing allo-HSCT should receive antiviral drug prophylaxis. IV acyclovir 250 mg/m² or 5 mg/kg q12h, oral acyclovir 3 × 200 to 2 × 800 mg/day, oral valaciclovir 2 × 500 mg/day, or famciclovir 2 × 500 mg/day can be used.

The duration depends on if also prophylaxis against VZV (see below) is indicated but should be given for at least 4 weeks after HSCT in VZV-seronegative patients.

38.1.6.4 Treatment
IV acyclovir 250 mg/m² or 5 mg/kg q8h for 7–10 days is the therapy of choice for severe mucocutaneous or visceral HSV disease.

Oral acyclovir, from 5 × 200 to 5 × 400 mg/day, valaciclovir 2 × 500 mg/day, or famciclovir 2 × 500 mg/day for 10 days are considered as alternatives for less serious manifestations of HSV disease.

For HSV pneumonia or HSV meningitis and encephalitis, IV acyclovir 500 mg/m² or 10 mg/kg q8h for at least 14–21 days is recommended.

HSV resistance occurs in approximately 5–15% of patients and is mediated through mutation in the HSV thymidine kinase. Foscarnet or cidofovir are second-line therapy.
38.1.7 Varicella-Zoster Virus (VZV)

38.1.7.1 Clinical Symptoms
Primary infection (varicella) occurs rarely after HSCT, but it might have severe clinical course.

 Reactivation as herpes zoster is frequently complicated by prolonged neuralgia and is common unless long-term antiviral prophylaxis is given.

 Clinically, severe symptoms include disseminated infection similar to varicella, visceral disease presenting as severe abdominal pain or acute hepatitis, and rarely encephalitis, retinal necrosis, or pneumonitis.

38.1.7.2 Diagnostics
Patients should be tested for VZV antibodies before HSCT. The rash in clinical varicella or zoster is usually characteristic. However, in some cases disseminated HSV can have a similar appearance. PCR on vesicular material for VZV and HSV can differentiate.

 Visceral VZV disease can occur without rash and then PCR on blood is diagnostic.

38.1.7.3 Prophylaxis
VZV-seropositive patients should be given antiviral prophylaxis for at least 12 months or up to the end of IS therapy.

 Prophylaxis can be given with acyclovir (2 × 800 mg; in children 2 × 20 mg/kg) or valacyclovir (2 × 500 mg).

 In seronegative patients exposed to VZV, post-exposure prophylaxis with acyclovir or valacyclovir is recommended.

 Prophylaxis should be started as soon as possible and continued until 21 days after exposition.

38.1.7.4 Treatment
First-line therapy for varicella, disseminated zoster, and visceral disease is acyclovir 3 × 500 mg/m²/d IV.

 For localized or limited infections, oral valacyclovir (3 × 1000 mg), acyclovir (5 × 800 mg; in children 4 × 20 mg/kg), or famciclovir (3 × 500 mg) can be given until the lesion crusts over (usually 7–10 days).

 In case of resistance to acyclovir, second-line therapies are foscarnet (60 mg/kg q12h) or cidofovir (5 mg/kg weekly, together with probenecid and hydration).

 VZIg is not recommended. Only case reports exist on cellular therapy for VZV infection.

38.2 Adenovirus (ADV)

38.2.1 Clinical Symptoms
ADV is transmitted mainly from person to person; however it can persist in epithelial cells and lymphoid tissue and reactivate during IS. Children are more frequently affected than adults.

 The spectrum of ADV-associated disease in HSCT patients ranges from mild gastroenteric or respiratory symptoms to severe hemorrhagic enteritis, hemorrhagic cystitis, nephritis, hepatitis, pneumonia, encephalitis, myocarditis, and multiple organ involvement.

 Risk factors for ADV infection/disease include haploidentical or URD graft, CBT, TCD, GVHD III–IV, severe lymphopenia, and treatment with alemtuzumab.

38.2.2 Diagnostics
ADV-DNA by qPCR. Monitoring with qPCR of ADV viremia in PB is recommended on at least weekly basis for patients with at least one risk factor. qPCR is also recommended in case of clinical suspicion of ADV infection/disease.

38.2.3 Prophylaxis
Non-pharmacological prophylaxis is mandatory: strict isolation and hygienic measures in patients shedding the virus are absolutely necessary to prevent horizontal transmission and nosocomial outbreaks.

 Prophylactic antiviral therapy with available antiviral drugs is not recommended.
38.2.4 Treatment

Patients especially children, with increasing viral load and at least one risk factor, should receive preemptive antiviral treatment with cidofovir 3–5 mg/kg/week for 2–3 weeks and, thereafter, every other week.

Patients with probable or proven ADV disease should be treated with IV cidofovir (5 mg/kg weekly for at least three doses; thereafter, every other week), together with hyperhydration and oral probenecid.

Ribavirin is not recommended for ADV. Donor-derived ADV-specific CTLs are an option for clinically non-responding patients. Oral brincidofovir 2 mg/kg twice weekly might be obtained for compassionate use.

38.3 Respiratory Viruses

38.3.1 Influenza

38.3.1.1 Clinical Symptoms

Influenza is a yearly occurring respiratory viral infection with outbreaks of different sizes depending on the circulating strain.

Influenza can be a very severe infection in HSCT recipients. The risk for lower tract disease (LTD) has been reported to be as high as 33%, and mortality has varied in different reports between 0 and 15%.

The risk for LTD is higher when occurring just prior to or during conditioning, very early after HSCT, with viruses resistant to neuraminidase inhibitors and with new viral strains such as the recent H1N1 (“swine flu”).

Symptoms are similar as in the immune-competent individual. Respiratory symptoms vary from very mild to life-threatening symptoms. GI symptoms and CNS symptoms can also occur. Secondary bacterial infections are not uncommon.

38.3.1.2 Diagnostics

Several commercial tests detecting either nucleic acid or influenza antigens are available. Since the symptoms frequently are uncharacteristic, multi-
plex tests detecting different respiratory viruses are frequently used.

38.3.1.3 Prophylaxis

The most important prophylactic measure is vaccination, which is recommended yearly to all HSCT recipients. The efficacy of the vaccine varies from season to season depending on the fitness of the strains used in preparing the vaccine to the circulating strains.

The immune response to vaccination is better when given at least 6 months after HSCT although vaccination can be considered from 3 months after HSCT in outbreak situations. A second dose of vaccine can be considered.

Antiviral prophylaxis is not generally recommended but can be considered in patients exposed to an infected individual.

38.3.1.4 Treatment

Standard therapy is with neuraminidase inhibitors mainly oseltamivir or zanamivir although no study has shown efficacy specifically in HSCT recipients.

It should be recognized that the normally recommended duration of 5 days often is too short since viral excretion might continue for a long time. Resistance to oseltamivir is not rare although variable with the strain circulating in that particular season.

38.3.2 Other Community-Acquired Respiratory Viruses (CARVs)

38.3.2.1 Clinical Symptoms

Infections with CARVs including respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), parainfluenza viruses (PIV), metapneumovirus, rhinoviruses, and coronaviruses are very common in HSCT recipients.

Most infections are mild causing only upper respiratory symptoms but LTD occurs. Importantly CARV infections occurring before start of conditioning have been associated with severe symptoms and increased NRM, and therefore deferring the start of conditioning shall be considered at least in symptomatic patients.
38.3.2.2 Diagnostics
Multiplex PCR testing of different CARVs is today the most used technique.

38.3.2.3 Prophylaxis
The only available measure is to avoid nosocomial spread of these infections.

38.3.2.4 Treatment
No therapy of a CARV has been proven efficacious in controlled trials.

Ribavirin either given as inhalation or systemically has been suggested to reduce the risk for progression of upper respiratory tract RSV infection to LTD and possibly to reduce mortality in RSV pneumonia. No licensed therapy is available for any other CARV.

38.4 Polyomaviruses

38.4.1 Polyoma JCV

38.4.1.1 Clinical Symptoms
Reactivation of the ubiquitous, neurotropic John Cunningham polyomavirus (JCV) may cause PML, a rare, opportunistic, and severe disease of the CNS.

PML awareness increased following the introduction of new immunomodulatory or IS treatments with natalizumab, rituximab, efalizumab, infliximab, brentuximab, fingolimod, dimethyl fumarate, azathioprine, tacrolimus, and MMF.

38.4.1.2 Diagnostics
JCV-DNA by PCR, especially in CSF (also multiplex PCR).

The new option is high-resolution melting analysis (PCR-HRM) for diagnosis of JCV in patients with PML.

Profound suppression in cellular immunity T-lymphopenia may constitute a primary PML risk factor.

38.4.1.3 Prophylaxis
Not used.

38.4.1.4 Treatment
No specific treatment is currently available.

The application of G-CSF may facilitate immune reconstitution and JCV clearance in the CSF. BKV-specific CTLs might demonstrate anti-JCV activity due to virus homology.

38.4.2 BKV

*BKV (See Chap. 51: Hemorrhagic Cystitis and Renal Dysfunction)*

38.5 Hepatotropic Viruses

38.5.1 Hepatitis A Virus (HAV)

38.5.1.1 Clinical Symptoms
Enteric transmission via person-to-person contact is the predominant way of spreading.

Infection with HAV in HSCT recipients can increase the risk of SOS/VOD, and HAV has been associated with aplastic anemia.

Due to the scarcity of chronic HAV infection, blood products and HSCT donors are not routinely tested for HAV.

38.5.1.2 Diagnostics
PCR is the preferred method in HSCT setting.

Liver function tests (LFT) should be performed in donors before HSC harvesting. Donors with abnormal LFT should be tested for anti-HAV-IgM. If HAV is detected, donation should be delayed until HAV-RNA is no longer detectable in the donor.

38.5.1.3 Prophylaxis
HSCT is not recommended if the donor or the recipient is viremic for HAV because of an increased risk of SOS/VOD.

Vaccination should be considered in HAV-IgG-negative patients at risk.

38.5.1.4 Treatment
Symptomatic.
38.5.2 Hepatitis B Virus (HBV)

38.5.2.1 Clinical Symptoms

After primary infection, even in case of HBsAg seroconversion, HBV probably persists lifelong in the nucleus of hepatocytes.

HBV can reactivate after treatment-induced loss of immune control.

Hepatitis, including cases of fulminant hepatic failure, typically occurs after immune system reconstitution, de novo recognition, and destruction of HBV-infected hepatocytes.

Fibrosing cholestatic hepatitis can be a consequence of HBV reactivation. The case-fatality rate of HBV reactivation is high in patients with hematological malignancy.

38.5.2.2 Diagnostics

All donors and recipients must be screened for anti-HBsAg, anti-HBc, and anti-HBs and HBV-DNA if anti-HBc is detected.

38.5.2.3 Prophylaxis

Antiviral prophylaxis should be given to anti-HBc-positive patients and those receiving grafts from HBV-infected donors. Tenofovir or entecavir are the drugs of choice.

Vaccination of anti-HBc-negative and anti-HBs-negative patients before and after HSCT is recommended. Double vaccine doses may be required to achieve an anti-HBs response in immunocompromised patients (0–1–2–6 months).

Vaccination of anti-HBc-negative and anti-HBs-negative stem cell donors before HSCT harvesting should be considered; an accelerated single-dose 3-week (0–10–21 days) schedule may be an alternative to the conventional 6-month protocols.

38.5.2.4 Treatment

Indication for treatment includes all HBsAg-positive patients. Vaccination and the addition of hepatitis B immune globulin can be considered in this setting.

Antiviral treatment should be started with the beginning of IST. Tenofovir or entecavir are the drugs of choice. The treatment should be continued 1 year after withdrawal of IST, longer in recipients with cGVHD and patients exposed to depleting Ab.

38.5.3 Hepatitis C Virus (HCV)

38.5.3.1 Clinical Symptoms

Assessment of liver fibrosis in HCV-RNA-positive recipients is recommended, as close monitoring is essential in patients with known underlying fibrosis. Liver fibrosis is a risk factor for SOS/VOD and drug toxicity.

The risk of acute flare-ups is higher in patients on rituximab-containing treatment regimens.

Cirrhosis and a worse outcome have been clearly documented after HSCT.

38.5.3.2 Diagnostics

Close monitoring of LFT and HCV-RNA is recommended in infected patients.

38.5.3.3 Prophylaxis

A HCV-RNA-positive donor could be considered, if other donor options are considered inferior. In this case, the donor should be rapidly evaluated by a hepatologist, and treatment with directly acting antivirals should be considered.

The presence of HCV-RNA positive in the recipient does not constitute a contraindication for HSCT, but antiviral therapy should be considered if it is possible to postpone the HSCT to allow completion of a treatment course.

38.5.3.4 Treatment

Antiviral treatment should be considered for all HCV-RNA-positive hematological patients, once the hematological disease has been brought under control. This should be done in consultation with an expert hepatologist.

38.5.4 Hepatitis E Virus (HEV)

38.5.4.1 Clinical Symptoms

HEV exists in at least four different subtypes that can spread either through water, undercooked
food, or blood transfusions. The main source of spread varies between different parts of the world with infected water being the most common route in resource-poor areas. In other areas the most common route of spread is via undercooked food produced from infected animals.

HEV infection in HSCT recipients is usually mildly symptomatic although acute hepatitis with jaundice has been reported and also fatal infections in pregnant women.

The probably more important clinical picture in HSCT recipients is chronic hepatitis since rapid progression to cirrhosis has been reported in IS patients.

38.5.4.2 Diagnostics
Serology to detect previously infected patients or PCR to detect acute or chronic infections.

38.5.4.3 Prophylaxis
None available.

38.5.4.4 Treatment
Ribavirin has been suggested as a treatment for chronic infection based on case reports and small case series. However, no controlled data exists.

38.6 Norovirus

38.6.1 Clinical Symptoms
Noroviruses are the most common cause of foodborne disease and acute nonbacterial gastroenteritis worldwide.

Its prevalence was 2% in adults and up to 22% among pediatric transplant recipients with diarrhea, requiring hospitalization in 55% and ICU admission in 27%. Recurrence rate 29%.

Risk factors: second HSCT, intestinal GVHD, children.

Norovirus can cause severe, prolonged disease complicated by enteritis, fever, recurrent hospitalizations for dehydration, chronic diarrhea, acute renal failure, weight loss, malnutrition, pneumatisis intestinalis, peritonitis, secondary bacteremia, and death.

38.6.2 Diagnostics
Viral RNA by RT-PCT in the stool.

38.6.3 Prophylaxis
Non-pharmacological prophylaxis is mandatory: strict isolation and hygiene measures in patients shedding the virus are absolutely necessary to prevent horizontal transmission and nosocomial outbreaks.

38.6.4 Treatment
Symptomatic. Some reports indicate oral human immunoglobulin therapy. Specific therapies are not available.

38.7 Zika Virus (ZIKV)

38.7.1 Clinical Symptoms
ZIKV infection is transmitted mainly by Aedes aegypti mosquitoes, sexual contact, or blood transfusion. It is typically a mild, asymptomatic disease in the general population.

The disease is a self-limiting febrile illness lasting 4–7 days. Infection can be followed by neurological consequences including Guillain-Barre syndromes and microcephaly or other congenital neurological syndromes after vertical transmission from an infected mother to her fetus during pregnancy.

38.7.2 Diagnostics
Direct detection of ZIKV-RNA or specific viral antigens.

38.7.3 Prophylaxis
Blood, tissues, and cells should not be imported from areas of ZIKV transmission or should be tested negative for the presence of ZIKV.
Donor diagnosed with ZIKV infection or who has just returned from an affected area should be deferred for at least 28 days after cessation of symptoms. The deferral should be at least 3 months after sexual contact with person at risk.

### 38.7.4 Treatment

No specific prophylaxis or therapy is available.

---

**Key Points**

- **Epidemiology:** Latent (especially CMV), endemic (especially CARV), and hepatotropic viruses are the main problem in patients after HSCT
- **Diagnosis:** Viral diagnostics after HSCT require qPCR or multiplex PCR
- **Prophylaxis and treatment:** Prophylaxis (pharmacological or environmental) or preemptive treatment is necessary. All patients after HSCT should undergo vaccinations according to current recommendations
- **Outcome:** Viral infections contribute to non-relapse mortality after HSCT

**Recommended References**


---

**Open Access** This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
39.1 Toxoplasmosis

39.1.1 General Concepts

Toxoplasma gondii is a protozoan that commonly infects animals and birds. Primary T. gondii infection in humans and other mammals is usually asymptomatic but leads to lifelong latent infection. Transmission to humans occurs by ingesting tissue cysts from undercooked meat or oocysts (released in the feces of cats). Latent cysts can give rise during immunosuppression to a severe localized reactivation producing, for example, toxoplasma encephalitis or chorioretinitis, with dissemination being common. (Martino et al. 2000; Martino et al. 2005; Tomblyn et al. 2009; Martino 2016).

Although toxoplasmosis is the most common systemic parasitic infection in EBMT centers, it is a relatively rare opportunistic infection following HSCT. Currently we are aware that the patients’ seroprevalence explains the wide range of incidences published. Table 39.1 summarizes selected case series of toxoplasmosis in HSCT published to date.

39.1.2 Risk Factors and Incidence in HSCT

The seroprevalence for T. gondii varies greatly between and even within countries, ranging from <15% in Japan and in pediatric wards, 30% in urban adults in North America and the UK, and to 40–80% of adult HSCT recipients in countries with high endemicity such as France or Turkey. This varying seroprevalence is the main reason for the great variability in the incidence of toxoplasmosis after HSCT, which has been estimated to average 0.8%, with <0.4% in areas of low endemicity to 2–3% in those with high-antibody prevalence.

Toxoplasmosis occurs mainly in allo-HSCT recipients, although cases after auto-HSCT have been published. Reactivation of latent tissue cysts in previously infected individuals is the usual mechanism implicated. Thus, it is important to determine the patients’ serostatus prior to transplant. However, the disease may also develop if primary (or re-)infection after transplant may occur.

Ninety-five percent of the cases occur within the first 6 months after the procedure, and acute GVHD and its treatment are the main risk factors. Late cases may occur, again usually in patients with chronic GVHD requiring IST. In addition, seropositive patients without GVHD but with severe cellular IS due to in vivo or ex vivo TCD are also at risk.

---

R. Martino (✉)
Hospital de la Santa Creu I Sant Pau, Autonomous University of Barcelona, ES, Barcelona, Spain
e-mail: rmartino@santpau.cat
39.1.3 Most Common Clinical Presentations

The CNS is the main site of disease, but pneumonitis and myocarditis are also frequent findings.

Toxoplasma encephalitis typically presents with focal neurologic abnormalities of subacute onset, frequently accompanied by non-focal signs and symptoms such as headache, altered mental status, and fever. Meningeal signs are very rare. CT brain scans often show multiple bilateral cerebral lesions, although MRI is more sensitive than CT in the early diagnosis of this infection. Toxoplasma pneumonitis may develop in the absence of extrapulmonary disease. Toxoplasma chorioretinitis is rare compared to AIDS patients.

39.1.4 Diagnosis

In HSCT recipients, the utility of serology is mainly to identify those at risk for developing toxoplasmosis post transplant.

PCR techniques are currently the standard method for its diagnosis. These techniques are applicable in blood, CSF, and BAL, the usual samples that are available in HSCT recipients with this infection. Most centers use qPCR with a level of detection as low as 20 parasites/mL, with parasite loads of >600/mL reported in most patients with toxoplasmosis.

Since histologically proven toxoplasmosis is a very difficult-to-obtain diagnosis, various levels of diagnostic certainty have been proposed. Histologically defined cases are considered as definite cases of toxoplasma disease, PCR-defined cases as probable, and CNS imaging-defined cases as possible ones.

39.1.5 Treatment and Prognosis

Table 39.2 details the recommended treatment and prophylaxis of toxoplasmosis in HSCT recipients. Most patients respond to one or another of these regimens, and neurologic improvement of toxoplasma brain involvement usually occurs within 7 days. If appropriately treated, up to 60% of patients may show clinical–radiologic improvement or even a complete response to therapy. This highlights the importance for a high index of suspicion for toxoplasmosis in immunocompromised patients.
### 39.1.6 Specific Screening and/or Prophylactic Strategies Available

Current data suggest that infection may precede disease in most cases of toxoplasmosis. Thus, monitoring sero(+) patients with weekly qPCR of blood samples has been advocated, especially when prophylaxis is not being used, in an effort of using a preemptive-type therapeutic approach, as used for CMV infection. Although an optimal qPCR technique has not been standardized, several studies support the usefulness of this approach. Patients on TMP/SMX prophylaxis should not be monitored. TMP/SMX is useful in minimizing the risk of reactivation of toxoplasmosis, although there are well-reported cases of toxoplasmosis breaking through this prophylaxis in HSCT recipients. Suboptimal dosing may have contributed to some of these “breakthrough” infections, since these cases occur when TMP/SMX is taken less than 3 days per week. Thus, using either one standard-dose tablet (80/400 mg) daily or a double-strength tablet (160/800 mg) 4 days per week is the recommended dosing, as shown in Table 39.2.

Avoiding primary or reinfection after HSCT is always important, avoiding the most common sources of infection: uncooked meats of any type and drinking contaminated water.

### 39.2 Tuberculosis (TBC)


#### 39.2.1 General Concepts

TBC, and especially, multidrug-resistant (MDR) TBC, continues to be a worldwide major health problem. This may surprise many EBMT HSCT physicians, who may have never seen a case of TBC.

#### 39.2.1.1 Mycobacterium Tuberculosis

*Mycobacterium tuberculosis* causes nearly all cases of TBC, and these acid-fast bacilli differ from other bacteria in that they can live only in an infected human. Outside of the human body, they have a very short survival, and infection is transmitted by the inhalation of aerosolized particles from a patient. In addition, its isolation from clinical samples should never be considered as colonization or sample contamination. TBC is not an opportunistic infection, and thus its detailed description is outside the scope of this manual.

### Table 39.2 Suggested treatment and prophylaxis for toxoplasmosis in HSCT recipients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pyrimethamine (plus folinic acid)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral, 200 mg loading dose, then 50–75 mg q.d. (folinic acid, oral or IV, 10–15 mg q.d.) + one of the following</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sulfadiazine</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral or IV, 600 mg q6h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clindamycin</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral or IV, 600 mg q6h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prophylaxis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TMP/SMX</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 double-strength tablet (160/800 mg)/day, 4 day × week, OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 double-strength tablets (160/800 mg)/day, 3 day × week, OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 standard-dose tablet (80/400 mg) daily, OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pyrimethamine and sulfadoxine (fansidar)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2–3 tables per week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dapsone</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 mg daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Atovaquone</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1500 mg daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| aAlso effective for PJP prophylaxis, and possibly listeriosis, nocardiosis, and, in some geographic areas, partly effective in preventing gram-positive cocci and gram-negative bacillary (enterobacterial and non-glucose fermenting) infections
| bThe dose can be reduced in patients with mild renal insufficiency

#### 39.2.2 Risk Factors and Incidence in HSCT

The risk of developing TBC is directly proportional to the TBC present in the geographic area of the HSCT center and the patients’ residence (Fig. 39.1). A few studies have analyzed its incidence with respect to the general population, and most have found that allo-HSCT recipients have 2–10 times higher risk than the general population, while auto-HSCT recipients do not have a significantly higher risk (De la Cámara et al. 2000) (Table 39.3).
Table 39.3  Selected case series of mycobacterial infections after HSCT before 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author (year)</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>TBC/HSCT x risk with GP&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>NTM/HSCT x risk with GP</th>
<th>Outcome of infection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lee et al. (2017)</td>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>21/824 (allo) × 9.1 GP</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>1 died</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liu et al. (2016)&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>5/422 (allo)</td>
<td>21/422 (allo)</td>
<td>11 died</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beswick et al. (2018)</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>30/1097 (allo) × 35 GP</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fan et al. (2015)</td>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>32/1368 (allo) × 7 GP 7/672 (auto) × 2.5 GP</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>20 died</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garces-Ambrossi et al. (2005)</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>4/577 (allo) × 10 GP</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cordonnier et al. (2004)</td>
<td>Multiple (EBMT)</td>
<td>23/1513 (allo) 8/3012 (auto)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5 died</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ku et al. (2001)</td>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>8/255 (allo) × 13.1 GP 0/95 (auto)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de la Cámara et al. (2000)</td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>12/2866 (allo) × 2.2 GP 8/5147 (auto) = to GP</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>3 died</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Budak-Alpdogan et al. (2000)</td>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>5/351 (allo) × 3.9 GP</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>No deaths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaviria et al. (2000)</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>3/6529 (3 allo)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>No deaths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aljurf et al. (1999)</td>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td>4/641 (allo)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2 died</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roy et al. (1997)</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>2/1486 (allo) 0/755 (auto)</td>
<td>7/1486 (allo) 2/755 (auto)</td>
<td>No deaths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martino et al. (1996, 2011)</td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>2/698 (allo) 0/637 (auto)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>No deaths</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Details not available in the study
<sup>b</sup>Not all in references
<sup>c</sup>x risk with GP, studies in which the relative risk of suffering TBC was compared to that in age-/sex-matched normal individuals from the general population
<sup>x</sup>Abstract
39.2.3 Most Common Clinical Presentations

The clinical presentation of TBC in HSCT recipients is the same as in the general population, although it may have a more rapid progression, and the ratio of pulmonary to extrapulmonary disease has been reported 34/5 to 11/10, which surely represents a publication bias, with a median of 75%/25%. The most common extrapulmonary disease is meningitis.

39.2.4 Diagnosis

Culture of even a single colony from an affected organ is diagnostic for TBC. Direct microbiologic examination for acid-fast bacilli is of course mandatory, but its sensitivity is probably low. In addition, the results of positive cultures take many days to weeks, and the use of highly sensitive and specific PCR methods is now the usual methods for the initial diagnosis.

The quantiFERON-TB Gold test is not reliable in the diagnosis of TBC in HSCT recipients due to their T-cell immunodeficiency.

39.2.5 Treatment and Prognosis

With appropriate treatment, TBC in HSCT recipients has a low attributable mortality (<30%). The author suggests that HSCT physicians contact ID physicians immediately when diagnosis of TBC is made. Empirical treatment should be started if this consultation will not be replied immediately, but herein we cannot recommend a “one fits all” drug combination, since this varies greatly according to the level of drug resistance in each geographical area.

39.2.6 Specific Screening and/or Prophylactic Strategies Available

Even in areas where TBC is endemic, pre-HSCT screening with the tuberculin skin test or the gamma-interferon quantiFERON-TB Gold test is not done in most HSCT centers. In addition, specific antibiotic prophylaxis in patients with past and cured TBC is not warranted.

Two special scenarios do, however, require contacting an ID specialist pre- or post-HSCT in order to analyze whether “prophylaxis” may be indicated, the drugs to use, and their duration:

1. Highly IS HSCT recipients or candidates who have been substantially exposed to someone with active infectious TBC
2. HSCT recipients or candidates with a positive tuberculin skin test or the gamma-interferon quantiFERON-TB Gold test who were not previously treated and have radiological evidence of TBC lung disease

39.3 Nontuberculous (or Atypical) Mycobacterial (NTM) Infections

(Cordonnier et al. 2004; Young and Weisdorf 2016; Beswick et al. 2018).

39.3.1 General Concepts

Atypical mycobacteria are fastidious microorganisms that are ubiquitous in nature and can simply colonize any body surface and secretions and often contaminate clinical samples from the environment. There are a very large number of NTM species with varying geographical distributions. However, with respect to infections in HSCT recipients, NTM can be divided into two different categories:

1. Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare complex.
2. Anonymous or atypical NTM, subdivided into the rapidly growing NTM and the slow growing NTM: the most commonly reported species from EBMT centers are *M. fortuitum*, *M. chelonae*, *M. abscessus*, *M. xenopi*, and *M. kansasii*. 
39.3.2 Most Common Clinical Presentations and Risk Factor

A large number of atypical NTM infections are CVC infections, followed by skin infections. However, in patients with severe cGVHD, severe infections of any organ can occur, as well as disseminated cases. M. avium-intracellulare complex, on the other hand, usually causes pulmonary disease or disseminated infections, with blood cultures being positive in >50% of cases. Such infections almost always occur in severely immunocompromised allo-HSCT recipients, such as those with severe steroid-dependent cGVHD.

39.3.3 Diagnosis

Diagnosis requires isolation of a NTM from the affected organ(s). Differentiating colonization from contamination and disease can be difficult with NTM. Depending on the species, cultures can be positive in very few days or take many days, as with TBC. Thus, the use of specific PCR methods and/or special biochemical methods is now the usual method for the diagnosis of NTM infections.

39.3.4 Treatment and Prognosis

With appropriate treatment, most NTM infections have a good outcome and a low attributable mortality, although the data are very scarce (Table 39.3).

As in the case of TBC, the author suggests that HSCT physicians contact ID physicians immediately when diagnosis of NTM infection is made. In CVC infections, the catheter should probably always be removed. While awaiting for the ID specialists, empirical therapy with a macrolide (clarithromycin or azithromycin) plus moxifloxacin or levofloxacin can be started.

39.3.5 Specific Screening and/or Prophylactic Strategies Available

Screening and prophylaxis have no role in NTM infections.

39.4 Listeriosis

(Safdar et al. 2002; Boyle 2014; Martino et al. 1996).

39.4.1 General Concepts

Only one species, Listeria monocytogenes, produces all cases of this mostly “bacterial foodborne” infection. L. monocytogenes is a pseudo-“diphtheroid” gram-positive bacillus. This organism is widespread in nature and in tap water, sewage, the microbiota of pets and farm animals, and nearly all types of fresh foods. The fact that it grows well in refrigerator temperatures adds yet another variable which favors ingestion by humans, which appears to be universal worldwide. At any specific moment, 5% of healthy humans have L. monocytogenes in feces. With these premises, it is surprising that listeriosis is an uncommon infection in HSCT recipients.

39.4.2 Risk Factors and Incidence in HSCT

The only risk factor is the combination of ingesting colonized food or water and having a severe cellular IS.

Its incidence is unknown, and only two studies are available. At the MSKCC in New York, six cases occurred in 1315 allo-HSCT recipients from 1985 to 1997, with an incidence of 0.47% (Safdar et al. 2002). At the FHCRC in Seattle, three cases occurred among 4069 HSCT recipients (<0.1%) during the first 100 days post transplant (Boyle 2014). Finally, in our center, we have had three cases of listeriosis among 2360 adult HSCT recipients (0.1%) (Martino et al. 1996). All other information has been reported as isolated case reports.

39.4.3 Most Common Clinical Presentations

Listeriosis in HSCT recipients is almost always a sepsis syndrome with bloodstream infection,
with CNS involvement in 40–60% of cases, which can present as meningitis, encephalitis, or brain abscess, and with several cases of rhombencephalitis reported (Chang et al. 1995).

39.4.4 Diagnosis

The diagnosis is made after the bacterial microbiology laboratory informs the clinicians that the patient has positive blood and/or CSF cultures for this organism. The putative source of the infection cannot be identified in outpatients.

39.4.5 Specific Screening and/or Prophylactic Strategies Available

Screening has no role in preventing listeriosis. Standard approaches to food safety handling and preparation are, of course, the main preventive measures.

The routine use of TMP/SMX prophylaxis after HSCT surely has a role in preventing listeriosis, but its low incidence makes this impossible to prove.

Cases of listeriosis in long-term inpatients should, of course, activate the rapid intervention of the hospital infection control/prevention unit in the HSCT ward.

39.4.6 Treatment and Prognosis

The treatment of choice is high-dose ampicillin (or high-dose TMP/SMX in those allergic to penicillin) combined with an aminoglycoside during 3 weeks or 6 weeks in case of CNS infection. We also recommend consultation with ID specialists.

The prognosis of listeriosis in HSCT recipients is unknown, although 20% of the reported cases died, while 10% had a CNS recurrence.

39.5 Nocardiosis


39.5.1 General Concepts

Nocardia spp. (any of the dozens of currently accepted species may be involved, but most cases in Europe appear to be due to N. asteroides, N. brasiliensis, and N. nova) are aerobic gram-positive rods that grow in characteristic filamentous, branching chains and being acid fast, and their appearance makes them easily identifiable by microbiologists, with its acid-fast staining properties differentiating it from Actinomyces spp. Nocardia spp. grow in soil and decaying matter, and human infection usually occurs from inhalation of airborne bacilli.

39.5.2 Risk Factors and Incidence in HSCT

Nocardiosis is a late post-HSCT infection, occurring months to years after HSCT, mostly allo-HSCT. Patients usually have steroid-dependent chronic GVHD, secondary diabetes mellitus, and/or bronchiolitis obliterans or bronchiectasis from the numerous post-HSCT infections suffered. There are no specific risk factors in HSCT, although being at the right time in a place where soil-living bacilli are made massively airborne is a common-sense mechanism of infection. Similar to M. tuberculosis, Nocardia spp. do not colonize the airways.

The incidence of nocardiosis has been reported to range from 0.3 to 1.7% in allo-HSCT, although many large centers have not had a single case. In auto-HSCT the median incidence is 0%, although occasional cases have been reported and surely occur in many centers.

39.5.3 Most Common Clinical Presentations

Pulmonary infection, with its accompanying signs and symptoms, and radiologically one or more nodular lesions with a tendency to cavitate occur in 90% of patients with nocardiosis. At presentation, however, around half of the patients have disseminated disease, usually to the skin and osteoskeletal organs, but around 1/3 will have CNS involvement up front. Since CNS
involvement is so common and can initially be asymptomatic, a CNS CT or MRI scan is mandatory in all HSCT recipients with pulmonary nocardiosis (in any IS host, in fact). Brain abscesses are the usual presentation, although severe hyponatremia due to SIADH is also common due to basal meningitis.

39.5.4 Diagnosis

Diagnosis, of course, requires culture of an affected organ, usually the lungs. Often, the characteristic ramified bacilli can be directly observed from sputum or a directed BAL, but culture-based diagnosis is made in at least 1/3 of the cases. This is of utmost importance, since cultures become positive at a median of 9 days after sampling but can take up to 2–4 weeks. Molecular-based methods are useful only to identify uncommon species of *Nocardia* with known multidrug resistance, but this is rarely required in clinical practice. The most common differential diagnosis is with invasive pulmonary mold infections.

39.5.5 Specific Screening and/or Prophylactic Strategies Available

Screening has no role in preventing nocardiosis, but its rapid diagnosis does have an impact on patient outcome.

The routine use of TMP/SMX prophylaxis after HSCT may prevent more cases of nocardiosis, but the 2–3-day per week schedules are not effective in preventing it. Of note, *Nocardia* spp. isolated in patients taking single-strength TMP/SMX prophylaxis 5–7 days per week have had a good in vitro susceptibility to TMP/SMX and have responded well to high doses of the drug.

39.5.6 Treatment and Prognosis

High-dose TMP/SMX is still the treatment of choice, although there have been good results with carbapenems, amikacin, second-generation cephalosporins, and/or linezolid.

When treated promptly, nocardiosis usually resolves with prolonged antibiotic therapy, but directly attributable mortality has been reported in up to 40% of cases; these are, of course, those cases that affect extremely debilitated allo-HSCT recipients due to prolonged severe GVHD and its numerous complications, as well as those with disseminated infection and extensive CNS involvement, including the brain stem. Overall mortality, however, is high, since around 40% of patients have severe coinfections when nocardiosis joins the club.

Treatment of nocardiosis usually requires at least 6 months of specific antibiotic therapy, and it is of course recommended that ID specialists are actively involved in the treatment and follow-up. Of note, most *Nocardia* isolates are susceptible to most of the too-often empirically/prophylactically used antibiotics in HSCT recipients (levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, amoxicillin-clavulanate), as well as tetracyclines and tigecycline.

### Key Points

- The intense IS associated with allo-HSCT, especially when there is a chronic GVHD that requires a prolonged IST, favors the development of infections by very unusual pathogens.
- Despite its low incidence, it is necessary to know these pathologies in order to make an early diagnosis and to adapt the therapy to the causal pathogen.

### References


40.1 Introduction

Bleeding and thrombotic complications are an important cause of morbidity and mortality in patients undergoing HSCT. The major thrombotic complications include venous thromboembolism, such as catheter-related thrombosis, sinusoidal obstruction syndrome (SOS), and transplant-associated thrombotic microangiopathy (TA-TMA), while bleeding can involve the GI or respiratory tracts and is most common in thrombocytopenic patients or those with GVHD.

HSCT is associated with multiple risk factors for both thrombosis and bleeding including the underlying malignancy, thrombocytopenia, high-dose MAC and immunomodulatory drugs, GVHD, infections, indwelling vascular catheters, and prolonged immobilization (Gerber et al. 2008; Chaturvedi et al. 2016; Nadir and Brenner 2007). HSCT is also associated with alterations in the coagulation system with activation of endothelium-dependent coagulation factors, increase in vWF and platelet adhesion, increased thrombin generation, decreased antithrombin levels, and decreased levels of anticoagulant proteins such as protein C (Vannucchi et al. 1994). Collectively, major patient-, disease-, and therapy-related factors contribute to hemostatic complications in HSCT patients. Thrombotic and bleeding complications in HSCT are discussed separately below.

40.2 Thrombotic Complications

40.2.1 Epidemiology and Risk Factors

Thromboembolic complications in HSCT recipients include venous thromboembolism (VTE), catheter-associated thrombosis (CAT), sinusoidal obstruction syndrome, and TA-TMA. VTE is the most common of these complications, and retrospective studies have reported VTE incidence as high as 4.6% over 180 days for inpatients undergoing HSCT (Gerber et al. 2008). The rate of VTE is higher with allo-HSCT than auto-HSCT and in the presence of GVHD with 1-year VTE rates of 4.8%, 6.8%, and 8.1% reported with auto-HSCT, allo-HSCT without GVHD, and allo-HSCT with GVHD, respectively (Pihusch et al. 2002). A retrospective series of 447 patients undergoing BMT reported a 5.7% incidence of VTE in the first 100 days following transplant despite being on heparin prophylaxis (100 U/kg iv daily) for hepatic SOS (Pihusch et al. 2002). Finally, Gonsalves...
et al. reported a 1-year symptomatic VTE incidence of 3.7% in patients undergoing HSCT in an ambulatory care setting (Gonsalves et al. 2008).

VTE occurs most frequently following engraftment, in patient undergoing allo-HSCT, those with a history of previous VTE or GVHD (Labrador et al. 2013). The majority of VTE episodes in these studies were catheter-associated thrombosis. Cortelezzi et al. have previously reported that there was a 12% incidence of catheter-related thromboembolic complications in a cohort of 416 patients with hematologic malignancies (Cortelezzi 2005). Twenty-one percent of these patients were HSCT recipients, and 81.2% had platelet counts less than $50 \times 10^9/L$. There was a non-statistically significant trend toward lower rates of thrombotic complications with thrombocytopenia. Prolonged hospitalization and inherited thrombophilias (e.g., factor V Leiden, prothrombin gene mutation, protein C or S deficiency) are associated with an increased risk of thrombosis in the general population and may add to thrombosis risk in the HSCT population as well.

### 40.2.2 VTE Prophylaxis

#### 40.2.2.1 Randomized Studies

Randomized studies have not evaluated empiric prophylactic anticoagulation in HSCT recipients; however, studies in patients with cancer provide the next best evidence that can be extrapolated. The PROTECHT (nadroparin versus placebo) and SAVE-ONCO (semuloparin versus placebo) trials showed a significant reduction in the relative risk of VTE with prophylactic anticoagulation in patients with cancer; however the absolute risk reduction is small, and no survival benefit has been demonstrated. The American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO) guidelines advise against the use of routine prophylactic anticoagulation in ambulatory patients with cancer (Lyman et al. 2015). We do not generally recommend prophylactic anticoagulation in thrombocytopenic HSCT recipients with the exception of those with multiple myeloma (MM) receiving thalidomide or lenalidomide or hospitalized patients at higher risk of thrombosis (Table 40.1).

#### 40.2.2.2 Multiple Myeloma

Patients with MM have a high baseline risk of thrombosis of 5–10% that increases several-fold in patients being treated with the immunomodulators (IMiDs) THAL and LENA with DEX or chemotherapy. Consolidation therapy with THAL or LENA after HSCT has been shown to improve CR rates and prolong EFS and is thus rapidly becoming standard of care (McCarthy et al. 2012; Barlogie et al. 2006). In patients receiving THAL consolidation after auto-HSCT for MM, the rate of VTE was 24% and 6% in the induction and consolidation periods, respectively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 40.1</th>
<th>Recommendations for prophylaxis and treatment of VTE in HSCT recipients*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indications for prophylaxis</strong></td>
<td><strong>General principles</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients with MM receiving IMiDs</td>
<td>Start therapeutic doses of LMWH or IV UFH in patients who have platelet count $&gt;50 \times 10^9/L$ and no active bleeding. UFH is preferred in case of renal impairment (GFR $&lt;30 \text{ mL/min}$) or high bleeding risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>During hospitalization or postoperatively, as long as platelet count is $&gt;50 \times 10^9/L$</td>
<td>Continue LMWH or transition to warfarin (if LMWH is contraindicated) for maintenance therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prophylaxis is not recommended in outpatients with indwelling vascular catheters</td>
<td>DOACs are not currently recommended in patients undergoing HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prophylaxis strategy</td>
<td>Duration of anticoagulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirin in low-risk patients with MM receiving IMiDs</td>
<td>General: 3–6 months or as long as malignancy or use of IMiDs persists, whichever is longer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMWH (prophylactic dose of 40 mg SC daily) for patients with MM on IMiDs and &gt;1 risk factor for VTE</td>
<td>Catheter-related thrombosis: 3 months or as long as catheter is in place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prophylactic doses of UFH or LMWH in hospitalized patients</td>
<td>Inferior vena cava filter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Only use to patients in whom anticoagulation is contraindicated or those who develop pulmonary embolism on anticoagulation. Remove as soon as anticoagulation can be started.

DOACs direct oral anticoagulants, IMiDs immunomodulatory drugs, LMWH low molecular weight heparin, MM multiple myeloma, UFH unfractionated heparin

*Adapted from Chaturvedi et al. (2016)
despite thromboprophylaxis with low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) (Barlogie et al. 2006). McCarthy et al. reported no episodes of VTE in patients receiving consolidation therapy with LENA; however, these patients also received prophylactic anticoagulation (McCarthy et al. 2012). Based on studies showing a benefit of thromboprophylaxis in patients with newly diagnosed MM receiving LENA- or THAL-based treatment (Palumbo et al. 2011) and the ASCO recommendation for thromboprophylaxis in this population (Lyman et al. 2015), we recommend either aspirin or LMWH for lower-risk patients and LMWH for higher-risk patients receiving THAL or LENA.

### 40.2.2.3 Hospitalized Patients

Though there is a clear benefit of pharmacologic thromboprophylaxis in medically ill hospitalized patients (Samama et al. 1999), randomized trials have not evaluated thromboprophylaxis in HSCT patients. The potential benefit from VTE prophylaxis is proportional to VTE risk, and therefore this is particularly important in patients with reduced mobility and with a history of VTE (if not on long-term anticoagulation) due to an even higher risk of thrombosis. Our practice is to start prophylactic anticoagulation for hospitalized patients in the post transplant period once the platelet count is >50 × 10^9/L and there is no active bleeding. For very high-risk patients, anticoagulation can be considered if the platelet count is >30 × 10^9/L; however this must be balanced with the risk of bleeding.

### 40.2.2.4 Prophylaxis of Catheter-Related Thrombosis

HSCT patients, especially those undergoing “ambulatory” HSCT, frequently have indwelling vascular catheters with the potential of catheter-related thrombosis (CRT). Despite multiple randomized and observational studies, thromboprophylaxis for the prevention of CRT in patients with cancer remains controversial. The largest study of thromboprophylaxis in CVC randomized 1590 cancer patients undergoing chemotherapy to adjusted-dose warfarin (international normalized ratio, 1.5–2.0), fixed-dose warfarin (1 mg/day), and no prophylaxis (Young et al. 2009). Symptomatic CRT was less frequent in the patients given adjusted-dose warfarin than in those who received no prophylaxis (2.7% vs 5.9%, \( P = 0.019 \)); however, both adjusted-dose and fixed-dose warfarin were significantly associated with increased risk of major bleeding (Young et al. 2009). Recent meta-analyses of randomized trials concluded that prophylactic warfarin and LMWH do not significantly reduce symptomatic CRT in patients with cancer (Akl et al. 2007). Based on the available evidence, we do not routinely recommend prophylactic anticoagulation to prevent catheter-related thrombosis.

### 40.2.3 VTE Diagnosis and Treatment

Venous duplex ultrasonography should be performed in patients presenting with extremity swelling, redness or tenderness, or pulmonary angiography in patients with chest pain, dyspnea, or unexplained tachycardia. A clinical assessment of bleeding risk is necessary in patients who are diagnosed with VTE. Patients with no increased risk based on bleeding history and platelet count >50 × 10^9/L should be started on therapeutic anticoagulation with either LMWH or unfractionated heparin (UFH). The use of LMWH is restricted to patients with glomerular filtration rate >30 mL/min, while UFH is used in patients with impaired renal function (glomerular filtration rate <30 mL/min) or those with high bleeding risk. Following initiation of anticoagulation with LMWH or UFH, patients may be continued on LMWH or transition to warfarin with a standard INR target of 2–3. LMWH is preferred in patients with evidence of relapsed malignancy. The direct oral anticoagulants (DOACs) have not been evaluated in HSCT recipients, and their use cannot currently be recommended outside of a research setting. The optimal duration of anticoagulation for VTE in HSCT patients has not been evaluated in prospective studies. The recommendation for patients with cancer-related VTE is anticoagulation for 3–6 months, with ongoing therapy if the malignancy persists (Lyman et al. 2015; Kearon et al. 2012). We follow an analogous strategy in HSCT patients with the caveat that extended
anticoagulation is often not feasible in patients with relapsed disease and a high likelihood of disease-related or treatment-related thrombocytopenia (Table 40.1).

The use of inferior vena cava (IVC) filters should be restricted to patients with acute deep vein thrombosis and a contraindication to anticoagulation and possibly patients who develop pulmonary embolism while on therapeutic anticoagulation (Kearon et al. 2012). IVC filters should not be used for primary prophylaxis of pulmonary embolism. In patients with large, symptomatic thrombosis and severe thrombocytopenia, we sometimes follow a strategy of platelet transfusions to reach a threshold of $50 \times 10^9/L$ to allow safer anticoagulation with heparin.

### 40.2.4 Treatment of Catheter-Related Thrombosis

The rate of PE and mortality from CRT is low, and the objectives of CRT treatment are to reduce symptoms, prevent extension into more central veins, preserve access, and prevent chronic venous stenosis. There is no evidence that removal of the catheter improves outcomes. Therefore, it is reasonable to not remove the catheter unless it is nonfunctional, no longer needed, or may be infected. Thrombus reduction by catheter-directed thrombolysis is relatively safe and effective and may be tried in an attempt to preserve the catheter. Anticoagulation is required in patients with acute CRT regardless of whether the catheter is removed (Kearon et al. 2012; Lyman et al. 2015). We prefer LMWH, though vitamin K antagonists (VKA) may be used if LMWH is contraindicated. In a prospective study of 78 patients with CRT treated with full-dose dalteparin bridged to warfarin, there were no new thrombotic events at 3 months, and 57% of catheters were still functional (Kovacs et al. 2007). The optimum duration of anticoagulation has not been evaluated in prospective studies. Current ACCP guidelines recommend anticoagulation for 3 months or until the catheter is removed, whichever is longer (Kearon et al. 2012). Several clinicians prefer to continue anticoagulation for 1–2 weeks after the catheter is removed.

### 40.2.5 Sinusoidal Obstruction Syndrome (SOS)

SOS (see Chap. 49) is a life-threatening complication that presents usually within the first 45 days after HSCT with elevated serum bilirubin levels, painful hepatomegaly, and fluid retention (Carreras, 2015). Endothelial injury of the hepatic sinusoids in SOS initiates hepatocyte injury and liver failure. SOS can occur in as high as 8–13% of HSCT recipients, and mortality is in excess of 80% (Carreras, 2015). MAC, preexisting liver disease, younger age, and poor performance status are associated with increased risk of SOS (McDonald et al. 1993). Ursodeoxycholic acid is recommended as prophylaxis for SOS in patients undergoing allo-HSCT. Anticoagulation with low-dose heparin has also been studied and is sometimes prescribed to patients undergoing auto-HSCT. Defibrotide, a pro-fibrinolytic agent, is a new agent approved for the treatment of severe SOS in both children and adults and is associated with higher rates of survival than historical controls (20–30% at day 100) (Richardson et al. 2016). Defibrotide prophylaxis has been shown to have some efficacy in preventing SOS in high-risk children, but whether this benefit translates for adults is not known.

### 40.2.6 Transplant-Associated TMA

TA-TMA (see Chap. 42) is a heterogeneous, frequently fatal disorder that occurs within 100 days after HSCT and is caused by treatment- and disease-related endothelial damage, coagulation activation, and microvascular thrombosis (Nadir and Brenner 2007). It is characterized by thrombocytopenia, microangiopathic anemia with schistocytes on the blood smear, and varying organ impairment such as renal failure and neurological symptoms. The diagnosis can be challenging since the clinical symptoms overlap with other common complications including GVHD and infections (Rosenthal, 2016). Risk factors for developing TA-TMA include exposure to calcineurin inhibitors, high-dose chemotherapy, GVHD, infections, advanced age, female
sex, and non-MAC (Elsallabi et al. 2016). Elevated levels of vWF and inflammatory mediators such as IL-1, TNF-alpha, thrombomodulin, etc. and neutrophil extracellular traps have been implicated as causing the endothelial damage in TA-TMA. Treatment of TA-TMA is mostly supportive; however, recent data show that some patients with severe TA-TMA harbor complement gene mutations and uncontrolled complement activation has been demonstrated in TA-TMA, which is a potential therapeutic target. The complement inhibitor eculizumab has been successfully used in some cases of TA-TMA (Rosenthal, 2016).

### 40.3 Bleeding Complications

Bleeding in HSCT recipients is closely associated with prolonged and severe thrombocytopenia. In retrospective studies, the rate of bleeding in HSCT recipients ranges from 15.2% to 27.1%, and life-threatening or fatal bleeding occurred in 1.1% to 3.6% of patients (Gerber et al. 2008; Pihusch et al. 2002, Labrador et al. 2013). Gerber et al. reported that the initiation of therapeutic anticoagulation during days 1–180 after HSCT was the strongest predictor of bleeding [OR 3.1 (95% CI 1.8–5.5)] (Gerber et al. 2008). Furthermore, GVHD [OR 2.4 (95% CI 1.1–3.3)] increased the risk of bleeding, while auto-HSCT (versus allo-HSCT) was protective [OR 0.46 (95% CI 0.33–0.64)]. Bleeding can take any form including GI hemorrhage in patients with GVHD of the gut, hemorrhagic cystitis in patients with genitourinary involvement by GVHD, viral reactivation, and alkylating agent therapy, or spontaneously. Diffuse alveolar hemorrhage (DAH) (see Chap. 52) is a devastating bleeding complication that occurs in 2–14% of HSCT recipients and presents with progressive hypoxia, pulmonary infiltrates, and bloody alveolar lavage (Nadir and Brenner 2007). DAH is more common in thrombocytopenic patients and those with acute GVHD, and the effects of inflammatory cytokines on the alveolar lining have been implicated. There are no evidence-based prophylactic and therapeutic strategies, reported mortality is around 80% (range 64% to 100%) (Afessa et al. 2002). Platelet transfusions, systemic corticosteroids, antifibrinolytics, and recombinant factor VIIa have all been used with inconsistent results. It is general practice to administer prophylactic platelet transfusions for platelet counts less than $10 \times 10^9/L$ in patients undergoing myeloablative chemotherapy or HSCT, though the superiority of prophylactic over therapeutic platelet transfusions is supported by low- to moderate-grade evidence. Given the competing risks of bleeding and thrombosis, identifying patients at high risk for these outcomes can optimize strategies for prophylaxis. The timing of hematostatic complications is an important consideration since bleeding events are more likely to occur early in the post transplant course when patients are profoundly thrombocytopenic, while thrombotic events occur more frequently after hematopoietic recovery (Gerber et al. 2008; Labrador et al. 2013).

#### Key Points

- Hemostatic complications, including both thrombosis and bleeding, are common in HSCT recipients and contribute to morbidity and mortality.
- Indwelling vascular catheters, GVHD associated inflammation, and certain medications are important risk factors for VTE, while prolonged severe thrombocytopenia and GVHD predispose to bleeding.
- Pharmacologic thromboprophylaxis is recommended for patients with MM receiving IMiDs and hospitalized patients with platelet count $>50 \times 10^9/L$, but not for routine prophylaxis of CRT.
- LMWH (or UFH) is the treatment of choice for VTE in HSCT recipients.
- Ursodiol and defibrotide are recommended for the prevention and treatment of SOS, respectively. Defibrotide may also have a role in prophylaxis of high-risk patients.
References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Graft Failure

David Valcárcel and Anna Sureda

41.1 Introduction

Engraftment is defined as the first of 3 consecutive days with an absolute neutrophil count higher than 0.5 \( \times 10^9/L \) (sustained >20 \( \times 10^9/L \) platelets and hemoglobin >80 g/L, free of transfusion requirements).

In the setting of RIC protocols, it is also recommended to confirm the donor origin through chimerism studies.

The incidence of GF is <3–5% in the auto- and matched allo-HSCT setting, but it increases up to 10% in the cases of haploidentical or CBT.

The prognosis of graft failure (GF) is poor, and most patients die because of causes related to infections or bleeding, with an OS at 3–5 years after the diagnosis of GF less than 20%.

41.2 Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary graft failure (GF)</td>
<td>ANC &lt;0.5 ( \times 10^9/L ) by day +28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hemoglobin &lt;80 g/L and platelets &lt;20 ( \times 10^9/L )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( RIC ): Confirmation of donor cell origin is required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( CBT ): Up to day +42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary GF</td>
<td>ANC &lt;0.5 ( \times 10^9/L ) after initial engraftment not related to relapse, infection, or drug toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( RIC ): Loss of donor hematopoiesis to &lt;5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor graft function</td>
<td>Two or three cytopenias &gt;2 weeks, after day +28 in the presence of donor chimerism &gt;5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graft rejection</td>
<td>GF caused by immune rejection of donor cells mediated by host cells</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

41.3 Causes and Risk Factors

The etiology of GF is multifactorial in most of the cases (Fig. 41.1, Table 41.1).

41.3.1 Donor Type, HLA Matching, and Graft Source

Classical studies showed a close relationship between the degree of HLA mismatch and the incidence of GF, but it is difficult to draw conclusions because most of them used a limited HLA matching including only low-resolution A, B, and DR locus (Anasetti et al. 1989; Petersdorf...
et al. 2001). More recent studies, using high-resolution techniques for HLA typing and including 10–12 loci (A, B, C, DR, DQ, and DP), did not find differences in GF rates between no HLA antigen mismatch and a single HLA mismatch in both conventional MAC (Lee et al. 2007) or RIC (Passweg et al. 2011).

URD transplant was associated with a higher risk of GF (HR 1.38, \( p < 0.001 \) compared to HLA identical sibling) that was even higher when there were two or more mismatches (HR 1.79, \( p < 0.001 \)) (Olsson et al. 2015).

In the haploidentical setting, the incidence of GF is around 10% which seems higher than the 3–5% currently reported MSD or URD HSCT although there are not well-designed comparative studies.

### 41.3.2 Graft Source and Cellular Content

BM is consistently associated with delayed neutrophil and platelet engraftment across all types of transplant; the impact on GF depends on donor type. GF incidence is not different for HLA MRD (Bensinger, 2012), but it is higher in the setting of URD (9% vs 3%, for BM and PB, respectively, \( p < 0.001 \)) (Anasetti et al. 2012). There are no prospective randomized data either looking at MAC or RIC, but retrospective results from EBMT and CIBMTR suggest there were no differences in GF between BM and PB (less than 5% in all cases). In contrast, in a study evaluating donor characteristics, the use of BM was the only factor associated with GF after RIC (HR 2.3; \( p = 0.02 \)) (Passweg et al. 2011).

The minimum cellular content required is still a matter of debate. Table 41.2 depicts a conservative proposal based on the literature review.

---

**Table 41.1** Risk factors for GF

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pre-transplant difficult to modify</th>
<th>Pre-transplant easy to modify</th>
<th>Peri-post transplant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HLA mismatches</td>
<td></td>
<td>CD34+ cell count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonmalignant disease</td>
<td></td>
<td>Viral infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced disease</td>
<td></td>
<td>GVHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extensive marrow fibrosis</td>
<td></td>
<td>Drug toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extensive prior treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donor age</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Splenomegaly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron overload</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLA antibodies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfusion history</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Fig. 41.1** Causes associated with the development of GF
309

41.3.3 Anti-HLA Antibodies

The presence of donor-specific anti-HLA antibodies (DSA) is associated with higher risk of GF in the context of haploidentical CBT and URD transplants, and it may in fact translate into a reduced OS (Spellman et al. 2010; Ciurea et al. 2009; Ciurea et al. 2015). The high prevalence of anti-HLA antibodies (10–40%) (Morin-Zorman et al. 2016) and the increasing use of mismatched donors prompted the EBMT to write a set of advices and recommendations on this issue (Table 41.3) (Ciurea et al. 2018).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Progenitors</th>
<th>Type of transplant</th>
<th>Amount of cells</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BM progenitors</td>
<td>Autologous TNC</td>
<td>2 × 10^8/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allogeneic TNC</td>
<td>3 × 10^8/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PB progenitors</td>
<td>Autologous Minimum: CD34 &gt;1 × 10^6/kg Optimum: CD34 &gt;2 × 10^6/kg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allogeneic MAC Minimum: CD34 &gt;2 × 10^6/kg Optimum: CD34 &gt;4 × 10^6/kg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allogeneic RIC Minimum: CD34 &gt;2 × 10^6/kg Optimum: CD34 4–8 × 10^6/kg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cord blood</td>
<td>HLA 4–6/6 TNC &gt;2.5–3 × 10^7/kg CD 34 &gt;1 × 10^5/kg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

_TNC_ total nucleated cells, MAC myeloablative conditioning, _RIC_ reduced intensity conditioning regimen

41.3.4 Conditioning Regimen

Increasing the intensity of MAC conditioning protocols does not reduce the incidence of GF. In contrast, RIC may be associated with a higher risk.

Although it is well accepted that TBI reduces the risk of GF, there are no comparative studies that confirm this latter point. In combination with CY, the use of full-dose TBI does not seem to reduce GF in comparison with BU. The use of ATG in the preparative regimen in combination with CY may reduce GF with BU, but its use with TBI might not be beneficial.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Detection methods</th>
<th>Management, desensitization treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Cell based (direct test): Donor viable lymphocytes and patient serum are needed. Complex and time-consuming technique. Low specificity and variable sensitivity (higher with flow cytometry assays than complement-based assays)</td>
<td>• No standard scheme is widely accepted; different combinations have proven to be efficacious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Solid phase immunoassays (virtual test): Only requires patient serum, and the technique is easy and fast. Sensitivity and specificity are intermediate/high depending on the type of assay. Modified techniques such as C4d or Cq1 assays allow to detect complement-fixing antibodies, which are at higher risk of inducing GF. These are the test most commonly used nowadays; initial DSA testing and complement assay in case of positivity are recommended</td>
<td>• Although not well validated, the threshold of positivity for DSA can be considered &gt;1000 and specially &gt;5000 MFI, which is probably associated with the presence of complement binding antibodies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• DSA study should be done during donor identification to select a donor and also within the month prior to transplant</td>
<td>• DSA study should be done during donor identification to select a donor and also within the month prior to transplant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 41.2** Minimum cell content recommended

**Table 41.3** Considerations regarding the presence of anti-HLA antibodies

**Anti-HLA and DSA prevalence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anti-HLA and DSA prevalence</th>
<th>Anti HLA: 10–40% DSA: 10–20%. Higher in female (increase with each pregnancy)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Detection methods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Cell based (direct test): Donor viable lymphocytes and patient serum are needed. Complex and time-consuming technique. Low specificity and variable sensitivity (higher with flow cytometry assays than complement-based assays)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Solid phase immunoassays (virtual test): Only requires patient serum, and the technique is easy and fast. Sensitivity and specificity are intermediate/high depending on the type of assay. Modified techniques such as C4d or Cq1 assays allow to detect complement-fixing antibodies, which are at higher risk of inducing GF. These are the test most commonly used nowadays; initial DSA testing and complement assay in case of positivity are recommended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Management, desensitization treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management, desensitization treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• No standard scheme is widely accepted; different combinations have proven to be efficacious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Although not well validated, the threshold of positivity for DSA can be considered &gt;1000 and specially &gt;5000 MFI, which is probably associated with the presence of complement binding antibodies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Avoid complement activation: IVIg, eculizumab

**IVIg** intravenous immunoglobulins, **Ab** antibodies, **MFI** mean fluorescence intensity, **Ab** antibodies
with CY seems to reduce the incidence of GF in patients with aplastic anemia. Also, in aplastic anemia patients, the addition of two Gy TBI to FLU/CY did not reduce the incidence of this complication.

### 41.3.5 Other Factors Associated with the Development of GF

ABO mismatch: Major incompatibility was associated with primary GF (HR 1.24; \( p = 0.012 \)).

Cryopreservation: Associated with primary GF (HR 1.43; \( p = 0.013 \)).

Female donor to male recipient: Associated with primary GF (HR 1.28; \( p = 0.001 \)).

Splenomegaly: Associated with primary GF in MPN (HR 3.92; \( p = 0.001 \)) and MDS (HR 2.24; \( p = 0.002 \)).

Use of G-CSF: Associated with reduced risk of primary GF (HR 0.36; \( p < 0.001 \)) vs no growth factors.

Underlying disease: Nonmalignant diseases are associated with higher incidence.

Previous treatments: Impairment engraftment through the damage of marrow microenvironment. The absence of treatments may induce graft rejection.

Graft manipulation: Ex vivo TCD is associated with a higher risk of primary GF in most studies.

### 41.4 Management of GF

OS after GF is consistently low, even in those patients who receive a salvage transplant; thus, the most important measures should be directed to avoid graft failure GF and to identify it as soon as possible in order to adopt the measures to revert it.

#### 41.4.1 Prevention and Early Diagnosis of GF

The identification of DSA is of utmost importance in the mismatch setting. Desensitization treatment in patients at higher risk seems reasonable. Although barely supported by well-designed studies, we would probably recommend the following measures to be adopted in patients at high risk of GF: the use of PB as stem cell source, include low dose TBI and/or ATG in the conditioning regimen, consider the use of G-CSF post transplant, and a close evaluation of engraftment including marrow chimerism studies shortly after transplant (day +14). In a single-CBT study, a level of donor chimerism in BM lower than 65% was associated with a higher risk of GF (Moscardó et al. 2009); these results cannot be directly extrapolated to other types of transplant.

Olson and colleagues developed a score to predict GF in patients at risk at day +21 post-HSCT (Olsson et al. 2015): age (<30, 1 point), Karnofsky status (<90%, 1 point), disease (MDS, 1; CLL or CML, 2; and MPN, 3 points), status (advanced, 1 point), HLA matching (mismatched, 2 points), graft (BM <2.4 × 10^9/kg, 1 point; PB, 2 points), conditioning (no TBI, 2 points), and GVHD prophylaxis (no CNI + MTX, 2 points; TCD, 3 points). A score >6 at day +21 had a positive predictive value of 28–36%, while the negative predictive value of a score <7 was 81% for GF.

#### 41.4.2 Initial Measures

It is important to apply them as soon as GF is suspected.

- Stop as many toxic drugs as possible; treat infections; although of limited utility, it would be reasonable a trial of G-CSF.
- Adjust post transplant IS. Maintain correct IS levels in the early post transplant period. Later on, after the third/sixth month and if mixed chimerism is present, especially after a RIC transplant, a faster tapering of IST could overcome mixed chimera (in patients with SAA, it is commonly recommended to increase IST).
- Data regarding the use of TPO analogues after transplant are scarce, but the results of eltrombopag in aplastic anemia and its favorable toxicity profile would support, in our view, a trial with this drug before considering more complex and risky options as DLI or second transplant.
41.4.3 DLI and CD34 Boost

DLI could be recommended if decreasing levels of donor chimerism are observed. A careful risk/benefit evaluation is warranted as this is not a risk-free approach and a high risk of development of GVHD is anticipated.

In patients with poor graft function, the use of CD34 boost can be offered. Unfortunately, it is not clear when to perform it, but probably 2–3 months without improvement after the initial measures would be a reasonable cutoff.

41.4.4 Second Transplant

The limited utility and low success of cryopreserved autologous stem cells do not allow to formally recommend to perform auto-HSC harvest in any type of transplant procedure.

Results and recommendations for second allogeneic transplantation are detailed in Tables 41.4 and 41.5.

---

### Table 41.4 Second allogeneic stem cell transplant in patients with GF

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author (year)</th>
<th>n patients diagnosis</th>
<th>Donor (same/different) source</th>
<th>Engraftment (median d)</th>
<th>OS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gaziev (1999)</td>
<td>32 (1°, 4; 2°, 28) Thalassemia</td>
<td>28/4 All BM</td>
<td>67.7% (+19)</td>
<td>3 year: 60%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guardiola (2000)</td>
<td>82 (1°, 7; 2°, 54) Hem Neo, AA</td>
<td>56/26 72 BM; 10 PB</td>
<td>62% (+17)</td>
<td>3 year: 33%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min (2000)</td>
<td>20 (1°, 7; 2°, 10) Hem Neo, AA</td>
<td>20/0 6 BM, 14 PB</td>
<td>75% (NR)</td>
<td>3 year: 70%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chewning (2007)</td>
<td>16 (1°, 11; 2°, 5) Hem Neo, FA</td>
<td>6/16 13 PB (8 TCD), 2 BM, 1 CB</td>
<td>100% (+12)</td>
<td>3 year: 35%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gyurkorcza (2009)</td>
<td>38 (1°, 18; 2°, 20) Hem Neo, AA</td>
<td>14/24 36 PB, 1 BM, 1 CB</td>
<td>87% (+15)</td>
<td>4 year: 42%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schreiber (2010)</td>
<td>122 (1°, 122) Hem Neo, AA</td>
<td>98/24 60 PB, 62 CB</td>
<td>66% (NR)</td>
<td>1 year: 11%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remberger (2011)</td>
<td>20 (1°, 6; 2°, 14) Hem Neo, Non-Mal</td>
<td>11/9 7 PB, 11 BM, 2 CB</td>
<td>90% (+20)</td>
<td>3 year: 60%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuji (2012)</td>
<td>220 (1°, 200; 2°, 19) Hem Neo, Non-Mal</td>
<td>0/220 24 PB, 16 BM, 180 CB</td>
<td>CB 30% (21) PB-BM 70–75% (18–14)</td>
<td>1 year PB:58% CB: 28%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferrá (2014)</td>
<td>89 (1°, 49; 2°, 40) Hem Neo, Non-Mal</td>
<td>38/37 61 PB, 6 BM, 8 CB</td>
<td>85% (+15)</td>
<td>5 year: 31%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


---

### Table 41.5 Recommendations to perform a second allogeneic HSCT as treatment for GF

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of donor</th>
<th>Similar results using the same/different donor. Consider different donor if it is not associated with significant delays. Consider haploidentical donors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conditioning regimen</td>
<td>It is always required. Better RIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post transplant IS</td>
<td>It is required; CNI-based schemes are the most commonly used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stem cell source</td>
<td>PB or BM show similar results and should be preferred to CB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-cell depletion</td>
<td>Avoid ex vivo T-cell depletion, especially if with immune graft rejection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In cases of poor graft function, it can be a good option as it reduces the potential risk of GVHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ATG or alemtuzumab has been used to foster IS and also to reduce GVHD risk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*DSA* donor-specific antigens, *BM* bone marrow, *PB* peripheral blood
Key Points

- Graft failure is an infrequent but often fatal complication of HSCT.
- Etiology is complex and very frequently multifactorial.
- Preventive measures and early identification of potential causes in order to try to revert them are the key aspects to treat it.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Early Complications of Endothelial Origin

Enric Carreras and Maribel Diaz-Ricart

42.1 Introduction

A group of complications that occur after transplant share several common characteristics:

1. They appear early after HSCT (between day 0 and day +100).
2. Their diagnosis is usually based on the presence of medical signs and symptoms, and consequently they are classified as syndromes. Their clinical manifestations are overlapping, making their differential diagnosis difficult.
3. They seem to begin at the capillary level, in a systemic way or in one or more affected organs.
4. If not properly treated, they can evolve into an irreversible MODS/MOF.

The animal models of SOS showed that the first morphological alterations observed occurred in endothelial cells (EC) of the hepatic sinusoids (DeLeve et al. 1996). Similarly, multiple ex vivo and in vitro studies have shown that, in auto- and allo-HSCT, there is a pro-inflammatory and pro-thrombotic state secondary to endothelial damage (Carreras et al. 2010; Palomo et al. 2009, 2010; Carreras and Diaz-Ricart 2011). Therefore, all these complications are nowadays grouped under the name of “early complications of endothelial origin”:

- Sinusoidal obstruction syndrome (SOS) of the liver (formerly denominated VOD)
- Capillary leak syndrome (CLS)
- Engraftment and peri-engraftment syndrome (ES and peri-ES)
- Diffuse alveolar hemorrhage (DAH) (see Chap. 42)
- Thrombotic microangiopathy associated with HSCT (TA-TMA)
- Posterior reversible leukoencephalopathy syndrome (PRES)

Initially, idiopathic pneumonia syndrome (IPS) was included in this group. However, even if endothelial damage plays a role in its pathogenesis, other more relevant factors seem to be present.

Probably along the next years, GVHD will be included in this group since every day it is more evident that endothelial dysfunction is the origin and not the consequence of this complication.
42.2 Sinusoidal Obstruction Syndrome (See Chap. 49)

42.3 Engraftment Syndrome

42.3.1 Definition

High and well-tolerated fever of a noninfectious origin developed when the first neutrophil appears in peripheral blood indicating the engraftment. This syndrome has also been called CLS of the engraftment, autoaggression syndrome, respiratory distress of the engraftment, aseptic–septic shock, and autologous GVHD.

42.3.2 Pathogenesis

It seems to appear as a result of a systemic endothelial damage produced by the massive release of pro-inflammatory cytokines (IL-2, TNF-α, IFN-γ, IL-6), M-GSF, EPO, and products of degranulation and oxidative metabolism of neutrophils. In some cases, the concomitant administration of G-CSF, potent endothelial toxicant, contributes to its development.

42.3.3 Clinical/Biological Manifestations of ES

| Around the day when engraftment starts* | 
| Classical (main criteria) | Fever ≥38.3 °C well tolerated Skin rash (>25% of body surface)b Pulmonary edema (non-cardiogenic) / hypoxia Sudden increase in CRP values (≥20 mg/dL)c |
| Occasional (minor criteria) | Weight gain (>2.5%) Creatinine increase (≥2 × N values) Hepatic dysfunction (bilirubin ≥2 mg/dL or AST/ALT ≥2 × N) Diarrhea† Encephalopathy |

*First day with neutrophil counts greater than 0.5 × 10⁹/L
bVery similar to an acute GVHD
cValues higher than those observed in a febrile neutropenia. Due to its recent description, this parameter is not included in the classical diagnostic criteria. The cutoff point of 6 mg/dL has a high sensitivity and specificity (90%). Additionally, CRP allows monitoring the response to the treatment since it normalizes completely in a few days (Carreras et al. 2010)
†At least two fluid depositions per day without microbiological documentation of infection

42.3.4 Diagnostic Criteria

| Spitzer (2001) | More specific but too much complex. 3 major criteria or 2 major + 1 minor criteria within the 96 h around engraftment |
| Maiolino et al. (2003) | Simplest and enough specific. Noninfectious fever + another major criteria or diarrhea since 24 h before engraftment |

42.3.5 Incidence and Risk Factors

ES is classically observed after autologous HSCT although it has also been described after NMA allo-HSCT (Gorak et al. 2005) and after CBT (see pre-ES).

**Incidence:** Ranging between 5 and 50% depending of the population analyzed and criteria used.

Most relevant risk factors for ES are:

- Auto-HSCT for diseases not intensively treated with chemotherapy before HSCT (AID, AL, POEMS, breast cancer, etc.)
- Intensity of the conditioning (NMA < MEL < BEAM < CY/TBI)
- In myeloma patients, previous treatment with BOR or LENA (Cornell et al. 2013)
- Use of PBSC or G-CSF

42.3.6 Prophylaxis and Treatment

(Cornell et al. 2015)

**Prophylaxis:** Avoid the use of G-CSF after HSCT in the high-risk patients.
Treatment:

– When suspected, stop immediately G-CSF.
– If fever persists after 48 h of ATB treatment and cultures are negative, start methyl-PRD 1 mg/kg q12h (3 days) and progressive tapering in 1 week.
– When PRD is stopped, some recurrences of ES could be observed; treat again with steroids.
– With an early treatment, 90% of CR, any delay can favor the evolution to MOF.

42.4 Pre-engraftment Syndrome

ES-like was described in 2003 after CBT. Its pathogenesis is similar to ES + alloreactivity and cytokine storm (also denominated “early immune reaction” in this scenario) (Lee and Rah 2016). Main differences with classical ES are:

– Development in the context of MAC–RIC allo-HSCT
– Earlier presentation (around day +7; up to 10–11 days before engraftment)
– Fluid retention in 30% of cases
– Higher incidence than ES (20–70% of CBT) (Lee and Rah 2016)

Patients with pre-ES have less graft failure and more GVHD without impact in TRM (Park et al. 2013).

42.5 Capillary Leak Syndrome

42.5.1 Definition

Idiopathic systemic capillary syndrome was described in healthy patients that presented episodic crisis of hypotension/hypoperfusion, hypoalbuminemia, and severe generalized edema (Clarkson disease). Usually, these manifestations could be revered with steroids, vasopressors, fluid, and colloids, but some patients could die during this recovery phase due to a cardiopulmonary failure (Druey and Greipp 2010).

Very similar episodes have also been described after the administration of IL-2, IL-4, TNF-α, GM-CSF, and G-CSF and in the context of HSCT (Nürnberg et al. 1997; Lucchini et al. 2016).

42.5.2 Pathogenesis

Many mechanisms have been suspected, but nowadays, due to the duration of the capillary leak and its reversibility, the endothelial injury seems to be the main cause for the capillary damage. The high levels of VEGF and angiopoietin-2 (potent inducers of vascular permeability) observed in these patients could play a role (Xie et al. 2012).

42.5.3 Diagnostic Criteria in the Context of HSCT

(Lucchini et al. 2016)

Early after HSCT (≈days +10 to 11). Unexplained weight gain >3% in 24 h. Positive intake balance despite furosemide administration (at least 1 mg/kg) evaluated 24 h after its administration.

42.5.4 Incidence and Risk Factors

Mainly observed in children

True incidence unknown (variable diagnostic criteria): 5.4% in the largest series (similar incidence between MAC and RIC-HSCT)

Apparently no relationship with G-CSF administration but higher incidence among patients receiving this treatment more than 5 days.

42.5.5 Treatment and Evolution

When suspected, stop immediately G-CSF
Steroids; supportive therapy (catecholamines, colloids, and plasma)
A rapid improvement has been observed in a patient treated with bevacizumab (Yabe et al. 2010)
Sixty-seven percent of patients required ICU admittance and 47% mechanical ventilation
Fourty-seven percent reach a complete remission
TRM at day +100: 43% vs only 5% in patients w/o CLS (Lucchini et al. 2016)
42.6 Thrombotic Microangiopathy Associated with HSCT (TA-TMA)

42.6.1 Definition and Classification

TMA are a heterogeneous group of diseases characterized by microangiopathic hemolytic anemia and thrombocytopenia due to platelet clumping in the microcirculation leading to ischemic organ dysfunction. As this phenomenon could be observed in different clinical situations, a consensus on the standardization of terminology has been recently proposed by an International Working Group (Scully et al. 2017) (Fig. 42.1).

42.6.2 Pathogenesis

Like in the other vascular–endothelial syndromes after HSCT, the endothelial injury due to the action of different factors (conditioning, lipopolysaccharides, CNI, alloreactivity, GVHD) plays a crucial role in its development. Endothelial injury generates a prothrombotic and pro-inflammatory status that favors capillary occlusion.

However, unlike in other endothelial syndromes, the dysregulation of the complement system and the possible presence of specific antibodies (donor- or recipient-specific Ab, as anti-factor H Ab) could play a relevant role in some TA-TMA. The activation of the classical pathway of the complement system (by chemotherapy, infections, GVHD) and the activation of the alternative pathway (favored by a genetically determined mutation of several genes [CFH, CFI, CFB, CFHR1,3,5]) produce deposits of C4d or C5b-9 (membrane attack complex) fractions, respectively (Jodele et al. 2016b).

Recently, the two-hit hypothesis tries to unify all these pathogenetic mechanisms (Khosla et al. 2018). The first hit will be produced by the normal input signals that any EC could receive (cell interaction soluble mediators, oxygenation, hemodynamic, temperature, pH) plus predisposing risk factors as prolonged immobilization, bacterial–fungal infection, leukemia not in remission, G-CSF administration, URD HSCT, HLA mismatch, RIC (fludarabine), or high-dose BU.

**Fig. 42.1** Terminology of TMA

- **TMA**
  - TTP
  - HUS
  - Other conditions associated with TMA
    - Infection associated HUS
    - Complement Mediated HUS
    - Connective tissue diseases
    - Diffuse intravascular coagulopathy
    - Pregnancy
    - Drugs
    - Neoplasia
    - **Transplant Associated-TMA**
      (organ or HSCT)

**TTP**=Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura; **HUS**=Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome
The second hit will be produced by CNI, mTOR inhibitors, severe infections, or TBI. All these events would trigger the succession of events that are observed in Fig. 42.2.

### 42.6.3 Clinical Manifestations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manifestations of microangiopathic hemolytic anemia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>De novo anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De novo thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased transfusion requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elevated LDH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schistocytes in the blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decreased haptoglobin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manifestations of organ damage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decreased glomerular filtration rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proteinuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension; ≥2 medications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lungs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxemia, respiratory distress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GI tract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal pain/GI bleeding/ileus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headaches/confusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hallucinations/seizures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 42.6.4 Diagnostic Criteria

The gold standard for diagnosis is a biopsy of the damaged organ. However, to obtain these samples is almost impossible in these patients. Consequently, along the last years, several attempts have been carried out to reach consensus criteria for the diagnosis of this complication. The most relevant advance in this area has been to recognize some clinical data, not previously included in the diagnostic criteria, that could appear even before the classical ones and that are indicative of very bad prognosis. Unlike other TMA, the activity of ADAMTS13 never reaches levels below 5–10%.

---

Adapted from Jodele, 2014. RSA=recipient specific antibodies; APC=Antigen Presenting Cells

**Fig. 42.2** Pathogenesis of TA-TMA
### 42.6.5 Clinical Forms, Incidence, Risk Factors, and Prognosis

**Forms:** (1) TA-TMA associated to CNI—the most frequent form with good prognosis and a real incidence unknown; (2) TA-TMA not associated to CNI—bad prognosis, requiring specific measures.

**Clinical manifestations:** Onset day, median time day +32 to +40 (>92% before day +100).

**Incidence:** Unknown due to the different diagnostic criteria—literature focused on allo-HSCT, from 0.5% to 76%; EBMT survey (IWG criteria), 406 allo-HSCT, 7% (Ruutu et al. 2002); meta-analysis (variable criteria), 5423 allo-HSCT, 8.2% (George and Selby 2004); and prospective (Cho criteria), 90 allo-HSCT, 39% (Jodele et al. 2014). Similar incidence in MAC tan in RIC.

**Risk factors:** Use of CNI (more if associated to SIR), viral (CMV, ADV, BK virus, etc.) or fungal infection, active GVHD, URD/mismatch HSCT (probably due to more infections and GVHD), and several gene polymorphisms (predominate in non-Caucasian).

**Prognosis:** Despite the resolution of TA-TMA, these patients have an increased relative risk of chronic kidney disease, 4.3; arterial hypertension, 9; and TRM, 5.

### 42.6.6 How to Prevent/Manage TA-TMA?

| Systematic screening: | LDH 3 times a week
Proteinuria × 3 times per week
Blood pressure (daily) |
| --- | --- |
| If any data of TA-TMA evaluate: | Schistocytes in PB
Quantitative proteinuria
Haptoglobin and serum C5b-9 levels |
| If TA-TMA criteria | w/o proteinuria
w/o increased sC5b-9 |
| With proteinuria ≥30 mg/dL or increased sC5b-9 | → Stop CNI, treat any possible triggering cause (infection, GVHD) → All the previous measures + specific treatment (see later) |
### 42.6.7 Treatment

| Supportive | Stop CNI (substitute by PRD or MMF)  
|------------|----------------------------------|
|            | Treat intensively any infection,  
|            | GVHD, and AHT                     |
| Therapeutic plasma exchange (TPE) | In recent prospective studies,  
|            | 59–64% of CR (better if started early)  
|            | In patients with Ab anti-factor H,  
|            | better/good results with TPE ± RTX  
|            | RTX should be administered after TPE  
|            | Do not associate TPE with eculizumab |
| Rituximab (RTX) | Reported 12/15 responses to RTX + TPE (Uderzo et al. 2014)  
|            | RTX should be administrated immediately after TPE |
| Defibrotide (DF) | Recent report with 46 adults and children: 77% of CR (Yeates et al. 2017) |
| Eculizumab | Indicated in TA-TMA with proteinuria ≥ sC5b-9: 67% of responses  
|            | Children could require higher doses (quantify CH50 to adjust the doses) (Jodele et al. 2015, 2016a) |

CH50: Total hemolytic complement activity

- Even in those patients where resolution of the syndrome is achieved, the probability of survival of the procedure is clearly reduced

### References


Ho VT, Cutler C, Carter S, et al. Blood and marrow transplant clinical trials network toxicity committee consensus summary: thrombotic microangiopathy after...


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
43.1 Introduction

Graft-versus-host disease (GvHD) was first recognized in murine models of HSCT, and in the absence of knowledge of the HLA system, it was termed “secondary” (secondary to recovery from irradiation damage) or “runt” disease on the basis of anorexia, reduced weight, diarrhea, ruffled fur, and eventual death. Billingham established the criteria for the occurrence of secondary disease in the 1960s, i.e.:

- The administration of a graft containing immunocompetent cells
- Immunological disparity between host and donor
- The administration of the graft to an immunosuppressed host unable to reject the graft cells

In the human setting, we traditionally recognize two forms of GvHD, acute (aGvHD) and chronic (cGvHD). The original distinction of acute from chronic GvHD, namely, the occurrence before or after day 100 post stem cell infusion, has become blurred due to occurrence of aGvHD symptoms beyond day 100 after RIC regimens and/or after DLI (usually given after day 100). Nevertheless, the underlying combination of symptoms and signs affecting the skin, liver, and gastrointestinal tract forms a classical clinical syndrome enabling the diagnosis, and a helpful guide to the appropriate terminology is provided in Table 43.1 (Filipovich 2005).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Day after SCT</th>
<th>Features of acute GvHD</th>
<th>Features of chronic GvHD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acute GvHD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Classic acute</td>
<td>&lt;100 days</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Persistent, recurrent, or late onset</td>
<td>&gt;100 days</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic GvHD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Classic chronic</td>
<td>No time limit</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Overlap syndrome</td>
<td>No time limit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
43.2 Definition

aGvHD remains, directly or indirectly, the major cause of short-term (day 100 and 1 year) mortality after allo-HSCT. The pathophysiology of aGvHD has been attributed to a three-phase process comprising initial tissue damage from the conditioning regimen which in turn leads to activation of host antigen-presenting cells by pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) and damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) and activation and proliferation of donor T cells (afferent phase) and finally to the effector phase characterized by cytotoxic cell damage and release of inflammatory cytokines such as interleukin-1 (IL-1) and tissue necrosis factor-alpha (TNFα) that eventually produce tissue necrosis (effferent phase). The action of this pathogenetic process in the induction of aGvHD is modulated in part by the presence of cells capable of inhibiting immune response, such as T-regulatory cells (Tregs), Type 1 regulatory T cells (Tr1 cells), invariant NKT cells, and myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) (Ferrara et al. 2009; Teshima et al. 2016).

43.3 Risk Factors

As aGvHD is a result of an alloimmune effect the major risk for occurrence is the presence of HLA disparity and increasing degrees of HLA-mismatching increase the probability of more severe disease. Other important and consistent risk factors include older patient age, the use of female donors for male recipients, prior alloimmunization of the donor, and the nature of GvHD prophylaxis. A number of publications have variously reported risk factors such as increasing donor age, increasing intensity of the preparative regimen, the use of PBSC as opposed to BM, and recipient seropositivity for CMV.

A recent study of 2941 recipients of allo-HSCT in Seattle confirmed the importance of the degree of HLA mismatching, the use of URD, and the administration of high-dose TBI in predicting the occurrence of moderate to severe aGvHD. In contrast they found that increasing donor age, cytokine-mobilized stem cells, and the use of female donors for male recipients did not impact on the likelihood of aGvHD but were associated with the occurrence of cGvHD (Flowers et al. 2011).

More recently we have begun to appreciate the importance of non-HLA genetic factors in the development of GvHD. Examples include polymorphisms in the genes encoding cytokines such as the tumor necrosis factors, the interleukins (IL-1, IL-6, and IL-10), interferon gamma (IFN-γ), and transforming growth factor-β3 (TGF-β3) and the expression of the killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptors (KIR). Interestingly one of the common features of the organs involved in aGvHD is that they are all exposed to microbial pathogens through the intestinal mucosa, epidermis, and portal circulation, and early murine studies confirmed a reduction in the severity and incidence of GvHD in animals that received antibiotic prophylaxis to “decontaminate” the GI tract or those kept in germ-free environments. This has led to the speculation that potential differences within individuals in the interactions of antigens derived from infective organisms and pathogen recognition receptors (PRR) might protect or predispose to the occurrence of GvHD. To date the most extensively studied of these receptors is NOD2 (CARD15) which detects muramyl dipeptide (MDP), a by-product of peptidoglycan, which is itself a cell wall component of most bacteria. Single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) in NOD2 are present in approximately 15% of the population, and several investigators have studied their potential association with the occurrence of GvHD. Results are so far conflicting, and further work is required to determine their real significance (reviewed in Penack et al. 2010).

More recently, the availability of non-cultural methods to analyze the whole set of bacteria (called microbiota) has broadened our view as the presence of commensal microbiota and a high diversity of the patients’ microbiota associated with substantial protection not only from GvHD but also from systemic and pulmonary infectious complications. The exact mechanisms of this protection need still to be defined before translation into new preventive approaches, but
beneficial effects of microbial metabolites (such as short-chain fatty acids and indoles) both on epithelial integrity and on immunoregulation are likely (Shono and van den Brink 2018; Peled et al. 2016).

### 43.4 Diagnosis and Scoring

aGvHD is manifested by one or more of the following features: an erythematous skin reaction, cholestatic liver disease, and gastrointestinal dysfunction. The variety of presentations in each organ is provided in more detail in Table 43.2: the syndrome ranges from a mild self-limiting condition to a serious and potentially fatal disorder. Because of the complexity of care of an allo-HSCT recipient, it is often very difficult to distinguish the characteristic features of aGvHD from those of other complications such as VOD/SOS, conditioning, and general drug toxicity and infection and consequently to determine the appropriate choice of treatment.

For this reason, it is essential to establish the diagnosis by biopsy of one or more affected organs and confirmation of the characteristic histopathological features (Table 43.3). The targets of the immune response in aGvHD are the epithelial cells including basal and suprabasal cells of the epidermis, the intestinal epithelium, and the biliary duct epithelium, and the characteristic feature is identical, i.e., the presence of infiltrating immune cells close to apoptotic cells known as “satellite cell necrosis.”

The first classification of aGvHD was developed by Glucksberg et al. (1974). Each organ was staged from 0 to 4 (Table 43.4), and the resultant stages were combined to provide an overall grade (Table 43.5) (Glucksberg et al. 1974). In 1994 Przepiorka et al. described the outcome of a Consensus Workshop to develop

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 43.2 Clinical manifestations of acute GvHD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Organ</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal (GI) tract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 43.3 Histopathological findings in acute GvHD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Organ</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
an improved scoring system that retained most of the characteristics of Glucksberg but dropped the use of the clinical performance score and included upper intestinal symptoms within the definition of aGvHD (Przepiorka et al. 1995). Subsequently, the IBMTR prospectively evaluated a “severity index” against the Glucksberg criteria but were unable to identify any particular advantage for the new system (Rowlings et al. 1997). In fact, the Glucksberg score was a better predictor of survival and remains in regular use (Cahn et al. 2005). Currently, electronic applications are developed supporting accuracy of staging and grading of acute GvHD (Schoemans et al. 2018).

### 43.5 Epidemiology

Moderate to severe aGvHD occurs in approximately 40% of all recipients of allo-HSCT, but the precise incidence varies considerably depending predominantly on the nature of the donor and the method of GvHD prophylaxis. Without effective prophylaxis, it is an almost inevitable and frequently deleterious complication at least in unrelated matched donor and mismatched family grafts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Skin based on maculopapular rash</th>
<th>Liver based on bilirubin</th>
<th>Gastrointestinal based on quantity of diarrhea</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>&lt;25% of surface</td>
<td>34–50 μmol/L</td>
<td>500–1000 mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>++</td>
<td>25–50% of surface</td>
<td>51–102 μmol/L</td>
<td>1001–1500 mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+++</td>
<td>Generalized erythoderma</td>
<td>103–255 μmol/L</td>
<td>&gt;1500 mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>++++</td>
<td>Generalized erythoderma with bullae and desquamation</td>
<td>&gt;255 μmol/L</td>
<td>Severe abdominal pain with and without ileus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 43.4 Staging of acute graft-versus-host disease

#### Table 43.5 Overall grading of acute GvHD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>[ ]</th>
<th>[ ]</th>
<th>[ ]</th>
<th>[ ]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>−</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>−</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>−</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>−</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

43.6 Prevention

(Also See Chap. 25)

Grade III–IV aGvHD, especially if it turns out to be resistant to first-line treatment, has an extremely poor prognosis despite therapeutic intervention, and consequently considerable efforts are made to try and prevent its occurrence. The rationale of prophylaxis was originally directed toward prolonged IS of donor T-cell function through the peri- and post transplant administration of IS agents. Early studies identified the superiority of a combination of the CNI and CSA, with MTX over MTX alone. In practice this combination remains the most frequently used method of prophylaxis although some investigators have replaced CSA with tacrolimus (TAC) since large two phase III randomized studies reported a reduction in the incidence of grade II–IV aGvHD at 32% in recipients of sibling transplants and 56% in those who received unrelated donor grafts in patients who received TAC plus MTX compared to 44% (sibling) and 74% (unrelated) in those who were randomized to CSA and MTX. However, there was no difference in survival that could be attributed to the nature of the GvHD prevention (Ratanatharathorn et al. 1998; Nash et al. 2000). Recently, investigators have also reported the efficacy of newer agents such as mycophenolate mofetil (MMF) and sirolimus (SIR). Whereas MMF has not been tested in large randomized trials, the combination of TAC and SIR was compared with that of TAC and MTX in a phase III randomized study showing equivalent efficacy but differences in toxicity (Törlén et al. 2016).

An alternative approach to GvHD prophylaxis is to consider removal of donor T cells either
ex vivo prior to infusion or in vivo before and/or after infusion using polyclonal (anti-thymocyte globulin, ATG) or MoAb. A similar effect can also be achieved by positive selection of CD34+ stem cells. These techniques, collectively known as TCD, are extremely efficient in preventing acute and chronic GvHD and were in widespread use in the 1980s and 1990s. Unfortunately, they were rapidly identified as contributing to an increased risk of infection and disease relapse and subsequently became confined to situations in which the risk of GvHD is increased, e.g., recipients of mismatched and haploidentical transplants where the risk of death from GvHD outweighs the risk of later disease recurrence. In unrelated donor SCT, polyclonal ATG has become a major player as two randomized trials showed positive effects mainly on chronic GvHD (Finke et al. 2009; Walker et al. 2016).

Recently, a prospective, double-blind phase III trial to investigate the effect of ATG in the setting of MUD HSCT showed that grade II–IV acute GvHD and moderate-severe cGvHD were lower in ATG recipients but the overall survival was lower in ATG recipients (Soiffer et al. 2017). This could be related to higher ATG levels in patients with low lymphocyte counts following TBI which might translate in subsequent infectious complications and EBV-related post transplant lymphoproliferative disease. Thus, balancing suppression of long-term GvHD versus suppressing anti-infectious defense is an ongoing challenge in GvHD (Gagelmann et al. 2017).

Other studies have explored alternative methods of aGvHD prophylaxis including the infusion of an expanded population of T-regulatory cells at the time of stem cell infusion and partial TCD such as depletion of α/β T cells or elimination of alloreactive T cells after in vitro or in vivo activation. In this context, the administration of PT-CY in order to eliminate early activated donor T cells has gained substantial interest particularly in the context of haploidentical transplantation, and further studies comparing the more complex T-cell depletion approach with the simple approach of PT-CY are currently performed (Kanakry et al. 2016).

### 43.7 Treatment

Grade I aGvHD, by definition affecting only the skin, can often be effectively treated with topical steroids alone. Early systemic treatment of grade I GvHD has been tested but showed no long-term advantage. More advanced grades require systemic therapy, and the mainstay of treatment remains high-dose methyl-prednisolone (or equivalent), usually at a dose of 2 mg/kg/day, continued for 7–14 days and followed by a gradual reduction in dose (Ruutu et al. 2014). Patients with mild upper GI GvHD may start on lower doses with concomitant topical treatment; higher doses of steroids resulted in more infectious complications without superior long-term response. The chance of response decreases with increasing grade of GvHD, but in general approximately 40–50% of patients will demonstrate a response. Reductions in steroid doses may be followed by an exacerbation of symptoms that can sometimes be settled by simply increasing the dose and reducing more slowly on the second occasion. Achieving a balance between the levels of IS required to control aGvHD and retaining a degree of immunocompetence against microbial infection is challenging, and viral and fungal infections are frequent complications of prolonged steroid therapy. Anti-infective prophylaxis should be considered for all such patients.

Among several candidates for first-line combination treatments, the most promising combination of steroids and MMF has been taken forward to a phase III study against steroids alone but failed to show superiority for the combination again due to an increased rate of infectious complications. Thus, so far no single agent has shown superiority of results when combined with corticosteroids for first-line treatment (Martin et al. 2012; Rashidi et al. 2016).

Failure to respond to standard steroid doses (defined as progression within 3–5 days of starting treatment or an incomplete response by 7–14 days) or recurrence after initial dose reduction (steroid dependence) will necessitate second-line treatment. In this context many agents have been tried alone or in combination with
corticosteroid. None have shown convincing long-term efficacy. The most frequent choice of second-line therapy involves one or more MoAb recognizing T cells or ATG. MoAb include alemtuzumab for the pan T-cell marker CD52, daclizumab, or inolimomab for the alpha subunit of the IL-2 receptor expressed on activated T cells; and infliximab and etanercept for TNF-α. These agents often result in short-term control, but durable effects are relatively infrequent, and the outcome of refractory aGvHD is dismal with approximately 80% mortality, especially if the lower GI tract is involved.

Responses have been reported with extracorporeal photopheresis administered at least twice a week on a weekly basis, and outcome seems to be superior with less toxicities occurring (Jagasia et al. 2013) (see Chap. 66).

In 2006, Ringden et al. reported the successful use of mesenchymal stromal cells (MSC) in a small group of patients with refractory severe aGvHD, and later this group described a response rate of >50% in a larger group of patients (Munneke et al. 2016). MSC exert immunosuppressive effects in a non-HLA-restricted manner and like Tregs offer interesting and novel strategies for the management of this potentially fatal complication although long-term results need to be established in future trials (Le Blanc et al. 2008).

While classical IS regimens inhibit a signal pathway or cytokine receptor, novel strategies target the signaling events downstream of cytokine receptors (e.g., Janus-activated kinase JAK 1 and 2), CD28 (e.g., Aurora kinase), cell migration (ROCK), or growth factor signaling (e.g., MEK). These inhibitors were tested in preclinical studies and showed promising activity (Hill et al. 2018). A prospective study on the JAK1 inhibitor itacitinib showed GvHD response rates of over 70%, and a retrospective survey on ruxolitinib-treated patients showed that also patients with steroid refractory GvHD may respond to JAK1/2 inhibition (Zeiser et al. 2015). The therapeutic concept of JAK1/2 inhibition is currently tested for steroid-refractory (SR) SR-aGvHD and SR-cGvHD in randomized phase III trials.

Another novel approach is infusion of alpha-1 anti-trypsin which exerts anti-inflammatory effects and stimulates regulatory T cells. Two recent phase II trials showed CR rates of 35% and OR rates of 60% of the patients on day 28 after treatment starts (Marcondes et al. 2016 Magenau et al. 2018). Vedolizumab is an antibody directed against α4β7 integrin which is selectively expressed in the GI tract and approved for treatment of Crohn’s disease. A first report indicated high response rates for SR-aGvHD (Fløisand et al. 2017). However, more recent updates indicate a high treatment-related mortality in patients receiving vedolizumab due to infections of over 70%, and the ongoing phase III trials will provide more information.

43.8 Future Perspectives: Biomarkers and Risk-Adapted Treatment

The difficulties to improve results in SR-aGvHD underline that steroid resistance might not just represent resistance of alloreactive T cells but loss of immunoregulation and tissue tolerance (Wu and Reddy 2017) which is difficult to overcome by classical immunosuppressants. Besides new approaches of modulation, potential solutions might be earlier risk adapted or even preemptive treatment strategies which require, however, reliable and reproducible identification of these patients. Recently, clinical risk scores (MacMillan et al. 2015) and novel biomarkers have been reported. The strength of these biomarkers for early identification of high-risk patients at day 7 after HSCT or at onset of GvHD has been proven in large multicenter consortia and needs now confirmation by trials on biomarker-guided treatment strategies (Vander Lugt et al. 2013; Hartwell et al. 2017; Levine et al. 2015). The strength of the current biomarkers and scores are partially explained by the fact that they identify GI GvHD as the most severe and deleterious manifestation in an early phase of the disease.
Key Points

- Acute GvHD occurs until day 100 as classical acute GvHD and beyond day 100 as delayed acute GvHD.
- As treatment options are limited beyond the use of corticosteroids, careful selection of GvHD prevention is essential.
- Besides classical IS agents like CNI, MTX or MMF, and m-ToR inhibitors, partial TCD (IV serotherapy, depletion of T-cell subpopulations, elimination of alloreactive T cells or PT-CY) are possible options for prophylaxis.
- Institutional standards of treatment and supportive care are essential.

References


44.1 Introduction

Chronic GVHD (cGVHD) is the most relevant cause of late non-relapse morbidity and subsequent mortality (approximately 25%) following allo-HSCT (Grube et al. 2016). Its incidence is approximately 50% among all patients following allo-HSCT and has increased during the last two decades due to increasing patient age and increasing use of unrelated and/or mismatched donors, RIC regimens, and PBSC (Arai et al. 2015). While the incidence of cGVHD is lower (20–40%) in children, its incidence rises to 60% as age increases (Baird et al. 2010).

The pathophysiology of cGVHD is different from aGVHD and mainly characterized by impaired immune tolerance mechanisms affecting innate and adaptive immunity. Both autoreactive and alloreactive donor-derived T and B cells play a role (Cooke et al. 2017). Other pathophysiological factors are indirect presentations of alloantigens through antigen-presenting donor cells and mechanisms of chronic inflammation with subsequent scar formation and fibrosis. One important aspect of GVHD pathophysiology is the variability of immune reconstitution, which is age-related and dependent on thymic function and hormones. This adds to the unpredictability of the effects of transplant procedures and complications in a very heterogenous cohort of children and adolescents with malignant and nonmalignant diseases.

Known risk factors for adult and pediatric cGVHD are unrelated and/or mismatched donor, PBSCs as donor source, older donor age, female donor into male recipient, and the use of total body irradiation (Baird et al. 2010). By far the strongest predictor is the history and severity of acute GVHD.

In addition to the harm it causes, cGVHD also has a protective effect, as patients with cGVHD have lower rates of recurrence of their underlying malignant disease (Grube et al. 2016). Overall survival of patients transplanted for malignant diseases developing mild cGVHD is therefore better compared to patients without cGVHD. Even OS of patients with moderate cGVHD is not different from patients without cGVHD, as the slightly increased mortality associated with cGVHD is counterbalanced by lower disease-associated mortality (Kuzmina et al. 2012).

In contrast, the long-term mortality rate of patients with severe cGVHD is as high as 50% taken into account that the severity is less relevant compared to certain risk factors for mortality consisting of low platelets at diagnosis of cGVHD, the direct progression of acute GVHD into cGVHD (progressive onset), and certain organ manifestations.
(lung, gastrointestinal and cholestatic liver involvement) (Grube et al. 2016). One important pediatric aspect involves the high proportion (up to 50%) of nonmalignant underlying diseases as HSCT indication. While malignant diseases benefit from the graft-versus-malignancy effect induced by GVHD, it only offers harm for the nonmalignant diseases. In daily clinical routine, this fact influences GVHD prophylaxis and treatment both in regard to intensity and duration of immunosuppressants (Lawitschka et al., data of a survey by the EBMT pediatric diseases WP, submitted). However, prospective pediatric data of immune reconstitution in GVHD patients evaluating the influence of underlying diseases are scarce.

### 44.2 Clinical Manifestations

cGVHD usually begins between 3 months and 2 years after HSCT, but earlier onset (at least 1 month after transplantation) is possible (Jagasia et al. 2015). Besides classical manifestations, cGVHD can imitate almost any autoimmune disease, such as myasthenia gravis and myositis. As cGVHD can affect a number of organs, and patients often do not report changes until functional impairment is recognized, regular examination of all organs potentially affected is essential. The following section describes the most common clinical organ manifestations of cGVHD. In general, pediatric manifestations are similar to adult cGVHD; when indicated, specific aspects are shortly described.

#### 44.2.1 Skin

The skin is the most frequently involved organ with different morphology, depending on the different skin layers (epidermis, cutis, subcutis, and fasciae) involved. Some manifestations may overlap with acute GVHD like erythema, maculopapular rash, and pruritus. Cutaneous cGVHD may show many different non-sclerotic and sclerotic phenotypes often simulating well-known chronic inflammatory and autoimmune diseases (Strong Rodrigues et al. 2018).

Diagnostic features of NIH-defined cGVHD include poikiloderma, lichen planus-like, lichen sclerosus-like, morphea-like, and deep sclerotic eruptions, and no biopsy is needed to confirm the diagnosis. Distinctive for cGVHD, other or common skin manifestations like depigmentation and papulosquamous lesions or ichthyosis, keratosis pilaris, pigmental changes, loss of skin appendages, and sweat impairment are not sufficient for diagnosis and require histopathological confirmation if no diagnostic signs in the skin or other organs are present (Jagasia et al. 2015).

In pediatric patients, the incidence of viral reactivation and infection seems higher (although only proven for some viruses), and therefore infection has to be ruled out. Viral skin infections can worsen or activate cGVHD (Jacobsohn 2010). Premature graying of the hair is even in small children common, possibly together with seborrheic scalp changes. Of note, if sweat glands are destroyed, this may be of importance for phototherapy because of the inability to sweat with consequent hyperthermia.

#### 44.2.2 Eyes

cGVHD of the eyes usually manifests as keratitis sicca. In addition to atrophy of the lacrimal gland with subsequent tear deficiency (sicca syndrome), the meibomian glands and eyelids are often affected by severe blepharitis which may initially present with tearing. Around the conjunctiva there are often not only fibrotic alterations but also chronic persistent inflammation with visible erythema of the conjunctiva. As dry eye symptoms are rarely communicated by children, light sensitivity is the predominant symptom, sometimes with excessive eye rubbing. Infections have to be ruled out. Referral to a pediatric experienced ophthalmologist is recommended.

#### 44.2.3 Oral Mucosa

Oral manifestations may appear as erythema or lichenoid changes (the latter are regarded as diagnostic) of the oral mucosa as well as ulcer and mucoceles. Sicca symptoms may result from destruction of the salivary glands. Long-term cGVHD may lead to gingivitis, periodontitis, increased tooth decay, and tooth loss. In children
excessive drinking during eating may be the first symptom of oral involvement. Not only mucosal problems but abnormal teeth development (e.g., hypodontia, root malformation, enamel hypoplasia) and caries are often seen as secondary symptoms in infants.

44.2.4 Liver

Liver involvement manifests as cholestasis and may resemble primary biliary cirrhosis, but hepatic forms with high transaminases are also possible. Other factors, such as viral infections (hepatitis A, B, C, and E, CMV, EBV, ADV, and HHV6/7), drug toxicity, or total-parenteral nutrition-related cholestasis, should be excluded, but liver biopsy may be required to confirm the diagnosis, particularly in patients with no other symptoms of cGVHD and failure to respond to initial treatment of suspected GVHD (Stift et al. 2014).

44.2.5 Gastrointestinal Tract

GI manifestations can lead to dysphagia (esophagus), nausea and vomiting (stomach), or chronic diarrhea and malabsorption syndrome (intestines, pancreas). Occasionally cGVHD may also manifest as immune-mediated pancreatitis. Of note, except esophageal involvement, intestinal involvement is regarded as manifestation of acute GVHD, and patients are therefore classified as suffering from overlap syndrome in which concomitant symptoms of chronic and acute GVHD occur.

Infections like ADV or CMV gastroenteritis, secondary gluten or lactose intolerance, pancreatic insufficiency, and drug-related side effects (e.g., mycophenolate mofetil) have to be ruled out.

Malnutrition and enteral fluid and protein loss in small children require regular laboratory monitoring.

44.2.6 Genitals

The symptoms of cGVHD are similar to those of genital lichen planus which may occur in males and females. Vaginal synechiae, ulceration, and fissures can subsequently occur. Genital manifestations are often associated with oral manifestations of cGVHD. As symptoms may not be reported spontaneously, females suffering from cGVHD require regular gynecological follow-up. In girls cGVHD may manifest with vulvovaginitis, in boys with balanitis or balanoposthitis. Of note, healing may occur with fibrosis possibly leading to synechia with the risk of hematocolpos during puberty in females and of phimosis in males.

44.2.7 Lung

Pulmonary manifestations occur as progressive, irreversible obstruction (bronchiolitis obliterans) and less frequently lymphocytic alveolitis resulting in interstitial fibrosis or bronchiolitis obliterans organizing pneumonia (BOOP) (see Chap. 52).

Since the onset of pulmonary symptoms may not be symptomatic and obstruction may be irreversible, regular evaluations of a serial pulmonary function test (PFT) with body plethysmography (from the age of 4–6 years on) and diffusion capacity (usually from 8–10 years of age on) are required in asymptomatic patients. While interstitial fibrosis is well known after lung transplant (restrictive allograft syndrome), prospective data after allogeneic HSCT are lacking, but case reports indicate that restrictive immune-mediated lung disease after allo-HSCT may occur.

Patients require follow-up by a pediatric experienced pulmonologist. Of note, the possible overlap of (1) myopathy/hypotrophy of the respiratory muscles (glucocorticoid induced, ± central obesity, and/or physical inactivity), (2) restriction of the chest wall in the context of dermal sclerosis, and (3) unproportional chest growth after TBI and/or local irradiation may contribute with a restrictive ventilator dysfunction leading to a mixed picture.

Finally, a thorough diagnostic evaluation includes a lung CT scan and a BAL to rule out viral, bacterial, fungal, and mycobacterial infections.

Coexisting IgA deficiency and chronic sinusitis or sinubronchial syndrome should be considered in the diagnostic workup (Hildebrandt et al. 2011).
44.2.8 Joints and Fasciae

cGVHD-associated fasciitis (diagnostic for cGVHD) can result in restricted mobility of joints. This can also be caused by deep cutaneous sclerosis. Moreover, rheumatoid complaints may be associated with cGVHD. In children myositis, muscle weakness, cramping, edema, and pain are quite common. However, iatrogenic glucocorticoid-induced myopathy may overlap with fasciitis. Range-of-motion (ROM) examinations are recommended at baseline and at serial intervals with the P-ROM scale providing an easy-to-apply tool. (There is a pediatric adaption, ped P-ROM; see addendum).

44.3 Diagnosis

cGVHD is diagnosed on the basis of cGVHD symptoms of eight organs, laboratory values (for hepatic manifestations), and PFTs. Each organ is graded between 0 and 3. The overall severity of cGVHD is classified as mild, moderate, or severe based on this organ-specific grading (number of organs and severity). Overall severity is calculated on the basis of the number of organs affected and the severity of their involvement. Only in case that functional involvement is solely due to non-GVHD causes the impairment is not scored (Jagasia et al. 2015). Biomarkers of cGVHD are currently explored but require validation before clinical use.

44.3.1 Organ Grading of cGVHD for Adults and Children (See Annex 1 and Addendum)

44.3.2 Grading of Overall Severity of cGVHD (Jagasia et al. 2015)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Overall severity</th>
<th>Mild</th>
<th>Moderate</th>
<th>Severe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of involved organs</td>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>≥3</td>
<td>≥3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severity of involved organs (excluding lung)</td>
<td>Mild</td>
<td>Mild–moderate (lung only mild)</td>
<td>Severe (lung moderate or severe)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If diagnostic symptoms of cGVHD are absent, histological confirmation of diagnosis may be required. This may be particularly the case in gastrointestinal, nonspecific cutaneous, hepatic, and pulmonary manifestations to rule out toxic or infectious causes or comorbidity. Clinopathologic series indicate a significant risk for inappropriate diagnosis and subsequent treatment if diagnosis has been made solely by clinical manifestations (and lacking diagnostic symptoms) without histological confirmation.

44.4 Treatment

44.4.1 First-Line Therapy

First-line treatment (see Table 44.1) consists of steroids given alone or in combination with CNI and is based on randomized trials.

As mild cGVHD does not impair organ function, the use of topical IS (topical steroids, topical CNI, or phototherapy) should be considered. If this is impossible, PRD treatment at an initial dose of 0.5–1 mg/kg body weight/day is recommended. Topical IS can be used in addition to systemic IS, to improve efficacy, or to reduce systemic IS, but lack systemic efficacy.

For moderate or severe cGVHD, systemic treatment with PRD or methylPRD at an initial dose of 1 mg/kg body weight/day should be used. In individual cases lower doses of 0.5–1 mg/kg may be used (Jacobsohn 2010). The combination of steroids with a CNI (CSA or TAC) is particularly worth considering for severe cGVHD. Rituximab has been explored in first-line treatment of cGVHD in combination with steroids and CNI demonstrating an increased response rate on the expense of an increased risk for late infectious complications and delayed B-cell recovery. Currently, ECP and ibrutinib are evaluated in first-line treatment of cGVHD within randomized clinical trials.

As cGVHD often takes time to respond to IS treatment, response should not be assessed until at least 8 weeks have elapsed or until 3–6 months have elapsed in the presence of deep cutaneous sclerosis. Long-term IS treatment lasting at least 3–6 months is often required. Dose reduction of IS agents should be performed stepwise.
Depending on the patient population, first-line therapy achieves complete remission of cGVHD in approximately 20% (adults) to 50% (children) of cases. If symptoms progress during the first 4 weeks of first-line therapy or there is no improvement in symptoms within 8–12 weeks, second-line therapy should be initiated.

### 44.4.2 Topical Therapy and Supportive Care

In principle, there is no difference between cGVHD treatment for children and adults. However, long-term steroid therapy in children causes major side effects in terms of growth, bone density, osteonecrosis, and organ development, making agents that reduce steroid use, entailing the use of topical drugs, particularly important. Age-based ancillary supportive care is essential in the management of pediatric cGVHD with the chance of sparing systemic therapy, often supported by highly compliant parents and/or family members as caregivers (Carpenter et al. 2015). In small children, the risk of systemic effects of topical steroid and CNI treatment must be considered. cGVHD is by itself remarkably immunosuppressive intensified by its treatment (especially high-dose corticosteroids) leading to a high risk for infections: (a) for viral reactivation like CMV, ADV, and EBV and (b) for fungal infection like candida and aspergillosis. Functional asplenia with occurrence of Howell-Jolly bodies and a higher incidence of pneumococcal sepsis has to be considered also. Breakdown of skin and mucosal barriers adds to this risk.

Revaccinations (see Chap. 29) with inactivated vaccines are strongly recommended after consolidation of cGVHD (Hilgendorf et al. 2011). Live vaccines should be avoided in this patient population. Ursodeoxycholic acid reduced liver GVHD and improved survival (Ruutu et al. 2014). Supplemental IVIG replacement is recommended in cGVHD patients with IgG <400 mg/dL or recurrent infections which is of special importance in children but does also apply to adults. In case of long-term substitution or the history of anaphylactic reactions, we prefer to substitute subcutaneously.

### 44.4.3 Second-Line Therapy

While first-line therapy is based on randomized trials, second-line therapy mostly is based on phase II trials, and retrospective analyses are available (see Table 44.2). In addition, because
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Response rate</th>
<th>Side effects in &gt;25% of patients</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steroids</td>
<td>B III-1</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>Osteoporosis, osteonecrosis, diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>Main drug, strategies to reduce use due to SEs very important</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibrutinib</td>
<td>C-1 III-1</td>
<td>~50–75% CR, ~16–25% CR</td>
<td>Bruising, diarrhea, infections</td>
<td>FDA approved in second-line treatment of cGVHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photophereses</td>
<td>C-1 II</td>
<td>~60–70% CR, ~30% CR</td>
<td>Infections of the CVC (if applicable)</td>
<td>Venous access required, steroid-saving effect, good tolerability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mTOR-inh (sirolimus, everolimus)</td>
<td>C-1 III-1</td>
<td>~60% CR, ~20% CR</td>
<td>TMA, hyperlipidemia, cytopenia</td>
<td>Increased risk of TMA when combined with CNI, regular blood levels required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMF</td>
<td>C-1 III-1</td>
<td>~50% CR, ~10% CR</td>
<td>GI SEs, risk of infection (viral) and increased risk of relapse</td>
<td>Steroid sparing activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNI</td>
<td>C-1 III-1</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>Renal toxicity, hypertension</td>
<td>Reduces steroid use, regular blood levels required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTX</td>
<td>C-2 III-1</td>
<td>~50% CR, ~10–20% CR</td>
<td>Cytopenia</td>
<td>Best results in mucocutaneous cGVHD, reduces steroid use, contraindicated in the presence of pleural effusions or ascites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL-2</td>
<td>C-2 III-1</td>
<td>~65% (only PR), ~5% (only PR)</td>
<td>Fever, malaise, and fatigue</td>
<td>Applied in sclerodermoid skin disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruxolitinib</td>
<td>C-2 III-1</td>
<td>n.a. (retrospective analysis)</td>
<td>Increased risk for viral reactivation, bacterial infection, hepatotoxicity</td>
<td>Prospective data pending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bortezomib</td>
<td>C-2 III-1</td>
<td>n.a. for second-line Tx</td>
<td>Cytopenia, neuropathy</td>
<td>Trial was performed in first-line treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-dose steroids</td>
<td>C-2 III-2</td>
<td>50–75% CR (only PR)</td>
<td>Infections</td>
<td>Rapid control of cGVHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total nodal irradiation</td>
<td>C-2 III-2</td>
<td>~50% CR, ~25% CR</td>
<td>Cytopenia</td>
<td>Best results for fasciitis and mucocutaneous cGVHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydroxychloroquine</td>
<td>C-2 III-2</td>
<td>~25% CR, ~10% CR</td>
<td>GI side effects</td>
<td>Best results for mucocutaneous and hepatic cGVHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentostatin</td>
<td>C-2 II</td>
<td>~50% CR, ~10% CR</td>
<td>Cytopenia, risk of infection</td>
<td>Best results in children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rituximab</td>
<td>C-2 II</td>
<td>~50% CR, ~10% CR</td>
<td>Risk of infection</td>
<td>Effective in manifestations associated with autoAb and sclerodermoid cutaneous involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imatinib</td>
<td>C-2 III-1</td>
<td>~50% CR, ~20% CR</td>
<td>Fluid retention</td>
<td>Efficacy demonstrated mainly in sclerodermod cGVHD and bronchiolitis obliterans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thalidomide</td>
<td>C-3 II</td>
<td>~20–30% (only PR)</td>
<td>Neurotoxicity, drowsiness, constipation</td>
<td>Treatment for simultaneous cGVHD and recurrent multiple myeloma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Table 44.2 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Recommendation Grade</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Response rate</th>
<th>Side effects in &gt;25% of patients</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Azathioprine</td>
<td>C-3</td>
<td>III-1</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>Cytopenia, risk of infection, secondary malignancies</td>
<td>Increased risk of malignant disease of the oral mucosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retinoids</td>
<td>C-3</td>
<td>III-2</td>
<td>~60% (only PR)</td>
<td>Skin toxicity, hyperlipidemia</td>
<td>Effective in sclerodermoid cutaneous involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abatacept</td>
<td>C-3</td>
<td>III-2</td>
<td>~40%</td>
<td>Effective in mucocutaneous and pulmonary involvement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulatory T cells</td>
<td>C-4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Currently explored in several clinical trials</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesenchymal stem cells</td>
<td>C-4</td>
<td>III-2</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>Repetitive application required</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alemtuzumab</td>
<td>C-4</td>
<td>III-3</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>Infectious risks</td>
<td>Last resort for refractory cGVHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etanercept</td>
<td>C-4</td>
<td>III-3</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>Infectious risks</td>
<td>May be used to treat mixed acute and chronic GVHD or pulmonary or GI manifestations of cGVHD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adapted from Wolff et al. (2011). B: should generally be used, C-1: use in second-line therapy justified, C-2: use after failure of second-line therapy justified, C-3: should only be used in specific circumstances, due to unfavorable risk profile, C-4: experimental, should only be used in clinical trials and individual cases, II: evidence from >1 well-designed clinical trial without randomization, from cohort or case-controlled analytic studies (preferable from >1 center) or from multiple time series, III-1: several reports from retrospective evaluations or small uncontrolled clinical trials, III-2: only one report from small uncontrolled clinical trial or retrospective evaluations, III-3: only case reports available, SE: side effect, n.a.: not available

The data on disease severity and patient populations are very heterogeneous (in terms of age, conditioning, and stem cell source), the published response rates cannot be fully extrapolated to the majority of patients currently treated for cGVHD. Moreover, many substances have been used almost exclusively in combination with steroids.

In general, no more than three IS agents should be combined, as combinations of more drugs often does not lead to improved efficacy but results in a significantly increased risk of side effects and infections. Because of the substantial toxicity of long-term steroid treatment, strategies for dose reduction are very important. Since no predictors of response for a single agent in individual patients are yet available, the choice of agent depends mainly on side effect profiles and patients’ medical history. The response rates for specific agents range between 20% and 70% (photopheresis).

Certain drugs such as imatinib and retinoids are recommended only for manifestations associated with sclerosis (bronchiolitis obliterans [imatinib], sclerodermoid cutaneous alterations [retinoids, imatinib]), because of their specific mechanisms of action.

Response is assessed as for first-line therapy. Administration of drugs that have been shown to be ineffective should be stopped. As a rule, drugs shown to be ineffective should be tapered off stepwise with no more than one drug to be changed at a time in order to be able to evaluate their efficacy.
# Appendix 1

## Annex 1 - Organ Scoring of Chronic GVHD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERFORMANCE SCORE:</th>
<th>SCORE 0</th>
<th>SCORE 1</th>
<th>SCORE 2</th>
<th>SCORE 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KPS ECOG LPS</td>
<td>□ Asymptomatic and fully active (ECOG 0; KPS or LPS 100%)</td>
<td>□ Symptomatic, fully ambulatory, restricted only in physically strenuous activity (ECOG 1, KPS or LPS 80-90%)</td>
<td>□ Symptomatic, ambulatory, capable of self-care, &gt;50% of waking hours out of bed (ECOG 2, KPS or LPS 60-70%)</td>
<td>□ Symptomatic, limited self-care, &gt;50% of waking hours in bed (ECOG 3-4, KPS or LPS &lt;60%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SKIN† SCORE %BSA</th>
<th>No BSA involved</th>
<th>1-18% BSA</th>
<th>19-50% BSA</th>
<th>&gt;50% BSA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**GVHD features to be scored by BSA:**

Check all that applies:

- Maculopapular rash/erythema
- Lichen planus-like features
- Sclerotic features
- Papulosquamous lesions or ichthyosis
- Keratosis pilaris-like GVHD

**SKIN FEATURES SCORE:**

- No sclerotic features
- Superficial sclerotic features "not hidebound" (able to pinch)

**Check all that applies:**

- Deep sclerotic features
- "Hidebound" (unable to pinch)
- Impaired mobility
- Ulceration

**Other skin GVHD features (NOT scored by BSA):**

Check all that applies:

- Hyperpigmentation
- Hypopigmentation
- Poikiloderma
- Severe or generalized pruritus
- Hair involvement
- Nail involvement

Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD documented cause (specify):

**MOUTH**

Lichen planus-like features present:

- Yes
- No

- No symptoms
- Mild symptoms with disease signs but not limiting oral intake significantly
- Moderate symptoms with disease signs with partial limitation of oral intake
- Severe symptoms with disease signs on examination with major limitation of oral intake

Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD documented cause (specify):
### Annex 1 - Organ Scoring of Chronic GVHD (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SCORE 0</th>
<th>SCORE 1</th>
<th>SCORE 2</th>
<th>SCORE 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>EYES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keratoconjunctivitis sicca (KCS) confirmed by Ophthalmologist:</td>
<td>□ Yes</td>
<td>□ No</td>
<td>□ Not examined</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ No symptoms</td>
<td>□ Mild dry eye symptoms not affecting ADL (requirement of lubricant eye drops ≤3 x per day)</td>
<td>□ Moderate dry eye symptoms partially affecting ADL (requiring lubricant eye drops &gt; 3 x per day or punctal plugs), <strong>WITHOUT</strong> new vision impairment due to KCS</td>
<td>□ Severe dry eye symptoms significantly affecting ADL (special eyewear to relieve pain) <strong>OR</strong> unable to work because of ocular symptoms <strong>OR</strong> loss of vision due to KCS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GI TRACT</strong></td>
<td>□ No symptoms</td>
<td>□ Symptoms without significant weight loss* (&lt;5%)</td>
<td>□ Symptoms associated with mild to moderate weight loss* (5-15%) <strong>OR</strong> moderate diarrhea without significant interference of daily living</td>
<td>□ Symptoms associated with significant weight loss* &gt;15%, requires nutritional supplement for most calorie needs <strong>OR</strong> esophageal dilation <strong>OR</strong> severe diarrhea with significant interference of daily living</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Check all that applies:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Esophageal web/ proximal stricture or ring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Dysphagia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Anorexia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Nausea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Vomiting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Diarrhea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Weight loss*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Failure to thrive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LIVER</strong></td>
<td>□ Normal total bilirubin and ALT or AP &lt;3 x ULN</td>
<td>□ Normal total bilirubin with ALT ≥3 to 5 x ULN or AP &gt; 3 x ULN</td>
<td>□ Elevated total bilirubin but ≤3 mg/dL or ALT &gt; 5 ULN</td>
<td>□ Elevated total bilirubin &gt; 3 mg/dL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LUNGS</strong>**</td>
<td>□ No symptoms</td>
<td>□ Mild symptoms (shortness of breath after climbing one flight of steps)</td>
<td>□ Moderate symptoms (shortness of breath after walking on flat ground)</td>
<td>□ Severe symptoms (shortness of breath at rest; requiring 02)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Symptoms score:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ FEV1 ≥80%</td>
<td>□ FEV1 60-79</td>
<td>□ FEV1 40-59%</td>
<td>□ FEV1 ≤39%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lung score:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FEV1</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pulmonary function tests</strong></td>
<td>□ Not performed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD documented cause (specify):*

---

**Notes:**
- **SCORE 0:** No symptoms
- **SCORE 1:** Mild dry eye symptoms not affecting ADL (requirement of lubricant eye drops ≤3 x per day)
- **SCORE 2:** Moderate dry eye symptoms partially affecting ADL (requiring lubricant eye drops > 3 x per day or punctal plugs), **WITHOUT** new vision impairment due to KCS
- **SCORE 3:** Severe dry eye symptoms significantly affecting ADL (special eyewear to relieve pain) **OR** unable to work because of ocular symptoms **OR** loss of vision due to KCS

**GI TRACT**
- **Check all that applies:**
  - Esophageal web/ proximal stricture or ring
  - Dysphagia
  - Anorexia
  - Nausea
  - Vomiting
  - Diarrhea
  - Weight loss*
  - Failure to thrive

**LIVER**
- **Normal total bilirubin and ALT or AP <3 x ULN**
- **Normal total bilirubin with ALT ≥3 to 5 x ULN or AP > 3 x ULN**
- **Elevated total bilirubin but ≤3 mg/dL or ALT > 5 ULN**
- **Elevated total bilirubin > 3 mg/dL**

**LUNGS****
- **Symptoms score:**
  - No symptoms
  - Mild symptoms (shortness of breath after climbing one flight of steps)
  - Moderate symptoms (shortness of breath after walking on flat ground)
  - Severe symptoms (shortness of breath at rest; requiring 02)

**Lung score:**
- **FEV1 ≥80%**
- **FEV1 60-79**
- **FEV1 40-59%**
- **FEV1 ≤39%**

**Pulmonary function tests**
- Not performed

---

**Notes:**
- **Keratoconjunctivitis sicca (KCS):**
  - Confirmed by Ophthalmologist:
    - **Yes**
    - **No**
    - **Not examined**

**GI TRACT symptoms without significant weight loss* (<5%):**
- **No symptoms**
- **Symptoms**
  - Without significant weight loss* (<5%)**

**GI TRACT symptoms associated with mild to moderate weight loss* (5-15%) OR moderate diarrhea without significant interference of daily living:**
- **Symptoms**
  - Associated with mild to moderate weight loss* (5-15%) **OR** moderate diarrhea without significant interference of daily living

**GI TRACT symptoms associated with significant weight loss* >15%, requires nutritional supplement for most calorie needs OR esophageal dilation OR severe diarrhea with significant interference of daily living:**
- **Symptoms**
  - Associated with significant weight loss* >15%, requires nutritional supplement for most calorie needs **OR** esophageal dilation **OR** severe diarrhea with significant interference of daily living

---

**LIVER symptoms:**
- **Normal total bilirubin and ALT or AP <3 x ULN**
- **Normal total bilirubin with ALT ≥3 to 5 x ULN or AP > 3 x ULN**
- **Elevated total bilirubin but ≤3 mg/dL or ALT > 5 ULN**
- **Elevated total bilirubin > 3 mg/dL**

---

**LUNGS**** symptoms:**
- **No symptoms**
- **Mild symptoms** (shortness of breath after climbing one flight of steps)
- **Moderate symptoms** (shortness of breath after walking on flat ground)
- **Severe symptoms** (shortness of breath at rest; requiring 02)

---

**Pulmonary function tests:**
- **FEV1 ≥80%**
- **FEV1 60-79**
- **FEV1 40-59%**
- **FEV1 ≤39%**

**Pulmonary function tests:**
- **Not performed**
### Annex 1. Organ scoring of chronic GVHD (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JOINTS AND FASCIA</th>
<th>SCORE 0</th>
<th>SCORE 1</th>
<th>SCORE 2</th>
<th>SCORE 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P-ROM score (see below)</td>
<td>□ No symptoms</td>
<td>□ Mild tightness of arms or legs, normal or mild decreased range of motion (ROM) AND not affecting ADL</td>
<td>□ Tightness of arms or legs OR joint contractures, erythema thought due to fasciitis, moderate decrease ROM AND mild to moderate limitation of ADL</td>
<td>□ Contractures WITH significant decrease of ROM AND significant limitation of ADL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **JOINTS AND FASCIA**
  - **P-ROM score** (see below)
  - **Shoulder (1-7):** ___
  - **Elbow (1-7):** ____
  - **Wrist/finger (1-7):** ___
  - **Ankle (1-4):** ___

- **Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD documented cause (specify):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GENITAL TRACT (See Supplemental figure)</th>
<th>SCORE 0</th>
<th>SCORE 1</th>
<th>SCORE 2</th>
<th>SCORE 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ No signs</td>
<td>□ Mild signs‡ and females with or without discomfort on exam</td>
<td>□ Moderate signs‡ and may have symptoms* with discomfort on exam</td>
<td>□ Severe signs‡ with or without symptoms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD documented cause (specify):**

#### Other indicators, clinical features or complications related to chronic GVHD

- **Ascites (serositis)___**
- **Myasthenia Gravis____**
- **Pericardial Effusion____**
- **Peripheral Neuropathy_____**
- **Eosinophilia > 500µl___**
- **Pleural Effusion(s)___**
- **Polymyositis____**
- **Platelets <100,000/µl ___**
- **Nephrotic syndrome____**
- **Weight loss* without GI symptoms ___**
- **Others (specify):_____________**

#### Overall GVHD Severity (Opinion of the evaluator)

- **No GVHD**
- **Mild**
- **Moderate**
- **Severe**

#### Photographic Range of Motion (P-ROM)

Adapted from Jagasia, 2015.

† Skin scoring should use both percentage of BSA involved by disease signs and the cutaneous features scales. When a discrepancy exists between the percentage of total body surface (BSA) score and the skin feature score, OR if superficial sclerotic features are present (Score 2), but there is impaired mobility or ulceration (Score 3), the higher level should be used for the final skin scoring.

* Weight loss within 3 months.

** Lung scoring should be performed using both the symptoms and FEV1 scores whenever possible. FEV1 should be used in the final lung scoring where there is discrepancy between symptoms and FEV1 scores.

**Abbreviations:** ECOG (Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group), KPS (Karnofsky Performance Status), LPS (Lansky Performance Status), BSA (body surface area); ADL (activities of daily living); LFTs (liver function tests); AP (alkaline phosphatase); ALT (alanine aminotransferase); NUL (normal upper limit).

‡ To be completed by specialist or trained medical providers (see Supplemental Figure).
## Appendix 2

### Diagnosis and staging cGVHD in children

Jagasia et al. BBMT 2015<br>Pediatric adaptation A. Lawitschka 11/2015

**Please score/check the worst manifestation**

**Diagnostic features are marked bold**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptoms/features</th>
<th>Score 0</th>
<th>Score 1</th>
<th>Score 2</th>
<th>Score 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KPS/LPS: %</td>
<td>□ asymptomatic and fully active (KPS/LPS 100%)</td>
<td>□ sympt., fully amb., restricted only in physically strenuous activity (KPS/LPS 80-90%)</td>
<td>□ sympt., amb., capable of self-care, &gt;50% of waking hours out of bed (KPS/LPS &lt; 60%)</td>
<td>□ sympt., limited self-care</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Skin**

Feat. scored by BSA:
- no BSA involved
- 1-18% BSA
- 19-50% BSA
- > 50% BSA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Score0</th>
<th>Score1</th>
<th>Score2</th>
<th>Score3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>maculopapular rash/erythema</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lichen planus-like features</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sclerotic features:</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ lichen sclerosus-like</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ morphea-like</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ papulosquamous lesions</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ ichthyosis</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ keratosis pilaris-like GVHD</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feat. not scored by BSA:
- hyperpigmentation
- hypopigmentation/depigmentation
- poikilodermatosis
- severe pruritus
- hair involvement
- nail involvement
- sweat impairment
- abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD cause (specify):

**Feature decisive for diagnosis/scoring:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sclerotic features</th>
<th>□ no sclerotic features</th>
<th>□ superficial sclerotic features</th>
<th>□ deep sclerotic features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;not hidebound&quot; (able to pinch)</td>
<td>&quot;hidebound&quot; (unable to pinch)</td>
<td>impaired mobility</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Mouth**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Score0</th>
<th>Score1</th>
<th>Score2</th>
<th>Score3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>erythema</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lichen planus-like features</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyperkeratotic plaques</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mucoceles/pseudomembranes</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ulcers</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dryingness</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Feature decisive for diagnosis/scoring:**
### Appendix 2 - Diagnosis and staging cGVHD in children (continued)

#### Symptoms/Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eyes</th>
<th>Score 0</th>
<th>Score 1</th>
<th>Score 2</th>
<th>Score 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No symptoms</td>
<td>Mild dry eye symptoms</td>
<td>Moderate dry eye symptoms</td>
<td>Severe dry eye symptoms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Confirmed by ophthalmologist</th>
<th>No symptoms</th>
<th>Partially affecting ADL</th>
<th>Significantly affecting ADL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dryness</td>
<td>Not affecting ADL</td>
<td>Lubricant eye drops</td>
<td>Special eyeware to relieve pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photophobia</td>
<td>Discomfort</td>
<td>Lubricant eye drops</td>
<td>Unable to work because of ocular symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudomembranes</td>
<td>Ulcers</td>
<td>Without new vision</td>
<td>Symptom or loss of vision due to KCS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD cause (specify):
  - Feature decisive for diagnosis / scoring:

#### Gastrointestinal Tract

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Esophageal web or ring</th>
<th>No symptoms</th>
<th>Symptoms without significant weight</th>
<th>Symptoms associated with significant weight loss (5%)</th>
<th>Symptoms associated with significant weight loss (&gt;15%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dysphagia</td>
<td>Abdominal pain</td>
<td>Weight loss (5-15%)</td>
<td>Requires nutritional supplement for most calorie needs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anorexia</td>
<td>Failure to thrive</td>
<td>Or moderate diarrhea</td>
<td>Esophagography dilatation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nausea</td>
<td>Vomiting</td>
<td>Without significant interference with daily living</td>
<td>Severe diarrhea with significant interference with daily living</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrhea</td>
<td>Weight loss &gt; 5%</td>
<td>Daily living</td>
<td>Most severe diarrhea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD cause (specify):
  - Feature decisive for diagnosis / scoring:

#### Liver

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bili</th>
<th>AST:____</th>
<th>ALT:____</th>
<th>GGT:____</th>
<th>AP:____</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal total bili</td>
<td>3-5x ULN</td>
<td>&lt; 3 ULN</td>
<td>&gt; 3 mg/dl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD cause (specify):
  - Feature decisive for diagnosis / scoring:

#### Lungs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FEV1</th>
<th>MEF25:_____</th>
<th>No symptoms</th>
<th>Mild symptoms</th>
<th>Moderate symptoms</th>
<th>Severe symptoms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FVC:</td>
<td>FEV1 ≥ 80%</td>
<td>(Shortness of breath)</td>
<td>(Shortness of breath at rest; requiring O2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLCO:</td>
<td>After climbing one flight of steps</td>
<td>After walking on flat ground</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RV:</td>
<td>RV/TLC &gt; 120%</td>
<td>FEV1 ≤ 39%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT:</td>
<td>FEV1 60-79%</td>
<td>FEV1 40-59%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD cause (specify):
  - Feature decisive for diagnosis / scoring:

#### Joints and Fascia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ped P-ROM score (see below)</th>
<th>No symptoms</th>
<th>Mild tightness, normal or mild ↓ of range of motion (ROM)</th>
<th>Tightness or joint contractures, fasciitis</th>
<th>Significant ↓ of ROM, significant ↓ of ADL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edema</td>
<td>Fasciitis</td>
<td>Not affecting ADL</td>
<td>Moderate ↓ of ADL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscle cramps</td>
<td>Myalgia</td>
<td>Mild - moderate ↓ of ADL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD cause (specify):
  - Feature decisive for diagnosis / scoring:

#### Genital Tract

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lichen planus-like features</th>
<th>No signs</th>
<th>Mild signs</th>
<th>Moderate signs</th>
<th>Severe signs with or without symptoms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lichen sclerosus-like features</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Abnormality present but explained entirely by non-GVHD cause (specify):
  - Feature decisive for diagnosis / scoring:

#### Overall GVHD Severity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No cGVHD</th>
<th>Mild:</th>
<th>Moderate:</th>
<th>Severe:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Score 0</td>
<td>Score 1</td>
<td>Score 2</td>
<td>Score 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. score in any affected organ or lung involvement</td>
<td>≥ 3 organ with max score 1 or max score of 2 in any affected organ, lung score max 1</td>
<td>Score 3 in any affected organ, lung score 2-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix 2 - Diagnosis and staging cGVHD in children (continued)

#### Other indicators, clinical features or complications related to cGVHD

Check all that apply and assign a severity score (0-3) based on functional impact.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicators</th>
<th>Organ</th>
<th>Check</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ascites (serositis)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pericardial effusion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleural effusion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephrotic syndrome</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>others (specify)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organ</th>
<th>Check</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>myasthenia gravis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peripheral neuropathy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polymyositis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weight loss &gt;5% without GI symptom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diabetes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Categorization</th>
<th>Check</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eosinophilia &gt;500/ul</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>platelets &lt;100 000/ul</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypo/hyperglobulinemia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto-antibodies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Biopsy:

Please mark appropriate number:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Joint</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shoulder</td>
<td>1 (worst) 2 3 4 5 (normal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elbow</td>
<td>1 (worst) 2 3 4 (normal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wrist / Finger</td>
<td>1 (worst) 2 3 4 (normal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global Flexion</td>
<td>1 (worst) 2 3 4 (normal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ankle</td>
<td>1 (worst) 2 3 (normal)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pediatric photographic range of motion (adapted ped P-ROM):

*Please mark appropriate number.*
Appendix 3

Genital Tract GVHD Assessment and Scoring Form

Name: ___________________________________________ Date of birth: ___________________
Assessment date: ___________________

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GENITAL TRACT (male or female)</th>
<th>SCORE 0</th>
<th>SCORE 1</th>
<th>SCORE 2</th>
<th>SCORE 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ No signs</td>
<td>□ Mild signs and females may have symptoms* WITH discomfort on exam</td>
<td>□ Moderate signs and may have symptoms* with discomfort on exam</td>
<td>□ Severe signs with or without symptoms*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Currently sexually active:  
☐ Yes   ☐ No

Check all signs that applies:
☐ Lichen planus -like features
☐ Lichen sclerosis-like features
☐ Vaginal scarring (female)
☐ Clitoral/labial agglutination (female)
☐ Labial resorption (female)
☐ Erosions
☐ Fissures
☐ Ulcers
☐ Phimosis (male)
☐ Urethral meatus scarring/stenosis (male)

☐ Abnormality present but NOT thought to represent GVHD (specify cause):
______________________________________________________________________________

☐ Abnormality thought to represent GVHD PLUS other causes (specify cause):
______________________________________________________________________________

* Genital symptoms are not specific to cGVHD and can represent premature gonadal failure or genital tract infection.

If a gynecologist is unavailable, external examination may be performed to determine “discomfort on exam” as follows:

a) Spread the labia majora to inspect the vulva for the above signs. Touch the vestibular gland openings (Skene’s and Bartholin’s), labia minora and majora gently with a qtip. Vulvar pain elicited by the gentle touch of a qtip is classified as discomfort on examination. Palpate the vaginal walls with a single digit to detect bands, shortening, narrowing or other signs of vaginal scarring.

b) If the woman is sexually active, determine whether qtip palpation or gentle palpation of scarred ridges elicits pain similar to that which the woman experiences during intercourse.

Female genitalia: Severity of signs:
1) Mild (any of the following): erythema on vulvar mucosal surfaces, vulvar lichen-planus or vulvar lichen-sclerosis.
2) Moderate (any of the following): erosive inflammatory changes of the vulvar mucosa, fissures in vulvar folds.
3) Severe (any of the following): labial fusion, clitoral hood agglutination, fibrinous vaginal adhesions, circumferential fibrous vaginal banding, vaginal shortening, synchuria, dense sclerotic changes, and complete vaginal stenosis.

Male genitalia: Diagnostic features include lichen planus-like or lichen sclerosis-like features and phimosis or urethral scarring or stenosis. Severity of signs:
1) Mild: lichen planus-like feature;
2) Moderate: lichen sclerosis-like feature or moderate erythema;
3) Severe: phimosis or urethral/meatal scarring.

Biopsy obtained:  
☐ Yes   ☐ No  
Site biopsied: ______________  
GVHD confirmed by histology:  
☐ Yes   ☐ No

Change from previous evaluation:  
☐ No prior or current GVHD  
☐ Improved  
☐ Stable  
☐ Worse  
☐ N/A (baseline)

Completed by (spell out name): ____________________________________________
Date form completed: ___________________
References


45.1 Definitions

Post transplant lymphoproliferative disorders (PTLDs) constitute a heterogeneous group of lymphoproliferative diseases that occur in the setting of transplantation and result from the uncontrolled neoplastic proliferation of lymphoid or plasmacytic cells in the context of extrinsic immunosuppression after transplantation.

PTLD in HSCT setting are largely caused by latent Epstein-Barr virus (EBV, HHV-4), belonging to the herpesviruses family. It is one of the most common viruses in humans, with prevalence of 82–84% in overall population. EBV is associated with development of various diseases, which can be categorized as primary syndromes, EBV-associated tumors, and EBV-associated post transplant diseases: PTLD and other end-organ diseases (encephalitis/myelitis, pneumonitis, hepatitis, or hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis).

Comparably to other herpesviruses, there are two types of EBV infection: primary and recurrent. Primary EBV infection is diagnosed when EBV is detected (nucleic acid or serologically) in an EBV-naïve individual. Recurrent EBV-DNAemia (previously: latent infection) is diagnosed by detection of EBV-DNA in the blood, in a previously infected individual.

45.2 Types of PTLD

PTLD or end-organ EBV-associated post transplant disease can be diagnosed at the probable or proven level. Probable EBV disease is diagnosed in case of significant lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, or other end-organ manifestations (without tissue biopsy, but in the absence of other documented cause) together with high EBV-DNA-emia. Proven EBV disease (PTLD or other end-organ disease) is diagnosed in case of symptoms and/or signs from the affected organ together with the detection of EBV-encoded RNA by in situ hybridization (EBER-ISH) in a tissue specimen (immunohistochemistry for EBV proteins have good specificity but lower sensitivity; these proteins are variably expressed in PTLD biopsies). Histological WHO 2016 classification includes six types of morphological PTLD: plasmacytic hyperplasia, infectious mononucleosis-like, florid follicular hyperplasia, polymorphic, monomorphic (B-cell or T/NK-cell types), and classical Hodgkin lymphoma PTLD.
Atypical PTLD:

- EBV-negative PTLD: A growing number of cases of EBV-negative PTLD have been reported, mainly in SOT recipients. These cases tend to present later (>5 years after transplant) after transplant, and an increased risk is observed as long as 10 years after transplantation. These cases should be regarded as malignant lymphoma rather than as PTLD.
- T-lineage PTLD: T-PTLD is usually EBV-negative, and the relatively long latency between transplantation and T-PTLD onset may be explained by molecular events. The frequency of T-PTLDs ranges 4–15% of all PTLD cases. EBV is present in approximately one-third of T-PTLDs.
- Composite B-cell and T-cell lineage PTLD: Harboring both B- and T-cell clones either concurrently or successively in the same patient is extremely rare, and only a few cases have been reported in the literature, exclusively after SOT, with poor outcome.

45.3 Pathogenesis

The pathogenesis of PTLDs is a result of EBV-induced transformation of B cells in the setting of impaired anti-EBV cellular immunity due to iatrogenic IS and resulting in an outgrowth of EBV-infected B cells. GVHD prevention strategies that indiscriminately remove T cells from the graft increase the risk of PTLD.

Recurrent EBV infection preceding clinically overt PTLD is the consequence of viral latency, which is the stage in the viral life cycle in which no virions are produced, as opposed to the lytic stage. During viral latency of EBV, three associated patterns of viral protein expression, so-called latency programs, may be expressed. During infection of the B cell, these latency programs guide the B cell through the germinal center reaction pushing it toward the resting memory cell stage. Different latency proteins are implicated in EBV-driven lymphomagenesis demonstrated by the expression of a particular latency program in different lymphoma subtypes.

B cells in PTLD express a number of latency proteins which are highly immunogenic and are vigorously targeted by T lymphocytes in immunocompetent hosts. This viral gene program in EBV-PTLD is called type III of latency and is different and less immunogenic than in other EBV-related diseases with type I or II of latency.

EBV plays also an important role in pathogenesis and epidemiology of acute and chronic GVHD. As B cells also play a role in the pathophysiology of chronic GVHD, and B cells are stimulated into activity by EBV infection, and B-cell recovery occurs usually after day +100, the impact of EBV-infected B cells is stronger for development of chronic, and to less extent, acute GVHD.

45.4 Clinical Manifestations

Lymphadenopathy and fever are the most common symptoms of EBV-PTLD. Rare EBV-associated PTLD manifestations, also referred as EBV end-organ disease, include encephalitis/myelitis, pneumonitis, hepatitis, and hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis.

45.5 Diagnosis

The diagnosis of EBV-PTLD must be based on symptoms and/or signs consistent with PTLD
together with detection of EBV by an appropriate method applied to a specimen from the involved tissue. Definitive diagnosis of EBV-PTLD requires noninvasive and invasive techniques (biopsy and histological examination).

**Noninvasive diagnostic methods**
- Quantitative determination of EBV-DNA-emia
- Imaging: CT or PET-CT (for avid structures, localized in the lymph nodes, spleen, liver, GI tract, skin, lungs, bone, BM) or MRI (in CNS disease and non-avid histologies)

**Invasive diagnostic methods**
- Biopsy of the lymph node and/or other suspected sites
- Endoscopy: when GI symptoms
- Histological examination
  - (a) Detection of viral antigens or in situ hybridization for EBER (EBV-encoded RNA) transcripts
  - (b) Immunohistochemistry
  - (c) Flow cytometry for B cell, T cell, and plasma cell lineage-specific antigens

---

**Risk Factors**

Risk of development of PTLD is essentially proportional to the degree of T-cell depletion/impairment, and this should be regarded as the principal risk factor. Thus, the type of donor and type of conditioning have secondary value as risk factors. Since in HSCT setting PTLD usually originates from donor, the risk of PTLD is obviously higher when the donor is seropositive. Risk factors for PTLD in match family donor (MFD) transplants include TCD ex vivo or in vivo, EBV serology mismatch between donor and recipient, and splenectomy. ECIL-6 classified HSCT patients into three groups of the risk for EBV-PTLD: low, standard, and high risk.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk group</th>
<th>Patients</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>MUD/MMUD, Alternative donors including CBT, MFD-HSCT with at least one risk factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>MFD-HSCT without risk factors, Haplo-PTCy-HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Auto-HSCT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Grading**

No grading system currently exists for PTLD. It seems that apart from the findings from biopsy material with a histological examination; the diagnostic criteria of tissue involvement in PTLD should be consistent with those for lymphoma (the Ann Arbor and the Lugano classifications). Nowadays, the use of FDG-PET-CT has emerged as an important imaging tool for PTLD diagnosis and staging.

Possible staging of PTLD:
- Clinical end-organ staging: nodal vs. extranodal disease
- Clinical severity staging: limited (unifocal) vs. advanced (multifocal) disease
- ECIL-6 staging (based on the Lugano lymphoma classification by PET-CT imaging): limited (stages I–II), advanced forms (stages III–IV)

---

**Treatment**

**45.8.1 Prevention: Donor and Recipient Issues**

As EBV might be transmitted with the graft, selection of EBV-seronegative donor might be beneficial for EBV-seronegative recipient, if possible. For EBV-seropositive patients, selection of
an EBV-seropositive donor might be justified, as transmission of EBV-specific CTLs outweighs the risk of transmission of EBV-positive B cells from the donor.

### 45.8.2 Treatment Strategies

PTLD has to be regarded as disseminated disease at diagnosis. This is because of the involvement of lymphoid tissue, which is localized throughout the whole body. Therapeutic approaches applied in the prevention and treatment of EBV-PTLD include administration of RTX, reduction of immunosuppression (RIS), use of EBV-CTL, DLI, and chemotherapy, while other methods have only historical value. No antiviral drug is currently effective against EBV. There are three major approaches to EBV infection after HSCT: prophylaxis, preemptive therapy (also known as preemptive prophylaxis), and treatment of established EBV-PTLD.

#### 45.8.2.1 Prophylaxis

Prophylaxis of EBV disease is defined as drug or cellular therapy given to an asymptomatic EBV-seropositive patient to prevent EBV-DNA-emia. This strategy is administered rarely, with the use of rituximab (RTX) or EBV-CTL.

The rationale for prophylactic use of RTX before or early after allo-HSCT is B-cell depletion. Prophylactic use of post transplant RTX reduced the risk of EBV-DNA-emia, with no impact on PTLD incidence, TRM, or OS in comparison to preemptive therapy.

The prophylactic use of EBV-CTLs resulted in excellent efficacy in patients at a high-risk group for EBV-PTLD. The obstacle for the use of this approach is limited availability of CTLs for most transplant centers.

Low risk of EBV-DNA-emia and EBV-PTLD was observed after the use of PT-CY and SIR for GVHD prophylaxis.

#### 45.8.2.2 Preemptive Therapy

Drugs or cellular therapy is given to a patient with EBV-DNA-emia in order to prevent EBV disease.

Monitoring for EBV-DNA-emia is essential in all patients with risk factors for EBV-PTLD. Significant EBV-DNA-emia without clinical symptoms of disease in high-risk patients for EBV-PTLD is usually an indication for preemptive therapy.

The goal is to obtain a negative EBV PCR or EBV-DNA-emia below the initial threshold without relapse.

Usually, EBV-DNA-emia occurs prior to the onset of clinical symptoms. There is a correlation between rising or high EBV-DNA-emia in PB and the development of EBV-PTLD, but this is not the rule.

Currently available data does not allow for the determination of an unambiguous EBV-DNA threshold value for the diagnosis of EBV-PTLD or other end-organ EBV disease in HSCT patients.

Apart from EBV-DNA value, also the kinetics of a rising EBV-DNA-emia, together with an assessment of an individual patient’s immune function, are very important when appraising the need for preemptive therapy. Local experience based on correlation of clinical and laboratory data might be a rationale for center-specific cut-off value.

The primary method for preemptive therapy includes RTX, once weekly until EBV-DNA-emia negativity. Usually, 1–2 doses of RTX are sufficient. RTX should be combined with reduction of the IS (RIS), if possible. A contraindication for RIS is severe, uncontrolled acute, or chronic GVHD. This approach might have additional benefit of RTX administration, as RTX possibly reduces the risk of acute/chronic GVHD. Donor or third-party EBV-CTL is another option, although it is not widely available.

#### 45.8.2.3 Treatment of Established EBV-PTLD

Treatment of established EBV-PTLD means therapeutic interventions for patients with probable or proven EBV disease. Due to the consequential risk of a rapidly growing high-grade lymphoid tumor, together with the potential for EBV to cause rapid MOF, therapy should be implemented as soon as possible.
For first-line therapy, three options are recommended: (a) RTX, 375 mg/m², once weekly; (b) RIS, if possible, usually together with administration of RTX; (c) adoptive immunotherapy with cellular therapy with in vitro generated donor or third-party EBV-CTL, if available.

For the second-line therapy, in case of RTX failure: (a) cellular therapy (non-specific DLI or specific EBV-CTLs, if available); (b) chemotherapy ± RTX. Unselected DLI from EBV-positive donor is used in order to restore broad T-cell reactivity, including EBV-specific responses.

Not recommended: IVIg, interferon, and antiviral agents should not be used for therapy of PTLD.

### 45.8.3 Results of Anti-EBV-PTLD Therapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment strategy</th>
<th>Preemptive therapy (%)</th>
<th>Therapy of PTLD (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RTX</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTX + RIS</td>
<td></td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBV-CTL</td>
<td>94–100</td>
<td>71–75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RIS</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLI</td>
<td></td>
<td>58a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemotherapy</td>
<td></td>
<td>26a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antivirals (cidofovir)</td>
<td></td>
<td>34b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RTX rituximab, RIS reduction of immunosuppression

With other therapies

### 45.8.4 Treatment in CNS Disease

CNS localization of PTLD is a special form of the disease, due to the risk of neurological consequences even in case of successful eradication of EBV from CNS. No standard therapy has been accepted up to date.

Possible therapeutic options include (a) RTX, either systemic or intrathecal; in the latter case, dose of RTX was 10–30 mg in 3–10 mL saline administered weekly; (b) T-cell therapy with EBV-CTLs; (c) radiotherapy; (d) chemotherapy ± RTX according to primary CNS lymphoma protocols based on high dose of MTX ± Ara-C.

### 45.8.5 Criteria of Response to Therapy in EBV-PTLD

The treatment goal in EBV-PTLD setting is the resolution of all signs and symptoms of PTLD together with negative EBV-DNA-emia.

The response to RTX therapy can be identified by a decrease in EBV-DNA-emia of at least 1 log of magnitude in the first week of treatment.

Positive prognostic factors for outcome to RTX therapy include age below 30 years, underlying non-malignant disease, no acute GVHD ≥II, RIS at time of PTLD diagnosis, and decrease of viral load after 1 or 2 weeks of therapy.

Complete remission of PTLD can be defined as resolution of all symptoms of PTLD, including clearance of EBV-DNA-emia. Partial response of PTLD can be stated with the decrease of at least 50% of initial changes, including decrease of EBV-DNA-emia.

The response to therapy can be confirmed by achievement of a PET-negative complete remission for avid lymphomas and CT/MRI for non-avid histologies or CNS localization.

### Key Points

- Definition: PTLD results from an uncontrolled neoplastic proliferation of lymphoid or plasmacytic cells in the context of extrinsic IS after HSCT transplantation. PTLDs in HSCT setting are largely caused by latent EBV. Risk factors for EBV-PTLD are proportional to the degree of T-cell impairment.
- Diagnosis: Should be based on invasive techniques including biopsy of the lymph node and/or other sites suspected for EBV disease. Noninvasive diagnostic methods have accessory value and include the quantitative determination of EBV-DNA-emia in blood, plasma or serum, and PET-CT/CT/MRI.
- Management strategies: Prophylaxis, preemptive treatment, and therapy of established EBV-PTLD. Therapeutic
approaches include administration of rituximab, RIS, use of EBV-CTL, or DLI and chemotherapy, while other methods have only a historical value.

- EBV-DNA-emia threshold value: No value determines diagnosis of EBV-PTLD or other end-organ EBV disease in HSCT patients. In order to initiate preemptive therapy, transplant centers should use own threshold values of EBV-DNA-emia.

- Outcome: Administration of rituximab results in a positive outcome for over 90% of patients treated preemptively and over 65% when it is used as targeted therapy for EBV-PTLD. RIS when applied in combination with rituximab: over 80%. The use of EBV-CTLs: >90% of patients treated preemptively and approximately 75% in therapy of EBV-PTLD.

**Recommended References**


---

**Open Access** This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
46.1 Introduction

Iron overload/toxicity is an unavoidable consequence in several diseases characterized by anemia and red blood cell transfusion requirement.

Our knowledge of iron pathophysiology has much improved during the last two decades, and we now recognize that iron damage is related not only to iron level “per se” but to the presence in the serum of non-transferrin forms of iron (non-transferrin bound iron = NTBI). A component of NTBI, called labile plasma iron (LPI), is a potent redox-active agent capable of permeating into cells in an uncontrolled way, thus inducing cellular iron overload and impacts the delicate equilibrium of labile cellular iron (LCI). The breakage of LCI balance catalyzes the formation of reactive oxygen species (ROS), which leads to cytotoxic cell injury (DNA damage, lipid peroxidation, protein modification, and mitochondrial damage). Iron toxicity depends on many factors in addition to the iron level: the quantity of the abovementioned toxic iron-related species, duration of exposure, individual’s antioxidant genetics, and environmental factors (Coates 2014). Notably NTBI and LPI appear in the serum only when transferrin saturation exceeds 60–70% (de Swart et al. 2016), and hopefully NTBI and LPI assays will be available in the next future for clinical use. Transferrin saturation is at the moment a valid surrogate indicating, when exceeding 60–70%, presence of NTBI/LPI in patient serum.

Here will be discussed the impact of iron toxicity on HSCT outcome and therapeutic options (Angelucci and Pilo 2016). This chapter will be divided in three sections with the following meanings:

- **Before transplant**: any time before the starting of the conditioning regimen
- **During transplant**: from the start of conditioning regimen up to a sustained engraftment is achieved
- **After transplant**: after sustained engraftment has been achieved

46.2 Iron Overload Before HSCT (Before the Start of Conditioning)

In thalassemia it has been very well demonstrated that HSCT outcome is significantly impacted by a story of irregular chelation, presence of liver fibrosis, and hepatomegaly (Angelucci 2010).
Now we can recognize that all the three risk factors are related to intensity and duration of tissue exposure to the abovementioned iron toxic-related species (Angelucci et al. 2017).

Therefore, any effort should be made to regularly suppress NTBI/LPI in the years before transplant to prevent tissue damage. This target can be achieved with early, regular, and consistent iron chelation. Thus, in any patient receiving transfusion therapy who may have an HSCT in the future, the decision starting chelation is critical and should be undertaken as soon as possible. Moreover, chelation must regular long life.

Limited data are available on the rationale for intensive pre-HSCT chelation therapy unless sufficient time is available to correct iron overload and warrant tissue lesions repair.

### 46.3 Iron Overload During HSCT (From the Start of Conditioning Up to Sustained Engraftment)

During conditioning regimen, a huge amount of NTBI and LPI enter the circulation due to massive erythroid marrow lysis (Dürken et al. 1997). Moreover, until the erythroid recovery begins, no iron can be released by transferrin to the erythroid system. Once erythroid recovery initiates transferrin-iron is greedily captured by the erythroid system and unbound transferrin able to receive iron from reticular endothelial system and, to a much less extent, from storages appears in the serum. Non-transferrin-iron is uptaken by erythroid cells but is not utilized for hemoglobin synthesis (Prus and Fibach 2011).

Recent transplant animal studies demonstrated that iron toxicity could impair the hematopoietic niche by damaging hematopoietic stem cells’ self-renewal potential, proliferation, differentiation, and the marrow microenvironment (Pilo and Angelucci 2018). These data suggest that iron can impact the HSC engraftment, the hemopoietic recovery, and possibly transplant outcome. From a clinical point of view, limited evidence is available. Visani and colleagues demonstrated, in an uncontrolled study, that in cases of poor and delayed engraftment, iron chelation can help in stabilizing hemopoietic engraftment (Visani et al. 2014).

Inclusion of chelation therapy during the transplant phase to suppress NTBI/LPI should be considered an experimental treatment; however, in case of slow, delayed, or incomplete marrow recovery and high transferrin saturation, chelation should be considered.

### 46.4 Iron Overload After HSCT (After Sustained Engraftment Has Been Achieved)

After successful transplantation, patients are usually free from transfusion support but affected by the already acquired iron overload that cannot be eliminated without active intervention. In this condition the already acquired intracellular iron overload continues to disrupt the delicate LCI equilibrium and promotes ROS generation. It has been prospectively demonstrated in transplanted thalassemia patients that elevated transferrin saturation persists indefinitely without treatment and liver disease progresses even in the absence of other comorbidities (Angelucci et al. 2002). Of course the deleterious effect can be worsened by presence of comorbidities even with low level of iron accumulation (Angelucci et al. 2002).

Therefore, even because of the results of epidemiologic studies in thalassemia (Coates et al. 2016; Puliyel et al. 2015) and in the normal population (Ellervik et al. 2011) in the post transplant setting, the target iron level should be a normal iron level. Normal transferrin saturation excluding the presence of toxic iron-reactive species should be the target level of post transplant iron removal.

Because of the acquired effective erythropoiesis, phlebotomy (Angelucci et al. 1997; Inati et al. 2017) can be an alternative to chelation. Table 46.1 reports the pros and cons for selecting phlebotomy or iron chelation for post-HSCT iron removal.
Table 46.1 Factors to be considered in selecting the appropriate post-HSCT iron removal strategy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pros</th>
<th>Chelation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>– Efficient</td>
<td>– Efficient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Safe</td>
<td>– Safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Inexpensive</td>
<td>– Immediate effect on NTBI/LPI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Permits complete iron removal and normalizes iron body content</td>
<td>– Hospital access not required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Requires sustained engraftment (not usable in the early post-HSCT period)</td>
<td>– Expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Immediate effect on NTBI/LPI still remains to be verified</td>
<td>– Warning of renal toxicity in the case of concomitant use of CSA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Hospital access required</td>
<td>– Immediate effect on NTBI/LPI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Key Points

- Iron toxicity depends on the presence of free iron species: non-transferrin bound iron (NTBI) and labile plasma iron (LPI).
- Prevention of tissue damage by regularly and consistently suppressing tissue reactive iron species in the years before HSCT is the key factor to improve transplant outcome.
- Iron toxicity can impair the bone marrow microenvironment, the quantity and quality of bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells, the ratio of immature HSC, and the clonogenic capacity of hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells, thus impacting hematopoietic recovery and possibly transplant outcome.
- After successful HSCT, one should aim to achieve normal iron levels (i.e., normal transferrin saturation).

References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
## 47.1 Definitions

Secondary neoplasia (SN) after HSCT includes any malignant disorder occurring after HSCT, irrespectively, if related or not to transplantation. For an individual patient, a clear relationship between HSCT and SN often cannot be provided. In this chapter, post transplant lymphoproliferative disorders are not discussed (see Chap. 45).

## 47.2 Types of Secondary Neoplasia After HSCT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Therapy-related myeloid neoplasms (t-MN)(^a)</th>
<th>Donor cell leukemia (DCL)(^b)</th>
<th>Second solid neoplasms (SSN)(^c)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Occurrence</td>
<td>t-MDS or t-AML after exposition chemo or radiation therapy</td>
<td>Hematologic neoplasms occurring in grafted donor cells</td>
<td>Solid cancers of any site and histology occurring after HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appearance</td>
<td>Mainly after auto-HSCT</td>
<td>After allo-HSCT only</td>
<td>After allo-HSCT and auto-HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prognosis</td>
<td>Within the first 10 years mainly</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Increasing incidental rate with longer follow-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Poor</td>
<td>Poor</td>
<td>Depends mainly on the cancer type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Pedersen-Bjergaard et al. (2000); Engel et al. (2018)
\(^b\)Sala-Torra et al. (2006); Wiseman (2011)
\(^c\)Kolb et al. (1999); Rizzo et al. (2009)
\(^d\)Yamasaki et al. (2017)
47.3 Pathophysiology

47.3.1 Therapy-Related Myeloid Neoplasms

t-MN are mainly associated with cytotoxic chemotherapy and radiation therapy that the patient has received either before HSCT or as conditioning. The causal role of ionizing radiation in the development of myeloid neoplasms has been demonstrated in atomic bomb survivors of Hiroshima/Nagasaki and in medical radiation workers employed before 1950.

Responsible cytotoxic drugs:

- Alkylating agents, anthracyclines, and topoisomerase II inhibitors.
- To a lesser extent antimetabolites and purines analogs.
- Controversy exists on the role of azathioprine, methotrexate, hydroxyurea, and 6-mercaptopurines used for the treatment of malignant and nonmalignant diseases.

Malignant clones transferred to the recipient are mainly of lymphoid origin, observed in older donors, and may evolve into a lymphoid neoplasm in the immunosuppressed host. Myeloid clone transfer has not been reported. However, systematic NGS analysis might allow to detect myeloid clones transmitted to the recipient.

47.3.2 Donor Cell Leukemia

The cause of donor-derived hematological malignancies remains speculative. Two different mechanisms may be involved (Sala-Torra et al. 2006; Wiseman 2011):

- Malignant clone transmitted from the donor to the recipient
- Malignant transformation in the recipient

Malignant transformation in the donor cells is probably of multifactorial causes:

- Premature aging of the donor hematopoiesis in the recipient, more inclined to develop a leukemia
- Abnormal microenvironment
- Genetic predisposition
- Acquired environmental factors

47.3.3 Second Solid Neoplasms (SSN)

Little is known about pathogenesis of SSN after HSCT. An interaction between cytotoxic treatment, genetic predisposition, environmental factors, viral infections, GVHD, and its immunosuppression may play a role.

Two main types of SSN (Rizzo et al. 2009):

- Radiation-related SSN
  - Proven for thyroid, breast, and brain cancers
  - Occur after a long latency (≥10 years after radiation)
  - Is dose related
- GVHD/immunosuppression-related SSN
  - Squamous cell carcinoma of the skin and oropharyngeal area
  - Short latency
  - Can occur at different localizations

Association with viral infection

- HCV infection associated with hepatocellular cancer
- HPV associated with cervix cancer
47.4 Frequency and Risk Factors
(See Table 47.1)

47.4.1 Remarks on SSN

The CI of second solid cancer is 2.2% at 10 years and 6.7% at 15 years (Rizzo et al. 2009).

Increased risk for SSN after HSCT has been demonstrated from breast, thyroid, skin, liver, lung, oral cavity and pharynx, bone and connective tissues cancers and malignant melanoma.

An individual patient can present several subsequent different SSN after HSCT. Up to five different solid cancers have been observed in a patient treated with allo-HSCT.

Table 47.1 Frequency and risk factors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of SN</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Risk factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t-MN</td>
<td>Great variability on the CI of t-MN after auto-HSCT</td>
<td>• Quantity of pretransplant chemotherapy (see pathogenesis) and local radiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In lymphoma patients between 1% at 2 years up to 24% at 43 months</td>
<td>• Conditioning with TBI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Lower CI for patients treated for breast cancer, germ cell tumor, and multiple myeloma</td>
<td>• Older age at HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Rare n-MN after HSCT for AID</td>
<td>t-MN are mainly observed after HSCT for lymphoma (NHL, HL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CI depends mainly on pretransplant cytotoxic therapy and the use of TBI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CI of t-MN after allo-HSCT: 0.06-0.67% at 3 years⁶</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCL</td>
<td>Rare complication, with a CI &lt;1% at 15 years</td>
<td>No clear risk factor defined (too few, heterogeneous DCL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Possibly underestimated (difficulty to prove donor type of malignant cells)</td>
<td>Possible risk factors⁷</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Could represent up to 5% of post transplant leukemia “relapses”</td>
<td>• Malignant donor clone in the transplant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• G-CSF therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• In vivo T cell depletion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Multiple transplantations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSN</td>
<td>Breast, thyroid, bone, melanoma, connective tissue, brain, BCC</td>
<td>Radiation before HSCT or TBI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Breast cancer: 11% at 25 years⁶</td>
<td>Younger age at radiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thyroid cancer: SIR 3.2 compared to general population⁴</td>
<td>Longer follow-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BCC: 6.5% at 20 years⁵</td>
<td>Light-skinned patients (BCC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSC of skin, oral cavity, and esophagus</td>
<td>SCC of the skin: 3.4 at 20 years⁵</td>
<td>Chronic GVHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prolonged GvHD therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IS including azathioprine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Male sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unrelated with radiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>At any time after HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatocellular carcinoma</td>
<td>Patients with HCV infection: CI 16% at 20 years⁵</td>
<td>HCV infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cirrhosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lung cancer</td>
<td>SIR 2.59 after BuCy⁶</td>
<td>Conditioning with Bu-Cy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Smoking prior to HCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervix cancer</td>
<td></td>
<td>HPV reactivation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melanoma</td>
<td></td>
<td>T cell depletion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BCC basal cell carcinoma of the skin, SSC squamous cell carcinoma, CI cumulative incidence, AID autoimmune disorders, SIR standardized incidence ratio
⁶Yamasaki et al. (2017)
⁷Engel et al. (2018)
⁸Friedman et al. (2008)
⁹Cohen et al. (2007)
¹⁰Leisenring et al. (2006)
¹¹Curtis et al. (2005)
¹²Peffault de Latour et al. (2004)
¹³Majhail et al. (2011)
Colorectal cancers have not been proven to be increased after HSCT. In non-transplanted cancer patients, second colorectal cancers are increased when treated with abdominal radiation (Henderson et al. 2012; Rapiti et al. 2008; van Eggermond et al. 2017).

So far there are few long-term data on SSN after RIC. A single-center study shows an increased rate of SSC compared to MAC during the first 10 years post-HSCT (Shimoni et al. 2013). There are not yet data on CI of SSN >10 years after RIC. SSN associated with TBI conditioning (breast, thyroid) might be lower after RIC than MAC.

47.5 Screening (Majhail et al. 2012)
(See Also Chap. 21)

47.5.1 Therapy-Related Myeloid Neoplasms

Annual monitoring of full peripheral blood counts during the first 10 years after auto-HSCT (most t-MN occur within 10 years after HSCT).

In case of unexpected abnormalities (increased MCV, cytopenia, dysplasia in peripheral blood, monocytosis), extended analysis of blood and bone marrow (including cytogenetics and NGS)

47.5.2 Donor Cell Leukemia

Chimerism monitoring of the malignant cells in case of “relapse” or new hematological malignancy after allo-HSCT. Whether search of an abnormal clone in the donor should be performed in case of donor origin of the malignancy remains controversial.

47.5.3 Second Solid Cancer (Socie and Rizzo 2012)

Lifelong screening for SSN is recommended after auto-HSCT and allo-HSCT. General recommendations are:

- During annual control, clinical screening, reviewing for possible symptoms of SSN.
- Receive at least country-specific general population recommendations for cancer screening.
- Be informed and counseled about the risk of SSN.

Specific recommendations are included in Table 47.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 47.2</th>
<th>Screening for secondary solid cancer after HSCT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>All patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Encouraged to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Perform regularly genital/testicular and skin self-examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• To avoid unprotected UV skin exposure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Skin examination by dermatologist every 1–2 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients at risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>More frequent examination by dermatologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• After first skin cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Patients with chronic skin GvHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral cavity and pharynx</td>
<td>All patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examination during annual control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients at risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Annual control by specialist if severe oral and pharynx GvHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Histology in case of suspicious lesion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid</td>
<td>All patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Annual thyroid palpation to identify suspicious thyroid nodules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients at risk</td>
<td>(patients at risk after TBI or local radiation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Regular thyroid ultrasound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fine needle aspiration in case of a suspicious nodule</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Breast

**All patients**
- Discuss breast self-examination with their physician
- Screening mammography every 1 to 2 years starts at the age of 25 or 8 years after radiation, whichever occurs later, but not later than age of 40 years

**Patients at risk**
- Patients at risk (high-dose busulfan conditioning and smoking), chest CT

### Cervix

**All patients**
- Screening with pap smears every 1–3 years in women older than 21 or within 3 years of initial sexual activity, whichever occurs earlier

### Lung

**All patients**
- Encouraged to avoid smoking and passive tobacco exposure
**Patients at risk**
- Patients at risk (high-dose busulfan conditioning and smoking), chest CT

### Liver

**Patients at risk**
- Patients with known HCV infection should be assessed for fibrosis/cirrhosis of the liver 8–10 years after HSCT (biopsy; fibroscan)

### Colorectal

**All patients**
- Screening should start at age 50 in absence of a family history (first-degree relative diagnosed with colorectal cancer before age 60): annual fecal occult blood testing, sigmoidoscopy every 5 years, with fecal occult testing every 3 years, or colonoscopy every 10 years

### Prostate

**All patients**
- No specific recommendations

---

### 47.6 Treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neoplasm</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| t-MN     | Same treatment than de novo myeloid neoplasms  
          | Early donor search and rapid allo-HSCT  
          | Decision-making including consideration of cumulative toxicity due to previous HSCT |
| DCL      | No standard treatment  
          | Treatment depends on the nature of disease  
          | Reported treatments:  
          | - Retransplantation  
          | - Conventional chemotherapy  
          | - DLI  
          | - Palliation |
| SSN      | Should be treated as de novo cancers of the same type |

---

### 47.7 Outcome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neoplasm</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| t-MN     | Generally very poor  
          | Median survival of 6 m  
          | Identical outcome than t-MN in general |
| DCL      | Few data available  
          | In most cases, mortality high and OS poor  
          | In a small series of 47 DCL, median survival 32.8% months  
          | Death mainly due to progression or relapse of DCL |
| SSN      | Mainly dependent on the type of SSN:  
          | - Favorable outcome  
          | - Thyroid, breast, prostate, melanoma, cervix  
          | - Intermediate outcome  
          | - Oropharyngeal, colorectal, bladder, renal, ovarian, endometrial  
          | - Poor outcome  
          | - Pancreas, lung, brain, hepatobiliary, esophageal |

---

*Finke et al. (2016); Kroger et al. (2011); Metafuni et al. (2018)*  
*Engel et al. (2018)*  
*Ehrhardt et al. (2016); Tichelli et al. (2018)*
Key Points

- Three types of secondary neoplasia may occur after HSCT: therapy-related myeloid neoplasms (t-MN), mainly after autoHSCT; donor cell leukemia (DCL) after allo-HSCT; second solid neoplasia (SSN) after auto-HSCT and allo-HSCT.
- Pretreatment or conditioning with radiation and/or chemotherapy including alkylating agents, anthracyclines, and topoisomerase II inhibitors is mainly responsible for t-MN.
- DCL are extremely rare and are either transmitted from the donor or newly transformed in the host.
- Non-squamous second solid cancers (breast, thyroid, brain, etc.) are strongly related to local radiation or TBI and occur with long delay after HSCT. Squamous cell carcinoma of the skin, the oral cavity, and the pharynx is related with chronic GVHD and can occur early after HSCT.
- Outcome of t-MN is poor, and allogeneic HSCT represents the only curative treatment.
- Outcome of SSN depends mainly on the type of second cancer; second solid cancer should be treated as a de novo cancer of the same type.

References


Sala-Torra O, Hanna C, Loken MR, et al. Evidence of donor-derived hematologic malignancies after hema-
Part VI

Specific Organ Complications

Topic leaders: Grzegorz Basak and John Snowden
48.1 Ocular Complications

48.1.1 Introduction

Ocular complications in HSCT patients include both ocular GVHD- and non-GVHD-related late effects which, if left untreated, can lead to blindness. Non-GVHD associated complications include glaucoma, infections particularly (viral retinitis, fungal endophthalmitis), posterior segment abnormalities, and cataracts. Ocular GVHD is considered an umbrella term for both conjunctival disease and keratoconjunctivitis sicca, both of which can coexist simultaneously.

The World Health Organization considers blindness as one of the top causes for disability-adjusted life years, and it significantly affects the QoL. Thus, prevention and prompt management of ocular complications should be a priority of a transplant program given the morbidity associated with it.

48.1.2 Ocular GVHD

Though it is considered to be systematic disease, the pattern of isolated ocular GVHD manifesting later as GVHD in other organs is erratic (Townley et al. 2011). The 2014 NIH consensus development project on chronic GVHD does not account for therapeutic responses based mainly on patient-reported outcomes (PRO); thus the development of PRO measures (PROM) specific for ocular GVHD should be a priority of the GVHD research community. The NIH chronic GVHD consortium does recommend photoprotection, surveillance for infection, cataract formation, and increased intraocular pressure for prevention of ocular complications in GVHD—these measures should be routinely incorporated in the standard clinical practice of HSCT patients and are best achieved within the context of a multidisciplinary survivorship clinic along with ophthalmologists as part of the team.

The occurrence of ocular GVHD is variable in different series but is approximately 40 to 60% of patients receiving HSCT (Nassar et al. 2013). The risk factors for ocular GVHD include donor-recipient HLA and gender disparity (female donor to male recipient) and an older donor age.

The principles of **ocular GVHD management** include lubrication, drainage control, evaporation control, and minimization of ocular surface inflammation. The 2014 NIH chronic GVHD consensus panel has excellent recommendations for stepwise treatment of ocular GVHD which include preservative-free artificial tears for mild, topical cyclosporine or steroid eye drops for moderate/severe and oral pilocarpine or cevimeline for severe/moderate ocular GVHD, respectively (Carpenter et al. 2014).
Among surgical procedures for moderate/severe ocular GVHD, punctal occlusion, superficial debridement of filamentary keratitis, and partial tarsorrhaphy have been recommended as surgeries with moderate-quality data on effectiveness. There is also some evidence on other modalities of treatment which include occlusive eye wear, lid care/warm compress/humidified environment, bandage contact lens, and gas-permeable scleral lenses. What is not clear is the optimal management algorithm for ocular GVHD with respect to medical versus surgical therapies and, within the surgical therapies, which ones would be most effective due to lack of clinical trials in this area. Thus, ocular GVHD is best managed in conjunction with ophthalmologist experienced in dealing with ocular GVHD.

In addition, special attention should be given to other risk factors for ocular complications, among which diabetes and hypertension are at the top. Thus, if a patient is on CNI or corticosteroids, then optimization of blood pressure and glycaemia control is imperative to reduce the risk of blindness due to retinopathy irrespective of the cause.

### 48.1.3 Posterior Segment Complications

Retinal and vitreous hemorrhages are not uncommon in HSCT patients and may happen with or without the presence of ocular GVHD (Yoo et al. 2017). This is complicated by the presence of thrombocytopenia early in transplant but also later in the course since both drugs and chronic GVHD can be associated with thrombocytopenia. Prompt referral to ophthalmologist is the key for preventing blindness; therefore, the practicing transplant clinician should have a high suspicion of retinopathy, retinal tears, or vitreous hemorrhages when a patient complains of “floaters” or just “decreased vision,” which happens suddenly.

### 48.1.4 Ocular Infections

CMV infection is one the most widely studied ocular infections and can rapidly lead to retinitis, and since quite often IV antibiotics are required, prompt referral to ophthalmologist is required. Apart from CMV, adenovirus is also a common virus and can lead to viremia if untreated. Moreover, unlike immunocompetent individuals, varicella zoster infection within hours or couple of days can lead to dissemination as well as postherpetic neuralgia, cranial nerve palsies, zoster paresis, meningoencephalitis, cerebellitis, myelopathy, and irreversible blindness.

Fungal infections in severely IS HSCT patients (particularly those on multiple IS for GVHD) can quickly lead to mortality; thus prompt referral for IV antifungals is indicated. Aspergillosis, mucormycosis, and candida have been reported in GVHD patients affecting the ocular tissues.

### 48.1.5 Glaucoma

Since the most common subtype of glaucoma (primary open-angle glaucoma) presents with gradual symptoms, its diagnosis is frequently missed in early phases. However, many risk factors in HSCT can predispose to glaucoma and can lead to blindness which include diabetes (allo-HSCT patients have four times higher risk of diabetes), retinopathy, and steroid use (for GVHD). Since the diagnosis of glaucoma is based in tonometry, gonioscopy, perimetry, and ophthalmoscopy, regular screening by the ophthalmologist is indicated.

### 48.1.6 Cataract

Cataract is the most common cause of blindness in the developed world. Risk factors in the HSCT patients include steroid use, total body irradiation, and diabetes. Since intraocular lens implantation (particularly via phacoemulsification) has become a widely performed procedure worldwide for the treatment of cataracts, early recognition and prompt treatment can help in preservation of vision. This procedure is associated with low rate of complications; however, prevention of cataracts by controlling the risk factors should be the management strategy in HSCT survivors (Table 48.1).
48 Ocular and Oral Complications

48.2 Oral Complications

48.2.1 Introduction

Oral complications of HSCT can significantly affect the quality of life (QoL) and can be a result of graft-versus-host-disease (GVHD) or can occur independent of it. Any oral complication, if severe, can lead to weight loss due to poor nutritional intake, mortality (especially due to cancer), aspiration pneumonia (especially in cases of oropharyngeal disorders), and psychologic sequelae (particularly disfigurement due to oral scleroderma, i.e., fish mouth) (Table 48.2).

48.2.2 Oral GVHD

Oral GVHD itself can lead to significant mortality and morbidity. GVHD-associated oral complications, e.g., mouth scleroderma, lichenification (resulting in lichenoid features and lichen planus), oral cancers, dental caries, salivary gland dysfunction (main manifestation being xerostomia), and mucoceles, are common complications of oral GVHD. In addition, avascular necrosis (AVN) of the mandible can occur as a complication of steroid therapy for GVHD (Treister et al. 2012).

The 2014 National Institutes of Health chronic GVHD consensus criteria places the scoring based on lichen-like features; however many of the associated patient-reported outcomes are not captured by this scoring system which can tremendously affect the QoL (Jagasia et al. 2015). Thus, involvement of specialists experienced in dealing with long-term HSCT complications is imperative for management of oral GVHD and its complications.

The management of oral GVHD requires both topical treatments and systemic therapy. Topical treatments may include local tacrolimus (i.e., protopic), PUVA, and topical steroids. Among systemic treatments for oral GVHD, extracorporeal photopheresis has one of the highest response rates, along with rituximab (Okamoto et al. 2006; Malik et al. 2014).

48.2.3 Oral Cancers

Carcinomas of the oral cavity are predominantly of squamous cell carcinoma type; however, other
histologies can also manifest as oral cancers in HSCT survivors. The risks of developing oral cancers increase significantly post transplant to approximately sevenfold with the highest risk being in patients who were transplanted for bone marrow failure (BMF) syndromes especially dyskeratosis congenita and Fanconi’s anemia (Rosenberg et al. 2003). Besides BMF syndromes, the most important risk factors for oral carcinomas include GVHD, radiation, and epigenetic factors (smoking). It is of utmost important that prevention strategies of oral cancers be discussed at each visit with special emphasis on smoking cessation (if applicable) and avoidance of other known risk factors, e.g., betel nut, tobacco chewing, or alcohol intake, since these are modifiable risks. Additionally, aggressive and early treatment of oral GVHD is essential to prevent this complication.

### 48.2.4 Non-GVHD-Associated Oral Manifestations

These include osteonecrosis of the jaw (ONJ), dysgeusia, temporomandibular disorders, gingivitis, and oral mucositis early in HSCT. Though certain symptoms like dysgeusia (Sato et al. 2017a, b) may seem trivial, they significantly affect the QoL, preservation of which is the sine qua non of managing late effects. Similarly, oral mucositis is one of the most challenging complications in early phases of HSCT with a high incidence in both reduced intensity and myeloablative regimens (Chaudhry et al. 2015). Similarly, ONJ can lead to multiple late effects of chronic pain and poor oral intake and can affect QoL tremendously (Hautmann et al. 2011). Thus, prompt referral to maxillofacial surgeon for management is imperative as soon as any symptoms start to develop.

#### 48.2.5 Needs Provision for Oral Surgery/Dentistry in HSCT

Many experts recommend that dentistry and/or oral surgeons should be part of a multidisciplinary team managing late effects in both autologous and allogeneic HSCT survivors, and this concept was recently endorsed by the National Institutes of Health’s Late Effects Initiative (Hashmi et al. 2017). Once the primary disease (for which HSCT was performed) is cured, it is essential that surveillance and preventative strategies be undertaken to alleviate the burden of comorbidities in these survivors; thus we agree that a long-term follow-up clinic should optimally have dentistry services available ad hoc if not on routine surveillance basis.

---

**Key Points**

- Oral GVHD and its associated complications can lead to significant compromise in QoL and can lead to cancers which can lead to fatal outcomes.
- Non-GVHD-associated complications also should be vigilantly dealt with as they tremendously affect QoL and include ONJ, dysgeusia, dental carries, gingivitis, and oral mucositis.
- Dentists and/or oral surgeons should ideally be a part of multidisciplinary teams of a long-term follow-up/survivorship clinic of HSCT survivors.

---

**Table 48.2** Oral complications of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Risk factors</th>
<th>Management</th>
<th>Survivorship issues</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GVHD associated</td>
<td>– Lichen planus, Squamous cell carcinoma, Aphthous ulcers, Fish mouth (scleroderma), carries, dysphagia, carries</td>
<td>– Topical: tacrolimus, steroids, PUVA, Systemic: extracorporeal photopheresis, rituximab, ibrutinib</td>
<td>– Presence of a dentist and/or oral surgeon in the long-term follow-up or survivorship clinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-GVHD associated</td>
<td>– Osteonecrosis of the jaw, dysgeusia, temporomandibular joint disorders, mucositis, carries, dysphagia</td>
<td>Dental or oral surgery referral for corrective action; surgery in selected cases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
References


49.1 Introduction

The frequency and severity of TPH liver complications have decreased sharply in the last decade, with some complications that have completely disappeared, such as, for example, Candida liver abscesses. The development of more effective strategies to preventing SOS/VOD and GVHD has had a marked effect on its clinical presentation (see Chaps. 25 and 49). Finally, prophylaxis with antiviral and antifungal drugs has greatly reduced the incidence of the most common liver infections (Hockenbery et al. 2016). The major liver complications after HSCT are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Early after HSCT (&lt;100 days)</th>
<th>Late after HSCT (months-years)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOS/VOD</td>
<td>Chronic GVHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute GVHD (see Chap. 43)</td>
<td>(see Chap. 44)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute hepatitis</td>
<td>Autoimmune hepatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmacological toxicity</td>
<td>Chronic viral hepatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(see Chap. 38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cirrhosis and hepatocellular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Iron overload (see Chap. 46)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Other less frequent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

49.2 Sinusoidal Obstruction Syndrome

49.2.1 Definition

SOS, formerly called veno-occlusive disease of the liver (VOD), is the term used to designate the symptoms and signs that appear early after HSCT because of conditioning regimen-related hepatic toxicity. This syndrome is characterized by jaundice, fluid retention, and tender hepatomegaly appearing in the first 35–40 days after HSCT (Carreras 2015).

49.2.2 Pathogenesis

The hepatic metabolism of certain drugs (e.g., CY) by the cytochrome P450 enzymatic system produces several toxic metabolites (e.g., acrolein). These toxic metabolites are converted into stable (nontoxic) metabolites by the glutathione (GSH)
enzymatic system and then eliminated. When this process occurs in patients with a reduced GSH activity, caused by previous liver disease or by the action of agents such as BU, BCNU, or TBI, which consume GSH, toxic metabolites are not metabolized. Toxic metabolites are predominantly located in area 3 of the hepatic acinus (around the centrolobular veins) because this area is rich in P450 and poor in glutathione. Consequently, damage to hepatocytes and sinusoidal endothelium occurs predominantly in this zone. Many other factors (see risk factors) can also contribute to endothelial injury.

The first events after endothelial injury caused by toxic metabolites are loss of fenestrae in sinusoidal endothelial cells (SEC), formation of gaps within and between SEC, and rounding up or swelling of SEC. Consequently, red blood cells penetrate into the space of Disse and dissect off the sinusoidal lining, which embolize downstream and block the sinusoids, reducing the hepatic venous outflow and producing post-sinusoidal hypertension. The changes observed in coagulation factors in these patients seem to be a consequence of the endothelial injury and probably play a secondary role in SOS pathogenesis, despite contributing to the sinusoidal occlusion (Carreras and Diaz-Ricart 2011).

49.2.3 Clinical Manifestations of SOS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classical manifestations</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Weight gain/edema/ascites/anasarca</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Painful hepatomegaly/jaundice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumption of (not refractoriness to) transfused platelets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manifestations of MOF</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pleural effusion/pulmonary infiltrates</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal, cardiac, and pulmonary failure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurological symptoms (encephalopathy, coma)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

49.2.4 EBMT Diagnostic Criteria for Adults (Mohty et al. 2016)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classical SOS (Baltimore criteria)</th>
<th>Late-onset SOS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In the first 21 days after HSCT</td>
<td>Classical SOS beyond day 21, OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilirubin ≥2 mg/dL and ≥ 2 of the following</td>
<td>Histologically proven SOS OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Painful hepatomegaly</td>
<td>≥2 of the classical criteria AND ultrasound (US) or hemodynamical evidence of SOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Weight gain &gt;5%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Ascites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*These symptoms/signs should not be attributable to other causes

*Mainly observed after conditioning including several alkylating agents (e.g., BU, MEL, or TT)

*Observed in almost 100% of adults but absent in up to 30% of children

49.2.5 EBMT Diagnostic Criteria for Children (Corbacioglu et al. 2018)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No limitation for time of onset of SOS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The presence of two or more of the following</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Unexplained consumptive and transfusion-refractory thrombocytopenia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Otherwise unexplained weight gain on 3 consecutive days despite the use of diuretics or a weight gain &gt;5% above baseline value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Hepatomegaly (best if confirmed by imaging) above baseline value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Ascites (ideally confirmed by imaging) above baseline value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Rising bilirubin from a baseline value on 3 consecutive days or ≥2 mg/dL within 72 h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Up to 20% of children present late SOS

*With the exclusion of other potential differential diagnoses

*Weight-adjusted platelet substitution/day to maintain institutional transfusion guidelines

*Suggested: imaging (US, CT, or MRI) immediately before HSCT to determine baseline value for both hepatomegaly and ascites
49.2.6 Incidence

Variable depending on the diagnostic criteria used, center experience, type of patients, and year of HSCT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author (period analyzed) (study type)</th>
<th>Auto-HSCT</th>
<th>Allo-HSCT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coppell et al. 2010 (1979–2007) (R)</td>
<td>8.7%</td>
<td>13%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carreras et al. (1998) (P)</td>
<td>3.1%</td>
<td>8.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corbacioglu et al. 2012 (2006–2009) (P)</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td>14%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carreras et al. 2011 (1997–2008) (R)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>MAC, 8%/RIC, 2%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*R retrospective study, *P* prospective study

*a* Only children and young adolescents

*b* Only adults

49.2.7 Risk Factors for SOS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient-related risk factors&lt;sup&gt;a,b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Younger &lt; older</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sex</td>
<td>Male &lt; female</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Karnofsky index</td>
<td>100–90 &lt; lower than 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Underlying disease</td>
<td>Nonmalignant &lt; malignant &lt; some specific diseases&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Status of the disease</td>
<td>Remission &lt; relapse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AST level before HSCT</td>
<td>Normal &lt; increased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bilirubin level before HSCT</td>
<td>Normal &lt; increased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prior liver radiation</td>
<td>No &lt; yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Liver status</td>
<td>Normal &lt; fibrosis, cirrhosis, tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Iron overload</td>
<td>Absent &lt; present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CMV serology</td>
<td>Negative &lt; positive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prior treatment with</td>
<td>Gemtuzumab or inotuzumab ozogamicin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Concomitant drugs</td>
<td>Progestogens, azoles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Genetic factors</td>
<td>GSTM1-null genotype, MTHFR 677CC/1298CC haplotype, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transplant-related factors</th>
<th>Type of HCT</th>
<th>Syngeneic/autologous &lt; allogeneic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Type of donor</td>
<td>HLA-identical sibling &lt; unrelated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade of compatibility</th>
<th>Match &lt; minor mismatch &lt; major mismatch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T-cell in the graft</td>
<td>T-cell depleted &lt; non-T-cell depleted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of conditioning</td>
<td>NMA &lt; RIC &lt; TRC &lt; MAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Busulfan</td>
<td>IV &lt; oral targeted &lt; oral CY-BU &lt; BU-CY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBI</td>
<td>Fractionated &lt; single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Low-dose rate &lt; high-dose rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Less than 12 Gy &lt; more than 12 Gy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time between CY to TBI 36 h &lt; CY to TBI 12 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fludarabine</td>
<td>Not included &lt; included</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GvHD prophylaxis</td>
<td>CNI (TAC &lt; CSA) &lt; CNI + sirolimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSCT number</td>
<td>First &lt; second HSCT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bold characters indicate the most relevant factors

*Many factors have been associated with an increased risk of SOS, with those in bold letters seem the most relevant

*Remember that the presence of several risk factors in a patient has an additive effect

*Due to unknown causes, some malignant or nonmalignant diseases, osteopetrosis, adrenoleukodystrophy, thalassemia, hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis, or neuroblastoma are associated with a higher incidence of SOS

49.2.8 How to Confirm the Diagnosis?

SOS is a syndrome and must be diagnosed clinically, but several tools can help us

| Transjugular hemodynamic study | Permits a safe measurement of the hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG), which evaluates the presence of intrahepatic post-sinusoidal hypertension. A HVPG >10 mmHg is highly specific (>90%) and moderately sensitive (60%) for SOS |
| Transvenous liver biopsies     | Transvenous biopsies may be obtained during hemodynamic studies, but false-negative results could be obtained due to the patchy nature of SOS. However, biopsies carry a risk of hemorrhagic complications (e.g., into the peritoneum and biliary tract). Consequently, they are only indicated when a crucial differential diagnosis is required (e.g., SOS versus GVHD?) |
**Imaging techniques**

They may be helpful to confirm hepatomegaly and/or ascites (relevant in overweight patients) and for the differential diagnosis. Baseline and serial US may be useful for early detection of SOS. The US abnormalities observed in SOS (hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, gallbladder wall thickening, ascites) are not specific. Decrease in velocity or reversal of the portal venous flow is considered more specific for SOS but usually occurs late in the disease (reviewed in Dignan et al. 2013).

**Composite biomarkers**

Recently some composite markers have shown a prognostic value at day 0 (L-Ficolin, HA, VCAM-1) and at diagnosis (ST2, ANG2, L-Ficolin, HA, VCAM-1) (Akil et al. 2015).


---

**49.2.9 EBMT Criteria for Severity Grading**

Classically the severity of SOS was established, prospectively, based in a mathematical model or, retrospectively, based on its evolution (resolution or not at day +100). Later, SOS may be classified as severe with the development of multiorgan failure MOF. Several systems have been proposed for early prognostication of SOS using scales, including the following elaborated by the EBMT (Mohty et al. 2016).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Mild</th>
<th>Moderate</th>
<th>Severe</th>
<th>Very severe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time since first symptoms</td>
<td>&gt;7 days</td>
<td>5–7 days</td>
<td>≤4 days</td>
<td>Any time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilirubin mg/dL</td>
<td>≥2 to &lt;3</td>
<td>≥3 to &lt;5</td>
<td>≥5 to &lt;8</td>
<td>≥8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilirubin kinetics</td>
<td>Doubling in 48 h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transaminases (× N)</td>
<td>≤2</td>
<td>&gt;2 to ≤5</td>
<td>≥5 to &lt;8</td>
<td>≥8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight gain (%)</td>
<td>≤5</td>
<td>≥5 to &lt;10%</td>
<td>≥5 to &lt;10%</td>
<td>≥10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal function (× baseline at HSCT)</td>
<td>&lt;1.2</td>
<td>≥1.2 to &lt;1.5</td>
<td>≥1.5 to &lt;2</td>
<td>≥2 or other data of MOF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This severity grading must be applied once SOS/VOD has been diagnosed applying the criteria mentioned in 49.2.4. Patients belong to the category that fulfills ≥2 criteria. If patients fulfill ≥2 criteria in two different categories, they should be classified in the most severe category. In the presence of two or more risk factors for SOS, patients should be in the upper grade.

*N* normal values

---

*Weight gain ≥5% and <10% is considered as a severe SOS. However, if the patient does not fulfill other criteria for severe SOS, it is therefore considered a moderate SOS.

**49.2.10 Prophylaxis** (Dignan et al. 2013; Carreras 2015)

### Non-pharmacological measures

- Avoid modifiable risk factors: Treat iron overload (chelation); treat viral hepatitis; delay HSCT if active hepatitis; reduce intensity of conditioning; use CY + BU instead of BU + cy; try to avoid CNI (if not possible use TAC instead of CSA) for GVHD prophylaxis; avoid hepatotoxic drugs (progestogens).

### Pharmacological

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug (degree of recommendation)</th>
<th>Not recommended</th>
<th>Suggested</th>
<th>Recommended</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sodium heparin (2B), low-molecular-weight heparin (2B), antithrombin III (2B), prostaglandin-1 (1B), pentoxifylline (1A)</td>
<td>Ursodeoxycholic acid (2C)*</td>
<td>Defibrotide: In high-risk adult patients (2B)</td>
<td>Defibrotide: In high-risk children (1A) [25 mg/kg/d]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In two randomized trials, UDCA reduce the incidence of SOS but in other two this effect was not observed. However, in all them, patients with UDCA have a lower TRM.

---

**49.2.11 Treatment (Degree of Recommendation)**

(Dignan et al. 2013; Carreras 2015)

**Methylprednisolone** (2C): Used by some authors. Recommended doses not defined (and range from high to low) and results difficult to analyze. Main risk: to delay treatment with defibrotide, the only agent with proved effectiveness.

**Defibrotide** (1B): Despite the absence of randomized studies, it is the only agent approved by FDA and EMA to treat severe SOS (>80% mortality). In these patients: 50% of complete remission and >50% SRV at day +100. Early treatment
strongly recommended. Dose: 6.25 mg/kg q6h in 2 h during ≥21 days, depending on the response.

49.3 Hepatitis After HSCT

Despite the reduction in the incidence of liver complications after HSCT, there remain multiple hepatic causes of elevations of serum alanine aminotransferase (ALT). In addition to the acute viral hepatitis, other noninfectious causes must be considered:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Frequency/Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VZV, CMV, EBV, HHV-6</td>
<td>Infrequent (see Chap. 38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HBV, HCV, HEV</td>
<td>(see Chap. 38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug-induced hepatitis</td>
<td>Very frequent. Wide range of severity (see Sect. 49.3.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic GvHD</td>
<td>Exceptional. AST/ALT &gt;2000 U/L usually observed in patients without or with minimal IS (or receiving DLI) (see Chaps. 43 and 44)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autoimmune hepatitis</td>
<td>True autoimmune hepatitis or GvHD? Often difficult to differentiate (see Sect. 49.3.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other causes</td>
<td>Severe SOS (see Sect. 49.2), hypoxic liver injury (septic or cardiac shock or respiratory failure), acute biliary obstruction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

49.3.1 Drug Induced Hepatitis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug±b</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thiazole antifungals</td>
<td>Cholestatic(^e) or hepatocellular hepatitis(^c), liver failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinocandins</td>
<td>Cholestatic hepatitis or mild-moderate hepatocellular hepatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluoroquinolones</td>
<td>Hepatocellular hepatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liposomal AmB</td>
<td>Mild-moderate elevation of alkaline phosphatase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMP/SMX</td>
<td>Hepatocellular hepatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSA, tacrolimus</td>
<td>Cholestasis. Dose-dependent effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapamycin</td>
<td>Hepatocellular damage, increased risk of SOS(^d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticonvulsants</td>
<td>Hepatitis, hepatocellular or cholestatic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

49.3.2 Autoimmune Hepatitis (AIH)

The main problem with this hepatitis is how to differentiate them from a hepatic GVHD, since pathogenesis, clinical manifestations, and biological changes are practically identical (Dalekos et al. 2002).
Autoimmune hepatitis | Hepatic GVHD
---|---
>GGT | Marked | Usually normal or decreased
Auto-Ab | Type AIH-2 (ALKM, ALC-1) | Often found (AIH-1) (ANA, ANCA, etc.)
Response to steroids | Excellent | Depends on severity

In bold letter main differential data

49.4 Cirrhosis and Hepatocellular Carcinoma

Cirrhosis* – In HSCT with HBV: exceptional
– In HSCT with HCV: 11% at 15 years; 20% at 20 years (Peffault de Latour et al. 2004)*
– In HSCT with HEV: frequency not known but rapidly progressive cases have been reported (see Chap. 38)
– Poorly compensated cirrhosis is a contraindication for HSCT because of the prohibitive risk of developing SOS after MAC. Even compensated cirrhosis has a high likelihood of hepatic decompensation after NMA (Hogan et al. 2004)

Carcinoma In patients with chronic HCV: 5% at 20 years of new cases per year (Peffault de Latour et al. 2004). These patients should undergo surveillance with six monthly liver ultrasound scans according to international guidelines

*These data correspond to the times when new antiviral agents were not available. No updated data are available
*The cumulative incidence of severe liver complications in HSCT infected with the HCV was 11.7% at 20 years in multicenter cohort (Ljungman et al. 2012)

Pathogenesis: Probable consequence of changes in liver blood flow with atrophy of zone 3 of the acinus and hypertrophy of zone 1 (without fibrosis).

Clinical Manifestations: Silent evolution (occasionally increase of AP) until the appearance of portal hypertension (ascites, splenomegaly, thrombocytopenia).

Diagnosis: Investigated by imaging (primarily MRI). Liver biopsy can rule out carcinoma and cirrhosis; need for a needle biopsy (not transjugular or fine-needle biopsy).

49.5.2 Focal Nodular Hyperplasia

In one series (Sudour et al. 2009) of HSCT survivors undergoing liver MRI, these lesions were observed in 12%.

Pathogenesis: The likely cause is sinusoidal injury caused by myeloablative conditioning regimens.

Clinical Manifestations: Asymptomatic.

Diagnosis: By MRI, lesions have characteristic central scars that differentiate them from hepatocellular carcinoma and fungal lesions.

49.5.3 Idiopathic Hyperammonemia

Very rare. Observed after conditioning (Frere et al. 2000)

Diagnosis: Severe hyperammonemia (>200 μmol/L) with minimal alteration of other LFTs.

Clinical Manifestations: Lethargy, motor dyscoordination, and alkalosis.
References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Gastrointestinal Complications

Grzegorz W. Basak

50.1 Introduction

The gastrointestinal (GI) tract is one of the systems most commonly affected by transplant complications. It is due to the high vulnerability of the gut mucosa composed of dividing cells, which are susceptible to chemotherapy-induced damage, rich vasculature, constant contact with intestinal microflora, and high content of immune-competent cells. Therefore, when evaluating symptoms from the GI system, various possible causes must be taken into account, especially drug toxicity, infections, and graft-versus-host disease. In this chapter selected GI complications most frequent after HSCT will be presented. The GI aGVHD was already discussed in Chaps. 43 and 44 and infectious causes in Chaps. 38 and 39.

50.2 Nausea/Vomiting

50.2.1 Definitions

Nausea: a disorder characterized by a queasy sensation and/or the urge to vomit.

Vomiting: a disorder characterized by the reflexive act of ejecting the contents of the stomach through the mouth.

50.2.2 Types

Acute onset: within 24 h of chemotherapy administration (peak at 4–6 h) lasting for 24–48 h.

Delayed onset: occurs more than 24 h after chemotherapy (peak at 2–3 days) lasting for prolonged period of time.

50.2.3 Pathophysiology

1. Direct activation of the vomiting center in the brain stem by chemotherapy, which triggers target organs in GI tract.
2. Damage to the GI mucosa, causing vagal stimulation and neurotransmitter (serotonin, neurokinin-1, dopamine) release causing reflexive stimulation of the vomiting center.
50.2.4 Causes

*Induced directly by conditioning chemoradiotherapy*

TBI, TLI, cranio-spinal irradiation

Chemotherapy drugs (NCCN 2017):

- High emetic risk (frequency > 90%): CY >1500 mg/m², BCNU >250 mg/m²
- Moderate emetic risk (frequency 30–90%): bendamustine, BU, BCNU ≤250 mg/m², CY ≤1500 mg/m², MEL
- Minimal to low emetic risk (frequency < 30%): VP, TT, FLU, MTX ≤50 mg/m²

*Drugs:* opioids, CNI, nystatin, AmB, voriconazole, itraconazole, TMP-SMX, MMF

*GVHD*

*Hepatic disease:* GVHD, VOD, viral hepatitis

*Infection:* CMV, HSV, VZV, fungal, bacterial, norovirus, rotavirus, parasites

*Adrenal insufficiency*

*Pancreatitis*

50.2.5 Diagnosis

Based on symptoms.

50.2.6 Grading (CTCAE v4.0 [NCI 2009])

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nausea</th>
<th>Vomiting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grade 1</td>
<td>Loss of appetite without alteration of eating habits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 2</td>
<td>Oral intake decreased without significant weight loss, dehydration, or malnutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 3</td>
<td>Inadequate oral caloric or fluid intake, tube feeding, TPN, or hospitalization indicated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Grade 1 | 1–2 episodes (separated by 5 min) in 24 h |
| Grade 2 | 3–5 episodes (separated by 5 min) in 24 h |
| Grade 3 | ≥6 episodes (separated by 5 min) in 24 h, tube feeding, TPN, or hospitalization indicated |
| Grade 4 | Life-threatening consequences, urgent intervention indicated |

50.2.7 Treatment

Prevention of nausea/vomiting is the mainstay of clinical management since treatment frequently proves ineffective. Delayed nausea should be treated with scheduled antiemetics for 2–4 days after completion of chemotherapy.

50.2.8 Prophylaxis

Choice of drugs depends on the use of drug with highest emetogenic potential (NCCN 2017):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>High emetic risk</th>
<th>Serotonin (5-HT3 antagonist) (patients should be monitored for QT corrected prolongation)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plus</td>
<td>Short-acting: ondansetron 3 × 8 mg IV on days of chemo +24–48 h, granisetron, dolasetron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus/minus</td>
<td>Long-acting: palonosetron 0.25 mg IV, may be repeated every 3 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus</td>
<td>Neurokinin-1 receptor antagonists, e.g., aprepitant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dexamethasone 2–10 mg IV (as required for a short duration)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Moderate emetic risk</th>
<th>Serotonin (5-HT3) antagonists (as above)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plus/minus</td>
<td>Dexamethasone 2–10 mg IV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Low emetic risk</th>
<th>Serotonin (5-HT3) antagonists (short acting, as above)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Metoclopramide</td>
<td>Prochlorperazine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TBI</th>
<th>Serotonin (5-HT3) antagonists (short- or long-acting, as above)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dexamethasone (4 mg/d or 4 mg bid)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50.2.9 Other Nausea/Vomiting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Breakthrough treatment</th>
<th>Addition of a different class anti-emetic drug</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prochlorperazine (10 mg IV q6h)</td>
<td>Haloperidol (1–2 mg q4h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metoclopramide (0.5–2 mg/kg IV q6h)</td>
<td>Olanzapine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scopolamine transdermal patch</td>
<td>Corticosteroids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lorazepam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anticipatory nausea/vomiting</th>
<th>Prevention of nausea/vomiting by efficient prophylaxis at every treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Strong smell avoidance</td>
<td>Behavioral therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lorazepam, alprazolam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
50.3 Diarrhea

50.3.1 Definitions

A disorder characterized by frequent and watery bowel movements.

50.3.2 Physiopathogeny

Depending on the cause.

50.3.3 Causes

The diarrhea in preengraftment period is most frequently caused by toxicity of conditioning. In post transplant period, aGVHD must be taken into consideration. The risk of infectious causes persists for the whole time with bacterial causes predominating relatively earlier than viral infections.

Chemotherapy and radiation therapy-related toxicity

Acute GVHD

Intestinal infections:
- Clostridium difficile
- Viral (CMV, VZV, rotavirus, norovirus, astrovirus, adenovirus)
- Parasitic (giardia, strongyloides, cryptosporidium)
- Fungal (candida)

Medications (antibiotics, mycophenolate mofetil, oral nutritional supplements)

Transplant-associated microangiopathy

Other: pancreatitis/pancreatic insufficiency, lactose intolerance/disaccharidase deficiency, malabsorption, inflammatory bowel disease, liver and gallbladder disease

50.3.4 Diagnosis

The standard workup for diarrhea after HSCT includes stool cultures, tests for Clostridium difficile toxin A and B, Clostridium antigen, stool and/or blood tests for viruses, and, when negative, endoscopy with biopsy for aGVHD and CMV. However, when these tests are proven negative, a broad area of causes must be considered (Robak et al. 2017).

50.3.5 Grading

When the diagnosis of gut aGVHD is established or suspected, aGVHD grading should be used as described in Chap. 43. Otherwise, (CTCAE v4.0) grading should be used (NCI 2009).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grade 1</td>
<td>Increase of &lt;4 stools per day over baseline; mild increase in ostomy output compared to baseline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 2</td>
<td>Increase of 4–6 stools per day over baseline; moderate increase in ostomy output compared to baseline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 3</td>
<td>Increase of ≥7 stools per day over baseline; incontinence; hospitalization indicated; severe increase in ostomy output compared to baseline; limiting self-care activities of daily living</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 4</td>
<td>Life-threatening consequences; urgent intervention indicated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50.3.6 Treatment

Targeted, according to the known or suspected cause, consider overlap with another pathology (e.g., aGVHD with gut CMV infection)

Ancillary: modification of diet
- Lactose- or gluten-free
- Restricted diet (low roughage, low residue, low or no lactose)
- Temporarily nothing per os and TPN

Avoid fluid loss and dyselectrolytemia

Monitor and replace protein losses (albumin, gamma globulin)

Loperamide 2–4 mg p.o. every 6 h if associated with toxicity of conditioning or GVHD

Octreotide
50.4 Esophagitis/Gastritis

50.4.1 Definitions/Symptoms
Heartburn and/or epigastric pain observed most frequently during conditioning and period of mucositis.

50.4.2 Causes
Mucositis, medications, altered gastric pH, peptic ulcer disease, and fungal esophagitis.

50.4.3 Diagnosis
Based on clinical symptoms ± endoscopy.

50.4.4 Treatment
Depending on the cause, elevation of the head of bed, and consideration of proton pump inhibitors and other symptomatic treatments (e.g., alginate, antacid, and topical local anesthetics, such as oxetacaine for mucositis). May require systemic analgesia if patient unable to swallow.

50.5 GI Bleeding

50.5.1 Definitions/Symptoms
May appear as melena, hematemesis or bloody stool, or emergence of normocytic anemia.

50.5.2 Causes
Thrombocytopenia, esophageal trauma, esophagitis, colitis, anal fissures or varices, viral infections, GVHD, and plasma coagulation impairment.

50.5.3 Diagnosis
Esophagogastroduodenoscopy, colonoscopy, and angioCT.

50.5.4 Treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment of underlying disorder</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Symptomatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Platelet transfusion to &gt;50 × 10⁹/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• RBC transfusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Fresh frozen plasma, fibrinogen concentrates, vitamin K supplementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Octreotide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Endoscopic cauterization or embolization</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When massive blood loss
• Desmopressin
• Tranexamic acid
• Recombinant factor VII

50.6 Typhlitis

50.6.1 Definitions/Symptoms
Necrosis of usually large intestinal wall associated with chemotherapy toxicity and bacterial overgrowth.

Occurs within 30 days after HSCT, patients usually complain of pain in right lower abdominal quadrant, often with associated fever.

Additionally, nausea, emesis, increased abdominal wall tension, and watery bloody diarrhea may occur (Robak et al. 2017).

50.6.2 Causes
Toxicity/infection.

50.6.3 Diagnosis
Clinical and abdominal ultrasound or CT: bowel wall thickening usually limited to single region, e.g., ileocecal or ascending colon; may be associated with perforation and air within intestinal wall.

50.6.4 Treatment
Antibiotics and bowel rest. Avoid surgical intervention.
50.7 Pancreatic Disease

50.7.1 Definitions/Symptoms

Pancreatic insufficiency and atrophy or acute pancreatitis.

50.7.2 Causes

Medications (prednisone, tacrolimus), stones, and pancreatic GVHD.

50.7.3 Diagnosis

Insufficiency and atrophy: low serum trypsinogen, high fecal elastase-1, and possible atrophy in imaging. Acute pancreatitis: elevated lipase and amylase, elevated fecal fat, and edema in ultrasound/CT.

50.7.4 Treatment

When insufficiency: enzyme replacement.

50.8 Chronic Esophageal GVHD

50.8.1 Definitions/Symptoms

Dysphagia to solid food, chest discomfort, and aspiration (Jagasia et al. 2015; Robak et al. 2017)

50.8.2 Diagnosis

Barium meal: mid/upper esophageal strictures, webs, rings, bullae, and desquamation. Endoscopy: as above, erythematous, friable sloughed mucosa.

50.8.3 Treatment

When severe and chronic, need serial dilations and enteral tube placement or esophagectomy.

Key Points

The workup and management of GI complications after HCT follow general medical approach; however, the most frequent scenarios remain characteristic for this patient population. The most common causes include toxicity of drugs, especially those used for conditioning, infection, and/or graft-versus-host disease:

- Nausea/vomiting or diarrhea occurring before engraftment is most likely caused by toxicity of conditioning, while after engraftment, GVHD needs to be considered, especially in allo-HSCT setting.
- For the whole post transplant period, infectious causes should also be considered with bacterial or fungal causes predominating in the neutropenic period and viral reactivations/infections in the later phases.
- Importantly, inflammation caused by infection may become a trigger to GVHD, while GVHD is frequently followed by infection; therefore, overlapping scenarios always need to be taken into account.
- GI GVHD is frequently a diagnosis of exclusion (especially in patients with other overlapping causes which may impact on laboratory investigations). However, it should always be considered when symptoms persist despite extensive workup and/or directed treatment.

References


51.1 Haemorrhagic Cystitis

51.1.1 Introduction

Haemorrhagic cystitis (HC) is a frequent complication after HSCT. According to the time of occurrence after HSCT, HC is defined as early-onset and late-onset. Early-onset HC occurs typically during or within 48 h after the end of conditioning regimen, and it is the result of a direct toxic effect of drug metabolites and radiotherapy on the bladder mucosa. Late-onset HC usually starts around the time of the period of neutrophil engraftment (weeks 2–4) or in second-third month after HSCT (Hirsch and Pergam 2016). The concurrent presence of pro-haemorrhagic abnormalities of coagulation, severe thrombocytopenia and mucosal inflammation are predisposing factors for any type of HC.

51.1.2 Risk Factors

The main risk factor for late-onset HC is infection by polyomavirus BK (BKPyV), whereas other viruses such as ADV, CMV, and HHV6 have been rarely implicated. BKPyV is a common cause of asymptomatic or mild flu-like infection during early infancy and childhood, and more than 90% of adults are seropositive for BKPyV. The route of transmission is not clearly defined, but it is thought to be through oral saliva or respiratory tract secretions. After the primary infection, the virus persists latently in renal tubular epithelial and urothelial cell and can replicate as the host immune control loses the capacity to mount a virus-specific T-cell response. Mild to moderate asymptomatic BKPyV viruria is seen in 5–10% of healthy individuals, especially the oldest and the pregnant women, whereas high-load BKPyV viruria is detected in 50–60% of patients who underwent an allo-HSCT due to the delayed recovery of immune responses and the use of immunosuppressive drugs.

51.1.3 Pathogenesis

The current pathogenetic model of HC following HSCT is multifactorial and includes the combined effects of the extensive cytopathic damage of bladder mucosa layer due to the high-rate replicating virus, the chemical or actinic damage induced by conditioning regimen, and the donor-cell immune alloreactivity targeting bladder mucosa (Cesaro et al. 2018). In patients receiving allogeneic HSCT, both BKPyV viruria and viremia are specific and sensitive predictive factors for BKPyV-HC: a urine BKPyV load >1 × 10⁷ genomic copies/mL had a
sensitivity of 86% and specificity of 60%, while a blood BKPyV load \(>1 \times 10^3\) genomic copies/mL had a sensitivity of 100% and a specificity of 86% for HC (Cesaro et al. 2015).

BKPyV infection develops in more than 50% of allo-HSCT in the peri-engraftment weeks, but overt HC occurs in about 20% of patients because its development is influenced by the presence of several other risk factors: the type of graft (CB and PB vs. BM); the type of donor (URD vs. MRD); the type of conditioning regimen (MAC vs. RIC); the use in the conditioning regimen of ATG, CY, or BU; the occurrence of acute GVHD grade 2–4; and, among the paediatric patients, a recipient age >7 years.

51.1.4 Diagnosis

The clinical diagnosis of BKPyV-HC is based on the presence of clinical symptoms/signs of cystitis, such as dysuria, increased urinary frequency, and lower abdominal pain, the presence of macrohaematuria, and the demonstration of BKPyV viruria, with viral loads of \(>7\) log10 copies/mL.

The severity of haematuria is described by four categories: microscopic (grade 1), macroscopic (grade 2), macroscopic with clots (grade 3), and macroscopic with clots and renal failure secondary to urinary tract obstruction.

BKPyV viremia is often detected in patients with BKPyV-HC, and plasma viral load of \(>3\) to \(4\) log10 copies/mL has been reported in more than two thirds of patients (Erard et al. 2005; Cesaro et al. 2015).

The reduction of both BKPyV viruria and BKPyV viremia has been correlated with clinical recovery from HC. Despite this, screening of asymptomatic HSCT patients at risk for BKPyV viruria and viremia remains an area of investigation and is presently not recommended since pre-emptive therapy is not established.

51.1.5 Prophylaxis

Effective preventive measures are available only for early-onset HC, and they are mainly unspecific such as hyperhydration and the use of mesna in patients who receive high dose of CY as part of the conditioning regimen. The capacity of CY and its metabolite acrolein to damage the bladder mucosa determining an inflammatory reaction is well-known, and both hyperhydration and mesna reduce the exposure of bladder mucosa to acrolein and other toxic catabolites.

In line with this, the recent increase of unmanipulated haplo-HSCT with the administration of a PT-CY as prophylaxis of GVHD has resulted in a high incidence of HC. The use of bladder irrigation through a two- or three-way urinary catheter resulted not more effective in preventing HC compared to hyperhydration, and considering its invasiveness and discomfort for the patient, its use is not recommended.

In the pathogenetic model of late-onset HC, BKPyV replication has a key role in exacerbating the damage of bladder mucosa through its cytopathic effect and in inducing the donor immune alloreactivity to target the bladder mucosa. In order to reduce BKPyV replication, ciprofloxacin has been used prophylactically by several authors because of the in vitro capacity of fluoroquinolones to inhibit BKPyV replication. Overall, the efficacy of ciprofloxacin was weak and limited to a reduction of BKPyV replication without significantly affecting the incidence of HC. Considering the risk of inducing bacterial resistance and the risk of tendinitis and joint damage in children, the use of fluoroquinolones is not recommended for this purpose.

51.1.6 Treatment

BKPyV replication can be controlled more effectively by cidofovir, a nucleotide analogue inhibiting several DNA viruses such as CMV, ADV, HHV6, HSV, HVZ, and smallpox. The important pharmacokinetic property of cidofovir is the long half-life of its active metabolites ranging from 15 to 65 h that allows the administration on a weekly basis. Given the significant risk of tubular nephrotoxicity, cidofovir has been used only for therapeutic purposes (Cesaro et al. 2009). The nephrotoxicity can be limited by saline hydration and by the use of probenecid that inhibits the capture and transport of cidofovir into the tubular
epithelial cells of the kidney. Despite that several authors have assessed cidofovir as treatment of BKPyV-HC, there is no agreement on the optimal dose, modality of administration, and frequency of administration. Most authors use intravenous cidofovir at the dose of 3–5 mg/kg/weekly or fortnightly together with probenecid to prevent nephrotoxicity obtaining a complete clinical response in 74% of patients and at least 1 log decline in urine and blood viral loads in 38% and 84% of patients. As expected, the main adverse effect was renal toxicity with a mild to moderate increase in serum creatinine observed in 18% of the patients. The second more frequent scheme of treatment was a dose of cidofovir of 0.5–1.5 mg/kg without probenecid, administered 1–3 times a week (Ganguly et al. 2010). A complete clinical response was observed in 83% of patients, with a significant reduction of viral load in the urine and in the blood in 62% and 67% of patients, respectively. Also, with this schedule, mild to moderate renal toxicity was reported in 20% of patients. An alternative route that can reduce the risk of nephrotoxicity is the administration of cidofovir intravesically. Although the experience is limited to a small number of patients, the dose of 5 mg/kg/week, left in situ for 1–2 h after clamping the vesical catheter, showed an overall clinical response in 43% of patients and a virological response in about 50% (Bridges et al. 2006).

Preliminary encouraging results have also been obtained with leflunomide, an antimetabolite drug with immunomodulatory and antiviral activity, whereas a successful treatment has been reported anecdotal and in older series with vidarabine, oral levofloxacin, FXIII concentrate, intravesical sodium hyaluronate, and oestrogens (Cesaro et al. 2018).

The recovery from HC, whatever the cause, can benefit from treatment aiming to repair and regenerate the urothelial mucosa, such as hyperbaric oxygen therapy and the topical application of fibrin glue. Although experienced in a limited number of patients, the use of hyperbaric oxygen therapy was associated with a complete clinical response rate of 86% and a reduced urine BKPyV load in 65% of patients. The main drawback of hyperbaric oxygen is the limited availability, the requirements for dedicated hyperbaric room facilities, the risk of ear barotrauma or pressure intolerance, and claustrophobia episodes during the procedure (Zama et al. 2013; Cesaro et al. 2018). Cystoscopic application of fibrin glue to the damaged bladder mucosa to achieve haemostasis has been reported in single-centre retrospective series with a complete response rate was 83%, with most of cases resolved with just one or two applications (Tirindelli et al. 2014).

Given the important role of immune response in the pathogenesis of late-onset HC and in absence of effective antiviral drugs, innovative therapies have been trialled, such as the use of mesenchymal stromal cells (MSC) and adoptive immunotherapy. MSC have the potential to stimulate the tissue repairing process and exercise an immune modulatory and anti-inflammatory effect. The use of third party MSC infusion into seven patients with BKPyV-HC obtained the resolution of haematuria in five patients (Ringden et al. 2007). This approach needs to be validated further to assess the feasibility and also the safety of MSC.

Adoptive transfer of donor-derived virus-specific T cells (VSTs) has shown efficacy for the treatment of several viral infections although their use on a larger scale is limited by the costs, the complexity of manufacturing, the time needed to obtain the final cell product that is not suitable for the urgent treatment, and the prompt availability of a seropositive donor. The use of banked VSTs with multiple specificity obtained by a third party healthy seropositive donor cryopreserved and used as the patient developed a viral infection refractory to antiviral treatment represents a promising development. In a phase II trial, the use of VSTs directed against five viruses, CMV, EBV, ADV, HHV-6, and BKPyV, obtained an overall cumulative response rate of 92%. The virological response for BKPyV was 100%, and 13 of 14 patients treated for HC had a resolution of haematuria by 6 weeks. The infusions of VSTs resulted safe, and only 2 of 45 infusions were followed by a mild GVHD reaction (grade 1). Importantly, the functionality of VSTs persisted for up 12 weeks (Tzannou et al. 2017). These results are encouraging and support further studies.
51.2 Renal Dysfunction

Acute kidney injury (AKI) occurs in 27–66% of patients who underwent allo-HSCT mainly within the first 100 days. The incidence of AKI in less than 20% in auto-HSCT due to several reasons such as the rapid engraftment and reduced cytopenia especially with PBSC grafts, the lower incidence of infectious complications, and the absence of GVHD that can determine a renal damage directly by inducing inflammatory cytokines, CMV reactivation, diarrhoea with severe dehydration, and indirectly, through the nephrotoxicity of the drugs used to prevent or treat GVHD such as CNI and high-dose PRD (Lopes et al. 2016; Raina et al. 2017).

The diseases associated with AKI act at different renal levels: prerenal (sepsis, engraftment syndrome, SOS/VOD), renal-glomerular (transplant-associated microangiopathy), renal-tubular (acute tubular necrosis due to dehydration, sepsis, shock, engraftment syndrome, intratubular obstruction due to drugs, or tumour lysis syndrome), renal-interstitial (acute GVHD, viral infection by BKPvyV or ADV), and postrenal (obstruction by BKPVyV or adenovirus cystitis, retroperitoneal fibrosis, lymphadenopathy).

Moreover, there are general favouring factors for AKI such as the presence pre-HSCT of diabetes, hypertension, and renal impairment as well as the use of nephrotoxic drugs in the conditioning regimen (ifosphamide, CY, carboplatin, cisplatin), for treatment of GVHD (MTX, CNI), for the treatment of infections (AmB, aminoglicosydes, vancomycin), and for other severe organ damages that require ICU admission and mechanical ventilation (Hingorani 2016).

Clinically, the severity of AKI is defined by the measure of serum creatinine (SCr) and urine output (UO) that permit the identification of three classes: risk of AKI (increase of SCr 1.5–2× and UO <0.5 mL/kg/h for >6 h), kidney injury (increase of SCr 2–3×, and UO < 0.5 mL/kg/h for >12 h), and kidney failure (increase of SCr >3× and UO <0.3 mL/kg/h for >24 h or anuria >12 h, or initiation of replacement therapy) (Lopes et al. 2016). AKI represents a risk factor for the development on the medium-long-term period of chronic kidney disease, especially if the acute damage is not completely resolved and proteinuria and hypertension persist and for increased of non-relapse and overall mortality (Shingai et al. 2015).

### Key Points

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Early-onset HC</th>
<th>Late-onset HC</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incidence</td>
<td>&lt;3%</td>
<td>7–25%</td>
<td>Early-onset HC is nowadays rare</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Pathogenesis            | Chemical or actinic damage of bladder mucosa | – BKPyV infection  
– Adenovirus infection  
– Donor alloreactivity | |
| Diagnosis               | Macrahaematuria with dysuria, increased urinary frequency, low abdominal pain | Macrahaematuria with dysuria, increased urinary frequency, low abdominal pain, high load of BKPyV urine and/or plasma | Signs of bladder inflammation at ultrasound examination |
| Prevention              | Hyperhydration, mesna (if CY), forced diuresis | Hyperhydration, forced diuresis | Fluoroquinolones not recommended |
| Therapy                 | – Hyperhydration  
– Forced diuresis  
– Hyperbaric O2  
– Application of fibrin glue by cystoscopy | – Hyperhydration, forced diuresis  
– IV (or intravesical) cidofovir  
– Hyperbaric O2 therapy  
– Application of fibrin glue by cystoscopy | – Cidofovir: No agreement on dose and route of admin  
Limited evidence  
– O2 and fibrin glue limited experience |
| Experimental | / | – Mesenchymal cells  
– Virus-specific T cells | |
References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
52.1 Introduction

Lung injury occurs frequently following HSCT and significantly contributes to morbidity and mortality in the immediate post transplant period and in the months and years that follow. It can be observed in 25–55% of recipients (Cooke and Yanik 2016).

Historically, approximately half of all pulmonary complications seen after HSCT were secondary to infection, but the judicious use of broad-spectrum antimicrobial agents has tipped the balance toward noninfectious causes.

Noninfectious lung injury following HSCT may be mediated by either immune or nonimmune mechanisms and could represent up to the 50% of noninfectious mortality after allo-HSCT. These complications have been classified by the American Thoracic Society according to the tissue primarily injured and its etiology (Panoskaltsis-Mortari et al. 2011) (Table 52.1).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Localization</th>
<th>Entity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary parenchyma</td>
<td>– Acute interstitial pneumonitis&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– BCNU pneumonitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Radiation pneumonitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Delayed pulmonary toxicity syndrome&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Post-HSCT lymphoproliferative disease (see Chap. 45)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Eosinophilic pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Pulmonary alveolar proteinosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vascular endothelium</td>
<td>– Peri-engraftment respiratory distress syndrome (PERDS)&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Capillary leak syndrome (CLS)&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(see Chap. 42)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Diffuse alveolar hemorrhage (DAH)&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Pulmonary VOD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Transfusion-assoc. acute lung injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Pulmonary cytolysis syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Pulmonary arterial hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Pulmonary thromboembolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airway epithelium</td>
<td>– Cryptogenetic organizing pneumonia (COP)&lt;sup&gt;6,c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome (BOS)&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Importantly, this classification does not include the most frequent lung complication after HSCT, i.e., pulmonary edema secondary to fluid overload

<sup>b</sup>All these complications are categorized as IPS

<sup>c</sup>Formerly called bronchiolitis obliterans organizing pneumonia (BOOP)
52.2 Diagnostic Methodology of Pulmonary Complications

Ideally, any respiratory/pulmonary complication observed after HSCT must be evaluated following a predetermined institutional protocol (Lucena et al. 2014), which should include:

1. Noninvasive tests: Blood samples for culture and antigen determination, sputum culture, nasopharyngeal swabs testing CMV, respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), Legionella, Pneumocystis jirovecii (PJ), parainfluenza virus (PIV), adenovirus (ADV), as well as urinary antigen tests and chest x-ray.
2. If negative → empirical treatment (variable behavior; some centers start empirical treatment before the BAL, but many others start the treatment after BAL).
3. If no response in a maximum of 2–3 days (or if galactomannan (GM) +) →
   (a) High-resolution chest-computed tomography (HRCT).
   (b) Fiber-optic bronchoscopy (FOB) including bronchial aspiration and BAL to analyze: PCR for Legionella, Mycoplasma, Chlamydia, herpesvirus (all), polyomavirus, ADV, parvovirus, enterovirus, and respiratory virus (RSV; influenza a, B, and C; PIV types 1–4; rhinovirus; bocavirus; metapneumovirus; and others) and GM.
4. In some selected cases, a transbronchial biopsy could be considered.

52.2.1 Results Reported Using this Methodology (Seo et al. 2015; Lucena et al. 2014; Shannon et al. 2010)

Diagnostic yield could be as high as 80%.
Sixty percent of diagnosis is achieved with noninvasive techniques.
FOB/BAL permits an etiological diagnosis in up to 78% of cases.
In suspected IPS, a BAL study may detect a pathogen in ~50% of cases.

52.3 Pulmonary Edema Due to Fluid Overload

Despite not being included in most classifications of pulmonary complications after HSCT, pulmonary edema (PE) as a consequence of a fluid overload (FO) is extremely frequent (Rondón et al. 2017).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Incidence</th>
<th>FO may be observed in up to 60% of patients in the first days after HSCT. The exact incidence of PE is not established although it could be higher than 20%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Symptoms and signs</td>
<td>– Weight gain, moderate breathlessness, nonproductive cough, moderate hypoxemia – Crackles and rales in both lung bases – Chest radiology with diffuse alveolar/interstitial infiltrates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis</td>
<td>PE should be suspected in the context of weight gain, an increased cardiothoracic index, and crackles/rales. Though rarely necessary, the diagnosis can be confirmed by pulmonary pressure measurements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Differential diagnosis</td>
<td>– Heart failure (prior anthracycline toxicity or conditioning with CY) – Endothelial syndromes: SOS, CLS, ES (see Chaps. 42 and 49) – Respiratory tract infections – Post transfusion reactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment</td>
<td>Hydro-saline restriction, diuretics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

52.4 Idiopathic Pneumonia Syndrome

52.4.1 Definition

Widespread alveolar injury in absence of active lower respiratory tract infection, cardiac or renal dysfunction, and iatrogenic fluid overload (Clark et al. 1993; Panoskalsis-Mortari et al. 2011)
52.4.2 Clinical Manifestations

Characterized by development around day +20 after HSCT of fever and nonproductive cough, dyspnea, tachypnea, hypoxemia, rales, and diffuse alveolar or interstitial infiltrates on x-rays or CT scans.

52.4.3 Diagnosis

All of the following must be present for accepting the IPS diagnosis:

1. Evidence of widespread alveolar injury
   (a) Multilobar infiltrates on chest radiographs or CT
   (b) Symptoms and signs of pneumonia (cough, dyspnea, tachypnea, crackles/rales)
   (c) Evidence of abnormal pulmonary physiology
      Increased alveolar to arterial oxygen difference; need for supplemental O₂ therapy
      New or increased restrictive PFTs abnormality

2. Absence of active lower respiratory tract infection based upon
   (a) BAL negative for significant bacterial pathogens including acid-fast bacilli, Nocardia, and Legionella species
   (b) BAL negative for pathogenic nonbacterial microorganisms (Note of the authors: Most of the following diagnostic methods despite included in the initial diagnostic methodology have nowadays largely been replaced by PCR techniques)
      Routine culture for viruses and fungi
      Shell vial culture for CMV and respiratory RSV
      Cytology for CMV inclusions, fungi, and Pneumocystis jirovecii
      Direct fluorescence staining with antibodies against CMV, RSV, HSV, VZV, influenza virus, parainfluenza virus, adenovirus, and other organisms
   (c) Other organisms/tests to also consider:
      PCR for human metapneumovirus, rhinovirus, coronavirus, and HHV6
      PCR for Chlamydia, Mycoplasma, and Aspergillus spp.
      Serum and BAL fluid GM for Aspergillus species
   (d) Transbronchial biopsy if condition of the patient permits

3. Absence of
   Cardiac dysfunction, acute renal failure, or iatrogenic fluid overload as etiology for pulmonary dysfunction

52.4.4 Pathogenesis, Incidence, Presentation, and Risk Factors

Pathogenesis
The pathophysiology of IPS is complex. Data generated using experimental models support that IPS is a process in which the lung is susceptible to two distinct but interrelated pathways of immune-mediated injury: a T-cell axis and an inflammatory cytokine axis. These distinct but related pathways of inflammation culminate in the recruitment of immune cells to the lung leading to tissue damage and dysfunction (Cooke and Yanik 2016)

Incidence
– The strict methodology required to establish IPS diagnosis and the increased use of RIC have reduced its incidence of 20% to 25% observed 20 years ago (at that time IPS was called idiopathic pneumonia)
– This reduction runs in parallel of the improvement in the diagnostic methodologies to detect infectious pathogens. However, the frequent absence of response to the specific treatment against a detected pathogen suggests that the true incidence of IPS may be underestimated
– Nowadays: <10% of allo-HSCT (8% after MAC; 2% after RIC)

Timing
– Within first 120 days after BMT, usually observed between days +18 and +21 (20 years ago: around days +40 to +50)
– Late IPS can be observed but they are exceptional (Thompson et al. 2017)

Risk factors (from Cooke and Yanik 2016)
Older age / Karnofsky index <90 / higher interval diagnosis-HSCT
MAC or TBI (≥12 Gy) / HLA disparity / GVHD prophylaxis with MTX
Acute GVHD/previous viral infection / other malignancies than leukemia
### 52.4.5 Treatment and Prognosis

| Supportive measures | – Supplemental O₂ therapy  
| – Mechanical ventilation (invasive or not [high-flow nasal O₂, CPAP])  
| – Empiric broad-spectrum antimicrobials  
| – Strict control of fluids balance/hemofiltration |
| Specific treatment | As mentioned, lung injury in IPS can occur through two pathways, the TNF-alfa/LPS dependent and IL6/IL17 dependent (Cooke and Yanik 2016); consequently, treatment options are focused in these directions  

- **Methyl-PDN ≤ 2 mg/kg/d; if not clear response, consider as soon as possible:**  
- **Anti-TNFα: Etanercept 0.4 mg/kg twice weekly (maximum of 8 doses) + systemic steroids (2 mg/kg/d).** The randomized study of etanercept + steroids vs. steroids + placebo was terminated prematurely due to slow accrual. In the limited number of patients examined, there were no differences in response rates (≈60%) at day +28. These results do not necessarily imply that this agent is not effective (lack of evidence does not imply lack of effectiveness) (Yanik et al. 2014). In a phase II trial in children, the CR rate was 71% and 1 y survival was 63% (Yanik et al. 2015). This combination has also been shown to be effective in exceptional cases of late IPS with a 42% of CR and a 2 y survival of 62% among responders (Thompson et al. 2017)  

- **Other investigational agents such as:**  
  - MoAb anti-IL6: Tocilizumab (experimental IPS; Varelias et al. 2015)  
  - MoAb anti-IL17: Brodalumab (experimental IPS; Varelias et al. 2015) |
| Evolution | Despite the diagnosis and therapeutic advances, the mortality from IPS remains high at 59–80% at ≈2 weeks of evolution (95% if mechanical ventilation is required) |

---

### 52.5 Diffuse Alveolar Hemorrhage (DAH)

Diffuse alveolar hemorrhage (DAH) is a relevant cause of acute respiratory failure that occurs in 2–14% of recipients, with similar incidence in both auto- and allo-HSCT recipients (Afessa et al. 2002a).

#### 52.5.1 Clinical Aspects of DAH

| Clinical manifestations | Usually observed within the first month after HSCT (a median of 23 days), often during the pre-engraftment phase; however, later onset is encountered in up to 42% of cases  
| The clinical manifestations are those of all IPS. Hemoptysis is exceptional |
| Diagnosis | Based on BAL: Same criteria as IPS plus a differential characteristic; the progressive bloodier return of BAL fluid aliquots, in at least three segmental bronchi, indicating the presence of blood in the alveoli (or 20% hemosiderin-laden macrophage, although their absence does not exclude the diagnosis as it can take 72 h to appear). *Note:* DAH can have infectious or noninfectious etiologies (Majhail et al. 2006)  
| Risk factors | – Higher incidence after TBI and high-dose CY  
| – Similar incidence among MAC and RIC  
| – There is no correlation with the platelet counts |
| Differential diagnosis with | – Classic IPS: Very difficult, only by means of BAL. IPS usually appears after the engraftment, predominates in allo-HSCT, does not respond to steroids, and progresses to fibrosis in 85% of cases (only 15% on DAH). *Note:* Noninfectious DAH falls under the “diagnostic umbrella” of IPS (Panoskaltsis-Mortari et al. 2011)  
| – PERDS: Almost impossible except for LBA progressively bloodier  
| – Pulmonary hemorrhage: By FOB, no blood is seen in DAH  
| – DAH associated with infection: Impossible without detection of the pathogen (Majhail et al. 2006) |

DAH is probably a consequence of damage to the alveolar capillary basement membrane (see Chap. 42). It is difficult to differentiate a true DAH from the alveolar hemorrhage associated with an infection (Majhail et al. 2006).
52.5.2 Treatment and Prognosis of DAH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>– Although systematically treated with high doses of methyl-PDN (250–500 mg q6h × 5 days, followed by tapered dosage over 2–4 weeks) and aminocaproic acid (ACA), the overall response to this treatment is disappointing (Rathi et al. 2015)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– A recent study seems to show that the best treatment is to use low steroid doses (≤250 mg/d) ± ACA (Rathi et al. 2015)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Factor VIIa addition does not appear to improve the results obtained with PDN (Elinoff et al. 2014)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Try to avoid mechanical ventilation by means of CPAP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prognosis</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>– Poor: Overall mortality as high as 85% by day 100 (Rathi et al. 2015)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Less than 15% of patients die as a direct consequence of DAH, but the frequent evolution to MOF increases mortality to &gt;60% (30% in auto and 70% in allo-HSCT) (Afessa et al. 2002b)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– DAH that appear early after allo-HSCT (32% early vs. 70% late) or after auto-HSCT have a better prognosis (Afessa et al. 2002b; Majhail et al. 2006)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

52.6 Late-Onset Noninfectious Pulmonary Complications (LONIPC)

In addition to late-onset IPS mentioned before and some other exceptional complications (thromboembolisms, pneumomediastinum), there are two forms of chronic pulmonary dysfunction commonly observed in patients surviving more than 100 days after allo-HSCT. One is an obstructive lung disease (bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome, BOS) and the other a restrictive lung disease (cryptogenetic organizing pneumonia, COP).

A recent prospective study showed that among 198 patients included after day +100, the cumulative incidence of LONIPC is 20%, and that of BOS is 11% at 3 years among allo-HSCT recipients (Bergeron et al. 2018). Another study shows the impact of these complications on 5-year survival (28% with vs. 87% w/o LONIPC) (Nishio et al. 2009).

52.6.1 Bronchiolitis Obliterans Syndrome (BOS)

Pathogenesis, timing, incidence, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and radiology of BOS are shown in Table 52.2.

Treatment and prognosis of BOS are included in Table 52.3.

52.6.2 Cryptogenetic Organizing Pneumonia (COP)

Formerly called BOOP (bronchiolitis obliterans with organizational pneumonia), COP is a LONIPC of that is associated with restrictive pulmonary dysfunction. Reportedly, the incidence of COP among HSCT recipients is increasing due to the use of transbronchial biopsies as diagnostic tool. The greatest diagnostic challenge is the differentiation of COP from BOS (see Table 52.4) (Yoshihara et al. 2007; Cooke et al. 2017).

Table 52.2 Main clinical characteristics of BOS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathogenesis</th>
<th>The same as cGVHD but specifically involving the lung (Cooke et al. 2017). Its course may be aggravated by respiratory infections, viral infections, and gastroesophageal reflux</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Timing and incidence</td>
<td>– Average starting period: 12 (3–24) months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Incidence: 3% at 2 years in the longest series (Arora et al. 2016); 11% in a prospective study (Bergeron et al. 2018)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical manifestations</td>
<td>– Variable clinical course, usually insidious onset with progressive deterioration. Sometimes can present as an acute, fulminating course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– Progressive breathlessness, nonproductive cough, and wheezing, although some asymptomatic cases are only detected by PFTs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– It is necessary to carry out PFT every 3 m in the first year after HSCT for an early detection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– In &gt;75% of the BOS, there are chronic GVHD in other locations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
Table 52.2 (continued)

| Diagnosis       | • **Suspicion**: The so-called BOS stage 0p. More than 85% of cases can be diagnosed early by observing a 10–19% drop in the FEV1 or a reduction in FEF25–75 > 25% (Abedin et al. 2015)  
|                 | • **Clinical** (NIH consensus) (Chien et al. 2010; Uhlving et al. 2012)  
|                 | – Clinical manifestation (may be asymptomatic and only detected on PFT) +  
|                 | – Absence of active infection (demonstrated by BAL) +  
|                 | – Chronic GVHD in other locationsb +  
|                 | – Obstructive alteration with air entrapment (FEV1 < 75% NV or > 10% decrease; ratio FEV1/FVC ratio < 0.7; residual volume > 120%) with nonsignificant bronchodilator test and a decreased DLCO +  
|                 | – Compatible radiology (see below)  
|                 | • **Definitive**: Histologic confirmation by thoracotomy, VATS, or transbronchial biopsyc  
| Radiology       | – Chest x-ray: Normal or with signs of hyperinflation  
|                 | – CT scan: Radiological pattern of constrictive bronchiolitis with aerial entrapment, attenuation in mosaic, bronchiectasis and bronchial wall thickening, characteristic air trapping at exhalation  

**DLCO** transfer capacity of CO, **FEV1** maximum expiratory volume in the first second, **FVC** forced vital capacity, **VATS** video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery  

Some experts consider that a 10% decrease in the FEV1 basal after HSCT should make you suspect in BOS diagnosis  

If the lung is the only organ with cGVHD, a biopsy is needed to confirm the diagnosis (NIH criteria)  

If rarely transbronchial biopsy is used (low sensitivity and low predictive value) to establish a diagnosis that is eminently clinical. If histology is available, the term bronchiolitis obliterans can be used; if not available, the process is referred to as BOS

Table 52.3 Treatment and prognosis of BOS

| Treatment | **Supportive measures:**  
|           | Anti-infectious prophylaxis  
|           | If hypogammaglobulinemia: IVIg  
|           | Treatment of gastroesophageal reflux  
|           | Respiratory physiotherapy  
|           | **Specific treatment**  
|           | • **Prednisone**: 1–1.5 mg/kg/day, transient and unsatisfactory response in most cases. The addition of CSA, azathioprine, ATG, or photopheresis has few advantages  
|           | • **Budesonide/inhaled formoterol** has been shown to be transiently effective in 60% of the patients (Bergeron et al. 2015)  
|           | • **Etanercept/infliximab**: Effective in some cases (Yanik et al. 2012)  
|           | • **FAM combination** therapy: Effective in disease stabilization:  
|           | – Fluticasone inhaled 440 mcg c/12 h (adult), 220 mcg in children +  
|           | – Azithromycin 250 mg/d (adults), 5 mg/kg/d (children)b +  
|           | – Montelukast 10 mg orally at night (adults), 5 mg (children)  
|           | Two weeks before FAM increase (or start) PDN to 1 mg/kg/d, then decrease 0.25 mg/kg/d × week (Williams et al. 2015)  
|           | • In BOS controlled but with a severe residual respiratory insufficiency, lung transplantation may be considered after a few years (Cheng et al. 2014)  

| Prognosis | – TRM is very high; 32% (18–57%) at 2 years of HSCT almost always get associated with progressive respiratory failure and opportunistic infections  
|           | – SRV around 65% (4%–80%) at 2 years  

F**luтиcasonе theoretically decreases the inflammatory pulmonary component; azithromycin reduces IL-8 levels and neutrophilia; and montelukast is an antagonist of the leukotriene receptors (bronchodilator)**  

However, the ALLOZITHRO randomized trial has shown that early administration of azithromycin resulted in worse airflow decline-free survival than did placebo; the value of these findings is limited by early termination of the trial (Bergeron et al. 2017)
### Table 52.4  Differential diagnosis between BOS and COP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First symptoms</th>
<th>BOS: &gt;day +100 HSCT</th>
<th>COP: Mostly in the first 100 days&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incidence</td>
<td>BOS: 3–11% allo-HSCT (35% if cGVHD)</td>
<td>COP: Up to 10% in URD HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical context</td>
<td>BOS: Allo-HSCT with cGVHD</td>
<td>COP: Auto- or allo-HSCT. Almost always previous respiratory infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptoms, signs</td>
<td>BOS: Asymptomatic, or progressive breathlessness, dry cough, wheezing. No fever, normal blood test</td>
<td>COP: Fever, dry cough. Leukocytosis, increased CRP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etiology</td>
<td>BOS: cGVHD</td>
<td>COP: Idiopathic? Triggered by infection&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; or drugs&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary auscultation</td>
<td>BOS: Wheezing, hypoventilation</td>
<td>COP: Crackles/rales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFT</td>
<td>BOS: Obstructive pattern: FEV1/FVC &lt;70%, FEV1 &lt;75%, DLCO reduced</td>
<td>COP: Restrictive pattern: FEV1/FVC &gt;80%, TLC &lt;80%, DLCO reduced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest radiology</td>
<td>BOS: Normal or airtrapping</td>
<td>COP: Alveolar or interstitial pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thoracic CT scan</td>
<td>BOS: Thickening of bronchial walls, bronchiectasis, air trapping on expiratory views</td>
<td>COP: Uni- or bilateral patched bindings, glass images dull, or nodular infiltrators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAL</td>
<td>BOS: Neutrophilia</td>
<td>COP: Lymphocytosis, decreased CD4/CD8 ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis</td>
<td>BOS: Clinical manifestations + PFTs + radiology</td>
<td>COP: Requires lung biopsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Response to steroids</td>
<td>BOS: Limited</td>
<td>COP: Response in &gt;80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prognosis</td>
<td>BOS: SRV &lt;20% at 5 years if no response to steroids</td>
<td>COP: Potentially reversible</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>CRP</sup> C-reactive protein
<sup>a</sup>If patients are adequately controlled, it is common to detect restrictive alterations before the day +100 although clinical manifestations may appear later
<sup>b</sup>Mycoplasma, Coxiella, Nocardia, and various viruses
<sup>c</sup>Amiodarone, bleomycin, busulfan, and cephalosporins

### Key Points
- Lung injury occurs frequently following HSCT and significantly contributes to morbidity and mortality in the immediate post transplant period and in the months and years that follow. It can be observed in 25–55% of recipients.
- Noninfectious lung injury following HSCT may be mediated by either immune or non-immune mechanisms and could represent up to the 50% of noninfectious mortality after allo-HSCT.
- Most relevant noninfectious early pulmonary complications are pulmonary edema by fluid overflow, idiopathic pneumonia syndrome, and diffuse alveolar hemorrhage, a vascular endothelial syndrome.
- The most relevant late-onset noninfectious pulmonary complications are bronchiolitis obliterans and cryptogenic organizing pneumonia.
- All of them have specific diagnostic criteria, management, treatment, and prognosis.
References


Elinoff JM, Bagci U, Moriyama B, et al. Recombinant human factor VIIa for alveolar hemorrhage follow-


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Neurological Complications

Rémy Duléry

53.1 Definitions and Epidemiology

Neurological complications after HSCT are frequent and can be highly challenging to manage. The reported incidence ranges from 8% to 65%, depending on types of manifestation included, transplant setting, and patient population (Maffini et al. 2017). The severity varies widely, ranging from mild transient disorders to life-threatening illness. Main factors and causative agents include neurotoxic drugs, infectious pathogens, cerebrovascular illness, metabolic encephalopathy, and immune-mediated diseases. CNS relapse of the underlying disease, thrombotic microangiopathy (TAM), and post transplant lymphoproliferative disorder (PTLD) should also be ruled out (Table 53.1).

Neurological complications can be classified by their time of onset after HSCT. Early events are mainly due to drugs used in the conditioning regimen and IS therapy, whereas later complications are usually associated with immunodeficiency. Because clinical manifestations are often misleading and nonspecific, finding the right etiology may be long and difficult. Yet, early diagnosis and treatment are of paramount importance to reduce the risk for irreversible complications, impairment of quality of life, and transplantation-related death.

Table 53.1 Main causes of neurological complications after HSCT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causative agents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drug-related</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcineurin inhibitors (PRES)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methotrexate/cytotoxic agents (busulfan, fludarabine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-infective agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opioids, benzodiazepines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infectious pathogens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fungi and parasites (Toxoplasma gondii, Aspergillus spp., Candida spp., mucorales, Cryptococcus neoformans, Histoplasma capsulatum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viruses (HHV6, CMV, VZV, HSV, JC virus, West Nile virus, adenovirus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacteria (Gram-negative rods, gram-positive cocci, Mycobacterium tuberculosis, nocardia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uremic encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebrovascular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ischemic stroke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immune-mediated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demyelinating diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myositis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myasthenia gravis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS chronic GVHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombotic microangiopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcineurin inhibitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infectious pathogens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignancies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTLD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hematological disease relapse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

R. Duléry (✉)
Hematology Department, Hôpital Saint Antoine, AP-HP, Paris, France
e-mail: remy.dulery@aphp.fr

© EBMT and the Author(s) 2019
E. Carreras et al. (eds.), The EBMT Handbook, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-02278-5_53
53.2 Causative Agents and Types of Neurological Complications

53.2.1 Neurotoxic Drugs

Calcineurin inhibitors (CNIs), antibiotics, antiviral drugs, and cytotoxic agents used in conditioning regimen are the most frequent causes of drug toxicity (Table 53.2). In addition, drug-drug interactions are a common cause of neurotoxicity and must be carefully checked.

53.2.1.1 Calcineurin Inhibitors

CSA and TAC are associated with neurological complications in 25% to 59% of HSCT patients (Reece et al. 1991). The clinical picture of CNI-induced neurotoxicity ranges from transient isolated symptoms to severe manifestations such as TAM (see Chap. 42) or posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome (PRES) (Table 53.2).

PRES refers to a disorder of reversible subcortical vasogenic brain edema and is caused by endothelial injury related to abrupt blood pressure changes or direct effects of cytokines on the endothelium. It may occur in 1.6–7.2% of HSCT recipients and, if diagnosed early, is reversible after CNI withdrawal. Headache, visual disturbance, seizure, encephalopathy or focal neurologic deficit in the setting of renal failure, or blood pressure fluctuations are highly suggestive of PRES (Schmidt et al. 2016).

Although vasogenic edema can be visualized on CT in some patients, brain MRI is much more sensitive. MRI shows bilateral multifocal areas of hyperintensity in T2-weighted sequences, especially in the white matter of parieto-occipital regions. Other variations may exist, such as superior frontal sulcus pattern of holohemispheric watershed pattern. Persistent neurological sequelae have been reported, especially if PRES is not rapidly diagnosed and treated.

Table 53.2 Neurotoxicity of the main drugs used in HSCT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Most common symptoms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine A</td>
<td>PRES, confusion, tremor, ataxia, seizures, cortical blindness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methotrexate</td>
<td>Leukoencephalopathy, headache, lethargy, dysarthria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Busulfan</td>
<td>Seizures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fludarabine</td>
<td>Acute toxic leukoencephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiotepa</td>
<td>Headache, encephalopathy, seizures, paresthesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rituximab</td>
<td>PML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blinatumomab</td>
<td>Encephalopathy, headache, aphasia, ataxia, tremor, seizures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorafenib</td>
<td>PRES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imipenem</td>
<td>Seizures, tremor, vertigo, paresthesia, somnolence, encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cefepime</td>
<td>Headache, paresthesia, encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voriconazole</td>
<td>Headache, seizures, vision changes, hallucinations, numbness encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphotericin B</td>
<td>Headache, encephalopathy, numbness, vision changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aciclovir</td>
<td>Headache, tremor, dysarthria, hallucinations, encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foscarnet</td>
<td>Headache, vertigo, paresthesia, seizures, tremor, encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ganciclovir</td>
<td>Headache, numbness, tremor, seizures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

53.2.1.2 MTX and Cytotoxic Agents

GVHD prophylaxis with short course of MTX may cause minor neurological disorders (lethargy, dysarthria, headache) and, very rarely, diffuse necrotizing leukoencephalopathy (Paudyal et al. 2010). BU is associated with seizure and requires preventive prophylaxis with benzodiazepines (Eberly et al. 2008). For FLU, the main neurological complication is acute toxic leukoencephalopathy. The clinical syndrome is characterized by visual disturbance, sensitive defects, and cognitive impairment.

Brain MRI shows bilateral areas of hyperintensity in T2-weighted sequences in the white matter, which differ significantly from the MRI findings seen in PRES. Classical PRES arises from subcortical white matter, whereas acute toxic leukoencephalopathy arises from periventricular white matter.

Risk factors include poor renal function, older age, fludarabine dose, previously treated CNS disease, or previous FLU-based conditioning regimen.

Outcomes are very poor with irreversible neurological sequelae and median OS of 2 months (Beitinjaneh et al. 2011).
53.2.1.3 Immunotherapy and Tyrosine Kinase Inhibitors (TKI)

Rituximab, TKI, and bispecific T-cell engaging antibodies such as blinatumomab are increasingly used after HSCT. Their neurological side effects are described in Table 53.2.

53.2.1.4 Anti-Infective Drugs

Anti-infective drugs are among the main causes of neurological complications. Dose adaptation is warranted in case of drug-drug interaction or impaired renal function. Their neurological side effects are described in Table 53.2.

53.2.2 Infectious Pathogens

Among the long list of pathogens responsible of CNS infections after HSCT, the most frequent are Toxoplasma gondii, Aspergillus spp., and HHV6 (Denier et al. 2006; Ogata et al. 2015). The clinical symptoms and the time of onset after HSCT may be helpful to decipher the correct diagnosis.

53.2.3 Metabolic Complications

Pharmacologic sedation with major opioids, systemic inflammatory response, and hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis are among the first causes to exclude in the differential diagnosis of metabolic causes of neurological dysfunction. Other causes include uremic encephalopathy—associated with CNI nephrotoxicity or TAM—and hepatic encephalopathy, associated with SOS/VOD or severe hepatic GVHD.

53.2.4 Cerebrovascular Disease

Cerebrovascular hemorrhagic or thrombotic events represent potentially lethal complications. One of the most frequent events is subdural hematoma, which may occur in 2.6% of the patients (Colosimo et al. 2000). Risk factors for CNS hemorrhagic complications include falls, prolonged severe thrombocytopenia or refractoriness to platelet transfusions, grade III–IV GHVD, and arterial hypertension (Zhang et al. 2016). CT scans usually confirm the diagnosis but can be negative in 20–25% of the patients. Risk factors for CNS thrombotic complications include active infections, atrial fibrillation, hypercoagulative state, chronic GVHD, and corticosteroid treatment (Coplin et al. 2001).

53.2.5 Immune-Mediated Diseases

The most frequent immune-mediated neurological diseases include Guillain-Barré-like demyelinating polyneuropathy, myositis, myasthenia gravis, cytokine release syndrome (CRS), and CNS manifestations of chronic GVHD. Assigning the right diagnosis can be highly challenging and may require a neurologic consultation.

53.2.5.1 Demyelinating Polyneuropathies

Immune-mediated demyelinating polyneuropathies, which include Guillain-Barré-like syndrome, may occur in 1% of the patients, especially within the first 3 months after HSCT (Rodriguez et al. 2002). Progressive symmetrical ascending motor deficiency, numbness, hyporeflexia, and respiratory insufficiency are suggestive of Guillain-Barré-like syndromes. Lumbar puncture, MRI, and nerve conduction studies should be performed rapidly. Symptoms may resolve with polyclonal gamma globulin therapy. Rituximab may be used in unresponsive patients.

53.2.5.2 Myositis

Myositis is characterized by proximal muscle weakness, is often associated with chronic GVHD, and may occur in 2–3% of HSCT recipients (Stephenson et al. 2001). Levels of creatine phosphokinase are elevated, electromyography shows myopathic pattern, and MRI is useful to establish the diagnosis and monitor the response to treatment. Diagnosis can be proven by muscle biopsy. Patients may respond to corticosteroid therapy after 1–6 weeks of treatment.
53.2.5.3 Myasthenia Gravis
Myasthenia gravis usually occurs after the onset of GVHD in less than 1% of HSCT recipients (Lefvert and Björkholm 1987). The main symptoms include ptosis, facial weakness, diplopia, dysarthria, and dysphagia. The diagnosis is confirmed with electromyography showing a progressive decrease in the muscle action potential. Cholinesterase inhibitors and corticosteroid therapy are the treatments of choice.

53.2.5.4 Cytokine Release Syndrome
CRS can be observed after haploidentical HSCT with PT-CY and infusion of chimeric antigen receptor T (CAR T) cells or blinatumomab. CRS may cause life-threatening complications, including CNS involvement (encephalopathy, hemiparesis, ataxia, aphasia). Patients can be effectively treated with cytokine blockade using the antibodies siltuximab or tocilizumab, respectively, targeting IL-6 or the IL-6 receptor (Frey 2017).

53.2.5.5 Central Nervous System GVHD
The incidence of CNS manifestations of chronic GVHD is probably underestimated. Three main clinical manifestations have been described (Grauer et al. 2010; Saad et al. 2009). Demyelinating diseases have been reported in the cerebral white matter, optic nerve, or spinal cord. Symptoms follow a relapsing-remitting course, as observed in multiple sclerosis. The treatment consists in corticosteroid pulses. Sphingosine-1-phosphate receptor agonists, such as fingolimod, could be efficient in refractory/relapsing patients (Gauthier et al. 2018).

Vasculitis may involve small- to large-sized arterial vessels of cerebral parenchyma and meninges. Ischemic lesions, minute hemorrhages, and multifocal signal changes in the white matter can be observed on MRI. Diagnosis can be confirmed by brain biopsy, and treatment relies on corticosteroids in combination with cyclophosphamide.

Finally, patients may develop immune-mediated encephalitis. Definite diagnosis requires repeated analysis of CSF to rule out infectious encephalitis.

53.3 Diagnostic Algorithm
When faced with neurological complications following HSCT, the following ten steps can be helpful to promptly assign the correct diagnosis and start the right treatment:

1. Carefully review the medication history and search for (or exclude) metabolic disorders.
2. Are the clinical signs and/or symptoms generalized (e.g., altered consciousness, seizure) or focal (e.g., stroke, mass lesion)?
3. What is the time of onset of neurological signs and/or symptoms after HSCT?
4. Perform CT scan or MRI for ruling out PRES, encephalitis, infectious or immune parenchymal infiltrate, cerebrovascular events, or hematological disease relapse.
5. Analyze CSF for diagnosing infectious complications, Guillain-Barré-like syndrome, or underlying disease relapse.
6. Perform electroencephalography in patients with altered consciousness, hallucinations, or seizure.
7. Perform electromyography in patients with polyneuropathy or peripheral neuromuscular weakness.
8. Repeat each of the previous steps: Tests may be negative when performed early, and symptoms may evolve or fluctuate after the onset of the disease.
9. Brain or neuromuscular biopsy may be required to confirm/exclude opportunistic infections, PML, vasculitis, PTLD, or other malignancies.
10. The opinion of a neurologist at each step is highly recommended, especially for complicated clinical cases.

53.4 Conclusions
Neurological complications after HSCT, and especially allo-HSCT, are frequent and may lead to lethal complications. The main causative factors include drug-related toxicities, metabolic disorders, infections, cerebrovascular events, immune-mediated disorders, and disease recurrence. Although their clinical diagnosis and
management can be highly challenging, early treatment is extremely important to reduce mortality and improve quality of life.

**Key Points**
- Neurological complications after HSCT require prompt diagnosis and timely treatment to reduce post transplant mortality and improve the quality of life of the patients.
- Their etiology is often multifactorial and includes neurotoxic drugs, infectious pathogens, cerebrovascular illness, metabolic encephalopathy, and immune-mediated diseases.
- TAM, PTLD with CNS involvement, and CNS relapse of the underlying hematological disease should be included in the differential diagnosis.
- CNS manifestations of GVHD are rare and often highly challenging to manage.

**References**


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
54.1 Complications Involving the Skin and Hair

54.1.1 Introduction

Nearly every recipient of an allo-HSCT will at some stage develop complications involving the skin and hair. These complications can be grouped in drug-related toxicities and allergies, graft-versus-host disease, infections and malignant conditions.

54.1.2 Drug-Related Toxicities and Allergies

Drug-related toxicities are most often due to the conditioning regimen, antibiotics or IS agents. Presentation can vary broadly from localised erythema to epidermal necrolysis and Stevens-Johnson syndrome.

Diagnosis may be difficult because the morphological and chronological presentations of the lesions are generally non-specific. Skin biopsies and histological examination can help improve diagnostic certainty (Paun et al. 2013).

Management requires discontinuation of suspected causative agents, topical treatment with healing ointments, prevention of secondary infections and in severe cases (or when other organs are involved) systemic therapy with corticosteroids and antihistamines.

54.1.3 Graft-Versus-Host Disease

The skin is one of the most frequently affected organs in acute and chronic GVHD. Acute GVHD of the skin mainly affects the epidermis of the skin and adjacent oral, anal and genital mucosa. Chronic GVHD may affect all layers of the skin including the epidermis, dermis and subcutaneous tissue and may also manifest as skin dyspigmentation, sweat impairment, alopecia and thinning of scalp hair, hair loss in other areas (e.g. eye brows) and nail dystrophy. Chronic GVHD with sclerosis of the subcutaneous tissue including fasciae, joints and the musculoskeletal system can severely impact patients’ quality of life. Sclerodermal lesions of the thorax or abdomen may impair breathing, lesions adjacent to joints may impair movement, and genital lesions may cause phimosis, vaginal scarring and narrowing of the introitus that may cause dyspareunia and even complete obliteration of the vaginal tract.
In the early “inflammatory” phase of GVHD, patients often present with oedema and discomfort which later progress to fibrosis and joint contractures. Regular survey of range of motion by patients and physicians may enable early detection of irreversible lesions. Regular assessment (e.g. via questionnaire or oral interview) during routine clinical visits may encourage physicians and patients to address issues involving the genital tract, thereby enabling early detection and treatment.

General treatment and management of GVHD discussed in Chaps. 43 and 44. In patients with chronic GVHD of the skin and subcutaneous tissues, treatment is best initiated in the early phase prior to development of fibrosis and contractures, which otherwise may require protracted immunosuppression and other measures, sometimes over several years. Physiotherapy including deep myofascial massage and stretching exercises is essential to restore or maintain range of motion. In patients with genital involvement, topical treatment with immunosuppressive agents and hormones and use of vaginal dilators should be initiated early to prevent or reduce the degree of irreversible fibrosis and avoid the need for surgical intervention.

54.1.4 Infectious Complications Involving the Skin

Infection-associated skin lesions are often due to viruses. Unexplained fever and rash are more frequent in patients with HHV6 viremia compared to controls (Betts et al. 2011). Due to lack of effective prophylaxis, HHV6-related complications occur during both early and late transplant phases, while shingles (varicella zoster) are mostly seen beyond 6 months after transplant and mainly after discontinuation of prophylactic aciclovir. Other infectious conditions of the skin include fungal infections (mainly due to dermatophytes and, less frequently, Aspergillus or Mucor species) and bacterial infections. Management of infections mostly consists of systemic antiviral, antifungal or antibiotic treatment.

54.1.5 Malignant Complications of the Skin

Post transplant malignant conditions of the skin include skin cancer (basal cell carcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma and melanoma) and relapse of underlying malignant disease. BCC and SCC are much more common and have a better prognosis than melanoma. The incidence of melanoma has been reported to be higher after allo-HSCT with standardised incidence ratios ranging from 1.4 to 8.3 (Inamoto et al. 2015). Secondary cancers, risk factors and management are discussed in detail in Chap. 47.

Patients should be counselled to perform self-examination of the skin and adjacent mucosa, use adequate sun protection and avoid excessive sun exposure. Country-specific general population recommendations for screening for cancer should be adapted and modified taking increased risk of HSCT survivors into consideration.

54.2 Musculoskeletal Complications

54.2.1 Introduction

Complications involving the muscles include myopathies, myositis and cramps. Musculoskeletal complications are reported in 35% of long-term survivors 10 years after allogeneic transplantation (Syrjala et al. 2005).

54.2.2 Myopathy

The most frequent causes of myopathy early after transplant are corticosteroid therapy and inactivity. Patients report muscles weakness with no pain, and laboratory investigations show normal creatinine kinase. The proximal lower limb muscles, particularly the quadriceps muscles are most severely affected. The main risk factors include increasing dose and duration of corticosteroid therapy, older patient age and the extent and
duration of inactivity, particularly when intensive care is required. Patients should receive physiotherapy as soon as corticosteroid therapy is initiated and be advised to exercise on their own. Systemic corticosteroids should be tapered or avoided when possible.

54.2.3 Myasthenia Gravis

Though rare (<1%), it has been reported after allogeneic stem cell transplantation, mostly in the context of chronic GVHD. Patients present with fatigable weakness during or after tapering of immunosuppression (Grauer et al. 2010). Diagnosis includes detection of antibodies against acetylcholine in blood. Treatment consists of cholinesterase inhibitors and IS therapies for chronic GVHD.

54.2.4 Muscle Cramps

Muscle cramps are painful and often visible contractions lasting up to 30 min. Though rarely reported, they appear to be frequent in patients with chronic GVHD (Filipovich et al. 2005); an association with chronic IS may also be possible. Magnesium deficiency and side effects of medications (e.g. ganciclovir, valganciclovir) should always be ruled out. If magnesium replacement and discontinuation of suspected causative drugs do not bring relief, treatment with, e.g., quinine or antiepileptic drugs may be considered.

54.2.5 Myositis

Myositis has been reported in up to 3% of patients after allo-HSCT. Though frequently associated with other symptoms of chronic GVHD, it can also be the sole manifestation of GVHD (Openshaw et al. 2009). Patients often present with pressure-sensitive muscle pain and increased blood creatine kinase. Management is within GVHD treatment (Couriel et al. 2002).

54.2.6 Complications Involving the Bones and Joints

The most frequent complications involving the bones and joints are chronic GVHD, avascular osteonecrosis and bone loss (osteopenia/osteoporosis). Chronic GVHD of the joints is discussed in Chap. 44.

54.2.6.1 Osteoporosis/Osteopenia

Osteopenia (defined as a T-score between −1 and −2.5) and osteoporosis (defined as a T-score less than −2.5) have been reported in about 25–50% of patients after allo-HSCT and up to 60% in patients with severe chronic GVHD (Pirsl et al. 2016). Risk factors include protracted IS, older patient age, higher cumulative corticosteroid dose (Schulte and Beelen 2004; Savani et al. 2007; Stern et al. 2001; Yao et al. 2008; Petropoulou et al. 2010; Abou-Mourad et al. 2010) and lower body weight, malnutrition, physical inactivity, female gender, higher average NIH organ score as well as higher platelet counts in patients with severe chronic GVHD (Pirsl et al. 2016).

In accordance with these risk factors, decrease in bone mineral density occurs most rapidly within the first year after transplant. If osteopenia or osteoporosis is diagnosed, endocrine causes like hyperthyroidism, hyperparathyroidism and hypogonadism need to be ruled out. Screening using dual energy X-ray absorptiometry (DEXA) is recommended 1 year after transplant and repeat measurements in patients with recognised defects (Majhail et al. 2012).

Measures to prevent bone loss include vitamin D supplementation in regions with high prevalence of vitamin D deficiency, adequate calcium intake preferable through diet and regular weight-bearing physical exercise. Beyond the above preventive measures, specific treatment of patients with severe osteopenia or osteoporosis include bisphosphonates or denosumab. Hormone replacement therapy should be considered in patients with hypogonadism. Patients should also be counselled to modify negative lifestyle factors
(e.g. cease smoking) and take measures to prevent falls (e.g. physical exercise including balance training, correct visual disorders).

54.2.6.2 Avascular Necrosis

Avascular necrosis (AVN) has been reported in up to 19% of adult patients and up to 29% of patients younger than 20 years (Torii et al. 2001; Patel et al. 2008). Risk factors include GVHD, steroid therapy, microvascular changes due to GVHD and/or its therapy, younger age at transplant and TBI (Socié et al. 1997; French et al. 2008; Patel et al. 2008; Campbell et al. 2009; Jagasia et al. 2010). Patients usually present with joint pain, restricted to one or two affected joints. Though most joints can be affected, the hips are by far most frequently involved, bilateral in the majority of cases.

Screening for AVN is not recommended; however high index of suspicion and prompt MRI are necessary in symptomatic patients with risk factors, to enable early detection and intervention.

Pain relief and maintenance or restoration of patient mobility are the main aims or treatment. Discontinuation of corticosteroid and other IST should be considered where possible. Drug therapy is limited to pain relief. The role of nonsurgical causative therapies, such as bisphosphonates, statins and prostacyclin analogues, is still unclear. Pressure relief by means of surgical core decompression may relieve pain and slow down progression in early stages, whereby additional autologous bone marrow grafting further improves long-term outcome (Hernigou et al. 2018). In patients with late-stage disease with femoral head collapse, joint-preserving strategies are not effective, and total hip arthroplasty is the recommended long-term treatment.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.
The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
55.1 Introduction

Cardiovascular disease (CVD) is a broad term covering disorders of the heart and blood vessels and includes hypertension, coronary heart disease, cerebrovascular disease, peripheral vascular disease, heart failure, rheumatic heart disease, congenital heart disease and cardiomyopathies (WHO 2017).

CVD is common; the World Health Organisation (WHO) estimates that more than 17.5 million people died of CVD such as heart attack or stroke in 2012, representing 30% of all global deaths. CVDs are the number one cause of death globally: more people die annually from CVDs than from any other cause. It is predicted that by 2030, almost 23.6 million people will die from CVDs, mainly from heart disease and stroke. These are projected to remain the single leading causes of death (WHO 2017).

After HSCT, there is an increased incidence of CVD. Retrospective EBMT analyses have shown the cumulative incidence of a first cardiovascular event 15 years after HSCT rises to 6%. The type of transplant may be important. In the EBMT analyses, the cumulative incidence of 7.5% for the first CV event at 15 years post allo-HSCT versus 2.3% post auto-HSCT (Tichelli et al. 2007). However, in another study with a 7 year median follow-up (range 2–23.7) the 10 year cumulative incidence of ischaemic heart disease (IHD), cardiomyopathy, stroke and all-cause CV death was 3.8%, 6%, 3.5% and 3.7% respectively with similar prevalence in auto- and allo-HSCT (Chow et al. 2011).

55.2 Risk Factors

A number of pre-transplant risk factors appear to predispose to CVD (such as smoking, hypertension, dyslipidaemia, diabetes and obesity). CV toxicity of pre-transplant treatment includes anthracyclines and site-specific radiotherapy.

CV toxicity of transplant includes GVHD, and CV toxicity of post transplant treatment includes corticosteroid use and retransplant. Other contributing risk factors emerge as secondary late effects, such as hypogonadism, premature menopause and hypothyroidism (Chow et al. 2014).
When risk factors combine; the term metabolic syndrome (MetS) is used. MetS is a cluster of interrelated factors which increase the risk of cardiovascular disease, diabetes mellitus (DM) and all-cause mortality (Alberti et al. 2009; NCEP 2002).

### 55.3 Metabolic Syndrome Definition

The existence of several definitions of MetS led to a harmonised definition (IDF 2006): that is, the presence of three out of five risk factors as follows:

- Abdominal obesity measured by waist circumference: With population and country specific definitions.
- Triglycerides ≥1.7 mmol/L or drug treatment for elevated levels.
- HDL-C (men) <1.0 mmol/L or drug treatment for reduced levels.
- HDL-C (women) <1.3 mmol/L or drug treatment for reduced levels.
- Blood pressure ≥130/≥85 mmHg or drug treatment for hypertension (HTN).
- Fasting glucose ≥5.6 mmol/L or drug treatment for diabetes mellitus (DM).

The International Diabetes Foundation (IDF) estimates 25% of the world’s population has MetS (IDF 2006).

After HSCT there is an increased incidence of MetS, with reported prevalence rates of 31–49% (Majhail et al. 2009b; McMillen et al. 2014; Oudin et al. 2015; Greenfield et al 2018). In HSCT patients, the increased incidence is accounted for by the following components:

#### 55.3.1 Abdominal Obesity

Abdominal obesity measured by waist circumference represents fat accumulation (visceral adipose deposits) which independently confers cardiometabolic risk (Amato et al. 2013). Changes in waist circumferences are seen after HSCT with, for example, corticosteroid use and with onset of sarcopenic obesity.

#### 55.3.2 Dyslipidaemia

Dyslipidaemia is defined by elevated levels of total cholesterol, LDL-C or triglycerides or low levels of HDL-C. Prevalence in general population is estimated at 25% in the USA (Baker et al. 2007) and in European countries (Fodor 2010; Scheidt-Nave et al. 2013; Gonzalez-Juanatey et al. 2011). Evidence suggests allo-HSCT recipients have significantly higher risk of new onset dyslipidaemia (RR2.1 CI 1.1504.65) compared with auto-HSCT (Tichelli et al. 2007) with the prevalence post HSCT estimated to be 43–73% (FACT-JACIE 2017). Factors predicting dyslipidaemia after HSCT include family history, obesity, high dose total body irradiation, grade II–IV aGvHD, cGvHD, CLD and IST use (Chow et al. 2014; Oudin et al. 2015; Kagoya et al. 2012; Blaser et al. 2012).

#### 55.3.3 Hypertension (HTN)

Hypertension (HTN) in the general population is defined as systolic BP ≥140 mmHg or diastolic BP ≥90 mmHg but defined in context of MetS as systolic BP ≥135 mmHg or diastolic BP ≥85. HTN in people following allo-HSCT is 2.06 times (95% CI 1.39–3.04) more likely compared with sibling donors or auto-HSCT (Baker et al. 2007).

#### 55.3.4 Insulin Resistance or Diabetes Mellitus (IR/DM)

DM is characterised by hyperglycaemia resulting from defects in insulin secretion, insulin action or both and defined as a fasting pGL ≥7 mmol/L, an HbA1C ≥6.5%, a 2 h plasma glucose ≥11.1 mmol/L during a glucose tolerance test (GTT) or a random glucose ≥11.1 mmol/L.

Both allo-HSCT and auto-HSCT recipients have been found to report DM more often than...
sibling donors (OR for allo-HSCT, 3.65; 95% CI, 1.82–7.32; OR for auto-HSCT: 2.03; 95% CI, 0.98–4.21) (Baker et al. 2007). High-dose corticosteroids (cumulative PRD dose of >0.25 mg/kg/day) increase the likelihood of developing DM (RR, 3.6; 95% CI, 1.7–7.5) and for having persistent DM at 2 years post-HSCT (RR, 4.1; 95% CI, 1.0–18.2) (Majhail et al. 2009a; b). TBI is also a well-evidenced risk factor (Hirabayashi et al. 2014).

## 55.4 Preventative Practices in the HSCT and Late Effects Clinic: A Practical Approach

Clearly HSCT clinicians cannot be expected to manage all cardiovascular risk factors and complications. The logistics would be overwhelming and the clinical expertise required to provide up-to-date management of cardiological, cerebrovascular, endocrinological and metabolic conditions lacking.

However, the fact that HSCT survivors require HSCT follow-up provides an opportunity to deliver screening for late effects and other long-term consequences of treatments. Screening for cardiovascular risk factors, including MetS and CV events, can be straightforwardly integrated into a programme of long-term and late effects follow-up.

Screening can be provided by a variety of clinicians, medical, nursing or other allied professions, depending on the model of care. If cardiovascular risk factors are detected, given the commonality, they can usually be referred back to primary care clinicians who are more experienced and frequently manage a range of long-term conditions including hypertension, glycaemic control and often have access to weight management, smoking cessation and similar relevant services. Primary care clinicians are familiar with using risk assessment algorithms, such as the Framingham risk score (Framingham 2008) and many others which are country specific. These risk assessment tools may be useful in estimating a person’s projected risk of developing CVD in the general population. They have limitations (age ethnicity, comorbid conditions) and, importantly, have not been validated in HSCT survivors and may potentially under-estimate the risk. However, it is reasonable for primary care and other clinicians to apply them until some more specific instrument is developed in HSCT survivors.

Non-acute cardiovascular problems detected in the late effects clinic can be referred back to primary care clinicians who can manage them or refer on for specialist treatment. However, there should be direct referral for clinically urgent or more serious cardiovascular problems to relevant hospital specialists, who have a state-of-the-art knowledge and experience in a rapidly evolving field. Ultimately, one indispensable aspect should be close communication between all clinicians involved in the short- and long-term management of the HSCT patient, whether at primary, secondary or tertiary levels of care.

Given the specialised complexity of HSCT and its many complications, which are relatively rarely encountered by many clinicians outside of haematology, oncology and immunology, the HSCT clinic and associated late effects service can have a major role in coordinating care and facilitating communication between other relevant specialists. This aspect is underpinned by the seventh edition of the FACT-JACIE standards which feature systematic provision for late effects follow-up, including cardiovascular risk factors and complications (FACT-JACIE 2017).

For the HSCT programme and/or associated late effects clinic, Table 55.1 has been published as a guide to facilitate screening in the EBMT-CIBMTR guidelines (DeFilipp et al. 2017). This is a consensus opinion, and there is no good evidence of the safety or clinical effectiveness of these recommendations in HSCT patients, which are based on the general population. Based on the available evidence, it is important to screen for other factors in HSCT patients, including (a) personal history, (b) family history, (c) type of transplant (allo or auto), (d) use of TBI, (e) history of acute or chronic GvHD and (f) use of CNI (CSA, TAC) (DeFilipp et al. 2017).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 55.1</th>
<th>Screening guidelines for metabolic syndrome and cardiovascular risk factors for adult and paediatric patients among the general population and HSCT survivors. Taken from DeFilipp et al. 2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Weight, height and BMI</td>
<td>Weight, height and BMI assessment in all adults (no specific recommendation for screening interval)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyslipidemia</td>
<td>For persons with increased risk for coronary heart disease, assessments should begin at age 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure</td>
<td>Blood pressure assessment every 3–5 years in adults aged 18–39 years with normal blood pressure (&lt;130/85 mmHg) who do not have other risk factors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure</td>
<td>Blood pressure assessment annually in adults aged ≥40 years and for those who are at increased risk for high blood pressure (blood pressure 130 to 139/85 to 89 mmHg, those who are overweight or obese, and African–Americans)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperglycemia</td>
<td>Screening for abnormal blood glucose (HbA1C, fasting plasma glucose or oral glucose tolerance test) every 3 years in adults aged 40–70 years who are overweight or obese.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: BMI body mass index, DM diabetes mellitus, HbA1C hemoglobin A1C, HCT hematopoietic cell transplantation, HTN hyper tension
Future Directions: Implementation, Education and Research

As survival after HSCT gradually increases, there is recognition of an impact on CVD and its risk factors, including MetS. Most research has been cross-sectional and observational. More prospective research is needed on both defining the incidence above the normal ageing population and on interventional strategies, targeting individual risk factors and/or components of the MetS. Indeed, a recent review by Armenian and colleagues (Armenian et al. 2017) provided consensus recommendations for cardiovascular disease and risk factors identifying research gaps and future study priorities to improve the long-term cardiovascular health of HSCT survivors.

Consideration of CVD and associated risk factors may also vary between indications for HSCT. For example, the most common indication for HSCT, myeloma, although mostly incurable, is now associated with relative longevity, and consideration of CV risks are relevant (Snowden et al. 2017). Likewise, new indications for HSCT, such as systemic AID, and newer techniques, such as haplo-HSCT, require individualised assessment. Whilst pharmacological, lifestyle and rehabilitation interventions are common in the general population in respect to CVD, their impact in HSCT recipients (both before and after HSCT) needs to be defined in the context of the wide range of indications and age at which patients receive their HSCT, along with the individual prognosis of each indication after successful HSCT.

Key Points

- Until more evidence is available, the best approach is to screen all patients (i.e. both autologous and allogeneic HSCT) according to international consensus guidelines (DeFilipp et al. 2017) and manage risk factors on an individual basis.
- The challenge of universal implementation of screening and management of late effects across various health services providing HSCT will be facilitated by FACT-JACIE accreditation standards.
- Systematic programmes of education and research for the development and validation of HSCT-specific care models are warranted (Battiwalla et al. 2017).

References


DeFilipp Z, Duarte RF, Snowden JA, et al. Complications and Quality of Life Working Party, metabolic syndrome and cardiovascular disease following hematopoietic cell transplantation: screening and preventive practice recommendations from...
CIBMTR and EBMT. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2017;52:173–82.
National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) expert panel on detection, evaluation, and treatment of high blood cholesterol in adults (adult treatment panel III circulation. 2002.

Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Increasing numbers of HSCT are being performed annually and outcomes continue to improve. As a result, survivorship issues are assuming increasing importance. Chemotherapy and radiotherapy remain cornerstones of HSCT treatment, but whilst lifesaving, they threaten endocrine function, fertility and sexual function.

56.1 Endocrine Function

Underlying disease, pre-HSCT treatment, development of chronic GVHD and prolonged corticosteroid treatment can all contribute to the risks of endocrine dysfunction inherent from conditioning regimens used for HSCT. Systematic follow-up is important to identify and treat endocrine defects before clinical impact, and this is particularly important in children where growth and puberty are at risk.

56.1.1 Thyroid Dysfunction

56.1.1.1 Background

The most common abnormality of thyroid function after HSCT is primary compensated hypothyroidism. This may not require treatment and commonly resolves. Overt hypothyroidism may be primary or less commonly central. Other thyroid disorders include autoimmune thyroid disease (thyroiditis, Graves’ disease) and thyroid cancers (carcinomas or benign adenomas).

In a single-centre study of 791 patients followed up for 38 years, new cases of thyroid dysfunction continued for 28 years after HSCT highlighting the need for indefinite follow-up (Sanders et al. 2009).

Risk factors for hypothyroidism post-HSCT include the use of TBI with single dose being associated with a five to sixfold higher risk than fractionated TBI. BU-based regimens are more likely to cause thyroid problems than those containing CY only, and patients with malignant disease (e.g. Hodgkin lymphoma) are more likely to get thyroid dysfunction than patients with non-malignant diseases (e.g. aplastic anaemia). The age of the patient is also important with younger patients at higher risk. In relation to thyroid cancer, a retrospective study which included data on >68000 patients showed that the relative risk (RR) of thyroid cancer was approximately threefold higher following HSCT than in the general population. The RR was >20 if transplanted before the age of 10 years and close to 5 if transplanted between age 11 and...
20 years. Female gender and GVHD were additional risk factors (Cohen et al. 2007).

56.1.1.2 Prevention/Management
Patients should have annual laboratory assessment of thyroid function. Annual clinical examination should include palpation of the thyroid gland, and there should be a low threshold for arranging a thyroid ultrasound.

56.1.2 Hypoadrenalism

56.1.2.1 Background
The main risk factor is use of glucocorticoids which lead to central corticotrophin deficiency. Adult patients receiving 5mg/day prednisolone or more or paediatric patients receiving >0.3–0.5 mg/kg/day for more than 3 months are at risk. TBI can also cause corticotrophin deficiency as can drugs. Symptoms can be non-specific including fatigue, weakness, nausea, weight loss and hypotension. Some symptoms may mimic GVHD. Diagnosis requires paired morning cortisol and ACTH levels. If the results are nonconclusive, then additional investigations should be arranged with an endocrinologist.

56.1.2.2 Prevention/Management
When confirmed hydrocortisone should be given with additional doses to cover stresses such as illness, infection or surgery. Subsequently, regular evaluation is required as it may be possible to reduce/stop medication.

56.1.3 Growth

56.1.3.1 Background
Short stature is multifactorial after transplant. It is a recognized side effect of radiation to the hypothalamic-pituitary area given in childhood, as a result of a reduction in growth hormone (GH) secretion. Radiation can also induce bone lesions. Pre-transplant cranial radiation (e.g. patients with ALL) is also relevant, and single-dose TBI rather than fractionated radiation increases the risk further.

Additional contributory factors to short stature in these patients include underlying disease (e.g. Fanconi anaemia), other hormone deficiencies (including thyroid and gonadal hormones), nutritional deficits, illness, steroids and GVHD. Male sex and young age at time of transplant are additional risk factors.

56.1.3.2 Prevention/Management
Children’s growth velocity should be closely monitored with height and weight documented at each clinic visit. A possible increased risk of secondary malignancies has been described in patients receiving GH therapy after previous neoplasia; this has raised concerns regarding the use of GH in the absence of sufficient long-term follow-up data. As a consequence of this, there are currently no clear guidelines for the use of GH in these patients. A paediatric endocrinologist should be involved if growth rate is abnormal based on bone age and pubertal stage (Chow et al. 2016) and the use of GH therapy discussed for severe growth retardation (-2SD).

56.2 Gonadal Dysfunction and Infertility

56.2.1 Background
Normal reproduction in both sexes requires germ cells and an intact hypothalamic-pituitary endocrine axis. In female patients the uterus must be both receptive to implantation and capable of undergoing growth during pregnancy. Chemotherapy and radiation can lead to damage in all of these areas and compromise the likelihood of successful parenthood after HSCT. Before starting any chemoradiotherapy regimen, the potential effects on the future fertility of the patient should be considered and discussed with the patient together with a discussion of fertility-preserving strategies.

56.2.2 Gonadal Dysfunction in Women Following Chemoradiotherapy
Women are born with a finite number of eggs which can be fertilized for pregnancy and depleted over time as a result of physiological apoptosis or
else menstruation. Chemoradiotherapy depletes further the number of follicles by (1) activating apoptotic pathways, (2) causing fibrosis of stromal blood vessels, (3) activating resting (antral) follicles, leading to a ‘burn-out’ effect (Meirow and Nugent 2001; Kalich-Philosoph et al. 2013). The degree of ovarian damage is related to the dose and type of chemotherapeutic agent used, and baseline ovarian reserve which in turn is dependent on age and previous treatment. Manifestations of premature ovarian failure range from premature menopause to varying degrees of infertility. Alkylating agents have the highest age-adjusted odds ratio of ovarian failure (Meirow 2000). A combination of BU and CY is particularly gonadotoxic to females, but younger patients who receive CY only may have some gonadal function preserved and pregnancies following CY are well described (Salooja et al. 2001). TBI is also potentially sterilizing. The estimated median lethal dose of radiation for the human oocyte is less than 2 Gy (Wallace et al. 2003). The effective sterilizing dose (ESD) decreases with increasing age, and whilst estimated as 18.4 Gy at 10 years of age, the ESD is approximately 14.3 Gy at 30 years of age, and only 6 Gy in women over age 40 (Wallace et al. 2005).

56.2.3 Gonadal Dysfunction in Men Following Chemoradiotherapy

In male patients, spermatogenesis is impaired, but testosterone levels generally remain normal because of the relative resistance of testosterone producing Leydig cells to chemoradiotherapy. As a result, secondary sexual characteristics remain normal for male patients and typically testosterone levels and luteinizing hormone (LH) levels are in the normal range. Spermatogonia are very sensitive to irradiation, and it takes approximately 2 years for sperm counts to recover to pre-irradiation levels after a single dose of 1 Gy (Meistrich and van Beek 1990). With higher doses, azoospermia persists longer or may be permanent. Following HSCT conditioned with TBI, the majority of men will be azoospermic. Chemotherapy only regimens are also associated with azoospermia but to a lesser degree (Rovo et al. 2013). Following BU, for example, approximately 50% will be azoospermic, whilst after CY alone, recovery of spermatogenesis is more frequent.

56.2.4 Uterine Dysfunction in Women After Radiation

Uterine development commences at puberty and is associated with an increase in both size and vascularity (Laursen et al. 1996). Exposure to radiation leads to reduced vascularity, fibrosis and hormone-dependent endometrial insufficiency, which subsequently lead to adverse reproductive outcomes. Increased rates of infertility, miscarriage, preterm labour, intrauterine growth retardation and low newborn birth weight have been described (Reulen et al. 2009), particularly if conception occurred within a year of radiotherapy (Fenig et al. 2001).

56.2.5 Prevention/Management of Gonadal Failure

56.2.5.1 Fertility Preservation in Males

Sperm cryopreservation is an established fertility preservation option for post-pubertal boys and men. Sperm can be used either for artificial insemination or, if the quantity and/or quality of sperm are insufficient, for intracytoplasmic sperm injections for in vitro fertilization. There is a chance of sperm recovery with time particularly if the patient was under the age of 25 years at transplant, did not have TBI and has no evidence of chronic GVHD (Rovo et al. 2013). These patients require reassessment at intervals to ascertain their fertility potential.

56.2.5.2 Fertility Preservation Techniques in Females

Gonadotropin-Releasing Hormone Agonists (GnRHa)

Despite success in animal models, the value of GnRHa to preserve ovarian function during
chemotherapy in human subjects is uncertain. A Cochrane database review (2011) concluded that the use of GnRH agonists should be considered for ovarian protection in women of reproductive age who are receiving chemotherapy (Chen et al. 2011).

**Embryo and Oocyte Cryopreservation**

Embryo and oocyte cryopreservation are preferred methods of fertility preservation in women who require sterilizing treatment. Use of donor embryos/oocytes can also be discussed with the patient because they offer the possibility of pregnancy and parenthood albeit with a non-genetic child. Mature oocyte collection requires ovarian stimulation. These oocytes can then either be frozen or else fertilized *in vitro* before freezing. These options are not open to all patients however. Ovarian stimulation takes a minimum of 2 weeks, and this delay is prohibitive for many patients with haematological malignancies. The requirement for partner or donor sperm for embryo cryopreservation is another potential drawback; for some patients, sperm is not available, and for others the involvement of a partner/sperm donor limits future reproductive autonomy as consent from the sperm provider must be given not only at the time of cryopreservation but also at the time of reimplantation.

**Ovarian Tissue Cryopreservation (OTC)**

OTC is considered experimental and is not available to all patients. Nonetheless, reports of pregnancy after OTC are increasing (Van der Ven et al. 2016), and it is the only option open to prepubertal patients or to women who cannot tolerate a significant delay in treatment due to disease severity or progression. Cortical fragments containing primordial follicles with immature oocytes can be obtained by laparoscopy and cryopreserved. Ideally, ovarian tissue should be obtained before the patient has been exposed to chemotherapy, but this is not always possible and is not an absolute requirement.

A major concern reimplanting cryopreserved ovarian tissue is the possibility of reseeding the tumour. The risk depends on the individual disease. Assessment by PCR of ovarian tissue taken from patients with leukemia (CML, AML, ALL), tested positive for disease in a number of cases and assessment of tissue from mice with severe combined immunodeficiency confirmed, confirms the leukaemic potential of the tissue (Rosendahl et al. 2013). As a result, reintroduction of ovarian tissue from patients with leukemia would not currently be recommended. In the future, maturation in vitro of follicles from cryopreserved tissue may enable production of a viable disease-free alternative. In patients with lymphoma, histologically negative samples of ovarian issue have been transplanted without initiating relapse, but in some cases the follow-up time was short.

**56.2.5.3 Children and Adolescents**

Fertility preservation in children has been the subject of recent guidelines from the paediatric diseases working party of the EBMT (Dalle et al. 2017; Balduzzi et al. 2017). Extreme sensitivity is required, and parents have to be given complete information on the process, associated risks and success rates. For prepubertal girls, OTC is currently the only potential fertility-sparing option. In peri-pubertal boys, it is sometimes possible to extract sperm using surgery/microdissection or electroejaculation under general anaesthetic. In prepubertal males the only option is testicular tissue cryopreservation; although work in animal models is encouraging, there have been no reports to date of reimplanted testicular tissue leading to human live births.

**56.2.6 Management of Pregnancy After HSCT**

Most patients or their partners who conceive after HSCT have uncomplicated pregnancies. Chemoradiotherapy can potentially affect a variety of maternal organs relevant to a successful pregnancy outcome, for example, renal, cardiac and pulmonary toxicity. Patients at risk should have an expert medical review early in pregnancy and may require regular specialist monitoring throughout and review by an anaesthetist.
prior to delivery. Patients who have had TBI or pelvic irradiation have an increased risk of pre-mature and small birth weight babies. Miscarriage rates are typically comparable to the background population, however, and no significant increase in congenital malformations or genetic abnormalities have so far been described when conception has taken place long after completion of therapy (Meirow and Schiff 2005; Green et al. 2009). Animal experiments suggest that most cytotoxic drugs are mutagenic and teratogenic to oocytes exposed during the maturation phase. In humans, this phase lasts approximately 6 months (Meirow and Schiff 2005), so there is a theoretical advantage to delaying conception for 6 months after completing gonadotoxic treatments.

56.3 Sexual Function

56.3.1 Background

Alterations in sexual function and sexual satisfaction are among the most common of all complications in long-term survivors of transplantation with 46% male and 80% female survivors describing sexual problems 5 years post transplant (Syrjala et al. 2008). Sexual complications in both allogeneic and autologous transplant recipients include changes in libido, dyspareunia (females) and erectile and ejaculatory dysfunction (males) (Li et al. 2015). Allogeneic recipients have additional problems linked to acute or chronic GVHD (Wong et al. 2013).

Sexuality is also affected, and this is multifactorial due to decreased self-confidence, stress, anxiety and fear of recurrence, together with a change in body image (Yi and Syrjala 2009). The sexual well-being of the survivor is also determined by their relationship with their partner (Langer et al. 2007). The partners of patients may experience a decrease in sexual desire and anxiety about initiating sexual activity with survivors. Poor communication can contribute to long-term sexual dysfunction between survivors and their partners (Hawkins et al. 2009).

56.3.2 Prevention/Management

It is important to identify relevant issues before problems with sexuality and intimacy become entrenched. It is recommended that healthcare professionals discuss sexual function with patients at 6 months, 1 year and at least annually thereafter (Majhail et al. 2012). Prompt attention should be paid to reversible risk factors such as hypogonadism or symptoms associated with urogenital GVHD so that appropriate referrals can be made to either gynaecologists or urologists. Some male patients benefit from the prescription of erectile dysfunction medication, and hormone replacement should be discussed with women prior to leaving hospital if onset of menopause is likely. Women with vaginal dryness may benefit from lubricants or topical oestrogens, and those with GVHD may benefit from topical steroids (Tirri et al. 2015). The role of vaginal dilators in preventing vaginal stenosis is not clear (Miles and Johnson 2014). It is recognized that psychological factors can play a large part in sexual dysfunction after transplant and this is relevant not only for the patient but also for the partner. For the patient it can be difficult to separate the psychological issues from coexisting physical problems, but many couples will benefit from review by a sex therapist.

References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Part VII

Prevention and Management of Relapse

Topic leaders: Peter Bader and Nicolaus Kröger
57.1 Monitoring MRD in ALL

Peter Bader and Hermann Kreyenberg

57.1.1 Introduction

In ALL evaluation of molecular treatment response, assessment of minimal residual disease (MRD) is a substantial independent predictor of outcome, as proven by randomized studies (Conter et al. 2010; Gökbuget et al. 2012; Bassan and Spinelli 2015). Consequently, MRD is implemented in virtually all clinical protocols in order to supplement or to redefine multifactorial risk stratification with optional customized treatment intensity. The detection of leukemic cells below the limit of classical cytomorphology is feasible either by disease-specific alterations of the immune phenotype or unique genetic features. Several competing and complementing MRD methods have been developed with preference application according to clinical protocols (Van der Velden et al. 2007; van Dongen et al. 2015).

57.1.2 MRD Assessment by IG/TCR

Real-Time PCR

The discontinuous immune receptor genes provide the immune repertoire by somatic recombination of variable (V)-, diversification (D)-, and junction (J)-elements thus forming hypervariable CDR3 (complement determine region 3) regions during lymphocyte maturation. Such rearrangements can serve as clonal index of leukemia blasts originating from lymphoid precursor stages. Additionally, due to a relaxed regulatory control, leukemia blasts can harbor incomplete rearrangements and cross-lineage rearrangements and tend to accumulate simultaneously multiple rearrangements. Quantitative real-time PCR using junction complementary allele-specific oligonucleotides (ASO) frequently reaches a detection limit of 1E-05 with a quantitative range of 1E-04, is applicable to vast majority of cases, and has a high degree of standardization (Van der Velden et al. 2007).
57.1.3 MRD Assessment by Fusion Gene Transcript

Most frequent recurrent reciprocal translocations are in ALL t(9;22)(q34;q11) (BCR-ABL1), t(12;21)(p13;q23) (ETV6-RUNX1), and t(4;11)(q21;q22) (MLL-AFF1) with age stage associated preponderance in adults, childhood, and infant ALL, respectively. Derived chimeric fusion transcripts are validated marker for MRD detection by real-time PCR with an achievable detection limit of 1E-06. The methodology has been standardized by the Europe Against Cancer (EAC) program (Gabert et al. 2003).

57.1.4 NGS (Next-Generation Sequencing)

High-throughput sequencing (HTS) of immune receptor genes by next-generation sequencing (NGS) is a novel option for MRD. This methodology provides comprehensive qualitative and quantitative information regarding clonal consistence of the diagnostic sample and shares one protocol for index determination and MRD assessment without need of individual reagents. Potential sub- and new emerging leukemic clones also are covered. PCR steps during library construction can introduce bias effecting results internal controls and normalization calculations are necessary the generated data volume is high and data interpretation demands biostatistics expertise. Due to high sample capacity, NGS favors a centralized concept and service is available to commercial providers by academic centers (Kotrova et al. 2015).

57.1.5 Flow Cytometry

MRD by multicomponent flow cytometry (MFC) distinguishes leukemia-associated immune phenotypes (LAIP) and regular cells. LAIP consists of cell lineage maturation stage-specific (backbone) markers in combination with illegitimate markers. The standard four to six color approaches have been developed simultaneously by several centers. Therefore, the applied marker panels depend on study protocol. The consistently achieved detection limit is 1E-04. Recently, increase of specificity and sensitivity was enabled by high-throughput procedures demanding eight or ten color equipment. Here the options for targeted and visualized antigens allow simultaneous visualization of all developmental lymphocyte stages serving as background to distinguish leukemic cells. The EuroFlow Consortium validated available antibody panels and controls which can be applied in a standardized way, including automated gating with supportive software, data storage and comparison, accurate quantitative result, and option for IVD development. Similar to the NGS approach, the generated data volume is high and data interpretation demands biostatistics expertise; nevertheless, the concept allows decentralized data acquisition (Pedreira et al. 2013).

57.1.6 Limitations of MRD Assessment

The determined level of MRD always is a result of complex interrelation of baseline characteristics of tumor and patient, time point of MRD evaluation, therapeutic agents, course of clearance, and degree of therapy resistance. Several measurements therefore are mandatory. Adverse circumstances for MRD assessment are clonal selection and clonal evolution, since the associated index might be missed. Potentially impacted are leukemia with initial oligoclonality as observed in approximately 15% of B-ALL and up to 1000 subclones have been reported (Wu et al. 2016). Phenotypic plasticity under treatment and massive lymphocyte regeneration can cause false negativity or positivity, a solvable problem by applying mentioned high-throughput methodologies. Achievable detection limit is correlated with cell count of sample, and aplastic samples are challenging. Finally, all methodologies use different sample preparations, and analyses refer to different units, a circumstance which interferes result comparison.
57.1.7 MRD in the Setting of HSCT

As all adult patients with ALL who relapse after initial chemotherapy have an absolute indication for allo-HSCT, pediatric patients are stratified into different treatment groups. Main prognostic determinants in these patients are the blast immune phenotype, time to relapse, and site of relapse. High-risk patients who experienced early isolated BM relapse, early relapse involving BM, and any BM relapse of T-lineage ALL have clear indication for HSCT. Intermediate-risk patients experienced early or late combined BM relapse and a late isolated BM relapse of a B-cell precursor (BCP).

ALL and very early and early isolated extra-medullary relapse of either BCP-ALL or T-ALL have indication for HSCT if post induction MRD exceeds a threshold of 1E-03 (Eckert et al. 2013).

During the past decades, it could be clearly shown by several studies that the level of MRD immediately prior to transplant does have a clear prognostic impact on post-HSCT outcome (Knechtli et al. 1998). Retrospective studies in children with relapsed ALL revealed an important cutoff for post-HSCT outcome. Patients who received transplantation with an MRD load of ≥10 to 4 leukemic cells had a by far inferior prognosis than patients with lower MRD loads before transplant (Bader et al. 2009). Based on these findings, several studies are now underway investigating strategies to improve outcome in these ultrahigh-risk patients. Adaption of transplant approaches might allow successful transplantation (Leung et al. 2012).

Spinelli et al. showed that almost half of the patients with high levels of MRD before transplantation achieved molecular remission by day +100 (Spinelli et al. 2007). This finding indicates that MRD detection post transplant provides additional value to the MRD assessment prior to transplantation. It could be demonstrated in prospective clinical studies that the close monitoring of MRD by different approaches allows the prediction of relapse and may therefore form the basis of different intervention strategies making use of leukemia-specific targeted therapy (Bader et al. 2015; Balduzzi et al. 2014). Future perspectives will focus on MRD-guided intervention to prevent overt relapse (Rettinger et al. 2017).

57.2 Monitoring MRD in AML

Gert Ossenkoppele

57.2.1 Introduction

The possibility of defining residual disease far below the level of 5% leukemic cells is changing the landscape of risk classification. This so-called measurable/MRD approach at present establishes the presence of leukemia cells down to levels of 1:10³ to 1:10⁶ white blood cells, compared to 1:20 for morphology. Recently the ELN proposed a new response criterium: CR without minimal residual disease (CR_{MRD}) is defined as CR with negativity for a genetic marker by RT-qPCR or CR with negativity by multicolor flow cytometry (MFC) (Döhner et al. 2017).

The reasons to apply MRD assessment in AML are (1) to provide an objective establishment of remission status; (2) to better predict outcome and guide post-remission treatment; (3) to identify early relapse as a robust post transplant surveillance, in order to enable early intervention; and (4) to be used as a surrogate endpoint to fasten drug testing and approval.

A recent ELN MRD consensus document was published with the aim to identify key clinical and scientific issues in the measurement and application of MRD in AML and to provide guidelines for the current and future use of MRD in clinical practice (Schuurhuis et al. 2018).

57.2.2 Methods for MRD Detection

57.2.2.1 MRD Detection by PCR

Real-time quantitative PCR (RT-qPCR) allows MRD detection in cases with chimeric fusion genes generated by balanced chromosomal rearrangements (Grimwade and Freeman 2014). Other genetic alterations can also be used for MRD detection including insertions/duplications, point mutations and gene overexpression. Apart from t(15;17) and RUNX1–RUNX1T1 and CBFB–MYH11, currently NPM1 is the best-validated molecular marker for MRD assessment. PCR assessment of MRD is in about 50% of patients in
principle possible. The methodology has been standardized for several molecular markers for clinical implementation in the Europe Against Cancer (EAC) program (Gabert et al. 2003).

57.2.2.2 Immune MRD by Multicolor Flow Cytometry

The basic principle is to identify at diagnosis leukemia-associated immune phenotypes (LAIP). These LAIPs consist of normally occurring markers, present in aberrant combinations in AML but in very low frequencies in normal and regenerating BM. The background levels of LAIP in normal and regenerating BM levels, in particular, although low, prevent specific detection of aberrancies with sensitivities higher than 1:10,000.

If no diagnosis sample is present, one can make use of “different from normal” approach which uses a standard fixed antibody panel to recognize leukemic cells based on their difference with normal hematopoietic cells (Loken et al. 2012).

Currently, immune MRD aberrancies may be detected in over 90% of AML cases at diagnosis.

57.2.3 MRD in Clinical Studies

Despite a multitude of prognostic factors at diagnosis, the outcome of patients is still highly variable and not individually predictable. It thus seems that prognosticators at diagnosis will not enable clinicians to reach the ultimate goal of truly individualized risk assessment. Treatment parameters may be more useful (Ossenkoppele and Schuurhuis 2013).

Two large, prospective, multicenter studies have identified flow cytometry-based MRD as an independent prognostic indicator in adults with AML (Freeman et al. 2013; Terwijn et al. 2013). Flow cytometry-based MRD was assessed in a multicenter, multinational study in adults with AML between 18 and 60 years of age by HOVON/SACK investigators (Terwijn et al. 2013). Patients were treated according to protocol, without knowledge of MRD-related data. In this study, lower levels of MRD were associated with better outcomes than higher levels, and MRD levels >0.1% of white blood cells after the second cycle of chemotherapy were associated with higher risk of relapse in multivariate analysis. The UK NCRI group assessed MRD using flow cytometry in 427 patients older than 60 years of age (Freeman et al. 2013). MRD negativity after the first cycle of chemotherapy conferred significantly better 3-year survival after CR. MRD-positive patients had increased relapses and higher risk of early relapse (median time to relapse, 8.5 v 17.1 months, respectively).

An example indicative for the usage of molecular MRD was recently published by Ivey et al. (2016) who showed in a large study by NCRI that the presence of MRD, assessed by Q-PCR of NPM1-mutated transcripts, provided powerful prognostic information independent of other risk factors. Persistence of NPM1-mutated transcripts in blood was present in 15% of the patients after the second chemotherapy cycle and was associated with a greater risk of relapse after 3 years of follow-up than was an absence of such transcripts (82% vs. 30%; hazard ratio, 4.80) and a lower rate of survival (24% vs. 75%; hazard ratio for death, 4.38). Many other studies point in the same direction that MRD status after two cycles of chemotherapy is highly predictive independently from other prognostic factors for outcome (Hourigan et al. 2017). However surrogacy for survival has not been proven yet (Ossenkoppele and Schuurhuis 2016).

57.2.4 Pretransplant MRD

Evidence is accumulating that the presence of MRD assessed by multicolor flow cytometry immediately prior to allogeneic HCT is a strong, independent predictor of post transplant outcomes in AML (Buckley et al. 2017; Walter et al. 2015). In a recent update, Araki et al. showed that in 359 adults, the 3-year relapse rate was 67% in MRD-positive patients, compared to 22% in MRD-negative patients, resulting in OS of 26% vs. 73%, respectively (Araki et al. 2016). This applies for the myeloablative as well as for the non-myeloablative transplant setting.

Also molecular MRD as measured by RT-PCR in NPM1-mutated AML has a significant impact on outcome after allo-HSCT (Balsat et al. 2017).
Performing an allo-HSCT in case of a suboptimal reduction (<4 log_{10}) of NPM1 levels after chemotherapy resulted in improved overall survival. In patients with optimal (≥4 log_{10}) reduction of NPM1 levels after chemotherapy, allo-HSCT had no significant effect on survival. However, no prospective studies using MRD to guide post-remission therapy are available at the time of this publication. Regardless, it is clear that novel treatment strategies before, during, and after transplantation are urgently needed to improve outcomes in AML. Thereby depth of response prior to transplant, as measured by level of MRD, has emerged as one of the most important predictors of transplant outcome. Randomized trials are warranted to determine if MRD-guided preemptive therapy is associated with improved outcome.

Currently no clinical trial including transplantation trials should be performed without including MRD assessment.

### 57.2.5 Future Developments

New technologies are emerging to assess MRD. Quantifying leukemic stem cells is such a promising approach (Terwijn et al. 2014; Zeijlemaker et al. 2016). Next-generation sequencing for MRD assessment can, theoretically, be applied to all leukemia-specific genetic aberrations. In a recent HOVON study, it was shown that persistence of gene mutations in CR appeared to be a highly significant independent prognostic value for relapse and overall survival (Jongen-Lavrencic et al. 2018).

### References


Gabert J, Beillard E, van der Velden V, et al. Standardization and quality control studies of ‘real-time’ quantitative reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction of fusion gene transcripts for residual disease detec-

### Key Points

- MRD should be included in the definition of CR.
- MRD positivity is an independent predictor of relapse after chemotherapy in AML patients and a negative predictor for ALL patients.
- Pretransplant MRD positivity is highly indicative for relapse.
- MRD assessment should be implemented in every clinical trial.


Walter RB, et al. Comparison of minimal residual disease as outcome predictor for AML patients in first complete remission undergoing myeloablative or nonmyeloablative allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation. Leukemia. 2015;29:137–44.


58.1 Introduction

Relapse has become the most frequent cause of treatment failure after HSCT (Horowitz et al. 2018). Because outcome after relapse remains poor, major effort is focused on prevention of relapse. Beside adoptive cell-based options, such as DLI, the availability of novel effective pharmacological compounds has opened new avenues in clinical research to use those drugs early after HSCT in order to prevent relapse (Kroger et al. 2014). The optimal pharmacological compound should have a safe toxicity profile, an antitumor effect to the underlying disease, and an immune profile which can be used to booster the graft-versus-leukemia (GVL) effect and to reduce the risk of GVHD.

58.2 Tyrosine Kinase Inhibitors (TKI) Targeting BCR/ABL

Beside a direct antitumor effect, TKIs are considered to induce also immunomodulating effects by inducing effect on T-cell cytolytic function, reducing T-cell PD-1 expression, and reducing myeloid-derived suppressor cells. TKIs targeting BCR/ABL such as imatinib induce more than 60% molecular remission in CML patients who relapsed after allograft. Smaller studies have investigated second-generation TKI successful as maintenance therapy after allo-HSCT for CML (Olavarria et al. 2007).

TKIs as maintenance therapy for Ph + ALL led to nonconclusive results. The CIBMTR did not find a difference in Ph + ALL patients who received post transplant TKIs regarding relapse at 3 years, while in an EBMT study, Ph + ALL patients who received TKIs post transplant had lower relapse incidence and an improved LFS. In a small randomized study comparing TKI prophylactically or preemptive in Ph + ALL, no difference in survival was observed (Pfeifer et al. 2013). In a position statement, EBMT recommended in MRD-negative patients after allo-HSCT either prophylactic or preemptive treatment (Giebel et al. 2016).

58.3 TKI Targeting FLT3-ITD

TKIs in the setting of FLT3-ITD-positive AML are of clinical relevance because a higher risk of relapse has been described for FLT3-ITD-positive patients who received allo-HSCT CR1 (30% vs. 16%). Animal experiences had shown that sorafenib stimulated immunogenicity by induction of IL-15 which enhanced T-cell activation and GVL effect (Mathew et al. 2018).

Midostaurin which is approved in the treatment of FLT3-positive AML has been tested in
a phase II study as maintenance therapy in FLT-3-ITD-positive patients with a low relapse rate at 12 months of only 9.2%. A retrospective study which compared sorafenib with a historical control showed improved outcome if TKI was used prophylactically (Brunner et al. 2016). Currently under investigation are randomized trials with quizartinib, glitertitinib, and crenolanib.

For relapsed FLT3-ITD-positive patients, sorafenib can induce long-lasting CR, and retrospective data show better outcome of sorafenib plus DLI in comparison to DLI alone (Mathew et al. 2018; Metzelder et al. 2012).

58.4 Checkpoint Inhibitors

Checkpoint inhibitors blocking CTLA-4 and PD-1 are now widely used in solid tumors and also in hematological malignancies such as Hodgkin’s disease (Ansell et al. 2015). Because of reversal of T-cell exhaustion by checkpoint inhibitors which may enhance a graft-versus-malignancy effect, this compound has also raised interest to be investigated after HSCT. After auto-HSCT PD-1 antibody pidilizumab as maintenance therapy in DLBCL was well tolerated in a phase II study and nivolumab has shown high response rate in patients with HL who relapsed after auto-HSCT (Younes et al. 2016).

There is concern about a higher risk of GVHD after checkpoint inhibition post-allograft, but ipilimumab did not induce high incidence of GVHD in phase I and phase II trials although the efficacy was limited with an overall response rate of less than 30% (Davids et al. 2016). PD-1 blockade investigated in a European trial was reported for 20 patients with HL who relapsed after allograft. The remission rate was high with 95% and 30% developed GVHD which was fatal in one patient. In a similar trial including 31 lymphoma patients who relapsed after allograft, the response rate was 77%, but 54% developed acute GVHD and eight patients died from GVHD-related complications (Haverkos et al. 2017).

58.5 Hypomethylating Agents

Methylation has a crucial role in epigenetic regulation of gene expression and malignant cells using hypermethylation to switch off a variety of genes which are responsible for growth inhibition and apoptosis. DNA methyltransferase inhibitors such as azacytidine or decitabine are active in MDS and AML, and according to their toxicity profile, they can be used after allo-HSCT. Beside their effect on gene modification for differentiation and cell growth, hypomethylating agents (HMA) lead also to an upregulation of HLA and tumor-associated antigen which may be targeted by donor T cells (Hambach et al. 2009; Goodyear et al. 2010). Furthermore, CD4 and CD8 T cells were strongly suppressed by HMA while an increase of regulatory T cells has been described.

Azacytidine and decitabine either as single agent or in combination with DLI have been reported and up to 28% CR could be achieved including long-lasting remission (Schroeder et al. 2013). In a large EBMT study, an ORR of 25% with 15% CR and a 2-year OS of 12% has been reported for azacytidine in after allo-HSCT-relapsed AML/MDS patients. Overall the incidence of acute GVHD was low and the addition of DLI did not improve response or OS. Smaller studies also reported efficiency of azacytidine to convert decreasing donor cell chimerism into full donor cell chimerism (Platzbecker et al. 2012). Treating patients with HMA prophylactically to prevent relapse has been tested (de Lima et al. 2010) and is currently investigated in prospective randomized clinical trials.

58.6 Immunomodulating Drugs (IMiDs)

After auto-HSCT thalidomide has been tested alone and with glucocorticoids as maintenance to prevent relapse/progression. Most of these phase III trials demonstrated an improved PFS or EFS with variable improvement in OS, but due to toxicity, the drug has not become a standard care of treatment (Barlogie et al. 2008; Spencer et al. 2009). Lenalidomide is approved as maintenance
therapy since a significant improvement in PFS has been shown in two randomized trials and improved OS on one randomized trial (McCarthy et al. 2012; Attal et al. 2012). A meta-analysis with data from three large studies (CALGB 100104, IFM-05-02, and GIMEMA RV-MM-PI-209) demonstrated an OS and a PFS benefit for lenalidomide maintenance. However, an increased risk of secondary primary malignancies was observed after lenalidomide maintenance therapy.

After allo-HSCT a stimulation of T cells has been shown for thalidomide, but second-generation IMiDs such as lenalidomide and pomalidomide are even more potent stimulation of T-cell-mediated immunity. IMiDs also stimulate the innate immune system including γδ-T cells and NK T cells. While after thalidomide even if combined with DLI, no increased GVHD risk was observed (Kroger et al. 2004). Because of the stronger T-cell stimulation, lenalidomide given early post-allo-HSCT can cause severe GVHD (Sockel et al. 2012), but starting with a low dose of only 5 mg and given the drug after discontinuation of IS reduces the risk of GVHD markedly (Wolschke et al. 2013).

Overall, IMiDs are potent agents for preventing relapse after auto-HSCT, but their use post-allo-HSCT remains to be defined primarily due to the increased risk of GvHD.

58.7 Proteasome Inhibitors

Proteasome inhibitors are mainly used as induction therapy prior auto-HSCT. Some studies investigated proteasome inhibitors as maintenance therapy after auto-HSCT to reduce the risk of relapse. In a prospective study, bortezomib as maintenance therapy was superior to thalidomide particularly in patients with renal insufficiency and high-risk cytogenetics t(4;14) or del(17q) (Goldschmidt et al. 2018).

Bortezomib after allo-HSCT was tested so far only in smaller studies with acceptable rates of GVHD (Caballero-Velazquez et al. 2013), and novel proteasome inhibitors such as ixazomib are currently tested as maintenance therapy after allografting in MM.

58.8 Monoclonal Antibodies

Most studies of maintenance therapy with MoAb have been conducted after auto-HSCT. While maintenance therapy after autograft with anti-CD20 antibody rituximab failed to demonstrate an advantage for DLBCL with respect to RFS and OS (Gisselbrecht et al. 2012) for follicular lymphoma, an improved PFS but not an improvement in OS has been reported in a randomized study (Pettengell et al. 2013). An improved PFS and OS with rituximab as maintenance therapy has recently been shown for mantle cell lymphoma after auto-HSCT (Le Gouill et al. 2017).

After allo-HSCT for DLCBL, rituximab maintenance therapy did not improve overall survival (Glass et al. 2014). Anti-CD30 antibody drugs conjugate brentuximab vedotin as maintenance therapy after auto-HSCT for HL did improve PFS but not OS (Moskowitz et al. 2015).

Anti-CD22-conjugated antibody inotuzumab ozogamicin has been approved for relapsed ALL and has shown also activity in patients with ALL who relapsed after HSCT (Kantarjian et al. 2016), but the risk of SOS/VOD is about 11% and up to 22% for those who underwent allo-HSCT after inotuzumab ozogamicin.

Bispecific antibodies such as CD19-directed CD3 T-cell-engaged blinatumomab are active in relapsed and refractory ALL and also in MRD positive ALL and has been investigated successfully in combination with DLI after relapse post-allo-HSCT (Ueda et al. 2016).

58.9 Histone Deacetylase Inhibition (HDACI)

Histone deacetylation is a crucial mechanism of epigenetic modulation and HDACI promotes gene expression by unwinding of histone-bound DNA. Since HDACI reduces inflammatory cytokines and increases T-regulatory cells, the drug was also used for GVHD prevention in a phase I/II study (Choi et al. 2014). Panobinostat was tested in two trials as maintenance therapy after allo-HSCT in AML/MDS with or without (Bug et al. 2017) DLI resulting in an encouraging
1-year RFS of 66% in combination with DLI and 2-year RFS of 74% if used as single agent. This agent will now be tested as maintenance therapy in a prospective randomized phase III trial.

Incorporating novel agents into a transplant concept is an exciting new field of investigation, because in many cases, auto-HSCT alone does not lead to cure. To reduce the risk of relapse, well-designed clinical trial with novel agents is necessary.

**Key Points**

- Outcome after relapse to allogeneic stem cells remains poor and major efforts should focus on prevention of relapse.
- Beside adoptive cell-based options such as DLI, the availability of novel effective pharmacological compounds has opened new avenues in clinical research, mainly:
  - Tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKI) targeting BCR/ABL.
  - TKI targeting FLT3-ITD (sorafenib, midostaurin, quizartinib, gliteritinib, crenolanib).
  - Checkpoint inhibitors (pidelizumab, nivolumab, ipilimumab).
  - Hypomethylating agents (azacytidine, decitabine).
  - Immunomodulating drugs (thalidomide, lenalidomide, pomalidomide).
  - Proteasome inhibitors (bortezomib, ixazomib).
  - Antibodies (rituximab, brentuximab vedotin, inotuzumab ozogamicin, blinatumomab).
  - Histone deacetylase inhibition (panobinostat).
- The optimal pharmacological compound should have a safe toxicity profile, an antitumor effect to the underlying disease, and an immune profile which can be used to booster the GVL effect and to reduce the risk of GVHD.

**References**


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
### 59.1 Biology of Donor Lymphocyte Infusion (DLI)

#### 59.1.1 Diversity of Lymphocyte Subsets Used for DLI

In the context of an allogeneic HSCT, the interplay between host and donor immune cells is considered to be the primary mechanism responsible for graft-versus-leukemia (GVL) reactivity and also able to mediate GVHD (Kolb et al. 2004). The tissue specificity of the immune response determines the balance between GVL and GVHD, as well as tropism of GVHD. The main population for success and failure of HSCT and DLIs originates from \(\alpha\beta\) T cells. However, other subsets are also key modulators of efficacy, e.g., NK cells most likely provide acute control of leukemia and of infections like CMV. However, NK cells become rapidly educated over time (Orr and Lanier 2010) and lose their antileukemia activity. Other subsets, like \(\gamma\delta\) T cells, appear to have a more prolonged antileukemia effect (Handgretinger and Schilbach 2018) and are also helpful in controlling CMV reactivation (Scheper et al. 2013; de Witte et al. 2018). NKT cells, like regulatory T cells, have been mainly reported to influence GVHD effects. While an increase in NKT cells in the graft associates with a reduced GVHD incidence (Malard et al. 2016), depletion of T regulatory T cells in DLI improves GVL effects, although it augments the risk of GVHD (Maury et al. 2010). Thus, lymphocyte infusions as part of the graft at the time of transplantation, or delayed as DLI, have multiple effector cells that need to be considered in terms of different alloreactive effects.
59.1.2 Naïve αβ T Cell: Host Dendritic Cell (DC) Interaction as a Key Driver of Immune Response

Since in the context of HLA-matched transplantation, most alloreactive αβ T cells are present within the naïve repertoire of the donor, recipient-derived dendritic cells (DC) play an essential role in provoking the αβ T cell immune response (Stenger et al. 2012). DC are key players in provoking appropriate T cell activation, and because DC are derived from the hematopoietic system, an immune response of donor origin targeting DC from the recipient will likely result in an immune response against recipient hematopoietic cells, including the malignant population, and therefore give rise to GVL. The level of cross-reactivity against antigens broadly expressed on non-hematopoietic cells will determine the likelihood and severity of GVHD. DCs are present in the lympho-hematopoietic system but also with relatively high frequencies in the target tissues of GVHD. At the time of transplant, all DCs are of recipient origin. When activated by danger signals provoked by tissue damage and pathogens, DCs will present endogenous antigens, as well as cross-present antigens derived from the non-hematopoietic tissues and pathogens. Therefore, in T-cell-replete HSCT, it is difficult to dissect the GVL and GVHD effects (Boelens et al. 2018; Admiraal et al. 2017).

Consequently, many current transplantation techniques deplete immune cells from the graft and administer DLIs at later time points as standard part of the transplantation regimen. Both a complete immune depletion by selection of CD34-positive stem cells (Pasquini et al. 2012) and partial depletion of alloreactive T-cells through PT-CY (Mielcarek et al. 2016) are used. This upfront T-cell depletion associates with a lower risk of GVHD and allows very early DLIs for the majority of patients (e.g., 100 days after HSCT) and an improved segregation of GVL and GVHD effects. More recent transplantation strategies better consider the sophisticated variety of immune cells. These novel strategies utilize either a selective depletion of αβ T cell (Locatelli et al. 2017) or naïve subsets (Bleakley et al. 2015) to abrogate GVHD, while maintaining early immune surveillance directed against infections as well as leukemia.

59.1.3 Diversity of Immune Repertoires and Potential Impact on Interventions

After HSCT, the αβ and γδ TCR repertoire is reconstituted out of the graft of the donor, which contains in T-cell-replete transplantations between $5 \times 10^7$ and $1 \times 10^9$ T cells/kg (Czerw et al. 2016). Of the T cells, the γδ T cells are the first to reach normal numbers, followed by the CD8+ αβ T cells and finally the CD4+ αβ T cells which do not reach normal levels within the first year after HSCT (Kanakry et al. 2016). It is important to note that numerical reconstitution of the T cells does not mean that the diversity of the repertoire is already normalized, reflected by the clinical observations that patients are highly vulnerable to many infections for years after HSCT (van Heijst et al. 2013; Ravens et al. 2018).

Factors that influence the T-cell repertoire reconstitution after HSCT include the source of the graft and occurrence of infectious challenges such as CMV and EBV, GVHD, and cellular interventions such as DLI. The repertoire of αβ T cells after HSCT has been studied extensively in different HSCT settings. Six months after HSCT, the αβ TCR repertoire is still very restricted when compared to that of healthy individuals. A cord blood graft leads to a greater diversity of the αβ TCR repertoire at 6 and 12 months, compared to other graft sources (van Heijst et al. 2013). Even 2–5 years after HSCT, the repertoire is still not as diverse as in healthy individuals (Kanakry et al. 2016; van Heijst et al. 2013; Suessmuth et al. 2015). CMV reactivation shapes the repertoire in such a way that a marked contraction of the diversity is observed (Kanakry et al. 2016; van Heijst et al. 2013; Suessmuth et al. 2015). GVHD has been associated with both an increased (van Heijst et al. 2013) and a decreased diversity (Yew et al. 2015). We favor the hypothesis that selective GVL reactivity is associated with lower diversity, lower magnitude, and relatively tissue-specific recognition of hematopoiesis by alloreactive αβ T cells.
(van Bergen et al. 2017). Less is known about the diversity of the γδ TCR repertoire after HSCT. The repertoire of the γδ T cells seems to be established quite early, at 30–60 days after HSCT. CMV reactivation promotes a massive expansion of a few γδ T cell clonotypes (mainly belonging to the δ1 subset), which leads to a so-called repertoire focusing (Ravens et al. 2018). Within this context, it is reasonable to argue that the administration of a DLI might in the future depend not only on the type of the disease or timing but also on the size of the αβ and γδ T cell repertoire observed at a given time point.

59.2 Guidelines for Prophylactic and Preemptive DLI as Well as DLI After Relapse

59.2.1 General Considerations

Currently, neither the diversity of the TCR repertoire nor the infusion of subsets of lymphocytes is used to guide or fine-tune the intervention DLI in daily practice. To prevent relapse of the underlying disease, timing and dosing of non-manipulated DLI after HSCT can be used to relatively skew the immune response toward GVL reactivity, as tissue damage after transplantation is gradually repaired and the donors’ DCs steadily replace the recipients’ DCs within the first 6 months after HSCT. Therefore, the magnitude and diversity of the interplay between host and donor immune subsets will progressively diminish. This is evidenced by the clinical observation that when the interval between HSCT and the infusion of DLI increases, the total number of αβ T cells that can be administered without induction of severe GVHD will increase from less than 10^5/kg after 3 months, to more than 10^6/kg at 6 months (Table 59.1) (Yun and Waller 2013). Main prerequisite at the time of DLI is therefore also the absence of tissue damage and inflammatory circumstances, thus a lack of GVHD and uncontrolled infections.

59.2.2 Timing, Dosing, and Frequency of DLI

The following recommendations refer to the infusion of non-manipulated donor cells after no or in vivo T-cell-depleted transplantation from matched sibling or unrelated donors in patients with acute leukemia or MDS, which is the most frequently studied scenario. Further aspects, which may modify these recommendations, are discussed below. With respect to the indication of DLI for prevention of overt hematological relapse, two situations are distinguished. Furthermore, DLIs can be given within the context for overt relapses.

59.2.2.1 Prophylactic DLI

A prophylactic DLI is applied in patients with a high-risk of relapse, but at a stage when there is no evidence of the underlying disease. Usually, prophylactic DLIs are given starting from day +90 or +100 after HSCT, provided that the patient is off IS and free of GVHD for about 1 month. CD3+ doses used for the first infusion depend on donor type and timing and vary between 1 × 10^5/kg patient and 1 × 10^6/kg (Table 59.1). In the absence of GvHD, most groups have given prophylactic DLIs as single-shot intervention, but also repetitive DLIs are reported (Table 59.1; Tsirigotis et al. 2016; Jedlickova et al. 2016).

Table 59.1 Timing and dosing of prophylactic and preemptive DLI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Timing</th>
<th>Related</th>
<th>Unrelated</th>
<th>Haplo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preemptive and prophylactic&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3 months</td>
<td>1–5 × 10^6/kg</td>
<td>1 × 10^5/kg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>1 × 10^6/kg</td>
<td>1 × 10^5/kg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relapse in combination with chemotherapy&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>After chemotherapy</td>
<td>1 × 10^7/kg</td>
<td>1 × 10^6/kg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Level C evidence

<sup>a</sup>A DLI can be repeated at 1-log higher 6–8 weeks after the first DLI, when, e.g., MRD is still present and no GVHD is observed. GVHD as endpoint of repetitive DLIs for preemptive DLIs is in the era of MRD monitoring no longer recommended

<sup>b</sup>Tsirigotis et al. (2016)

<sup>c</sup>Schmid et al. (2012)
59.2.2.2 Preemptive DLI
DLIs are administered preemptively, i.e., in case of persistent MRD or when the first signs of relapse are observed, like MRD positivity or a decreasing donor chimerism. For persisting MRD, either the same initial cell dosages as for prophylactic DLI are used, followed by repetitive DLIs in 4–12 weeks’ intervals, using an escalated dose schedule and increasing the cell dosages by five to tenfold at each infusion. Alternatively, five to tenfold higher initial cell doses are used in the preemptive situation as compared to prophylaxis. A total of three to four DLIs may be administered, and subsequent infusions are mostly taken from the same apheresis as the first but are frozen in the previously planned dosages. Occurrence of GVHD after DLI will result in no further DLI administration. For reappearance of MRD or mixed chimerism, obviously timing of DLI depends on the occurrence of these circumstances.

59.2.2.3 Overt Relapses
For overt relapses a combination of DLI with chemotherapy is mandatory (Schmid et al. 2012), and cell doses used in that situation are usually one order of magnitude higher than in the prophylactic or preemptive situation (1 × 10^7/kg). In particular in acute leukemia, DLI alone may not be the preferred strategy for treatment of relapse. Repetitive DLIs can be considered after overt relapses based, e.g., on MRD positivity 6–8 weeks after DLI.

59.2.3 Factors that May Influence Timing, Dosing, and Frequency of DLI
59.2.3.1 MRD
Six weekly scheduled DLI with escalating doses until the first signs of GVHD as described above might no longer be necessary in the era of molecular disease monitoring. A MRD-driven strategy with more time between DLIs (8–12 weeks) might still allow for control of the hematological malignancy while avoiding long-term side effects like chronic GVHD. An alternative is the infusion of donor αβ T cells engineered with a suicide gene. The thymidine kinase (TK) suicide gene has received conditional approval by EMA (Chabannon et al. 2018), and a novel safety switch (inducible caspase-9) characterized by lack of immunogenicity and rapid mechanism of action is under investigation (Zhou et al. 2014).

59.2.3.2 Impact of Underlying Disease
The different underlying diseases might require different doses, considering their sensitivity to a DLI-mediated GvL effect. The relapse workshop of the National Cancer Institute has proposed an estimate of the sensitivity of different diseases to DLI (Alyea et al. 2010). Accordingly, sensitivity is regarded as high for CML, myelofibrosis, and low-grade NHL; intermediate for AML, MDS, multiple myeloma, and Hodgkin’s disease; and low for ALL and DLBCL.

59.2.3.3 Donor Origin
Dosage of DLI can under certain circumstances relate to the origin of the donor (Table 59.1). There is no consensus as to whether the dose between an unrelated and a related donor needs to differ. Similarly, cells doses in the haploidentical setting are unclear. More importantly and not well understood, is most likely the processing of the DLI product with higher potency of freshly infused DLI when compared to frozen DLIs or DLIs used from the mobilized stem cell product due to different viabilities and compositions (Lemieux et al. 2016).

59.2.3.4 Combination with Other Drugs
DLIs are used in many diseases in combination with specific drugs targeting molecular aberrations of the underlying malignancy and/or acting via immune-modulating activities. However, the early administration of LENA after transplantation has been associated with a high incidence of GVHD (Kneppers et al. 2011), indicating that doses of DLI can also critically depend on the co-administration of drugs. Combinations with interferon-α and GM-CSF have also been reported as successful intervention to enhance the GVL effect (Dickinson et al. 2017). Other drugs currently explored are AZA, HDAC inhibitors (Bug et al. 2017), and Flt3-
inhibiting TKI (Mathew et al. 2018), and dosage and timing of combined DLIs might be guided by the experience from prophylactic and preemptive DLIs but need to be carefully monitored.

Key Points

- DLIs are used prophylactically or as preemptive treatment of a persistent MRD.
- DLIs in combination with chemotherapy can be used to treat overt relapse after HSCT.
- Despite the wide use of DLI, it is challenging to provide specific guidelines for dosing and timing of DLIs, and there is no consensus on how to precisely administer them.
- Strict institutional guidelines and rigorous reporting on details of DLI like processing, timing, dosing, intervals, and combination with immune-modulating drugs are therefore needed, and the new cellular therapy registry of EBMT is designed to allow for analysis of daily practice and its impact on clinical outcome in years to come.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
60.1 Introduction

The cellular basis of cancer immune surveillance, already hypothesized in ancient times, was only demonstrated with the advent of HSCT. Indeed, the discovery of the nature of GVHD and its anti-leukemic effects (Weiden et al. 1979) were followed by the first successful attempts of adoptive immunotherapy using donor leukocytes (Kolb et al. 1990).

To address the significant GVHD risk associated with allogeneic T cells, several approaches of T-cell manipulation were developed and tested (Table 60.1). Some of these strategies rely on the genetic manipulation of T cells. First, suicide gene therapy approaches were established to promote GVL and immune reconstitution while controlling GVHD.

More recently, strategies based on the genetic transfer of tumor-specific T-cell receptors (TCRs) or chimeric antigen receptors (CARs) were developed to improve antitumor efficiency of T cells. This chapter provides an overview of this vastly evolving area.

60.2 Suicide Gene Therapy

The transfer of a suicide gene into donor lymphocytes was designed and tested at preclinical and clinical level in the 1990s, with the aim of transferring the entire donor T-cell repertoire, inclusive of cancer and infectious specificities, to transplanted patients, while enabling the selective elimination of the transferred lymphocytes in case of GVHD (Bonini et al. 1997). The first suicide gene, and to date the most extensively tested in clinical trials, is thymidine kinase of herpes simplex virus (HSV-TK). HSV-TK expression confers selective sensitivity to the antiviral drug ganciclovir. Upon gene transfer, HSV-TK is stably expressed by donor T lymphocytes not interfering with their functionality. However, when
exposed to ganciclovir, highly proliferating HSV-TK expressing T cells (TK-cells) will die in a dose-dependent manner. Thus, if ganciclovir is administered during GVHD to patients treated with TK-cells, activated, highly proliferating alloreactive TK-cells will be eliminated. The HSV-TK/ganciclovir suicide system proved highly effective in controlling GVHD in several transplant settings (Table 60.2), including haploidentical HSCT (haplo-HSCT). After TCD haplo-HSCT, the infusion of TK-cells promoted broad and rapid immune reconstitution that, being associated to GVHD control, has led to abrogation of late transplant-related mortality (Ciceri et al. 2009). Overall, clinical results obtained with TK-cells led to their conditional approval by EMA in 2016, thus representing the first genetically engineered medicinal product approved for

### Table 60.2 T-cell-based cellular therapy approaches to increase GVL/GVI while taming GVHD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strategy</th>
<th>Mechanism of action</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infusions of pathogen (i.e., CMV, EBV)-specific T cells</td>
<td>Isolation and infusion of T cells specific for opportunistic pathogens, to control post transplant infectious morbidity and mortality</td>
<td>Riddell et al. (1992), Rooney et al. (1995), Koehne et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infusions of T cells depleted of alloreactive specificities</td>
<td>In vitro activation of host-reactive T cells followed by their depletion, infusion of remaining cells with the aim of promoting immune reconstitution with a reduced GVHD risk</td>
<td>André-Schmutz et al. (2002), Hartwig et al. (2008), Mielke et al. (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infusions of regulatory T cells</td>
<td>Isolation and/or expansion T-cell subsets with regulatory properties to promote immune reconstitution with a reduced GVHD risk</td>
<td>Groux et al. (1997), Chen et al. (2003), Trenado et al. (2004), Brunstein et al. (2011), Di Ianni et al. (2011), Bacchetta et al. (2014)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infusion of T cells depleted of regulatory T cells</td>
<td>Infusion of T cells depleted of regulatory T cells to increase the antileukemic activity of DLI</td>
<td>Maury et al. (2010)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infusions of leukemia-specific T cells</td>
<td>Isolation and infusion of T cells specific for leukemia-associated antigens to boost the GVL potency of DLI</td>
<td>Warren et al. (2010), Bornhauser et al. (2011), Chapuis et al. (2013), Comoli et al. (2017)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infusion of alpha/beta depleted T cells</td>
<td>Infusion of a graft in vitro depleted of conventional alpha/beta T cells, thus enriched of gammadelta T cells, endowed with antitumor activity and a low GVHD potential</td>
<td>Lang et al. (2015), Airoldi et al (2015), Mashan et al. (2016)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infusion naïve-depleted T cells</td>
<td>Infusion of donor T-cell subsets in vitro depleted of naïve cells, with the aim of promoting immune reconstitution with a reduced GVHD risk</td>
<td>Bleakley (2015)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infusions of CIK</td>
<td>Infusions of in vitro activated donor CIK cells to promote GVL and reduce the risk of GVHD</td>
<td>Introna (2007), Introna (2010)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suicide gene therapy</td>
<td>Donor lymphocytes are genetically engineered to express a suicide gene and then infused after HSCT to promote GVT and immune reconstitution while selectively controlling GVHD with the prodrug-mediated activation of the suicide gene</td>
<td>Bonini et al. (1997), Ciceri, Bonini et al (2009), Di Stasi et al. (2011), Zhan et al. (2013), Oliveira et al. (2015)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAR/TCR T cells</td>
<td>Lymphocytes are genetically engineered to express a chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) or a T-cell receptor (TCR) that confers to T cells specificity for an antigen expressed by cancer cells</td>
<td>Kochenderfer et al. (2010), Porter et al. (2011), Brentjens et al. (2013), Morgan et al. (2006), Robbins et al. (2011)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CIK-cytokine-activated killer
cancer patients in Europe. Although when infused after haplo-HSCT TK-cells could be detected for more than 14 years (Oliveira et al. 2015), their persistence might be limited when cells are infused to immunocompetent patients, due to the viral origin of HSV-TK and to its subsequent immunogenicity in humans.

Alternative suicide genes were designed and tested in clinical trials (Table 60.2). iCasp9, in particular, is an innovative suicide gene based on human components and thus with a reduced risk of immunogenicity that was recently proposed and successfully tested in clinical trials (Table 60.2) (Di Stasi et al. 2011; Zhou et al. 2014). Overall,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical application (references)</th>
<th>Suicide gene/ marker gene</th>
<th>Disease indication</th>
<th>Patients treated</th>
<th>T cells infused/kg</th>
<th>Clinical response (no. patients)</th>
<th>Incidence of aGvHD/ chronic no. pts (grade)</th>
<th>CR of aGvHD and cGVHD to GCV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To treat disease relapse occurring after HLA-identical allo-HSCT&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>HSV-TK/ΔLNGFr HSV-TK/NeoR</td>
<td>AML, CML, MM, NHL (adults)</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>10⁶–10⁸</td>
<td>15&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>6 (I–III)</td>
<td>5/5&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day 0 in TCD allo-HSCT&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>HSV-TK/NeoR</td>
<td>ALL, AML, CML, MDS, NHL, WD (adults)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td>5&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>6 (II–III)</td>
<td>6/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day 60 in TCD allo-HSCT&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>HSV-TK/ΔLNGFr</td>
<td>AML, ALL, MDS, CML (adults)</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td>7&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3 (I–II)</td>
<td>1/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day 42 in TCD haplo-HSCT&lt;sup&gt;x&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>HSV-TK/ΔLNGFr</td>
<td>AML, MDS, NHL (adults)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10⁶–10⁷</td>
<td>29&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>12 (I–IV)</td>
<td>11/11&lt;sup&gt;i&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day 1 in TCD haplo-HSCT&lt;sup&gt;y&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>HSV-TK-CD34 fusion gene</td>
<td>FA, ID, MDS (pediatrics)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>10⁴–10⁵</td>
<td>3/3&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day 30–90 in TCD haplo-HSCT&lt;sup&gt;x&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>iCasp9/ΔCD19&lt;sup&gt;g&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>MDS, AML, ALL (pediatrics)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10⁶–10⁷</td>
<td>10&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; [5&lt;sup&gt;i&lt;/sup&gt;]</td>
<td>4 (I–II)</td>
<td>4/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day 13 after alpha/beta depleted haplo-HSCT&lt;sup&gt;m&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>iCasp9/ΔCD19</td>
<td>ALL (adult)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1(I)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>140</td>
<td>79 (56%)</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>28/28 (100%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Bonini et al. (1997), Ciceri et al. (2007), Onodera et al. (2008), Champlin et al. (1999), Munshi et al. (1997)
<sup>b</sup>Clinical outcome is measured as clinical response of the malignant disease
<sup>c</sup>One patient with GVHD achieved CR after GCV administration and immunosuppressive drugs
<sup>d</sup>Tiberghien et al. (2001) and Fehse et al. (2004)
<sup>e</sup>Weissinger et al. (2011, 2014)
<sup>f</sup>One patient with GVHD achieved CR after administration of GCV and steroids
<sup>g</sup>Bonini et al. (2007), Ciceri, Bonini et al. (2009), and Lupo-Stanghellini (2017)
<sup>h</sup>Clinical outcome is measured in terms of T-cell immune reconstitution (evaluated as more than 100 circulating CD3+ T lymphocytes/μL) and pathogen-specific immunocompetence
<sup>i</sup>Four patients with GVHD achieved CR after administration of GCV and short-course low-dose steroids; two patients with GVHD achieved CR after GCV administration and IS
<sup>j</sup>Zhan et al. (2013)
<sup>k</sup>Di Stasi et al. (2011) and Zhou et al. (2014)
<sup>l</sup>T cells were genetically engineered and depleted of host-reactive specificities before infusion
<sup>m</sup>Elshoury et al. (2017)
more than half of the patients who had received suicide gene-expressing donor T cells experienced a clinical benefit in terms of immune reconstitution and GVL (Table 60.2). Of notice, all cases of GVHD were completely controlled by the suicide gene/prodrug systems (Table 60.2).

60.3 CAR-T Cells

60.3.1 CAR-T Cells, Clinical Efficacy

CARs are designer molecules comprised of several components: an extracellular antigen-binding domain, usually the variable light and heavy chains of a MoAb (scFv); a spacer and transmembrane region that anchors the receptor on the T-cell surface and provides the reach and flexibility necessary to bind to the target epitope; and an intracellular signaling module, most commonly CD3 zeta and one or more costimulatory domains that mediate T-cell activation after antigen binding, resulting in selective tumor cell killing.

The most advanced clinical development is the use of CARs specific for the B-lineage marker CD19. Several groups have demonstrated that CD19 CAR-T cells are able to induce durable complete remissions in patients with chemotherapy- and radiotherapy-refractory B-cell ALL, NHL, and CLL (Maude et al. 2014; Park et al. 2018; Turtle et al. 2017).

With longer follow-up, resistance mechanisms to CD19 CAR-T-cell therapy have become apparent, including the development of leukemia cell variants that lost their CD19 antigen expression, particularly in ALL. Several mechanisms may contribute to the development of this phenotype including lymphoid-to-myeloid transdifferentiation, selection of pre-existing CD19-low/CD19-negative leukemia clones, and emergence of clones that lost the specific epitope targeted by the CD19-CAR due to alternative splicing (Gardner et al. 2016; Sotillo et al. 2015; Ruella and June 2016). In ALL, CD19-low/CD19-negative leukemia cells may still express CD20, CD22, and/or CD123 that are being pursued as rescue antigens. A recent study highlighted the potential to re-induce remissions in patients that had relapsed with CD19-low/CD19-negative leukemia and subsequently received CD22 CAR-T cells (Fry et al. 2018). Unfortunately, CD22 itself is prone to internalization and downregulation, and indeed a significant proportion of patients experienced successive CD22-low/CD22-negative leukemia relapse. At present, combinatorial targeting of CD19 with either CD20, CD22, or CD123 is being explored, either through bispecific CAR constructs with two scFvs in cis or through co-expression of two CAR constructs in the same T cells (Zah et al. 2016).

Clinical results obtained with CAR-T cells (Table 60.3) led to recent FDA approval of two CD19 CAR-T-cell products for the treatment of ALL and NHL. Both products are manufactured by viral gene transfer and made headlines due to their considerable market price and the complex logistics behind this treatment. This involves harvesting the patient’s T cells at a leukapheresis center, shipping to a centralized manufacturing facility to perform CAR gene transfer and T-cell expansion and return shipment of the cryopreserved cell product. There is a recent increase in the use of exportable manufacturing devices that are anticipated to provide on-site, point-of-care CAR-T cell manufacture to reduce costs and wait-time.

Another clinical proof-of-concept for CAR-T-cell therapy has been obtained in MM. The lead antigen for CAR-T cells in multiple myeloma is B-cell maturation antigen (BCMA). A recent clinical trial with BCMA-specific CAR-T cells has highlighted their therapeutic potential with several PRs and CRs (Ali et al. 2016), and additional data from ongoing trials continue to emerge. Also, with BCMA, antigen downregulation and the emergence of myeloma cell variants with antigen loss were described, underscoring the need to explore additional target antigens, e.g., SLAMF7 (Gogishvili et al. 2017), CD44v6 (Casucci et al. 2013), and CD38 (Mihara et al. 2009).

60.3.2 Side Effects and Their Management

Results from pioneering clinical studies investigating CAR-T cells in patients with hematologi-
Table 60.3 Clinical trials with CAR-T cells

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical application (reference)</th>
<th>Antigen</th>
<th>No. of pat.</th>
<th>Clinical response</th>
<th>Toxicity</th>
<th>No. of T cells (infused/kg BW)</th>
<th>CAR design</th>
<th>Gene transfer vector</th>
<th>Safety technology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ALL</strong>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>CD19</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>90% CR</td>
<td>B-cell aplasia</td>
<td>0.76–20 × 10&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>FMC63 scFv CD8 alpha spacer 4-1BB costim</td>
<td>Lentivirus</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ALL</strong>&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>CD19</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>88% CR</td>
<td>B-cell aplasia</td>
<td>3 × 10&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>SI25C1 scFv CD28 ECD spacer CD28 costim</td>
<td>Retrovirus</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ALL</strong>&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>CD19</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>93% CR</td>
<td>B-cell aplasia</td>
<td>2 × 10&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt; to 2 × 10&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>FMC63 scFv IgG4 Hinge spacer 4-1BB costim</td>
<td>Lentivirus</td>
<td>EGFRt depletion marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NHL/CLL</strong>&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>CD19</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>53% CR</td>
<td>B-cell aplasia</td>
<td>1–5 × 10&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>FMC63 scFv CD28 ECD spacer CD28 costim</td>
<td>Retrovirus</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NHL/CLL</strong>&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>CD19</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>50% CR</td>
<td>B-cell aplasia</td>
<td>2 × 10&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt; to 2 × 10&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>FMC63 scFv IgG4 Hinge spacer 4-1BB costim</td>
<td>Lentivirus</td>
<td>EGFRt depletion marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CLL</strong>&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>CD19</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>21% CR</td>
<td>B-cell aplasia</td>
<td>2 × 10&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt; to 2 × 10&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>FMC63 scFv IgG4 Hinge spacer 4-1BB costim</td>
<td>Lentivirus</td>
<td>EGFRt depletion marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MM</strong>&lt;sup&gt;g&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>CD19</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1CR</td>
<td>B-cell aplasia</td>
<td>1–5 × 10&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt; (total)</td>
<td>FMC63 scFv CD8 alpha spacer 4-1BB costim</td>
<td>Lentivirus</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MM</strong>&lt;sup&gt;h&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>BCMA</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1 CR</td>
<td>Hematologic (Cytopenia)</td>
<td>0.3–3 × 10&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>C11D5.3 scFv CD28 ECD spacer CD28 costim</td>
<td>Retrovirus</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ALL acute lymphoblastic leukemia, NHL non-Hodgkin lymphoma, CLL chronic lymphocytic leukemia, MM multiple myeloma, BCMA B-cell maturation antigen, CR complete remission, MRD minimal residual disease, PR partial remission, VGPR very good partial remission, CRS cytokine release syndrome, kg kilogram, BW body weight, scFv single-chain variable fragment, costim costimulatory domain, IgG immunoglobulin G, ECD extracellular domain, EGFRt epidermal growth factor receptor (Wang 2011)

<sup>a</sup>Maude et al. (2014)
<sup>b</sup>Davila et al. (2014)
<sup>c</sup>Turtle et al. (2016)
<sup>d</sup>Kochenderfer et al. (2015)
<sup>e</sup>Turtle et al. (2016)
<sup>f</sup>Turtle et al. (2017)
<sup>g</sup>Garfall et al. (2015)
<sup>h</sup>Ali et al. (2016)

Cellular cancers highlight the frequent occurrence of severe adverse reactions, which in some cases were fatal. The most obvious toxicity by CAR-T cells is the elimination of lineage cells expressing the target antigen of choice. For example, profound and, in some cases, long-lasting B-cell aplasia was observed after the infusion of CD19 CAR-T cells in patients with ALL, NHL, and CLL (Maude et al. 2014; Park et al. 2018; Turtle et al. 2017). By analogy, BCMA CAR-T cells are...
expected to induce plasma cell ablation in MM patients. The depletion of antibody-producing cells, or their precursors, in turn causes hypogammaglobulinemia, requiring constant supplementation with immunoglobulins.

Besides these expected on-target/off-tumor effects, a new class of on-target/on-tumor adverse reactions is represented by the cytokine release syndrome (CRS) and by neurotoxicity. CRS is initiated by CAR-T cell recognition of tumor cells, igniting the release of massive amounts of inflammatory cytokines, possibly by recruiting cells of the innate immunity. A master cytokine of the CRS is IL-6, as demonstrated by prompt and often complete response to the anti-IL-6 receptor monoclonal antibody tocilizumab. CRS symptoms range from high fever, headache, and myalgia to life-threatening cardiocirculatory and renal insufficiency. Clinical data reported so far utilize three slightly different systems for severity grading, which makes it difficult to draw meaningful comparisons in CRS liability between CAR-T-cell trials (Table 60.4). Nonetheless, there is generalized consensus on the fact that severe CRS is more frequent in ALL compared to NHL and that high tumor burden is an important risk factor.

Differently from CRS, the pathophysiology of neurotoxicity by CAR-T cells remains an uncharted territory and decisively worthy of further research, given its highly dismal prognosis, as demonstrated by several cases of lethal cerebral edema. Initially thought to be caused by tumor recognition by CAR-T cells within the brain, neurotoxicity is now recognized to be independent from leukemic localization to the CNS. Moreover, unresponsiveness to tocilizumab suggests that excessive IL-6 signaling may not be sufficient to explain neurotoxicity and that additional pharmacological measures should be investigated.

### 60.4 TCR Gene Transfer and Future Perspectives

In contrast to CARs that only bind surface molecules, TCRs recognize small pieces (peptides) derived from any cellular protein and presented by MHC molecules. Since the vast majority of tumor-specific/associated antigens are expressed intracellularly, they will only be addressable by TCRs, but not CARs. Moreover, therapeutically relevant cancer-driver mutations in most cases happen in intracellular proteins (e.g., signal transducers).

At the same time, the advantage of TCRs represents a major hurdle for broad clinical application: Any transgenic TCR only functions in the context of one specific HLA complex. Thus, in order to offer TCR-T-cell therapy to virtually all candidate patients, for each antigen a whole set of active TCRs will have to be established for different HLA molecules.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 60.4 CRS severity scoring systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Penn scale</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 1 Mild reaction treated with antipyretics and/or antiemetics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 2 Moderate reaction requiring hospitalization and IV therapy (no fluid resuscitation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 3 Severe reaction requiring high-flow oxygen or noninvasive lung ventilation, fluid resuscitation, or low-dose pressors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 4 Life-threatening reaction requiring high-dose pressors and/or mechanical ventilation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The first TCR gene therapies were applied to melanoma patients (MART-1 antigen), but meanwhile many cancers have been addressed. Based on their almost complete absence in adult tissues, cancer/testis antigens (MAGE, NY-ESO1) represent particularly promising targets. Many studies showed significant antitumor activity, but on-target as well as off-target activities were associated with severe side effects, including mortality (Morris and Stauss 2016).

Genome editing has been proposed to improve efficacy and decrease side effects of TCR gene therapy. Editing might be used to knock out the endogenous TCR to increasing expression of the transgenic one and decreasing the mispairing risk between endogenous and transgenic TCR chains (potentially leading to autoreactive T cells) (Provasi et al. 2012). Moreover, targeted integration in the TCR locus can improve long-term expression of transgenic TCRs (Eyquem et al. 2017).

In conclusion, T-cell therapies have become a promising novel anticancer weapon. Their broad application will require (1) identification of additional targets, (2) availability of TCRs against established targets for many HLA molecules, and (3) improved methods for large-scale GMP production. All these points will become particularly relevant in concepts addressing multiple tumor neoantigens to decrease the likelihood of escape (Tran et al. 2017).

Key Points
- The cellular basis of cancer immune surveillance was demonstrated with the discovery of the nature of GVHD and its antileukemic effects.
- This observation was followed by the first successful attempts of adoptive immunotherapy using DLI to promote GVL.
- Several approaches of T-cell manipulation have been developed and tested to reduce the GVHD risk associated with allogeneic T cells. These strategies rely on the genetic manipulation of T cells or the use of suicide gene therapy.
- More recently, strategies based on the genetic transfer of tumor-specific T-cell receptors (TCRs) or chimeric antigen receptors (CARs) were developed to improve antitumor efficiency of T cells.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
61.1 Introduction

It is widely accepted that the curative potential of allo-HSCT for malignant diseases relies on the transfer of healthy donor immune cells capable of recognizing transplantation antigens on residual tumor cells (graft versus leukemia, GvL) and eliminating them. However, as extensively documented in solid cancers, if tumor eradication is incomplete, the prolonged immune pressure selectively allows immune-resistant subclones to survive (Schreiber et al. 2011). There is growing evidence that such an “immunoediting” also accounts for relapse after HSCT. Malignant cells evade GvL either by reducing their immunogenicity and conveying inhibitory signals to the donor immune system (intrinsic evasion) or through the microenvironment (extrinsic evasion).

61.2 Mechanisms of Immune Evasion

61.2.1 Mechanisms Intrinsic to the Malignant Clone

A remarkable example of tumor-intrinsic mechanism of immune evasion is the genomic loss of the mismatched HLA haplotype frequently documented in leukemia relapses after T-cell-replete HSCT from HLA haploidentical family donors (Vago et al. 2009). In this setting, donor T cells mount a vigorous alloreactive response against the incompatible HLA molecules, and this reaction is not only responsible for a significant risk of severe GvHD but also a major contributor to the GvL effect. Yet, this strong and selective immune pressure is easily overturned by tumor cells which, by losing the allogeneic HLA haplotype, find a means to avoid recognition and re-emerge. “HLA-loss” variants account for up to one third of relapses after HLA-haplo-HSCT (Crucitti et al. 2015) and have been described also in the setting of HSCT from partially HLA-incompatible URD, although their actual frequency in this setting is yet to be determined (Waterhouse et al. 2011). The documentation of HLA loss at relapse has an important clinical impact, because IS withdrawal or administration of DLI would be much less effective against these diseases variants (Tsirigotis et al. 2016).

Another evidence that supports “leukemia immunoediting” is the occurrence of isolated
extramedullary relapses after allo-HSCT or even more frequently after DLI. These relapses may occur, but not necessarily, in immunological sanctuaries, including the CNS. Although to date the biological drivers of extramedullary relapses remain unknown, some studies have suggested a link with immune-related factors such as chronic GvHD (Solh et al. 2012; Harris et al. 2013).

A number of studies have highlighted a further strategy by which hematological cancers can evade immune control, whereby they express large numbers of molecules capable of dampening immune responses such as programmed death-ligand (PD-L)1. The expression of these inhibitory ligands significantly increases at relapses after allo-HSCT. This observation provides a rationale for the use of “checkpoint blockade” to restore immune control at relapse. Initial experience in patients with relapsed lymphoma or extramedullary leukemia with anti-PD1 and anti-cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen (CTLA)-4 MOAb is very promising (Davids et al. 2016; Herbaux et al. 2017). However, the risks of triggering life-threatening GvHD remain to be quantified.

**61.2.2 Mechanisms Extrinsic to the Leukemic Cells**

The alternative, but not mutually exclusive, strategy by which malignant cells enact evasion from immune cell recognition relies on hijacking the stem cell niches in which normal HSC self-renew and differentiate. By doing this, malignant cells create a tumor microenvironment (TME) that has profound consequences on disease progression and relapse. The initial studies conducted on solid tumors have shown that the TME consists of two major cellular populations that alone or in combination drive resistance to conventional therapies and suppress antitumor immune responses. The first group comprises a diverse and heterogeneous group of myeloid-derived cells which, according to a yet unresolved debate on their nomenclature, can be generally classified as tumor-associated monocytes/macrophages (TAM) and myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSC) (Bronte et al. 2016). The IS activity of these cells is mediated by factors that include nitric oxide synthase-2 (NOS-2), arginase-1, heme oxygenase-1 (HO-1), interleukin (IL)-10, transforming growth factor (TGF)-β, and prostaglandin E2 (PGE2). All these molecules also favor the recruitment of regulatory T cell (Tregs) that eventually contribute to the inhibition of antitumor CD8+ T-cell and natural killer cell effector function (Ostuni et al. 2015). Although most of these mechanisms have been initially demonstrated in solid tumors, there is consistent evidence that they are also involved in hematological malignancies. High-risk AML can actually behave as MDSC by upregulating NOS and suppressing T-cell responses (Mussai et al. 2013). The presence of MDSC in AML has later been confirmed and also identified in multiple myeloma whereby they protect malignant cells through MUC1 oncoprotein (Bar-Natan et al. 2017; Pyzer et al. 2017).

The second cellular group consists of an equally heterogeneous population of mesenchymal origin, variously referred to as mesenchymal stromal cells (MSC) or cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAF) (Raffaghello and Dazzi 2015). Regardless of their developmental heterogeneity, they all play a similar role by protecting the malignant cells from cytotoxic agents and immune responses. In the bone marrow, MSC protect CML and AML cells from imatinib and Ara-C via the CXCR4-CXCL12 axis (Vianello et al. 2010).

Much information has been provided about the IS activity of MSC that is exerted in a non-antigen-specific fashion (Jones et al. 2007). One of the primary direct mechanisms responsible for this involves the expression of indoleamine 2-3 dioxygenase-1 (IDO-1), which consumes the essential amino acid tryptophan. Additional IS mechanisms include the release of suppressive factors such as TGF-β1, hepatocyte growth factor, PGE2, soluble human leukocyte antigen G, and TNF-α stimulated gene 6 protein (TSG-6). However, more recent data have highlighted the important contribution of tissue-resident monocytes/macrophages in delivering a more sustainable IS effect (Cheung and Dazzi 2018).
Finally, the role of Tregs in generating immune resistance has been much discussed. While there is plenty of data indicating how these cells exert a very negative impact on the outcome of solid tumors, data in preclinical models of allogeneic HSCT have suggested that Tregs may selectively inhibit GvHD without compromising GvL (Edinger et al. 2003). In contrast, clinical data suggest to consider Treg levels post transplant with caution (Nadal et al. 2007).

**Key Points**

- Leukemia can counteract the beneficial graft-versus-leukemia effects post transplant.
- This is effected either by changes in the tumor cells which make them evade immune recognition or by instructing different components of the microenvironment to deliver in situ immunosuppression.

**References**


Regulatory Aspects of ATMP Versus Minimally Manipulated Immune Cells

Eoin McGrath and Christian Chabannon

Under current European regulations, hematopoietic cellular therapies fall under two categories: stem cell transplants and advanced therapy medicinal products (ATMPs). Routinely administered auto- and allo-HSCT—including subsequent peripheral blood allogeneic mononuclear cells (DLI)—undergo non-substantial manipulations following cell procurement and before being administered to the recipient.

Cell processing is performed in facilities termed tissue establishments (TEs) under the EU Tissues and Cells Directive (see https://ec.europa.eu/health/blood_tissues_organs/tissues_en. Accessed 20 Feb 2018), and these are authorized by national and/or regional competent authorities (CA). TEs usually operate on a relatively small scale, serving the clinical program(s) in their immediate vicinity although some national or regional services may support a more extensive network of clinical programs. The combination of a clinical department(s) with a collection and a processing facility represents the core structure for a transplant program that applies for the JACIE accreditation (see Chap. 5). Such an organization leaves room for significant procedural and organizational variations, many driven by local or national factors, despite all attempts from the various professional associations to harmonize practices through surveys, the publication of guidelines, and regularly revised standards for these therapies, e.g., FACT-JACIE International Standards for Hematopoietic Cellular Therapies (see www.jacie.org. Accessed 19 Feb 2018).

ATMPs represent a new category of medicinal products defined in EU Regulation 1394/2007 (see http://eur-lex.europa.eu/LexUriServ/LexUriServ.do?uri=OJ:L:2007:324:0121:0137:en:PDF. Accessed 20 Feb 2018). ATMPs—known in the USA as human cells, tissues, and cellular- and tissue-based products (HCT/Ps) regulated under Section 351 of the PHS Act and/or the FD&C Act (see https://www.fda.gov/biologics-bloodvaccines/tissuetissueproducts/regulation-oftissues/ucm150485.htm. Accessed 21 Feb 2018)—are subdivided in four categories, of which two are relevant in the context of hematopoietic cellular therapies: somatic cell therapy medicinal products (SCTMP) and gene therapy medicinal products (GTMP). Examples of SCTMP include ex vivo expanded autologous or allogeneic stem cells (de Lima et al. 2012; Delaney et al. 2010), mesenchymal stem cells (Le Blanc et al. 2008), and allogeneic T lymphocytes depleted of alloreactive T cells (Andre-Schmutz et al. 2002). Examples of GTMP
include allogeneic T cells engineered to express a suicide gene (Ciceri et al. 2009), autologous or allogeneic CAR-T cells (Schuster et al. 2017; Neelapu et al. 2017), and autologous CD34+ cells genetically engineered to express a mini-globin gene and designed to treat inherited β-globin disorders (Cavazzana-Calvo et al. 2010; Ribeil et al. 2017).

The regulation was designed in part to foster the competitiveness of European pharmaceutical companies in this emerging field, but the number of ATMPs that have received a centralized marketing authorization remains relatively low and with poor overall commercial success so far. In the HSCT field, it was not until 2015 that an ATMP of interest reached the market with authorization given for Zalmoxis® (allogeneic T cells engineered to express a suicide gene). Production, distribution, and administration of ATMPs imply a totally different organization than that used for HSCT, with manufacturing at a central facility in compliance with good manufacturing practices (GMP) (Wang and Rivière 2016, 2017), a version of which was recently released by the European Medicines Agency (EMA) to specifically deal with manufacturing of ATMPs (see https://ec.europa.eu/health/sites/health/files/files/eudralex/vol-4/2017_11_22_guidelines_gmp_for_atmps.pdf. Accessed 19 Feb 2018). Since a majority of the ATMPs that progress to authorization or at least to clinical trials are manufactured from autologous mononuclear cells, starting material is currently procured by hospital- or blood bank-operated apheresis facilities creating a peculiar situation in which a product starts under one regulation—Tissues and Cells Directive—before passing to another, ATMP Regulation, and where a hospital acts as a service provider to industry, an interaction that requires further definition of the respective responsibilities and liabilities.

Publication of Regulation 1394/2007 created a situation in which some cell- or tissue-based therapeutic products that were previously prepared and delivered through an organization similar to that for cell transplants were classified as ATMPs. This had a limited impact in the field of hematopoietic cellular therapies, although some cell-based products such as allogeneic T cells with specific anti-CMV activity engineered through the gamma-catch technology (Feuchtinger et al. 2010) were affected. In recognizing that many potential ATMPs were used for limited numbers of patients and with no commercial motivation, Regulation 1394/2007 created the so-called hospital exemption (HE) under Article 28 exempting from authorization requirements those ATMPs manufactured in hospitals, universities, or start-up companies where the medicine is prescribed for individual patients under the care of a medical practitioner. This manufacture should occur on a non-routine basis according to specific quality standards (GMP) (Vives et al. 2015), and the ATMP should be used in a hospital and only within the same member state. National authorities oversee the approval of HE products which has resulted in significant variations between member states in how it is applied and which has led to criticism from both industry and academia that it is unclear and inconsistent.

Access to ATMPs including cellular therapies is likely to be a particular challenge for patients, healthcare professionals, and national health systems due to their expected high costs. Even access to decades-old HSCT remains strongly associated with higher-income countries (Gratwohl et al. 2015). One potential effect of limited access could be the so-called stem cell tourism whereby patients with the means travel to centers outside their own countries for care and who may be vulnerable to false promises or may not have access to all of the information needed to make this important decision. The International Society for Cellular Therapy (ISCT) leads the publication of patient advice and other documentation on this phenomenon (see http://www.celltherapysociety.org/page/UCT. Accessed 21 Feb 2018).

Academic facilities including stem cell transplant practitioners at large should strive to remain active players in the development of ATMPs. Academia remains very active in the early phases of clinical trials designed to evaluate innovative SCTMP and GTMP as potential complements, substitutes, or bridges to historical forms of
hematopoietic cell transplants (Pearce et al. 2014). One recent study calculated that only 20% of CART cell trials are sponsored by pharmaceutical industry (Hartmann et al. 2017). Many public institutions have invested significant resources to upgrade their processing facilities to GMP-compliant levels thus allowing for small-scale manufacturing of experimental medicinal products to support phase I and possibly phase II studies, often with the hope that industry will take over in case that promising results warrant further development (de Wilde et al. 2016a). Furthermore, academia has to become a proactive stakeholder in the regulatory area by engaging with the authorities, sharing their know-how, and voicing their opinion (de Wilde et al. 2016b).

The field is moving at a fast pace. So far, there has been proof of concept that tissue-based or cell-based medicinal products can be manufactured by a “conventional” pharmaceutical company (Locke et al. 2017), although with continued reliance on critical contributions from academic facilities, e.g., basic science and provision of starting materials. Some of these innovative medicinal products have remarkable clinical efficacy for severe or debilitating diseases although sometimes at the expense of equally remarkable toxicity. However, a commercial ATMP “hit” is still to emerge which could explain why the CAR-T cell field is being highly scrutinized by clinicians, regulators, and industry after the first two marketing authorizations for CAR-T cell therapies were granted by FDA in the USA in 2017 and by EMA in the EU in August 2018. These developments carry many regulatory and operational uncertainties including the very sustainability of how academic facilities currently deliver HSCT, but availability of this new category of innovative medicinal products offers new hopes to patients. Their therapeutic pathway is likely to become increasingly complex (Chabannon et al. 2015) and will require long-term follow-up for evidence of sustained clinical efficacy and detection of late adverse effects (see http://www.ema.europa.eu/ema/index.jsp?curl=pages%2FRegulation%2Fgeneral%2Fgeneral_content_000658.jsp&mid=WCO01ac0580961211). Academia through continental registries such as EBMT will continue to play a key role with data and know-how that will be very useful not just for researchers but also for industry, healthcare regulators, and payers.

Key Points

• In this chapter, we review the fast-evolving regulatory framework that leads to the coexistence of two categories of hematopoietic cell-based therapies.
• Innovative and industry-manufactured somatic cell therapy or gene therapy medicinal products are now entering the field at an accelerating pace and will complete or compete with traditional HSCT practices in the near future.
• We describe the organizational consequences for academic facilities of this historical shift that brings new opportunities to patients and practitioners in the field.

References


Part VIII

Specific Modalities of HSCT and Management

Topic leaders: Andrew Gennery, Anna Sureda and Arjan Lankester
At-Home HSCT

Francesc Fernandez-Avilés
and Gonzalo Gutiérrez-García

63.1 Autologous HSCT

63.1.1 Introduction
Toxicity and mortality associated with auto-HSCT have been reduced, and outpatient parenteral antimicrobial treatment has been proven feasible and safe, thanks to modern CVC and infusion devices. These advances have led to the development of outpatient auto-HSCT programs, and several studies have demonstrated their feasibility and safety.

There are various reasons for transferring the support of the neutropenic phase of auto-HSCT to the ambulatory setting, including patient preference, reduced exposure to hospital microorganisms, better use of hospital resources, and cost-saving issues (Meisenberg et al. 1997). In this model, however, patients experience time-consuming daily travel to the outpatient clinic for blood tests and physician checkups. “Hospital at home” is an alternative, designed to reduce hospital outpatient admissions by providing hospital equivalent care to patients in the home setting (Westermann et al. 1999; Fernández Avilés et al. 2006).

63.1.2 Ambulatory Auto-HSCT Models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Conditioning regimen</th>
<th>Management of the aplastic phase</th>
<th>Admission Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complete outpatient program</td>
<td>Conditioning regimen, HPC and management of the aplastic phase</td>
<td>Outpatient clinics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delayed admission</td>
<td>Conditioning regimen and HPC infusion</td>
<td>Early discharge (+1) and readmission (+5)</td>
<td>Inpatient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed inpatient-outpatient</td>
<td>Conditioning regimen</td>
<td>Management of the aplastic phase</td>
<td>Outpatient clinics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early discharge outpatient</td>
<td>Conditioning regimen and HPC infusion</td>
<td>Management of the aplastic phase</td>
<td>Inpatient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early discharge at home</td>
<td>Conditioning regimen and HPC infusion</td>
<td>Management of the aplastic phase</td>
<td>At home</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F. Fernandez-Avilés (✉) · G. Gutiérrez-García
Department of Hematology, Bone Marrow Transplantation Unit, Hospital Clínic de Barcelona, Universitat de Barcelona, Barcelona, Catalunya, Spain
e-mail: ffernand@clinic.cat
63.1.3 Inclusion Criteria for Ambulatory Auto-HSCT

| Patient | – Age ≤65 years  
|– ECOG ≤2  
|– Normal cardiac, lung, liver, and renal function  
|– Recent documented infection with a proven secondary prophylaxis  
|– Absence of refractoriness to platelet transfusion  
|– Signed written informed consent |

| Transplant Center | – Outpatient clinics available 24 h per day or bed reserved in the transplant unit  
|– Dedicated phone line 24h × 365 days to allow patients or their caregivers to contact an expert physician of the transplant team |

| Disease | – CR or PR before the auto-HSCT  
|– No symptomatic advanced disease |

| Caregiver | Availability of a suitable caregiver 24 h per day, 7 days a week |

| Home | – Clean house  
|– Travel time from home to the hospital less than 60 min at rush hours |

63.1.4 General Recommendations for At-Home Auto-HSCT

Dose of CD34+ cells, use of G-CSF after HPC infusion, primary antimicrobial prophylaxis, and supportive care (hydration, management of emesis and metabolic disorders, analgesic therapy, and transfusion of blood products) should not differ from that recommended for conventional auto-HSCT. All these treatments can routinely be performed at home or in outpatient clinic.

63.1.5 Most Frequent Reasons for Readmission (Ordered by Frequency)

Persistent fever >38 °C without identified infectious focus

Severe oral mucositis or gastrointestinal toxicity (WHO grade III or IV) with insufficient liquid intake

Severe sepsis with organic failure

Request of the patient (psychological distress) or loss of caregiver support

63.1.6 Treatment of Fever in At-Home Setting

If fever occurs, the patient should be evaluated quickly by an expert hematologist on call. The use of empiric antibacterial treatment should follow guidelines/recommendations for patients with hematologic malignancies and neutropenic fever. IV antibiotics should be preferred and chosen in the light of clinical and laboratory findings. After at least 6 h monitoring, hemodynamically stable patients without relevant clinical problems may be followed at home. Table 63.1 shows the different empiric antibiotic therapy that could be used at home.

63.1.7 Incidence of Readmission in Outpatient and At-Home Auto-HSCT

The incidence of readmissions is closely related to the experience of the group of professionals in outpatient or at-home management of complications and by the support infrastructure available in the hospital.

Table 63.1 Empirical antibiotic therapy

| Patients not receiving prophylaxis with quinolones |
| Levofloxacin (PO or IV)  
| Moxifloxacin PO  
| Ciprofloxacin PO associated or not to amoxicillin/clavulanate  
| Ciprofloxacin PO associated or not to linezolid PO |

| Patients receiving prophylaxis with quinolones |
| IV ceftriaxone or piperacillin/tazobactama or meropenemb or teicoplanin IVc if intense oral mucositis  
| If there is a high suspicion of CVC infection, add teicoplanin and an anti-GNB such as amikacin IV and evaluate the CVC withdrawal  
| If allergic to beta-lactam: quinolones PO/IV associated with teicoplanin IV and amikacin IV |

aStable at room temperature so it can be administered at home by electronic intermittent infusion pump  
bAccurate refrigeration to achieve adequate stability for home administration  
cThe first option at home would be teicoplanin once daily instead of vancomycin IV (twice a day). Other alternatives rarely necessary in the context of auto-HSCT are daptomycin IV or linezolid PO
In patients with MM, usually conditioned with MEL, the lowest readmission rates have been reported (between 10 and 20%) due to the low organic toxicity (Martino et al. 2016). They are clearly the best option when considering starting an outpatient or at-home auto-HSCT program.

In patients with NHL or HL usually conditioned with a more toxic regime (BEAM or BEAC), there is a significantly higher readmission rate, between 30 and 90%, according to the series (Faucher et al. 2012; Scortechini et al. 2014).

In the hospital clinic at-home auto-HSCT experience, the low rate of febrile neutropenia is achieved, thanks to the intensification of antibiotic prophylaxis (ceftriaxone in MM and piperacillin/tazobactam in NHL and LH patients), and the successful control of fever at home resulted in an overall readmission rate significantly lower (8.5%) in a series of 325 patients.

### 63.1.8 Quality of Life

The data published are limited and contradictory. Thus, (Summers et al. 2000) reported significantly higher scores for emotional well-being and global QOL in outpatients, while (Martino et al. 2018) indicated that the outpatient model neither improves nor impairs global patient QOL on the first 30 days after auto-HSCT. In this sense (Schulmeister et al. 2005) reported that the QOL decreased immediately post treatment but then increased to above pretreatment levels by 6 months. A good clinical outcome following auto-HSCT was associated with better QOL and greater satisfaction with care.

### 63.1.9 Cost Data

The study of “real” costs of these ambulatory/domiciliary auto-HSCT programs is still to be carried out. In the absence of well-designed studies aimed at evaluating the “real” savings achieved with outpatient/at-home auto-HSCT programs, some authors cite direct savings between 10% and 50% (Meisenberg et al. 1998; Fernández Avilés et al. 2006; Holbro et al. 2013), especially influenced by the release of hospital beds and low readmission rates.

### 63.2 Allogeneic HSCT

#### 63.2.1 Introduction

The consolidation of ambulatory auto-HSCT modalities as a safe and potentially cost-saving procedure and the introduction of NMA and RIC conditioning chemotherapies minimizing toxicity have allowed the development of allo-HSCT ambulatory programs. Indeed, the main relevant results with this type of modality have shown a safe profile in terms of lower rate of infection and GVHD improving QOL, conditions that should expand the development of ambulatory modalities into the allo-HSCT setting (Svahn et al. 2002). However, after two decades of the first ambulatory allo-HSCT program, the experience with this modality is limited to few BMT groups.

#### 63.2.2 Ambulatory Allo-HSCT Models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complete outpatient program (McDiarmid et al. 2010)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conditioning regimen and HPC infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management of the aplastic phase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mixed inpatient-outpatient (Solomon et al. 2010)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conditioning regimen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPC infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management of the aplastic phase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Early discharge at home (Ringdén et al. 2018)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conditioning regimen and HPC infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management of the aplastic phase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 63.2.3 Inclusion Criteria for At-Home Allo-HSCT Patients

Inclusion criteria for at-home allo-HSCT patients: Specifically, apply similar conditions as an at-home auto-HSCT.
63.2.4 General Recommendations for At-Home Allo-HSCT

Apply whole hints described for auto-HSCT. Moreover, strictly frequent dosage of IS (2–3 times per week) is recommended. Monitoring of CMV and Aspergillus should not differ from that recommended for conventional allo-HSCT. Primary prophylaxis for Aspergillus is not established but is strongly suggested.

63.2.5 Which Readmission Criteria?

Which readmission criteria? Apply similar conditions for ambulatory auto-HSCT plus evidence of GVHD grades II–IV.

63.2.6 Treatment of Fever in At-Home Setting

Treatment of fever in at-home setting: See at-home auto-HSCT.

63.2.7 Incidence of Readmission in Outpatient and At-Home Allo-HSCT

Readmission rate is high (50–80%, according to the series) mainly due to organ toxicity associated with the preparative regimen in MAC with TBI and use of MTX or CY-PT such as GVHD prophylaxis.

The incidence of infection rate is lower than inpatient modality (15–30%, according to the series). Particularly, the incidence of Aspergillus or other mold infections was low (0–7%, according to series).

Severe GVHD is a low frequent cause of readmission in the first 30 days.

This incidence is related to the experience of the group of professionals and by the support infrastructure available in the hospital. In our experience, only 1 of the 28 patients (3.6%) required hospital readmission.

63.2.8 Quality of Life and Cost

The limited experience seems to show that at-home allo-HSCT modality improves nutrition/caloric intake, physical activity, and welfare of self that probably help to recover quickly and reduce toxicity, minimizing infection risk and GVHD (Svahn et al. 2008; Ringdén et al. 2013). Nevertheless, it is difficult to determine that these measures impact on a reduction of the total cost taking into account that the readmission rate is high and that most experiences include pre-planned booking of inpatient beds.

Key Points

- At home auto-HSCT is feasible and safe with a good selection of patients.
- At home auto-HSCT is cost-effective considering the patient setting, not analyzed in the context of the whole hospital budged.
- MM is the best indication for at-home auto-HSCT.
- With an adequate selection of patients, at-home allo-HSCT is feasible and safe.
- Allo-HSCT performed with the use of NMA and RIC conditioning regimens is the best option due to their inherent low organic toxicity.

References


Holbro A, Ahmad I, Cohen S, et al. Safety and cost-effectiveness of outpatient autologous stem cell trans-

Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Umbilical Cord Blood Transplantation in Children and Adults

Jaime Sanz, Paul Veys, and Vanderson Rocha

64.1 Introduction

Umbilical cord blood transplantation (UCBT) from unrelated donors is a suitable option of HSCT for patients in whom it is indicated, and a suitable related or unrelated BM or PB donor is not available in due time.

Since the 1990s, the majority of UCBT have been performed in children, but the number in adults was growing steadily. In fact, since 2004 the number of UCBT in adults registered in Eurocord was higher than in children. However, a certain decline in the UCBT activity has been observed over the last few years, which is mainly due to an increasing activity of partially matched related (haploidentical) HSCT. It should be noted that, although both options compete in the same niche, their comparative data are very limited and randomized studies are not yet available. As far as we know, two phase III randomized studies are currently ongoing to compare UCBT and haplo-HSCT in the RIC and MAC setting (NCT0159778 and NCT02386332, respectively).

64.2 Potential Advantages and Disadvantages of UCBT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Advantages versus BMT/PBSCT</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Advantages</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Expanded access to transplant(^a)</td>
<td>• Slower engraftment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Higher availability of donor(^a)</td>
<td>• Higher risk of non-immunological rejection (graft failure)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Faster search and shorter time to transplant(^a)</td>
<td>• Remote possibility of transmission of a genetic disease(^b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Greater HLA disparity allowed with low incidence of GVHD(^a)</td>
<td>• Greater delay in immune reconstitution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lower risk of transmission of viral infections</td>
<td>• No possibility of donor lymphocyte infusion(^b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• More versatile transplant planning(^a)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• No risk of donor refusal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• No risk to the donor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Advantages shared with haplo-HSCT  
\(^b\)Disadvantages not shared with haplo-HSCT

Similar to UCBT, haplo-HSCT can also be used on an urgent basis and extends donor availability to the vast majority of patients. In addition,
haplo-HSCT allows a DLI if necessary. Unfortunately, comparative data of these two approaches are limited and inconclusive (Brunstein et al. 2011; Ruggeri et al. 2015), and randomized studies are still lacking.

### 64.3 Indications

Except for some patients with severe BMF, such as aplastic anemia and paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria, UCBT in adults is performed almost exclusively in patients with malignant hematological diseases. However, UCBT in children has been used for many other nonmalignant diseases, including primary immunodeficiency diseases and inherited metabolic disorders (see Eurocord experience in Table 64.1).

The American Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (ASBMT), EBMT, and British Society of Blood and Marrow Transplantation (BSBMT) have recently published their respective guidelines that include recommendations for transplant indications in children and adults. It should be noted that the ASBMT did not differentiate recommendations for transplant indications based on donor source (i.e., MRD, URD, UCB, or haploidentical donor) or graft source (i.e., BM, PBSC, or UCB). This is in contrast to guidelines published by the EBMT and BSBMT.

### Table 64.1 Distribution by diseases of UCBT registered in Eurocord (1994–2017)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease Category</th>
<th>Children (n = 4128) n (%)</th>
<th>Adults (n = 3733) n (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Malignant disorders</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– AML</td>
<td>761 (18)</td>
<td>1504 (40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– ALL</td>
<td>1329 (32)</td>
<td>706 (19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– MDS/MPS</td>
<td>367 (9)</td>
<td>703 (19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Lymphoid mature disorders</td>
<td>86 (2)</td>
<td>544 (15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Plasma cell disorders</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>114 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Others</td>
<td>26 (1)</td>
<td>38 (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonmalignant disorders</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Primary immunodeficiencies</td>
<td>588 (14)</td>
<td>6 (0.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Inborn errors of metabolism</td>
<td>423 (10)</td>
<td>9 (0.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Bone marrow failure syndromes</td>
<td>318 (8)</td>
<td>104 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Histiocytic disorders</td>
<td>180 (4)</td>
<td>1 (0.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Others</td>
<td>50 (0.1)</td>
<td>4 (0.1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AML** acute myeloid leukemia, **ALL** acute lymphoblastic leukemia, **MDS** myelodysplastic syndrome

### 64.4 Approaches to Improve Outcomes After UCBT

Apart from refining criteria for UCB unit selection and optimization of conditioning regimens, several strategies have been developed aiming to shorten the time to engraftment and decrease NRM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Approaches to improve outcomes of UCBT</th>
<th>Expert point of view</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Refining criteria for UCB unit selection</td>
<td>See Chap. 18 of banking, processing, and procurement of cord blood cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Optimization of conditioning regimens</td>
<td>Specific conditioning regimen can influence transplant outcomes. See Sect. 64.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Strategies aiming to shorten the time to engraftment</td>
<td>To date none of these strategies have consistently shown to improve outcomes over single unmanipulated UCBT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Double UCBT</td>
<td>– In children, two randomized trials have demonstrated no benefit and increased risk of GVHD (Wagner et al. 2014; Michel et al. 2016) – In adults, retrospective studies showed no advantage when single-unit with TNC dose &gt;2.5 × 10^7/kg available (Scaradavou et al. 2013)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Co-infusion with third-party cells</td>
<td>Has consistently demonstrated benefit to accelerate hematopoietic recovery. No proved benefit on NRM or survival (Sanz et al. 2017)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Ex vivo expansion of UCB cells</td>
<td>Promising early studies showing fast engraftment with different expansion techniques. No comparative studies or long-term data (Mehta et al. 2017)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Improvement of supportive measures</td>
<td>Supportive care to prevent or treat opportunistic infections until neutrophil and immune recovery has occurred which is critical in UCBT. See Sect. 64.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
64.5 Conditioning Regimens

The selection of conditioning regimen for HSCT, including UCBT, should take into account the risk of toxicity and the risk of graft failure and relapse in malignant diseases. In UCBT, given the relatively lower cell dose (T-cells and CD34+ cells) and the use of HLA-mismatched grafts, graft failure is of particular concern, especially in adults. The choice of the conditioning regimen is as important as the graft characteristics and can influence transplant outcomes (Ruggeri et al. 2014).

In fact, specific conditioning regimens seem to tolerate infusion of lower cell doses in the graft (Sanz et al. 2013). A comprehensive and exhaustive review of MAC and non-MAC/RIC regimens in the UCBT setting has recently been published (Ross and Gutman 2017).

The Sorror comorbidity index may be a helpful tool to choose the appropriate conditioning intensity for a given patient. Some conditioning regimens options of varying intensity are to be considered:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Myeloablative conditioning regimens (MAC)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chemotherapy-based</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Adults: TBF regimen (Sanz et al. 2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TT 10 mg/kg + IV BU 9.6 mg/kg + FLU 150 mg/m² + ATG 6 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Children: FTT regimen (Hough et al. 2016)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TREO 30–42 g/m² + FLU 150 mg/m² + TT 10 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• BF regimen (Admiraal et al. 2015)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BU (PK guided) + FLU 160 mg/m² + ATG 19 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TBI-based</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• TCF regimen (Barker et al. 2005)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBI 13.2 Gy + CY 120 mg/kg + FLU 75 mg/m²</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medium-intensity conditioning regimens (MIDI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• MIDI regimen (Barker et al. 2017)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TT 10 mg/kg + CY 50 mg/kg + FLU 150 mg/m² + TBI 4 Gy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reduced-intensity conditioning regimens (RIC)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• rTCF regimen (Brunstein et al. 2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBI 2 Gy + CY 50 mg/kg + FLU 200 mg/m² ± ATG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

64.6 GVHD Prophylaxis

The most important advantage of UCB over unrelated donor grafts is the capability to tolerate HLA disparities and facilitate a low incidence of chronic GVHD. However, acute GVHD is still one of the most important contributors to morbidity and mortality. Different GVHD prophylaxis regimens have been explored with no evidence of benefit of any specific strategy. MTX is generally not recommended to avoid myelotoxicity and delayed neutrophil recovery although it is widely used in Asia. The most frequently used regimen worldwide is the combination of CNI for 6–9 months with MMF for 2–6 months.

The use of in vivo TCD with ATG is controversial. ATG in the conditioning regimen has been used to enhance myeloid engraftment as well as to prevent GVHD. Its use has been associated with reduced rates of GVHD. However, although there is no evidence of a negative impact on NRM (Ponce et al. 2015), there is a concern of impaired immune reconstitution and increased viral infections (Chiesa et al. 2012). Recent data suggest that safety of ATG can be improved by adjusting dose with ATG pharmacokinetics (Admiraal et al. 2016).

64.7 Supportive Care

The supportive measures described below are not intended to be recommendations but only to be taken into account and to consider their use in the context of each institution’s own experience and epidemiology. The most common measures are described merely as a guide since they have a very variable level of evidence (see Table 64.2).
Table 64.2 Prophylaxis, monitoring, and treatment options to be considered for infections in UCBT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prophylaxis</th>
<th>Monitoring</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Supportive measures for bacterial infections</strong></td>
<td>Supportive measures for fungal infections</td>
<td>Supportive measures for viral infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levofloxacin or ciprofloxacin</td>
<td>Surveillance cultures to detect colonization with MDR gram-negative bacteria</td>
<td>Empirical antibacterial therapy according to institutional epidemiologic patterns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Supportive measures for fungal infections</strong></td>
<td>Mold-covering azole and beta-1,3-glucan assays</td>
<td>Liposomal AmB, azoles, and/or echinocandins (according to previous prophylaxis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Supportive measures for viral infections</strong></td>
<td>CMV: letermovir (qPCR) weekly on days 0–100 and then as clinically indicated</td>
<td>Ganciclovir, valganciclovir, foscarnet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HHV-6: none</td>
<td>(qPCR) as clinically indicated</td>
<td>Ganciclovir, valganciclovir, foscarnet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenovirus: none</td>
<td>(qPCR) weekly on days 0–100 and then as clinically indicated</td>
<td>Cidofovir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBV: none</td>
<td>(qPCR) weekly on days 0–100 and then as clinically indicated</td>
<td>Preemptive rituximab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Supportive measures for protozoal infections</strong></td>
<td>Pneumocystis: co-trimoxazole, pentamidine, or atovaquone</td>
<td>Co-trimoxazole, pentamidine, or atovaquone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxoplasmosis: co-trimoxazole, atovaquone, or pyrimethamine</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Co-trimoxazole, atovaquone, or pyrimethamine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MDR multidrug-resistant, AmB amphotericin B, qPCR quantitative PCR
*Both have been included as microbiological criteria in the definitions of invasive fungal infections by the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) and the Mycoses Study Group (MSG)
*Specially in children
*Reduced-intensity conditioning and ATG are risk factors for EBV-PTLD

Table 64.3 Expected results overall survival at 2 years after UCBT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adults</th>
<th>2-years OS (%)</th>
<th>Children</th>
<th>2-years OS (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outcomes according to DRI</td>
<td>Malignant disorders</td>
<td>Malignant disorders</td>
<td>49 ± 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>55 ± 3</td>
<td>Acute leukemia</td>
<td>52 ± 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>47 ± 1</td>
<td>MDS</td>
<td>55 ± 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>27 ± 2</td>
<td>Lymphoproliferative disorders</td>
<td>55 ± 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very high</td>
<td>19 ± 3</td>
<td>Nonmalignant disorders</td>
<td>63 ± 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disease-specific outcomes</td>
<td>Inborn error of metabolism</td>
<td>Inborn error of metabolism</td>
<td>70 ± 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute leukemia</td>
<td>37 ± 1</td>
<td>Hemoglobinopathies</td>
<td>68 ± 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDS/MPS</td>
<td>32 ± 2</td>
<td>Primary immunodeficiency</td>
<td>68 ± 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphoproliferative disorders</td>
<td>45 ± 2</td>
<td>Histiocytic disorders</td>
<td>60 ± 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plasma cell disorder</td>
<td>37 ± 5</td>
<td>BMF syndrome</td>
<td>52 ± 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DRI disease risk index, MDS myelodysplastic syndrome, MPS myeloproliferative syndrome, OS overall survival, MDS myelodysplastic syndrome, BMF bone marrow failure

64.8 Results (See Table 64.3)

UCBT outcomes have improved in more recent years, probably explained by better patient and CBU selection, improved conditioning, and supported care. Registry data also showed important center effect with superior survival obtained in experienced centers. Eurocord recently updated clinical results. Multiple retrospective studies have demonstrated that UCBT offers similar long-term outcomes compared with the gold standard of HLA-matched URD transplants in patients with hematologic malignancies, both in children and adults (Eapen et al. 2007; Brunstein et al. 2010; Atsuta et al. 2012). Interestingly, UCBT seems to offer a potent antileukemic efficacy, through yet unknown mechanisms. A recent report that needs
to be validated suggested a markedly reduced relapse rate after UCBT as compared to URD transplantation in patients transplanted with MRD (Milano et al. 2016).

**Key Points**

- UCB remains a rapidly available and valuable source of stem cells for HSCT.
- In the absence of a fully matched donor available at an appropriate time, similar outcomes are achieved with CBT, MMURD, and haplo-HSCT approaches in the pediatric and adult setting.
- CBT may reduce relapse following HSCT for AML.
- There is a much room for improvement in the field and important progresses are expected in the near future. Decrease in NRM should be the number one goal in future research.
- Strategies to enhance engraftment and, more importantly, approaches to improve immune reconstitution, such as appropriate ATG dosing, are warranted.

**References**


Sanz J, Boluda JCH, Martín C, et al. Single-unit umbilical cord blood transplantation from unrelated donors


Haploidentical HSCT

Fabio Ciceri, Andrea Bacigalupo, Arjan Lankester, and Alice Bertaina

65.1 Introduction

Haploidentical hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (haplo-HSCT) is now considered a clinical therapeutic option in patients candidate to allo-HSCT. Primary prevention and treatment of GvHD have been a major challenge in this peculiar major HLA-mismatched setting. Two main platforms have been developed: ex vivo TCD and unmanipulated graft transplantation. Overall, the primary objective of a stable haploidentical hematopoietic engraftment at a low GvHD rate resulted feasible in both platforms in a significant proportion of patients undergoing haplo-HSCT for any clinical indication.

The great interest in transplantation from haploidentical donors arises from the immediate availability of a suitable one-haplotype mismatched donor for virtually all patients in the appropriate timing. In the absence of a HLA full-matched donor, alternative family haploidentical donors have been intensively investigated in the past decade.

Primary prevention and treatment of GvHD have been a major challenge in this peculiar HLA-mismatched setting of HSCT. Two main clinical platforms have been developed: ex vivo TCD and more recently unmanipulated graft transplantation.

65.2 Ex Vivo TCD Platforms

The physical removal of donor T-cells from the graft has been pioneered by the group of Perugia in the late 1990s (Aversa et al. 1998). The original concept was to prevent GvHD through a graft with a T-cell content not exceeding a total T-cell graft dose of $1 \times 10^4/kg$ of recipient body weight.

65.2.1 Positive CD34 Selection

The most experienced ex vivo manipulation has been the positive selection of CD34+ cells realized by CliniMACS® CD34 System Miltenyi,
providing a TCD graft with high cell dose of CD34+ cells starting from G-CSF-mobilized PBSC graft of family haploidentical donors (Aversa et al. 1998; Ciceri et al. 2008; Reisner et al. 2011). This profound TCD graft required the development of conditioning regimens aimed at a maximal host IS through the use of ATG, full-dose TBI, and the combination of intensive IS, FLU, and TT.

Despite the application of intensive immuno-ablative regimens, the rate of graft rejection has been 10–15% requiring a salvage subsequent second HSCT providing an overall engraftment rate >95%. According to the primary objective, ex vivo TCD by CD34+ selection allows a stable engraftment with a GvHD rate <10% in the absence of any additional post transplant IST.

Unfortunately, this intense graft TCD translated into a slow post transplant immune recovery with a prolonged and profound T-cell lymphopenia (Reisner et al. 2011; Perruccio et al. 2005). In this clinical platform, TRM have been observed in a significant proportion of recipients (Ciceri et al. 2008). Leading causes of deaths reported were opportunistic infections occurring even as late as 1-year post transplant in the absence of GvHD and any IST. The improvement of post transplant immune reconstitution while controlling GvHD prompted the concurrent development of several additional strategies of cell therapy (Perruccio et al. 2005; Di Ianni et al. 2011; Ciceri et al. 2009). Particularly in the pediatric population, virus-specific T-cells have been a promising tool (Leen 2009; Feucht 2015). Donor T-cells genetically modified to express HSV-thymidine kinase suicide gene (Zalmoxis®) have been recently registered by the European Medicines Agency as adjunctive therapeutic tool post haploidentical HSCT.

### 65.2.2 CD3/CD19 Negative Selection

A partial T-cell depletion less profound than CD34+ selection can be provided by alternative selections, such as CD3/CD19 negative selection. The CliniMACS CD3/CD19 Product Line was developed for the simultaneous depletion of unwanted T- and B-cells in combination with the CliniMACS System. This approach keeps stem and progenitor cells untouched and leaves immune effector cells, such as NK cells and dendritic cells, in the cellular product (Bethge et al. 2006; Federmann et al. 2011; Federmann et al. 2012). Starting from G-CSF-mobilized PBSC in adults, grafts contained a median of 7.0 × 10⁶ CD34+ cells/kg, 4.2 × 10⁴ CD3+ T-cells/kg, and 2.7 × 10⁷ CD56+ cells/kg; incidence of grade II–IV acute GVHD and chronic GVHD was 46% and 18%, respectively, requiring the post transplant use of a CNI as additional GvHD prophylaxis in adult patients.

### 65.2.3 TCRα/β and CD19 Depletion

More recently, Miltenyi developed CliniMACS TCRα/β and CD19-depleted stem cell grafts from haploidentical donors for HSCT in children and adults. The ex vivo protocol has been designed to selectively remove donor T-cells with TCRα/β that are recognized to mediate GvHD. Preliminary clinical experience in children showed a very low rate of skin GvHD and no visceral acute or chronic GVHD (Bertaina et al. 2014; Li Pira et al. 2016).

Overall, ex vivo TCD is a platform clinically useful to provide hematopoietic engraftment with low GvHD in haploidentical setting. Furthermore, the different cell population selection in the graft provides a unique clinical setting to dissect the biology of different immune cells as NK, TCRα/β, and TCRγ/δ T-cells in the clinical post transplant immune reconstitution and antitumor and immune protective in vivo effects (Ruggeri et al. 2002; Aversa et al. 2005; Locatelli et al. 2013).

### 65.2.4 Regulatory T-Cells

The Perugia group has recently presented a variation of ex vivo TCD, with the addition of regulatory T-cells, followed by mature T-cells (Martelli et al. 2014): preferential migration of regulatory T-cells to the lymph nodes, but not the bone mar-
row, prevents GvHD (in the lymph nodes) and allows, at the same time, a strong graft versus leukemia (in the bone marrow). The result is an extremely low incidence of leukemia relapse (Martelli et al. 2014).

65.3 Unmanipulated Haploidentical HSCT

The number of unmanipulated HLA haploidentical transplants has been rapidly increasing over the past 15 years (Passweg et al. 2012), due to the successful prevention of two major problems: lethal GvHD and graft rejection. There are currently three main platforms to perform unmanipulated haplo-HSCT (Fig. 65.1).

65.3.1 Anti-thymocyte Globulin (ATG) Based

In 2006 the Chinese group led by Dao-Pei Lu compared the outcome of 158 leukemia patients grafted from HLA-identical siblings with 135 leukemia patients grafted from HLA-haplotype mismatch family members, after a MAC regimen (Lu et al. 2006; Fig. 65.1: ATG-based; GBM + GPB + CSA + MMF + MTX). The results were surprising, with the OS and DFS identical for both groups. The conditioning therapy consisted of Ara-C (4 g/m²/day, on days $-10$ to $-9$), BU (4 mg/kg/day, orally on days $-8$ to $-6$ before January 2008 and 3.2 mg/kg/day, IV on days $-8$ to $-6$ after January 2008), CY (1.8 g/m²/day, on days $-5$ to $-4$), 1-(2-chloroethyl)-3-(4-methylcyclohexyl)-1-nitrosourea (Me-CCNU) (250 mg/m², once on day $-3$), and ATG (2.5 mg/kg/day, rabbit; Sanofi Genzyme, France, days $-5$ to $-2$).

All patients received CSA, MTX, and MMF; the HLA-mismatch group received in addition ATG (Lu et al. 2006). The graft source was a combination of G-CSF (G)-mobilized bone marrow (G-BM) and G-mobilized PB. The cohort in HLA-haplotype mismatch group had a higher risk of acute GvHD ($P = 0.02$) and of TRM ($P = 0.05$), but OS was comparable ($P = 0.6$). This was the first report on a large number of family mismatched grafts, showing survival identical to sibling HLA-matched grafts, and this led to the emergence of other programs.

Another group of Chinese investigators developed an ATG-based program with unmanipulated G-BM alone (Ji et al. 2005; Fig. 65.1, G-BM + CSA + MMF + MTX + basiliximab). They included intensive GvHD prophylaxis with ATG,
CSA, MTX, and MMF with the addition of basiliximab, an anti-CD25 antibody. The same GvHD prophylaxis has been reported by an Italian consortium (Di Bartolomeo et al. 2010): acute GvHD grade II–IV and III–IV was, respectively, 24% and 5%, which is extremely low for family HLA-haplotype mismatch, T-cell-replete transplants. The TRM was not negligible, being 30% for “standard” and 45% for “high-risk” patients (Di Bartolomeo et al. 2010). Overall 3-year survival was 54% for standard and 33% for high-risk patients. Di Bartolomeo et al. used for most patients a conditioning regimen combining TT, IV BU, and FLU (TBF), originally described by Sanz and coworkers for cord blood transplants (Sanz et al. 2012).

65.3.2 Post transplant

Cyclophosphamide (PT-CY) Based

The use of PT-CY on day +3 and +4 after an unmanipulated haplo-HSCT has been pioneered by the Baltimore group. It is based on the idea that high-dose CY (50 mg/kg) will kill alloreactive T-cells proliferating on day +3 and +4 after the transplant, whereas stem cells would be protected because they are not proliferating and with a high concentration of aldehyde dehydrogenase.

In 2001, the Baltimore group published their first clinical study and showed that PT-CY was able to protect patients from GvHD after haplo-HSCT (Luznik et al. 2001). Again, this was not picked up immediately, not until 2008 when a joint Baltimore Seattle study showed that haplo-HSCT in Hodgkin’s lymphoma (HL) produces DFS superior to sibling or unrelated transplants (Chiusolo et al. 2018): not only GvHD could be prevented, but GvL seemed superior, at least in patients with HL.

There have been numerous variations of the Baltimore protocol (Fig. 65.1) with use of G-PB instead of BM, rapamycin, and MMF, instead of a CNI (Figs. 65.2 and 65.3), the use of a MAC regimen instead of the NMA regimen of Baltimore.

All these platforms seem to achieve a high rate of engraftment, but severe acute GvHD can vary from as low as 3% to as high as 30%. A modified PT-CY regimen has recently been reported in patients with AML (Chiusolo et al. 2018): in this multicenter retrospective study on 150 patients, CSA was administered on day 0, MMF on day +1, and PT-CY on days +3 and +5 (Fig. 65.1). The MA regimen consisted mainly of TBF: the rate of leukemia relapse was extremely low in remission patients (Chiusolo et al. 2018). The major difference here lies in the CSA given before PT-CY and in the two doses of PT-CY spaced on days +3 and +5. It should be noted that this regimen is safe when using BM as a stem cell source, with acute GvHD III–IV rates of 3%; however, it is not known what the outcome would be with PB as a stem cell source, since CSA will protect some

![Fig. 65.2](image-url) The original Baltimore protocol consisting of CY 14.5 mg/kg × 2, fludarabine 30 mg/m² × 5, and total body irradiation (TBI) 2 Gy day −1. CY 50 mg/kg days +3 and +4 and CSA, MMF starting day +5. G-CSF starts on day +6. From Luznik et al. (2001)
T-cells from PT-CY purging, and these may produce a beneficial GvL effect but also cause detrimental GvHD.

### 65.3.3 ATG + PT-CY

Some centers are combining the two basic platforms (PT-CY and ATG) and early results seem promising. The Baltimore group is using this combination for patients with sickle cell disease, in the attempt of avoiding GvHD completely. Also, the group in Saint-Antoine, Paris, is using a combination of ATG 2.5 mg/kg and PT-CY, CSA, and MMF for patients with acute leukemia undergoing a MAC haplo-HSCT (Duléry et al. 2018).

The Beijing group has confirmed younger age to be relevant, using their ATG-based platform together with a mismatch for non-inherited maternal antigen (NIMA) (Wang et al. 2014).

The age, CMV status, and ABO matching are general rules which should always be considered: a CMV+ patient should be grafted with a CMV+ donor, if available, and a CMV− patient with a CMV− donor.

Table 65.1 summarizes the most relevant general and immunologic criteria for donor selection in haplo-HSCT.

#### Table 65.1 Criteria for donor selection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(a) Immunologic criteria (only in malignancies)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Presence of NK alloreactivity (KIR/KIR-L mismatch in GvH direction)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Larger size of NK alloreactive subset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. KIR haplotype</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Higher B content value in B haplotype donors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Presence of educated KIR2DS1 in case of C2+ patient</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Higher % NK cells and T lymphocytes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(b) General criteria</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7. Donor/recipient HCMV serology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Donor age</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Donor sex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Donor/recipient body weight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### 65.4 Other Relevant Aspects of Haplo-HSCT

#### 65.4.1 Choice of the Best Haploidentical Donor

The EBMT ALWP has established younger donor age and kinship, as a major determinant of outcome for leukemia patients grafted from haploidentical donor (Canaani et al. 2018).
65.4.1.1 Natural Killer (NK)

Natural killer (NK) cells are the first post-HSCT cellular population, reconstituting antiviral and antitumor activity. In this setting, donor NK cell inhibitory receptors mismatched for cognate HLA class I ligands play a key role in the graft-versus-leukemia (GVL) effect.Remarkably, these cells may be uniquely poised to enhance GVL without eliciting GvHD because healthy non-hematopoietic tissues lack activating receptor ligands present on tumor cells.

Over 20 years ago, Moretta et al. 1995 described the concept of NK cells’ alloreactivity, showing that defined NK cell subsets were able to kill in vitro allogeneic lymphoblasts. (Ruggeri et al. 2016) first reported the positive impact of KIR ligand-mismatched donor NK cell alloreactivity after TCD haplo-HSCT resulting in a lower risk of relapse and a better OS in adult with AML. Of note, only patients receiving a transplant from a donor who showed NK cell alloreactivity against recipient cells displayed an efficient GVL effect. This happens, for example, in the presence of a KIR-HLA-I (KIR-L) mismatch in the donor- versus-recipient direction. Thus, in donor/patient pairs with KIR-HLA-I mismatch, the event-free survival (EFS) rate was 60%, while in the absence of such mismatch, it was less than 5%.

However, the contribution of NK cell alloreactivity on HSCT outcome is still controversial due to different evaluation criteria, the nature of KIR/KIR ligand genetic combinations studied, and NK cell repertoire size. Given the central role of NK cell alloreactivity in preventing leukemia relapse, in the setting of haplo-HSCT, it is crucial to determine in different potential donors if alloreactive NK cells are present and the size of such alloreactive populations. More recently, in addition to the flow analysis of the alloreactive NK cell populations, other selection criteria have been added (Table 65.1). Among these, the presence of a KIR B haplotype has been shown to be associated with a relevant improvement of the survival in both adult AML and pediatric ALL.

While the antileukemic activity of NK cells and the role of KIR are well known and established by several groups, their impact in preventing graft failure and/or infections in patients affected by nonmalignant disorders remains unclear.

65.4.2 Comparison of ATG-Based Versus PT-CY-Based Platforms

The EBMT Acute Leukemia Working Party has compared these two platforms in a recent study (Ruggeri et al. 2017). In a Cox analysis, ATG-based haplo grafts had a higher risk of failure, in terms of LFS (RR 1.48, p = 0.03), GvHD relapse-free survival (RR 1.45, p = 0.03), and OS (HR 1.43, p = 0.06): there was for all end points a very strong center effect (p < 0.001), suggesting that a learning curve is required for optimal results in haplo-HSCT.

65.4.3 Bone Marrow or Peripheral Blood

There are now two studies comparing BM versus PB for unmanipulated haplo-HSCT: the EBMT study (Ruggeri et al. 2018) shows increased GvHD II–IV and III–IV with PB, same chronic GvHD, same relapse, and same 2-year OS (55% and 56%). The CIBMTR shows increased GvHD II–IV, but not III–IV with PB grafts, increased chronic GvHD, and reduced relapse (Bashey et al. 2017): survival at 2 years also in this study is quite similar, 54% vs 57%.

Key Points

- Following the pioneering work of the Perugia group, HLA-haplotype mismatch family transplants are rapidly increasing in numbers, due to improved platforms in both TCD, as well as unmanipulated grafts, with encouraging results in most centers.
- This is true with different stem cell sources, different conditioning regimens, and different GvHD prophylaxes:
in one word, there is more than one way to perform haplo-HSCT.

- One important question is how haplo-HSCT compare with unrelated donor grafts, and to answer this question, randomized trials have been designed and are about to start.
- One should consider that HLA-haplotype mismatch transplants remain an alternative donor procedure and should be regarded as such: complications, including blood stream infections, invasive fungal disease, viral infections, GvHD, and toxicity may occur with significant frequency and expose the patients to the risk of TRM. For this reason, HLA-haplotype mismatch grafts, whether TCD or unmanipulated, should be performed in centers with expertise in MUD or CB HSCT and should follow clinical protocols.

So, it seems that one can use both stem cell sources, with some difference in the short term (more GvHD with PB) and perhaps some differences in the long term (cGvHD and relapse): at the end survival seems comparable.

References


66.1 Introduction

Extracorporeal photopheresis (ECP) is a leukapheresis-based treatment that has been used during the last decades by many clinicians. Based on results of a prospective, multicenter, international clinical trial in patients with cutaneous T-cell lymphoma (CTCL), ECP was approved by the FDA as the first cellular immunotherapy for cancer in 1988 (Edelson et al. 1987). During the last decades, ECP has been investigated worldwide for prevention and treatment of a variety of T-cell-mediated diseases including acute and chronic GvHD, solid organ and tissue transplantation, systemic sclerosis, systemic lupus erythematoses, and Crohn’s disease (Knobler et al. 2014). Administering ECP to patients suffering of these diseases revealed promising results both in prospective and retrospective single and multicenter clinical studies. Despite its frequent use, the mode of action of ECP remains elusive including reduction of pro-inflammatory cytokines and induction of anti-inflammatory cytokines and modulation of immune cell populations.

66.2 Technical Aspects

During ECP the patient’s blood is collected via an antecubital vein or via a permanent catheter, and the white blood cells are separated from the red blood cells and plasma by centrifugation in a device that is specifically constructed for the procedure (Knobler et al. 2014; Schoonemann 2003). Collected mononuclear cells (MNCs) using either continuous or discontinuous cell separators are then exposed ex vivo to a photosensitizing agent, 8-methoxypsoralen (8-MOP), which is added directly to the buffy coat/plasma fraction followed by photoactivation with ultraviolet A (UV-A) irradiation and then reinfusion of the photoactivated product (Schoonemann 2003). ECP has originally been developed as a single procedure which combines the separation of the MNCs from the whole blood with irradiation of the 8-MOP-treated leukapheresis products within a single machine (“closed system of ECP”). The “offline technique“ (two-step method) of ECP treatment includes as the first step cell separation with a standard blood cell separator that can also be used for the collection of peripheral blood stem cells. The apheresis product is transferred into another disposable, 8-MOP is added, and irradiation is performed with a separate machine at a dosage of 2 J/cm². After irradiation transfusion of the treated cells is carried out manually by a standard transfusion set. Both ECP techniques have demonstrated clinical efficacy, but almost all clinical studies have been performed with the single
ECP technique, and studies comparing both systems are almost completely lacking (Schoonemann 2003; Andreu et al. 1994; Brosig et al. 2016).

### 66.3 Results of ECP in Acute GvHD

To date, no consensus on the optimal choice of agents for salvage therapy of steroid-refractory acute GvHD has been reached, and treatment choices are based on physician’s experience, risk of toxicity and potential exacerbation of pre-existing comorbidity, interactions with other agents, and ease of use (Martin et al. 2012). During the last years, more and more HSCT centers have administered ECP to patients with steroid-refractory acute GvHD. Results of larger prospective studies on the use of ECP in this indication are shown in Table 66.1. The intensified schedule of ECP with two to three treatments per week on a weekly basis significantly improved response rates in patients with GI involvement and grade IV acute GvHD (Greinix et al. 2006).

In a systematic review of prospective studies including 6 studies with 103 patients given ECP for steroid-refractory acute GvHD, an overall response rate (ORR) of 69% was achieved including ORR for skin, liver, and GI involvement of 84%, 55%, and 65%, respectively (Abu-Dalle et al. 2014). Compared to anticytokine treatment, administration of ECP for steroid-refractory acute GvHD not only achieved significantly higher ORR (66% vs 32%) and CR (54% vs 20%), but ECP was also an independent predictor of response and survival and was associated with significantly lower NRM and superior survival in steroid-refractory grade II acute GvHD (Jagasia et al. 2013). Compared to other IST, ECP has an excellent safety profile with limited toxicity concerns, no increased concerns for viral reactivations, and no documented interaction with other drugs (Martin et al. 2012).

### 66.4 Results of ECP in Chronic GvHD

Although many therapeutic options have been reported for salvage treatment of steroid-refractory chronic GvHD, no single class of IS agent has been established as standard therapy (Wolff et al. 2011). ECP represents a frequently used therapeutic approach for treatment of chronic GvHD patients failing corticosteroids (Table 66.2) (Knobler et al. 2014; Wolff et al. 2011; Greinix et al. 1998; Flowers et al. 2008; Jagasia et al. 2009; Greinix et al. 2011). Most of the clinical experience in ECP treatment of steroid-refractory chronic GvHD patients is based on retrospective analyses with consistently high response rates in up to 80% of patients with cutaneous manifestations and substantial improvement in sclerodermatous skin involvement (Knobler et al. 2014; Wolff et al. 2011).

### Table 66.1 Results of second-line treatment of acute GvHD using extracorporeal photopheresis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author (year)</th>
<th>No. of patients</th>
<th>CR skin no. (%)</th>
<th>CR liver no. (%)</th>
<th>CR gut no. (%)</th>
<th>OS%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Salvaneschi (2001)</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>6/9 (67)</td>
<td>1/3 (33)</td>
<td>3/5 (60)</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dall’Amico (2002)</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>10/14 (71)</td>
<td>4/7 (57)</td>
<td>6/10 (60)</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messina et al. (2003)</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>25/33 (76)</td>
<td>9/15 (60)</td>
<td>15/20 (75)</td>
<td>69 at 5 y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greinix et al. (2006)</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>47/57 (82)</td>
<td>14/23 (61)</td>
<td>9/15 (60)</td>
<td>47 at 5 y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garban (2005)</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>8/12 (67)</td>
<td>0/2 (0)</td>
<td>2/5 (40)</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanold (2007)</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>9/10 (90)</td>
<td>5/9 (56)</td>
<td>5/6 (83)</td>
<td>75 at 8.5 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calore (2008)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>12/13 (92)</td>
<td></td>
<td>14/14 (100)</td>
<td>85 at 5 y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfetti (2008)</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>15/23 (65)</td>
<td>3/11 (27)</td>
<td>8/20 (40)</td>
<td>48 at 37 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gonzalez-Vicent (2008)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8/8 (100)</td>
<td>2/2 (100)</td>
<td>4/7 (57)</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perotti (2010)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>39/47 (83) (1)</td>
<td>16/24 (67) (1)</td>
<td>8/11 (73) (1)</td>
<td>64 at 1 y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jagasia (2013)</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>38/57 (67) (1)</td>
<td>38/57 (67) (1)</td>
<td>38/57 (67) (1)</td>
<td>59 at 2 y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calore (2015)</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>50/64 (78)</td>
<td>10/12 (84)</td>
<td>42/55 (76)</td>
<td>71 at 5 y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: No number, CR complete resolution, OS overall survival, y years, m months
Results were provided as complete and partial resolution.
In a multicenter, randomized, controlled, prospective phase II study of ECP in 95 patients with steroid-refractory/dependent/intolerant chronic GvHD, significantly more patients in the ECP arm achieved a complete or partial response of cutaneous manifestations ($p < 0.001$) as well as a 50% reduction in steroid dose and at least a 25% decrease in total skin score ($p = 0.04$) by week 12 (Greinix et al. 1998). A steroid-sparing effect of ECP has also been reported by other investigators (Knobler et al. 2014; Wolff et al. 2011; Flowers et al. 2008; Jagasia et al. 2009).

In a systematic review of prospective studies on the use of ECP in patients with chronic GvHD, an ORR of 71% in cutaneous, 62% in GI, 58% in hepatic, 63% in oral mucosal, and 45% in musculoskeletal manifestations of chronic GvHD was reported (Abu-Dalle et al. 2014). Rate of IS discontinuation was 23% and ECP was tolerated excellently. In another meta-analysis high response rates in cutaneous and extracutaneous manifestations of chronic GvHD including 48% of responses in lung involvement were confirmed (Del Fante et al. 2016). The ECP schedule in chronic GvHD is empirical ranging from multiple treatments per week on a weekly basis to two treatments biweekly and in case of response prolongation of the treatment interval to 4–6 weeks, respectively. No clear association between ECP dose intensity and response has been reported. Higher response rates were achieved in steroid-refractory patients given ECP earlier in the course of their disease (Malik et al. 2014; Messina et al. 2003). Improvements in quality of life and survival in ECP responders have been reported (Knobler et al. 2014; Wolff et al. 2011; Greinix et al. 1998; Malik et al. 2014; Messina et al. 2003).

ECP is a safe and efficacious treatment for patients with chronic GvHD with steroid-sparing capacity. Transient hypotension during treatment and mild anemia and/or thrombocytopenia have been reported as side effects of ECP. Prospective clinical studies are warranted to assess the efficacy of ECP in well-defined cohorts of chronic GvHD patients treated earlier in the course of their disease. Recently, Jagasia and colleagues reported first results of a

### Table 66.2 Results of use of extracorporeal photopheresis in chronic GvHD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author (year)</th>
<th>No of patients</th>
<th>CR/PR skin (%)</th>
<th>CR/PR liver (%)</th>
<th>CR/PR oral (%)</th>
<th>ORR (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Greinix et al. (1998)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salvaneschi (2001)</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messina (2003)</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seaton (2003)</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apisarnthanarax (2003)</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foss (2005)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubegni (2005)</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greinix (2006)</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Couriel (2006)</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanold (2007)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perseghin (2007)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flowers (2008)</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jagasia (2009)</td>
<td>43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perotti (2010)</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dignan (2012)</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greinix (2011)</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Del Fante (2012)</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ussowicz (2013)</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hautmann (2013)</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dignan (2014)</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: No number, CR complete resolution, PR partial resolution, ORR overall response rate, na not available
randomized, controlled, multicenter study in NIH-defined moderate/severe chronic GvHD patients given ECP in the study arm in combination with standard of care IS (Jagasia et al. 2017). Besides an ORR of 74%, and thus, a promising efficacy ECP demonstrated to be safe and tolerated well.

66.5 Conclusions

ECP has been used for over 30 years in the treatment of CTCL, acute and chronic GvHD, and solid organ transplant rejection. Multiple scientific organizations recommend its use due to ECP’s efficacy and excellent safety profile (Knobler et al. 2014). Due to the lack of interactions with other agents and the avoidance of general IS, ECP compares favorably with other IS strategies, supporting its increasingly frequent use as second-line therapy of steroid-refractory/dependent acute and chronic GvHD. Of note, the corticosteroid-sparing potential of ECP has been confirmed in numerous retrospective and prospective studies and translates into immediate clinical benefit for patients with GvHD as well as a reduction of transplant-associated morbidity and mortality.

No general recommendation can be made on treatment schedule due to missing evidence. Ideally, ECP treatment should be initiated as early as possible after the indication is confirmed. Especially in patients with steroid-refractory acute GvHD, earlier treatment onset and an intensified weekly ECP schedule resulted in improved response rates and patients’ outcome. Prospective studies on the use of ECP as upfront treatment in GvHD are warranted as well as its investigation for prophylactic/preemptive use during allo-HSCT.

Key Points

- ECP is a safe and efficacious adjunct therapy of steroid-refractory acute and chronic GvHD.
- Results in upfront therapy of chronic GvHD are promising.

References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
67.1 Introduction

“More obese people in the world than under-weight” was the headline on BBC News on April 1, 2016. This statement is based on a study comparing the prevalence of BMI categories of more than 19.2 million adult participants in 186 of 200 countries (N. C. D. Risk Factor Collaboration 2016). Comparing the age-standardised mean BMI by country in 1975 and 2014, there is a significant increase in both men (21.7 vs 24.2 kg/m²) and women (22.1 vs 24.4 kg/m²). Looking for the proportion of overweight in selected industrialised countries, it is estimated that the prevalence of overweight and obesity in the USA will exceed 70% in 2020, followed by England and Australia. Korea, France and Italy are projected to have less than 50% of the population being overweight (Lyman and Sparreboom 2013).

Obesity is associated with a significant increase in morbidity (including metabolic diseases and cancer) and mortality. It has been estimated that worldwide 481,000 (3.6%) of all new cancer cases in 2012 were attributable to excess body mass index (BMI) (Arnold et al. 2015).

67.1.1 Definitions and Size Describers of Obesity

Classification of overweight and obesity is usually based on BMI that is calculated using height and weight of an individual. The World Health Organization (WHO), defines adults according to their BMI as:

- Normal weight with 18.5–24.9 kg/m²
- Overweight with 25–29.9 kg/m²
- Obese with ≥30 kg/m²

However, one has to keep in mind that although BMI has been shown to correlate with SC fat (but not with percentage body fat), in individuals with greater muscle mass, women or the elderly, BMI might not be the best describer, as muscle mass is more dense than fat mass. In those people, percent body fat would better describe body composition, but direct measurement is usually not readily available as it requires advanced technical equipment (e.g. hydrodensitometry, skinfold measurement, bioelectrical impedance analysis or dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry) (Hanley et al. 2010). As a consequence, indirect measures of body composition, like BMI or ideal body weight (IBW), remain the standard, as they are easy to calculate.
67.2 Influence of Overweight and Obesity on the Pharmacokinetics of Drugs

Obesity is associated with physiological changes that can alter the pharmacokinetic parameters of many drugs (Hanley et al. 2010; Green and Duffull 2004; Han et al. 2007; Alobaid et al. 2016). Observed physiological changes in obese patients influencing pharmacokinetic behaviour of drugs and resulting consequences for drug dosing are summarised in Table 67.1.

Nevertheless, it has to be kept in mind that the effects of physiological changes are usually drug specific and that for the majority of drugs both pharmacokinetic and clinical data in obese patients are sparse. Due to unusual distribution processes, the kinetics of drugs is difficult to predict in obese patients.

The impact of obesity on GFR as well as on tubular secretion is not completely understood. Discrepant results regarding GFR in obese as compared with normal-weight individuals might be explained by estimating GFR using serum creatinine, as no instrument has been validated for obesity. Especially, if using weight-based formulas like the widespread Cockcroft-Gault formula, GFR will be overestimated if total body weight is used, but underestimated if ideal body weight is used. But also the use of weight-independent formulas, as MDRD (Modification of Diet in Renal Disease) or CKD-EPI (Chronic Kidney Disease Epidemiology Collaboration), which has been shown to result in more reliable estimates, has limitations: As the GFR is provided in ml/min/1.73 m², the possibly incorrect calculation of body surface area in the obese might negatively influence the results.

Taken together, there is only limited evidence-based information about drug clearance in obese patients due to restrictions of clinical trials and the lack of pharmacokinetic (PK) analyses. It is important to remember that there is no single-size descriptor for all drugs.

| Table 67.1 Physiological changes in obese individuals influencing pharmacokinetics of drugs |
|---|---|---|
| Absorption | Changes in obese patients | Consequences for drug dosing |
| | – Increased gastrointestinal blood flow | – Only little data on oral bioavailability |
| | – Accelerated gastric emptying | – For a couple of drugs including CSA, midazolam or propranolol, no differences in oral bioavailability have been observed |
| Distribution | – Hydrophilic drugs: Vd is similar in normal-weight and obese patients | – Vd is important for the determination of a loading dose, in order to achieve a rapid and adequate exposition |
| | – Moderate or high lipophilic drugs: significant differences in Vd | – Vd changes are drug specific (attributable to the physicochemical properties of the drug) |
| | – Tissue blood flow may be reduced | |
| | – Obesity does not appear to have impact on plasma protein binding | |
| Clearance (renal and hepatic) | | – Elimination of hydrophilic and extensively renally cleared drugs mainly depends upon renal function |
| | – Altered hepatic blood flow | – No apparent relationship between lipophilicity and clearance mechanism |
| | – TBW-proportional increase in phase II metabolism | – Essential parameter to determine maintenance dose |
| | – GFR and renal perfusion similar, but imprecision in GFR estimation (see text above) | – Physicochemical attributes of drugs have little impact on clearance |
| | – Obese individuals exhibit higher absolute drug clearance | |
| | – Clearance does not increase linearly with TBW | |
| | – Clearance and lean body weight are linearly correlated | |

GFR glomerular filtration rate, TBW total body weight, Vd volume of distribution
67.3 Recommendations for Drug Dosing

Besides the above-described physicochemical attributes and pharmacokinetic (PK) properties, recommendations from the literature and plasma concentration monitoring are important to determine drug dosing in morbidly obese patients (Hanley et al. 2010; Green and Duffull 2004; Han et al. 2007).

67.3.1 Which Weight to Use for Calculation?

For some drugs, the use of adjusted ideal body weight (AIBW) resulted in similar drug exposure in obese as compared to normal-weight patients (Pai and Bearden 2007; Polso et al. 2014; Bearden and Rodvold 2000): This is, for example, true for aminoglycosides, acyclovir (Turner et al. 2016) or liposomal AmB. AIBW is calculated by adding 25–40% of the difference between total body weight (TBW) and IBW to the IBW. This method is also well examined using population PK models for busulfan (Nguyen et al. 2006). On the other hand, initial vancomycin dosing should be based on TBW with subsequent therapeutic drug monitoring (Polso et al. 2014; Rybak et al. 2009). However, for many drugs the optimal basis for dose calculation has still to be determined.

67.3.2 Impact on Drug Dosing of Chemotherapy

The majority of dosing recommendations in obese patients exist for antimicrobial drugs (Alobaid et al. 2016; Pai and Bearden 2007; Polso et al. 2014; Bearden and Rodvold 2000; Falagas and Karageorgopoulos 2010) and for conventional chemotherapy (Griggs et al. 2012). The American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO) published the following main statements in 2012 guidelines:

- Dose should be selected according to body surface area (BSA) using actual body weight.
- Dose reductions should be based on toxicity and comorbidities independent of the obesity status.
- There is no evidence that obese patients experience increased toxicity when actual weight is used for calculation of chemotherapy.

However, some limitations have to be kept in mind, as (1) there are no RCTs comparing actual body weight with other adjusted dosing approaches in obese patients, (2) recommendations are based on subgroup analyses of obese patients from RCTs or observational studies using actual versus adjusted weight calculation and (3) there are no recommendations for HSCT conditioning.

One case report described drug dosing morbidly of an obese patient undergoing allo-HSCT (Langebrake et al. 2011). Here it was observed that for hydrophilic and extensively renally cleared drugs, standard dosages for adult patients or dosing based on ideal body weight can be used. For more lipophilic drugs like CSA or digi-toxin, it could be shown that after achieving sufficient plasma levels using high initial doses, maintenance doses similar to those used in normal-weight patients are sufficient. Monitoring of plasma concentrations is highly recommended for drugs with a narrow therapeutic index.

67.3.3 Preparative Regimens Prior to HSCT

In patients undergoing auto- or allo-HSCT, specific features and purposes have to be taken into account. In auto-HSCT, high-dose chemotherapy aims to reduce tumour burden, while in allo-HSCT, therapeutic effect is based on donor immune cells and myeloablation.

The ASBMT reviewed the current published literature on dosing of pharmacologic agents used for HCT preparative regimens in obese...
patients in 2014. They concluded that dose adjustments were usually performed empirically or have been extrapolated from published data in non-transplant patients. Therefore, evidence for clear standards or dosing guidelines are currently not available as there are insufficient data to determine optimal drug dosing in obese patients undergoing HSCT (Bubalo et al. 2014). Nevertheless, consensus dosing recommendations were given (see Table 67.2).

Recently, the approach to use AIBW-based BSA for dose calculation of MEL prior to auto-HSCT has been shown to be non-inferior as compared to the nonobese population in terms of 3-year event-free survival (Shultes et al. 2018). Even for ATG, TBW for dose calculation is recommended by ASBMT. However, from a PK point of view, it would be more reasonable to use the IBW, as ATG has a volume of distribution that is almost equal to the whole blood volume. Recently, it has been proposed to rather base ATG dosing on absolute lymphocyte count, as this is the target of ATG (Kennedy et al. 2018).

Reports of obese patients undergoing HCT are challenging to interpret because of the heterogeneity of obesity definitions, underlying diseases, graft sources and chemotherapy regimens employed. Compared with normal-weight patients, it appears that obese patients undergoing allo-HSCT have a higher risk of non-relapse mortality and inferior survival, whereas those receiving auto-HSCT appear to have equivalent outcomes. Another important limitation for interpretation of published data is that there is no consistent standard for calculating chemotherapy dose in this group. Therefore, it is recommended that future studies utilise more consistent and biologically relevant definitions of obesity and that the PK and pharmacodynamics of specific conditioning regimens be studied (Weiss et al. 2013). In clinical practice, about 80% of HSCT centres routinely perform dose adjustment for obesity; however, the methods used for determining the weight for chemotherapy calculation are different among the transplant centres (Shem-Tov et al. 2015).

Table 67.2 Overview of volume of distribution

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Vd</th>
<th>Recommendation (ASBMT 2014) Bubalo et al. (2014)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alemtuzumab</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Flat dosing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amsacrine</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATG</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>TBW (for mg/kg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Busulfan         | Medium| – AIBW25 in adults (obese and nonobese) for mg/kg  
|                  |     | – TBW (for BSA)                                                                                                    |
|                  |     | – PK targeting for regimens >12 mg/kg PO equivalent                                                              |
| Carboplatin      | Low| TBW (for BSA)                                                                                                      |
| Carmustine       | High| TBW (for BSA), unless >120% IBW, then AIBW25                                                                     |
| Clofarabine      | High| TBW (for BSA)                                                                                                      |
| Cyclophosphamide| Medium| – 200 mg/kg: lesser of IBW or TBW  
|                  |     | – 120 mg/kg: either IBW or TBW until >120% IBW and then dose based on AIBW25 (former is preferred for adults, latter for children) |
| Cytarabine       | High| TBW (for BSA)                                                                                                      |
| Etoposide        | Low-medium| – AIBW25 for mg/kg  
|                  |     | – TBW (for BSA)                                                                                                    |
| Fludarabine      | High| TBW (for BSA)                                                                                                      |
| Melphalan        | Medium| TBW (for BSA)                                                                                                      |
| Pentostatin      | Medium| TBW (for BSA)                                                                                                      |
| Thiotepa         | Medium| TBW (for BSA), unless >120% IBW, then AIBW40 for BSA                                                             |
| Treosulfan       | Medium| n.a.                                                                                                               |

\^Vd volume of distribution (low, <0.3 L/kg; medium, 0.3–1.5 L/kg; high, >1.5 L/kg), and recommendations for dose calculation for adults according to ASBMT: AIBW25 adjusted ideal body weight 25%, AIBW40 adjusted ideal body weight 40%, BSA body surface area, IBW ideal body weight, n.a. not available, PO per os, TBW total body weight.
Key Points

- Obesity is associated with a significant increase in morbidity (including metabolic diseases and cancer) and mortality.
- Indirect measures of body composition, like BMI or ideal body weight, remain the standard, as they are easy to calculate.
- There is only limited evidence-based information about drug clearance in obese patients due to restrictions of clinical trials and the lack of pharmacokinetic analyses.
- Evidence for clear standards or dosing guidelines are currently not available as there are insufficient data to determine optimal drug dosing in obese patients undergoing HSCT.
- Despite that, in clinical practice, about 80% of HSCT centres routinely perform dose adjustment for obesity. However, the methods used for determining the weight for chemotherapy calculation are different among the transplant centres.

References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
68.1 Introduction

The hematological malignancies which are the most common indications for auto- and allo-HSCT (e.g., AML/MDS, NHL, MM, and others) are diagnosed at a median age greater than 65 years old. Thus, if classical chronological age exclusion criteria were followed, a majority of patients with these malignancies would not be offered a HSCT, despite it being their treatment of choice and in many cases their only curative option (Sureda et al. 2015). While elderly patients are more likely to face toxic effects from HSCT, this risk must be considered and balanced against the poor outcome of transplant candidates with these malignancies who do not proceed to HSCT.

68.2 HSCT Activity in Elderly Patients

Auto- and allo-HSCT annual activity continues to steadily increase in Europe and worldwide with no signs of saturation (Gratwohl et al. 2015). Specifically, in elderly patients, HSCT activity at EBMT centers has increased markedly in the past two decades. Auto-HSCT activity in patients ≥65 years old increased from 3.4% (443 out of 13,163 autologous HSCT) in 2000 to 9.8% (2444 out of 23,883 auto-HSCT) in 2014 (Sánchez-Ortega et al. 2016). Allo-HSCT activity in patients ≥65 years old increased from <1% (37 out of 6413 allo-HSCT) in 2000 to 6.7% (1057 out of 16,765 allogeneic HSCT) in 2014 (Basak et al. 2016). In the USA, over 50% of auto-HSCT for lymphomas and MM were performed in patients over 60 years old and 12% in patients ≥70 years old in 2015 (D’Souza and Zhu 2016). The number of patients aged ≥60 undergoing allo-HSCT doubled in 2007–2013 compared to 2000–2006 (D’Souza and Zhu 2016), and US allografts for patients ≥70 years rose tenfold over the past decade, with AML as the leading indication (Muffly et al. 2016).

Improvements in supportive care, HSC mobilization, and the use of RTC and RIC regimens have contributed to the increase in HSCT activity overall and, in particular, to the increase of HSCT activity rates in elderly patients. With sustained improvement in these areas, and as the population ages, these numbers will only continue to increase.

68.3 HSCT Outcomes in Elderly Patients

Compared to younger adults, elderly patients may have higher overall rates of transplant failure. Potential comorbidities, impaired health,
and performance status could lead to higher transplant-related morbidity and mortality. In addition, malignancies in elderly patients often have more adverse disease features (e.g., higher-risk cytogenetics and molecular patterns in AML/MDS patients) and may have been treated less aggressively prior to HSCT, which may potentially also increase the risk of disease relapse.

Historically, HSCT outcome analysis in elderly patients has been limited by the fact that these patients are underrepresented in clinical trials and the majority of data come from relatively small series and subgroup analyses of small subsets of elderly patients in larger disease-specific studies including adults of all ages. More recently, HSCT outcomes of elderly patients are being analyzed specifically and have reported feasibility and safety of autologous HSCT in MM patients >65 years (Winn et al. 2015), in selected populations of elderly patients with R/R DLBCL (Chihara et al. 2014), and in R/R HL in patients ≥60 years of age (Martínez et al. 2017). Prospective studies addressing the value of allogeneic HSCT compared to non-transplant approaches are limited and generally restricted to patients <65 years old. Interestingly, several large series in AML/MDS patients reported that NRM and OS were negatively affected by KPS <80–90% but not by chronological age (Heidenreich et al. 2017; McClune et al. 2010). Despite significantly poorer outcomes in older patients, additional trials have also not shown a significant impact of advanced age on major outcomes including NRM (Sorror et al. 2011; Chevallier et al. 2012).

The largest experience reported to date on auto- and allo-HSCT outcomes in elderly patients comes from two EBMT studies including a total of 21,390 auto-HSCT and 6046 allo-HSCT in patients ≥65 years old between 2000 and 2014 (Basak et al. 2016; Sánchez-Ortega et al. 2016). Patient numbers and key HSCT outcomes overall and by age group are presented in Table 68.1.

These studies confirm the feasibility of auto- and allo-HSCT in elderly patients, with acceptable NRM and OS at 1 and 3 years. Multivariate analyses in both studies showed that performance status (i.e., Karnofsky score) had a more significant independent impact on patient outcomes than chronological age. Thus, these data in a large cohort of elderly patients strongly suggest that age per se should not be an exclusion criterion to consider HSCT in this population. Undoubtedly, this further-endorses the need to assess comorbidity and frailty beyond age in older HSCT candidates to improve outcomes further.

### Table 68.1 HSCT outcomes in elderly patients: EBMT experience

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of HSCT</th>
<th>All cases ≥65 years</th>
<th>Group I 65–69 years</th>
<th>Group II ≥70 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autologous, n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– NRM year 1</td>
<td>21,390</td>
<td>17,531</td>
<td>3859</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– OS year 1</td>
<td>4.9%</td>
<td>4.6%</td>
<td>5.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– OS year 3</td>
<td>87%</td>
<td>88%</td>
<td>83%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– OS year 3</td>
<td>67%</td>
<td>69%</td>
<td>61%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allogeneic, n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– NRM year 1</td>
<td>6046</td>
<td>4914</td>
<td>1132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– OS year 1</td>
<td>27%</td>
<td>26%</td>
<td>29%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– OS year 3</td>
<td>57%</td>
<td>57%</td>
<td>53%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– OS year 3</td>
<td>39%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>35%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| n number of cases | 21,390 | 17,531 | 3859 |

| n number of cases | 6046 | 4914 | 1132 |

| n number of cases | 27% | 26% | 29% |

| n number of cases | 57% | 57% | 53% |

| n number of cases | 39% | 40% | 35% |

| n number of cases | 21,390 | 17,531 | 3859 |

| n number of cases | 6046 | 4914 | 1132 |

| n number of cases | 27% | 26% | 29% |

| n number of cases | 57% | 57% | 53% |

| n number of cases | 39% | 40% | 35% |

| n number of cases | 21,390 | 17,531 | 3859 |

| n number of cases | 6046 | 4914 | 1132 |

| n number of cases | 27% | 26% | 29% |

| n number of cases | 57% | 57% | 53% |

| n number of cases | 39% | 40% | 35% |

| n number of cases | 21,390 | 17,531 | 3859 |

| n number of cases | 6046 | 4914 | 1132 |

| n number of cases | 27% | 26% | 29% |

| n number of cases | 57% | 57% | 53% |

| n number of cases | 39% | 40% | 35% |

| n number of cases | 21,390 | 17,531 | 3859 |

| n number of cases | 6046 | 4914 | 1132 |

| n number of cases | 27% | 26% | 29% |

| n number of cases | 57% | 57% | 53% |

| n number of cases | 39% | 40% | 35% |

| n number of cases | 21,390 | 17,531 | 3859 |

| n number of cases | 6046 | 4914 | 1132 |

| n number of cases | 27% | 26% | 29% |

| n number of cases | 57% | 57% | 53% |

| n number of cases | 39% | 40% | 35% |

| n number of cases | 21,390 | 17,531 | 3859 |

| n number of cases | 6046 | 4914 | 1132 |

| n number of cases | 27% | 26% | 29% |

| n number of cases | 57% | 57% | 53% |

| n number of cases | 39% | 40% | 35% |
68.4.1 General Principles and Considerations for Elderly HSCT Candidates

- HSCT decision should not be driven by chronological age but by a broader multidimensional assessment including fitness, comorbidities, physiologic reserve, and frailty.
- Elderly patients require information and counseling in plain language regarding the HSCT process, donor sources, specific protocol, timeline, risks, benefits, and outcomes.
- They also need information regarding patients’ quality of life outcomes, caregivers, and psychosocial needs, for which social workers and other support staff will be needed.
- A multidisciplinary individualized assessment is required to appropriately address the multidimensional nature of the evaluation of elderly patients.
- Fit older transplant candidates should follow the same indications for auto- and allo-HSCT as younger adults.
- In the case of allo-HSCT, particular consideration to RIC and NMA regimens is essential, and donor selection must take into account the age of the donor, as donor older age may associate with impaired outcomes.
- Outcome analysis in elderly patients may require the use of clinically relevant composite endpoints that, beyond survival, incorporate quality of life, good overall mental and physical condition, and freedom from severe complications.

68.4.2 Frailty in Elderly HSCT Candidates

- Frailty is a term used to describe a multidimensional syndrome of loss of physiologic reserves (energy, physical ability, cognition, health) that leads to vulnerability.
- The ability to measure frailty in elderly patients is useful clinically.
- Although it appears to be a valid construct to assess elderly patients, how exactly to define it remains unclear. There is a large abundance of possible scales to measure frailty, which likely reflects uncertainty about the term and its components.
- A. Hedge et al. have recently reported on frailty as the missing piece of pre-HSCT assessment (Hegde and Murthy 2018). Data shows that the prevalence of frailty prior to HSCT in patients ≥50 years old is higher than in the general geriatric population at around 25%. Importantly, age has no effect on prevalence of frailty.
- Frailty is associated with poorer OS even after adjusting for age and HCT-CI and may be associated as well with an increased incidence of disease relapse (Muffly et al. 2014, Hegde and Murthy 2018).

68.4.3 Geriatric Assessment for Elderly HSCT Candidates

68.4.3.1 General Concept

- The geriatric assessment is a multidimensional, multidisciplinary assessment designed to evaluate an older person’s functional ability, physical health, cognition, mental health, and socioenvironmental circumstances (Artz 2016).
- The goal of geriatric assessment in this context would be to capture vulnerability pre-HSCT to help deciding on patient suitability for the procedure, as well as to individualize post-HSCT support strategies to prevent complications and reduce transplant-associated morbidity and mortality (Artz 2016).

68.4.3.2 Elements Involved in Elderly HSCT Candidates

- Ensure appropriate performance status (Karnofsky score ≥80).
- Rule out significant comorbidities by the HCT-CI (Sorror et al. 2005), as their prevalence increases with age.
- Assess the modified EBMT (Armand et al. 2014) and the revised PAM scores (Au et al. 2015), as global prognostic models that incorporate both NRM and disease factors.
– Measure functional status by self-reported function and performance-based testing (ability to perform tasks necessary to live independently in the community [i.e., shopping, food preparation, housekeeping, telephone, laundry, transportation and driving, manage finances and medication, number of times a patient can rise from the chair (i.e., timed up and go), gait speed, 6-min walk test, hand grip strength, or provocative cardiopulmonary testing], polypharmacy requirements).
– Cognitive function: if necessary, perform neuropsychological testing and/or consult geriatrics.
– Psychosocial evaluation (assessment of social support, availability of a caregiver, financial matters, psychological disturbances, etc.).
– Nutritional status and weight loss.
– Biomarkers to characterize physiologic age (serum C-reactive protein, ferritin, serum albumin, or protein biomarkers panels in development).

68.4.3.3 Scales
– No standard geriatric assessment scales have been validated for HSCT.
– Most scales available for geriatric assessment in cancer patients are complex and time-consuming, which limits its use in daily practice.
– The Geriatric Assessment in Hematology (GAH) scale is a brief, comprehensive geriatric assessment scale designed and validated for older patients diagnosed with hematological malignancies (MDS, AML, MM, and CLL) (Bonanad et al. 2015).
– The GAH scale includes 30 items grouped into 8 pre-defined dimensions (number of drugs, gait speed, mood, activities of daily living, subjective health status, nutrition, mental status, and comorbidities) and requires a relatively short period of time to be administered in routine clinical practice (10–12 min).
– Thus, the GAH scale could be an interesting tool to assess elderly patients with hematological malignancies who are being considered for transplantation. However, it still needs to be validated in the setting of HSCT.

Key Points
• HSCT activity in elderly patients has increased markedly in the past two decades and is predicted to continue to increase as the population ages, with a sustained improvement in HSCT methodology and care.
• Auto- and allo-HSCT in elderly patients is feasible and has acceptable outcomes.
• Age should not be an exclusion criterion per se to consider elderly patients for HSCT.
• Assessing comorbidity is essential in older HSCT candidates, but adjusting only for comorbidity may not identify frail patients vulnerable to adverse outcomes.
• Frailty is a multidimensional syndrome of loss of physiologic reserves (energy, physical ability, cognition, health) that leads to vulnerability, is higher in HSCT recipients than the general geriatric population, and associates with poorer HSCT outcome.
• Geriatric assessment is a multidimensional, multidisciplinary assessment designed to evaluate an older person’s functional ability, physical health, cognition, mental health, and socioenvironmental circumstances.
• The goal of geriatric assessment in HSCT would be to capture vulnerability to pre-HSCT to help deciding on patient suitability for the procedure and to adapt post-HSCT support strategies to improve outcomes.
• Currently, there are no standard geriatric assessment scales validated for HSCT. The GAH scale has been described and validated in elderly patients with hematological malignancies, is relatively simple to apply in clinical practice, and may be a candidate scale for elderly HSCT candidates, validation pending.
References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Part IX

Indications and Results

Topic leaders: Rafael Duarte and Nicolaus Kröger
Acute Myeloid Leukemia in Adults

Jurjen Versluis, Jan J. Cornelissen, Charles Craddock, Miguel Á. Sanz, Jonathan Canaani, and Arnon Nagler

69.1  AML in CR1

Jurjen Versluis, Jan J. Cornelissen

69.1.1 Definition, Subtypes

AML is a malignancy of hematopoietic immature precursors (myeloblasts) that accumulate in the BM at the expense of their normal counterparts. AML is diagnosed by cytomorphology if more than 20% myeloblasts are present in the BM or PB. In addition, immunophenotyping and cytogenetic and molecular characterization are used to identify a number of AML subtypes.

The WHO defines seven major subtypes of AML based largely on genetic, morphological, and cytochemical characteristics of the disease, whereas the most recent update (2016) included a new category termed “myeloid neoplasms with germ line predisposition” (Arber et al. 2016). In addition, risk classification is increasingly done according to the latest European LeukemiaNet (ELN) recommendations, whereby three risk groups are distinguished, including favorable risk, intermediate risk, and adverse risk, largely based on pretreatment cytogenetic abnormalities and aberrations in the NPM1, FLT3, CEBPA, RUNX1, ASXL1, and TP53 genes (Dohner et al. 2017).

69.1.2 Clinical Presentation

The median age at diagnosis is approximately 70 years, and the annual age-standardized incidence rate varies between 3 and 4 cases per 100,000. Patients with AML may present with symptoms such as fatigue and loss of appetite, whereas lymphadenopathy and hepatosplenomegaly may be found by physical examination. Analysis of blood work often reveals thrombocytopenia, anemia, and/or neutropenia. In some patients a serious bleeding diathesis can occur, particularly in the early phase of treatment, because the leukemic blasts are able to activate the coagulation cascade as well as cause hyperfibrinolysis. This particularly occurs in patients with acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL).
69.1.3 First-Line Treatment

Achievement and maintenance of complete remission (CR) are crucial in younger AML patients aged below 60 years, but treatment may largely fail because of relapse from CR rather than primary resistance or treatment-related mortality (TRM).

With modern supportive care, TRM rates average <5%. For 30 years standard induction treatment (to produce CR) has consisted of 7–10 days of the antimetabolite cytosine arabinoside (Ara-C) and 3 days of an anthracycline (i.e., daunorubicin or idarubicin). CR rates with standard induction estimate between 70 and 90%. Favorable-risk patients may experience relatively good outcome with overall survival rates of approximately 60%, whereas outcome for patients with intermediate-risk and adverse-risk AML remains unsatisfactory.

Following the introduction of targeted therapies in other malignancies including TKI in CML, studies to evaluate targeted treatment in AML were initiated 5–10 years ago, and a large randomized study in patients with \( \text{FLT3} \) AML demonstrated a survival benefit for younger AML patients treated with the kinase inhibitor midostaurin in conjunction with intensive induction and consolidation chemotherapy (Stone et al. 2017). That study led to the approval of midostaurin, which has now become standard of care in AML patients with mutated \( \text{FLT3} \). The ability of the pretreatment features such as incorporated in the ELN risk classification to predict outcome is important to direct treatment decisions; however probably more prognostically important than the pretreatment features is response to treatment (CR vs. lesser degrees of “response”) and especially presence, in hematological remission, of “minimal residual disease” (MRD) as assessed by flow cytometry or molecular testing in patients with abnormalities such as mutated \( \text{NPM1} \).

Allo-HSCT clearly reduces relapse rates but is associated with TRM (see sect. 69.1.4). Patients who do not qualify for HSCT are usually offered intensive consolidation chemotherapy based on high-dose cytarabine (HDAC). The dose of Ara-C has been a subject of study and intense debate questioning the application of dosages exceeding 2 g/m², which is now generally considered the upper dose (Lowenberg 2013). Induction chemotherapy in younger patients may include the 3 + 7 scheme, whereas older patients may not tolerate intensive induction therapy and therefore are considered for non-intensive induction. However, it should be noted that also patients above the age of 60 years without comorbidities and no organ dysfunctions may be candidates for intensive therapy, which has been demonstrated to result in superior outcome (Lowenberg et al. 2009). Nevertheless, with a median age of approximately 70 years, most older patients are offered non-intensive therapy. With regard to non-intensive therapy, low-dose cytarabine (LDAC) is generally preferred over best supportive care (BSC) (Burnett et al. 2007). More recently, demethylating agents were compared with LDAC or BSC in older patients with AML and/or MDS, and both azacitidine (AZA) and decitabine showed a modest survival advantage. Although these agents resulted in a small improvement in overall survival, they may be preferred over LDAC or BSC in patients who cannot tolerate intensive induction therapy. At present the demethylating agents are predominantly used in those patients with myelodysplastic features.

69.1.4 HSCT and AML Risk Categories

69.1.4.1 ELN Risk Categories

Previously, conventional cytogenetics and mutations of \( \text{NPM1} \), \( \text{FLT3}-\text{ITD} \), and \( \text{CEBPA} \) were included in the ELN 2010 risk classification of AML patients (Dohner et al. 2010). The current ELN 2017 risk classification has added mutations in three genes including \( \text{RUNX1} \), \( \text{ASXL1} \), and \( \text{TP53} \) (Table 69.1) (Dohner et al. 2017). Similar to the previous risk classification, the ELN 2017 AML risk classification is advocated to be used for risk-stratifying AML and to a risk-adapted treatment approach of patients with AML. Such a risk-adapted treatment approach of patients with AML depends on the risk of relapse of the underlying AML but also on the risk of TRM associated with the applied post-remission treatment. The application of MRD, detected by either multiparametric
flow cytometry or quantitative PCR for specific molecular markers, may further improve AML risk classifications. MRD may be detected at time points early after induction treatment to assess the remission status of the AML but also after PRT to detect imminent relapse. Consequently, MRD negativity was introduced as an endpoint in patients with a hematological CR (Dohner et al. 2017).

### Transplant Risk Categories

The risk-adapted approach of patients with AML in first CR should also include the assessment of TRM for each individual patient. TRM may be attributed to GVHD, infectious complications, organ toxicity, and other causes (Gooley et al. 2010). A number of parameters may relate to allo-HSCT-related TRM, including the procedure (e.g., conditioning regimen, application of TCD), donor characteristics (e.g., HLA-matching), and recipient features (e.g., age and comorbidity). The risk of mortality may be quantified by composite risk scores, which have been established to predict for TRM and overall outcome.

Two generally approved transplant risks were developed and validated, including the EBMT risk score (Gratwohl et al. 1998) and the hematopoietic cell transplantation-comorbidity index (HCT-CI) (Sorror et al. 2005). The EBMT risk score is based on patient and transplantation characteristics, which was developed in CML patients and subsequently validated in other patient groups including AML (Gratwohl et al. 2009). The HCT-CI originated from the Charlson comorbidity index and consists of 17 comorbidities which contribute to a cumulative score (Sorror et al. 2005). The HCT-CI was extensively validated and has been continuously being refined including age, disease status, or biomarkers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AML risk classification</th>
<th>MRD status</th>
<th>Preferred post-remission treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Favorable</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t(8;21)(q22;q22.1); <strong>RUNX1-RUNX1T1</strong></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>Chemotherapy/auto-HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inv(16)(p13.1q22) or t(16;16)(p13.1;q22); <strong>CBFB-MYH11</strong> Mutated NPM1 without FLT3-ITD or with FLT3-ITD&lt;sup&gt;low&lt;/sup&gt; Biallelic mutated CEBPA</td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>Allo-HSCT&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;, (unless excessive TRM can be predicted)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intermediate</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mutated NPM1 and FLT3-ITD&lt;sup&gt;high&lt;/sup&gt; Wild-type NPM1 without FLT3-ITD or with FLT3-ITD&lt;sup&gt;low&lt;/sup&gt; (without adverse risk genetic lesions) t(9;11)(p21.3;q23.3); <strong>MLLT3-KMT2A</strong> Cytogenetic abnormalities not classified as favorable or adverse</td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>Allo-HSCT&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt; (if acceptable risk of TRM; alternative, chemo/auto-HSCT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>Allo-HSCT&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adverse</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t(6;9)(p23;q34.1); <strong>DEK-NUP214</strong> t(v;11q23.3); <strong>KMT2A</strong> rearranged t(9;22)(q34.1;q11.2); <strong>BCR-ABL1</strong> inv(3)(q21.3q26.2) or t(3;3)(q21.3;q26.2); GATA2, MECOM(EVII) −5 or del(5q); −7; −17/abn(17p) Complex karyotype, monosomal karyotype Wild-type NPM1 and FLT3-ITD&lt;sup&gt;high&lt;/sup&gt; Mutated <strong>RUNXI</strong> Mutated <strong>ASXL1</strong> Mutated <strong>TP53</strong></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>Allo-HSCT&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>Allo-HSCT&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> Adapted from Cornelissen et al. 2012a, b), Table 4
<sup>b</sup> Adapted from Dohner et al. (2017), Table 5
<sup>c</sup> Detected with multiparametric flow cytometry or with for qPCR specific markers
<sup>d</sup> Allo-HSCT using HLA-identical sibling or 10/10 MUD donors
<sup>e</sup> Allo-HSCT using HLA-identical sibling, MUD, umbilical cord blood, or haploidentical donors
(Sorror et al. 2007, 2014). Other groups have also developed predictive models for TRM modifying the weights of the EBMT risk score and the HCT-CI (Barba et al. 2010), whereas others combined transplant-related parameters and patient characteristics (Parimon et al. 2006; Barba et al. 2014; Shouval et al. 2015).

A more sophisticated, machine-based learning model was developed by the EBMT-acute leukemia working party (ALWP) based on 10 variables, which resulted in an alternating decision tree model highly predicting for mortality at 100 days and at 2 years (Shouval et al. 2015).

However, with the introduction of RIC, allo-HSCT is increasingly being applied as post-remission treatment for older or less fit patients with comorbidities. Several groups have reported less predictive power of the EBMT-score and the HCT-CI in these subgroups of patients as a number of comorbidities are less strongly associated with mortality after RIC than after MAC (Gratwohl et al. 2009; Barba et al. 2010; Barba et al. 2014). The EBMT-ALWP has developed an integrated score based on the EBMT risk score and the HCT-CI with increased predictive power in the setting of RIC allo-HSCT (Versluis et al. 2015). The lack of predictive power of the established risk scores and the development of a refined and dedicated model emphasize that prediction of TRM requires a continued reassessment of risk scores in specific patient groups.

69.1.5 HSCT in First-Line AML Treatment: A Risk-Adapted Approach

AML risk classifications are being used for tailoring patients’ optimal post-remission treatment, which may include allo-HSCT, auto-HSCT, and continued chemotherapy. Allo-HSCT is the most optimal post-remission treatment for the prevention of relapse due to a potent GVL effect, which has been demonstrated to be exerted irrespective of underlying AML cytogenetic subcategories and MRD status (Cornelissen et al. 2012b; Versluis et al. 2017a). However, absolute estimates of relapse incidence differ and may reflect molecular or cytogenetic differences resulting in resistance of the AML. Although the GVL effect of allo-HSCT is unequivocally present in patients with AML in first CR, concurrent TRM may compromise overall outcome, especially in AML patients with a relatively low incidence of relapse. Thus, a risk-adapted approach of post-remission treatment for patients with AML in first CR should include an assessment of the TRM risk profile in addition to leukemia characteristics and MRD (Cornelissen et al. 2012a; Cornelissen and Blaise 2016). Table 69.1 summarizes a risk-adapted approach based on the latest ELN AML risk classification, MRD status, and the risk for TRM. The risk for TRM should be preferably assessed with dedicated scores for specific subgroups of patients. Patients with MRD are considered high-risk for relapse and preferably receive an allo-HSCT in first CR, unless excessive NRM may be predicted. Allo-HSCT is generally not being indicated in patients with a favorable AML risk profile; for those patients auto-HSCT or continued chemotherapy may be preferred (Dohner et al. 2017; Cornelissen et al. 2012a; Cornelissen and Blaise 2016). However, favorable-risk patients with persistent MRD may receive an allo-HSCT, especially those patients with a low risk for TRM.

Results of allo-HSCT compared with auto-HSCT or chemotherapy have yielded contradicting results in intermediate-risk patients, especially taking molecular markers into account (Koreth et al. 2009; Schlenk et al. 2008; Rollig et al. 2015; Stelljes et al. 2014; Versluis et al. 2017b). Assessment of the MRD status is strongly advocated for patients with an intermediate-risk AML. Allo-HSCT may be applied in patients with intermediate-risk AML with MRD after induction chemotherapy, except for patients with a high risk for TRM. Allo-HSCT is also preferred for patients with intermediate-risk MRD-negative AML, but auto-HSCT or chemotherapy may be considered when the predicted risk for TRM is high. Adverse-risk patients with MRD should be transplanted with an allografted as soon as a hematological CR is obtained. Adverse-risk patients without MRD still have a significant risk of relapse and may also receive an allo-HSCT, although patients with a very high risk for TRM may alternatively receive autologous HSCT or a third cycle of chemotherapy.
69.2 Allo-HSCT in Advanced AML

Charles Craddock

69.2.1 Introduction

Allo-HSCT plays an increasingly important role in the management of AML in adults (Cornelissen et al. 2012a). The advent of RIC regimens coupled with increased donor availability has dramatically increased the number of patients in whom allo-HSCT can be contemplated. At the same molecular characterization at diagnosis coupled with measurable MRD quantitation after induction, chemotherapy has considerably improved our ability to predict relapse risk in patients treated with intensive chemotherapy (IC) alone permitting accurate identification of allo-mandatory patients.

As a result, allo-HSCT in patients with AML in CR1 is an increasingly important personalized component of the treatment algorithm. At the same time, transplantation is also emerging as an important, potentially curative treatment modality in patients with advanced AML.

The increasingly important role of allo-HSCT in the management of AML mandates the development of novel strategies with the potential to improve transplant outcome. Although the last three decades has witnessed a substantial reduction in TRM, the risk of disease relapse post transplant remains stubbornly high and now represents the major cause of treatment failure in patients allo-grafted for AML. There is consequently an urgent requirement to develop novel strategies with the potential to reduce the risk of disease recurrence.

69.2.2 The Role of Allo-HSCT in the Management of AML Beyond CR1

While a small proportion of patients with AML in CR2 achieve long-term survival if treated with salvage chemotherapy alone, compelling data identify allo-HSCT as the preferred curative option (Gale et al. 1996). Long-term survival rates in the region of 30–50% have been reported after both transplantation from either a matched sibling or MUD (Tauro et al. 2005). Encouraging results are also reported in patients transplanted using CBU with a good total nucleated cell dose and, more recently, haploidentical donors. In patients who have achieved a morphological CR2, it is wise to proceed immediately to transplant, providing the patient is fit and a donor has been identified and there is no evidence supporting further courses of chemotherapy prior to transplantation.

While a rigorous comparison of MAC and RIC regimens has not been performed in fit patients under the age of 50, a MAC regimen should probably be preferred. Retrospective studies have demonstrated that auto-HSCT can achieve comparable results to those observed with an allogeneic donor in adults with AML associated with a CBF abnormality, and this can represent an important treatment option in patients with comorbidities or in the absence of a well-matched donor (Gorin et al. 2008), particularly if both the patient and stem cell graft are MRD negative.

Ten to forty percent of adults with newly diagnosed AML fail to achieve a morphological CR after two courses of induction chemotherapy (Ferguson et al. 2016). Factors determining refractoriness to induction therapy include patient age and the presence of an adverse risk karyotype. Although recognized as one of the most important causes of treatment failure, it is perhaps surprising that there is no consensus definition of primary refractory AML (PREF AML). While the International Working Group (IWG) and the European LeukemiaNet (ELN) define resistant disease as persistent leukemic blasts following one course of induction chemotherapy in either the PB or the BM in a patient alive 7 days or more following treatment (Cheson et al. 2003; Dohner et al. 2010), most transplant studies instead have classified PREF AML as a failure to achieve a morphological CR after two induction courses.

The UK NCRI group recently studied more than 8000 patients with the aim of more precisely defining a measure of chemo-refractoriness. Patients with greater than 15% residual blasts or less than a 50% proportional reduction in blast count after the first course of induction chemotherapy were observed to have similar outcomes to patients who fail to achieve a morphological CR...
after two courses. Such patients were observed to possess genuinely chemo-refractory disease with long-term survival rates <10% if treated with chemotherapy alone (Ferguson et al. 2016). In contrast, patients who fulfilled either definition of refractory disease achieved long-term survival rates in the region of 25–30% after allo-HSCT.

Evidence that allo-HSCT can deliver long-term survival in a significant proportion of patients with PREF AML has been accumulating over the last decade and represents an important advance in management of this sizeable patient population for whom no other effective therapy exists (Craddock et al. 2011; Todisco et al. 2017; Brissot et al. 2017). Nonetheless outcomes in patients allografted for PREF AML remain unsatisfactory, and both TRM and disease relapse continue to represent significant barriers to long-term survival. There is also a lack of clarity concerning which patients with PREF AML are the most likely to benefit from transplantation. Outcome is clearly superior in patients who proceed swiftly to transplant after no more than two courses of IC, and relapse appears to be lower in those with a lower burden of disease at the time of transplantation. Importantly the impact of presentation karyotype and genotype on outcomes remains undetermined although some studies, perhaps unsurprisingly, identify worse outcome in patients with a complex karyotype. It is therefore important that further studies examining the impact of presentation karyotype, mutational status, and pre-transplant disease load on outcome after allo-HSCT are prioritized. What is incontrovertible however is that adults with high-risk AML should undergo an urgent search for sibling and URD at presentation so that transplant can be swiftly scheduled if the patients are refractory to chemotherapy.

The optimal conditioning regimen in patients with PREF AML remains a matter of conjecture. While MAC regimens should be preferred in fit patients under the age of 50, encouraging results have also been reported using the sequential FLAMSA regimen which incorporates additional tumor debulking, using Ara-C and amsacrine, prior to a FLU-based RIC regimen (Schmid et al. 2006). Importantly this schedule also incorporates early administration of DLI, at day +120, in patients with no evidence of active GVHD.

### 69.2.3 Strategies to Prevent Disease Relapse in Patients Allografted for AML

Disease relapse remains the major cause of treatment failure in patients allografted for AML (Cornelissen et al. 2012b). Despite substantial progress in reducing the toxicity of allo-HSCT, the risk of disease recurrence remains stubbornly high, and novel strategies with the potential to reduce the risk of disease recurrence are urgently required (Craddock et al. 2018). Key to the development of effective new interventions is an understanding of both the clinical factors determining disease relapse and an improved understanding of the biology of disease recurrence (Ossenkoppele et al. 2016). In addition to the impact of presentation karyotype, next-generation sequencing (NGS) studies have identified molecular determinants of disease relapse post transplant (Lindsley et al. 2017). Retrospective studies have also demonstrated that pre-transplant MRD is an important predictor of disease relapse after allo-HSCT, although confirmation of these data in prospective trials is still lacking (Walter et al. 2011).

The risk of disease relapse also appears to be impacted by the conditioning regimen, and retrospective studies consistently demonstrate an increased risk of recurrence in patients transplanted using a RIC regimen although recent prospective randomized trials have yielded conflicting data (Fasslrinner et al. 2018; Kroger et al. 2017; Scott et al. 2017). Finally, the intensity of post transplant IS is also a critical factor influencing relapse risk consistent with the exertion of a potent GVL effect in patients allografted for AML (Bacigalupo et al. 1991; Craddock et al. 2010).

A number of novel approaches toward reducing post transplant relapse are currently undergoing evaluation. Firstly, quantitation of pre-transplant MRD status, using immunophenotypic or molecular methodologies, can identify patients with a higher risk of relapse and has resulted in exploration of approaches which reduce the pre-transplant MRD status as a means of improving transplant outcome. Pivotal to the implementation of such strategies are reproducible and accurate measurements of pre-transplant MRD status, and of note novel NGS technologies.
with improved sensitivity are emerging (Jongen-Lavrencic et al. 2018). Secondly, identification of the optimal conditioning regimen remains key to optimizing transplant outcome. One of the most important considerations in interpretation of comparisons of MAC and RIC regimens will be whether pre-transplant MRD influences patient outcome in a regimen-dependent manner.

Finally, there is increasing interest in the elective administration of pharmacological agents or cellular therapies post transplant. A number of agents are currently under evaluation as post transplant maintenance strategies including targeted therapies such as Flt3 inhibitors or agents with a broader antileukemic activity including demethylating agents such as AZA or checkpoint inhibitors (Craddock et al. 2016; Soiffer et al. 2018). In the future it is likely that the choice of maintenance strategies will be informed by a greater understanding of the biology of disease recurrence. In this context it is of interest that a significant number of patients who relapse post-allograft demonstrate loss or acquisition of candidate driver mutations at the time of relapse (Quek et al. 2016).

69.3 Practical Issues in Allo-HSCT for AML

Jonathan Canaani, Arnon Nagler

69.3.1 Stem Cell Source
(See Also Chaps. 14 and 15)

One of the fundamental issues in the initial decision-making for transplantation physicians is the optimal source for procuring the stem cells for transplant. Whereas the initial methodology for donor stem cell procurement involved direct BM harvesting, the introduction of PBSC mobilization more than two decades ago into routine clinical practice has shifted the field toward the latter approach. Indeed, it has been estimated that PBSC is used in more than 75% of allo-HSCT (per National Marrow Donor Program data; http://www.marrow.org).

Whether PBSC are preferable to BM harvesting as the stem cell source for patients with AML is still an open question; however there are several noteworthy facts which need to be mentioned. In patients receiving grafts from MSD, early publications suggested superior engraftment rates in PBSC concomitant to an increased risk of acute and chronic GVHD in some of the studies (Couban et al. 2002). A phase 3 study was conducted by the BMT CTN randomized patients with various myeloid malignancies (including 261 AML patients) to receive PBSC versus BM harvested cells from MUD (Anasetti et al. 2012). The results of this pivotal study revealed comparable rates of survival and relapse between both groups with increased rates of graft failure in the bone marrow group counterbalanced by an increased likelihood of chronic GVHD in the PBSC group. Two analyses from the EBMT and the CIBMTR in the RIC setting also confirmed the absence of a survival difference for either approach (Nagler et al. 2012; Eapen et al. 2015). Thus, it seems reasonable to conclude that at present both stem cell sources are acceptable options to use in AML patients.

69.3.2 Best Donor (See Also Chap. 12)

AML patients referred to transplant are currently candidates for several potential donor sources including HLA MSD, HLA MUD, UCB grafts, and haploidentical donors. Indeed, the rapid evolution of the field of HSCT is possibly best exemplified by the potential donor pool which has expanded from the initial requirement for an HLA-matched sibling to include also MUD, UCB grafts, and more recently also use of haploidentical donors. While MSD and MUD remain the preferred donor source in most clinical settings (Schlenk et al. 2010), the accumulating experience with UCB and haplo donors provides a much-needed donor resource for those patients lacking suitable MSD or MUD donors, a need especially evident in minority populations.

The original pediatric experience with UCB has been successfully translated into adult transplantation protocols both in the RIC and MAC settings (Oran et al. 2011). Published data from a joint CIBMTR/EBMT retrospective study comparing UCB and MUD transplants in over 1500
acute leukemia patients suggested equivalent LFS rates in both groups (Eapen et al. 2010). Of note, UCB patients in this study had higher TRM rates but a lower incidence of acute and chronic GVHD. Interestingly, an analysis in high-risk AML patients who underwent either RIC UCB transplant or RIC MSD/MUD revealed that the incidence of relapse was more than doubled in the UCB group (Devillier et al. 2014), while a CIBMTR/Eurocord retrospective study of patients over the age of 50 showed that UCB transplant is feasible in this age group albeit at the price of an increased rate of TRM and lower LFS rate (Weisdorf et al. 2014).

Whether a two-unit UCB transplant is superior to a one-unit UCB transplant is not entirely clear at this point; however a randomized study conducted in pediatric and adolescent patients indicates similar survival and relapse rates between both groups in addition to improved rates of grade III/IV acute and extensive chronic GVHD in those patients receiving a single unit of UCB (Wagner Jr. et al. 2014).

The inherent benefit in using haplo donors is the near-universal availability of several potential donors which could be either siblings, parents, or children dependent on the patient’s age. The initial experience with this approach was limited by a substantial component of TRM due to the slow kinetics of immune reconstitution resulting in infectious complications as well as graft rejection (Ciurea et al. 2015). A significant breakthrough was realized with the advent of novel IS modulation approaches such as PT-CY-based (Robinson et al. 2016) and ATG-based protocols (Chang et al. 2014), which via selective in vivo TCD have achieved acceptable rates of engraftment. An evolving body of literature suggests comparable outcomes between haplo transplantation and transplantation from partially HLA MMUD and possibly MUD and MSD as well (Bashey et al. 2013). In conclusion, when available, MSD and 10/10 HLA MUD remain the first choice for donors. For patients lacking MSD/MUD, both UCB and haplo donors are reasonable alternative donor sources.

### 69.3.3 Conditioning (See Also Chap. 13)

The ideal conditioning regimen for patients with AML is a yet unsettled question in the field of transplantation. Yet, the pivotal point to initially consider when deciding on a specific conditioning regimen is whether the patient would be eligible to receive MAC or rather RIC. For younger (less than 45 years of age for most MAC candidates) and fit patients, MAC is the preferred choice given its superior antileukemia activity shown in previous studies (Martino et al. 2013) and especially in light of the recent data presented by the BMT CTN 0901 trialists underscoring the marked relapse-free survival advantage experienced by MAC patients compared to RIC patients (67% vs. 47%) (Scott et al. 2017).

From a toxicity standpoint, older patients derive the most benefit from RIC resulting in more favorable NRM and TRM rates. Notably, the incidence of GVHD, late infectious complications, and CMV reactivation is comparable between MAC and RIC, while the incidence of acute transplant complications (i.e., SOS/VOD, mucositis, IPS, and hemorrhagic cystitis) is more common in MAC and provides the advantage NRM for RIC (Sengsayadeth et al. 2015).

### 69.3.4 Graft Versus Host Disease Prophylaxis (See Also Chap. 25)

Up to 70% of transplanted patients will experience acute GVHD to some extent, and these patients are at a significant risk of morbidity and mortality resulting from this severe inflammatory reaction. Thus, from a therapeutic standpoint, prophylaxis of acute GVHD is one of the crucial intervention points during the process of allo-HSCT. In current practice standard prophylaxis regimens for acute GVHD comprise the dual use of a CNI, namely, CSA or TAC, added to MTX or MMF for the first 180 days following transplantation (Ruutu et al. 2014). Published data from studies conducted two decades ago suggested that TAC/MTX was superior to CSA/MTX in terms of acute GVHD, however this did not translate into a survival advantage, and in fact the latter regimen may be more commonly used among transplant centers (Nash et al. 2000). MMF, an inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase inhibitor, is not often used in the MAC setting, and currently its role is mostly limited to CBT and
non-MAC-HSCT. SIR (rapamycin) was evaluated in several phase I/II with non-heterogeneous patient cohorts which limited interpretation of its efficacy; however a phase III BMT CTN study did not show an improvement in the incidence of GVHD over MTX (Cutler et al. 2014).

Whereas the abovementioned therapeutic modalities are quite adept at prevention of acute GVHD, preventing chronic GVHD is still a major challenge with these agents, and thus more specialized strategies to mitigate GVHD have been attempted including TCD accomplished using either ex vivo (via positive selection of CD34-positive cells or through negative depletion of specific T cell subsets) (Saad and Lamb 2017) or in vivo methodologies (by use of TCD drugs such as ALEM or ATG). Recent publications from several phase III studies clearly demonstrate using ATG was beneficial for patients with acute leukemia as well as other hematological malignancies (Kroger et al. 2016). Ex vivo TCD is a promising approach and has been shown to be effective for GVHD prophylaxis in smaller trials (Pasquini et al. 2012), although wider application of this methodology will require further data.

### 69.4 Acute Promyelocytic Leukemia

Miguel Á. Sanz

#### 69.4.1 Concept and Incidence

APL is a subtype of AML with peculiar clinical and morphological characteristics that presents a specific genetic alteration, the t (15; 17), with its corresponding molecular counterpart, the rearrangement PML-RARA, which confer a particular sensitivity to all-trans retinoic acid (ATRA) and arsenic trioxide (ATO). It also highlights the presence of a hemorrhagic diathesis associated with a peculiar coagulopathy, which causes a high incidence of hemorrhagic complications at presentation and early during the induction treatment.

APL accounts for 10–15% of AML.

#### 69.4.2 Diagnosis

##### 69.4.2.1 Morphology, Immunophenotyping, and Other Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M3 typical (hypergranular)</th>
<th>M3 variant (microgranular)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Morphology</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cytoplasm with dense granulation. Frequent Auer rods</td>
<td>• Cytoplasm with fine granulation or hypogranular. Less frequent Auer rods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Reniform or bilobed nucleus</td>
<td>• Reniform nucleus, bi- or multilobed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Immunophenotyping</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| HLA-DR-/CD34+/CD33+/CD13+/CD15-- | HLA-DR-/CD34+/CD33+/CD15+/
|                             |   CD9+/CD2+/CD13+/CD56+  |
| **Other associated features** |                        |
| • Most frequently, low WBC counts | • Most frequently, high WBC counts |
| • Less frequently, BCR3 isoform | • Most frequently, BCR3 isoform |

*Intense and homogeneous expression*  
*Heterogeneous expression*

##### 69.4.2.2 Genetic Diagnosis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conventional cytogenetics t(15;17)(q22;q21)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pros</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cons</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FISH PML-RARA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pros</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cons</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RT-PCR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pros</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cons</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Immunostaining with anti-PML antibody (PG-M3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pros</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cons</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
69.4.2.3 Other Rearrangements of the RARA Gene on Chromosome 17

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chromosomal abnormality</th>
<th>RARA rearrangement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• t(11;17)(q23;q21)</td>
<td>• PLZF/RARA (poorly responsive to ATRA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• t(17;17)(q21;q21)</td>
<td>• STAT5b/RARA (poorly responsive to ATRA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• t(11;17)(q23;q21)</td>
<td>• KMT2a/RARA (ATRA sensitivity unknown)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• t(5;17)(q35;q21)</td>
<td>• NPM/RARA (ATRA sensitivity unknown)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• t(11;17)(q13;q21)</td>
<td>• NuMA1-RARA (ATRA sensitivity unknown)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• t(17;17)(q21;q24)</td>
<td>• PRKAR1A/RARA (ATRA sensitive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• t(X;17)(p11;q21)</td>
<td>• BCOR/RARA (ATRA sensitive in two cases)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• t(4;17)(q12;q21)</td>
<td>• FIP1L1/RARA (ATRA sensitivity unknown)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• t(2;17)(q32;q21)</td>
<td>• OBFC2A/RARA (ATRA sensitive in one case)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• t(3;17)(q26;q21)</td>
<td>• TBLR1/RARA (insensitive to ATRA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• t(7;17)(q11;q21)</td>
<td>• GTF2I/RARA (ATRA sensitive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• t(1;17)(q42;q21)</td>
<td>• IRF2BP2/RARA (ATRA sensitive)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

69.4.3 First-Line Treatment

The European LeukemiaNet (ELN) recommendations in 2009 already recognized the promising results reported in several non-randomized studies using ATRA plus ATO, with or without minimal use of chemotherapy, but the standard of care was still considered the combination of ATRA plus anthracycline-based chemotherapy (Sanz et al. 2009). However recent findings have led to modify this recommendation.

The long-term results of a non-randomized study (Abaza et al. 2017) and two recently reported randomized clinical trials (Lo-Coco et al. 2013; Burnett et al. 2015), comparing the efficacy and safety of ATRA plus ATO versus the standard ATRA plus chemotherapy approach, strongly support the former combination as the new standard of care for patients with low-to-intermediate-risk APL with WBC counts lower than 10 × 10^9/L at presentation. Nevertheless, in countries where chemotherapy is more affordable than ATO, the classical combination of ATRA and chemotherapy is still an acceptable option. For high-risk patients, however, there are two valid options, either ATRA plus chemotherapy or ATRA plus ATO with a certain amount of cytoreductive chemotherapy, at least during the induction phase.

HSCT is never indicated in patients in CR1, except for the small fraction of patients with persistent RQ-PCR positivity of PML-RARA after consolidation (<1%), given the poor prognosis of this subset of patients. HSCT is also indicated in APL patients who relapse and achieve second or subsequent CR.

69.4.4 Salvage Therapy

Apart from patients with MRD positivity at the end of consolidation (molecular persistence), there is a general agreement that patients with the more common molecular or hematological relapse later on require immediate additional treatment, including HSCT. Salvage treatment should be given to attempt to achieve molecular remission as a bridge to HSCT. Salvage treatment with ATRA plus ATO is recommended when ATRA plus chemotherapy has been previously used front-line, whereas ATRA plus chemotherapy would be the option when front-line therapy was ATRA plus ATO.

The use of gemtuzumab ozogamicin may also be considered in both situations, but always as a bridge to HSCT. Based on recent studies, (Yanada et al. 2013; Holter Chakrabarty et al. 2014; Lengfelder et al. 2015) auto-HSCT should be considered the first choice for eligible patients achieving second molecular remission. Patients unsuitable for HSCT and those with a very prolonged CR1 can be managed with some type of continuation therapy which would be chosen taking into account previous treatments and clinical condition.

Allo-HSCT should be reserved for patients with high risk of relapse and low risk of TRM but also as a second option, for those who relapse after an auto-HSCT.
69.4.5 Indications of HSCT

HSCT is never indicated in patients in CR1, except for those patients who do not achieve molecular remission at the end of consolidation (<1%). Indications of HSCT and other recommendations for patients in whom HSCT is indicated are summarized in Table 69.1.

69.4.6 Main Series Reported on HSCT in APL

There are no randomized trials to evaluate the efficacy and safety of the different modalities of HSCT in refractory/relapsed APL. The data come mostly from retrospective studies comparing historical cohorts from registries (Tables 69.2 and 69.3).

Table 69.2 Indications of HSCT in patients with APL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Auto-HSCT</th>
<th>Allo-HSCT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Not indicated</td>
<td>CR1 in molecular remission</td>
<td>CR1 in molecular remission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicated</td>
<td>≥CR2, but in molecular remission</td>
<td>≥CR2 with PML-RARA (+) after salvage therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– ≥CR2 if an auto-HSCT has failed previously</td>
<td>– ≥CR2 if an auto-HSCT has failed previously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– ≥CR2 in patients with high risk of relapse and low risk of TRM</td>
<td>– ≥CR2 in patients with high risk of relapse and low risk of TRM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salvage therapy as</td>
<td>Attempt to achieve molecular remission with ATRA plus ATO in patient</td>
<td>Attempt to achieve molecular remission with ATRA plus ATO in patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bridge to HSCT</td>
<td>who relapsed after ATRA plus chemotherapy as front-line therapy, whereas</td>
<td>who relapsed after ATRA plus chemotherapy as front-line therapy, whereas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ATRA plus chemotherapy is the option when patients relapse after ATRA</td>
<td>ATRA plus chemotherapy is the option when patients relapse after ATRA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>plus ATO</td>
<td>plus ATO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditioning</td>
<td>Either for use in AML, preferably containing HDAC (e.g., BEA (Gondo et al. 1997): BU/VP/Ara-C)</td>
<td>Either for use in AML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regimen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cell source</td>
<td>Mobilized peripheral blood</td>
<td>Mobilized peripheral blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indication of CNS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prophylaxis</td>
<td>ITT with MTX, hydrocortisone, and Ara-C, especially in those who presented relapse in CNS</td>
<td>ITT with MTX, hydrocortisone, and Ara-C, especially in those who presented relapse in CNS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance</td>
<td>Not proven, but conceivable that ATO + ATRA may be effective</td>
<td>Not proven, but conceivable that ATO + ATRA may be effective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>therapy post-HSCT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molecular</td>
<td>Recommended by RQ-PCR at least every 3 months for 2–3 years</td>
<td>Recommended by RQ-PCR at least every 3 months for 2–3 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 69.3 Main series reported on HSCT in APL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group and reference</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Type of study</th>
<th>Main conclusions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>European APL Group (Thomas et al. 2000)</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>Retrospective</td>
<td>– Higher morbidity and TRM with allo-HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Inclusion of patients from the pre-ATRA era</td>
<td>– Short follow-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBMT (Sanz et al. 2007)</td>
<td>332</td>
<td>Retrospective</td>
<td>– Higher TRM but lower relapse rate with allo-HSCT compared with auto-HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Only patients of the pre-ATRA era</td>
<td>– Similar EFS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan Adult Leukemia Study Group (Yanada et al. 2013)</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Prospective, phase II, multicenter</td>
<td>– Outstanding efficacy and feasibility of the sequential treatment featuring ATO and auto-HSCT for relapsed APL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Salvage therapy with ATO+Ida, followed by ATO x 2, HDAC, and auto-HSCT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBMTR (Holter Chakrabarty et al. 2014)</td>
<td>294</td>
<td>Retrospective</td>
<td>– Auto-HSCT yields superior OS for APL in CR2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Only patients of the pre-ATRA era</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELN registry (Lengfelder et al. 2015)</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>Retrospective</td>
<td>– Good but similar results with allo- and auto-HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Salvage therapy with ATO±ATRA for induction and consolidation followed by auto- or allo-HSCT</td>
<td>– Unfavorable prognostic impact of PML-RAR positivity at time of HSCT even in the allogeneic setting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
References


Dohner H, Estey EH, Amadori S, et al. Diagnosis and management of acute myeloid leukemia in adults:


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
70.1 Introduction

The outcome for children with acute myeloid leukemia (AML) has serially improved over the past three decades with an overall survival (OS) of 70–75% and event-free survival (EFS) of 60–65% widely reported. Much of this improvement is due to better supportive care, optimization of intensity of treatment including employment of Haematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation (HSCT) in 1st complete remission (CR1) and better salvage in 2nd complete remission (CR2).

Whilst the majority of children (>90%) achieve CR, the relapse rate (RR) in CR1 remains unacceptably high at 30–35%, albeit varying by risk group. This global relapse risk has not improved significantly over the past three decades, and relapse remains the commonest cause of death.

HSCT, compared to chemotherapy as consolidation treatment, reduces the relapse risk in CR1 in all risk groups. However, this reduction in relapse risk has not always translated into an improvement in OS due to the treatment related mortality (TRM). The challenge is to identify children with a relapse risk in CR1, which is sufficiently high, to absorb the TRM and balance the risk in favour of HSCT. It is particularly important to establish the benefit of HSCT across all risk groups and within rare subtypes of AML associated with a poor outcome when treated with chemotherapy alone and not to assume that these children will benefit from HSCT. This will require evaluation by clinical trials which in turn will require international collaboration. Particularly worthy of consideration when weighing the benefits of transplantation in children are the associated late effects.

It is accepted that HSCT offers children with relapsed AML, who achieve a CR2, their only chance of long-term survival, and that some children with relapsed/refractory disease may benefit from HSCT.

70.2 Prognostic Factors and Indications

70.2.1 First Complete Remission

Consolidation therapy with allogeneic HSCT in CR1 of paediatric AML has been shown
consistently to reduce the relapse risk through a GVL effect, which is stronger in AML than ALL.

Historically, HSCT trials employed a biological randomisation with children who had a matched sibling donor (MSD) receiving a HSCT as consolidation therapy and those without a MSD receiving consolidation chemotherapy. Improvements in HLA typing and donor selection have made HSCT an option for the majority of patients. Historical trials reported a reduction in RR which was counterbalanced by an increased TRM and better salvage for those who received chemotherapy only in CR 1 (Stevens et al. 1998; Woods et al. 2001; Lie et al. 2003). However, delaying transplant to CR2 carries risk. The mortality rate for reinduction after relapse is high, and those patients who do not achieve CR2 may be denied the opportunity of HSCT.

The criteria for transplanting patients have evolved from transplanting patients irrespective of risk group, to transplanting all patients other than those with good-risk cytogenetics (about 80% of all patients), to the current practice of restricting transplant to those with poor-risk (PR) cytogenetics (about 30% of all patients). These are the patients believed to be at the highest risk of relapse and therefore those most likely to benefit from HSCT in CR1 in an era of low TRM. There is no universal agreement on how high-risk (HR) disease should be defined. Different criteria have been, and continue to be, used by different national groups to define high risk. A combination of cytogenetics/molecular aberrations, which are currently considered to be the strongest indicator of outcome, and the presence of minimal residual disease (MRD), which may be assessed by morphology, flow cytometry or RT-PCR assessments of fusion transcripts, is evolving.

The percentage increase in disease free survival (DFS) or decrease in cumulative incidence of relapse (CIR) which would support HSCT as the best option in CR1 is undefined. This has been set at 10% in adults (Cornelissen et al. 2012), but the improved salvage after relapse and greater toll from late effects in children suggests that the bar should be set higher.

70.2.1.1 Cytogenetics
The cytogenetic abnormalities most commonly considered indicative of high risk of relapse include monosomy 7, monosomy 5/5q-, abnormal 12p, inv(3)/t(3;3)/abn (3q), CBFA2T3-GLIS2, t(4;11), t(5;11), t(6;11), t(10;11), t(6;9), t(9;22), t(7;12), t(11;17), t(8;16), t(3;5) and complex karyotype. There is not complete consensus between national groups, and, in particular, not all agree that abnormalities of 3q, t (6; 11) and complex (4 or more) are poor risk. Most consider a FLT3-ITD mutation (approximately 12% of children with AML) to be HR. However, some groups require the absence of good-risk cytogenetics, whilst other groups restrict this to FLT3 ITD-WT1 mutations or base the risk on the allelic ratio (>0.4). The development of next-generation FLT3 inhibitors may challenge the role of HSCT in FLT3-ITD-mutated patients. A number of more recently recognised poor-risk cytogenetic abnormalities are cryptic, and it is expected that more cryptic abnormalities will be identified and that the list of poor-risk cytogenetic abnormalities may change with time. Currently poor-risk cytogenetics comprise about 25–30% of all AML in children.

An OS in excess of 70% is reported for HR patients after HSCT, although the definition of HR is not uniform. However, a combined COG and CIBMTR review of 233 children with AML between 1989 and 2006 with HR cytogenetics (-7, 7q-, -5, 5q-, abn 3q, t (6; 9), complex karyotype) reported no benefit for HSCT over chemotherapy. 123 children received chemotherapy, 55 a matched related donor (MRD) HSCT and 55 an unrelated donor (URD) HSCT. The 5-year OS from the time of consolidation or conditioning was similar: chemotherapy 43%, MRD 46% and URD 50% \( (p = 0.99) \).

The pattern of failure differed: CIR at 5 years 61% vs. 51% vs. 30% for chemotherapy, MRD and URD, respectively \( (p < 0.001) \), and TRM 7%, 13% and 23%, respectively \( (p = 0.005) \). HR was defined by cytogenetics alone and did not include FLT3 mutational or MRD status (Kelly et al. 2014). The benefit for HSCT in a number of poor-risk cytogenetic subgroups has not been proven and must not be assumed.
Whilst HSCT is generally directed at patients defined as HR by cytogenetic abnormalities, a meta-analysis of MRC and POG trials of HSCT vs. chemotherapy showed that only intermediate-risk patients, where risk was defined by cytogenetics and poor morphological response to treatment, benefited from transplant (OS 61% vs. 51%). There was no advantage for HSCT in patients with poor-risk cytogenetics; however there were too few patients in the poor-risk group to make firm conclusions (Horan et al. 2008).

### 70.2.1.2 Minimal Residual Disease Assessment (See Chap. 57)

MRD is variably employed in risk stratification to direct patients to HSCT. It has been shown to be strongly predictive of outcome, and whilst it is commonly used to intensify treatment in poor responders, it may equally identify those with poor-risk cytogenetic aberrations who have a favourable early response and may not require HSCT. Currently multidimensional flow (MDF) cytometry is most commonly employed either by measuring leukemia aberrant immunophenotype (LAIP) or a “different from normal” phenotype. The discretionary level is 0.1%, and the most commonly used time point is post course 2. Alternatively, discretionary levels of 0.1% or 1% post course 1 are used by some groups to guide patients to HSCT in CR1. About 20% of patients with a MRD level <0.1% after course 1 will relapse, which implies that genetic aberrations may influence relapse more than MRD. Similarly, 30% of patients with a MRD level of >0.1% after course 1 will remain in remission. MDF cytometry is sensitive to a level of 0.1–0.01% and applicable in 90% of patients with AML.

Molecular MRD may be more sensitive and informative but data is limited. It is not commonly used outwith acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL), but our understanding and employment of molecular MRD may change with experience. MRD assessment by reverse transcription PCR (RT-PCR) for fusion transcripts has a sensitivity level of 0.01–0.001% and is applicable in approximately 50% of patients. The generally accepted discriminatory level is a greater than three-log reduction in transcript levels.

The relative significance of cytogenetics/molecular aberrations and MRD status may evolve. Digital PCR and next-generation sequencing may be more sensitive but remain in the research arena. Similarly, leukemia stem cell monitoring may be more informative (Schuurhuis et al. 2018).

The main benefit of measuring MRD by any methodology is that it may allow the tailoring of the intensity of treatment. Thirty one of 267 (12%) children treated on NOPHO-AML 20024 were defined as poor responders—15% blasts morphologically after course 1 or 5% blasts after course 2. These patients had time-intensive chemotherapy followed by HSCT in 25 of 31 with a donor. The 3-year probability of survival for these HR patients was 70%. Patients classified as intermediate risk (defined as 5–14.9% blasts after course 1) had a significantly inferior EFS compared to HR patients. Both groups had time-intensive chemotherapy, but only HR patients proceeded to HSCT (Wareham et al. 2013; Abrahamsson et al. 2011).

The level of MRD after course 1 of chemotherapy in children treated on AIEOP 2002/01 correlated with outcome. At 8 years the outcomes for the 125 children in morphological remission with MRD level post course 1 of <0.1% vs. ≥0.1% was DFS 73.1% vs. 35.2% (p < 0.01), OS 82.2% vs. 51.6% (p = 0.0005) and CIR 23.5% vs. 62.8% (p = 0.0005). Post course 2, the outcomes at 8 years for MRD of <0.1% vs. ≥0.1% was DFS 68.4% vs. 21.9% (p < 0.01), OS 77.1% vs. 55.5% (p = 0.0275) and CIR 31.6% vs. 73.9% (p = 0.00078).

Thirty-six patients had a MRD level of ≥0.1% at the end of course 1:13 achieved a MRD <0.1% after course 2, and their DFS was 45.4% vs. 22.8% for patients with persisting MRD ≥0.1% (p = 0.037). Therefore, patients who achieve a level of MRD <0.1% after course 2 but who were MRD positive (>0.1%) after course 1 remain at higher risk of relapse and have a poorer outcome compared to those who are MRD negative after course 1. This suggests that not only clearance of MRD but additional effective treatment is required to improve outcome (Buldini et al. 2017; Loken et al. 2012).
St Jude’s AML 02 study showed no difference in OS between HR patients undergoing HSCT compared to those who received chemotherapy. When the analysis was restricted to HR patients defined by MRD >1% after induction 1, the OS for HSCT was 43% vs. 23% for chemotherapy: \( p = 0.14 \) (Rubnitz et al. 2010). Whilst the difference was not statistically significant, this may have been limited by low patient numbers.

There is no advantage for HSCT in CR1 for patients with good-risk cytogenetics—t (8; 21), inv (16), normal karyotype with NPM1 and normal karyotype with biallelic CEBPA. Some groups include t(1;11) (q21; q23) in the good-risk cytogenetic group.

The benefit of HSCT in CR1 for patients with intermediate-risk cytogenetics is less clear, and these may be the patients without PR cytogenetics but with a poor early response to chemotherapy in whom MRD can identify those at high risk of relapse. There is no role for HSCT in CR1 of APL or DS AML. HSCT for patients with Fanconi anaemia and MDS/AML and those with JMML are discussed elsewhere.

### 70.2.2 Second Complete Remission

Patients with relapsed AML have a dismal prognosis with chemotherapy alone, and it is generally accepted that they should proceed to transplant in CR2. The chance of achieving a second CR after relapse is dependent on the length of CR1: CR1 <1 year vs. CR >1 year is 50% vs. 75% with an overall CR rate of 60%, OS for CR <1 year 26% vs. 45% CR >1 year, \( p < 0.001 \) (Kaspers et al. 2013). Prognostically significant are the time to relapse, cytogenetics, no HSCT in CR1 and the speed of response to reinduction. Cytogenetics are strong prognostic indicators in relapse as in de novo disease with patients with CBF leukemias faring the best: CBF leukemias vs. others—OS 67% vs. 31%, \( p < 0.001 \).

### 70.2.3 Refractory Disease

It has long been accepted that a poor morphological response >5% blasts at day 15 or resistant disease after course 1 or 2 has a poor outcome with chemotherapy alone. If CR cannot be achieved, the outlook is poor, but aggressive chemotherapy followed by HSCT may benefit some patients. Residual disease/MRD positivity pre-HSCT increases the risk of relapse post-HSCT, but the susceptibility of AML to GVL does not preclude transplant. MRD status just prior to HSCT is an important prognostic indicator.

A small study reported a 5-year OS of 80.4% for children with <0.01% MRD \((n = 27)\), 66.7% for those with 0.01–5% MRD \((n = 9)\) and 58.3% for those with >5% MRD (Leung et al. 2012). It is not clear what level of disease should preclude HSCT.

The role of transplant in CR1, CR2 and refractory disease may change with time if new effective chemotherapy agents become available.

### 70.3 Conditioning Regimens

No advantage has been shown for total body irradiation (TBI) in AML and chemotherapy-only regimens should be used. Adult data from the CIBMTR demonstrated improved non relapse mortality (NRM), OS and DFS in patients with AML transplanted using IV Busulfan (Bu) with therapeutic drug monitoring (TDM) compared with TBI (Copelan et al. 2013). Myeloablative conditioning (MAC) regimens are most commonly used, but a number of reduced toxicity conditioning (RTC) regimens are being tested. There is no proven “best” chemotherapy conditioning regimen, though MAC regimens with Bu and cyclophosphamide (Cy) with TDM of Bu levels are currently the standard of care. A retrospective EBMT study of Bu, Cy and Melphalan (Mel) (enhanced MAC) in paediatric AML in CR1 suggested improved RR and Leukemia free survival (LFS) compared with BuCy, but the majority of patients receiving BuCy on this study did not undergo TDM (Lucchini et al. 2017). Moreover, whilst this regimen is well tolerated in children under the age of 12 years, it is associated with non-acceptable TRM rates between 20 and 30% in teenagers and should therefore be avoided or used with caution in this group (Sauer et al. 2017). There is an increasing body of experience with MAC Bu and
Fludarabine (Flu), which is well tolerated, but no randomised comparisons are available to determine relative anti-leukaemic activity of BuFlu vs BuCy (Harris et al. 2018). Replacing Bu with Treosulfan (Treo) to reduce toxicity whilst maintaining efficacy is being tested and given in combination with Cy (TreoCy) or with Flu and Thiotepa (FTT). The choice of conditioning regimen is a balance between efficacy and toxicity. Comorbidity; pretreatment with drugs which may contribute to toxicity, i.e. gemtuzumab and VOD/SOS, age and HLA disparity may influence the choice of conditioning regimen. Comorbidity or heavy previous treatment may indicate a reduced intensity conditioning (RIC) with BuFlu or FluMel. Targeted Bu levels will differ between MAC, RTC and RIC. Patient toxicities may suggest avoidance of specific agents. Newer regimens which include clofarabine are also being tested.

A retrospective comparison of RIC (39) vs. MAC (141) in matched patients has reported no difference in a-GVHD, c-GVHD, TRM, LFS and OS. The OS was 45% vs. 48%, \( p = 0.99 \); RR 39% vs. 39%, \( p = 0.95 \); and TRM 16% vs. 16%, \( p = 0.73 \). However, about 50% of MAC used TBI, whilst BuCy was the commonest chemotherapy regimen. Patients who received a RIC had had more pre-HSCT morbidity. The performance score influenced OS, LFS and CIR (Bitan et al. 2014). The current paediatric AML protocol MyeChild01 is prospectively comparing MAC BuCy with a reduced toxicity BuFlu regimen.

### 70.4 Donor Selection Hierarchy and Stem Cell Source

#### 70.4.1 Autologous HSCT

There is no evidence from a number of studies and meta-analysis that auto-HSCT is superior to intensive chemotherapy as consolidation therapy and it is now not employed. AML 2002/01 study reported a DFS of 73% for allo-HSCT in HR patients compared to 63% for auto-HSCT, \( p \)-ns. The CIR was 17% vs. 28% in favour of allo-HSCT, \( p = 0.043 \). There was no difference in TRM at 7% for both groups at 8 years (Locatelli et al. 2015).

#### 70.4.2 Allogeneic HSCT

The choice of donor for allo-HSCT is based on HLA compatibility and CMV status. Outcomes are similar for MSD and well matched unrelated donors (UDs). The degree of mismatch which is acceptable depends on the risk of relapse and CR status. Mismatched unrelated donor (MMUD) or cords and haplo-HSCT are generally reserved for very HR disease or early relapses.

Patients and their siblings should be tissue-typed at diagnosis. In the absence of a HLA matched family donor (MFD), an URD and cord blood unit (CBU) search should be initiated as soon as possible after induction course 1 for patients with intermediate or PR cytogenetics. Donors should be selected using the selection hierarchy of the national group. Medium-/high-resolution typing is required for adult URD (HLA A, B, C, HLA-DRB1 and HLA-DQB1) and unrelated cords (HLA A, B, C and DR loci).

The risk of relapse does not just direct the need for transplant but the HLA discrepancy which is acceptable. MFD or well-MUD should be identified for CR1 patients, whilst mismatched donors (8/10 MMUD), cords (4/8 MMUCB) or haplo-HSCT should be reserved for very high-risk disease, CR2 or refractory disease.

For family/unrelated donors, BM is the preferred stem cell source, but the use of PBSC is permissible and is more commonly used. The use of PBSC from mismatched donors should be avoided wherever possible.

In the UK, serotherapy is only given to patients transplanted from unrelated donors, 9/10 mismatched family donors or 5/8 matched cords blood units, but not to patients receiving grafts from matched family donors or 6–8/8 unrelated cord blood units. Other European groups only employ T-cell depletion in mismatched donors (MMUD).

### 70.5 GVHD Prophylaxis

All patients should receive immunosuppression (IS) with ciclosporin (CSA). Most, but not all, national groups add short-course methotrexate (MTX) for all patients. Patients receiving grafts
from a mismatched donor or those in whom the stem cell source is PBSC or unrelated cord blood should receive prophylaxis in addition to CSA with either mycophenolate mofetil (MMF) or short-course MTX. In adult AML, increased exposure to CSA was associated with increased relapse and decreased survival (Craddock et al. 2010), supporting early withdrawal of IS where possible. In the absence of GVHD, MMF can be stopped at day 28 post transplant, and CSA tailed over 4–6 weeks from day 60 (MFD), day 100 (MUD) or earlier if mixed chimerism is detected in the whole blood.

### 70.6 Donor Lymphocyte Infusions (DLI)

The evidence of benefit for DLI is weak. Rettinger et al. investigated the use of pre-emptive immunotherapy with reduction of IS and low-dose DLI in patients with paediatric AML developing mixed chimerism (MC) after HSCT for AML; 6/13 patients with MC who received immunotherapy remained in long-term CR, whereas all 7 patients with MC who did not receive immunotherapy relapsed (Rettinger et al. 2017). Based on these limited data, our practice is to use pre-emptive immunotherapy in patients with confirmed MC (defined as >1% autologous cells in the whole blood on two occasions 1 week apart) without active acute GVHD >Grade 1 or chronic GVHD in the first-year post transplant. If patients are still receiving IS, this should be discontinued and chimerism reassessed a month later. In patients already off IS, chimerism should be reassessed a month off IS. If mixed chimerism persists, DLI should be given to recipients of MFD or MUD. DLI is not recommended in the context of 9/10 mismatched donor HSCT. The DLI cell dose administered is dependent on the donor source and the timing post transplant. In the future, the use of pre-emptive DLI is likely to be based on detection of flow or molecular MRD in the bone marrow.

### 70.7 Management of Relapse Post transplant

For selected patients who relapse late (>1 year) post first HSCT and respond to reinduction chemotherapy, a second transplant may be curative with survival rates of 24–35% reported (Yaniv et al. 2018; Uden et al. 2017). DLI is of limited efficacy in frank relapse post transplant except if a further remission can be achieved (Schmid et al. 2007; Kolb et al. 1995).

Interestingly, CR has been seen in cutaneous (but not bone marrow) relapse of AML post transplant with the checkpoint inhibitor ipilimumab (Davidis et al. 2016). Novel agents targeting specific pathways, e.g. FLT 3 inhibition, have met with limited success to date. Treatment options for patients who relapse early after transplant are challenging, and at present, for the majority of such patients, we recommend symptom care or enrolment in a clinical trial. Antibody-drug conjugates, bispecific T-cell-engaging antibodies and chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T cells under development may be tested in such patients in the future (Table 70.1).

### Table 70.1 Donor and source for HSCT: the hierarchy of the UK

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Choice</th>
<th>Family donor</th>
<th>Unrelated donor</th>
<th>Unrelated cord</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>MFD (BM, PBSC, CB)</td>
<td>10/10 MUD 9/10 1DQ MMUD</td>
<td>8/8 MUCB (total nucleated cell (TNC &gt;3 × 10^7/kg))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>MMFD</td>
<td>9/10 (other) MMUD</td>
<td>5–7/8 MMUCB (TNC &gt;3 × 10^7/kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>9/10 MFD</td>
<td>9/10 (other) MMUD</td>
<td>5–7/8 MMUCB (TNC &gt;3 × 10^7/kg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For unrelated cord blood, a single cord is used if the cryopreserved TNC dose is >3 × 10^7/kg. If <3 × 10^7/kg, a double cord transplant is preferred.*
Key Points
- There is increasing evidence that patients with cytogenetic or molecular high-risk features may benefit from HSCT in CR1. About 30% of children fall into this risk group. A TRM below 10% should be achievable.
- A matched family or unrelated donor is considered the optimal donors and the bone marrow the preferred stem cell source. Mismatched donors may be considered appropriate for patients with poorly responding disease.
- Children who achieve CR2 after first relapse have a bleak prognosis without HSCT.
- MAC, TBI-free, conditioning is recommended for patients transplanted in CR1 and CR2, and to date the standard regimen had been BuCy.
- Novel conditioning regimens incorporating TREO or clofarabine are being explored, and these need to be compared with BuCy in prospective, randomised studies.
- Relapse after HSCT in CR1 is associated with a very poor outcome and not curable without a second HSCT. TRM for second HSCTs exceeds 30% which might favour the use of a RIC in this setting. The prevention of relapse remains the major challenge.

References

Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
71.1 Definition and Epidemiology

ALL is a malignant transformation and proliferation of lymphoid progenitor cells in the bone marrow, blood, and extramedullary sites. While 80% of ALL occurs in children, it represents a devastating disease in adults. The incidence of ALL is bimodal, with the first peak occurring in childhood and a second peak occurring around 50 years. The estimated overall incidence of ALL and lymphoblastic lymphoma in Europe is 1.28 per 100,000 individuals annually, with significant age-related variations (0.53 at 45–54 years, ~1.0 at 55–74 years, and 1.45 at 75–99 years) (Terwilliger and Abdul-Hay 2017).

71.2 Diagnosis

Typical but nonspecific clinical manifestations of patients with ALL are constitutional symptoms, bleeding, infections, and/or bone pain, with less than 10% of individuals having symptomatic CNS involvement at diagnosis (Lazarus et al. 2006). Mature B-cell ALL can also present as an extramedullary (e.g., GI or testicular involvement) disease. Mediastinal mass with wheezing and stridor can be a presenting feature of T-lineage ALL. For diagnostic purposes, the addition of flow cytometry to the morphologic identification of neoplastic lymphoblasts is essential for classification of ALL.

71.3 Classification

In 1997, the WHO proposed a composite classification in attempt to account for morphology and cytogenetic profile of the leukemic blasts and identified three types of ALL: B-lymphoblastic, T-lymphoblastic, and Burkitt cell leukemias. Later revised in 2008, Burkitt cell leukemia was eliminated as it is no longer seen as a separate entity from Burkitt lymphoma, and B-lymphoblastic leukemia was divided into two subtypes: B-ALL with recurrent genetic abnormalities and B-ALL not otherwise specified. B-ALL with recurrent genetic abnormalities is further delineated based on the specific chromosomal rearrangement present. In 2016, two new provisional entities were added to the list of recurrent genetic abnormalities and hypodiploid was redefined as either low hypodiploid (<40 chromosomes) or hypodiploid with TP53 mutations.
71.4 Risk Factors

Historically, age and white blood cell count at the time of diagnosis have been used to risk stratify patients. Increasing age portends a worse prognosis. Patients over 55 years have particularly poor outcomes, with only 10–15% long-term survival (Rowe et al. 2015). In most studies the cut point for high-risk ALL has been 30 × 10⁹/L for B-cell precursor ALL and 100 × 10⁹/L for T-cell precursor ALL, respectively.

According to the maturation marker profile measured by immunophenotyping, both entities, B- and T-cell precursor ALL, can be classified as less mature ALL, which are associated with an inferior prognosis compared to the more mature subtypes. In B-lineage ALL, the most important markers for subclassification are CD19, CD20, CD22, CD24, and CD79a. The earliest B-lineage markers are CD19, CD22 (membrane and cytoplasm), and CD79a. A positive reaction for any two of these three markers, without further differentiation markers, identifies pro-B ALL. The early T-cell precursor ALL is a subtype of high-risk ALL defined by reduced expression of T-cell markers (CD1a, CD8, and CD5) and aberrant expression of myeloid or stem cell markers (Chiaeetti et al. 2014).

Cytogenetics represents an important part of ALL classification (Moorman et al. 2007). Probably the most well-known aberration in acute leukemia, associated with a high-risk disease, is Philadelphia chromosome-positive ALL. This aberration is present in approximately 20% to 30% of adults with ALL. It can be detected as the translocation t(9;22)(q34;q11) by conventional karyotyping including FISH and/or by detection of the BCR-ABL rearrangement by PCR. In addition, aberrations like t(4;11)(q21;q23) or MLL rearrangements at 11q23 and hypodiploidy/low hypodiploidy (and the strictly related near-triploid group) fall also into the poor-risk cytogenetic category, with an overall disease-free survival rate of about 25%. The prognostic relevance of a complex karyotype (five or more chromosomal aberrations) in ALL remains controversial among different study groups.

Most ALL cases harbor multiple somatic genetic alterations in addition to gross chromosomal alterations. Chromosomal rearrangements and aneuploidy are early events in leukemogenesis, with DNA copy number alterations and sequence mutations acquired subsequently. Genes encoding transcriptional regulators of lymphoid development are among the most frequently mutated genes, particularly in B-lineage ALL. Several key genetic alterations may be associated with an inferior outcome, e.g., the IKZF1 alterations with treatment failure (Dhedin et al. 2015). However, these findings have to be verified in further prospective trials.

Persistence of MRD after induction/early consolidation, between weeks 4 and 22 and with a level ≥10⁻⁴, indicates intrinsic drug resistance (Holowiecki et al. 2008). MRD is evaluable using either multichannel flow cytometry or the real-time quantitative polymerase chain reaction (RQ-PCR). Aberrant phenotypes are identified on the basis of different combinations and/or asynchronous expression and/or variable intensity staining of several antigens. PCR targets are fusion genes associated with chromosomal abnormalities (e.g., BCR-ABL, MLL-AF4) or rearranged immunoglobulin or T-cell receptor sequences (TCR β, γ, δ, IgH, IgK-Kde) unique to each patient with ALL. A MRD level exceeding 10⁻⁴ after 2–3 months of treatment is an indicator for a high-risk disease, whereas an increase above 10⁻³ represents a very high risk for relapse (Bruggemann et al. 2010).

### 71.5 Prognostic Factors Used to Indicate Allo-HSCT in CR1

Although data from prospective randomized studies are lacking and are most likely impossible to obtain due to the small numbers in some subgroups, some patient-/disease-related risk factors might be an indication for an allo-HSCT in the first remission.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prognostic factor</th>
<th>Indication of allo-HSCT if</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>&gt;40 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High WBC count at diagnosis</td>
<td>&gt;30 × 10⁹/L in BCP-ALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;100 × 10⁹/L in T-ALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor-risk cytogenetics</td>
<td>Ph chromosome t(4;11)(q21;q23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>t(8;14)(q24.1;q32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Complex karyotype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Low hypodiploidy/near triploidy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**71.6 First-Line Treatment**

The first-line chemotherapy usually consists of induction, treatment intensification/consolidation, and long-term maintenance, with CNS prophylaxis given at intervals throughout therapy. The goal of induction therapy is to achieve CR remission and to restore normal hematopoiesis. The backbone of induction therapy typically includes VCR, PRD, and an anthracycline with or without L-asparaginase and CY.

Intensive postremission consolidation therapies improve outcome. Most study groups recommend six to eight courses, two to four of which contain high-dose MTX, Ara-C, and L-asparaginase, and one to two represent reinduction blocks.

Postremission consolidation is most often followed by long-term maintenance with daily oral mercaptopurine and weekly MTX for 2 years or longer, sometimes with periodic applications of, e.g., VCR, PRD, or other drugs (Bassan and Hoelzer 2011).

The addition of RTX to the induction and consolidation therapy for patients with B-precursor ALL (Maury et al. 2016), as well as imatinib for patients with Ph-positive ALL (Fielding et al. 2014), has significantly improved the outcome in these subgroups.

These modern regimens usually allow remission rates of 90% and more in patients with standard-risk ALL. However, in patients of older age (e.g., >45 years) treated with pediatric-inspired protocols, significantly higher rate of chemotherapy-related events compared to younger patients occurs, and response rates decrease.

The introduction of novel agents like nelarabine for patients with T-precursor ALL and blinatumomab and inotuzumab ozogamicin for B-precursor ALL, as part of the frontline therapy, is currently being evaluated in prospective trials.

**71.7 Second-Line Treatment**

While 85–90% of patients go into remission after induction therapy, there are subsets that are refractory to induction therapy. In addition, many of the patients with complete remission will have a relapse, and only approximately 30–50% will have disease-free survival lasting 3 years or longer. Conventional standard chemotherapy regimens for adults with relapsed or refractory B-cell ALL are associated with rates of CR of 31–44% when they are the first salvage therapy administered after an early relapse and 18–25% when they are the second salvage therapy (Gokbuget et al. 2016). Because CR is typically a prerequisite for subsequent allo-HSCT, the low rates of CR associated with conventional chemotherapy regimens mean that few adults with relapsed or refractory (R/R) B-cell ALL (5–30%) proceed to HSCT, which is considered to be the main goal after salvage treatment because it is the only potentially curative treatment option.

Recently, two randomized trials comparing conventional salvage regimens with novel immunotherapy-based therapies, the Tower trial (Kantarjian et al. 2017) with blinatumomab (targeting CD19) and the INO-VATE ALL trial (Kantarjian et al. 2016) with inotuzumab ozogamicin (targeting CD22), demonstrated significantly higher remission rates (up to 80%) for patients with R/R B-precursor ALL treated with either antibody-based therapy. Moreover, these novel treatments showed a favorable toxicity profile compared to conventional chemotherapies and allowed the treatment, of many of the patients, in an outpatient setting. Both trials defined a new standard therapy option in patients with R/R B-precursor ALL. Conventional chemotherapy might be still a reasonable option in patients with late relapse. However, with regard to treatment toxicity and option of outpatient
treatment, antibody-based therapies should be discussed with the patients, if available.

In patients with R/R Ph + ALL, usually treated with imatinib as part of the first-line treatment, molecular testing of mutations leading to the resistance to particular tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs) should be performed. According to these results, a second-generation TKI (e.g., dasatinib or ponatinib) should be chosen as salvage therapy.

Anti-CD19 chimeric antigen receptor (CAR)-expressing T cells have proved extremely effective against R/R B precursor ALL, at least in children and young adult patients with up to 70–90% response rates reported (Maude et al. 2018; Park et al. 2018). With lacking comparative trials, highly selected patients, and a clinically relevant toxicity profile (e.g., severe cytokine release syndrome, neurotoxicity, and long-lasting B-cell depletion), CAR-T cells have to be evaluated in further prospective trials.

Despite advantages in the treatment of B-precursor ALL, treatment options for patients with R/R T-precursor ALL are limited. So far, there is no agreed standard of care in adults with relapsed T-cell ALL. Standard chemotherapy regimens such as FLAG (FLU, Ara-C, and G-CSF) ± idarubicin only result in 30% to 40% response rates with 6 months median OS in responders. Nellarabine as monotherapy or in combination with other chemotherapeutic agents has shown promising response rates and is a reasonable option (Gokbuget et al. 2011(Gokbuget et al. 2011)).

Patients with persisting MRD or reappearance of their MRD marker without evidence of a hematological relapse have usually an indication for an allo-HSCT. However, treatment of MRD prior to transplant to potentially optimize outcome after HSCT should be discussed for patients in case of high/increasing MRD and particularly for those with an option for a targeted therapy (e.g., change of TKI therapy in patients with Ph + ALL of blinatumomab).

71.8 Autologous HSCT

71.8.1 Indication

Auto-HSCT is not considered a standard therapy for adult ALL. Optional for patients with MRD-negative high-risk ALL, not eligible for allo-HSCT.

71.8.2 Conditioning

Fractionated TBI (e.g., 6 × 2 Gy) in combination with CY and/or VP.

71.8.3 Results

In some trials, patients excluded from allo-HSCT were randomly assigned between chemotherapy and auto-HSCT. In one of the largest studies, chemotherapy proved superior, while a marginal superiority of auto-HSCT was ascertained in high-risk patients in another (Goldstone et al. 2008). In a European retrospective analysis on auto-HSCT, a cohort of patients who were MRD negative had a significantly better survival compared to those being MRD positive. Results of another retrospective study comparing auto- and allo-HSCT for adults with Philadelphia-positive ALL in first complete molecular remission showed similar survival rates for both groups (higher rate of relapse after auto-HSCT and higher rates of death in remission after allo-HSCT).

It remains a matter of debate if the MRD-negative patients in these retrospective trials would have shown similar results with conventional chemotherapy. The value of high-dose therapy, particularly in ALL patients being early MRD negative after induction therapy, has to be evaluated in prospective trials.

71.9 Allogeneic HSCT

71.9.1 Indication

Standard therapy for patients with high-risk ALL in CR1 (see Sect. 71.5) and standard therapy for patients with subsequent remission after induction failure or relapsed ALL (Dhawan and Marks 2017). Optional for patients with standard-risk ALL in CR1 and unpredictable treatment-related toxicities (e.g., prolonged severe cytopenia), which preclude continuation of conventional therapy. Optional for patients with refractory/active ALL (Pavlu et al. 2017).

71.9.2 Conditioning

For fit patients <45 years and no relevant comorbidities, preferable fractionated TBI (cumulative dose of 12–13 Gy) in combination with CY or
VP (Marks et al. 2006); alternative BU (preferable IV BU targeted plasma-drug level monitoring) in combination with CY. For patients aged 45 years and older, dose-adapted/dose-reduced conditioning should be considered. So far, no standard regimen has been established. Reasonable options are TBI-based therapies (e.g., 8 Gy TBI in combination with FLU or CY) and MEL-, BU-, or TREO-based conditioning regimes.

Especially patients transplanted beyond first remission are at risk for severe transplant-related toxicities with cumulative incidence of death in remission exceeding 30% and more. Consequently, dose-reduced conditioning regimes should be discussed in patients being in a MRD-negative subsequent remission after treatment with novel antibody-based salvage therapies. Moreover, conditioning therapies associated with significant toxicities (e.g., SOS/VOD for patients treated with inotuzumab ozogamic) must be avoided (Kebriaei et al. 2018).

### 71.9.3 Donor

MSD, HLA-MUD (at least matched for HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C, and DR), HLA-MMUD, haploidentical donor. In patients with HLA-MMUD, a transplant with UCB (Marks et al. 2014) or from haploidentical donor (Santoro et al. 2017) may be the better choice, particularly in those cases with >1 HLA-antigen-mismatched donor (Figs. 71.1 and 71.2).

---

**Fig. 71.1** Outcome of matched sibling donor—HSCT adults with ALL in CR1. Changes over time in the period 1993–2012. (a) Relapse incidence (RI), (b) non-relapse mortality (NRM), (c) leukemia-free survival (LFS), (d) overall survival (OS) (Giebel et al. 2017)
71.9.4 Stem Cell Source

Most likely no relevant difference with regard to GvHD between BM and PBSC as transplant source from an unrelated donor when ATG is part of the conditioning. Faster engraftment and low risk of graft failure with PBSC.

71.9.5 GvHD Prophylaxis

CSA + MTX or CSA + MMF are standard options. ATG should be considered in all patients receiving an allograft from an URD and can be discussed in patients transplanted from an MSD. For haplo-HSCT, using T cell replete allografts combined with post transplant cyclophosphamide (to eliminate alloreactive T cells while sparing other T cells, leading to faster immune reconstitution) is an established option.

71.9.6 Maintenance

For patients with Ph + ALL, maintenance with TKI after allo-HSCT should be applied as a prophylactic or preemptive therapy. At least in patients with B-precursor ALL and positive findings for MRD after allo-HSCT, preemptive therapies with antibodies/antibody-drug conjugates or CAR-T cells are valuable options to be evaluated in prospective trials.
Key Points

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Allo-HSCT</strong></td>
<td>indicated in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– CR1: high-risk ALL&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– &gt;CR1: all patients with no contraindication for allogeneic HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Donor</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MSD &gt; MUD &gt; MMUD &gt; Haplo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conditioning</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– &lt;45 years: TBI/CY; TBI/VP; IV BU/CY. TBI probable associated with lower relapse rates, TBI dose for patients &lt;45 years: cumulative 12–13 Gy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– &gt;44 years (or &lt;45 + contraindication for MAC) FLU/IV BU; FLU/MEL; FLU/TBI 8 Gy; FLU/TREOB&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Source of SC** | PB/BM  |
| **GvHD Proph.** | CSA + MTX or CSA + MMF (ATG in MUD or MMUD, consider ATG in MRS)  |
| **Maintenance** | Consider TKI in case of Ph + ALL  |
|  |  |
| **TRM** |  |
|  | CR1  |
| (age 18–55 year) | MSD: 11–24% (2 year)  |
|  | MUD: 18–29% (2 year)  |
|  | CR1  |
| (age >60 year) | MSD: approx. 23% (3 year)  |
|  | MUD: approx. 24% (3 year)  |
| **REL** |  |
|  | CR1  |
| (age 18–55 year) | MSD: 23–32% (2 year)  |
|  | MUD: 14–21% (2 year)  |
|  | CR1  |
| (age >60 year) | MSD: approx. 47% (3 year)  |
|  | MUD: approx. 35% (3 year)  |
| **OS** |  |
|  | CR1  |
| (age 18–55 year) | MSD: 60–76% (2 year)  |
|  | MUD: 62–70% (2 year)  |
|  | CR1  |
| (age >60 year) | MSD: approx. 39% (3 year)  |
|  | MUD: approx. 46% (3 year)  |
| >CR1<sup>c</sup> | MSD: 8–60%  |
|  | MUD: 10–50%  |

<sup>a</sup>Definition of “high risk” differs between study groups; most important risk factors: persisting MRD after two courses of therapy, high-risk cytogenetic, early T-cell precursor ALL

<sup>b</sup>For patients treated with inotuzumab ozogamicin, avoid regimens associated with SOS/VODS

<sup>c</sup>Data beyond CR1 are very limited

References


72.1 Introduction

Although the majority of children and adolescents with acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) are curable with current chemotherapy regimens, poor outcome persists in some individuals (Eckert et al. 2011; von Stackelberg et al. 2011; Schrappe et al. 2012). Allo-HSCT is the most established treatment to control leukemia by means of the GVL effect. During the last decade, it was demonstrated in prospective trials that HSCT from HLA-MSD and from HLA-MURD results in similar outcomes.


To offer the patients the best available treatment options, a close collaboration between international therapy study groups and transplant consortia are necessary. This is realized within the big treatment consortia for childhood leukemia (e.g. IBFM-SG, IntReALL, NOPHO, UKALL, AIEOP, FRALLE and others) and the paediatric transplant community (e.g. EBMT-PD WG, IBFM-SC SCT, GETMON, GITMO). The study groups for ALL treatment evaluate outcome according to their chemotherapy protocols and stratify patients to relapse standard-risk, medium-risk and high-risk groups. In contrast to adult patients, only patients with high-relapse risk are eligible for allo-HSCT to protect children from the potential long-term consequences of myeloablation and GVHD.

72.2 Prognostic Factors and Indications for HSCT

HSCT indications have to be defined prospectively and must be re-evaluated and reconfirmed at intervals dependent on modifications and improvements in non-transplant approaches for both front-line and relapse protocols. Some risk factors conveying a dismal prognosis in childhood...
ALL can be identified even at diagnosis (Moorman 2016; O’Connor et al. 2018). Additionally, response to induction treatment measured by MRD has a strong predictive value and defines nowadays many indications or HSCT (Bader et al. 2009; Conter et al. 2010; Schrappe et al. 2011; Eckert et al. 2013).

**72.2.1 Indications: CR1**

Only patients with high-risk cytogenetic features or insufficient response to chemotherapy are eligible for HSCT in first remission. In contrast to earlier recommendations, for these patients a MSD and a MURD and for the highest relapse category also mismatched donors are an option (Table 72.1).

**72.2.2 Indications: CR2 and Later**

All patients with relapse of T-ALL and patients who relapse during or within 6 months of cessation of chemotherapy (very early and early relapse) have a dismal prognosis when treated with conventional chemotherapy. Allo-HSCT from any donor type is the contemporary standard approach (Table 72.2).

If patients achieve a third or higher remission, allo-HSCT should be considered if the physical state allows such a procedure. Patient not in morphological remission should not receive allografts except in extraordinary experimental situations.

**72.3 Donor Selection and Stem Cell Source**

OS and incidence of NRM have constantly improved; however it has been shown that in children, a BMT from a HLA-identical sibling results in quicker myeloid engraftment, immunoreconstitution and less severe infections and should be therefore the preferred option (Peters et al. 2015). As only 25% of patients have a MSD, HSCT from other donors is the most applied method. Several groups have demonstrated that HSCT from unrelated donors, identified by HLA high-resolution typing and matching, has similar outcome results as MSD-HSCT (Zhang et al. 2012; Fagioli et al. 2013; Burke et al. 2015).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>PCR-MRD results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MRD-SR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No CR d33</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t(4;11)⁴</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypodiploidy &lt; 44 chromosomes⁵</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPR + T-ALL</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None of the above features⁶</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PPR** Prednisone Poor Response on day 8, **NRd33** No Remission day 33, **MRD** Minimal Residual Disease, **no** Allo HSCT not indicated, **MD** Permitted donor: HLA-matched sibling or non-sibling donor, **MMD** Permitted donor: HLA-matched or HLA-mismatched donor

⁴FCM-MRD results have no impact on the allo-HSCT indication

⁵Including MRD-MR SER (MRD TP1 ≥ 10^{-3} and TP2 10^{-4}^{-5})

⁶Non-remission in patients with this rare constellation should be due to extramedullary disease. Allo-HSCT indication in these cases should be discussed with the national study coordinator

⁷Independent of prednisone response

⁸The finding of exactly 44 chromosomes qualifies for HR treatment but has no impact on allo-HSCT indication

⁹Including patients with 44 chromosomes
Several methods were developed to overcome the HLA barriers. Today it is not clearly proven whether HSCT from HLA-mismatched CB, TCD (alpha-beta depleted, CD34+ selected or CD3/CD19 depleted) haplo-identical grafts or PT-CY approaches will result in the best outcome (Lang and Handgretinger 2008; Smith et al. 2009; Ruggeri et al. 2014; Locatelli et al. 2017) (Tables 72.3 and 72.4).

### Table 72.2 Indication for HSCT according to IntReALL SR 2010 and HR protocol criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relapse risk group</th>
<th>Phenotype</th>
<th>Time of relapse</th>
<th>Site of relapse</th>
<th>MRD-status</th>
<th>Donor type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Very High</td>
<td>T-ALL</td>
<td>Any time</td>
<td>I-BM, C-BM, I-EM</td>
<td>PR, ND</td>
<td>MSD, MD, MMD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Non-T-ALL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MSD, MD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>Non-T-ALL</td>
<td>Very early</td>
<td>I-BM, C-BM, I-EM</td>
<td>PR, ND</td>
<td>MSD, MD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Early</td>
<td>I-BM, C-BM</td>
<td>PR, ND</td>
<td>MSD, MD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Late</td>
<td>I-BM, C-BM</td>
<td>PR, ND</td>
<td>MSD, MD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Early</td>
<td>C-BM, I-EM</td>
<td>GR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Late</td>
<td>I-BM, C-BM</td>
<td>PR, ND</td>
<td>MSD, MD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C-BM</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### Table 72.3 Matching criteria according to HLA typing/matching and stem cell source for children and AYAs with ALL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable/</th>
<th>Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CMV-status</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient CMV IgG positive</td>
<td>1 Donor CMV IgG positive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Donor CMV IgG negative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient CMV IgG negative</td>
<td>1 Donor CMV IgG negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Donor CMV IgG positive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female patient</td>
<td>1 Male or female (preferentially not allo-immunized by prior pregnancy) donor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Female (preferentially not allo-immunized by prior pregnancy) donor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Younger donor if body weight enables sufficient SC harvest</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Older donor</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stem cell source</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSCT from MSD or MD</td>
<td>1 Bone marrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 PPBSC (CAVE: adjust GvHD-prophylaxis for matched siblings)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSCT from MMD: possible options</td>
<td>1 Bone marrow, 8/10 matches, unmanipulated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 PPBSC, haploidentical, CD3/CD19 depleted, α/β depleted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 CD, sufficient stem cell dose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 PBSC, haploidentical, CD34+ selection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 PT-CY</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Several methods were developed to overcome the HLA barriers. Today it is not clearly proven whether HSCT from HLA-mismatched CB, TCD (alpha-beta depleted, CD34+ selected or CD3/CD19 depleted) haplo-identical grafts or PT-CY approaches will result in the best outcome (Lang and Handgretinger 2008; Smith et al. 2009; Ruggeri et al. 2014; Locatelli et al. 2017) (Tables 72.3 and 72.4).

### 72.4 Conditioning Regimen

Most children receive a MAC. This consists either of TBI and VP and/or CY or—especially for children below 4 years of age—of BU-/FLU-
containing regimen, often combined with TT. An increasing use is recognized for TREO which results also in myeloablation but seems to have less toxic side effects (Wachowiak et al. 2011; Boztug et al. 2015; Lee et al. 2015; Peters et al. 2015).

To reduce acute organ toxicity, the interval between the end of the last chemotherapy and the start of conditioning is 3 or at most 6 weeks. If infection or toxicity requires a delay of conditioning, patients receive risk-adjusted chemotherapy to bridge the time until transplantation. Currently, a multinational trial comparing TBI/VP with either FLU/TT/BU or FLU/TT/TREO investigates in a randomized study the value of both conditioning regimens (FORUM study: allogeneic HSCT for children and AYAs with ALL comparing TBI with myeloablative chemotherapies) (Willasch et al. 2017).

72.5 GVHD Prophylaxis

Children transplanted with BM from matched sibling donors might benefit from an augmented GVL effect if only single and short GVHD prophylaxis is given (Locatelli et al. 2000). However careful monitoring and rapid treatment intervention are crucial to prevent severe GVHD. After HSCT from non-sibling donors, a combination of CNI and ATG with or without short MTX is given in most patients (Veys et al. 2012; Peters et al. 2015).

72.6 Post-transplant Follow-Up and Interventions

72.6.1 Mixed Chimerism (MC) and MRD

Mixed chimerism (MC) and MRD strongly predict risk for relapse in children (Bader and Kreyenberg 2015).

Preemptive immunotherapy, e.g. withdrawal of IS or DLI guided by chimerism and MRD monitoring, can prevent impending relapse. However, the dynamic of leukaemic reappearance hampers the final success of these methods. Therefore, new post-transplant intervention strategies with less risk for severe complications like bi-specific antibodies or CAR-T-cell interventions may expedite the control of impending relapse (Handgretinger et al. 2011; Maude et al. 2018).

72.6.2 Children with Ph+

Children with Ph+ should receive post-transplant TKIs: Whether the prophylactic approach (all Ph+ patients will receive TKIs) or a preemptive therapy (only patients with a Ph+ signal peri-HSCT) is more effective has to be prospectively proven (Schultz et al. 2010; Bernt and Hunger 2014). Both TKI options are currently under investigation.

72.6.2.1 The Amended EsPhALL Recommendation

Administration of imatinib prophylaxis post HSCT when more than 50,000 platelets are reached. Duration, 365 days after HSCT.

72.6.2.2 TKI According to MRD Result

Administration of imatinib post HSCT for all MRD-positive patients until two negative results are achieved. FACS- and PCR-MRD analyses are accepted.

72.7 Results

Figure 72.1 shows the event-free survival (EFS), overall survival (OS), relapse incidence (RI) and non-relapse mortality (NRM) of the prospective international multicentre trial comparing MSD with MURD (Peters et al. 2015).
Key Points

- Only children and adolescents with very high or high relapse risk should be candidates for allo-HSCT. The definition of relapse risk depends on the leukaemic phenotype, response to chemotherapy and—if applicable—time and site of relapse.
- MRD levels during chemotherapy but also pre- and post-HSCT are powerful predictors for outcome after HSCT.
- Patients who are not in morphological remission before conditioning should not undergo allogeneic HSCT except in extraordinary situations.
- MAC is recommended for children with ALL. Whether TBI is necessary to control leukemia is subject of a prospective randomized EBMT/IBFM trial.

References


Smith AR, Baker KS, Defor TE, et al. Hematopoietic cell transplantation for children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia in second complete remission:


73.1 Introduction

Myelodysplastic syndromes (MDS) are a heterogeneous group of clonal stem cell disorders characterized by hypercellular bone marrow, peripheral cytopenias, and dysplastic features in blood and bone marrow. The clinical progression of these diseases varies from an indolent course, over a number of years, to a more rapid transition into secondary AML. MDS is mainly diagnosed in elderly patients, with an annual incidence of 4.9/100,000, but this increases to between 20 and 50 cases per 100,000 persons annually after the age of 60. The current WHO classification (2016) distinguishes various MDS subtypes, which are detailed in Table 73.1 (Arber et al. 2016).

Due to the variable course the disease may take, a number of different risk-scoring systems have been developed. The most frequently used of these is the International Prognostic Scoring System (IPSS), introduced by Greenberg et al. (1997) (Table 73.2) and revised in 2012 (Greenberg et al. 2012) (Table 73.3). As a result, intensive treatment strategies are predominantly applied in patients with intermediate and higher-risk MDS. The importance of transfusion dependency is included in a WHO classification-based prognostic scoring system (WPSS) (Della Porta et al. 2015). The role of somatic mutations has been explored recently, highlighting the prognostic role of mutations. SF3B1 mutations are commonly associated with refractory anemia with ringed sideroblasts and expected survival of more than 10 years. Poor prognostic mutations, such as TP53 mutations, occur mainly in patients with higher-risk MDS and confer a higher risk of transition to acute leukemia (Makishima et al. 2017). In the setting of allo-HSCT, both somatic mutations and cytogenetic characteristics conserve their prognostic impacts after transplantation, and this aspect will be discussed further hereafter.

Allo-HSCT is increasingly performed, with 940 MDS patients transplanted in 2004 and 2646 patients transplanted in 2015 (EBMT registry). This increase is due to rising numbers of transplants in older patients (>60 years), from 22% of all transplants in 2004 to 44% in 2015, and more MURD, from 37% of all transplants in 2004 to 58% in 2015. The increasing use of unmanipulated haplo-HSCT using intensified IS therapy may also lead to a greater proportion of related donors in future.
Table 73.1 World Health Organization classification (2016 revision) of MDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Dysplastic lineage</th>
<th>Cytopenia</th>
<th>RS as % BME</th>
<th>BM and PB blasts, Auer rods (AR)</th>
<th>Cytogenetics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MDS with single-lineage dysplasia (MDS-SLD)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 or 2</td>
<td>&lt;15%/&lt;5%</td>
<td>BM &lt; 5%, PB &lt; 1%, no AR</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDS with multilineage dysplasia (MDS-MLD)</td>
<td>2 or 3</td>
<td>1–3</td>
<td>&lt;15%/&lt;5%</td>
<td>BM &lt; 5%, PB &lt; 1%, no AR</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDS with ring sideroblasts (MDS-RS)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— MDS-RS SLD</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2–3</td>
<td>1 or 2</td>
<td>≥15%/≥5%</td>
<td>BM &lt; 5%, PB &lt; 1%, no AR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— MDS-RS-MLD</td>
<td>2 or 3</td>
<td>1–3</td>
<td>1–3</td>
<td>≥15%/≥5%</td>
<td>BM &lt; 5%, PB &lt; 1%, no AR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDS with isolated del(5q)</td>
<td>1–3</td>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>None or any</td>
<td>BM &lt; 5%, PB &lt; 1%, Del(5q)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDS with excess blasts (MDS-EB)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— MDS-EB1</td>
<td>0–3</td>
<td>1–3</td>
<td>None or any</td>
<td>BM 5–9% or PB 2–4%, no AR</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— MDS-EB2</td>
<td>0–3</td>
<td>1–3</td>
<td>None or any</td>
<td>BM 10–19% or PB 5–19%, or AR</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDS, unclassifiable (MDS-U)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— With 1% blood blasts</td>
<td>1–3</td>
<td>1–3</td>
<td>None or any</td>
<td>BM &lt; 5%, PB = 1%, no AR</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— With SLD and pancytopenia</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>None or any</td>
<td>BM &lt; 5%, PB &lt; 1%, no AR</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— Based on defining cytogenetic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1–3</td>
<td>&lt;15%</td>
<td>BM &lt; 5%, PB &lt; 1%, no AR</td>
<td>Defining abnormality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refractory cytopenia in childhood</td>
<td>1–3</td>
<td>1–3</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>BM &lt; 5%, PB &lt; 2%</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BM bone marrow, PB peripheral (blood) blast, RS as %BME, ring sideroblasts as a % of marrow erythroid elements

aCytopenia defined as hemoglobin <10 g/dL, platelet count <100 g/L, absolute neutrophil count <1.8 g/L.
bCytogenetics by conventional karyotype analysis.
If SF3B1 is present
aAlone or with one additional abnormality except −7 or del(7q)

Table 73.2 “Classic IPSS”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Points</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0.5</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1.5</th>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Marrow blast</td>
<td>&lt;5</td>
<td>$5–10$</td>
<td>$&gt;10$</td>
<td>11–20</td>
<td>21–30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytogenetic</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>Poor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytopenia</td>
<td>0–1</td>
<td>2/3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Intermediate-1</td>
<td>Intermediate-2</td>
<td>High</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of points</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.5–1</td>
<td>1.5 or more</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Median OS (years)</td>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Median time to 25% AML transformation in years</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OS overall survival

*Good*, normal, -Y, del(5q), del(20q); *poor*, complex karyotype (three or more abnormalities) or chromosome 7 anomalies; *intermediate*, other abnormalities
bCytopenia was defined as follows: hemoglobin <10 g/dL, platelet <100 g/L, absolute neutrophil count <1 g/L

73.2 Indication of HSCT in MDS and Timing to Transplant

HSCT is an established procedure for MDS leading to long-term survival. The indications for HSCT may change following the introduction of new treatment strategies, and the HSCT approach itself has consistently evolved over time. TRM should always be balanced against the benefits associated with HSCT. Comparisons of several transplant and non-transplant cohorts show a gain in life expectancy in patients, with higher risks if they receive an allo-HSCT at MDS diagnosis, while in lower-risk MDS patients, a survival
advantage can be seen if HSCT is deferred (Cutler et al. 2004; Koreth et al. 2013; Della Porta et al. 2017; Robin et al. 2015). An international expert panel has also confirmed the indication of HSCT in higher-risk patients as well as lower-risk patients with specific poor prognostic features, including genetic alterations, failure to respond to usual treatment, life-threatening cytopenias, and high-intensity transfusions (de Witte et al. 2017). Figures 73.1 and 73.2 summarize transplant indications in MDS patients.

### 73.3 Post-HSCT Outcomes

Several recent registry studies including cytogenetic classification have reported outcomes for transplanted MDS patients (Table 73.4). Overall survival (OS) ranged from 35 to 50%, NRM from 30 to 40%, and relapse rates from 15 to 30%. Lower-risk MDS patients had better prognoses, and the EBMT cohort of low and intermediate-1 MDS patients showed that OS could reach 57%, with relapse incidence at 16% after 7 years (Robin et al. 2017a). Patients with poor and very poor risk cytogenetic characteristics, including monosomal karyotypes, were associated with poor outcomes. FAB classification, age, platelet count, stage at time of transplantation, and hematopoietic cell transplant-comorbidity index (HCT-CI) were prognostic clinical risk factors. Somatic mutations, i.e., TP53, TET2, ASXL1, RUNX1, and RAS pathways mutations, have been reported to be prognostic independent factors in several reports (Bejar et al. 2014; Della Porta et al. 2016; Lindsley et al. 2017; Yoshizato et al. 2017).

Due to the increase in patient age, transplantation results in these patients should be highlighted, as outcomes seem to be highly impacted by performance status and HCT-CI (McClune et al. 2010; Lim et al. 2010). The EBMT recently published two studies focusing on transplants in elderly patients. The first study included 1333 MDS patients above the age of 55, transplanted between 1998 and 2006 (Lim et al. 2010). Four-year OS was 31%, with NRM of 36%. The second study reported 313 MDS patients above the age of 70, transplanted between 2000 and 2013 (Heidenreich et al. 2017). The study findings showed 3-year OS of 34% and NRM of 42% confirming that transplant was feasible in this category of patients.

### 73.4 Alternative Donors and Donor Choice

In recent EBMT studies, HSCT from an URD did not appear to be a mortality risk factor compared with HSCT using MSD (Onida et al. 2014; Köenecke et al. 2015). Saber et al., on behalf of
the CIBMTR, reported the results of HSCT in 701 MDS patients according to donor type: MRD, MUD (8 out of 8 high-resolution HLA compatibilities), and MMUD (Saber et al. 2012). Multiple-variable analysis showed that NRM was significantly lower with the use of MRDs compared with other donors, but that treatment failure (death or relapse) was similar to MUD, while it was significantly higher in patients transplanted from a MMUD (Saber et al. 2012).

The EBMT group reported outcomes for 631 MDS patients transplanted with a MUD \((n = 379)\), a MMUD \((n = 107)\), or a MMUCB \((n = 129)\) (Robin et al. 2014). Patients transplanted with a MUD had better outcomes for OS, relapse-free survival, and NRM, while patients transplanted from MMUDs had similar outcomes, with a trend to a better DFS for MMUD compared with UCB. Recommendations are to choose an HLA-matched related or unrelated

---

**Fig. 73.1** Therapeutic flow chart for adult MDS patients with (very) low-risk or intermediate-risk IPSS-R scores @ indicates nonfit (patients with multiple comorbidities and/or poor performance) or fit (patients with no comorbidities and good performance status). * indicates nontransplant strategies according to most recent versions published by international MDS expert groups, including ELN and NCCN. & indicates failure of nontransplant strategies. ** indicates poor-risk features (defined as poor-risk cytogenetic characteristics, persistent blast increase [>50% or with >15% BM blasts], life-threatening cytopenias, high transfusion intensity >2 units per months for 6 months; molecular testing should be seriously considered, in case of absence of poor-risk cytogenetic characteristics or persistent blast increase). # indicates transplant strategies (all forms of HSCT, for details of the donor selection, type of conditioning, and post transplant strategies, see text; no upper age limit if patients are fit, without serious comorbidity, and with good Karnofsky status)
HSCT from haplo-identical related donors has been revisited due to new GVHD prophylaxis strategies, including the use of PT-CY. Little data has been published on MDS patients, although results in patients with other diseases are very promising (Bashey et al. 2013; Ciurea et al. 2015). A recent EBMT study reported 234 patients transplanted from haplo-

![Therapeutic flow chart for adult MDS patients with poor IPSS-R scores.](image)

**Fig. 73.2** Therapeutic flow chart for adult MDS patients with poor IPSS-R scores. @ indicates nonfit (patients with multiple comorbidities and/or poor performance) or fit (patients with no comorbidities and good performance status). * indicates nontransplant strategies according to most recent versions published by international MDS expert groups, including ELN and NCCN. & indicates failure of nontransplant strategies. ** indicates poor-risk features (defined as poor-risk cytogenetic characteristics, persistent blast increase [>50% or with >15% BM blasts], life-threatening cytopenias, high transfusion intensity >2 units per months for 6 months; molecular testing should be seriously considered, in case of absence of poor-risk cytogenetic characteristics or persistent blast increase). # indicates transplant strategies (all forms of HSCT, for details of the donor selection, type of conditioning, and post transplant strategies, see text; no upper age limit if patients are fit, without serious comorbidity, and with good Karnofsky status).

donor as both kinds of donor may lead to similar outcomes (Bowen 2017).

HSCT from haplo-identical related donors has been revisited due to new GVHD prophylaxis strategies, including the use of PT-CY. Little data has been published on MDS patients, although results in patients with other diseases are very promising (Bashey et al. 2013; Ciurea et al. 2015). A recent EBMT study reported 234 patients transplanted from haplo-
donors between 2007 and 2014. Although NRM was relatively high, results were encouraging, with better results using PT-CY and RIC (Robin et al. 2017b). A recent issue is the impact of donor age on post transplant outcomes, suggesting that outcomes may be better with younger donors (Kollman et al. 2016; Kröger et al. 2013). This is particularly relevant in MDS, where both recipients and related donors are typically old.
No randomized studies have compared pre-graft cytoreduction versus upfront transplants in MDS patients. Because hypomethylating agents (HMA) have been reported to improve survival in MDS patients, they are routinely used before considering a transplant procedure, leading to a delay in transplantation. It is very difficult from registry data to gain real insight into the risks or benefits of treatment with HMA. International guidelines generally recommend that patients with more than 10% marrow blast should receive cytoreductive treatment, which can be either intensive chemotherapy or HMA (de Witte et al. 2017b; Malcovati et al. 2013). The EBMT group reported that refractoriness to pre-graft treatment is associated with poor outcomes, confirming a French retrospective study (Potter et al. 2016; Damaj et al. 2012).

#### 73.6 Preparative Regimen

The use of RIC regimens for HSCT has raised considerable interest. Multiple centers have developed novel RIC regimens that have reduced NRM and morbidity and subsequently expanded the curative potential of HSCT to older individuals who have historically not been considered to be HSCT candidates.

The EBMT group has compared outcomes for MDS patients treated by RIC or MAC (Martino et al. 2006; Martino et al. 2017). Studies show that relapse rates increased after RIC, while NRM was higher after MAC, in line with the findings of another study (Scott et al. 2006). Subsequent research by the EBMT group reported outcomes for 878 MDS or AML patients transplanted with less than 10% marrow blasts and classified according to the intensity of conditioning regimen considering four groups: non-MAC, RIC, standard regimen and hyperintensive regimen (Martino et al. 2013). OS after 7 years was 29, 53, 56, and 51%, respectively, for each regimen, with a disadvantage for the non-MAC.

An EBMT prospective study comparing the use of RIC (FLU/BU) and MAC (CY/BU) in patients with MDS or secondary AML was published recently (Kröger et al. 2017). Multivariable analysis failed to show any impact of the regimen intensity in NRM, relapse, and RFS, while there was an advantage for RIC in OS, after adjustment for cytogenetics.

#### Table 73.4 Patient outcomes in recent studies, including a large number of patients with cytogenetic data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HSCT centers; HSCT periods</th>
<th>Number of patients</th>
<th>Median age</th>
<th>RI</th>
<th>NRM</th>
<th>OS</th>
<th>RFS</th>
<th>Mortality risk factors in multiple-variable analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FHCRC</strong> 1980–2010</td>
<td>1007</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Blast count, CG, non-MAC, AML transformation, age, platelet count, HLA MM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EBMT</strong> 1981–2006</td>
<td>523</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>CG, disease stage at HSCT, age, FAB, TCD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EBMT</strong> 1981–2012</td>
<td>903</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Age, FAB, CG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


fAccording to cytogenetic risk

fWas assessed only in “untreated RA/RARS” because there were no prognostic factors in this group
performance status, and disease stage. The BMT-CTN performed a prospective study on 272 patients with MDS or AML who were randomized between RIC and MAC. There was no difference in OS between the two groups, despite a higher relapse rate after RIC (Scott et al. 2017).

A novel RIC sequential regimen consisting of FLU 30 mg/m², Ara-C 2 g/m², and amsacrine 100 mg/m² (FLAMSA), followed 3 days later by 4 Gy TBI and CY 80–120 mg/kg showed promising results (Schmid et al. 2005; Schmid et al. 2006). Prospective randomized trials comparing sequential regimens with other regimens are ongoing.

### 73.7 Post-HSCT Treatment

MDS patients with relapse after HSCT are often refractory to treatment, or not fit enough to be treated. A German group recently reported outcomes for AML ($n = 124$) and MDS ($n = 28$) patients treated with AZA and DLI (Schroeder et al. 2015). The main risk factors for treatment response were molecular relapse only or marrow blast <13%. In these cases, OS was more than 60%, although it was below 10% in high-risk patients. An EBMT study of 181 patients treated with AZA for post transplant relapse of MDS confirmed that lower blast counts upon relapse and relapsing more than 6 months after HSCT were both good prognostic factors (Craddock et al. 2016a, b). In this study, the addition of DLI did not modify outcomes. Another EBMT study on cellular therapy after relapse (DLI or second transplant) showed that a second allo-HSCT performed in CR may rescue patients with relapse after initial HSCT, especially if they have no previous history of GVHD, and in cases where they may be transplanted from a new donor (Schmid et al. 2018). The French SFGM-TC group recently reported 147 MDS patients relapsing after transplant (Guieze et al. 2016). Only patients who received “cellular therapy” (DLI or second SCT) were able to achieve long-term survival (32% versus 6% for chemotherapy alone).

Other strategies involve preventive or preemptive treatment after transplantation to avoid morphological relapse. Preemptive strategies based on underlying risk or monitoring of minimal residual disease may be of use in these patients who present a high risk of post transplant relapse (Platzbecker et al. 2012). Although relapse remains the most common cause of transplant failure, particularly in patients with high-risk features, novel strategies such as the preemptive use of AZA or DLI may be effective in improving historically poor outcomes. Preventive post transplant treatment testing demethylating agents early after transplantation have also been reported in small prospective studies (de Lima et al. 2010; Pusic et al. 2015; Craddock et al. 2016a, b). This kind of treatment appears to be especially useful in patients with higher-risk MDS.

### Key Points

- Allo-HSCT is the treatment of choice for all patients with (very) poor-risk MDS, or intermediate patients with high-risk features, who are fit enough to be considered for transplantation.
- Delayed HSCT is associated with reduced chances of prolonged relapse-free survival. Also, patients with less advanced MDS categories may benefit from deferred HSCT after they develop poor-risk features.
- Allo-HSCT outcomes have improved progressively in recent years, mainly due to a gradual reduction in non-relapse mortality. Reduced-intensity conditioning (RIC) regimens have extended the use of allo-HSCT to older patients, including those entering their eighth decade.
- However, a number of questions remain to be resolved by prospective studies, such as the choice of donor, including haplo-identical donors, the role of post transplant treatment, and the timing of transplantation in patients with lower-risk MDS.
References


Schmid C, Schlegeling M, Ledderose G, et al. Sequential regimen of chemotherapy, reduced-intensity conditioning for allogeneic stem-cell transplantation, and


Pediatric MDS Including Refractory Cytopenia and Juvenile Myelomonocytic Leukemia

Charlotte M. Niemeyer

74.1 Introduction

For pediatric patients with MDS and 2–19% blasts in the PB or 5–19% blasts in the BM, the same diagnostic criteria utilized for adults with MDS with excess blasts (MDS-EB) are applied (WHO). Some cases with 20–30% blasts may also have slowly progressive disease, may lack clinical features of acute leukemia, and thus behave more like MDS than AML. These cases of MDS-EB in transformation (MDS-EB-t) together with cases of MDS-EB account for approximately a quarter of all childhood MDS.

In the large cohort of children with MDS-EB/MDS-EB-t of the European Working Group of MDS in Childhood (EWOG-MDS), allo-HSCT with a full MAC consisting of the combination of BU/CY/MEL resulted in an OS at 5 years of 63%, with NRM and relapse contributing equally to treatment failure (Strahm et al. 2011). The update shows that the outcome for patients who received a graft from either a MSD or an UD matched for 9/10 or 10/10 HLA-loci by using high-resolution typing is superimposable (Locatelli and Strahm 2018). Because patients ≥12 years of age had a high risk of NRM, EWOG-MDS recommends an intensified GVHD prophylaxis (CSA + MTX) for older patients transplanted from a MSD (see http://ewog-mds.org). The presence of a structurally complex karyotype was found to be strongly associated with poor prognosis (Göhring et al. 2010).

74.2 Refractory Cytopenia of Childhood (RCC)

Most children and adolescents with MDS present with RCC, a provisional MDS entity characterized by persistent cytopenia and <5% blasts in the BM and <2% blasts in the PB (Baumann et al. 2017). BM biopsy shows considerable hypocellularity in about 80% of RCC cases. Most of these children with RCC have a normal karyotype and a low risk of progression to MDS-EB, while about 10–15% display an abnormal karyotype with monosomy 7, del(7q), or ≥2 aberrations.

It recently became evident that approximately half of all pediatric patients with primary MDS and monosomy 7 or del(7q) have GATA2 deficiency or SAMD9/SAMD9L syndrome (Wlodarski et al. 2016). Most of these children present as RCC. Since the presence of monosomy 7 is correlated with a high risk of progression to more advanced MDS, patients with monosomy 7 should generally receive HSCT as soon as possible. For RCC with monosomy 7, del(7q), or ≥2 aberrations, MAC is recommended. EWOG-MDS currently advocates a TREO-based regimen which results in prompt initial engraft-
ment with a low incidence of secondary graft failure and an OS of approx. 90% (see http://ewog-mds.org). Historical data with a BU/CY have provided an OS of approx. 75%, NRM being the major cause of treatment failure (Starý and Locatelli 2005).

In the absence of monosomy 7, RCC patients with mild cytopenia (no transfusion dependency for red cells or platelets and an absolute neutrophil count of ≥1 × 10⁹/L) may have a stable course of disease and therefore qualify for a watch-and-wait strategy. For patients with more pronounced cytopenia, treatment is stratified according to cellularity.

In normo- or hypercellular RCC, a MAC regimen like that described for monosomy 7 may be utilized irrespective of karyotype. In patients with hypocellular BM, Fanconi anemia and dyskeratosis congenita should be excluded by chromosomal breakage and telomere length/molecular studies, respectively.

HSCT with a RIC is the treatment of choice for hypocellular RCC and normal karyotype (Inagaki et al. 2015; Strahm et al. 2007). HSCT with a preparative regimen of TT/FLU (Strahm et al. 2007) resulted in an OS of 94% and EFS of 88% (Strahm et al. 2017). However, approx. 10% of patients experience primary and secondary graft failure requiring a stem cell boost and/or second HSCT. Thus, EWOG-MDS currently recommends a preparative regimen of TREO/FLU aiming at an improved rate of engraftment (see http://ewog-mds.org). With a very low risk of disease recurrence, GVHD should be avoided; thus, BM is the preferred stem cell source combined with an effective GVHD prophylaxis (Locatelli and Strahm 2018). In the absence of a suitable donor, IST with horse ATG and CSA may be a therapeutic option in patients with hypocellular RCC and the absence of poor-risk karyotype (Yoshimi et al. 2014).

74.3 Juvenile Myelomonocytic Leukemia (JMML)

JMML is a unique clonal hematopoietic disorder of early childhood with myeloproliferative and myelodysplastic features (Locatelli and Niemeyer 2015). Splenomegaly, leukocytosis, monocytosis, and myeloid and/or erythroid precursors on PB smear are noted in close to all cases. Age ≥ 2 years, platelet count <40 × 10⁹/L, and a high hemoglobin F are poor prognostic factors.

JMML is characterized by hyperactivation of the RAS signal transduction pathway. About 90% of patients harbor molecular alteration in 1 of 5 genes (PTPN11, NRAS, KRAS, NF1, CBL) which define genetically and clinically distinct JMML subtypes. PTPN11-, NRAS-, and KRAS-mutated JMMLs are characterized by heterozygous somatic gain-of-function mutations in non-syndromic children, while JMML in neurofibromatosis type 1 (NF1) and JMML in children with CBL syndrome are characterized by germline RAS disease (RASopathy) and acquired biallelic inactivation of the respective tumor suppressor gene in hematopoietic cells.

JMML with somatic PTPN11 mutations is a rapidly fatal disorder unless the patient undergoes HSCT. HSCT in JMML patients with PTPN11 mutations is followed by a significantly higher relapse rate when compared to patients of the other JMML genetic subtypes. Like PTPN11-mutated disease, JMML in patients with NF1 is fatal in the absence of HSCT.

Children with somatic heterozygous KRAS mutations (14%) often have a clinically particular aggressive form of disease. Close to all of these children require prompt HSCT. NRAS-associated JMML (16%) displays a great clinical diversity. While a considerable percentage of patients transplanted for JMML with NRAS mutations relapse after HSCT, others survive in the absence of HSCT with persistence of NRAS mutation but slowly regressing disease. Clinically these patients are well and show a normal or only slightly elevated HbF. Molecular studies suggest that children with NRAS mutation and spontaneous regression have a low methylation profile and no subclonal mutations.

The vast majority of children with CBL-mutated JMML myeloproliferation is self-limiting with splenomegaly decreasing over years without HSCT. In the absence of one of the five canonical RAS pathway alterations, rare mutations in other RAS genes and non-JMML
myeloproliferative disorders need to be excluded. Most of these cases require HSCT.

In JMML, allo-HSCT, either from a histocompatible sibling or from an HLA-matched/1-antigen-disparate URD, results in a DFS of 52% (Locatelli et al. 2005). Disease recurrence is the most important cause of failure, occurring with a cumulative incidence of 35%. UCBT is a suitable option for children lacking an HLA-compatible relative (Locatelli et al. 2013). Standard preparative regimen consists of BU/CY/MEL (Locatelli et al. 2005; Dvorak et al. 2018). While intensive chemotherapy prior to transplantation is generally not followed by durable responses, azacitidine might be an attractive option to bridge to HSCT (Cseh et al. 2015).

Key Points
- Most children and adolescents with MDS present with refractory cytopenia of childhood (RCC). In RCC, bone marrow cells often show a normal karyotype, and there is a low risk of progression to MDS-EB. In the presence of mild cytopenia and a hypocellular marrow, a watch-and-wait strategy may be appropriate; if HSCT is required, a preparative regimen with TREO/FLU results in prompt engraftment.
- In RCC with monosomy 7, del(7q), or ≥2 aberrations and in normo- or hypercellular RCC with any karyotype, MAC HSCT is recommended.
- JMML is characterized by hyperactivation of the RAS signal transduction pathway. About 90% of patients harbor molecular alteration in 1 of 5 genes (PTPN11, NRAS, KRAS, NF1, CBL) which define genetically and clinically distinct JMML subtypes.
- JMML with somatic PTPN11 mutations is a rapidly fatal disorder in the absence of HSCT. Patients with KRAS mutations often have a clinically particular aggressive disease. NRAS-associated JMML displays a great clinical diversity, some patients have a slowly regressing disease in the absence of HSCT, while others relapse post HSCT. Most CBL-mutated JMML patients have a self-limiting myeloproliferation.
- The standard preparative regimen for HSCT in JMML consists of BU/CY/MEL.

References


Stary J, Locatelli F. Niemeyer CM; European Working Group on Myelodysplastic Syndrome (EWOG-


75.1 Definition, Epidemiology, Diagnosis, and Classification

The myelodysplastic syndrome-myeloproliferative neoplasms (MDS/MPNs) are a heterogeneous group of hematologic malignancies characterized by dysplastic and myeloproliferative clinical, laboratory, and morphological overlapping features, both in marrow and in blood. The MDS/MPN category, recently updated by the last revision to the WHO classification of myeloid neoplasms and acute leukemia (Arber et al. 2016), includes chronic myelomonocytic leukemia (CMML), atypical chronic myelogenous leukemia (aCML), juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia (JMML), MDS/MPN with ringed sideroblasts and thrombocytosis (MDS/MPN-RS-T), as well as unclassifiable forms of mixed myelodysplastic/myeloproliferative disorders (MDS/MPN-U) (Table 75.1).

While JMML affects only children from birth up to 14 years of age (median age at diagnosis 2 years), with an estimated incidence of approximately 1.2 cases per million annually (Chang et al. 2014), adulthood MDS/MPN are typically diagnosed in elderly age with CMML being definitely the most frequent subtype (incidence of around 1 case/100,000 inhabitants per year, median age 70 years) (Solary 2014). Being very uncommon, data concerning the incidence of aCML, MDS/MPN-RS-T, and MDS/MPN-U are currently unknown.

75.2 Risk Factors and Prognostic Index

The clinical course of MDS/MPN varies from an indolent course over several years for a minor fraction of patients with CMML and MDS/MPN-RS-T to a more rapid progression with dismal prognosis and frequent transformation into secondary acute myeloid leukemia in the preponderance of patients with CMML and in the vast majority of patients with aCML and MDS/MPN-U, for whom allo-HSCT still represents the only curative option (Onida and Beran 2008; Onida 2017). Alike, long-term survival in the greater part of children with JMML may only be achieved by means of allo-HSCT.

CMML is highly heterogeneous, with clinical and hematological characteristics varying from mainly myelodysplastic to predominantly myeloproliferative. Based on marrow and peripheral blood blast percentage, the last WHO classification recognized three disease subtypes...
Over the latest years, a number of disease-specific prognostic systems have been developed in CMML in order to allow the best treatment strategy allocation (Onida 2017a). The most recent ones are listed in Table 75.2.

Atypical CML, also named as BCR-ABL-negative CML, is a rare hematologic malignancy with an overall dismal prognosis (median 24 months). Age, hemoglobin level, and leukocyte count have been identified as variables with independent prognostic significance, allowing the stratification of two groups with significantly different life expectations. Likewise, for MDS/MPN-RS-T, three risk categories of patients were recently differentiated by a Mayo Clinic prognostic model including molecular investigations (Table 75.2).

With regard to the JMML, acquisitions from modern genetic studies assign uncommon treatment indication in patients with germ line PTPN11 and CBL mutations, who frequently experience spontaneous disease regression. In contrast, patients with neurofibromatosis type 1, somatic KRAS, and most of those with NRAS mutations require early allo-HSCT as a result of rapidly progressive disease (Hasle 2016).

MDS/MPN-U is the most heterogeneous and the least well-characterized entity, with no currently recognized specific molecular findings. Some description of the biological and clinical characteristics have been recently reported in two series (DiNardo et al. 2014; Wang et al. 2014).

### Table 75.1 Classification and diagnostic criteria of MDS/MPNs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Blood findings</th>
<th>Bone marrow findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chronic myelomonocytic leukemia (CMML)</td>
<td>Monocytes ( \geq 1 \times 10^9/L ), (( \geq 10% ) of the WBC)</td>
<td>Dysplasia in one or more myeloid lineages&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&lt; 20% ) blasts (1)</td>
<td>No evidence of BCR/ABL1, PDGFRA, PDGFRB, or FGFR1 rearrangement or PCM1-JAK2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atypical chronic myelogenous leukemia (aCML)</td>
<td>Leukocytosis due to increased numbers of neutrophils with IMC, ( \geq 10% ) of WBC</td>
<td>Dysgranulopoiesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Basophils (&lt; 2% ), Monocytes (&lt; 10% )</td>
<td>Hypercellularity, with granulocytic proliferation and granulocytic dysplasia, ( \pm ) dysplasia in the erythroid and megakaryocytic lineages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monocytes (&lt; 20% ) blasts</td>
<td>No evidence of BCR/ABL1, PDGFRA, PDGFRB, or FGFR1 rearrangement or PCM1-JAK2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia (JMML)&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Monocytes ( \geq 1 \times 10^9/L ), (( \geq 10% ) of the WBC count); (&lt; 20% ) blasts</td>
<td>(&lt; 20% ) blasts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The absence of BCR/ABL1 rearrangement&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>The absence of BCR/ABL1 rearrangement&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDS/MPN with ringed sideroblasts and thrombocytosis (MDS/MPN-RS-T)</td>
<td>Anemia, ( \geq 15% ) ring sideroblasts, platelet count ( \geq 450 \times 10^9/L )</td>
<td>Erythroid lineage dysplasia with or without multilineage dysplasia, (&lt; 5% ) blasts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(&lt; 1% ) blasts</td>
<td>The presence of a SF3B1 mutation or, in its absence, no history of recent cytotoxic or growth factor therapy that could explain the MD/MP features</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The presence of a SF3B1 mutation or, in its absence, no history of recent cytotoxic or growth factor therapy that could explain the MD/MP features</td>
<td>No rearrangement of BCR/ABL1, PDGFRA, PDGFRB, FGFR1, or PCM1-JAK2. No (3;3) ((q21;q26), inv(3)(q21q26)) or (del(5q))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDS/MPN unclassifiable (MDS/MPN-U)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(&lt; 20% ) blasts</td>
<td>(&lt; 20% ) blasts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Including monoblasts and promonocytes

<sup>b</sup>If myelodysplasia is absent or minimal but other requirements are met, an acquired clonal cytogenetic or molecular genetic abnormality should be identified, or a nonreactive monocytosis persisting at least 3 months should be observed

<sup>c</sup>Splenomegaly is a mandatory feature

<sup>d</sup>Plus genetic abnormality (at least one) or additional criteria (Arber et al. 2016—Table 14)

<sup>e</sup>Myeloid neoplasms with mixed proliferative and dysplastic features that do not meet the criteria for CMML, aCML, JMML, or MDS/MPN-RS-T are classified as MDS/MPN-U
with median survival of 12.4 and 21.8 months, respectively, and possible association of thrombocytosis with a more favorable outcome.

### 75.3 Pretransplantation Treatment

For this rare group of diseases, there are only few prospective studies on therapy, most being either retrospective analyses or case reports, making it difficult to give recommendations. In general, because apart from allo-HSCT no therapy has been shown to modify the disease course, pre-transplantation treatments point toward symptom control rather than the achievement of disease remission (Odenike et al. 2015).

#### 75.3.1 CMML

In general, treatment strategies in patients with CMML with symptomatic or progressive disease are based on the dysplastic versus proliferative features and the percentage of marrow blasts (Onida et al. 2013). In the presence of rising leukocytosis and/or organ infiltration (mostly splenomegaly) with low marrow blast percentage, hydroxyurea (HU) remains the drug of choice. Patients showing high blast percentages may be

### Table 75.2 Prognostic systems in MDS/MPN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MDS/MPN</th>
<th>Prognostic model</th>
<th>Variables included [score]</th>
<th>Risk groups</th>
<th>Median OS (months)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aCML</td>
<td>MDACC (Onida et al. 2002)</td>
<td>Age &gt; 65 years [1] Hb ≤10 g/dL [1] WBC &gt;50 x 10^9/L [1]</td>
<td>Low (score = 0–1) High (score ≥ 2–3)</td>
<td>38 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aCMML-specific cytogenetic risk classification, low, normal, and isolated –Y; intermediate, other abnormalities; and high, trisomy 8, complex karyotype (≥3 abnormalities), and abnormalities of chromosome 7
bGenetic risk group, CMML-specific cytogenetic risk classification + ASXL1/NRAS/SETBP1 mutation (score = 1)/RUNX1 mutation (score = 2)
bridged to transplant through AML-like induction chemotherapy or by means of hypomethylating agents (HMAs), with a reported 20–50% overall response rate. In a recent retrospective study including a relatively small number of patients, HMAs have been suggested to increase progression-free survival (PFS) through the reduction of post-transplantation relapse rate (Kongtim et al. 2016). Treatment strategies based on the combination of HMAs with other agents (e.g., lenalidomide) and the advent of new targeted therapies such as JAK2 inhibitors or poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) inhibitors may further increase the response rate leading to an overall improvement of post-transplantation outcomes.

### 75.3.2 aCML

Due to its absolute rarity in patients having no age or comorbidity barrier to allo-HSCT, no consensus subsists on to whether any pretransplant treatment may have an impact on post-transplantation outcome and what kind of therapy should be best used. Control of leukocytosis is generally achieved with cytoreductive agents such as HU or IFN-α immunomodulation. Chemotherapy induction treatment is preferred when facing high blast count in advanced disease phases or in patients showing AML transformation.

Some efficacy of decitabine and of ruxolitinib single agent has also been reported, whereas a phase II trial of AZA and ruxolitinib in combination in a series of 35 MDS/MPN patients showed promising activity, with an overall response rate of 57% according to the 2015 international consortium response criteria for MDS/MPN (Savona et al. 2015), even though median survival of the few aCML included patients (n = 4) was only 8 months (Assi et al. 2018). According to the most recent discovery, SETBP1 and ETNK1 mutations are present in 15–32% and up to 10% of aCML patients, respectively, whereas JAK2 mutation is rare (0–7%), and CSF3R mutations are only occasionally observed. Even though in the near future these findings may influence therapeutic approaches by means of evolving targeted therapies, currently allo-HSCT remains the only treatment strategy with established curative potential in eligible patients (Dao et al. 2017).

### 75.3.3 JMML

For JMML patients the possible therapeutic interventions prior to transplantation are rather scarce. Different chemotherapeutic agents have been used prior to transplant, but there is no consensus on to whether there should be any pretransplant therapy and what type should be given. HMAs may have potential activity (Cseh et al. 2015), but data are too few to make any recommendation. Other potentially active agents include JAK, MEK, and SRC inhibitors, but clinical trial with these drugs is still on their way.

### 75.3.4 MDS/MPN-RS-T

MDS/MPN-RS-T generally represents the disease entity associated with the best prognosis among overlap syndromes, with a median survival of about 6 years (Broseus et al. 2012). Guidelines for disease management are not formally recognized, and treatment strategies are generally extrapolated from low-risk MDS and MPN, with adjusted individual management depending on presenting problems. While lenalidomide has been occasionally reported to reduce transfusion need, antiplatelet and cytoreductive treatments are often required due to the high risk of thrombosis. Based on the different gene mutations possibly involved (SF3B1, JAK2, TET2, DNMT3A), attentiveness in targeted therapies is developing.

### 75.3.5 MDS/MPN-U

MDS/MPN-U is a very rare and heterogeneous disease entity, with no consensus on which therapy (if any) should be given for patients candidate to allo-HSCT. Augmented leukocyte proliferation
is generally managed by means of cytoreductive agents such as HU or through immunomodulation with IFNα, while HMAAs as well as lenalidomide may represent an option in case of prevailing cytopenias. JAK inhibitors are also potential therapeutic options, either alone or in combination with HMAAs (Assi et al. 2018). When patients are progressing to AML transformation, induction chemotherapy should be used as a bridge to allo-HSCT.

### 75.4 Autologous HSCT

Because the harvesting of polyclonal hematopoietic progenitor cells is not feasible through the currently available treatment options, autologous HSCT is currently not a recommended strategy in MDS/MPN.

### 75.5 Allogeneic HSCT

Currently still representing the only curative strategy, the role of allo-HSCT in adult MDS/MPN patients remains controversial mainly due to the lack of prospective studies, being therefore generally considered a possible treatment option for eligible patients with high-risk diseases.

In CMML benefits and risks of allo-HSCT have been analyzed retrospectively in various series, with different characteristics at transplant and much variable outcomes described (Table 75.3). Recent recommendations from an international expert panel agreed to limit indication for allo-HSCT in CMML patients classified in the intermediate-2 and high-risk CPSS categories (de Witte et al. 2017), representing the preferred treatment modality for younger patients with acceptable comorbidity index (Patnaik et al. 2015).

#### Table 75.3 Summary of selected studies on allo-HSCT in CMML

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author (year)</th>
<th>Pt N.</th>
<th>Median age (range)</th>
<th>Disease type/ stage</th>
<th>Donor type</th>
<th>Conditioning (MAC vs RIC)</th>
<th>TRM/relapse rate</th>
<th>Survival outcome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kröger et al. (2002)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>44 (19–61)</td>
<td>CMML-1 = 28, CMML-2 = 17, Missing = 5</td>
<td>MRD = 43, MUD = 7</td>
<td>MAC = 50, RIC = 0</td>
<td>TRM = 52%, RR = 28%</td>
<td>OS (5y) = 21%, DFS (5y) = 18%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eissa et al. (2011)</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>51 (1–69)</td>
<td>CMML-1 = 57, CMML-2 = 26</td>
<td>MRD = 38, MUD = 47</td>
<td>MAC = 58, RIC = 27</td>
<td>TRM (10y) = 35%, RR (10y) = 27%</td>
<td>OS (10y) = 40%, DFS (10y) = 40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Park et al. (2013)</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>53 (27–66)</td>
<td>CMML-1 = 24, CMML-2 = 26, Missing = 23</td>
<td>MRD = 41, MUD = 32</td>
<td>MAC = 30, RIC = 43</td>
<td>TRM = 35%, RR = 35%</td>
<td>OS (3y) = 32%, DFS (3y) = 29%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symeonidis et al. (2015)</td>
<td>513</td>
<td>53 (18–75)</td>
<td>CMML-1 = 87, CMML-2 = 32, s-AML = 95, Missing = 299</td>
<td>MRD = 285, MUD = 228</td>
<td>MAC = 249, RIC = 226</td>
<td>TRM (4y) = 41%, RR (4y) = 32%</td>
<td>OS (4y) = 33%, DFS (4y) = 27%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kongtim et al. (2016)</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>57 (18–78)</td>
<td>CMML-1/2 = 47, s-AML = 36</td>
<td>MRD = 30, MUD = 47, MMR = 6</td>
<td>MAC = 64, RIC = 19</td>
<td>TRM (3y) = 31%, RR (3y) 33%</td>
<td>OS (3y) = 35%, DFS (3y) = 34%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liu et al. (2017)</td>
<td>209</td>
<td>57 (23–74)</td>
<td>CMML-1 = 140, CMML-2 = 52, Missing = 17</td>
<td>MRD = 73, MUD = 127, MMUD = 9</td>
<td>MAC = 105, RIC = 99, Missing = 5</td>
<td>TRM (5y) = 28%, RR (5y) = 52%</td>
<td>OS (5y) = 30%, DFS (5y) = 20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Itonaga et al. (2018)</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>54 (16–75)</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>MRD = 51, MUD (BM) = 66, Cord = 30, MMR = 12</td>
<td>MAC = 92, RIC = 67</td>
<td>TRM = 28%, RR = 39%</td>
<td>OS (3y) = 33%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As \textit{aCML} is extremely rare in people younger than 65 years, outcome after allo-HSCT has been described only in small single-institution series. A 5-years OS and RFS of 51\% and 36\%, respectively, were recently reported by the EBMT-CMWP in a retrospective analysis of 42 patients transplanted between 1997 and 2006. With a RR of 40\%, a better OS was recognized in young patients with low EBMT risk score (Onida et al. 2017).

With regard to \textit{JMML}, 5-years OS and EFS out of 100 patients transplanted 1993 through 2002 within the EWOG-MDS/EBMT trial were 64\% and 52\%, respectively, with a 5-years TRM of 13\% (Locatelli et al. 2005). Overall, younger age, male sex, low HbF, and low BM blast percentage were associated to better survival. Early disease recurrence was the major cause of treatment failure, irrespective of donor type (sibling vs unrelated vs CB). Although both acute and chronic GvHD are associated with a lower relapse risk, DLI in JMML relapse is mostly unsuccessful. In contrast, a second HSCT with the same or an alternative donor may cure about 30\% of the patients (Locatelli and Niemeyer 2015).

In \textit{MDS/MPN-RS-T} allo-HSCT is generally not indicated, being reserved for patients developing refractory cytopenias or accelerated/blastic transformation (Sharma et al. 2017), whereas eligible patients with \textit{MDS/MPN-U} should always be considerate as potential candidate for allo-HSCT due to the general dismal prognosis.

### 75.6 Source of HSC

No impact of HSC source on the transplant outcome has been observed in the largest CMML series reported by the EBMT-CMWP (Symeonidis et al. 2015). This was in contrast to the CIBTMR study, in which the survival was statistically better with PBMC than with BM, with no clear explanation outside the small proportion of BM transplants (16\%) (Liu et al. 2017). The source of stem cell is therefore left open, but PBSC may potentially be preferred to decrease the risk of graft failure and the relapse risk, particularly with the use of RIC.

In the pediatric population, the majority of transplantation are done with BM, mainly due to the potential of decreasing the incidence of GvHD. In the largest series of JMML patients reported, BM was the stem cell source in 79\% with no significant difference on the outcome in comparison to PBSC (Locatelli et al. 2005).

For \textit{aCML}, \textit{MDS/MPN-RS-T}, and \textit{MDS/MN-U}, data are too scarce to make clear recommendations.

### 75.7 Conditioning and GvHD Prophylaxis

In \textit{MDS/MPN} patients, the choice of conditioning regimen depends on many different conditions, the major ones being comorbidities, patient age, disease phase at transplant, type of donor, and HSC source. In the two largest retrospective series of CMML patients (Symeonidis et al. 2015; Liu et al. 2017), MAC and RIC were almost equal in proportion, with no outcome difference. Likewise, in the largest reported series of \textit{aCML} patients, conditioning intensity had no impact on the outcome (MAC were used in 76\%). Noteworthy, an improved outcome following a combined fractionated 6–8 Gray TBI/FLU conditioning regimen was recently reported in advanced CMML (Radujkovic et al. 2017).

In general, for young patients (<60 years), with a HSCT-CI (Sorror et al. 2005) less than 2, MAC regimens such as BU-CY, TT/BU/FLU (TBF), or the reduced-toxicity FLU/BUx4 (FB4) may be advisable, particularly in the proliferative variant of CMML and in other \textit{MDS/MPN} with predominant proliferative features, whereas a RIC regimen such as BU/FLU or reduced TBF may be preferred for patients with older age or comorbidities and for patients undergoing transplant with disease remission following pre-transplant treatment.

Facing an aggressive disease in a very young population, MAC regimens are generally preferred in JMML. In the biggest series published, the conditioning included CT, BU and MEL (Locatelli et al. 2005), with a 5-years OS of 64\%. More recently, a conditioning containing BU,
FLU, and MEL showed promising results, with more than 50% of patients in remission after alternative donor transplantation (Yabe et al. 2015). Based on those data, the recommended conditioning for JMML patients should rely on the backbone of BU and MEL with either CY or FLU.

### 75.8 Maintenance/Post transplant Strategies

As disease recurrence represents the major cause of transplant failure in MDS/MPN, there is a growing interest toward post transplant strategies, although few data are currently available in this particular setting.

Indirect evidence of a graft versus CMML by a reduced incidence of relapse in patients with GvHD has been recently reported (Itonaga et al. 2018). Some effect of DLI has also been reported in patients with relapsing CMML and low disease burden.

With more molecular markers potentially available, cell therapy-based interventions may be planned on the base of residual or increasing MRD.

Potential interest both as preemptive and as maintenance strategy derive from the use of post transplant HMAs, alone or in combination with DLI, as reported in AML and MDS.

The use of lenalidomide and checkpoint inhibitors, but also JAK2 or PARP inhibitors, alone or even in combination, together with post transplant targeted therapies represents areas of growing interest under development.

### References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
76.1 Primary and Post ET/PV Myelofibrosis

Nicolaus Kröger

76.1.1 Definition and Risk Scores

Polycythemia vera (PV) and essential thrombocythemia (ET) have a favorable outcome without need for allo-HSCT unless the disease progressed to post-ET/PV myelofibrosis or secondary AML (Lussana et al. 2014).

Primary myelofibrosis (PMF) or post-ET/PV myelofibrosis is one of the Philadelphia-negative myeloproliferative neoplasms (MPN) with worst survival which is approximately 6 years. Allo-HSCT can cure a substantial number of patients but is still not universally applicable due to toxicity which leads to therapy-related morbidity and mortality.

76.1.2 Transplant Results in Myelofibrosis

In the late 1980s and the early 1990s, the feasibility of allo-HSCT for myelofibrosis could be shown in small reports. One multicenter report described in a retrospective study with MAC in relatively young patients (median age 42 years) with a NRM of 27% and a 9% incidence of graft failure. The OS and PFS was 47% and 39% at 5 years (Guardiola et al. 1999).

A single-center study from Seattle included 104 patients most of whom received allo-HSCT after MAC, and NRM at 5 years of 34% and OS at 7 years of 61% were reported (Deeg et al. 2003).

The evidence of graft-versus-myelofibrosis effect was documented by responses to DLI after failure of allo-HSCT (Byrne et al. 2000). RIC for myelofibrosis was investigated in two prospective studies. The EBMT published results of 103 patients who received a BU/FLU-based RIC followed by related or unrelated HSCT. The median age was 55 years, and the NRM at 1 year was 16%. Cumulative incidence of relapse was 22% at 3 years. PFS and OS at 5 years were 51% and 67%, respectively. Advanced age and HLA-mismatched donor were independent predictive factors for reduced survival (Kroger et al. 2009).

A recent update of the study after a median follow-up of 60 months showed an 8-year OS of 65% with stable plateau. Five-year DFS was 40%, and 5-year cumulative incidence of relapse/progression was 28% with 3-year NRM of 21%.

The Myeloproliferative Disorders Research Consortium performed also a prospective phase II trial including 66 patients with primary or post-ET/PV myelofibrosis investigating a reduced

N. Kröger
Department of Stem Cell Transplantation
University Medical Center Hamburg-Eppendorf
Hamburg Germany
e-mail: nkoeger@uke.de

Y. Chalandon
Department of Oncology, Hematology Division
Hôpitaux Universitaires de Genève,
University of Geneva
Geneva Switzerland
e-mail: yves.chalandon@hcuge.ch

© EBMT and the Author(s) 2019
E. Carreras et al. (eds.), The EBMT Handbook, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-02278-5_76
conditioning regimen with MEL/FLU. With a median follow-up of 25 months, OS was 75% in the sibling group and only 32% in the unrelated group due to a higher NRM in the URD group (59% vs. 22%) (Rondelli et al. 2014). Other studies using RIC or MAC confirmed the curative effect of allo-HSCT irrespectively of the intensity of the conditioning (summarized in Kröger et al. 2015a).

76.1.3 Disease-Specific Risk Factors

Patients with PMF or post-ET/PV myelofibrosis have a median survival of approximately 6 years, but survival varies from less than 2 to more than 15 years. Risk scores (see Table 76.1) such as IPSS (Cervantes et al. 2009), dynamic IPSS (DIPSS) (Passamonti et al. 2010), or DIPSS plus (Gangat et al. 2011) are currently used in clinical practice to determine the prognosis of patients with PMF. More recently molecular markers have been introduced into the PMF risk score, (Guglielmelli et al. 2018) and a specific score for post-ET/PV myelofibrosis has been proposed (Passamontiet al. 2017; Kroger et al. 2015a). The EBMT/ELN consensus paper recommended allo-HSCT for patients less than 70 years with an estimated median survival of less than 5 years. This would include patients with IPSS or DIPSS intermediate-2 and high risk and is based on a comparison between transplanted and non-transplanted patients in the pre-rufoxitinib era (Kroger et al. 2015a, b). Patients with intermediate-1 risk can be considered for allo-HSCT if other high-risk features such as ASXL1 mutation, more than 2% peripheral blasts, refractory transfusion-dependent anemia, or adverse cytogenetics according to DIPSS plus are present (Kroger et al. 2015a).

76.1.4 Transplant-Specific Risk Factors

In most of the transplant studies, alternative donors were associated with a worse outcome independent of disease-specific risk factors. CBT resulted in a high risk of graft failure (Robin et al. 2014). Haplo-identical donor with PT-CY as GVHD prophylaxis is currently under investigation, but more recent EBMT data reported a 5-year survival of only 38% (Raj et al. 2016).

The intensity of the conditioning regimen has not been investigated within prospective studies, but retrospective comparisons of MAC and RIC preparative regimens resulted in similar outcome. Because of the reduced toxicity and a generally older age of patients with myelofibrosis, RIC regimens are currently used more frequently and account for about two-thirds of allotransplants for myelofibrosis reported to the EBMT registry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 76.1 Prognosis risk scores for myelofibrosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPSS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIPSS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIPSS plus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DIPSS: https://qxmd.com/calculate/dipss-prognosis-in-myelofibrosis
DIPSS-plus: https://qxmd.com/calculate/dipss-plus-score-for-prognosis-in-myelofibrosis
+a8; −7/7q; −5/5q; i17q; 12p−; rearrangement 11q23
76.1.5 Patient-Specific Risk Factors

Age is a significant patient-specific risk factor for outcome after allo-HSCT (Scott et al. 2012; Kroger et al. 2015a). Besides age, comorbidities and geriatric assessments (see Chap. 11) also impact on outcome after allo-HSCT but have not been studied especially in myelofibrosis patients to date.

76.1.6 Role of Splenectomy and JAK Inhibition

Splenomegaly is a hallmark of myelofibrosis and may have an impact on engraftment and graft function after HSCT. Splenectomy is an option to reduce spleen size prior to transplantation, but high morbidity and even mortality have been reported (Tefferi et al. 2000). Spleen irradiation to reduce spleen size has been reported successfully in single cases prior to conditioning. Since ruxolitinib is approved for myelofibrosis, the drug can be used prior to transplantation to improve constitutional symptoms and to reduce spleen size. The European LeukemiaNet and the European Society for Blood and Marrow Transplantation recommend the use of ruxolitinib at least 2 months prior to HSCT and a careful weaning prior to conditioning to avoid the rebound phenomenon. More recent data suggest better outcome after HSCT if patients received transplant after responding to ruxolitinib rather than postponing the transplant until ruxolitinib failure (Shanavas et al. 2016).

76.1.7 Impact of Molecular Remission

About 90% of myelofibrosis patients harbor one of the driver mutations JAK2V617F, calreticulin (CALR), or MPL which are used to monitor MRD in PB by highly sensitive qPCR or digital PCR to determine molecular remission (Wolschke et al. 2017). In a retrospective single center experience, no achievement of molecular remission on day 180 post-allograft was associated with a significant higher incidence of a subsequent clinical relapse. Due to a graft-versus-myelofibrosis effect, donor lymphocyte infusion has been successfully applied in patients with residual to induce a molecular remission (Fig. 76.1).

Managing stem cell transplantation in myelofibrosis

- Improve constitutional symptoms and spleen size by JAK inhibition. Consider splenectomy or spleen irradiation.
- Reduce iron overload by chelation.
- Select optimal donor: MSD>MUD > MMUD/Haplo/Cord.
- Monitor MRD by molecular marker.
- MRD positivity after discontinuation of CNI consider DLI.
- Select proper conditioning regimen according age, disease status and comorbidities.
- Adapt GvHD prophylaxis according risk of relapse.

Fig. 76.1 MSD matched sibling donor, MUD matched unrelated donor, MMUD mismatched unrelated donor, MRD minimal residual disease, CNI calcineurin inhibitor, GVHD graft-versus-host disease
Furthermore, BM fibrosis is another hallmark of the disease, with rapid regression after allo-HSCT suggesting that fibrogenesis is a highly dynamic process (Thiele et al. 2005). Systematic investigations have shown that about 60% of the patients have a complete or nearly CR of BM fibrosis on day+100, and the percentage of patients increased to 90% at day+180. Notably, those patients with a rapid resolution of BM fibrosis had the best long-term outcome.

CML is the most common of the myeloproliferative disorders. The incidence is 0.4–1.75 per 100,000 population per year, and it increases with age (Högglund et al. 2015). The disease can occur at any age, but the median age at presentation ranges between 45 and 55 years. There is a slight male predominance, with a male to female ratio of 1.3:1.

CML present initially as an indolent or chronic phase (CP), easily controlled with treatment. The natural history continues with a bi- or triphasic stage, becoming more aggressive through accelerated phase (AP) and then blast crisis (BC) or directly from CP to BC.

### 76.2.2 Risk Factors and Prognostic Index

Several multivariate-derived prognostic models and staging have been proposed to help define individual prognosis and allow assigning patients to different strategies of therapy based on risks. The most commonly used are the Sokal and Hasford one (Sokal et al. 1984; Hasford et al. 1998).

The benefit of allo-HSCT is that it can provide cure, but the clear disadvantage is its association with considerable morbidity and mortality, which typically occur early post procedure. Outcome can be improved by better selection of those most likely to benefit. In this context the EBMT developed a risk score for patients with CML, based on five variables: donor type, disease phase, recipient age, donor/recipient gender combination, and interval from diagnosis to transplant, which together results in a score of 0–7 (see risk factors in Chap. 11) (Gratwohl et al. 1998).

Results of transplant are now highly predictable based on these five factors. It is worth remembering that the EBMT or “Gratwohl” score was developed in the mid-1990s and was based on 3142 patients transplanted between 1989 and 1996 (Fig. 76.2a). With overall improvements in supportive care, it would be reasonable to expect that a similar analysis performed on patients transplanted more recently would demonstrate improved results across all-risk scores. However, the analysis is complicated by the change in approach to management of CML. During the period of the original analysis, allo-HSCT was the treatment of choice for all patients. Since 2000

---

**Key Points**

- Primary or post-ET/PV myelofibrosis can only be cured by allo-HSCT which can induce molecular remission and resolution of bone marrow fibrosis.
- Indication for allo-HSCT is recommended for patients younger than 70 years and a median survival expectation of less than 5 years such as risk score intermediate or high risk according to DIPPS or intermediate-1 risk with additional risk factors.
- Splenectomy prior to transplant is not recommended, but patients with large spleen may benefit from JAK inhibitor treatment prior to transplantation.
- Major risk factors for worse outcome are advanced age and not fully HLA-matched donor.
allo-HSCT has been replaced by tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKI) as frontline therapy, and hence the reasons for patients coming to transplant are not always clear from registry data. Although this should be compensated by the use of factors such as age at transplant, disease phase, and time from diagnosis to transplant, some caution should be exercised in the interpretation of more recent results. Having said this, the analysis has been repeated recently for 3497 patients transplanted from 2007 to 2017 and confirmed improved outcome of 5-year OS across all-risk scores by 11–26% (Fig. 76.2b). Although these pretransplant factors are known to affect outcome in all diseases, it is worth focusing specifically on the impact of disease phase in CML, in particular because one of the few problems of TKI therapy is that within the cohort of patients receiving transplants, the proportion transplanted in or after blast crisis has increased over time (Table 76.2).

Allografts for CML were initially restricted to patients in AP, and improvements in survival came only when transplant was performed in the CP. Data of 138 patients with CML transplanted between 1978 and 1982 and reported to the IBMTR showed 3-year survivals of 63%, 36%, and 12% for patients transplanted in the CP, AP, and BC, respectively. The probability of relapse for those transplanted in CP was 7% (Speck et al. 1984). The effect of disease phase on the outcome of transplantation has not changed over the years. To optimize the effect of allo-HSCT for a patient who has progressed to blast crisis, a second CP should be achieved using TKI and/or conventional combination chemotherapy.

### Table 76.2 Change in proportion of patients transplanted in each disease phase from 2007 to 2017

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year of transplant</th>
<th>1st CP Number (% total)</th>
<th>AP Number (% total)</th>
<th>≥2CP Number (% total)</th>
<th>BC Number (% total)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2007</td>
<td>164 (50)</td>
<td>49 (15)</td>
<td>82 (25)</td>
<td>34 (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2008</td>
<td>134 (45)</td>
<td>34 (12)</td>
<td>84 (28)</td>
<td>44 (15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2009</td>
<td>133 (41)</td>
<td>46 (14)</td>
<td>92 (28)</td>
<td>53 (16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2010</td>
<td>128 (36)</td>
<td>57 (16)</td>
<td>106 (30)</td>
<td>65 (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2011</td>
<td>148 (49)</td>
<td>50 (15)</td>
<td>86 (26)</td>
<td>46 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2012</td>
<td>127 (46)</td>
<td>34 (12)</td>
<td>74 (27)</td>
<td>42 (15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2013</td>
<td>136 (44)</td>
<td>41 (13)</td>
<td>78 (25)</td>
<td>54 (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2014</td>
<td>138 (43)</td>
<td>48 (15)</td>
<td>75 (24)</td>
<td>57 (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2015</td>
<td>137 (44)</td>
<td>43 (14)</td>
<td>73 (23)</td>
<td>62 (20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2016</td>
<td>111 (42)</td>
<td>30 (11)</td>
<td>70 (26)</td>
<td>55 (21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>74 (36)</td>
<td>20 (10)</td>
<td>68 (33)</td>
<td>45 (22)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Data provided by Mrs. Linda Koster on behalf of the EBMT CMWP.

### Fig. 76.2 (a) OS of CML patients after allo-HSCT according to EBMT risk score. Original curves published in 3142 patients transplanted between 1989 and 1996. Modified from (Gratwohl et al. 1998). (b) OS curves supplied by Mrs. Linda Koster for the EBMT CMWP and based on 3497 patients transplanted from 2007 to 2017.

#### 76.2.3 Pretransplantation Treatment

Early descriptions of therapy included radiotherapy, introduced at the beginning of the twentieth century and later oral chemotherapy, in particular BU and hydroxycarbamide. These approaches could control the signs and symptoms of CML in chronic phase but could not prevent its inevitable transformation into a rapidly fatal chemoresistant...
blastic disease. The first treatment that eradicated the Ph-positive clone and induced cure was BMT, initially described in syngeneic twins and soon followed by procedures involving HLA-matched siblings and later URD. Transplantation, once the treatment of choice for this disease, has been relegated to second-, third-, and even fourth-line treatment in parallel with the development of the TKI. As more potent TKI move to first-line therapy, patients destined to respond poorly to these drugs are identified earlier, and transplant will return to use as an earlier line strategy.

76.2.4 Autologous HSCT

Autologous HSCT for CML started about at the same time as allo-HSCT in the late 1970s early 1980s in Europe with the goal to set up the clock to early phase with high-dose therapy followed by reinfusion of autologous HSC. However, following the introduction of targeted therapy with TKI, the number of auto-HSCT in Europe has decreased rapidly, with only 0–4 per year between 2012 and 2016 as per the EBMT registry data. Auto-HSCT is currently not a recommended strategy in CML; however, it should be mentioned that due to the lack of randomized studies, the potential role of autologous HSCT for CML remains unknown.

76.2.5 Allogeneic HSCT

76.2.5.1 Indication

Although the introduction of TKI in the early 2000s dramatically changed the therapeutic strategy for CML, allo-HSCT has still a place, offering a very long-term PFS. This is particularly true as the leukemic quiescent stem cells are not dependent on BCR-ABL signaling for survival, and therefore those cells are not targeted by TKIs leading to a proportion of patients who will relapse or will have resistant disease despite TKI treatment. With extended follow-up, it appears that some 60% of patients can achieve excellent long-term disease control on imatinib, and a small proportion may even be able to stop treatment without experiencing disease recurrence. Approximately half of this group will achieve or regain remission on one of the second-generation TKI (2ndGTKI), bosutinib, dasatinib, and nilotinib, or third-generation TKI (3rdGTKI) ponatinib which is the only one that is effective against T315I mutation.

The efficacy of 2ndGTKI has led to their use as first-line therapy, and recently completed phase III studies suggest that approximately 80% of patients will achieve complete cytogenetic remissions within the first year, compared to 65% on imatinib. Based on these results, dasatinib and nilotinib have both been licensed for use in newly diagnosed patients. However, allo-HSCT remains the therapy of choice for advanced phase CML as well as for those with CP who failed to respond, develop TKI-resistant mutations, and lose an established response and/or are intolerant of the drug.

The time to proceed to transplant remains controversial. This is particularly true for the substantial number of patients being started on 2ndGTKI as first-line therapy, who, in case of resistance, progression, or relapse, may be rescued with either another 2ndGTKI or 3rdGTKI, and then the question to proceed to transplant immediately or wait for another progression and third-line therapy rescue before to have allo-HSCT is a matter of debate. This is less true for those who are failing third-line therapy or have T315I mutation for whom allo-HSCT is recommended.

A number of national and international study groups are now reporting that long-term response to imatinib and 2ndGTKI can be predicted by the rate of fall of BCR-ABL transcript levels (as measured by RQ-PCR at 3 and 6 months). It is therefore possible to identify the patient destined for transplant within the first year of diagnosis while still in CP and return to a more measured approach to transplant. Recently the CMWP of the EBMT analyzed the data of patients transplanted for CML in the 3rdGTKI era that showed that the number of TKI given prior to allo-HSCT seems not to impact on the outcome; however, the stage of the disease as well as the performance status of patients did have an important impact (Chalandon et al. 2018). It is therefore very important to try to keep patients in first CP and avoid progression, even for those rescued to second or more CP after having progressed to
advanced phase, as the results after transplantation are worse in this category. Allo-HSCT is also recommended for patients with BC after debulking with second or 3rd GTK I plus induction chemotherapy. For AP CML patients, this should be individualized, but the search for a donor and referral to a transplant center should be done rapidly, and transplant should be initiated after obtaining a new response to TKI for those progressing from CP to AP under therapy as their outcome is not good without allo-HSCT.

### 76.2.5.2 Source of SC

About two-thirds of the transplantation done nowadays for CML use PBSC as source of HSC (Chalandon et al. 2018); this is close to what is seen in other hematological malignancies (Holtick et al. 2014). It appears that there is no difference in general outcome depending on the stem cell source, although BM seems to have a decrease incidence on chronic GvHD and its severity. The source of stem is therefore left open, but PBSC may potentially be preferred to decrease the risk of graft failure and the relapse risk in more advanced disease, particularly with the use of RIC.

### 76.2.5.3 Conditioning and GvHD Prophylaxis

For CML patients, the best conditioning regimen as well as the best GvHD prophylaxis remains to be determined. Regarding the MAC, CY combined either with BU or TBI is still the one that has shown the best overall long-term survival (Copelan 2006). RIC that has been introduced later to offer transplantation to older patients or with more comorbidities did not show improved outcome over MAC, particularly in relation with a higher incidence of relapse with RIC (Kebriaei et al. 2007; Chalandon et al. 2018). Therefore, for elderly patients or those with comorbidities, RIC (FLU with BU or MEL) will be the choice, and for the others, particularly with advanced phases in order to control better the disease, MAC should be proposed.

For GvHD prophylaxis, CSA combined with short course MTX seems also to remain the standard for allo-HSCT for CML (Copelan 2006). In order to reduce the incidence and severity of GvHD, TCD was introduced in the 1980s; however, there was an increase of relapse rate (Apperley et al. 1986). This led to many groups abandoning the use of TCD in sibling allografts for CML and often also in URD procedures. Others continued with its use and have reported good outcomes in sibling transplants, particularly following the introduction of DLI. In a small series of 23 CML patients with a median age of 36 years (range 18–58 years) transplanted with sibling donors and MAC between 1998 and 2016 at the University Hospital of Geneva using partial TCD with Campath-1H (alemtuzumab), the 15-year OS and LFS was 95% using the strategy of escalating doses DLI for early molecular relapses with a low incidence of acute and chronic GvHD (Chalandon, unpublished data).

### 76.2.5.4 Post transplant Strategies

After allo-HSCT, rising or persistently high levels of BCR-ABL1 mRNA can be detected prior to cytogenetic or hematological relapse. Low or falling BCR-ABL1 transcript levels are associated with continuous remission, while high or rising transcript levels predict relapse. Therefore monitoring BCR-ABL1 post-allo-HSCT for CML is of utmost importance, even in the long term, due to relapses that have occurred up to more than 15 years post-HSCT.

Many CML patients will remain RQ-PCR positive during the first 3 months after allo-HSCT, especially in the era of RIC or using TCD. In patients who are at least 4 months post-allo-HSCT, one working definition of molecular relapse is one of the following:

(a) BCR-ABL/ABL1 ratio higher than 0.02% in three samples a minimum of 4 weeks apart.

(b) Clearly rising BCR-ABL/ABL1 ratio in three samples a minimum of 4 weeks apart with the last two higher than 0.02%.

(c) BCR-ABL/ABL1 ratio higher than 0.05% in two samples a minimum of 4 weeks apart (Kaeda et al. 2006).

Administration of DLI can re-induce remission in 60–90% of patients with CML transplanted in, and relapsing in CP. The use of escalating doses in case of persistent disease reduces the risk of GvHD.
(Mackinnon et al. 1995). An EBMT study showed 69% 5-year survival in 328 patients who received DLI for relapsed CML. DLI-related mortality was 11%, and disease-related mortality was 20%. Some form of GvHD was observed in 38% of patients. Risk factors for developing GvHD after DLI were T-cell dose at first DLI, time interval from transplant to DLI and donor type. In a time-dependent multivariate analysis, GvHD after DLI was associated with a 2.3-fold increase in risk of death as compared with patients without GvHD (Chalandon et al. 2010).

With the advent of TKI, the CML post transplant interventions are more complex but give more opportunities to rescue patients. It is possible to combine DLI and TKI for relapsing patients; however, the best order (TKI first, DLI first, or both combined) has not yet been defined. The CMWP of the EBMT reported 431 patients with CML relapses post-allo-HSCT who received TKI either alone (55%) or in combination with DLI (14.5% before, 4.4% at the same time, and 26% after TKI). Only 42% of the patient obtained either a complete molecular (17.7%), cytogenetic (4.4%), or hematological (20.2%) remission with a 5-year OS of 60% and of 47% for RFS (Chalandon et al. 2017). This rather low response rate may be in relation with the fact that 235 patients were transplanted for advanced phases (AP, BC or > CP1).

References


Chalandon Y, Iacobelli S, Hoek J et al. Use of first or second generation TKI for CML after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: a study by the CMWP of the EBMT. EBMT annual meeting, Marseille, France, 2017.


Key Points

- With the advent of targeted therapy, allo-HSCT use has decreased; however, it is of importance to monitor closely patients who are under TKI and avoid that they progress to advanced phase (AP or BC) as the outcome after transplant is better for CP1 as compared to all other conditions.

- Allo-HSCT should be considered for patient with BC after their return to CP, for those progressing from CP to AP and for the one in CP after failure of third line therapy or with T315I mutation.


Severe Aplastic Anemia and PNH

Régis Peffault de Latour, Antonio Risitano, and Carlo Dufour

77.1 Definition and Epidemiology

Severe aplastic anemia (SAA) is an autoimmune disorder (AID) due to the attack of autoreactive cytotoxic T lymphocytes to the hematopoietic component of the bone marrow. The triggering antigen is so far unknown. The incidence of SAA is about 2.34/million in Europe and the United States and threefold higher in East Asia, with two age peaks of incidence (in young adults and in the elderly) (Young and Kaufman 2008).

Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH) is another bone marrow failure syndrome (BMFS) which is often embedded with SAA. PNH is a more heterogeneous disease since its clinical presentation includes hemolytic anemia and thrombophilia in addition to bone marrow failure.

77.2 Diagnosis and Indication for Treatment for SAA

SAA is usually diagnosed in the setting of pancytopenia and a hypocellular BM. Diseases such as myelodysplasia, myelofibrosis, hypocellular acute leukemia, inherited BMF such as Fanconi’s anemia (FA), or telomeropathies need to be excluded. Cytogenetic abnormalities can be found in up to 10% of true SAA (Rovo et al. 2016; Barone et al. 2015).

There is a close relationship between PNH and acquired SAA with a concomitant diagnosis in 40% of cases. SAA is diagnosed when marrow hematopoietic cellularity is <30%, and two of three of the following criteria are met: absolute neutrophil count <0.5 × 10^9/L, absolute reticulocyte count <60 × 10^9/L, and platelet count <20 × 10^9/L (Camitta et al. 1976).

Treatment requires careful planning and may be prolonged. A watch and wait strategy is often used initially if there is milder pancytopenia. Conversely, in case of transfusion requirement or if the criteria for SAA are met, treatment should begin with no delay. Prior to treatment the patient should be stable clinically with control of bleeding and infections. Once the diagnosis is confirmed, and the disease severity is assessed, family HLA-typing and matched unrelated donor search should be done in the work-up phase. In the absence of sign of intravascular hemolysis, patient’s treatment algorithm is similar with or without PNH.
77.3 Treatment of SAA

77.3.1 First Line Treatment for SAA

The choice of first-line treatment depends on the age of the patient and the availability of an HLA MSD (Fig. 77.1). The standard first-line treatments for a newly diagnosed patient with SAA are HSCT from a HLA-identical sibling donor or IS therapy (IST) using a combination of horse ATG and CSA (ATG + CSA). Early bone marrow HSCT after a conditioning regimen with CY, ATG, and GVHD prophylaxis combining CSA and MTX promotes excellent engraftment (95%) and OS (90% at 2 years) (Bacigalupo et al. 2012; Peffault de Latour 2016). This approach enabled also a very good long-term outcome with a rather limited number of late effects consisting in avascular necrosis, endocrine dysfunctions, and very rare secondary malignancy (Konopacki et al. 2012). However, toxicity related to transplantation as well as increased risk of GvHD is still a problem for patients older than 40 years of age and for those with high comorbidity index (Marsh et al. 2011).

For these categories first-line IS with horse ATG + CSA is recommended. This combination showed both in prospective controlled studies (Scheinberg et al. 2011; Marsh et al. 2012) and in real-life surveys (Peffault de Latour et al. 2018) a response rate of about 60%. Frontline IST provided similar findings in children and adolescents (Dufour et al. 2014; Dufour et al. 2015a). After IST, responders might experience relapse (20–30%), CSA dependence (20–30%), or long-term clonal evolution (PNH, MDS, or AML) (Scheinberg and Young 2012), justifying regular follow-up and bone marrow evaluation every 12–18 months.
### 77.3.2 Second-Line Treatment for SAA

The choice of second-line treatment is also driven by age, by comorbidities, and by the presence of a matched related (MRD) or unrelated donor (MUD):

- In older patients with a MRD and confirmed refractory SAA, HSCT should be considered in the absence of significant comorbidities.
- In younger patients with a MUD and refractory or relapsed SAA, HSCT is recommended. Results of MUD HSCT have improved to such an extent that OS of idiopathic SAA are not statistically inferior to MRD transplants (Bacigalupo et al. 2015). This improvement has been largely attributed to better donor selection through allele matching, progress in supportive care, prophylaxis of GVHD, incorporation of FLU in conditioning regimens, and the addition of low-dose TBI. Recently some factors were found to positively affect OS after MUD HSCT including age $\leq 30$ years, transplant within the first year after diagnosis (Devillier et al. 2016), use of BM vs PB, and CMV status (Bacigalupo et al. 2015).
- For patients older than 30 years, monotherapy with eltrombopag, an oral thrombopoietin-receptor agonist, produced in prospective studies in refractory patients an overall response of 40% with trilineage responses in some cases (Olnes et al. 2012; Desmond et al. 2014). A retrospective French study found similar results on patients with relapsed/refractory SAA. The overall rates of red blood cell and platelet transfusion independence were 7%, 33%, 46%, and 46 at 1, 3, and 6, months and last follow-up, respectively. No clonal evolution has been documented so far (Lengline et al. 2018). Other second-line options for patients not eligible to HSCT and who relapse or do not respond to frontline IST are a second course of ATG (rabbit) + CSA and alemtuzumab offering a response rate of 65% (Scheinberg et al. 2006) and 37% (Scheinberg and Young 2012), respectively.

### 77.3.3 Emerging Strategies for SAA

#### 77.3.3.1 Eltrombopag Added to the Standard Horse ATG + CSA First Line Treatment

Many efforts to improve results of the standard treatment with horse ATG and CSA have failed since 40 years (Scheinberg 2012). Excellent results obtained with eltrombopag in monotherapy in refractory patients prompted American colleagues from the NIH to test if the addition of eltrombopag to standard IST as the first treatment for SAA would have increased the rate of CR and improved the long-term outcome. In the best cohort (eltrombopag associated to ATG and CSA from day 1), complete and overall response rates at 6 months were 58% and 94%, respectively. After a median follow-up of 2 years, survival rate is 97% (Townesley et al. 2017). Rates of relapse and clonal evolution were similar to historical experience. Whether eltrombopag might substantially improve horse ATG + CSA platform is at the moment under investigation through a large, randomized, controlled, prospective European trial on behalf of the SAA working party of the EBMT (RACE trial; ClinicalTrials.gov number, NCT02099747).

#### 77.3.3.2 Up-Front Matched Unrelated Donor Transplantation

Although pediatric patients respond better to IST, the long-term risks of relapse, CSA dependence, and clonal evolution are high (Dufour et al. 2014). UK investigators reported an excellent estimated 5-year FFS of 95% in 44 consecutive children who received a 10-antigen (HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C, HLA-DRB1, HLA-DQB1) MUD HSCT; 40 of these children had previously failed IST. HSCT conditioning was with FLU, CY, and campath (FCC) (Samarasinghe and Webb 2012). Because of those excellent results, up-front MUD HSCT became an attractive first-line option in children. Between 2005 and 2014, a UK cohort of 29 consecutive children with idiopathic SAA received UD HSCTs (including five patients with 1 Ag mismatched transplants) as
first-line therapy after conditioning with FCC. Results were excellent, with OS and EFS of 96% and 92%, respectively, low GVHD rates, and only one death (from idiopathic pneumonia) (Dufour et al. 2015b). This cohort was then compared with historical matched controls who had received (1) first-line MRD HSCT, (2) first-line IST with horse ATG + CSA, and (3) MUD HSCT post-IST failure as second-line therapy. Outcomes for the up-front unrelated cohort were similar to MRD HSCT and superior to IST and UD HSCT post-IST failure. Similar results were observed in another pediatric study (Choi et al. 2017).

Currently a North American study aims to compare outcomes of children with SAA treated de novo with IST vs MUD HSCT (ClinicalTrials.gov number NCT02845596). While waiting the results of this trial, if a 10/10 MUD is available and the transplant appears feasible within 2–3 months since diagnosis, this type of HSCT has become a reasonable frontline option for young patients in many centers. Another option is to perform MUD HSCT early after failure of frontline IST within 4–6 months since diagnosis. This is why MUD donor search should be started at diagnosis in young patients who lack a MRD.

### 77.4 Treatment of PNH

Clinical presentation of PNH is extremely heterogeneous, including a variable combination of bone marrow failure, hemolytic anemia, and thromboembolism (Peffault de Latour et al. 2008). These clinical manifestations may change during the disease course of each individual patient so that the treatment of PNH should target the specific clinical presentation (Risitano 2017).

The treatment of marrow failure in PNH parallels that of SAA, and it has been described above; indeed, the presence of a PNH clone does not change the treatment algorithm of SAA.

In contrast, the treatment of complement-mediated hemolytic anemia and of thromboembolic PNH is based on complement inhibition through the anti-C5 MoAb eculizumab. Eculizumab has proven to be effective in inhibiting intravascular hemolysis of PNH, leading to hemoglobin stabilization and transfusion independence in about half of patients (Hillmen et al. 2006; Brodsky et al. 2008). This dramatic effect on intravascular hemolysis, eventually resulting in improved quality of life, is also associated with a significant reduction of the risk of thromboembolic complications (Hillmen et al. 2007). Notably, eculizumab treatment leads to a significant improvement of overall survival of PNH patients, as documented by two independent long-term retrospective studies showing 5-year survival rates >90% (Kelly et al. 2011; Loschi et al. 2016). Based on this, eculizumab is currently the standard of care for all PNH patients presenting with symptomatic hemolytic and/or thromboembolic disease; occasionally, when this occurs concomitantly with a BMF, the anticomplement treatment may be considered also in combination with IST (i.e., sequential or concomitant treatment) (Pagliuca et al. 2018).
77.4.1 Emerging Strategies for PNH

Even if currently available anticomplement treatment addresses most clinical needs of patients with hemolytic (and thrombotic) PNH, a number of novel strategies of complement modulation are in their preclinical or clinical development (Risitano and Marotta 2016). These strategies may target specific unmet clinical needs pertaining PNH patients. Novel anti-C5 agents (either MoAb, small molecules or small interfering RNA) may represent an improvement of current eculizumab, mostly in terms of patient comfort due to long-lasting activity (with longer dosing interval) and/or self-administration (usually SC). In addition, a novel class of compounds targeting early steps of the complement cascade at the level of C3 or even upstream (inhibitors of complement factor B and factor B) may anticipate a better efficacy in terms of hematological response, due to possible effect on C3-mediated extravascular hemolysis. Ongoing clinical trials will reveal whether any of this strategy may lead to change in the standard of care of anticomplement treatment of hemolysis (and thrombophilia) of PNH patients (Risitano and Marotta 2018).

Key Points
- SAA is usually diagnosed in the setting of pancytopenia and a hypocellular BM when other diseases, especially inherited BMF such as Fanconi’s anemia or telomeropathy, have been excluded.
- The preferred treatment of SAA is HSCT from HLA-identical sibling donor. Transplantation from a MUD may be considered for patients without a sibling donor after failure of IS therapy or up front in younger ≤20 years if feasible in 2–3 months since diagnosis.
- Eltrombopag might substantially change in the coming years the standard horse ATG + CSA platform.
- The role of alternative donor HSCT needs further validation to enter the current clinical practice.

References


Fanconi’s Anemia and Other Hereditary Bone Marrow Failure Syndromes

Cristina Díaz de Heredia, Marc Bierings, Jean-Hugues Dalle, Francesca Fioredda, and Brigitte Strahm

78.1 Introduction

Inherited bone marrow failure syndromes (IBMFS) are a heterogeneous group of rare blood disorders due to hematopoiesis impairment, with different clinical presentations and pathogenic mechanisms. Some patients present congenital malformations, may progress through clonal evolution (MDS and acute leukemia), and are at risk of solid tumors at early ages. The number of involved genes rises annually; comprehensive next-generation sequencing analyses improve diagnostic accuracy. HSCT is an option for these congenital disorders. However, it should be well understood that it will only improve the hematopoietic defect and not cure the congenital malformations or lower the risk of solid tumors. Moreover, the HSCT procedure per se may increase this risk. Consequently, the decision to transplant a patient should be taken by a multidisciplinary team. HSCT must be performed at specialized centers owing to patient susceptibilities to toxicity and the need for specific management during and after the procedure. The general recommendations for management of IBMFS are included in the key points at the end of the chapter.

78.2 Fanconi’s Anemia

78.2.1 Pathogenesis and Principal Clinical Features

Fanconi’s anemia (FA) is the most common IBMFS with an estimated incidence of 1/200,000. FA is a disorder of DNA damage repair, leading to increased chromosomal breakage in diagnostic assays. Twenty underlying genes have been identified. The presentation is variable with somatic abnormalities in 70% of patients, marrow failure, and a highly increased risk of malignancies (MDS, leukemia, head and neck cancer, gynecological cancers) at an early age. Patients can be
identified at adult age, e.g., in cases of (familial) pancytopenia, myelodysplasia, or unexpected severe toxicity of treatment. FA patients are highly susceptible to chemotherapy and irradiation-induced damage such as mucositis.

### 78.2.2 Indications of HSCT

Indications for transplant include marrow failure (transfusion dependency or severe neutropenia) and myelodysplasia/leukemia. Since transplantation implies exposure to chemo/radiotherapy and since the outcome is dependent on age at transplant, the decision to proceed to transplant should be individualized and discussed with experts in the field.

### 78.2.3 Specific Considerations for Conditioning Regimen

Conditioning regimens should be adapted for FA patients, with reduced doses of many cytotoxic drugs and irradiation. Current conditioning regimens generally contain FLU (cumulative dose 150 mg/m²), in combination with reduced doses of CY (up to 50 mg/kg cumulative) and/or low-dose TBI (100–300 cGy) in the case of unrelated donors. For adults no clear recommendations can be given at this point.

### 78.2.4 Results

Current results of transplant for marrow failure in children with FA show survival rates depending on donor type ranging from 50% to more than 90%. Factors influencing outcome include age at transplant, sibling donor availability, and the use of FLU in the conditioning regimen. A EBMT study of the period 2000–2009 reported 78% and 65% OS at 5-year post transplant for MSD and MUD, respectively (Fig. 78.1).

Clonal disease and adult age at transplant remain a challenge. Both TRM and relapse of malignant disease contribute to these generally poor results.

### 78.2.5 Recommendations for Long-Term Follow-Up

After transplant, the risk of secondary malignancies is high (Fig. 78.2). Patients should be carefully monitored for head-neck malignancies (regular ear, nose, and throat specialist checks for early signs of malignant transformation, and women undergo gynecological checkups and
screening for breast cancer with ultrasound and MRI) and other manifestations of FA (e.g., endocrinopathies such as thyroid dysfunction, diabetes, growth problems, and early menopause). As more FA patients survive into adulthood, specialist multidisciplinary teams taking care of these complex patients are needed.

78.3 Dyskeratosis Congenita

78.3.1 Pathogenesis and Principal Clinical Features

Dyskeratosis congenita (DC) is a multisystemic disorder characterized by the nail dystrophy, skin pigment alteration and oral leukoplakia triad frequently associated with bone marrow failure and organ involvement (pulmonary fibrosis, liver, neurological and gastrointestinal abnormalities, ocular impairment and cancer predisposition). The causative mechanism of the disease is abnormal telomere shortening due to a defect in one of the genes encoding for the telomerase-shelterin complex. Bone marrow failure is the main cause of death, although pulmonary fibrosis, liver cirrhosis, and cancer significantly contribute to morbidity and mortality. Androgens have shown some effect on hematopoiesis and lung function.

78.3.2 Indications for Transplant

HSCT is the only curative option for bone marrow failure in DC. Organ dysfunction is not corrected by HSCT and limits its indication by negatively affecting outcome. HSCT is not indicated as a preemptive measure but is recommended in cases of progressive marrow failure without significant organ dysfunction.

78.3.3 Specific Considerations for Donor Selection and Conditioning Regimen

MSD are the donors of choice; MUD and mismatched related donors are associated with inferior outcomes. Given tissue “fragility,” a reduced intensity combination containing fludarabine would be preferable to myeloablative regimen. A thorough evaluation of organ status is recommended prior to transplant.

78.3.4 Results

Five- and 10-year survival is 57% and 23%, respectively. Age >20 years at HSCT, HSCT before 2000 and alternative donor transplant were poor prognostic markers. Patients transplanted after 2000 had improved early survival to 70% at 5-year post transplant.

78.3.5 Specific Recommendations for Long-Term Follow-Up

Since HSCT may increase the risk of secondary malignancies in these patients, long-term follow-up is mandatory.

78.4 Severe Congenital Neutropenia and Shwachman-Diamond Syndrome

78.4.1 Pathogenesis and Principal Clinical Features

The term “severe congenital neutropenia” (SCN) covers a group of inherited disorders characterized by a persistent absolute neutrophil count (ANC) below 0.5 × 10⁹/L and early onset of severe infections. To date, 24 distinct genes have been associated with SCN which may manifest as an isolated disorder or associated with various extra-hematologic features.

The most common form (60%) of genetic neutropenia is due to mutations in the ELANE gene. Shwachman-Diamond syndrome (SDS) caused by a mutation of SDSB gene is the most common form of neutropenia associated with extra-hematologic features (exocrine pancreas deficiency, metaphyseal dysplasia, mental retardation, cardiomyopathy, and immune dysfunction).
The underlying pathogenic mechanism of most genetic SCN is accelerated apoptosis of promyelocytes causing blockage of neutrophil maturation. In SDS, the defect in the SBDS protein causes abnormal ribosomal assembly and inadequate maintenance of the stromal microenvironment. The SCN clinical phenotype consists of predisposition to severe infections. The use of G-CSF improved the prognosis of the disease which had been lethal in almost 50% of cases. The aim of treatment is to maintain protective neutrophil values (between 1.0 and 5.0 × 10⁹/L) that are usually achieved with G-CSF doses of 3–5 μg/kg/day. Patients requiring G-CSF between 10 and 15 μg/kg/day are defined as “poor responders,” whereas those requiring >20 μg/kg/day are considered “non-responders.” Another feature of SCN is its tendency to transform into MDS/AL. The overall cumulative incidence of MDS/AL is 10.8% and 22% after 15–20 years of G-CSF treatment according to the French and International Severe Chronic Neutropenia Registries, respectively. In SDS the cumulative incidence is between 18% and 36% at 20–30 years.

78.4.2 Indications for Transplant

The definitive cure of the hematologic defect is HSCT. Given the non-negligible mortality rate, indications are limited to patients with MDS/AL and absent or poor response to G-CSF. For SDS the indications for transplant are worsening cytopenias with increased transfusion dependence and transformation into MDS/AL.

78.4.3 Specific Considerations for Conditioning Regimen

A MAC regimen is considered appropriate in SCN, while a RIC is more indicated in SDS owing to possible secondary organ dysfunction (e.g., heart disease).

78.4.4 Results

OS has been assessed at 82% with TRM of 17% in the largest cohort (136 patients) described. Better results have been obtained in patients under 10 years of age, in those transplanted after 2000 and in cases of MSD transplants.

78.5 Diamond-Blackfan Anemia

78.5.1 Pathogenesis and Principal Clinical Features

Diamond-Blackfan anemia (DBA) is a rare IBMFS caused by heterozygous mutations in ribosomal genes. No genetic aberration is identified in approximately 30% of patients. Patients usually present with transfusion-dependent macrocytic anemia at birth or in early infancy. Mild neutropenia and progressive thrombocytopenia have been observed in the course of the disease. Despite various possible physical abnormalities (short stature, abnormal thumbs, cleft palate, heart defects, urogenital malformations), the non-hematologic phenotype is usually rather subtle in around 50% of patients. Patients with DBA are at increased risk of developing hematologic (AML/MDS) and non-hematologic malignancies (osteosarcoma, colon cancer).

After the first year of life, at least two trials of steroid therapy are recommended; around 60% of the patients are responders. Patients <12 months of age or those who are steroid non-responders are treated with red blood cell (RBC) transfusions. Iron chelation is essential to prevent organ damage from iron overload. About 20% of patients become transfusion independent with no further treatment (spontaneous remission).

78.5.2 Indications for Transplant

HSCT is the only cure for hematologic manifestations. Indications are non-response to steroids, steroid dependency at a dose ≥0.3 mg/kg/day, transfusion dependency, alloimmunization to
RBC, progressive pancytopenia, or MDS/AML. Published data indicate that HSCT should be performed before the age of 10 years; however, an earlier time point might be preferable to avoid iron overload. Indications must be evaluated taking into account the alternative approach with RBC transfusions combined with rigorous iron chelation.

78.5.3 Specific Considerations for Donor Selection and Conditioning Regimen

HSCT from a MSD including cord blood has resulted in OS >80% and is recommended for all indications. Sibling donors should be carefully assessed to rule out silent carrier status. Recent reports described improved outcome of MUD HSCT with OS ranging from 70 to 85% (Strahm, EBMT abstract 2018). By contrast, data supporting HSCT from mismatched donors as standard procedure are insufficient. The majority of transplants reported were performed with myeloablative conditioning. Based on available data, a standard regimen including FLU and BU or TREO is recommended.

78.5.4 Specific Recommendations for Long-Term Follow-Up

Long-term care for patients being transplanted for DBA should focus on the management of iron overload. Depending on its extent, phlebotomies and/or iron chelation therapy might be indicated. Furthermore, patients and physicians should be aware of the increased risk of malignancies (especially osteosarcoma, colon cancer).

78.6 Congenital Amegakaryocytic Thrombocytopenia

78.6.1 Pathogenesis and Principal Clinical Features

Congenital amegakaryocytic thrombocytopenia (CAMT) is a rare IBMFS caused by mutations in the gene coding for the thrombopoietin receptor MPL. Patients usually present with thrombocytopenia at birth or within the first year of life. Most patients develop hypocellular bone marrow and progress to pancytopenia early in the course of disease. Clonal evolution with acquired chromosomal aberrations and the development of myelodysplastic syndromes are very rare events. Characteristic non-hematologic manifestations of the disease have not been described.

78.6.2 Indications for Transplant

HSCT is the only curative treatment and should be offered to all patients with transfusion-dependent thrombocytopenia, pancytopenia, or clonal evolution.

78.6.3 Specific Considerations for Donor Selection and Conditioning Regimen

HSCT from a MSD is the preferred option, and successful transplants from heterozygous-related donors have been reported. HSCT from MUD (≥9/10) is an acceptable alternative. Successful HSCT from mismatched family donors or mismatched unrelated cord blood donors have been reported. However, these should preferentially be performed in clinical trials.

In view of a considerable graft failure rate, a MAC with FLU in combination with TREO or BU is preferred. However, there have been reports of successful engraftment after a RIC, and this might be considered in cases with severely hypocellular bone marrow in the absence of clonal aberrations and alloimmunization to platelet transfusions.

78.6.4 Results

Five-year overall survival was 77% with TRM of 12.6% in a retrospective EBMT study. However, this series included HSCT performed over a period of 26 years with a variety of donors, regimens, and stem cell sources, with no difference in outcome.
**Recommended References**


79.1 HSCT for Sickle Cell Disease

Barbara Cappelli and Eliane Gluckman

79.1.1 Definition and Epidemiology

Sickle cell disease (SCD) is the most common inherited hemoglobinopathy worldwide. It results from a single-nucleotide substitution that leads to a propensity toward hemoglobin polymerization and sickling of red blood cells. Sickle cell disease is characterized by anemia, ongoing hemolysis, and acute and chronic vaso-occlusive complications affecting multiple organs. SCD affects over 100,000 Americans, and it occurs in about one in 500 African-American births and in one in every 1000–1400 Hispanic-American births (NIH 2014; Piel et al. 2013).

The implementation of newborn screening, penicillin prophylaxis, vaccination programs, narcotics, chronic transfusions, hydroxyurea, and the early detection of cerebral vasculopathy with transcranial Doppler (TCD) have improved the perspective for children with SCD (Angelucci et al. 2014; Yawn et al. 2014; Ware et al. 2016; Bernaudin et al. 2016).

79.1.2 Allo-HSCT with an HLA Identical Sibling

HSCT remains the only curative therapy for SCD (Angelucci et al. 2014; Arnold et al. 2016; Gluckman et al. 2017). The goal when performing HSCT is to replace the patient’s marrow with genetic functional cells before major organ dysfunction and complications (Bernaudin et al. 2007). Some of the most common indications for HSCT are listed in Table 79.1 (Angelucci et al. 2014; Bernaudin et al. 2016).
Several barriers prevent HSCT widespread application including lack of a suitable donor, lack of information, and limited understanding of HSCT. Moreover, HSCT encompasses a risk of early- and late-onset regimen-related toxicities, rejection, and mortality. Nevertheless, the annual number of transplants have been increasing and has quadrupled in the last decade (CIBMTR personal communication). The first successful HLA identical HSCT was performed in a patient affected by both SCD and AML in 1984 (Johnson et al. 1984). After that, many groups have described a series of patients transplanted from an HLA identical sibling with an OS that varies between 91 and 100% and EFS that varies between 73 and 100% (Bernaudin et al. 2007; Walters et al. 2016). Recently, 1000 HLA identical transplants, performed between 1986 and 2013 and reported to EBMT, Eurocord, and the CIBMTR, have been published with a 5-year EFS and OS of 91.4% (95% CI 89.6–93.3%) and 92.9% (95% CI 91.1–94.6%), respectively. The EFS and OS were both lower with increasing age, EFS was higher for transplantations performed after 2006, and OS was lower for peripheral blood transplant recipients (Fig. 79.1) (Gluckman et al. 2017).

### 79.1.3 Indications

Indication for HSCT for “less severe patients” before significant organ damage has occurred is open to discussion. In fact, on one hand, it would be better to transplant them early in order to pre-

---

**Table 79.1** Indications for HSCT in SCD patients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age &lt;16 years</th>
<th>HLA identical sibling donor</th>
<th>One or more of the following complications:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stroke or central nervous system event lasting &gt;24 h</td>
<td>Sickle lung disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sickle nephropathy</td>
<td>Retinopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Osteonecrosis</td>
<td>Red-cell alloimmunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acute chest syndrome</td>
<td>Recurrent priapism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recurrent vaso-occlusive painful episodes</td>
<td>Failure to benefit or unable or unwilling to continue supportive care therapy including hydroxyurea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Impaired neuropsychological function with abnormal cerebral MRI and angiography</td>
<td>Abnormal transcranial Doppler velocities</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modified from (Angelucci et al. 2014)

---

**Fig. 79.1** Overall survival according to stem cell source on 1000 SCD patients transplanted from an HLA identical sibling (Gluckman et al. 2017)
vent early organ damage secondary to SCD, avoid SCD complications in childhood, and achieve better HSCT outcomes secondary to less pre-HSCT organ damage and alloimmunization and, on the other hand, it could be considered to wait to perform an HSCT for the establishment of new available SCD supportive cares (new medications other than hydroxyurea), promising curative therapies (gene therapy), and advances in HSCT technology, others may be available. Nevertheless, it has been demonstrated that patients transplanted at a young age have a better 3-year OS and 3-year EFS, with lower incidence of aGvHD and cGvHD (Gluckman et al. 2017). These findings outline the importance of early referral to HSCT for SCD patients.

### 79.1.4 Conditioning

To date, a myeloablative conditioning regimen (especially with BU/CY + ATG) is the gold standard for HLA identical sibling HSCTs (EFS: 73–96%, OS: 91–100%) despite the risk of long-term transplant-related toxicity (Bernaudin et al. 2007; Walters et al. 2016). A conditioning regimen including FLU and BU has been used but with high GvHD risk; therefore, it should be considered to add ATG to the conditioning regimen to lower the GvHD risk in these patients.

A RIC regimen has been explored to decrease toxicity and allow a stable, mixed chimerism. The aim of a tailored conditioning regimen in children is to preserve fertility, whereas in adults is to reduce toxicity in severely compromised patients due to their underlying disease. Several reduced intensity conditioning regimens (FLU/ MEL + ALEM +/- TT or ALEM + TBI 300 cGy +/- PT-CY or FLU/CY or TBI 300 cGy +/- ATG) have been used in many small patient series but with high degree of graft rejection (Talano and Cairo 2015; Arnold et al. 2016). Thus, recently, encouraging outcomes and low early- and long-term toxicity have been confirmed by other groups after FLU-based RIC regimens (Bhatia et al. 2014). Lately, 13 high-risk patients conditioned with a chemotherapy-free regimen (ALEM-TBI 300 cGy) have shown a 92% DFS and 100% OS (Saraf et al. 2016).

Moreover, a prospective multicenter trial comparing allogeneic matched related HSCT after a RIC regimen, with standard of care in adolescents and adults with severe SCD, has shown encouraging preliminary results (Dhedin et al. 2016).

Despite MAC dosing in the conditioning regimens, a mixture of both donor and recipient hematopoietic cells (mixed donor chimerism) can be consistently observed in approximately 10–20% of these children (Bernaudin et al. 2007; Walters et al. 2016). Interestingly, this mixed chimeric state with the presence of both recipient and donor blood cells is sufficient to direct bone marrow to preferentially produce donor-type hemoglobin (rather than abnormal hemoglobin of the recipient), and red cells revert the SCD phenotype, and minimize the risk of GVHD, confirming the therapeutic efficacy of mixed chimerism for hemoglobinopathies. New studies on mixed chimerism are ongoing.

### 79.1.5 Alternative Donors

Finding a potential MUD is based on the ethnic and racial background; for SCD patients the probability for an 8/8 HLA MUD or CB donor is less than 18%. Nevertheless, some small series of patients using URD have been published, but for now relapse rate and GvHD risk remain unacceptable (Justus et al. 2015).

Strategies that explore the use of mismatched related (haplo) donors are ongoing (Dallas et al. 2013; Talano and Cairo 2015). Recently promising results of CD3+/CD19+ depleted T-cell haplo-HSCT after TREO/FLU/TT + ATG have been shown to be safe and efficient with a low incidence of GvHD in advanced stage SCD (Foell et al. 2017).

Moreover, new strategies using gene therapy have been recently published with encouraging results (Ribeil et al. 2017), and the use of gene editing is being explored for this single-mutation disease (Canver and Orkin 2016).
79.2 Thalassemia

Khaled Ghanem and Miguel R. Abboud

79.2.1 Introduction

The outcome of thalassemia major (TM, transfusion-dependent thalassemia) has improved dramatically over the past two decades due to improvements in supportive care and iron chelation therapy (Taher et al. 2018). Life expectancy for TM patients exceeds 40 years, and it is no longer significantly different from the life expectancy of thalassemia intermedia patients, in developed countries (Vitrano et al. 2017).

Match family donor (MFD) allo-HSCT is currently considered the only curative standard therapeutic approach for TM, which despite holding its own risks, could release the patient from lifelong treatments, and possible iron accumulation complications. Despite encouraging results of gene therapy, its use is currently limited to clinical trials.

79.2.2 Best Transplant Candidates

In late 1990s, the Pesaro group has proposed a risk classification for pediatric patients undergoing MFD HSCT for TM (Lucarelli et al. 1998). The classification depended on three risk factors (Table 79.2) and was validated in the pediatric population; however, it did not predict risk in adult patients (Angelucci et al. 2017). Limitations to this risk stratification include the interobserver variability regarding hepatomegaly and the lack of clear definition of adequate iron chelation. The Pesaro classification is applicable in the setting of best medical care. In developing countries, where medical care might not be optimal, a very-high-risk group was identified in Pesaro class 3 patients if liver size is >5 cm below the costal margin and if the patient age is >7 years (Mathews et al. 2007). The EBMT has recently identified the age of 14 years as the oldest age for optimal outcome in MFD HSCT for TM (Baronciani et al. 2016).

Accurate assessment of iron content in the liver and heart is crucial before proceeding to transplant. No consensus is currently available regarding the best method of iron content assessment in both organs. Serum ferritin level might not reflect accurately the severity of iron overload. Liver biopsy is the gold standard; however, it carries the risks of the invasive procedure. Transient elastography (FibroScan) and T2 MRI have been shown to be reliable noninvasive methods to predict liver fibrosis secondary to iron overload, for TM patients who are candidates to HSCT (Hamidieh et al. 2014; Hamidieh et al. 2015).

79.2.3 Conditioning Regimens

The use of the myeloablative BU and CY as the conditioning regimen for HSCT for TM has been the standard practice, due to the increased marrow activity and the allo-sensitization in heavily transfused patients (Lucarelli et al. 1990). However, this regimen was associated with hepatic and cardiac toxicity due to the iron overload and the toxic hepatic and cardiac effects of BU and CY, respectively.

ATG or ALEM have been added in some protocols to the conditioning regimen to prevent GvHD and enhance engraftment (Law et al. 2012; Mohty 2012). Despite being effective with low incidence of infections, the use of these agents is still debatable.

In an attempt to reduce the extramedullary toxicity of BU and CY, a non-myeloablative regimen of TREO/FLU/TT has been used with encouraging results (Bernardo et al. 2012). Defibrotide has been used successfully to prevent SOS/VOD in patients with TM undergoing

Table 79.2 Pesaro classifications for risk assessment prior to HSCT for TM (Lucarelli et al. 1998)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk factor</th>
<th>Class 1</th>
<th>Class 2 (min. 1, max. 2)</th>
<th>Class 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inadequate chelation</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>✓/✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatomegaly &gt;2 cm</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>✓/✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portal fibrosis</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>✓/✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HSCT with conditioning regimen containing IV BU (Cappelli et al. 2009). The use of BU pharmacokinetics was associated with better engraftment and less toxicity (Gaziev et al. 2010); however, these studies are available in limited number of institutions worldwide.

### 79.2.4 Alternative Donors

#### 79.2.4.1 Matched Unrelated Donors (MUD)
In case MFD is not available, the discovery of high-resolution HLA typing techniques made the performance of successful MUD transplant possible. The probability of finding a matched unrelated donor varies between 50% in Caucasians to less than 10% in some minorities (Rocha and Locatelli 2008). With the use of BU, CY, TT, and FLU as conditioning regimen and ATG, MMF, and short-course MTX as GvHD prophylaxis, the outcome of PBSC MUD in TM was comparable to MFD HSCT in regard to OS, TRM, TFS, and aGvHD (Li et al. 2012).

#### 79.2.4.2 Unrelated Umbilical Cord
The use of unrelated umbilical cord as a source of stem cells for HSCT in TM is hampered by the high incidence of graft failure due to the low stem cell dose. The graft failure rate could be as high as 57% (Ruggeri et al. 2011). This could be partially overcome by the use of double UCB units. The 5-year overall and thalassemia-free survival rates were 88.3 and 73.9%, respectively, when using two units instead of one if no single units included more than $25 \times 10^6$ total nucleated cells/kg of recipient weight. Other strategies to overcome the main barrier of low cell dose include co-transplantation of third-party mesenchymal stromal or TCD haploidentical cells (Kwon et al. 2014; Kim et al. 2004).

#### 79.2.4.3 Haploidentical HSCT
Due to the low probability of finding a MUD in some ethnicities and the previously mentioned issues with umbilical-cord transplant, new strategies have been evolved to develop an effective and safe haploidentical transplant procedure for TM patients. The use of TCD graft was associated with high rate of infections and increased risk of graft failure due to allo-sensitization and hyperactive marrow (Gaziev et al. 2000). This was overcome by pretransplant over-transfusion and immunosuppressive therapy and post transplant infusion of transduced donor T-cells with gene-inducible caspase-9 (Bertaina et al. 2017). The use of T-cell replete grafts is still under investigation to explore the best strategy to prevent GvHD.

#### 79.2.5 Mixed Chimerism
The incidence of mixed chimerism after HSCT for TM was reported to be around 12%. The risk of graft rejection in patients with mixed chimerism was high only if mixed chimerism had been observed within two months post-transplant. Most cases with late persistent mixed chimerism evolved into either stable chimerism or complete engraftment and did not require additional PRBC transfusion support (Andreani et al. 2000).

#### 79.2.6 Post transplant Iron Chelation
Iron overload remains a problem after HSCT, and most investigators rely on phlebotomy to decrease excessive iron stores. In a recent phase II, multicenter, single-arm trial, deferasirox at a dose of 20 mg/kg/day, starting after a minimum of 6 months of transplant, and continued for 1 year, was safe and associated with decreased burden of iron overload after transplant (serum ferritin, liver, and cardiac iron content by MRI) (Yesilipek et al. 2018).
Key Points

- HLA identical sibling HSCT is an established treatment option for SCD.
- HSCT should be performed as early as possible, preferably at pre-school age, and BU, CY, and ATG should be used as conditioning regimen.
- Match family donor allo-HSCT is currently considered the only curative standard therapeutic approach for thalassemia major, which despite holding its own risks, could release the patient from lifelong treatments and possible iron accumulation complications.
- Despite encouraging results of gene therapy, its use in TM is currently limited to clinical trials.

References


Mohty M. A bit of antithymocyte globulin can take you a long way! Bone Marrow Transplant. 2012;47:617–8.


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
80.1 Definition, Epidemiology, and Diagnosis

Multiple myeloma (MM) consists of a malignant proliferation of BM plasmatic cells (BMPCs), which produce a monoclonal protein that can be found in serum and/or urine, resulting in skeletal involvement, hypercalcemia, anemia, renal function impairment, and/or soft-tissue plasmacytomas. The cause is unknown.

The annual incidence is four per 100,000. It represents 1% of all malignant diseases and about 15% of all hematological malignancies. The median age at diagnosis is between 65 and 70 years. Only 15% and 2% are younger than 50 and 30 years, respectively.

The diagnosis of symptomatic MM requires the presence of clonal BMPCs, usually >10%, or plasmacytoma, the presence of serum and/or urine M-protein (except in the uncommon nonsecretory) and related organ or tissue impairment (end-organ damage, including bone lesions). In the absence of organ damage, the presence of >60% BMPCs, a serum-free light-chain (FLC) ratio >100 or the presence of more than one focal lesion at the MRI defines symptomatic MM requiring therapy.

80.2 Risk Stratification

The International Staging System (ISS), based on the serum beta2-microglobulin and albumin levels discriminates three prognostics subgroups:

- Stage I (beta2-m <3.5 mg/L and albumin >3.3 g/dL),
- Stage III (beta2-m >5.5 mg/L) and
- Stage II (all remaining cases).

FISH can identify the following poor cytogenetic findings: t(4;14), t(14;16), and/or del 17p which account for about 25% of patients with MM, the remaining 75% having a so-called standard risk. High LDH, the presence of hematogenous extramedullary disease, and the coexistence of plasma cell leukemia are also poor prognostic indicators. A revised ISS incorporating cytogenetics and LDH have been developed as follows:
• R-ISS I: ISS I, standard-risk cytogenetics and normal LDH,
• R-ISS III: ISS III, plus high-risk cytogenetics or high LDH and
• R-ISS II: all remaining cases.

An ultra-high-risk group, accounting for 5–7% of patients eligible for auto-HSCT and who received bortezomib-based regimens, with a median OS of less than 2 years, has been recognized (ISS III and high-risk cytogenetics or high LDH).

### 80.3 First-Line Treatment (Induction Prior to Auto-HSCT)

Conventional chemotherapy (VAD, VBMCP/ VBAD, CY/DEX) or the doublets thalidomide (THAL)/DEX or bortezomib (BOR)/DEX results in 10% CR pre-auto-HSCT, 25–35% CR post-auto-HSCT and in 5–10% in continued CR beyond 10 years from HSCT.

The triplets combining BOR/DEX with an immunomodulatory drug (IMiD), thalidomide (VTD), or lenalidomide (VRD) result in a pre-auto-HSCT CR of 20–35%, and a post-auto-HSCT CR of 45–55%. However, there is not enough follow-up to determine the proportion of patients in continued CR >10 years beyond auto-HSCT.

The results of BOR-based triplets PAD and VCD (including Adriamycin or CY), widely used in Europe, are inferior to the reported with the combination of proteasome inhibitors plus IMiDs. Although most groups administer four induction cycles, the dose intensity and the induction exposure with an increased depth of response overtime and with higher CR rates pre- and post-auto-HSCT with six cycles have been observed with both VTD and VRD. The potential benefit of adding a MoAb, particularly daratumumab, to VTD or VRD is being investigated.

### 80.4 Criteria of Response and Progression

Complete remission (CR): negative serum and urine immunofixation, less than 5% BMPCs and no soft-tissue plasmacytomas.

Stringent CR: as above plus normal free light-chain ratio and absence of clonal plasma cells.

Very good partial response (VGPR): 90% or more decrease in the serum M-protein and urine M-protein <100 mg/24 h.

Partial response (PR): 50% or more decrease in the serum M-protein, 90% or more decrease in urine M-protein or to <200 mg/24 h plus 50% or more decrease in soft-tissue plasmacytomas.

Progressive disease (PD) requires one or more of the following: increase in 25% or more from nadir in serum M-protein (absolute increase of at least 0.5 g/dL), urine M-protein (absolute increase of at least 200 mg/24 h), BMPC (absolute increase of at least 10%), soft-tissue plasmacytomas, and development of new bone lesions, soft-tissue plasmacytomas, or hypercalcemia.

### 80.5 High-Dose Therapy (HDT), Consolidation, and Maintenance

Auto-HSCT remains the standard of care for young and fit MM patients. MEL 200 mg/m² (MEL-200) is the standard high-dose regimen, and the source of PBS. The addition of BOR peri-transplant, as well as other attempts, is of no benefit. MEL-140 plus IV BU vs. MEL-200 is being investigated. The increase in the CR with HDT is 15–20%.

Recent trials have shown that early transplant is superior to delayed (at relapse) auto-HSCT, even in the era of novel agents.

It seems that patients with high-risk cytogenetics are the most likely to benefit from tandem auto-HSCT.

The TRM with auto-HSCT is very low (1–2%), the best reported median PFS is 50–56 months and the expected median OS of 8–10 years. The proportion of patients operationally cured (i.e., in continued CR beyond 10 years) with the current regimens is still unknown.

Although the results of post transplant consolidation are controversial, it seems to be a promising approach and usually recommended by experts. Post-auto-HSCT maintenance with lenalidomide (LENA) has been recently approved. The optimal maintenance duration based on sequential MRD studies, as well as
whether or not the association of other drugs such as glucocorticoids, proteasome inhibitors or MoAb can be of benefit, is currently investigated.

### 80.6 Treatment at Relapse After Auto-HSCT

There is a consensus that a rescue or salvage auto-HSCT could be tried when the response duration to the first transplant in longer than 18–24 months. Such rescue transplant should only be performed in patients with sensitive disease, so prior salvage chemotherapy is needed. The components of the initial therapy, depth and the duration of response as well as the toxicity are crucial in selecting the rescue regimen.

Among a number of possible combinations at relapse, the more effective combinations are IMiD-containing (carfilzomib, LENA, and DEX [KRd] or daratumumab, LENA, and DEX [DRd]) and non-IMiD-containing (carfilzomib and DEX [Kd] or daratumumab, BOR and DEX [DVd]). If the rescue auto-HSCT is performed, post transplant maintenance should be considered. In the event that the transplant is not done, the above treatments are in general until progression.

### 80.7 Allogenic HSCT in MM

The role of allografting for the treatment of MM remains controversial. The first clinical reports employing MAC regimens proved to be curative for small patient subsets but were associated with an unacceptable high TRM. In the late 1990s, the introduction of minimal intensive conditioning regimens (primarily based on low-dose TBI), which relies on the graft-versus-myeloma (GvM) effect for tumor eradication, drastically reduced TRM, but at the expense of higher disease relapse.

Combining cytoreductive high-dose MEL with an autograft and a subsequent minimal intensity conditioning with an allograft, aimed at inducing GvM, was better tolerated up to the age of 65–70 years old. Before the era of new drugs, seven prospective trials were designed to compare clinical outcomes of auto-HSCT versus tandem autologous-minimal intensity and allo-HSCT in newly diagnosed MM patients. Results were discordant regarding response, OS, and PFS. This may have partly been due to differences in conditioning regimens, GVHD prophylaxis, patient inclusion criteria, and randomization strategies. Thus, comparisons between trials are difficult. However, allografting has steadily been used in Europe in recent years. Sobh et al. recently described use and outcomes of allo-HSCT for MM in Europe between January 1990 and December 2012. A study population of 7333 patients (median age at transplant, 51 years) was divided into 3 groups: allo-HSCT upfront \((n = 1924)\), tandem auto-allo-HSCT \((n = 2004)\), and allo-HSCT as a second-line treatment or beyond \((n = 3405)\). After 2004, 5-year survival probabilities from transplant were 42%, 54%, and 32%, for the three groups, respectively. Unfortunately, only a very minority of MM patients were enrolled in prospective control trials. Remarkable heterogeneity in using allo-HSCT was observed among the different European countries.

### 80.8 Allogenic HSCT and New Agents

The role of the combination of “new drugs” with GvM has not yet been explored in well-designed prospective studies. In only a Phase II study feasibility of BOR within a RIC and as maintenance post-allografting was evaluated. Conditioning consisted of FLU/MEL/BOR while maintenance treatment of cycles of IV BOR. Sixteen high-risk patients relapsed after an auto-HSCT was prospectively enrolled. Nine/16 (56%) and 5/16 (31%) achieved CR and partial remission. In this heavily pretreated high-risk population, 3-year cumulative incidence of NRM, relapse and OS were 25%, 54%, and 41%, respectively. The latter trial showed the feasibility and efficacy of an intensified conditioning with a “new drug” in poor prognosis patients. Moreover, the concept of maintenance treatment after an allograft was also introduced. A synergy between new drugs and GvM in the relapse setting has recently been described.
clearly suggesting that allo-HSCT and new drugs are not mutually exclusive.

Whether long-term persistence of MRD negativity may coincide with disease eradication remains a matter of debate though persistent molecular remission of several years may cautiously suggest cure. PCR-based MRD detection represents a powerful predictor of clinical outcomes.

80.9 Indications of allo-HSCT in MM

The role of allo-HSCT in the era of new drugs remains highly controversial, and there are no clear guidelines, despite the relatively high numbers of allo-HSCT yearly performed in Europe. Well-designed prospective trials combining “graft-vs.-myeloma” and new drugs are needed, especially in young high-risk/ultra-high-risk patients whose treatment remains an unmet clinical need.

Key Points
- Auto-HSCT is the preferred treatment approach (standard of care) in young and fit myeloma patients.
- Prior to auto-HCT, patients should receive a BOR-based triplet induction regimen aiming to achieve a deep response.
- High-dose MEL 200 mg/m² is the standard conditioning for auto-HSCT in myeloma.
- Patients should receive some form of post auto-HSCT therapy (consolidation and/or maintenance therapy).
- Double auto-HSCT can be considered for high risk myeloma (e.g., patients with a del17p cytogenetic abnormality).
- The role of allo-HSCT is highly controversial in myeloma and should be performed as part of a clinical trial whenever possible.

Recommended References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
81.1 Definition and Epidemiology

Systemic light chain (AL) amyloidosis is a protein misfolding and deposition disorder with an incidence of 5–12 persons per million per year. Clonal plasma cells or rarely B cells produce immunoglobulin light chains with the potential to misfold. These light chains are deposited as extracellular amyloid fibrils in peripheral tissues and cause morbidity and mortality. Organs most frequently involved are the kidney, heart, liver, autonomic and peripheral nervous system, gastrointestinal tract, and soft tissue.

81.2 Diagnosis

AL amyloidosis should be suspected in any patient with a monoclonal gammopathy and a compatible clinical syndrome such as heart failure with a preserved ejection fraction, nephrotic range proteinuria, unexplained weight loss, peripheral neuropathy, a bleeding diathesis, or carpal tunnel syndrome. Gammopathy work-up should include a serum-free light chain assay, immunofixation of serum and urine, bone marrow cytology, flow cytometry, histology and iFISH, and a full-body scan to exclude bone lesions due to symptomatic MM. AL amyloidosis is diagnosed by histopathology with Congo red staining and the typical apple-green birefringence under polarized light. Screening biopsies such as abdominal fat, rectum, salivary gland, or bone marrow as well as symptomatically involved organs can be utilized. The amyloid subtype has to be further confirmed by immunohistochemistry, immune electron microscopy, or laser microdissection and mass spectrometry.

81.3 Classification

AL amyloidosis can be classified by the origin of the underlying bone marrow disease: a clonal plasma cell or a lymphoid dyscrasia. Plasma cell dyscrasias can further be divided into monoclonal gammopathy, smoldering MM, and symptomatic MM. Finally, IgM-related AL amyloidosis is a specific entity with an underlying lymphocytic, lymphoplasmacytic, or a plasma cellular clone, commonly with cardiac and peripheral nervous system involvement.
### 81.4 Risk Factors and Prognostic Scores

The underlying bone marrow disease as well as organ damage-related biomarkers can be utilized to stratify patients into risk groups. A bone marrow plasma cell infiltration above 10% (Hwa et al. 2016) and a high difference between involved and uninvolved serum-free light chain (dFLC) are negative prognostic factors (Kumar et al. 2012) for overall survival. Comparable to MM genetic aberrations can be detected on iFISH in plasma cell dyscrasias and be utilized to predict response to specific treatments (e.g., in patients with translocation (11;14) HDM/HSCT is more effective) (Bochtler et al. 2016).

The Mayo clinic first published a staging system utilizing NT-ProBNP and cardiac troponins (cTnI, cTnT) in 2004 which strongly predicted outcome. Median survival for patients in Stages I, II, and III were 26.4, 10.5., and 3.5 months (Dispenzieri et al. 2004a), and for the transplant group Stages I and II median were not reached, and Stage III median was 8.4 months (Dispenzieri et al. 2004b). This staging system was adapted in 2013 by a European cooperative approach and an ultra-high-risk patient group was identified with an NT-proBNP cut-off of 8500 ng/L (Stage IIIb) which must be considered transplant-ineligible (Wechalekar et al. 2013).

For patients with renal involvement, total proteinuria/24 h and estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) can anticipate the risk for terminal renal failure (Palladini et al. 2014).

The depth of response is also a significant prognostic factor as patients achieving an amyloidosis VGPR (dFLC below 40 mg/L) or CR after treatment have a significantly better outcome (Palladini et al. 2012).

### 81.5 First-Line Treatment

Risk-adapted treatment is preferred since most patients are fragile and do not tolerate standard used dosing regimens (see Table 81.1). Three categories are defined with low-risk patients, transplant eligible, being a minority (≤20%). High-risk patients are defined by Stage IIIb and/or having NYHA class III or IV heart disease. Other factors to consider are age, performance status, eGFR, and systolic blood pressure (Palladini and Merlini 2016). Frequent assessments of hematological response during treatment are needed, and the goal is to achieve a CR or VGPR as a deep hematologic response is closely related to survival. Patients having a hematologic response may gradually achieve an organ response.

### Table 81.1 First-line treatment options according to risk status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk status</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low-risk Stage I</td>
<td>• (± induction treatment) MEL (200 mg/m²) + auto-HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• CYBorD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate-risk</td>
<td>• MEL-DEX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stages II–IIIa</td>
<td>• CYBorD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Bortezomib-MEL-DEX or LENa-MEL-DEX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-risk Stage IIIb</td>
<td>• Low-dose therapies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Bortezomib weekly monotherapy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CYBorD** cyclophosphamide, bortezomib, dexamethasone

---

### 81.6 Second-Line Treatment

There is no randomized trial data to guide treatment at relapse. Patients with a good duration of response who tolerate initial treatment well may be retreated with the same initial regimen. Patients with a poor response are best treated with an alternative agent combination using agents to which the patient has not been exposed, palliation or in a clinical trial tailored to the individual patient in terms of their age, comorbidities, extent of organ involvement, and the patient’s wishes. Lenalidomide and pomalidomide can be considered in relapsed disease although data on durability of response are limited (Dispenzieri et al. 2007; Palladini et al. 2017). Toxicity with lenalidomide is a significant issue, and it is recommended to start at a dose of 15 mg daily, with further dose reduction based on glomerular filtration rate (GFR) (Dispenzieri et al. 2007).
81.7 Autologous HSCT

81.7.1 Indication

Eligibility criteria for autologous HSCT are variable depending on the transplanting center. However, the usual eligibility criteria include age ≤70 years, performance status 0–2, NYHA class I or II, absence of significant clinical cardiac involvement (NT pro BNP <5000 ng/L, left ejection fraction ≥45 to 50%), absence of severe orthostatic hypotension (i.e., systolic blood pressure ≥90 mm Hg), and eGFR >40 mL/min. Induction therapy before stem cell mobilization can be given, especially in patients who fulfill (smoldering) myeloma definition criteria, i.e., ≥10% bone marrow plasma cell infiltration.

The correct selection of patients is extremely important since the mortality associated with autologous HCT in AL amyloidosis can be unacceptable high if not done properly. Since the selection criteria also include the cardiac biomarkers, treatment-related mortality has dropped from around 20% to 5%; also see Table 81.2 (Gertz et al. 2013).

81.7.2 Recommended

Stem cell mobilization and leucapheresis can be associated with unusual morbidity, and a syndrome of hypoxia and hypotension has been described both during mobilization with G-CSF and during the leucapheresis procedure itself, probably as a result of a capillary leak syndrome triggered by G-CSF. Therefore, use of reduced doses of G-CSF (such as 10 μg/kg per day for 4–5 days) is recommended. In low-burden disease (i.e., plasma cells <10%), the use of CY mobilization chemotherapy does not seem to be necessary.

Conditioning regimens are based on high-dose MEL. The usual MEL dose is 200 mg/m², since lower-dose melphalan is associated with decreased hematological response and PFS and therefore other treatment non-transplant options may be more suitable (Cibeira et al. 2011).

81.7.3 Results

Figure 81.1 shows OS of auto-HSCT until 2010. In Table 81.2 the more recent publications of the last 10 years have been summarized. The use of induction therapy before HSCT has been more frequently applied and seems to demonstrate better hematologic responses than HSCT alone.

81.8 Allogeneic HCT

The largest retrospective analysis on allo-HCT for AL amyloidosis was performed by the EBMT in 2006 (Schönland et al. 2006). Nineteen patients were analyzed. Seven patients received MAC, and eight RIC. 40% of patients died of TRM. Long-term survival and sustained CR were achieved in seven patients and were associated with chronic GVHD in the majority of them. DLI has been successfully performed in a few patients with AL amyloidosis, thereby demonstrating a potent “graft-versus-plasma cell-dyscrasia” effect.

The EBMT initiated a noninterventional prospective study (NIS) for patients with AL amyloidosis undergoing allo-HSCT. Preliminary results have been presented in 2016 with improved overall survival (see Fig. 81.2). Allo-HSCT after RIC can be discussed as a treatment option for relapse after auto-HCT in patients <60 years with preserved organ functions and a HLA-identical donor. It might be a curative treatment for highly selected patients.
Table 81.2  Summary of the outcome of patients with systemic AL amyloidosis undergoing autologous stem cell transplantation, according to the more recent publications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>No. of patients</th>
<th>Overall response rate (CR) %</th>
<th>TRM (%)</th>
<th>Overall survival (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Landau et al. (2017)</td>
<td>Retrospective</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>CR 43% at 12 months (83 pts only)</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>Median 10.4 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanchorawala et al. (2015)</td>
<td>Prospective bortezomib-DEX induction</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>ORR 100% CR 63%</td>
<td>8.5%</td>
<td>5 years; 83%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hazenberg et al. (2015)</td>
<td>Prospective VCR-adriam-DEX induction</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>ORR 46% CR 13%</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>Median 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parmar et al. (2014)</td>
<td>Retrospective</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>ORR 75% CR 18.6%</td>
<td>7.5%</td>
<td>10 years, 56%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huang et al. (2014)</td>
<td>Prospective bortezomib-DEX induction in 28 pts</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>ORR 85.7% and CR 67.9% and 35.7% Both at 12 months</td>
<td>3.6%</td>
<td>2 years 95% and 69.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cibeira et al. (2011)</td>
<td>Retrospective</td>
<td>421</td>
<td>CR 34%</td>
<td>5.6% (2004–2008 cohort)</td>
<td>Median 6.3 years</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fig. 81.1**  Autologous EBMT data (patients treated until 2010)
References


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
82.1 POEMS Syndrome

82.1.1 Introduction

POEMS syndrome (acronym of polyradiculo-neuropathy, organomegaly, endocrinopathies, monoclonal protein, and dermopathy, skin) is a rare multisystemic disease due to an underlying plasma cell neoplasm. The pathogenesis of the syndrome is not well understood. Other names of the POEMS syndrome that are less frequently used are osteosclerotic myeloma, Takatsuki syndrome, or Crow-Fukase syndrome.

82.1.2 Clinical and Laboratory Manifestations

POEMS predominate in male being the age of maximum incidence (50–60 years).

Characteristic manifestations are:

- Polyneuropathy: Typically demyelinating. Peripheral, ascending, symmetrical and affecting both sensation and motor function. It is the dominant characteristic.
- Organomegaly: Hepatomegaly (50%), splenomegaly, or lymphadenopathy.
- Endocrinopathy: Present in 84% of patients: gonadal, thyroid, pituitary, parathyroid, pancreatic, adrenal (in order of frequency, and many times multiple).
- Monoclonal protein: Almost always λ light chain. Usually Ig A or IgG and ≤3 g/dL. Bone marrow smear <5 to 10% plasma cells.
- Skin changes: Hyperpigmentation, hypertrichosis, glomeruloid hemangiomata, white nails, plethora, acrocyanosis, flushing.
- Other important manifestations are:
  - Papilledema (in one third of patients)
  - Extravascular volume overload
  - Sclerotic bone lesions\(^a\) (95%)
  - Thrombocytosis (in 54%)
  - VEGF elevation\(^b\)
  - Castleman disease (in 11–30%)

\(^a\)Radiology and CT/PET can be useful
\(^b\)VEGF = Vascular endothelial growth factor is the cytokine that correlates best with disease activity. The helpful cutoff for plasma and serum VEGF levels for diagnosis are >200 pg/mL (specificity 95%, sensitivity 68%) and >1920 pg/mL (specificity 98%, sensibility 73%), respectively

82.1.3 Diagnosis

Not all the features within the acronym are required to make the diagnosis. There are other relevant features not included in the POEMS acronym also important: PEST
(papilledema, extravascular volume overload, sclerotic bone lesions, thrombocytosis/erythrocytosis), elevated VEGF levels, abnormal pulmonary function tests, and a predisposition to thrombosis.

There is a Castleman variant of POEMS syndrome that may be associated with a clonal plasma cell disorder. When Castleman disease variant of POEMS syndrome occurs without evidence of plasma cell disorder, then this entity should be considered separately.

Clinical criteria for POEMS diagnostic are shown in Table 82.1.

### Table 82.1 Criteria for the diagnosis of POEMS syndrome

The diagnosis of POEMS syndrome is confirmed when:
- Both mandatory major criteria +
- Another of the other three major criteria +
- At least one of the minor criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mandatory major criteria</th>
<th>Other major criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polyneuropathy</td>
<td>Castleman disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monoclonal immunoglobulin</td>
<td>Sclerotic bone lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VEGF elevated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Minor criteria</th>
<th>Other symptoms and signs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Organomegaly (splenomegaly, hepaticomegaly, or lymphadenopathy)</td>
<td>Digital clubbing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extravascular volume overload (edema, pleural effusion, or ascites)</td>
<td>Weight loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endocrinopathy(^a)</td>
<td>Hyperhidrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin changes</td>
<td>Low vitamin B12 values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papilledema</td>
<td>Diarrhea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombocytosis/erythrocytosis(^b)</td>
<td>Pulmonary hypertension/restrictive lung disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thrombosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adapted from Dispenzieri (2017)

\(^a\)Hypogonadism is the most frequent, and because of the high prevalence of diabetes mellitus and thyroid abnormalities, these two last abnormalities alone are not sufficient to meet this minor criterion.

\(^b\)Anemia and/or thrombocytopenia are rare, unless associated with Castleman disease.

82.1.4 Prognosis

Chronic course, median survival of nearly 14 years, rarely progression to multiple myeloma.

The number of POEMS features does not affect survival.

Risk factors associated to better survival are: albumin >3.2 g/dL, achievement of a complete hematological response and younger age. Lower VEGF levels, better response to treatment.

Risk factors associated to shorter survival are: clubbing, extravascular volume overload, respiratory symptoms, papilledema, and coexisting Castleman disease.

Thrombocytosis and high bone marrow infiltration are associated with risk of cerebrovascular accidents.

Patients candidates for radiation therapy have a better overall survival.

82.1.5 Standard Treatment

82.1.5.1 In Case of an Isolated Bone Lesion (or Multiple, But Localized)

Radiotherapy to affected site(s) improves the symptoms of POEMS syndrome and can be curative.

82.1.5.2 Rest of Patients (Disseminated Disease)

- MEL/DEX
- LENA/DEX, THAL/DEX, BOR (these last two agents are of limited use due to the intrinsic risk of peripheral neuropathy), CY/DEX.
– Plasmapheresis, IVIg, IFN-α, tamoxifen, ATRA, bevacizumab (anti-VEGF agent), argatroban, and strontium-89 (mostly single-case reports).
– Attention to supportive care is mandatory (physical therapy, orthotics, etc.).
– Auto-HSCT.

### 82.1.5.3 Response Criteria

Monitoring the response to treatment in POEMS syndrome is a challenge. Patients must be followed carefully comparing the deficits to baseline. VEGF is an imperfect marker due to discordances between disease activity and response. The size of monoclonal protein is typically small making standard MM response criteria inapplicable. Patients can present clinical benefit without M-protein response therefore a clinical scoring system which can focus on organ-specific response would be useful clinically. So, response criteria for POEMS syndrome could be done as follows: hematological response using a modified amyloid response criteria, VEGF response, CT/PET response, and a simplified organ response (polyneuropathy assessment, pulmonary function tests, and extravascular overload).

### 82.1.6 Autologous HSCT (Table 82.2)

### 82.2 Monoclonal Ig Deposition Disease

#### 82.2.1 Introduction

Monoclonal Ig deposition is a clonal plasma cell dyscrasia in which light-chain and/or heavy-chain subunits of Igs form non-fibrillar deposits in various tissues, causing organ dysfunction. Light-chain deposition disease is the most common of these entities.

### Table 82.2 Main characteristic of auto-HSCT for POEMS disease treatment

| Background |  — In MM, another gammopathy, auto-HSCT, has a high rate of responses  
| — In amyloidosis, a disease with similarities to POEMS syndrome with “low tumor” burden, auto-HSCT offers encouraging results |
| Indication | POEMS syndrome with disseminated disease and:  
|  — Good general condition  
|  — Without response to standard treatment (MEL + DEX 2–3 months)  
|  — With high-risk factors (?) |
| Conditioning | MEL 140–200 mg/m²<sup>a</sup>  
| Stem cell source | PBSC, mobilization with G-CSF ± CY (3 g/m²)<sup>b,c</sup>  
| Morbidity | High rate of engraftment syndrome (up to 50%) (see Chap. 42), important to recognize and treat promptly with PRD. In these cases, higher than expected transfusion need and delayed engraftment  
|  — No organ toxicities as observed in amyloidosis |
| Mortality | As in other auto-HSCT, recently reported 3.3% at 1-year NRM<sup>d</sup> |
| Response<sup>a,e</sup> | Usually delayed, from 6 months post-auto-HSCT to 24–72 months |

<sup>a</sup>With lower dose, inferior responses  
<sup>b</sup>Mobilization failure is described, for this reason if there is no response after three courses of MEL + DEX, proceed to mobilization  
<sup>c</sup>The incidence of engraftment syndrome can be reduced if mobilization is done with CY + G-CSF  
<sup>d</sup>Cook et al. (2017)  
<sup>e</sup>In the largest series, 3-year PFS 84% and OS 94%, and 5-year PFS 74% and OS 89%
82.2.3 Diagnosis

Based on the biopsy of the affected organ (almost always kidney)

82.2.4 Treatment

Controversial, not standard due to the low incidence. Conventional chemotherapy commonly used for MM is unsatisfactory. Possible alternatives are:

- MEL + prednisone
- VAD (vincristine, doxorubicin, DEX)
- THAL/DEX, BOR/DEX
- Auto-HSCT (see Table 82.3)

Recommended References


**Table 82.3** Main characteristic of auto-HSCT for monoclonal Ig deposition disease treatment

| Background | As in POEMS syndrome (see Table 82.2) |
| Indication | Patients in good general condition and with basic requirements for auto-HSCT
| Conditioning | Melphalan 140–200 mg/m² |
| Stem cell source | PB, mobilization with G-CSF ± CY (3 g/m²) |
| Morbidity | Some patients require hemodialysis (HD) before and during the procedure. In that case, MEL should be administered after HD |
| Mortality | As in other auto-HSCT |
| Response | In the few cases reported:
| | — Hematological responses are described secondary to the control of the monoclonal gammopathy
| | — It can improve renal function. In selected cases, kidney transplantation could be an option if the patient achieves a CR and remain in HD |

*G. Cook and M. Rovira*
Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Follicular Lymphoma

Stephen Robinson

83.1 Introduction

First-line therapy for patients with advanced stage follicular lymphoma (FL) in need of treatment is to administer chemoimmunotherapy followed by maintenance rituximab (RTX). With this approach approximately half of the patients will remain progression-free at 10 years. Both auto-HSCT and allo-HSCT have been employed in the management of patients with FL since the 1980s. However, the roles of both forms of HSCT have continued to evolve as both transplant and non-transplant therapies have been refined. The current indication for auto-HSCT and allo-HSCT are reviewed below.

83.2 Autologous HSCT

83.2.1 Auto-HSCT in First Response

With both the development of auto-HSCT in the 1980s and the realisation that standard-dose chemotherapy was not curative for indolent lymphoma, investigators explored the role of auto-HSCT as a consolidation strategy following first-line therapy. Promising initial studies culminated in the development of several large randomised studies where auto-HSCT was compared with either no further therapy or interferon. Whilst some of these studies demonstrated an improvement in disease control, no overall survival benefit could be demonstrated (Lenz et al. 2004; Ladetto et al. 2008). These observations combined with a growing realisation of the acute and long-term toxicities of auto-HSCT have led to the abandonment of auto-HSCT as a first-line consolidation procedure.

83.2.2 Auto-HSCT for Relapsed FL

To date, the CUP trial has been the only randomised study comparing consolidation with an auto-HSCT (using either purged or unpurged stem cells) with no further therapy in the relapse setting (Schouten et al. 2003). In this trial, 140 patients with relapsed FL were randomised between consolidation with an auto-HSCT (using either purged or unpurged stem cells) or chemotherapy alone. The 2-year PFS for the chemotherapy alone arm was 26% compared with 58% and 55% for those receiving HSCT with either purged or unpurged stem cells, respectively. Further there was an overall survival advantage in favour of the two transplant arms (Schouten et al. 2003).
More recently the EBMT-LYM-1 study prospectively examined the role of purging and maintenance with Rituximab (RTX) peri-HSCT in RTX naïve patients with relapsed FL (Pettengell et al. 2013). In this study all patients underwent an auto-HSCT, and no benefit could be demonstrated for in vivo purging. However, the study did demonstrate that for patients receiving RTX maintenance, the PFS was in excess of 50%. A number of other studies have also reported long-term follow-up of auto-HSCT in relapsed FL and describe a 10-year PFS ranging between 31 and 50% (Kornacker et al. 2009; Montoto et al. 2007). Taken together these results demonstrate that between 25 and 50% of patients experience prolonged PFS following an auto-HSCT for relapsed FL suggesting that this is a curative procedure for a significant minority of patients.

Although promising it is important to recognise both the acute and long-term toxicities associated with auto-HSCT which continues to limit the application of this therapy. Whilst early TRM may be relatively low in younger patients, there is evidence that for patients over the age of 60, the TRM may be in excess of 10% (Sánchez-Ortega et al. 2016). Given that the median age of patients with relapsing FL is 69 an auto-HSCT will be associated with a significant TRM for the majority of patients. An additional concern is the late risk of developing secondary malignancies including MDS/AML. In a prospective randomised study, patients undergoing an auto-HSCT for FL had a significantly higher rate of both solid malignancies and MDS/AML compared to patients not receiving HSCT (Gyan et al. 2009). Further, in a population-based study of more than 7000 patients undergoing auto-HSCT, the risk of secondary malignancies was 1.4 times greater and the risk of MDS/AML 20.6 times greater than the general population (Bilmon et al. 2014). It is unclear whether the type of conditioning therapy used for an auto-HSCT influences the risk of secondary malignancy and MDS/AML. Evaluation of the bone marrow for clonal haematopoiesis and cytogenetic abnormalities may enable the identification of patients at a greater risk of developing MDS/AML following an auto-HSCT. For these patients alternative relapse therapies may be more suitable.

83.2.3 The Role of Purging, Conditioning Regimen and Maintenance

The BM is infiltrated in approximately 75% of FL patients at diagnosis, and consequently a number of investigators have studied the role of marrow purging in auto-HSCT (Gonzalez-Barca et al. 2000). However, no clear benefit for purging could be demonstrated in prospective studies (Schouten et al. 2003; Pettengell et al. 2013), and there was some evidence that purging resulted in significant additional immune suppression (IS). Consequently, purging remains an experimental procedure in auto-HSCT for FL.

There is a wide variety of different conditioning regimens that may be employed for auto-HSCT in FL but a paucity of randomised trials comparing the efficacy and toxicity of these different regimens. The BEAM (BCNU, VP, Ara-C, MEL) regimen has become the most widely used regimen prior to auto-HSCT in malignant lymphoma and has been adopted in many countries. A number of investigators have looked to improve upon BEAM by including RTX and dexamethasone, substituting BCNU with bendamustine (Visani et al. 2014), or incorporating bortezomib, mitoxantrone or fotemustine. Several groups have also incorporated radioimmunotherapy (RTI) into the conditioning regimen prior to auto-HSCT in NHL. In one small randomised trial comparing Zevalin and BEAM (Z-BEAM) with BEAM in relapsed/refractory B NHL, there was a survival advantage in the Zevalin arm (Shimoni et al. 2012).

Auto-HSCT in FL, Key Points

- Auto-HSCT should not be employed in first response.
- Auto-HSCT should be considered in patients with relapsed disease responding to reinduction therapy.
- Auto-HCT achieves a 5-year PFS of approximately 50% and may be curative in a significant minority of patients.
- There is no proven role for purging strategies.
- Maintenance rituximab for four infusions should be considered post auto-HSCT.
83.3 Allogeneic HSCT

Allo-HSCT offers several advantages over auto-HSCT in FL: the provision of a graft uncontaminated by lymphoma cells or exposed to mutagenic agents and the development of an allogeneic GVL effect. Early studies employed MAC regimens and demonstrated that cure could be achieved in a significant proportion of patients (Peniket et al. 2003; van Besien et al. 2003). In retrospective studies comparing allo- with auto-HSCT, MAC allo-HSCT was associated with a lower relapse rate but a higher TRM and consequently a similar OS. In an attempt to reduce the toxicity of allo-HSCT, RIC allo-HSCT has been developed (Robinson et al. 2002). A number of groups have demonstrated the safety and efficacy of RIC allo-HSCT and demonstrated that this type of transplant may be employed in older patients with significant comorbidities and in those patients who have undergone a prior auto-HSCT. Following a RIC allo-HSCT, the relapse rate is typically below 30%, whether performed as a first transplant procedure (Robinson et al. 2013) or following a previous auto-HSCT (Robinson et al. 2016) and the 5-year PFS rates range from 50 to 85%.

83.3.1 Conditioning Regimen Intensity

It is currently unclear whether a RIC or a MAC allo-HSCT offers superior outcomes in FL. A retrospective registry study demonstrated that the two approaches to allo-HSCT resulted in similar outcomes in the sibling donor setting (3-year OS for the MAC and RIC were 71% and 62% ($P = 0.15$), respectively) (Hari et al. 2008). However, the EBMT reported that in the unrelated donor setting, RIC allo-HSCT was associated with a lower NRM and significantly longer PFS and OS when compared with MAC allo-HSCT (Avivi et al. 2009). The median age at relapse of FL is 69, and therefore the majority of patients that may be considered for an allo-HSCT will be considered too old for MAC regimens, and many authorities therefore recommend a RIC allo-HSCT for FL. However, in younger patients (<50 years old) and without significant comorbidities, more intensive regimens may also be considered.

83.3.2 Donor Source for Allo-HSCT and TCD

The outcomes of both matched sibling donor (MSD) and MUD allo-HSCT in FL are broadly similar. A recent large retrospective study conducted by the EBMT and the CIBMTR demonstrated that the PFS and OS following MSD and MUD were similar (Sureda et al. 2018). For patients lacking a MSD or MUD, either a cord blood or haploidentical family donor may now be considered. The feasibility of umbilical cord blood (Rodrigues et al. 2009; Brunstein et al. 2009) and haplo-HSCT (with PT-CY) (Dietrich et al. 2016) in NHL (including FL) has been reported. However, the toxicity of both CBT and haplo-HSCT is significant, and it remains to be established whether either type of alternative donor source is superior to MSD and MUD.

TCD of the graft is a well-established method to reduce the incidence of GVHD post-transplant but runs the risk of eliminating allo-reactive T cells that will mediate the GVL effect and consequently result in a higher relapse rate. The risk of relapse may be offset by employing donor lymphocyte infusion (DLI), and with this approach, the 4 years PFS and relapse risk was 76% and 24%, respectively, and the incidence of GVHD was low (Thomson et al. 2010), suggesting that this approach may also be an option for allo-HSCT in FL.

**Allo-HSCT for FL, Key Points**

- Allo-HSCT should only be considered in patients with relapsed disease.
- Reduced intensity conditioning regimens are most appropriate for patients over the age of 50 or with significant comorbidities.
- Patients under 50 years may be considered for more intensive regimens.
- Matched sibling, matched unrelated, haploidentical and cord blood stem cell sources may be considered.
- T-cell depletion may be employed but should be combined with chimerism directed donor lymphocyte infusions.
83.4 Patient Selection for HSCT in FL

As discussed above HSCT options are no longer considered in first response and are reserved for patients with relapsed disease. However, patients with relapsed FL represent a highly heterogeneous population, and a HSCT will not be appropriate for many patients. Therefore, numerous factors have to be taken into consideration when selecting patients for a HSCT procedure. Patient-related factors such as age, comorbidities, performance status, organ function, the HSCT comorbidity index (HSCT-CI) (Sorror et al. 2005) and patients’ personal views will determine if a patient is fit to undergo a transplant and what the likely TRM rate will be. Certain features relating to the patient’s lymphoma are prognostic in the relapsed setting, and transplantation should only be considered in patients where the lymphoma is considered to considerably shorten survival. Patients that relapse within 2 years of the first-line therapy (Casulo et al. 2015) and those with high-grade transformation at relapse (Sarkozy et al. 2016) have been shown to have poor survival, and these patients should be considered for a HSCT procedure once adequate disease control has been obtained. Patients with a high FLIPPI score at relapse and those with multiple relapses may also have a poor prognosis, and these patients may also be considered for transplant options. It is important, however, to carefully counsel the patients regarding both the transplant and non-transplant therapies that are currently available of which there are many.

83.6 Allo-HSCT in Patients Relapsing After Auto-HSCT

The largest series of patients undergoing a RIC allo-HSCT after the failure of an auto-HSCT was reported by the EBMT. The NRM at 2 years was significant (27%), but the 5-year PFS and OS were 48% and 51%, respectively (Robinson et al. 2016). The duration of response following the allo-HSCT was also significantly longer than after the auto-HSCT illustrating the potential of the allogeneic GVL effect in this disease. This data demonstrates that a RIC allo-HSCT can act as an effective salvage strategy in this setting although the toxicity was significant. There is also a risk that patients may fail to respond to reinduction therapy, and therefore would not be eligible for an allo-HSCT.

83.5 Auto-HSCT or Allo-HSCT as a First Transplant Procedure

The decision whether to employ either auto- or allo-HSCT in relapsed FL remains challenging. There has been only one prospective randomised study addressing this issue, which was unfortunately closed early due to poor accrual (Tomblyn et al. 2011). An EBMT retrospective comparison demonstrated that the PFS at 5 years was 57% for patients receiving an allo-HSCT compared with 48% for those receiving an auto-HSCT, but overall survival was similar with both types of transplant (Robinson et al. 2013). It is therefore currently not clear which SCT option is superior for relapsed FL, and in the absence of definitive data, the decision regarding an auto- or allo-HSCT needs to be taken on an individual patient basis. Given the excellent results recently reported with auto-HSCT (Pettengell et al. 2013), the relatively low toxicity and the potential for cure a number of authorities now recommend an auto-HSCT as the first transplant of choice and that an allo-HSCT should be reserved for patients relapsing after an auto-HSCT.

Patient Selection Key Points

- Only patients with (a) early relapse or (b) high-grade transformation after first-line therapy or (c) multiple relapses should be considered for HSCT consolidation.
- The superiority of either auto-HSCT or allo-HSCT has not been established.
- Auto-HSCT may cure some patients and is associated with lower toxicity compared to allo-HSCT.


- RIC allo-HSCT may cure patients that relapse after an auto-HSCT.
- Many authorities recommend an auto-HSCT as the first transplant procedure of choice.

### 83.7 Conclusions

Both auto- and allo-HSCT have an established role in the treatment of relapsed FL, and both forms of transplant can deliver curative therapy to patients with otherwise poor prognosis disease. Patient selection for transplant therapy is critical, and a current understanding of the rapidly evolving field of alternative non-transplant lymphoma therapies is mandatory. The treatment paradigm for FL will change over the coming years as novel agents are incorporated into clinical practice, and the place of these agents relative to transplantation will evolve.

### References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
84.1 Introduction

CLL is a rare indication for HSCT since it usually follows an indolent course. Those patients who require treatment have the option of various combinations of chemoimmunotherapy (CIT), several non-cross-resistant pathway inhibitors, and cellular-based immunotherapy.

Three orally available pathway inhibitors with an attractive risk-benefit ratio have been approved for the treatment of CLL in the past 5 years, the Bruton’s tyrosine kinase inhibitor ibrutinib, the phosphoinositide 3-kinase inhibitor idelalisib, and the BCL2 inhibitor, venetoclax. Second-generation compounds are under development.

While CAR treatment is still at an early stage of clinical developmental for CLL, already today the sequential use of the available treatment options offers chances for long-term survival. Only a minority of patients shows resistant disease with the current treatment options and requires allo-HSCT.

84.2 Principles of Treatment for CLL

The diagnosis of CLL does not justify the start of treatment. This holds true even for relapsing CLL. Criteria which should trigger treatment are, e.g., anemia or thrombocytopenia due to heavy marrow involvement, a lymphocyte doubling time of less than 6 months, severe constitutional symptoms, or bulky lymphadenopathy. Treatment of CLL should be stratified by the TP53 genotype.

Patients with CLL harboring a cytogenetic deletion 17p detected by FISH or karyotyping or with a TP53 mutation detected by DNA sequencing (combined in this manuscript as TP53 abnormalities) should not be treated with chemotherapy. While CIT used to be the standard of care for first-line treatment for several decades, this standard is now challenged also in patients with functional TP53 by the treatment with pathway inhibitors with or without monoclonal B-cell antibodies.

84.3 Results of CLL Treatment with Pathway Inhibitors

Five-year disease control rates in treatment-naive elderly patients on ibrutinib monotherapy have been reported from two phase II trials (5-year PFS of 92% and 100%) (Ahn et al. 2018; O’Brien et al. 2018). Treatment-naive patients with a TP53 abnormality had a 5-year PFS of 74% (95% CI, 60–92%).

J. Schetelig (*)
Medical Clinic I, Department of Hematology, University Hospital Carl Gustav Carus, Technische Universität Dresden, Dresden, Germany
e-mail: johannes.schetelig@uniklinikum-dresden.de

P. Dreger
Abteilung Innere Medizin V, Universitätsklinikum Heidelberg, Heidelberg, Germany
Five-year PFS in relapsed/refractory patients on ibrutinib was 44% (O’Brian et al. 2018). Outcome was worse in patients with a deletion 17p or a TP53 mutation compared to patients without these abnormalities (O’Brian et al. 2018). In an NIH trial, patients with TP53 abnormalities had a 5-year PFS of 19% (95% CI, 6–60%) compared to 65% (95% CI, 44–96%) without TP53 abnormalities (Ahn et al. 2018).

Patients with relapsed/refractory (R/R) CLL with a deletion 17p who received the BCL inhibitor venetoclax had a 2-year PFS of 54% (95% CI: 45%, 62%) (Stilgenbauer et al. 2018). Notably, on venetoclax monotherapy, 20% of patients achieved a CR according to NCI criteria, and 30% reached MRD negativity measured by FACS at cutoff of 10^{-4} CLL cells. Patients who achieved a complete or MRD-negative remission had a very good prognosis despite previously relapsed/refractory CLL with a deletion 17p. Furthermore, venetoclax demonstrated activity in patients who failed on ibrutinib or idelalisib (Jones et al. 2018).

Finally, idelalisib in combination with RTX or ofatumumab has also demonstrated activity in patients with R/R high-risk CLL. For example, the median PFS for patients with del(17p) or TP53 mutations who had received idelalisib plus ofatumumab was 16 months (95%-CI, 11–19 months) (Jones et al. 2017). After failure of ibrutinib or idelalisib, sequential treatment with another pathway inhibitor is efficacious (Jones et al. 2017; Coutre et al. 2018; Mato et al. 2016). However, disease control generally is shorter compared to pathway-inhibitor-naïve patients.

Available evidence strongly suggests that allo-HSCT is currently the only therapy with curative potential in CLL (van Gelder et al. 2017; Kramer et al. 2017). Many patients reach CR without MRD after allo-HSCT. Allo-HSCT can provide long-term disease control even in patients with an unfavorable biological and clinical risk profile.

### 84.4 Allogeneic HSCT

The indication for allo-HSCT requires high-risk disease and failure on at least one pathway inhibitor (Dreger et al. 2014). High-risk CLL can be defined clinically by refractory disease or relapse within 2 years after CIT and biologically by TP53 abnormalities. Information on the IGVH mutation status, IGHV3-21 gene usage, deletion 11q, or complex karyotype adds to biological risk categorization, but only TP53 abnormalities are broadly accepted for stratified treatment. However, even patients with high-risk disease should have failed at least one pathway inhibitor before being referred for allo-HSCT. Independent of PI exposure, patients with a history of Richter’s transformation and patients with a therapy-related myeloid neoplasia have an indication of allo-HSCT.

Available evidence strongly suggests that allo-HSCT is currently the only therapy with curative potential in CLL (van Gelder et al. 2017; Kramer et al. 2017). Many patients reach CR without MRD after allo-HSCT. Allo-HSCT can provide long-term disease control even in patients with an unfavorable biological and clinical risk profile. The timing of allo-HSCT should be individually discussed with the patients by taking into consideration the risk of complications after allo-HSCT and the chances of sequential treatment with pathway inhibitors and or CIT. Standard risk scores like the HCT-CI, the PAM-score, or the EBMT risk score can be used to assess the risk of non-relapse mortality of an individual patient (Schetelig et al. 2017a, b).

When assessing the chances of continued conventional treatment, several factors have to be considered:

1. The risk of adverse events during prolonged conventional treatment which affect the eligibility for allo-HSCT
2. The risk of a Richter’s transformation
3. The risk of a failed salvage attempt at the next relapse/progression of CLL
4. The risk of worse outcome after allo-HSCT in patients with more resistant CLL

### 84.4.1 Remission Induction Prior to Start of the Conditioning Regimen

Large prospective and retrospective studies uniformly show that the results of allo-HSCT deteriorate if the disease is not in remission at the time of transplant. Thus, allo-HSCT should be performed in remission of CLL. Different options exist for remission induction and bridging to allo-HSCT. Abundant information exists for CIT prior to allo-HSCT. Data from retrospective registry studies also supports the use of ibrutinib or ide-
isib plus RTX for remission induction prior to transplantation (Dreger et al. 2018; Schetelig et al. 2017c). So far, no systematic studies addressed the use of venetoclax prior to allo-HSCT. However, since this drug does not modulate the immune responses, no adverse carry-over effects have to be suspected. As a general rule, the treatment with the highest chance of short-term tumor debulking should be used for remission induction prior to allo-HSCT (van Gelder et al. 2016).

84.4.2 Conditioning Regimens

The crucial therapeutic principle of allo-HSCT in CLL is GVL activity. Evidence for this comes from the observation that even some patients with refractory disease benefit from allo-HSCT. The impact of GVL is reflected by a reduced relapse risk in the presence of cGVHD and the efficacy of immune modulation for the eradication of MRD (Ritgen et al. 2008; Hahn et al. 2015).

Accordingly, long-term disease control can be achieved with a broad range of conditioning regimens. Current evidence does not allow the definition of one standard conditioning regimen for CLL. The most convincing data supporting allo-HSCT in CLL come from studies of NMA conditioning or RIC (Kramer et al. 2017; Schetelig et al. 2017b; Sorror et al. 2008). The choice of conditioning intensity may vary according to the individual situation. In the presence of comorbidity and chemosensitive disease, RIC or NMA conditioning appear to be more appropriate, whereas high-intensity regimens might be preferable in younger patients with good performance status but poorly controlled disease.

84.4.3 Outcome After Allo-HSCT for CLL

Based on a large registry cohort, estimated event-free survival, overall survival, and NRM 10 years after allo-HSCT were 28% (95% confidence interval (CI), 25–31), 35% (95% CI, 32–38), and 40% (95% CI, 37–42), respectively (van Gelder et al. 2017). Patients who passed the 5-year landmark EFS ($N = 394$) had a 79% probability (95% CI, 73–85) of surviving the subsequent 5 years without an event. Relapse and NRM contributed equally to late treatment failure. Higher age, lower performance status, unrelated donor type, and unfavorable sex mismatch have an adverse impact on 2-year NRM. Despite the risks of NRM and even late relapse/progression, the prospect of long-term DFS on average in almost one out of three patients remains an argument to consider allo-HCT especially for young patients with high-risk CLL.

84.4.4 Post transplant Minimal Residual Disease Monitoring and Immune Intervention in CLL

In CLL, sensitive MRD quantification (i.e., 1 cell in $10^4$ or less) can be obtained by PCR- or flow cytometry-based assays. The decline of the MRD level is often delayed and is closely related to immuno-reconstitution after allo-HSCT. GVL-induced MRD negativity after allo-HSCT is sustained in the majority of patients and is highly predictive of freedom from relapse. MRD monitoring is a valid instrument for the guidance of preemptive immune interventions directed at disease eradication after allo-HSCT, such as the tapering of IS and the use of DLI. The published evidence suggests that CLL is sensitive to timely preemptive immune intervention by modulation of systemic IS (Ritgen et al. 2008; Moreno et al. 2006).

84.5 Summary and Perspectives

Allo-HSCT from MRD or MUD can induce long-term DFS in patients with high-risk CLL. It is a standard treatment option for patients with high-risk CLL who have failed at least one pathway inhibitor. Generally, allo-HSCT should be considered before the disease has advanced to a status of complete refractoriness. At the same time, allo-HSCT should not be recommended for patients who face a higher short-term risk of mortality after transplantation compared to conventional therapy. In the absence of randomized
controlled comparisons of these treatment strategies, the outcome of an individual patient has to be predicted based on published data. This requires careful individual assessment of the risk of allo-HSCT versus prolonged conventional treatment. Patients should be referred to a transplant center once their disease proved refractory to at least one pathway inhibitor in order to get consultation with an expert in the field. Finally, all approved drugs for CLL can also be used for the treatment of post transplant relapse, and further improvements of donor selection, patient care, and prevention of complications can be expected; thus, overall outcome after transplantation will continue to improve.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key Points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Indications for allo-HSCT** | • High-risk CLL after failure of pathway inhibitor treatment  
• CLL in combination with therapy-related MDS  
• History of Richter’s transformation |
| **Remission induction prior to start of conditioning** | Patient who receive allo-HSCT in remission enjoy a lower risk of relapse. The most potent option for remission induction should be chosen. This can be any pathway inhibitor or CIT |
| **Donor, graft source, and GVHD-prophylaxis** | No disease-specific criteria have to be considered (Michallet et al. 2010; van Gorkom et al. 2018) |
| **Conditioning** | Patients should receive either NMA conditioning or alkylator-based RIC. A history of a Richter’s transformation or concomitant MDS may justify dose intensification (Schetelig et al. 2017b; Sorror et al. 2008) |
| **MRD monitoring** | At least quarterly assessments of MRD by FACS or PCR should be offered after allo-HSCT. Early taper of IS with or without administration of DLI, especially in patients without GVHD but with persistent disease, may result in MRD-negative CR in this group of patients (Ritgen et al. 2008) |
| **Risk factors for non-relapse mortality** | • Advanced age  
• Poor performance status and/or high HCT-CI score  
• Partially matched as compared to matched donor HSCT |
| **Outcomes** | Estimates based on HSCT performed between 2000 and 2010 reported to EBMT registry (van Gelder et al. 2017):  
2-year and 5-year NRM, 30% and 36%  
2-year and 5-year CI of relapse/progression, 21% and 29%  
2-year and 10-year EFS, 49% and 28%  
2-year and 10-year OS, 62% and 35% |
| **Relapse after allo-HSCT** | Relapse after allo-HSCT may be treated successfully. To current knowledge the history of allo-HSCT does not restrict treatment options for patients with relapsed CLL. Ibrutinib appears to be especially favorable for the treatment of first relapse after transplantation in patients without proven ibrutinib resistance |
References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
85.1 Definition and Epidemiology

Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL) is a neoplasm of morphologically medium to large B-lymphoid cells. The most recent WHO classification of tumors of hematopoietic and lymphoid tissues (Swerdlow et al. 2017) divides DLBCL into DLBCL, NOS with distinct morphological (centroblastic, immunoblastic, anaplastic, rare) and molecular (germinal center B-cell, activated B-cell) subtypes, other lymphomas of large B cells, high-grade B-cell lymphoma (with MYC and BCL2 and/or BCL6 rearrangements or NOS), and B-cell lymphoma, unclassifiable.

With some important exceptions, diagnostic work-up and treatment are identical in all DLBCL subtypes. It is beyond the scope of this article to fully describe the exceptions; we mention the most important differences but otherwise focus on transplantation for patients with relapsed/refractory DLBCL.

DLBCL is the most frequent lymphoma subtype and accounts for approximately one third of newly diagnosed lymphoma cases worldwide. In Europe, the 10-year prevalence of DLBCL is estimated at 43.3 per 100,000 per year (Smith et al. 2015); the age-adjusted incidence rate of DLBCL reported by the US Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) program is 7.14/100,000 person-years (Howlader et al. 2017). The disease is slightly more frequent in men than in women; it mostly is a disease of the elderly (median patient age beyond 60 years) but can occur also in children and adolescents.

85.2 Diagnosis

The diagnosis is made according to the WHO classification from a sufficiently large surgical specimen or excisional lymph node biopsy; needle biopsies are not recommended. Beyond morphological evaluation by an experienced pathologist, determination of the immunophenotype of the malignant cells (positivity of malignant cells for CD19 and CD20 must be documented because of its therapeutic consequences) and determination of the cell of origin by adequate molecular methods are required (Swerdlow et al. 2017).


85.3 Classification

The large B-cell lymphomas comprise the morphological and molecular subtypes of DLBCL, NOS, high-grade B-cell lymphomas, and B-cell lymphomas, unclassifiable (see paragraph 1). The WHO classification describes 12 other (and 1 provisional) lymphomas of large B cells. Among these, primary diffuse large B-cell lymphoma of the CNS (PCNSL), lymphomatoid granulomatosis (LG), primary mediastinal large B-cell lymphoma (PMBCL), and plasmablastic lymphoma not only show significant differences in pathogenesis and clinical manifestation but in most centers are treated different from classical DLBCL. Exact subtyping of diagnostic specimens taking into account their origin (e.g., primary cutaneous DLBCL, leg type; PCNSL; primary effusion lymphoma) is important. In order to fulfill all WHO requirements, the cell of origin (GCB- or ABC-subtype by IHC or gene expression profiling) and the presence/absence of distinct chromosomal translocations (BCL6, BCL2, MYC by FISH testing or IHC) must be determined.

85.4 Risk Factors

The International Prognostic Index (IPI) remains the most important tool in order to estimate the prognosis of patients with DLBCL (Ziepert et al. 2010). The IPI takes into account five factors (age, stage, LDH, performance status, and number of extranodal sites involved). Patients within the low (IPI 0, 1), low-intermediate (IPI 2), high-intermediate (IPI 3), and high-risk group (IPI 4, 5) can expect 3-year overall survival of 91.4%, 80.9%, 65.1%, and 59.0%, respectively, if treated with R-CHOP or one of its variants. Other clinical risk factor models (R-IPI; NCCN-IPI) (Sehn et al. 2007; Zhou et al. 2014, respectively) have been proposed, but advantages over the original IPI seem limited.

85.5 First-Line Treatment

First-line treatment of patients with DLBCL generally consists of RTX at standard dose (375 mg/sqm) in combination with CHOP (CY, DOXO, VCR, PRD) or one of its variants such as ACVBP, CHOEP, or DA-EPOCH chemotherapy. Six cycles of R-CHOP are generally used. However, the cycle number can be reduced to four without jeopardizing treatment outcome in patients with IPI 0. Patients with early disease (IPI 0 and 1) have been treated with abbreviated chemotherapy and involved-field radiotherapy (RT). Recent studies do not support a role for RT in such patients (Lamy et al. 2018). In patients with IPI 2–5, radiotherapy to bulky and extranodal disease is regularly recommended after R-CHOP in some but not in the majority of countries.

Several studies evaluated the role of consolidation high-dose therapy followed by auto-HSCT in the RTX era. The French (Gouill et al. 2007), Italian (Chiappella et al. 2017), and German (Schmitz et al. 2012) studies failed to demonstrate an advantage of auto-HSCT over conventional chemotherapy. The only American study (Stiff et al. 2013) reported an advantage of auto-HSCT in younger patients with high-risk disease (age-adjusted IPI 3); however, this study included patients treated with CHOP only and patients with T-cell lymphoma and as a consequence was underpowered in order to show a significant advantage of auto-HSCT over R-CHOP (Schmitz et al. 2014). In young patients who remain PET positive after two cycles of chemo-immunotherapy, auto-HSCT is performed in some but not in the majority of countries.

Patients with PCNSL or DLBCL with primary involvement of testicles must receive chemotherapy penetrating into the CNS.

More aggressive chemotherapies (CHOEP, DA-EPOCH, or ACVBP) in combination with RTX with or without RT are recommended in patients with PMBCL or plasmablastic lymphoma and in patients with high-intermediate and high-risk disease (Ghielmini et al. 2013; Recher et al. 2011). If patients with DLBCL of ABC subtype or rearrangement of MYC and BCL2 and/or BCL6 (double- or triple-hit lymphoma) should receive more aggressive therapy, therapy remains controversial (Friedberg 2017; Staiger et al. 2017). The same holds true for the value of targeted therapies (ibrutinib, lenalidomide, and others) given in addition to
R-CHOP. Prospective randomized studies addressing these questions have been closed but not published yet.

### 85.6 Second-Line Treatment

The principles of management of relapsed and refractory DLBCL are shown in Table 85.1. All chemotherapy-based salvage regimens cause hematologic toxicity in many cases necessitating RBC and platelet transfusions. Mucositis, gastrointestinal toxicities, neutropenic fever, and infections are reported in a significant proportion of patients. Nephrotoxicity, hepatotoxicity, and other non-hematologic toxicities are also observed. Failure to mobilize hematopoietic stem cells in 10–20% of cases occurs with all salvage regimens. Efficacy of different salvage options is shown in Table 85.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 85.1 Management of relapsed or refractory DLBCL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>— <strong>New biopsy</strong>: Highly recommended in all patients with R/R DLBCL. Core biopsies acceptable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— <strong>Radiological evaluation</strong>: PET/CT recommended for evaluation of treatment outcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— <strong>Salvage therapy followed by auto-HSCT</strong> is currently considered <strong>standard of care</strong> for patients with R/R DLBCL. Especially in patients with refractory disease or early relapse (within 12 months from the end of first-line therapy), results are not satisfactory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— <strong>Allo-HSCT</strong> should be considered in younger patients without comorbidities especially in patients with refractory disease or early relapse. Patients relapsing after auto-HSCT are candidates for allo-HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— <strong>CAR T cells</strong> are a valid option whenever available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— <strong>Selection of salvage therapy</strong>: Randomized studies failed to show significant differences in terms of efficacy or toxicity with different salvage regimens. R-DHAP seems superior to R-ICE for patients with a GCB subtype (Thieblemont et al. 2011). Therefore, salvage strategies should take into account individual patient characteristics (age and comorbidities) considering potential cumulative hematologic and non-hematologic toxicity and the possibility of harvesting stem cells. Cardiac, pulmonary, renal, and liver function should be evaluated prior to treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— The objective of salvage chemotherapy is to induce a complete or partial response indicating that the tumor remains chemo-sensitive, this having a major impact on outcome after transplantation. PET negativity after salvage therapy is a surrogate marker of chemo-sensitivity and predicts patient outcome after auto-HSCT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 85.2 Response to salvage regimens</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Regimens compared in prospective randomized trials</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-DHAP (Gisselbrecht et al. 2010)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDP (Crump et al. 2014)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICE (Gisselbrecht et al. 2010)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addition of new drugs (lenalidomide, ibrutinib, brentuximab vedotin, polatuzumab, other) to RTX-chemo in order to improve response rates of salvage regimens is not recommended outside clinical trials</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Percentages in brackets from Crump et al. (2014)*

### 85.7 Autologous HSCT

Autologous HSCT is still considered the standard treatment for patients with refractory or relapsed (R/R) DLBCL. In the RTX era, however, the results of salvage therapy followed by auto-HSCT are less convincing than before, and the benefit of auto-HSCT even for those patients achieving PR or CR with salvage chemotherapy and RTX is limited (Crump et al. 2014, 2017). In particular, patients with refractory disease or early relapse pretreated with RTX as part of first-line therapy rarely achieve long-term remissions after auto-HSCT. In the CORAL study, 3-year PFS for such patients was only 23% although those proceeding to auto-HSCT showed 3-year PFS of 39%. Alternative treatment, e.g., allo-HSCT, may be more adequate. EBMT indications (Sureda et al. 2015) for auto-HSCT in DLBCL are shown in Table 85.3. Auto-HSCT is generally not recommended as part of first-line therapy in DLBCL although recent data on PET-guided auto-HSCT are promising (Casasnovas et al. 2017). We discourage auto-HSCT for patients with refractory disease not responding to salvage therapy.
85.7.1 HSC Source

PBSC is used in >90% of auto-HSCT.

85.7.2 Consolidation (High-Dose Therapy)

Consolidation (high-dose therapy) should eliminate malignant cells with minimal impact on organ systems other than hematopoiesis. The choice of the preparative regimen varies and is based on institutional experience rather than evidence. The BEAM regimen typically consisting of BCNU (300 mg/m² × 1, day-6), VP (200 mg/m², days -5 to -2), Ara-C (200 mg/m² bid, days -5 to -2), and MEL (140 mg/kg/day ×1, days -1) is the preferred regimen in EBMT centers.

Acute toxicities of BEAM include severe mucositis, nausea and vomiting, diarrhea, hepatotoxicity, nephrotoxicity, and non-infective pulmonary complications. Late toxicities include pulmonary complications such as chronic interstitial fibrosis and decrease in lung diffusion capacity (21%), infection (30%), metabolic syndrome (17%), cardiovascular complications (12%), secondary tumors (20%), and other toxicities (20%). The most frequent cause of NRM is subsequent malignancy (12-fold increased risk compared with the general population). Late death is also attributed to cardiac toxicity (2%), pulmonary complications (2%), and other treatment-related toxicities (15%).

Other high-dose regimens have been used sometimes because of shortage of MEL or BCNU. Recent publications suggest that the BEAC (CY) and TEAM (TT) regimens show efficacy and toxicity similar to BEAM in most if not all lymphoma subtypes (Robinson et al. 2018; Sellner et al. 2016).

85.7.3 Prognostic Factors

Adverse prognostic factors for auto-HSCT identified in prospective studies include early relapse within 12 months of induction therapy, prior exposure to R, secondary age-adjusted IPI, poor performance status, and involvement of two or more extranodal sites at relapse.

85.7.4 Results of Auto-HSCT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease status</th>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>NRM</th>
<th>OS at 3 years</th>
<th>EFS at 3 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First complete remission</td>
<td>Clinical option</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
<td>51% (DHAP)</td>
<td>35% (DHAP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensitive relapse/2nd complete response</td>
<td>Standard of care</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>39% (both arms)</td>
<td>26% (both arms)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refractory disease</td>
<td>Clinical option</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>39% (both arms)</td>
<td>26% (both arms)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Results from prospective randomized studies. Differences in OS and EFS may be explained by differing patient characteristics and study design.

85.7.5 Consolidation Treatment After Auto-HSCT

There are no data and no recommendation for consolidative therapy after auto-HSCT for DLBCL. In the CORAL study Gisselbrecht et al. (2012), RTX maintenance did not improve outcome.

85.7.6 Tandem Transplantation

No data from the RTX era are available.

85.7.7 Relapse After Auto-HSCT

Patients relapsing after auto-HSCT generally have a poor prognosis. Therapeutic options are limited. Data on new drugs specifically used post auto-HSCT are not available. Results of allo-HSCT after failure of auto-HSCT are reported below. CAR T cells may be a therapeutic option; however, no more than anecdotal data are available.
85.8 Allogeneic HSCT

Allo-HSCT is considered a curative treatment option for patients with DLBCL who relapse or progress after auto-HSCT. The EBMT reported on 101 such patients who had been allografted for DLBCL between 1997 and 2006; 37 patients were transplanted after MAC and 64 patients after RIC (van Kampen et al. 2011). Three-year NRM was 28.2%, relapse rate was 30.1%, PFS was 41.7%, and OS was 53.8% after 3 years. No statistically significant differences were seen between patients transplanted after MAC or RIC or patients transplanted from MRS or MUDs.

The only prospective randomized clinical trial reported so far (Glass et al. 2014) compared GVHD prophylaxis including RTX or not after MAC and allo-HSCT for R/R DLBCL. No significant difference between patients receiving or not receiving RTX in addition to standard MMF and TAC for GVHD prophylaxis was found. OS was 52% for all 82 patients randomized with significant differences between patients transplanted from a MUD or MMUD and patients receiving or not receiving ATG. For patients transplanted from matched family donors or MUD receiving ATG, OS was 64.7%. These data show that allo-HSCT is a valid alternative to any other treatment for patients relapsing after failure from auto-HSCT. Allo-HSCT should also be considered for patients with early relapse after first-line R-CHOP or similar.

85.8.1 Stem Cell Source

PBSC is the preferred stem cell source for allo-HSCT. The use of haploidentical donors has somewhat increased the use of BM in some of the series.

85.8.2 Donor Selection

In recent years, there has been a significant increase in the use of haploidentical donors for allo-HSCT after the introduction of PT-CY. Retrospective analyses from EBMT and CIBMTR (Kanate et al. 2016; Ghosh et al. 2016) suggest that allo-HSCT from HLA-identical family and URD or from haploidentical donors give comparable results. However, no prospective clinical trials comparing haploidentical donors versus HLA-identical siblings and MUD have been published so far.

85.8.3 Conditioning

RIC regimens reduce NRM after transplantation in many indications but also tend to increase RI after transplantation. Because no prospective clinical trials demonstrating the superiority of one conditioning regimen over another have been reported, the question if RIC or MAC should be preferred cannot generally be answered. Aggressive disease not completely responding to salvage therapy and high tumor are situations where MAC should strongly be considered.

85.8.4 Prognostic Factors

The most important adverse prognostic factor that impacts long-term outcome of patients being treated with allo-HSCT is disease status before the treatment. However, unlike the situation with auto-HSCT, also patients not perfectly responding to salvage therapy, e.g., patients with minor response or stable disease, may benefit from allo-HSCT.

85.8.5 The Use of Allo-HSCT in the Era of New Drugs and CART Cells

In contrast to the situation for other lymphomas, e.g., Hodgkin’s disease, new drugs have not really affected the role and positioning of allo-HSCT in patients relapsing/progressing after auto-HSCT. Lenalidomides, ibrutinib, polatuzumab, or checkpoint inhibitors with or without chemotherapy can be used to bring more patients to transplantation. None of these drugs can substitute for allo-HSCT because
remissions are mostly transient, and no cures have been achieved.

CAR T cells (Schuster et al. 2017; Neelapu et al. 2018) are an option for patients failing an autograft for DLBCL. However, results in day-to-day routine are not yet clear, and CAR T cells are not available outside clinical trials.

### 85.8.6 Results of Allo-HSCT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NRM</th>
<th>OS at 3 years</th>
<th>PFS at 3 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25–35%</td>
<td>40–60%</td>
<td>30–50%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 85.8.7 Disease Relapse After Allo-HSCT

Disease relapse carries a dim prognosis. Beyond DLI, therapeutic options are few, clinical trials should be actively sought, and palliative care is a reality in many cases. Checkpoint inhibitors may be an option with mixed results and risk of GVHD.

---

### 85.9 Therapeutic Algorithm Recommended by the Authors (See Fig. 85.1)

### 85.10 Long-Term Outcomes of Auto- and Allo-HSCT in Patients with R/R DLBCL (See Fig. 85.2)

**Key Points**
- In the RTX era, auto-HSCT is generally not recommended as part of first-line therapy in DLBCL although recent data on PET-guided auto-HSCT are promising. Auto-HSCT is still the standard of care for those DLBCL patients with chemosensitive first relapse. Results of auto-HSCT might improve with better

---

Fig. 85.1 Allogeneic and autologous HSCT in R/R lymphoma: treatment decision
selection of patients (e.g., including PET imaging for patient selection), and improved salvage strategies results.

- Allo-HSCT is the only curative treatment option for patients with refractory disease and those relapsing after auto-HSCT. Patients with early relapse (< 12 months after first-line treatment) should be considered for allo-HSCT. Conditioning should be guided by the individual clinical situation. Haploidentical transplants may substitute for unrelated donor transplants in the near future. New drugs have not really changed the treatment algorithm for DLBCL. The role of CAR T cells is under study.

**Fig. 85.2** Long-term outcomes of auto- and allo-HSCT in patients with R/R DLBCL (EBMT data base, with permission)
References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
86.1 Introduction

Mantle cell lymphoma (MCL) is an aggressive B-cell lymphoma, which is characterized by the chromosomal translocation t(11;14)(q13;q32) and overexpression of cyclin D1 in the vast majority of cases. Most patients present with advanced stage disease, often with extra-nodal dissemination, and an unfavourable clinical course. Treatment with conventional chemotherapy resulted in unsatisfactory outcomes and a median survival of less than 3 years after diagnosis of MCL (Zucca et al. 1995).

86.2 Autologous HSCT

During recent years, the prognosis of patients with MCL has improved considerably, and the refinement of dose-intensified approaches such as auto-HSCT has contributed significantly to this development. A prospective randomized trial by the European Mantle Cell Lymphoma Network (EMCLN) has demonstrated the superiority of auto-HSCT consolidation over interferon maintenance (Dreyling et al. 2005) in the pre-RTX era. The introduction of RTX and the addition of high-dose cytarabine (HD-ARAC) to the induction treatment before auto-HSCT have further improved PFS and OS of MCL patients (Geisler et al. 2008). The benefit of high-dose HD-ARAC before auto-HSCT could be confirmed in prospective clinical trial (Hermine et al. 2016). RTX- and HD-ARAC-based induction treatment followed by auto-HSCT is therefore recommended as a first-line treatment standard for young and fit MCL patients (Cheah et al. 2016; Dreyling et al. 2017).

Although a significant proportion of patients with MCL enjoy long-term disease control after auto-HSCT, relapse remains the main cause of treatment failure. The prognosis of patients with MCL recurrence after auto-HSCT appears to be extremely poor, especially if occurring early after transplant (Dietrich et al. 2011; Dietrich et al. 2014a). A proportion of almost 40% of MCL patients relapsing after auto-HSCT were reported to suffer from chemotherapy-refractory disease (Dietrich et al. 2014a) with a high prevalence of clonal TP53 mutations (Halldorsdottir et al. 2011). In order to prevent these refractory courses, treatment strategies, which effectively reduce the risk of relapse after ASCT, are warranted.

Retrospective studies suggested a significantly improved outcome with RTX maintenance subsequent to high-dose chemotherapy and auto-HSCT for patients with MCL (Dietrich et al. 2014b; Graf et al. 2015). The French study group conducted a prospective randomized phase III trial (LyMa trial) that investigated RTX maintenance versus
observation after auto-HSCT in previously untreated MCL patients. Final results of the LyMa trial confirmed the superiority of RTX maintenance with regard to PFS and OS (Le Gouill et al. 2017). The beneficial effect of RTX maintenance was observed in both PET-positive and PET-negative patients after induction treatment prior to auto-HSCT (Mei et al. 2017). This finding implies that the benefit of RTX maintenance after auto-HSCT is present for low- and high-risk MCL patients.

### 86.3 Allogeneic HSCT

In a large EBMT registry study, which investigated the outcome of MCL patients after first-line auto-HSCT failure, 24% of all MCL patients received a rescue consolidation HSCT. Only a minority of 2% received a second auto-HSCT of whom only one patient experienced a long-term survival. These limited results do not justify a rescue auto-HSCT as reasonable salvage strategy in this situation. In contrast, the majority of patients who received a second HSCT underwent allo-HSCT, and a significant proportion of them achieved a durable remission, translating into a 3-year OS of 43% (Dietrich et al. 2014a). Other registry studies and single-centre experiences report similar results (Cook et al. 2010; Tam et al. 2009; Le Gouill et al. 2012).

Long-term efficacy of RIC allo-HSCT was recently demonstrated in a large cohort of MCL patients (Robinson et al. 2018). The cumulative incidence of relapse was 40% at 5 years, and OS was 40% at 5 years. Patients who developed a chronic GVHD and/or patients who did not receive an in vivo TCD with CAMPATH had a significantly lower relapse rate, suggesting the existence of a graft versus MCL effect. Despite long-term remissions after allo-HSCT, chemorefractory disease (Robinson et al. 2018) or early relapse after first-line auto-HSCT (Dietrich et al. 2014a) significantly reduced the long-term survival of MCL patients after allo-HSCT. Chemotherapy-free salvage treatments are obvious options for these highly refractory patients. A recent EBMT survey suggested that ibritinib may improve the perspective of refractory patients scheduled for allo-HSCT (Dreger et al. 2018). It is important to note that there is a small group of relapsed MCL patients who survived longer than 5 years even without allo-HSCT, suggesting a rather indolent disease course in a subset of patients (Dietrich et al. 2014a). Such patients with a low percentage of Ki67-positive tumour cells might not benefit from an allo-HSCT.

**Key Points**

- First-line auto-HSCT and RTX maintenance is currently challenged against auto-HSCT with ibritinib maintenance or a transplant-free approach with ibritinib and chemotherapy in an EMCLN study (TRIANGLE).
- As long as we await these data to redefine the value of auto-HSCT in the ibritinib era, auto-HSCT and RTX maintenance should be recommended as the standard treatment for transplant-eligible patients with MCL.
- A second auto-HSCT does not appear to be a promising option in patients with MCL failing a first auto-HSCT. For these patients allo-HSCT should be considered.

**References**

Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
87.1 Burkitt Lymphoma (BL)

87.1.1 Definition and Epidemiology

BL accounts for around 2% of all adult NHL with a higher incidence in patients with immunodeficiency and in patients who are HIV positive. There is an endemic pediatric subtype in Equatorial Africa which is strongly associated with EBV. The clinical course of BL usually is highly aggressive with a Ki67 expression of nearly 100% requiring prompt institution of therapy.

87.1.2 Diagnosis

A tissue biopsy/cytology sample is mandatory for the diagnosis. The hallmark of the tumor is the rearrangement of a gene encoding MYC, but the diagnosis requires a combination of morphology, immunophenotype, and genetic analysis.

87.1.3 Risk Factors

Several studies have identified risk factors for poor outcome. Beside older age, advanced stage, and comorbidities, such risk factors are an elevated serum LDH, failure to achieve CR, anemia, CNS involvement, and BM infiltration.

87.1.4 First-Line Treatment

The optimal first-line therapy in BL has not been defined yet. To achieve a fast and stable remission, an intensive regimen combining several compounds is used in most centers. Combinations of RTX, doxorubicin (DOX), alkylators, VCR, and VP with direct therapy to prevent CNS disease are highly active.

The HOVON CODOX-M/IV AC regimen (CY, DOX, VCR, MTX, IFO, Ara-C, and VP) achieved a 2-year EFS of 65% and a 2-year OS of 73% and is very active especially in high-risk patients (Mead et al. 2002).

The B-ALL protocol (MTX, Ara-C, CY, VP, IFO) of the German GMALL study group achieved a CR in 88% of patients, with a 5-year PFS of 71% and a 5-year OS of 80% (Hoelzer et al. 2014). This means that a significant portion of patients have a chance to get cured with first-line therapy.

Recently, using modifications of R-EPOCH (RTX, VP, VCR, CY, DOX), high activity in BL was reported (Roschewski et al. 2017).
87.1.5 Autologous HSCT

There are several studies exploring the role of auto-
HSCT in first remission. In a prospective trial, the
HOVON group treated 27 patients with 2 cycles of
intensive induction followed by BEAM-conditioned
auto-HSCT for those patients achieving at least a
PR (van Imhoff et al. 2005). The 5-year EFS and
OS was 73% and 81%, respectively. In a retrospec-
tive analysis of 117 patients receiving auto-HSCT
as part of first-line therapy between 1984 and 1994,
patients in CR at time of transplant had a 3-year OS
of 72% (Sweetenham et al. 1996). In the relapse
situation, patients who were chemotherapy-sensi-
tive had a 3-year OS of 37% following auto-HSCT
compared to just 7% for those who were chemo-
therapy resistant (Sweetenham et al. 1996). In sum-
mary, auto-HSCT in BL is feasible, but there is no
documented advantage compared to standard com-
bination chemotherapy for patients responding suf-
ficiently to first-line treatment. Auto-HSCT may be
used to optimize remission in patients with insuffi-
cient response or as bridging to allo-HSCT. In the
relapse setting, given the intensive regimens usually
used as first-line treatment, the difficulty lies in
achieving a response good enough to proceed to
auto-HSCT and to collect HSC; hence, auto-HSCT
is rarely used in BL.

87.1.6 Allogeneic HSCT
(Peniket et al. 2003)

| Indicated in | CR ≥ 2 |
| Donor | MRS > MUD > MMUD |
| Conditioning | RIC > MAC |
| TRM (1 year) | 30% |
| OS (5 year) | 30–40% |
| DFS | 35% |

87.2 Lymphoblastic Lymphoma
(LBL)

87.2.1 Definition and Epidemiology

LBL is an aggressive neoplasm of precursor B
cells (B-LBL) or T cells (T-LBL) with features of
acute leukemia. It accounts for approximately
2% of all NHL. In adults, around 90% of all LBL
are T-LBL.

87.2.2 Diagnosis

The diagnosis is based on a LN biopsy. T-LBL is
usually TdT-positive with a variable expression
of other T-cell markers (CD7 and CD3 are often
positive).

87.2.3 Risk Factors

At this time, no convincing prognostic model
for these patients is available. Several studies
tried to identify risk factors; the following may
be associated with an unfavorable outcome: ele-
vated LDH, BM or CNS involvement, and stage
IV disease. The role of MRD in LBL has not
been defined yet, but as we learned from acute
leukemias and other lymphomas, persisted
MRD positivity might be a predictor of poor
outcome.

87.2.4 First-Line Treatment

Standard approaches for patients with LBL are
adapted to ALL protocols. These regimens con-
tain multiple drugs, such as CY, MTX, VCR,
Ara-C, thioguanine, L-asp, VP, nitrosoureas, and
anthracyclines. With these protocols, a CR rate of
80% and a DFS of 56% have been reported (Estey
et al. 2008).

87.2.5 Autologous HSCT

There are only very few studies evaluating the role
of auto-HSCT in LBL. In CR1, the use of auto-
HSCT as a consolidation may improve relapse-
free survival but has no effect on OS (Sweetenham
et al. 2001). In another study in 128 patients with
LBL receiving auto-HSCT, RR at 5 years was
56% (Levine et al. 2003). No documented role in
more advanced disease >CR1 is reported either. In
conclusion, data for auto-HSCT in LBL are too scarce to come to firm conclusions.

### 87.2.6 Allogeneic HSCT

There is also no established role for allo-HSCT in patients with LBL. Compared to auto-HSCT, allo-HSCT is associated with a higher TRM but lower RR. In 76 patients receiving allo-HSCT, 5-year RR was 34% (Levine et al. 2003). In this retrospective study, there was no significant difference in OS at 1 year and 5 years between auto-HSCT and allo-HSCT. In general, the indication for allo-HSCT should be based on risk factors, remission, and MRD.

### 87.3 Peripheral T-Cell Lymphomas (PTCLs)

#### 87.3.1 Definition and Epidemiology

PTCLs are a very heterogeneous group of lymphomas originating from the T-cell lineage. They account for approximately 10–15% of all NHL. Because of this low incidence, large randomized studies are difficult to perform.

#### 87.3.2 Diagnosis

The diagnosis, as in any NHL, should be based on a LN biopsy. The differential diagnosis between PTCL and other types of T-NHL is crucial for the outcomes, and in some specific cases, the treatments are very different.

#### 87.3.3 Risk Factors

The IPI is the most commonly used prognostic tool in PTCL. The following factors are associated with worse outcome: age >60 years, ECOG >1, elevated LDH, stages II–IV, and extranodal involvement >1 site. In anaplastic large cell lymphoma (ALCL), the tumors are categorized in ALK+ or ALK- with better prognosis for ALK+ lymphomas.

#### 87.3.4 First-Line Treatment

The primary goal of first-line treatment is to get a deep and continuing remission. Standard regimens are anthracycline-containing combinations like CHOP or CHOEP, achieving a 3-year EFS of 50–70% and a 3-year OS of 75–80% (Schmitz et al. 2010). In the relapse situation, the overall prognosis of PTLC is dismal, and the optimal treatment for these patients has not been defined yet. Relapse patients not able to receive intensive treatment including HSCT may be offered single-agent therapy, e.g., gemcitabine, or in case of CD30 expression, brentuximab vedotin.

#### 87.3.5 Autologous HSCT (Kyriakou et al. 2008; d’Amore et al. 2012; Kewalramani et al. 2006; Wilhelm et al. 2016)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicated in</th>
<th>CR1 (IPI &gt; 1), CR ≥ 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conditioning</td>
<td>BEAC, BEAM, LEAM, CBV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRM (1 year)</td>
<td>5–7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REL (3 years)</td>
<td>40–50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS (5 years)</td>
<td>70% (CR1), 50% (CR ≥ 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFS (5 years)</td>
<td>50% (CR1), 20–35% (CR ≥ 2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 87.3.6 Allogeneic HSCT (Schmitz et al. 2014, 2018; Dodero et al. 2012)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicated in</th>
<th>CR ≥ 2, relapse post auto-HSCT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Donor</td>
<td>MRS &gt; MUD &gt; MMUD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditioning</td>
<td>RIC &gt; MAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GVHD prophylaxis</td>
<td>CSA, CSA-MTX, CSA-MMF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graft failure</td>
<td>&lt;10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRM (1 year)</td>
<td>20–25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REL (3 years)</td>
<td>20–40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS (3 years)</td>
<td>40–60%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFS (3 years)</td>
<td>30–50%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 87.4 HIV-Associated Lymphomas

#### 87.4.1 Definition and Epidemiology

Patients infected with HIV have an increased risk of developing NHLs as compared to the general population. The most frequent subtypes are
DLBCL and BL. Both are AIDS-defining illnesses, while HL is one of the non-AIDS-defining malignancies.

### 87.4.2 Risk Factors

In the era of combined antiretroviral therapy (cART), the risk factors that determine prognosis in patients with HIV-related lymphoma are the same as in the general population and, hence, depend on the subtype of lymphoma, rather than on HIV-related factors.

### 87.4.3 First-Line Therapy

The optimal therapy for these patients has not been defined yet, but since the availability of cART, the outcome of HIV-lymphoma has considerably improved. The consequent use of cART during therapy is of major importance for successful treatment. In first-line treatment, patients will receive treatment comparable with HIV-negative patients. The indication for HSCT has to be discussed in the relapse situation.

### 87.4.4 Autologous HSCT (Hübel et al. 2017; Diez-Martin et al. 2009; Balsalobre et al. 2009)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicated in</th>
<th>CR ≥ 2; same indications as in the general population with the same type of lymphoma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conditioning</td>
<td>BEAC, BEAM, LEAM, CBV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRM (1 year)</td>
<td>5–7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REL (3 years)</td>
<td>30–40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS (5 years)</td>
<td>50–60%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFS (5 years)</td>
<td>50–60%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 87.4.5 Allogeneic HSCT

Experience on the use of allo-HSCT in patients with lymphoma and HIV infection is very limited, and no definitive recommendation can be given at this time. There are some case reports or small retrospective analysis showing that allo-HSCT in HIV-positive patients using MRD, MUD, or CB is feasible, but application of cART and viroimmunological reconstitution is a matter of debate. In a recent report of five HIV-positive patients who underwent allo-HSCT with various hematologic malignancies, there was no TRM or major infections (Mulanovich et al. 2016). HIV virus load remained undetectable with continuous cART. Three patients relapsed 6, 7, and 13 months after transplant, and two were alive and well after 42 and 55 months.

### References


Kyriakou C, Canals C, Goldstone A, et al. High-dose therapy and autologous stem-cell transplantation in angioimmunoblastic lymphoma: complete remission at transplantation is the major determinant of


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
88.1 Definition and Epidemiology

HL is a malignancy arising from germinal centre or post-germinai centre B cells. The cancer cells form a minority of the tumour and are surrounded by a reactive inflammatory milieu comprising lymphocytes, eosinophils, neutrophils, histiocyes and plasma cells. These malignant cells can be pathognomonic, multinucleate giant cells or large mononuclear cells and, together, are referred to as Hodgkin and Reed-Sternberg (HRS) cells.

HL accounts for approximately 10% of cases of newly diagnosed lymphoma. The incidence of HL in Europe is 2.2 per 100,000 per year with a mortality rate of 0.7 cases/100,000 a year. The disease is more frequent in men than in women, and peaks in incidence are noted in young adults and in people older than 60 years. Incidence has remained mostly unchanged during the past two decades.

88.2 Diagnosis

Pathological diagnosis should be made according to the WHO classification from a sufficiently large surgical specimen or excisional lymph node biopsy to provide enough material for fresh frozen and formalin-fixed samples (Eichenauer et al. 2018).

88.3 Classification

HL is classified as either classical (cHL, defined by the presence of HRS cells) or nodular lymphocyte-predominant (NLPHL). The immunophenotype of the malignant cells in cHL and NLPHL differs significantly and helps to establish the diagnosis. Four subtypes of cHL exist (nodular sclerosis, mixed cellularity, rich in lymphocytes, and lymphocyte depleted), which differ in presentation, sites of involvement, epidemiology and association with EBV. Management, however, is broadly similar in all subtypes. NLPHL has a distinct clinical course, and it only represents less than 5% of the cases of HL.

88.4 Risk Factors

The outlook for patients with early-stage disease (stages I–IIA) is excellent, with OS exceeding 90% in many trials. In advanced-stage disease (IIIB, III–IV), OS is 75–90%. Risk factors for patients with early-stage disease are size of
mediastinal mass, age, erythrocyte sedimentation rate, number of nodal areas, B symptoms and mixed cellularity or lymphocyte-depleted histology. Different risk stratification systems combining these factors are defined by the EORTC, GHSG, NCCN and National Cancer Institute of Canada and are currently used in clinical practice. Risk factors for advance stages consist of albumin <4 g/dL, haemoglobin <10.5 g/dL, male, age ≥45 years, stage IV disease, leucocytosis ≥15 x 10^9/L and lymphocytopenia (lymphocyte count less than 8% of white blood cell count and/or lymphocyte count less than 0.6 x 10^9/L) (International Prognosis Score, 1 point per factor) (Eichenauer et al. 2018).

### 88.5 First-Line Treatment

The treatment of patients with cHL is primarily guided by the clinical stage and prognostic factors of disease. Patients with early-stage disease are usually treated with a combination of chemotherapy (ABVD) plus RTx. The amount of chemotherapy and dose of radiation differ for patients with favourable and unfavourable prognosis of disease. Chemotherapy (ABVD, escalated BEACOPP or Stanford V) is the main treatment for patients with advanced stage, and RTx may be used for selected patients as consolidation (Eichenauer et al. 2018).

### 88.6 Second-Line Treatment Before Auto-HSCT

The principles of management of relapse or refractory cHL are shown in Table 88.1 (von Tresckow and Moskowitz 2016). All chemotherapy-based salvage regimens are associated with haematologic toxicity. Infection and neutropenic fever are reported in 10–24% of cases. Nephrotoxicity, hepatotoxicity, mucositis and gastrointestinal toxicity are observed in <10%. Haematopoietic stem cell mobilization appears adequate with all regimens. Efficacy of different salvage options is shown in Table 88.2.

---

**Table 88.1** Principles of management of relapse or refractory cHL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New biopsy:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mandatory if relapse is ≥12 months after the end of primary treatment in order to exclude alternative diagnoses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highly recommended for patients with suspected relapse &lt;12 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If apparent primary refractory disease, histological confirmation of HL is only recommended if progression is suspected within new sites of disease. Biopsy may not be mandatory in patients with clear radiological progression in sites of primary disease during treatment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radiological evaluation:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A whole-body CT scan with contrast dye injection and a PET are recommended for further comparison</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Therapy:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Salvage therapy followed by high-dose chemotherapy and auto-HSCT is currently considered the standard of care for relapsed cHL patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No study has compared effectiveness of different salvage regimens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salvage strategy should be tailored on an individual basis taking into account the initial therapy given, the risk of adding cumulative non-haematologic toxicity and the possibility of harvesting stem cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac and pulmonary function should be evaluated prior to treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If indicated, reproductive counselling should be proposed prior to treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Objective of salvage chemotherapy: to produce a response (tumour remains chemosensitive), which has a major impact on post-auto-HSCT outcome. Achievement of PET negativity defines chemosensitivity and should be the goal of salvage chemotherapy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Autologous HSCT

Auto-HSCT is currently considered the standard treatment for relapsed/refractory (R/R) cHL patients. Two landmark randomized clinical trials, the British National Lymphoma Investigation (BNLI) in 1993 and the joint German Hodgkin Study Group (GHSG)/EBMT HD-R1 trial in 2002, compared high-dose chemotherapy followed by auto-HSCT versus chemotherapy and showed significant benefits of auto-HSCT in terms of EFS and FFTF in front of conventional salvage chemotherapy; however, there was no significant OS benefit. EBMT current indications for autologous HSCT in HL are shown in Table 88.3 (Sureda et al. 2015).

88.7.1 Stem Cell Source and Conditioning Regimen

Haematopoietic stem cells from mobilized PB are the preferred stem cell source for auto-HSCT.

Although the choice of preparative regimen varies and is typically based on institutional experience, BEAM is the preferred option. Standard BEAM consists of BCNU (300 mg/m² ×1, day -6), VP (200 mg/m², days -5 to -2), Ara-C (200 mg/m² bid, days -5 to -2) and MEL (140 mg/kg/day ×1, days -1). The CY, BCNU and VP (CBV) regimen is also commonly used in North America. The use of TBI-based regimens is not recommended due to the higher risk of developing secondary malignancies.

Late toxicities of BEAM include pulmonary complications (chronic interstitial fibrosis and decrease in lung diffusing capacity, 21%), infection,
tion (30%), metabolic syndrome (17%), cardiovascular complications (12%), secondary tumours (20%) and other toxicities (20%). The most frequent cause of NRM is subsequent malignancy (12-fold increased risk compared with the general population).

88.7.2 Prognostic Factors

Adverse prognostic factors for post-auto-HSCT outcome consistent across many reported trials included primary induction failure, initial remission duration of <3 months, relapse within 12 months of induction therapy, extranodal disease, B symptoms, advanced stage at relapse, resistance to salvage chemotherapy and persistent disease at the time of transplant.

88.7.3 Results of Auto-HSCT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease status</th>
<th>NRM (%)</th>
<th>OS at 5 years (%)</th>
<th>PFS at 5 years (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pre-auto-HSCT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemosensitive disease</td>
<td>0–18</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary refractory disease</td>
<td>0–18</td>
<td>30–36</td>
<td>15–38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

88.7.4 Consolidation Treatment After Auto-HSCT

Brentuximab vedotin (BV) is currently the only drug approved for consolidation treatment after auto-HSCT in patients at risk of relapse or progression. This approval was obtained after the results of the phase III AETHERA trial. In this multicentre randomized trial, 329 patients with relapsed or refractory HL were allocated to either consolidation therapy of up to 16 cycles of BV or placebo after auto-HSCT. PFS was significantly longer in patients in the BV group (median PFS 43 months vs. 24 months, \( P = 0.0013 \)). When patients were grouped by the number of risk factors, a higher number led to more notable benefits in the consolidation arm (Moskowitz et al. 2015).

88.8 Tandem Auto-HSCT

Several groups have explored a tandem transplant approach to improve post-transplant outcomes of patients with poor risk factors. These studies showed that tandem auto-HSCT is feasible and associated with a NRM of 0–5%, 5-year OS of 54–84%, and 5-year PFS of 49–55% (Smith et al. 2018). According to these results, risk-adapted tandem auto-HSCT can be considered an option for poor-risk patients, but integration of PET findings and new drugs such as BV and checkpoint inhibitors may help to refine the need for a second auto-HSCT and possibly improve outcomes of these patients.

88.9 Disease Relapse After Auto-HSCT

Patients relapsing following auto-HSCT have an overall poor prognosis with an OS of 30% at 5 years. Early relapse, stage IV, bulky disease, poor performance status and age \( \geq 50 \) years at auto-HSCT failure have been identified as predictors of poor outcome (Jethava et al. 2017; Kallam and Armitage 2018; Lapo and Blum 2016). Therapeutic options are very heterogeneous (Table 88.4) (Martínez et al. 2013; Hahn et al. 2013).

88.10 Allogeneic HSCT

Allo-HSCT is still considered a curative treatment strategy for patients with cHL who relapse or progress after auto-HSCT (Peggs et al. 2008). Our knowledge on the curative capacity of allo-HSCT relies on the results of several retrospective analyses, some of them registry-based, phase II prospective clinical trials Sureda et al. (2012) that included low number of patients and retrospective analyses that in a donor-versus-no-donor strategy demonstrate that allo-HSCT offers a significant benefit in terms of both PFS and OS. EBMT current indications for allo-HSCT in cHL are shown in Table 88.5.
Stem Cell Source, Type of Donor and Conditioning Regimen

HSC from mobilized PB are the preferred stem cell source for allo-HSCT. The use of haploidentical donors has increased the use of BM in some of the series. Later studies have demonstrated no significant differences in terms of GVHD incidence with the use of PB in this setting.

In recent years, there has been a significant increase in the use of haploidentical donors with the introduction of the PT-CY approach. The interesting results observed with this type of transplant have already decreased the use of MUD and MRD in the EBMT reporting centres (Gayoso et al. 2016). Retrospectively, registry-based studies from both EBMT and CIBMTR indicate that outcomes of PT-CY-based haplo-HSCT are similar to those of MRD and MUD; cumulative incidence of GVHD seems to be lower with the haploidentical approach and translates into a better PFS-cGVHD in some of the series (Martínez et al. 2017).

More than 50% of the patients with HL treated with allo-HSCT receive a RIC protocol. RIC regimens have demonstrated to significantly reduce NRM after transplantation but also to increase RI after transplant (Sureda et al. 2008). There are no formal prospective clinical trials demonstrating the superiority of a given conditioning protocol in front of the others. Retrospective analysis indicates that low-dose TBI-containing regimens are associated with a higher RI and lower survival than non-TBI-containing protocols.

### Table 88.4 Therapeutic options after auto-HSCT relapse

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Therapeutic Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brentuximab vedotin (Chen et al. 2016)</td>
<td>Currently approved for the treatment of cHL relapsed after auto-HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ORR 75%, CR 34%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PFS 5.6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nivolumab</td>
<td>Currently approved for the treatment of cHL relapsed after auto-HSCT and BV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ORR 69%, CR 16%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1-year OS 92%, median PFS 12–18 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pembrolizumab</td>
<td>Currently approved for the treatment of cHL relapsed after auto-HSCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ORR 69%, CR 22%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PFS 72% at 6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gemicitabine-based chemotherapy</td>
<td>ORR 69–86%, EFS 10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bendamustine</td>
<td>ORR 53–78%, CR 29–33%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lenalidomide</td>
<td>ORR 19%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histone deacetylase inhibitors</td>
<td>ORR 4–74%, CR 0–4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1-year OS 78%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Everolimus</td>
<td>ORR 47%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second auto-HSCT</td>
<td>NRM 15%, 5-year OS and PFS 30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allogeneic transplantation</td>
<td>See Sect. 88.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 88.5 EBMT current indications for allogeneic HSCT in cHL (Sureda et al. 2015)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease Risk</th>
<th>MSD</th>
<th>MUD</th>
<th>Alternative donorsa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First remission</td>
<td>GNR</td>
<td>GNR</td>
<td>GNR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level of evidence III</td>
<td>Level of evidence III</td>
<td>Level of evidence III</td>
<td>Level of evidence III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CR &gt; 1, previous auto-HSCT: no</td>
<td>Developmental</td>
<td>Developmental</td>
<td>Developmental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level of evidence III</td>
<td>Level of evidence III</td>
<td>Level of evidence III</td>
<td>Level of evidence III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRF &gt; 1, previous auto-HSCT: yes</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Clinical option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level of evidence II</td>
<td>Level of evidence II</td>
<td>Level of evidence II</td>
<td>Level of evidence III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refractory disease</td>
<td>Developmental</td>
<td>Developmental</td>
<td>Developmental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level of evidence II</td>
<td>Level of evidence II</td>
<td>Level of evidence II</td>
<td>Level of evidence III</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*MMUD haploidential donors, CB, GNR generally not recommended
88.10.2 Prognostic Factors

The most important adverse prognostic factor associated with long-term outcome after allo-HSCT is the disease status before transplant. However, the impact of a PET-negative CR before the procedure is not as straightforward as in the auto-HSCT setting.

88.10.3 The Use of Allo-HSCT in the Era of New Drugs

The role and positioning of allo-HSCT in patient’s relapsing/progressing after auto-HSCT are less clear with the introduction of new drugs. Numbers of allo-HSCT for this indication seem to have decreased over the last 2 years.

BV has been used as a bridge to allo-HSCT. There is no evidence of a need of a washout period between the last dose of BV and day 0 of HSCT. The number of BV cycles being given before allo-HSCT is usually between four and six. The use of BV before transplant does not modify post-transplant-related toxicities and might improve results by improving performance status and disease status before allo-HSCT. It might also allow more patients to successfully go through the transplant.

Checkpoint inhibitors (nivolumab, pembrolizumab) before allo-HSCT seem very effective with promising survival results (Dada 2018). However, follow-up is still too short, and it has been suggested that their use could be associated with increase in transplant-related toxicity (SOS/VOD, post-transplant hyperacute febrile syndrome). A retrospective study does not indicate a higher NRM and higher incidence of acute GVHD in patients pretreated with checkpoint inhibitors. There is no clear information on the need of a washout period when using this combined strategy although it seems that nivolumab levels on day 0 do not correlate with incidence of GVHD and NRM.

The final decision of whether to allograft a patient that relapses after auto-HSCT might rely on the risk profile of the underlying disease as well as the transplant-related risk.

88.10.4 Results of Allo-HSCT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease status pre-allo-HSCT</th>
<th>NRM (%)</th>
<th>OS at 3 years (%)</th>
<th>PFS at 3 years (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chemosensitive disease</td>
<td>15–20</td>
<td>60–70</td>
<td>40–50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemorefractory disease</td>
<td>20–30</td>
<td>40–50</td>
<td>20–30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

88.10.5 Disease Relapse After Allo-HSCT

Disease relapse carries out a dim prognosis. Therapeutic options are variable and heterogeneous (Table 88.6), and in some cases, palliative care is the only feasible one.

Table 88.6 Therapeutic options after allo-HSCT relapse

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>ORR</th>
<th>CR</th>
<th>PR</th>
<th>PFS at 6 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DLI alone</td>
<td>ORR 33–54%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLI + brentuximab vedotin</td>
<td>ORR 69% (CR 54%/PR 15%), PFS 5.5 months</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLI + bendamustine</td>
<td>ORR 55% (CR 16%/39%), PFS 6 months</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brentuximab vedotin (Gopal et al. 2012)</td>
<td>ORR 50–69% CR 31–38%/PR 37%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Median PFS 7–8 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nivolumab (Herbaux et al. 2017)</td>
<td>ORR 77–95% CR 42–55%/PR 40–52%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1-year PFS 58%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**88.11 Therapeutic Algorithm Recommended by the Authors**  
(Modified from Yethava et al.)

- **Primary Refractory cHL**  
  *cHL in 1st Relapse*

  - 2nd line / 3rd line chemotherapy to test chemosensitivity

  - **AutoHSCT**

  - Disease relapse after autoHSCT

  - Prior BV therapy or BV resistant disease

    - No
      - BV Therapy
      - Nivolumab / Pembrolizumab or PCT

    - Yes
      - Consider alloHSCT

      - Yes
        - Observe
        - Consider alloHSCT

      - No
        - Conventional salvage / PCT

      - Yes
        - Observe
        - Consider alloHSCT

PCT, prospective clinical trials. ¹In young and fit patients with responding disease and an adequate donor available. Grey arrows. Both options can eventually be considered acceptable after a careful balance of adverse prognostic factors of the patient/transplant-related comorbidities/careful discussion with the patient.
**88.12 Long-term outcomes of Auto-HSCT and Allo-HSCT in Patients with Relapsed/Refractory cHL (EBMT Database, with Permission)**

**OS of auto-HSCT in relapsed/refractory cHL over time**

**OS of allo-HSCT in relapsed/refractory cHL over time**
Key Points

- Auto-HSCT is still the standard of care for those patients with primary refractory/chemosensitive first relapse. Results of auto-HSCT might improve in the future with better selection of patients, improved results of salvage strategies and consolidation treatment in those patients with high risk of relapse after auto-HSCT.
- Allo-HSCT is the only curative treatment options for those patients relapsing after auto-HSCT. The use of allo-HSCT is being modified by the introduction of haploidentical donors as well as targeted therapies in this setting.

References


Sureda A, Canals C, Arranz R, et al. Allogeneic stem cell transplantation after reduced intensity conditioning in


89.1 Introduction

Primary immunodeficiency (PID) diseases arise from genetic defects that lead to abnormalities in immune cell development or function with a wide spectrum in severity and clinical manifestations. A subgroup of patients with an immunodeficiency present as a medical emergency which is associated with a chronic disabling and life-threatening clinical course. In these cases, allo-HSCT provides a life-saving and curative treatment modality. Replacement of the defective cell lineage by HSCT from healthy allogeneic donors remains the curative approach for these patients. Other management options including enzyme replacement therapy, gene transfer into autologous hematopoietic stem cells, and targeted therapies (see below) may provide an alternative approach to HSCT in specific immune deficiencies.

89.2 Diseases

For HSCT purposes and thus for this handbook, PID may be broadly categorized into severe combined immunodeficiencies (SCID) and non-SCID. To further subdivide non-SCID, the phenotypic classification as suggested by the International Union of Immunological Societies (IUIS) Inborn Errors of Immunity Committee can be used, which encompasses >300 genetic causes of PID (Table 89.1).

Overall guidelines for HSCT for SCID and non-SCID diseases together with detailed protocols have been produced by the EBMT Inborn Errors Working Party (EBMT IEWP) and can be found online at https://www.ebmt.org/sites/default/files/migration_legacy_files/document/Inborn%20Errors%20Working%20Party%20ESID%20EBMT%20HSCT%20Guidelines%20

Table 89.1 Phenotypic classification of PID as suggested by the International Union of Immunological Societies (IUIS) Inborn Errors of Immunity Committee (Picard et al. 2018)

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Combined immunodeficiency (CID)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>CID with associated or syndromic features</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Predominantly antibody deficiencies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Diseases of immune dysregulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Congenital defects of phagocyte number, function, or both</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Defects in intrinsic and innate immunity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Auto-inflammatory disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Complement deficiencies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Phenocopies of PID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

M. Albert
Pediatric SCT Program, Dr. von Hauner University Children’s Hospital, Ludwig-Maximilians Universität, Munich, Germany

A. Lankester
Department of Pediatrics, Stem Cell Transplantation Program, Willem-Alexander Children’s Hospital, Leiden University Medical Center, Leiden, The Netherlands

A. Gennery
Paediatric Immunology + HSCT, Great North Children’s Hospital, Newcastle University, Newcastle upon Tyne, UK
e-mail: andrew.gennery@newcastle.ac.uk
89.3 SCID

The overall frequency of SCID was for a long time estimated to be 1 in 50,000–100,000 live births. However, in recent years newborn screening programs making use of the T-cell receptor excision circles (TREC) technology have demonstrated that the frequency may actually be two- or more-fold higher with clear geographical and ethnic differences (Kwan et al. 2014; Rechavi et al. 2017).

The immunological phenotypes of SCID are shown in Table 89.2 representing monogenic inherited defects in T-, B-, and NK-cell differentiation leading to the absence or inactivity of corresponding mature cells. Over the past two decades, the genetic basis of an increasing number of SCID variants has been identified (Table 89.2) leading to modifications in transplant strategy dependent on the underlying defect particularly in SCID variants caused by defects in DNA repair genes.

In the absence of newborn screening programs, most patients present within the first 3–6 months with unusually severe and recurrent infections or with opportunistic infections, the most common being *Pneumocystis jiroveci pneumonia*. Other common symptoms include diarrhea, dermatitis, and failure to thrive. Survival in SCID patients depends on expeditious T-cell reconstitution, and in the absence of successful HSCT, or in selected cases autologous T-cell gene therapy, most children die usually during the first year of life from overwhelming infection. It is recognized that as many as 50% of SCID patients are engrafted with maternal T-cells but in most instances these cells do not initiate GvHD. Transfusion-associated GvHD, on the other hand, is frequently lethal in SCID, and any patient with a possible diagnosis of SCID should receive irradiated blood products. Bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccination can give rise to disseminated BCG-osis in SCID patients and should be avoided at birth if there is any suspicion or family history of immunodeficiency.

### 89.3.1 General Principles in Allo-HSCT for SCID

The Stem Cell Transplant for primary Immune Deficiencies in Europe (SCETIDE) registry has now collected data on SCID transplants comprising 50 years of HSCT experience, and a number of important publications have documented the outcomes and important risk factors (Fischer et al. 1990; Antoine et al. 2003; Gennery et al. 2010). Recently, studies from the North American group have reported similar findings (Pai et al. 2014; Heimall et al. 2017). The major factors influencing outcome reported in these studies include:

1. Preceding comorbidity (particularly infectious complications at HSCT) adversely affecting outcome
2. The type of donor with matched sibling donors having the best outcome

---

Table 89.2 Gene defects typically associated with specific SCID phenotypes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-B+NK-</th>
<th>T-B+NK+</th>
<th>T-B-NK-</th>
<th>T-B-NK+</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IL2RG</td>
<td>IL7R</td>
<td>ADA</td>
<td>LIG4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(SCID-X1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JAK3</td>
<td>CD3D</td>
<td>AK2</td>
<td>RAG1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(reticular dysgenesis)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CD3E</td>
<td></td>
<td>RAG2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CD247</td>
<td></td>
<td>DCLRE1C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(CD3ζ)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Artemis def.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CORO1A</td>
<td></td>
<td>NHEJ1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Cernunnos XLF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PTPRC</td>
<td></td>
<td>PRKDC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(CD45 def.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(DNA-PKcs def.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FOXN1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adapted from Picard et al. (2018)
3. The type of SCID, with T-B- forms of SCID having an inferior outcome (see footnote 1)
4. Age at transplant with patients <3.5 months having a favorable outcome

89.3.2 Matched Sibling Donor HSCT for SCID

During the last decade, the overall survival for MSD HSCT in SCID has improved to over 90%. Somewhat remarkably, sibling donor BM may be infused into SCID recipients without the requirement for conditioning or GvHD prophylaxis. Infusion of sibling BM leads to the rapid development of T- and B-cell function post-HSCT, although usually only T-cells of donor origin develop and myeloid and erythroid cells remain of recipient origin. In T-/B+ SCID, the majority of patients achieve humoral reconstitution despite lack of donor B-cells, whereas following unconditioned HSCT in T-/B- SCID immunoglobulin dependence often persists.

89.3.3 Other Matched Family and URD HSCT for SCID

Overall survival rate following phenotypically matched related as well as URD transplants has steadily improved and is approaching MSD results (Gennery et al. 2010; Pai et al. 2014; Heimall et al. 2017). It is generally considered that the risk of rejection and particularly GvHD is too high for simple infusion of phenotypically matched marrow into SCID patients, so conditioning/GvHD prophylaxis is recommended. In a recent transatlantic study, survival rate in unconditioned URD HSCT was comparable with MSD HSCT, however at the expense of increased acute GvHD and inferior B-cellular immune reconstitution (Dvorak et al. 2014). A variety of conditioning regimes have been used, and current IEWP recommendations include the use of an IV BU/FLU- or TREO/FLU-based protocol (details at http://www.ebmt.org/5WorkingParties/IEWP/wparties-ie5.html). Comparison of survival rates and immune function with these regimens is part of ongoing studies.

89.3.4 HLA-Mismatched Family Donor for SCID

Virtually all children have a haploidentical parental donor, and this is an alternative option especially as the donor is readily available. HLA disparity necessitates rigorous in vitro or in vivo TCD in order to avoid GvHD. Using mobilized PBSC as a preferred stem cell source, most centers employ either CD34-positive selection or CD3-/CD19-negative depletion methods to achieve a 4–5 log TCD achieving a threshold of 1–5 × 10^6/kg CD3+ cells, below which GvHD prophylaxis is not required. More recently, alternative haploidentical procedures including TCR alpha/beta depletion (Balashov et al. 2015; Shah et al. 2018) and PT-CY have emerged as HSCT options. Although promising survival rates have been reported, longer follow-up in a larger cohort of patients is required to determine the position of these approaches. Some centers advocate performing transplants without the use of any conditioning, and survival rates of over 80% have been reported (Dvorak et al. 2014). However, the best results are seen in those transplanted at <3.5 months of age and in the absence of active infections. Despite general improvements in survival rate, the best results are still seen in the TB+ subgroup of SCID patients. Even in these cases, B-cell function is only restored in the minority of patients. Conditioning regimes can be used to improve outcome, but the use of MAC regimes in children often <1 year of age is associated with significant comorbidity and leads to survival figures of 50–60%. Individualized approaches making use of therapeutic drug monitoring or antibody-based conditioning strategies may provide novel and less toxic options to improve HSCT outcome in these vulnerable young infants.

89.3.5 Unrelated CBT for SCID

During the last decade, the availability of CBU plus the increased level of HLA matching degree has made CB a suitable alternative source of stem
cells (Fernandes et al. 2012). There are some theoretical advantages for the use of cord blood stem cells for SCID, namely, rapid availability, as with haplotype-matched parental donors but with no requirement for TCD; less risk of GvHD compared to adult URD; no medical risk to the donor; and a greater proliferative life span which might be particularly important in such young recipients. Moreover, the usual limitation of cell dose in CBT is usually no issue in infants with SCID. There are also some specific disadvantages including slower engraftment, lack of viral-specific cytotoxic T-cells, and lack of availability of the donor for a boost HSCT.

### 89.3.6 Omenn’s Syndrome

Omenn’s syndrome (OS) is characterized by SCID typically associated with the triad of erythoderma, hepatosplenomegaly, and lymphadenopathy. There is a marked eosinophilia and a variable number of autologous, activated, and oligoclonal T lymphocytes (leaky SCID/CID), which infiltrate target organs and are generally poorly responsive to mitogens. Whereas outcomes in HSCT for OS were traditionally more difficult compared the classical SCID, results have improved in recent years (Gennery et al. 2010; Heimall et al. 2017). The overall mortality in these studies was lower than previously reported and was due to early recognition of OS and rapid initiation of treatment with topical/systemic immune suppression with steroids and/or cyclosporin A to control immune dysreactivity before proceeding to HSCT.

### 89.3.7 HSCT for Radiosensitive SCID

Patients with T-B- SCID due to radiosensitive disorders such as DNA ligase 4 deficiency, Cernunnos deficiency, DNA-PKcs deficiency are increasingly being identified and being considered for HSCT. As many of the conditioning regimens are particularly damaging to DNA, less toxic regimens are required to successfully treat these patients (Slack et al. 2018). No definitive studies are available, but a low-dose FLU/CY regime has been suggested by the EBMT IEWP (http://www.ebmt.org/5WorkingParties/IEWP/wparties-ie5.html).

### 89.4 Non-SCID Immunodeficiency

From a HSCT viewpoint, the major difference with non-SCID patients in comparison with SCID patients is the requirement for a conditioning regimen to achieve engraftment. It is the goal to establish sufficient long-term donor chimerism in the affected cell lineage. The required degree of donor chimerism for full disease correction varies depending on PID and has not been established for all entities.

Many children with non-SCID PID have significant comorbidities at the time of HSCT. Conventional MAC preparation with BU-/CY-based regimes has historically been associated with significant treatment-related toxicity and TRM. The Inborn Errors Working Party of EBMT has therefore in 2005 published detailed recommendations for conditioning and PID as discussed above. These recommendations include:

1. Replacement of CY with FLU, as the combination of BU/FLU appears to be better tolerated in these patients
2. Adding the option to replace BU with a structural analogue, TREO, which is similarly immuno- and myelosuppressive but causes less hepatic SOS/VOD (Slatter et al. 2018)
3. Establishing RIC to achieve stable engraftment of immunocompetent donor cells with reduced procedure-related morbidity and mortality (Veys 2010)

The latest outcome data for HSCT in non-SCID patients come from Europe (Gennery et al. 2010). In the 2000–2005 period, HSCT using an URD (n = 124) gave a 3-year survival rate similar to a genoidentical donor (n = 73), 79% for both. Survival was 76% in phenoidentical transplants (n = 23) and worse in mismatched related donor transplants (n = 47, 46%, p = 0.016), in contrast
to SCID patients (see above). Ten-year survival was significantly better for patients with WAS, phagocytic, and hemophagocytic disorders than for patients with T-lymphocyte immunodeficiencies (71, 63, 58, 47%, respectively).

Unrelated CB donors appear to also give promising results in non-SCID immunodeficiency with 29/32 (91%) patients surviving CBT matched for 4–6/6 HLA antigens.

The landscape of non-SCID PID and HSCT has dramatically changed over the last decade:

- HSCT outcomes have further improved with 80–90% overall survival and low GVHD rates after MSD or MUD HSCT in almost every non-SCID PID entity (Güngör et al. 2014; Moratto et al. 2011).
- Haplo-HSCT has become a safe alternative, at least in the hands of experienced centers (Balashov et al. 2015; Shah et al. 2018).
- New genetic causes of PID are being described in accelerating frequency thanks to next-generation sequencing techniques.
- The concept of “pure” immunodeficiencies with predisposition to infections has been abandoned with newly described autoimmune, auto-inflammatory conditions or syndromal disorders with immunodeficiency. Many of these diseases can be cured by HSCT, while in syndromal disorders only the hematopoietic portion of the disease can be corrected, which may nevertheless be indicated and result in not just increased survival but also quality of life in selected patients.
- More PID patients are discovered with very mild or atypical phenotypes of well-known PID, and these often hypomorphic genetic variants are especially challenging with respect to timely recognition and management (Notarangelo et al. 2016).
- Especially in these “milder” cases, quality of life is increasingly a factor in HSCT decision making, especially compared to diseases with an immediate indication for HSCT such as SCID (Cole et al. 2013).
- The importance of DFS as compared to OS is increasingly appreciated and addressed in medium- to long-term outcome studies, also in comparison to non-HSCT approaches (Speckmann et al. 2017; Barzaghi et al. 2018).
- Adolescents and young adults with PID are appreciated as candidates for HSCT, and outcomes are encouragingly good (Albert et al. 2018; Fox et al. 2018).
- Patients with DNA double-strand repair disorders can safely undergo HSCT with irradiation-free, reduced-intensity regimens (Slack et al. 2018).

The consequence of all this has been that many more patients with PID are today considered for, referred for, and counselled about HSCT. On the other hand, it has made decision making with respect to HSCT much more difficult. A genetic diagnosis may make the decision to proceed to HSCT easier in patients with severe symptoms, but a genetic diagnosis alone should never be sufficient to indicate HSCT.

89.5 Alternative Therapies

Alternative treatments to HSCT have been developed for specific immunodeficiencies over the last three decades.

89.5.1 Enzyme Replacement Therapy (ERT) for Adenosine Deaminase Deficiency (ADA-SCID)

Enzyme replacement has been used in the treatment of ADA deficiency since 1987 (Chan et al. 2005). PEG-ADA is administered weekly or twice weekly by IM injection and leads to rapid metabolic correction with normalization of metabolic parameters which is then followed by cellular and humoral immune reconstitution. The extent of immune recovery is variable, and a significant number (~50%) remain on Ig replacement. Over a longer time period, patients show a decline in T-cell numbers and remain lymphopenic. Long-term follow-up shows that patients remain clinically well, but a number of cases of EBV-related lymphoma have been reported, sug-
gesting decreased immune surveillance with time. Given the improved outcomes of HSCT in recent times and the availability of gene therapy, ERT may predominantly be considered a bridge to stem cell-based curative therapy.

89.5.2 Gene Therapy for Specific Immune Deficiencies

Autologous stem cell gene therapy (GT) via vector-mediated transfer of healthy copies of an affected gene into autologous CD34+ cells has progressed from a highly experimental therapy to the first licensed gene therapy for a PID (ADA-SCID) within the last two decades. One of the major advantages of GT is the elimination of the inherent risk of GVHD connected to any HSCT procedures.

Clinical trials performed with gamma retroviral vectors for ADA-SCID, X-linked SCID (SCID-X1), chronic granulomatous disease (CGD), and Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome (WAS) demonstrated that gene therapy can be an effective treatment option in patients lacking an HLA-identical donor (Hacein-Bey-Abina et al. 2002; Boztug et al. 2010; Stein et al. 2010; Aiuti et al. 2009). However, a high rate of insertional mutagenesis was observed in trials for SCID-X1, WAS, and CGD but not for ADA-SCID (Ott et al. 2006; Hacein-Bey-Abina et al. 2003; Braun et al. 2014). This has prompted the development of safer vectors based on self-inactivating retroviral or lentiviral vectors. Currently, a number of trials are ongoing or concluded for the diseases named above. All share the concept of submyeloablative or lymphodepleting conditioning followed by the infusion of auto-HSCT with added copies of the gene of interest. Promising results were published, especially for ADA-SCID (Cicalese et al. 2016), WAS (Aiuti et al. 2013) and SCID-X1 (Hacein-Bey-Abina et al. 2014). It is expected that gene editing approaches as alternative for gene addition technologies as currently employed will be developed in the next few years and may be employed to correct mature cells in diseases like CD40 ligand deficiency and IPEX Syndrome, as well as HSC.

In theory autologous stem cell gene therapy offers the appealing prospect of avoiding alloimmune reactions such as GVHD or rejection and a lower conditioning-related toxicity compared to allo-HSCT. But its exact role in treatment algorithms still needs to be defined in the absence of comparative studies. Also, logistic, regulatory, and economic hurdles still have to be overcome before its widespread application in the treatment of PID. Nevertheless, it has widened the therapeutic repertoire for patients with some PID. The rapid evolution of novel gene correction approaches promises to lead to even safer and more effective treatment options.

89.5.3 Targeted Therapies

The unravelling of new genetic PID entities, especially those caused by gain-of-function (GOF) variants and their pathophysiology, has for the first time opened the possibility to treat these diseases with highly specific, often small molecule inhibitors, some of which are already approved for other indications. These include but are not limited to abatacept for CTLA4 haploinsufficiency, ruxolitinib for STAT1 GOF, leniolisib for PIK3CD and PIK3R1, etanercept for ADA2 deficiency, and IL-1-targeted therapies (anakinra, rilonacept, and canakinumab) for auto-inflammatory recurrent fever syndromes (Jhamnani and Rosenzweig 2017; Ochs and Petroni 2018). At this point in time, the exact role of these agents in the treatment algorithm of PID is however unclear. Ideally, they could make HSCT unnecessary for some patients. On the other hand, concerns about long-term infection (and lymphoma) risk exist. In any case, in some patients with excessive autoimmunity and/or inflammation, these therapies can be viewed as an ideal bridge to HSCT and considered as a remission induction strategy to control the underlying PID, because they have the ability to bring the patient into the best possible clinical condition for HSCT.
Key Points

- PIDds require a tailored approach to management, and transplant-specific protocols have been developed for these diseases.
- Preceding comorbidity, particularly infectious complications at HSCT and concurrent end-organ damage, adversely affects outcome; for many diseases, transplant at an early age is recommended.
- Alternative therapies instead of, or as a bridge to, transplant are increasingly available to improve patient outcomes.

References


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
90.1 Inborn Errors of Metabolism

90.1.1 Definition and Epidemiology

Inborn errors of metabolism (IEM) comprise a large group of inherited disease, some of which are due to disordered lysosomal, peroxisomal, or mitochondrial function and only some of which might be improved following HSCT. This review will be limited to the commoner indications reported in HSCT registries and which together account for the most transplanted IEM.

90.1.2 Diagnosis

Timely diagnosis is imperative in IEM since in all such diseases HSCT is better at preventing disease progression than reversing established disease manifestations.

Diagnosis is made in three ways:

– Through early recognition of disease manifestations
– Through screening of presymptomatic individuals within a known affected kindred
– Population screening for disease, such as in the neonatal period

90.1.3 Classification (See Table 90.1)

90.1.4 Risk Factors

Patient performance score at transplant predicts transplant outcome. Patients with an adverse performance score at transplant also have an inferior long-term survival as the transplant fails in advanced disease to prevent disease progression.

R. Wynn (*)
Blood and Marrow Transplant Unit, Royal Manchester Children’s Hospital, University of Manchester, Manchester, UK
e-mail: robert.wynn@cmft.nhs.uk

A. Schulz
Department of Pediatrics, University Medical Center Ulm, Ulm, Germany
### 90.1.5 Prognostic Index

Not available

### 90.1.6 First-Line Treatment

(Summary)

Multimodality therapies are usual in IEM.

- Residual disease manifestations will require management beyond the HSCT episode. This will include orthopedics, ENT, and speech therapies in lysosomal storage disorders (LSDs), as well as family and educational support in all.
- Pharmacological enzyme replacement therapy (ERT) is used in MPSI but does not correct neurological disease as it does not cross the blood-brain barrier, and alloantibody formation might limit its utility in somatic disease. It is used to improve pre-HSCT performance, but it has not been shown to influence transplant outcomes.

### 90.1.7 Second-Line Treatment

(Summary)

See Sect. 90.1.6., above.

### 90.1.8 Autologous HSCT

Gene-modified auto-HSCT approaches have been shown to improve outcomes in late infantile MLD as the graft delivers more enzyme than possible in a conventional HSCT. Similar approaches have been successful in X-ALD and are likely to be a significant part of the future of HSCT in IEM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 90.1</th>
<th>Classification of inborn errors of metabolism</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>IEM</strong></td>
<td><strong>Hurler syndrome, MPSIH</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hurler syndrome. This is the most severe phenotype of iduronidase deficiency, a lysosomal storage disorder (LSD) which results in the accumulation of glycosaminoglycans. There is progressive multi-organ dysfunction including psychomotor retardation, severe skeletal disease, life-threatening cardiopulmonary complications, and premature death. HSCT prevents early death and attenuates the multi-system disease manifestations as the deficient enzyme is donated by engrafted donor leucocytes to host tissues (“cross-correction”).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy</strong></td>
<td>In this X-linked disorder, there is accumulation of very long-chain fatty acids in the brain and adrenal glands arising from their defective metabolism by a peroxisomal, membrane protein encoded by the ABCD1 gene. Clinical manifestations in genetically affected boys are highly variable, even within a kindred. The principle role of HSCT is to prevent progression of early cerebral ALD, an inflammatory demyelinating disease of childhood that is seen in about 40% of genetically affected individuals. HSCT does not influence other illness such as adrenal insufficiency or the later myeloneuropathy of the spinal cord.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Metachromatic leukodystrophy (MLD)</strong></td>
<td>This is a recessive LSD, and there is accumulation of sulfatides, a myelin component, due to deficiency of the arylsulfatase A enzyme. There is demyelination in the central and peripheral nervous systems, and clinical manifestations are related to residual enzyme activity. In the late infantile disease, the commonest and most severe phenotype, there is progressive neurological dysfunction and early death usually by the age of 4 years. HSCT is ineffective in preventing progression of early presenting disease, although it may have a greater impact later, attenuated disease especially when applied early in the course of that illness.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
90.1.9 Allogeneic HSCT in MPSIH (Hurler), MLD, and X-ALD (See Table 90.2)

Table 90.2 Main characteristics of allo-HSCT for MPSIH (Hurler), MLD, and X-ALD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicated in</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MPSIH (Hurler) is a standard indication for HSCT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In MLD, HSCT is usually reserved for later (attenuated) forms of the disease, namely, juvenile and adult forms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In X-ALD, HSCT is indicated in early cerebral inflammatory disease. Ordinarily, a genetically affected individual has serial (annual) MRI scans from early childhood, and HSCT is carried out when there are early MRI changes of demyelination (the MRI changes are scored as a Loes score)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contraindications</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where MPSIH is diagnosed late then the opportunity for HSCT to meaningfully alter the natural history of the disease might be lost. No hard and fast rules can be applied, but often HSCT is not offered to a child presenting beyond the age of 30 months, but careful multidisciplinary assessment is required</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late infantile MLD is not usually considered for HSCT. Note that such disease—if diagnosed in a timely fashion—has been shown to be markedly improved using an autologous, ex vivo HSC gene therapy approach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced cerebral X-ALD is considered a contraindication to HSCT. Disease will progress through transplant. The MRI scan-derived Loes score might predict those that will benefit most from HSCT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Donor</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In LSD, non-carrier MFD &gt; MUD &gt; carrier MFD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In LSD, UCB is frequently preferred to BM, since the post-HSCT chimerism is higher in such recipients, and the interval between referral and HSCT is likely shortest (rejection might be higher using UCB)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PB is rarely used as a donor cell source</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In X-ALD, MFD &gt; MUD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haplo-HSCT is rarely indicated in IEM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditioning: standard</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engraftment is difficult in IEM. Generally reduced intensity conditioning and ex vivo TCD are associated with high rates of graft loss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSD/MFD: IV BU (MAC AUC)/FLU (160 mg/m²)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUD: IV BU (MAC AUC)/FLU (160 mg/m²)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditioning: reduced toxicity</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Occasionally reduced toxicity conditioning might be employed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In somatic IEM, such as Wolman or attenuated MPS; TREO/FLU (160 mg/m²)/TT (10 mg/kg)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source of SC</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UCB often preferred in LSD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BM rather than PB in MUD donors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No ex vivo TCD as this is shown to contribute to graft loss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GvHD prophylaxis</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MSD/MFD: ATG/Campath, CSA + MMF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUD: ATG/Campath, CSA + MMF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUC UCB: Proximal ATG, CSA + MMF or CSA + PRD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRM in MPSIH</th>
<th>OS in MPSIH</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MSD: &lt; 5%</td>
<td>Engrafted survival of &gt;80% and overall survival of 90%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUD: &lt;10%</td>
<td>OS in MPSIH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MAC AUC doses adjusted to achieve MAC AUC, MSD match sibling donor, MFD match family donor, MUD much unrelated donor, LSD lysosomal storage disorder, EIM inborn errors of metabolism

90.2 Osteopetrosis

90.2.1 Definition and Epidemiology

Osteopetrosis (OP) is a generic name of a number of rare single gene diseases characterized by sclerosis of the skeleton. At least nine forms are known with different modes of inheritance and severity, which cumulatively have an incidence ~1:100,000. The disease originates from reduced or complete lack of osteoclast function and, as a consequence, impairment of bone resorption.
90.2.2 Diagnosis

In addition to the obligate increased bone density of all bones (X-ray), a combination of symptoms can be found in classical infantile osteopetrosis after birth. These symptoms include characteristic changes of the head (macrocephalus, frontal bossing, choanal stenosis), vision impairment (due to narrowed foramina), hematological insufficiency (thrombocytopenia, anemia, leukocytosis), hepatosplenomegaly (due to extramedullar hematopoiesis), and hypocalcemia (with secondary hyperparathyroidism). Cave: OP is a genetical and phenotypical heterogenous disease with atypical presentations (incomplete and/or delayed onset of symptoms). In these cases, an intensive work-up including spine biopsy and cranial MRI is recommended.

90.2.3 Classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Osteopetrosis</th>
<th>Clinical symptoms in infancy, death without HSCT usually in the first decade of life, biallelic mutations in TCIRG1, CLCN7, SNX10, TNFRSF11A/RANK, and FERMT3/KINDLIN-3; HSCT indicated, if excluded:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infantile “malignant” autosomal recessive OP (ARO)</td>
<td>- “Neurodegenerative OP” (all OSTM1 and about half of CLCN7 cases)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- “Extrinsic osteoclast defects” (TNFSF11/RANKL cases)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate osteopetrosis</td>
<td>Clinical symptoms in the first decade, HSCT may be indicated in severe forms with hematological insufficiency and (imminent) visual impairment Specific from: CA2 deficiency (renal tubular acidosis with cerebral calcifications): HSCT is rarely indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benign osteopetrosis (ADO)</td>
<td>M. Albers Schoenberg (monoallelic CLCN7 mutations): HSCT not indicated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

90.2.4 Risk Factors

There is an increased risk of pulmonary hypertension (pre and post HSCT) and SOS/VOD (post BMT). The risk of non-engraftment and rejection increases with severity of disease and age.

90.2.5 Prognostic Index

Not available

90.2.6 First-Line Treatment (Summary)

Symptomatic, steroids may be beneficial to improve hematological symptoms

90.2.7 Second-Line Treatment (Summary)

Not available

90.2.8 Autologous HSCT

Preclinical trials for gene-modified auto-HSCT for TCIRG1 defects in preparation.

90.2.9 Allogeneic HSCT

(See Table 90.3)
**Recommended References**


de Vernejoul MC, Schulz A, Kornak U. CLCN7-related osteopetrosis. 2007 Feb 12 [Updated 2013 Jun

---

**Table 90.3** Main characteristics of allo-HSCT for osteopetrosis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicated in</th>
<th>Infantile osteopetrosis: clinical symptoms and exclusion of neurodegenerative and extrinsic osteoclast defect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contraindications</td>
<td>Neurodegenerative osteopetrosis: symptoms (non-hypocalcemic convulsions/EEC changes, severe progressive developmental delay and/or biallelic mutations in OST1 and CLCN7; cave: only about half of CLCN7 mutations cause neurodegeneration. Osteopetrosis not intrinsic to defects in differentiation or function in osteoclasts: TNFSF11/RANKL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donor</td>
<td>MFD &gt; MUD &gt; haplo (cord blood not recommended)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditioning: standard</td>
<td>MSD/MFD: IV BU (MAC AUC)/FLU (160 mg/m²) MUD: IV BU (MAC AUC)/FLU (160 mg/m²)/TT (10 mg/kg) Haplo: IV BU (MAC AUC)/FLU (160 mg/m²)/TT (15 mg/kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditioning: reduced toxicity</td>
<td>MSD/MFD: TREO/FLU (160 mg/m²)/TT (10 mg/kg) MUD: TREO/FLU (160 mg/m²)/TT (10 mg/kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditioning: post Cy protocol</td>
<td>In patients &gt;10 months of age and haplo donors, an adapted PT-CY protocol should be considered (see updated EBMT guidelines)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source of SC</td>
<td>Matched donors, PT-CY protocol: T replete BM &gt; PB Haplo (standard protocol): TCD PB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GvHD prophylaxis</td>
<td>MSD/MFD: CSA + MMF (consider ATG or Campath in MFD) MUD: CSA + MMF + ATG (or Campath) Haplo—TCD: ATG (or Campath), consider MMF Haplo—T replete: Campath, PT-CY, TAC (or CSA) + MMF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRM</td>
<td>MSD/MUD: 10–20% Haplo: ~30 to 40%; cave: high rejection rate (&gt;50%) in pts &gt; 10 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS</td>
<td>MSD: ~90% MUD: ~80% Haplo/MMUD: 60–70%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Open Access  This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
Autoimmune Disease

Tobias Alexander, Basil Sharrack, Montserrat Rovira, Dominique Farge, and John A. Snowden

91.1 Introduction

Autoimmune diseases (ADs) are a heterogeneous group of diseases affecting 8–10% of the Western population, which constitute a heavy burden to society and are often debilitating and disabling for affected individuals. Current therapeutic strategies for AD are based on systemic immunosuppression (IS), which ameliorates symptoms and halts progression in the vast majority of patients, but usually require continuous administration and may be associated with long-term side effects and substantial costs. Although introduction of modern biological therapies dramatically improved the treatment landscape in AD, cure remains elusive, and many patients still suffer from progressive disability with shortened life expectancy and comorbidity.

Initially supported by preclinical animal models and ‘serendipitous’ case reports, autologous HSCT has grown as a promising and feasible treatment option for severe treatment-resistant patients, especially in diseases for which effective therapies are lacking. Allo-HSCT has also been undertaken, although caution related to its intrinsic risks has precluded widespread application.

Following the first international meeting for the use of HSCT in AD in September 1996, the EBMT Autoimmune Diseases Working Party (ADWP) was established in 1997 by Alois Gratwohl, Alberto Marmont, Alan Tyndall and Athanasios Fassas, who developed the registry covering AD indications and produced early guidelines based on consensus opinion (Tyndall and Gratwohl 1997).
Subsequently the ADWP built productively on these initial achievements, generating studies from the growing registry and developing relationships with other specialist societies, culminating with successful publication of three randomised controlled trials (van Laar et al. 2014; Mancardi et al. 2015; Hawkey et al. 2015) along with updated guidelines for clinical practice (Snowden et al. 2012) and immune monitoring and biobanking (Alexander et al. 2015).

With the increase in evidence, the guidelines have become more disease specific. A successful collaboration involving significant non-European collaborating partners resulted in the EBMT guidelines for auto-HSCT in systemic sclerosis (Farge et al. 2017). A further collaborative review with the European Crohn’s and Colitis Organisation (ECCO), which has recently been published, includes recommendations for patient selection, transplant technique and follow-up of HSCT in patients with Crohn’s disease (Snowden et al. 2018). Guidelines for MS and neurological diseases are in preparation.

The current state of the EBMT database in relation to various ADs is summarised in Tables 91.1 and 91.2. At the time of writing, over 2500 patients receiving HSCT for an AD have been reported to the EBMT, the largest international database, with activity reported to other registries adding substantially to the worldwide numbers. The most recent EBMT activity survey identified autoimmune diseases as the fastest growing indication group for HSCT (Passweg et al. 2018). Based on this reported activity, this chapter will cover the main neurological, rheumatological and gastroenterological indications for auto-HSCT, along with reference to the rare AD indications and allogeneic HSCT. More detailed literature can be sourced from recently published reviews (Snowden et al. 2017, 2018; Burt and Farge 2018; Alexander and Hiepe 2017).

### 91.2 HSCT for Multiple Sclerosis (MS)

Since the first case report of using auto-HSCT as a treatment for MS was published in 1995, the EBMT registry has now accumulated over 1000 patients (Table 91.2). This treatment was initially used in patients with advanced progressive disease as a rescue therapy with limited efficacy. More recently, its use in patients with active relapsing MS has been associated with prolonged clinical and MRI responses and, in some cases, significant improvement in disability to a degree rarely seen with other disease-modifying drugs (Muraro et al. 2017). Only one randomised controlled phase II trial of auto-HSCT has been reported in the literature (Mancardi et al. 2015). The bulk of the data has been provided by observational cohort studies in which patients failing to respond to standard disease-modifying drugs were treated with HSCT. Burman et al. identified the four most rigorously conducted cohort studies in which a total of 188 relapsing MS patients received auto-HSCT (Burman et al. 2018). In these studies, PFS was observed in 70–91% of patients at 5 years (where progression is defined as a deterioration of at least 0.5–1 points from baseline in the Expanded Disability Status Scale or EDSS). Furthermore, no evidence of disease activity (NEDA), defined as the absence of clinical relapses, disability progression, and MRI disease activity, was observed in 70–92% of patients at 2 years post-transplantation (Burman et al. 2018; Burt et al. 2015; Atkins et al. 2016; Nash et al. 2017).

The conditioning regimens used in MS vary between treatment centres. The balance of efficacy and acceptable safety profile of ‘intermediate intensity’ regimens, i.e. either the specific ‘BEAM + ATG’ regimen or the more generic regimen of CY 200 mg/kg combined with ATG, led to their recommended use in the current

---

### Table 91.1 Overview of data reported to the EBMT database (October 2018)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Patients</td>
<td>2725</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transplant procedures</td>
<td>2780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centres/Countries</td>
<td>267/40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autografts/Allografts</td>
<td>2605 (94%/175 (6%))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Median age at transplantation (years)</td>
<td>37 (0.18–76)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male/Female</td>
<td>39/61%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EBMT ADWP guidelines (Snowden et al. 2012). More recent data suggests that ‘high-intensity’ regimens, incorporating BU, have higher rates of PFS but potentially greater toxicity, including TRM (Atkins et al. 2016). Retrospective registry data suggest that graft purging has no added benefit to the transplant outcome (Snowden et al. 2012).

Currently, auto-HSCT is considered to be most effective in patients with relapsing MS, who are not older than 45 years, have had the illness for less than 10 years, are not very disabled (EDSS ≤ 6) and have very active disease with evidence of enhancement on their MRI (Muraro et al. 2017). An international randomised controlled phase III trial is currently being conducted to compare auto-HSCT with currently available MDTs (MIST Study, ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT00273364) and is anticipated to report in full in 2021.

### 91.3 HSCT for Systemic Sclerosis (SSc)

Over the past 10 years, results from large European prospective observational studies confirmed that SSc patients benefit only marginally from standard immunosuppressive drugs, including CY, with a progressive increase in SSc-specific mortality, predominantly related to cardiac (31%) and pulmonary causes (18%). Indications for auto-HSCT in SSc have increased (Snowden et al. 2018) since three successive randomised trials, namely, ASSIST (Burt et al. 2011), ASTIS (van Laar et al. 2014) and SCOT (Sullivan et al. 2018), have now demonstrated that auto-HSCT is superior to CY for early rapidly progressive SSc in terms of long-term survival as well as improvement of lung function and skin fibrosis.

In addition, patient selection was shown to directly affect transplant outcomes (Farge et al. 2017) with specific concern for cardiac involvement, undetected by echocardiography alone, becoming clinically overt during the transplant procedure, under the stress of fluid overload, CY and ATG administration and sepsis. Current guidelines recommend auto-HSCT for patients with early diffuse SSc with a modified Rodnan skin score ≥15 plus major organ involvement in respiratory, cardiovascular or renal systems and treatment should be performed in JACIE-accredited centres where combined expertise from SSc disease specialist and dedicated transplant team can assess and follow patients before,
during and after the procedure according to Good Clinical Practice (Snowden et al. 2018). Since toxicity and efficacy arise from individual patient selection and the conditioning regimen, different chemotherapies may account for subtle differences in results, and further studies are warranted to analyse the use of attenuated conditioning regimen, according to cardiac function and risk for renal crises (Burt and Farge 2018).

### 91.4 HSCT for Systemic Lupus Erythematosus (SLE)

Following the first transplant performed in 1996 by Alberto Marmont and colleagues, several phase I/phase II clinical trials have been reported covering approximately 300 SLE patients worldwide to date (Alexander and Hiepe 2017). The two largest experiences on auto-HSCT for SLE so far come from EBMT data registry \( (n=53; \) mean follow-up, 25 months) and from the single-centre trial by Northwestern University \( (n=50; \) mean follow-up, 29 months), both demonstrating a probability of 5-year DFS of 50% despite discontinuation of chronic IS. Subsequently, a follow-up study from the EBMT registry reported the outcome of auto-HSCT in SLE with various regimens between 2001 and 2008 \( (n=28; \) median follow-up, 38 months; range, 1–110 months) (Alchi et al. 2013). Although PFS in this study was only 29% at 5 years, TRM had gradually improved. In addition, this study indicated that CD34-selection was associated with a significantly reduced relapse incidence.

More recently, reports from two independent Chinese groups, both with 10-year follow-up, demonstrated remarkable clinical responses with PFS of 86% and 68%, respectively, while TRM across both studies was only 2%. Current recommendations suggest HSCT in patients with sustained or relapsed active disease (BILAG category A) remaining steroid dependent after at least 6 months of the best standard therapy (including MMF and CY with or without anti-CD20), with documented evidence of visceral involvement (Snowden et al. 2012). The only controlled study conducted to compare auto-HSCT with currently available MDTs in SLE is currently ongoing in a phase II multicentre trial in Germany (ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT00750971).

### 91.5 HSCT for Crohn’s Disease (CD)

Despite the major recent progress in the treatment of CD, based around corticosteroids, IS (thiopurines, MTX) and biologic therapies (Ab targeting TNFα, α4β7 integrin or IL-12/IL-23), some patients fail all available therapies. In many cases, surgery may be an option but may lead to short bowel syndrome or to a definitive stoma, which may be unacceptable to patients. With this background, in the past few years, auto-HSCT has emerged as a promising therapy in a subset of patients in whom the disease is refractory to all available therapies, with progressive tissue damage and potentially reduced life expectancy.

Auto-HSCT has been investigated in several studies with encouraging responses, some prolonged, although a progressive incidence of relapse with long-term follow-up is recognised (Burt et al. 2010; Lopez-Garcia et al. 2017). Furthermore, patients regain response to anti-TNF therapy although they had been refractory to this drug class prior to HSCT.

In Europe, the EBMT sponsored ASTIC trial in patients with refractory CD and produced apparently negative results as few patients after auto-HSCT met the stringent primary composite endpoint of clinical remission for 3 months (Hawkey et al. 2015). However, it should not be assumed that this single trial provides the definitive answer to the benefit of auto-HSCT in CD, as the number of patients included was limited and encouraging long-term follow-up of ASTIC trial patients has since been reported (Lindsay et al. 2017). Encouraging results have also been reported by an EBMT retrospective analysis of 82 treatment-resistant patients who were not in the ASTIC trial. In this difficult-to-treat group of patients, around a quarter maintained remission without further medical therapy, and long-term disease control was maintained with reintroduction of salvage therapies in the major-
ity of patients who relapsed. TRM occurred in one patient (Brierley 2018).

Recently, the EBMT ADWP and ECCO (European Crohn’s and Colitis Organisation) have published a joint position paper of auto-HSCT in CD, which recommends auto-HSCT ideally in the context of a multicentre clinical trial but on an individual basis may currently be considered for patients with active CD refractory to IS and biological treatments or unacceptable risks of surgical management (Snowden et al. 2018).

91.6 Allogeneic HSCT for Autoimmune Diseases

Autoimmune diseases have also been treated with allo-HSCT from MRD, URD and CB sources. In the last 20 years, the EBMT registry has collated 165 cases, representing just 6% of the total. Because of the higher procedural risks and potential long-term impact on quality of life from late effects, allo-HSCT has been largely restricted to life-threatening AD in paediatric practice with the most common indications in immune cytopenia followed by arthritis (Snowden et al. 2017). In a recent summary of cases in the registry between 1997 and 2015, 105 patients undergoing allo-HSCT were treated with conditioning regimens. The median age was 12 years (range 1–62). Outcome following first allo-HSCT included 3- and 5-year OS of 67% and 64%, PFS 59% and 56% and incidence of relapse 21% and 24%, respectively. Compared with auto-HSCT, NRM is relatively high at 13% at 100 days, although this plateaus at 20% at 3 and 5 years.

In summary, experience in allo-HSCT is limited, but long-term data is supportive of basic biological differences in the responses of AD to allo- and auto-HSCT in terms of the ability to cure. However, with the risks NRM of around 20%, allo-HSCT will remain limited and developmental in its application to AD. With time, allo-HSCT in AD has become safer, perhaps with better patient selection, and activity continues, particularly in the paediatric field. In addition, there has been increasing recognition that the nature of the genetic component of some AD means that allo-HSCT is the only realistic approach for long-term disease control. Thus there is renewed interest in this area, particularly where there is overlap with autoinflammatory and immunodeficiency diseases.

91.7 Other Indications

A variety of other ADs have been treated (Table 91.2). Haematological immune cytopenias have been treated with a mixture of auto-HSCT and allo-HSCT. Type 1 diabetes in early ‘honeymoon’ phase has been the subject of clinical trials, with some ability to prevent or reduce insulin requirements. Otherwise there is a mixture of rarer neurological, rheumatological and gastroenterological indications for which the registry is essential for developing an evidence base. Cautious recommendations for these rare indications are provided in the EBMT ADWP guidelines (Snowden et al. 2012).

91.8 Mechanisms of Action

HSCT represented an opportunity to gain insights into the aetiology and pathogenesis of AD. Through destroying a dysfunctional autoreactive immune system and rebuilding it with auto-HSCT, it has been possible to demonstrate immune ‘rebooting’ that can occur through thymic reactivation and re-diversification and other changes in T-cell and B-cell repertoire and regulatory cell function in various disease settings. Allo-HSCT has been less well explored, although there is an element of immune replacement and evidence for a ‘graft-versus-autoimmune effect’ (Alexander et al. 2016).

91.9 Conclusions and Future Directions

With accumulating evidence and improved outcomes along with recognition that modern biological and other therapies are not universally effective (Snowden et al. 2017), ADs have
become the fastest-growing indication for HSCT (Passweg et al. 2018). Initially applied as salvage therapy in patients with poor prognosis, HSCT has emerged as a promising treatment option for AD patients earlier in the treatment algorithm. This is the result of positive results from large phase II and randomised controlled phase III trials and updated guidelines for patient selection and transplant technique (Snowden et al. 2012, 2018; Farge et al. 2017). In 2018, the major indications for HSCT for AD are MS, SSc and CD for which significant subsets of patients still show an unsatisfactory response to both conventional and targeted biologic therapies.

Moving forward, further efforts are needed to drive HSCT into routine clinical care. It is recommended that patients should be treated in experienced and JACIE-accredited transplant centres in a multidisciplinary setting. A future goal is to optimise the conditioning regimens according to disease-specific requirements and to outbalance the intensity to maintain outcomes while minimising toxicity and TRM risk. In addition, comprehensive data reporting, harmonisation and exploitation of existing biobanking infrastructure (Alexander et al. 2015), education at individual centre and network level and health economic evaluations along with evidence-based recommendations will establish the future place of HSCT in the treatment algorithms for various autoimmune and inflammatory diseases.

Acknowledgement The authors thank Manuela Badoglio for helpful assistance with data management.

Key Points
- With accumulating evidence, including randomised controlled trials, AD has become the fastest-growing indication for HSCT.
- Major indications for HSCT in AD include multiple sclerosis (MS), systemic sclerosis (SSc) and Crohn’s disease (CD), where auto-HSCT is now featuring in treatment algorithms.
- Although HSCT for ADs is predominantly autologous, there is renewed interest in allo-HSCT, particularly in ADs with autoinflammatory and immunoodeficiency components.
- It is recommended that all patients should be treated in experienced and JACIE-accredited transplant centres with close multidisciplinary collaboration and reporting of data to the EBMT registry.
- Immune reconstitution studies are providing insights into the mechanisms of immune reset following HSCT and disease processes underlying various autoimmune diseases.

References
Burt RK, Farge D. Systemic sclerosis: autologous HSCT is efficacious, but can we make it safer? Nat Rev Rheumatol. 2018;14:189–91.


Open Access This chapter is licensed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license and indicate if changes were made.

The images or other third party material in this chapter are included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the chapter’s Creative Commons license and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder.
92.1 Introduction

In the absence of randomized prospective trials, the EBMT registry remains an important source to survey indications, outcome and clinical risk factors in patients with solid tumours treated by auto- and allo-HSCT. In early 2018, the EBMT registry includes 57,888 transplant procedures in 42,106 patients, with a slight prevalence in adults compared with children (58% vs. 42%). Auto-HSCT represents 97% of the total HSCT, whereas allo-HSCT was used in 3% of the procedures. Multiple transplants were performed in 1/3 of the cases (Table 92.1). More than 10,000 transplants were performed in the last 5 years (Passweg et al. 2018). Figures 92.1 and 92.2 compare activity and indications between adults and children.

R. Ladenstein (*)
Studies and Statistics for Integrated Research and Projects, St. Anna Children’s Hospital, Department of Paediatrics and Children’s Cancer Research Institute (CCRI), Medical University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria
e-mail: ruth.ladenstein@ccri.at

E. Glogova
Studies and Statistics for Integrated Research and Projects, St. Anna Kinderkrebsforschung e.V., Vienna, Austria

F. Lanza
Hematology and HSCT Unit, Department of Onco-Hematology, Hospital S. Maria delle Croci, Ravenna, Italy

Table 92.1 EBMT registry on HSCT for solid tumours (data updated on January 2018)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Auto (n = 55,240)</th>
<th>Allo (n = 1755)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Solid tumour registry</td>
<td>57,025</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients</td>
<td>40,593</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adults/pediatric (%)</td>
<td>58/42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male/female (%)</td>
<td>48/52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto/allo (%)</td>
<td>97/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nb of HSCT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First HSCT</td>
<td>40,412</td>
<td>1173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second HSCT</td>
<td>10,144</td>
<td>440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third HSCT</td>
<td>3589</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth HSCT</td>
<td>651</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ Fifth HSCT</td>
<td>194</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Median follow up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(year &lt; 2016)</td>
<td>2.4 (&lt;1 to 35)</td>
<td>1.95 (&lt;1 to 31)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Fig. 92.1** EBMT registry on auto-HSCT for solid tumours in the period 2012–2017 ($n = 9519$). Adults vs. paediatric HSCT is shown (January 2018)

**Fig. 92.2** EBMT registry showing numbers of auto-HSCT for solid tumour indication over the years: 1990/2017 in both adults and children
In view of evolving diagnostic and therapeutic strategies, the definition of high risk needs careful consideration. To date evidence for HDT/HSCT from prospective randomized trials is still limited to high-risk neuroblastoma and Ewing sarcoma (Matthay et al. 2009; Whelan 2018).

92.2.2 2018 EBMT Data on HSCT for Solid Tumours in Children and Adolescents

In 2018 the EBMT database contained information on 17,159 transplants in young people with solid tumours. Their median age is 5.2 years (0.1–18.0); 58% are male. Auto-HSCT is the most frequent procedure with 14,135 transplants performed, whereas only 446 allo-HSCTs are registered. Data was gathered in 43 countries and reported by 390 centres. The first HSCT was autologous in 16,814 patients and allogeneic in 345 patients. Table 92.2 summarizes the outcomes with auto-HSCT for the most frequent indications for 13,838 with adequate event information in the EBMT database.

92.2.2.1 General Lessons from EBMT Data

The experience of more than 17,000 HSCT procedures in the paediatric age group over 35 years conveys a number of important messages:

Transplant-related mortality. TRM markedly decreased over time and is related with the HDT regimen (i.e. elimination of TBI) and most importantly use of peripheral stem cells. TRM rates associated to auto-HSCT dropped to under 5% after 1992 and is since 2012 only 1%.

Total body irradiation. TBI showed no advantage in any of the solid tumour indications and should thus be avoided in children with solid tumours in view of late effects.

Remission status. First-line high-risk patients perform significantly better than after relapse. Response to induction treatments prior to HDT/HSCT is critical in all indications. A short summary is:

Patients in good response to first-line treatment (CR/VGPR/PR) and sensitive relapse (SR) are good indications for most high-risk solid tumour patients, while patients with stable disease or minor response (<50%) (SD/MR) should only be considered for well-defined phase I/phase II trials. Patients with no response (NR) or tumour progression or resistant relapse (RR) have a very short life expectancy even after HDT/HSCT and thus should not be considered.

92.3.2.2.1 Age (see Table 92.3). Age plays a crucial role for outcome predictions. Adolescent age is generally associated with inferior outcome. While age <10 years is a favourable factor in sarcomas (Ewing tumours and rhabdomyosar-

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnoses</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>5-years pSU</th>
<th>5-years pEFS</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>5-years pEFS</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>5-years pEFS</th>
<th>p-value*a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neuroblastoma</td>
<td>7303</td>
<td>0.44 ± 0.01</td>
<td>0.36 ± 0.01</td>
<td>5993</td>
<td>0.37 ± 0.01</td>
<td>432</td>
<td>0.25 ± 0.02</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ewing tumors</td>
<td>2886</td>
<td>0.47 ± 0.01</td>
<td>0.40 ± 0.01</td>
<td>2101</td>
<td>0.44 ± 0.01</td>
<td>483</td>
<td>0.29 ± 0.02</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilms tumors</td>
<td>601</td>
<td>0.55 ± 0.02</td>
<td>0.51 ± 0.02</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>0.52 ± 0.04</td>
<td>345</td>
<td>0.53 ± 0.03</td>
<td>0.567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft tissue sa.</td>
<td>1097</td>
<td>0.29 ± 0.02</td>
<td>0.24 ± 0.01</td>
<td>673</td>
<td>0.26 ± 0.02</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>0.20 ± 0.03</td>
<td>0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain tumors</td>
<td>2733</td>
<td>0.45 ± 0.01</td>
<td>0.39 ± 0.01</td>
<td>2020</td>
<td>0.43 ± 0.01</td>
<td>444</td>
<td>0.22 ± 0.02</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germ cell tu.</td>
<td>529</td>
<td>0.59 ± 0.03</td>
<td>0.49 ± 0.02</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>0.50 ± 0.03</td>
<td>201</td>
<td>0.44 ± 0.04</td>
<td>0.083</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retinoblastomas</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>0.64 ± 0.04</td>
<td>0.59 ± 0.04</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>0.64 ± 0.05</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>0.50 ± 0.07</td>
<td>0.099</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kidney tumors</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>0.49 ± 0.07</td>
<td>0.48 ± 0.07</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>0.51 ± 0.10</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>0.48 ± 0.10</td>
<td>0.615</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteosarcomas</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>0.28 ± 0.03</td>
<td>0.24 ± 0.03</td>
<td>129</td>
<td>0.34 ± 0.05</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>0.13 ± 0.03</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
<td>784</td>
<td>0.40 ± 0.02</td>
<td>0.33 ± 0.02</td>
<td>511</td>
<td>0.34 ± 0.02</td>
<td>146</td>
<td>0.21 ± 0.04</td>
<td>0.057</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aLog-rank test: first line versus relapse patients
coma), neuroblastoma has an earlier cut-off at 5 years. Patients with neuroblastoma ≤ 18 months at diagnosis need biological profiling and are only eligible with high-risk biological features, in particular MYCN amplification (Canete et al. 2009).

**Double HSCT approaches.** The EBMT data on repetitive HDT/HSCT approaches shows no advantage over single HDT/HSCT. However, the elective selection of particular poor-prognosis patients in phase II settings is a likely bias. Recent data from a randomized trial in neuroblastoma emerged with superiority for the tandem strategy for high-risk neuroblastoma front-line patients (Park et al. 2016).

**Busulfan-melphalan.** This HDT combination is the only one in the EBMT database resulting in significantly improved survival rates in neuroblastoma and Ewing tumours.

**Allo-HSCT.** No advantage for allo-HSCT can be detected in the EBMT data for any paediatric solid tumour indication. The potential bias of negative selection of particular poor-prognosis patients needs to be considered.

### 92.2.3 Neuroblastoma

High-risk neuroblastoma (NBL) is defined by widespread disease >18 months, including any stage and age in the presence of MYCN oncogene amplification (Cohn et al. 2009; Moroz et al. 2011). In 2018 standard treatments include multi-cycle induction, extensive surgery to the primary tumour site, HDT/auto-HSCT, at least local radiotherapy and maintenance with 13-cis retinoid acid, ideally with ch14.18 antibody-based immunotherapy in addition (Park et al. 2016; Yu et al. 2010; Ladenstein et al. 2017, 2018).

Age <18 months is an important prognostic discriminator (Cohn et al. 2009; Moroz et al. 2011). The European high-risk NBL study (HR-NBL-1/SIOPEN) randomized BU/MEL and CEM (CBP, VP, MEL) after an adequate response to COJEC induction. BU/MEL HDT resulted in a better EFS and OS with fewer severe adverse events than CEM reporting a 3-year EFS of 50% (95% CI 45–56) for BU/MEL versus 38% (32–43) for CEM prior immunotherapy was available for all trial patients in Europe (Ladenstein et al. 2017).

After decades of dose escalation being explored by many teams, the randomized results of the ANBL0532 COG as presented at ASCO 2016 finally found superiority for double HDT/HSCT [1st HDT, CY and TT; 2nd HDT, CBP, VP and MEL (with reduced doses of single HDT CEM) vs. single HDT (CEM)/auto-HSCT (Park et al. 2016)]. The 3-year EFS and OS were significantly higher for tandem transplant patients (73.2%; 85.6%) in comparison with the single transplant arm (55.5%; 75.8%). Anti-GD2 antibody-based immunotherapy was beneficial for both arms (Yu et al. 2010).

Targeted therapies, in particular iodine-131-metaiodobenzylguanidine (mIBG) therapy with and without chemotherapy and/or HDT followed by HSCT, have generated increasing interest (Lee et al. 2017; Johnson et al. 2011).

Further HDT tandem approaches with or without mIBG are currently explored by the COG as well as SIOPEN in planned randomized

---

### Table 92.3 EBMT database outcomes after HDT/ASCT in paediatric solid tumours according to patient age

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnoses</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Age ≤ 5 years</th>
<th>5 &lt; age ≤ 10 years</th>
<th>10 &lt; age ≤ 18 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neuroblastoma</td>
<td>7303</td>
<td>5267</td>
<td>0.41 ± 0.01</td>
<td>1742 0.26 ± 0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ewing tumors</td>
<td>2886</td>
<td>388</td>
<td>0.38 ± 0.03</td>
<td>622 0.47 ± 0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilms tumors</td>
<td>601</td>
<td>201</td>
<td>0.57 ± 0.04</td>
<td>318 0.49 ± 0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft tissue sa.</td>
<td>1097</td>
<td>286</td>
<td>0.30 ± 0.03</td>
<td>287 0.29 ± 0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain tumors</td>
<td>2733</td>
<td>1243</td>
<td>0.44 ± 0.02</td>
<td>799 0.37 ± 0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germ cell tu.</td>
<td>529</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>0.52 ± 0.04</td>
<td>47 0.41 ± 0.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retinoblastomas</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>0.58 ± 0.05</td>
<td>26 0.69 ± 0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kidney tumors</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>0.51 ± 0.10</td>
<td>22 0.53 ± 0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteosarcomas</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.75 ± 0.22</td>
<td>35 0.29 ± 0.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
<td>784</td>
<td>342</td>
<td>0.40 ± 0.03</td>
<td>145 0.23 ± 0.05</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **p-value**: 0.016
trials. Published mIBG treatments refer to tandem mIBG in rapid sequence, to mIBG as component of HDT (CEM or BU/MEL) and mIBG combination therapies. They vary in dose, single vs. tandem schedules applied and various combinations with chemotherapy (topotecan or irinotecan and VCR) or radiation sensitizers (i.e. vorinostat increasing mIBG uptake).

In relapse patients the EBMT data (Ladenstein et al. 1993) showed a benefit from salvage HDT/HSCT in responding patients relapsing after 12 months from diagnosis and without a previous HDT.

Allo-HSCT as immunotherapy received special attention after introduction of RIC and NMA transplants. Some reports highlight a graft-versus-tumour (GvT) effect with adopted allo-HSCT approaches, while the EBMT data shows no benefit with classical allo-HSCT (Ladenstein et al. 1994). Research on experimental approaches to allogeneic HSCT is ongoing. Haplo-HSCT is a feasible option in very high-risk R/R patients capable to induce long-term remission in some with tolerable side effects allowing addition of post-transplant immune adoptive strategies (Illhardt et al. 2018).

**92.2.3.1 EBMT Data** (See Tables 92.2 and 92.3)

Median age of 7672 patients is 3.7 years (7,504 auto-HSCT, 168 allo-HSCT). EBMT registry data pointed at an early stage to the superiority of the BU/MEL HDT (Ladenstein et al. 2017). A multivariate analysis of the EBMT data found significantly better EFS associated with age <2 years at ASCT \( (p < 0.0001) \), a good remission status \( \geq PR \) before HDT/HSCT \( (p < 0.0001) \), use of PBSC \( (p = 0.014) \), ASCT (vs. allo-HSCT) \( (p = 0.031) \), as well as with the BU/MEL combination for HDT \( (p < 0.01) \) (Ladenstein et al. 2008).

**92.2.3.2 Indications 2018**

Standard indications include first-line high-risk NBL >18 months at diagnosis with widespread metastatic disease or those of any age with MYCN amplified tumours with INSS stages 2–4. Any responding metastatic relapse in patients >18 months and any MYCN amplified tumour without prior HDT/HSCT are good indications. Any other indication is reserved for well-designed experimental phase I/phase II trials. Children <18 months need to be evaluated for a high-risk biological risk profile prior to being considered for HDT/auto-HSCT (Canete et al. 2009; Moroz et al. 2011; Cohn et al. 2009).

**92.2.4 Ewing Tumours**

A number of publications proposed a potential role of HDT/HSCT in Ewing tumours (Ladenstein et al. 2010; Luksch et al. 2012) during primary treatments for patients with multifocal bone or BM metastases, whereas indications for those with lung metastases is more questionable (Burdach and Jürgens 2002). Some publications found BU/MEL HDT more active in comparison to other HDT regimes (Tenneti et al. 2018). TBI was investigated (Burdach and Jürgens 2002) without any clear benefit but high toxicity and mortality.

The Euro-EWING 99 study group (Ladenstein et al. 2010) published the largest population of HSCT on primary disseminated multifocal Ewing sarcomas (PDMES) with 281 patients receiving BU/MEL HDT/auto-HSCT after VIDE (VCR, IFO, DOX, VP) induction. The 3-year EFS and OS were 27 ± 3% and 34 ± 4% and were 45% for patients ≤14 years. Patients ≥14 years (HR = 1.6), with a primary tumour volume >200 mL (HR = 1.8), more than one bone metastatic site (HR = 2.0), BM metastases (HR = 1.6) and additional lung metastases (HR = 1.5), carry an increased risk at diagnosis. A score based on these factors identified patients with an EFS rate of 50% for scores ≤3 (82 patients), 25% for a score >3 and ≤5 (102 patients) and 10% for score ≥5 (70 patients; \( p < 0.0001 \)).

In 2018 the Euro-EWING 99 study group published the results of the randomized comparison of BU/MEL over standard chemotherapy with VAI (7 courses) which was offered to patients if aged <50 with poor histologic response (≥10% viable cells) after VIDE induction (6 courses) or large tumour volume at diagnosis (≥200 mL). The risk of event was significantly decreased by BU/MEL compared
to VAI (VCR, actinomycin, IFO) (HR = 0.64, 95% CI = 0.43–0.95; p = 0.026); 3- and 8-year EFS were, respectively, 69.0% (60.2–76.6%) versus 56.1% (47.6–65.4%) and 60.7% (51.1–69.6%) versus 47.1% (37.7–56.8%). OS results also favoured BU/MEL. For this group of patients, BU/MEL is now a standard of care (Whelan 2018).

Tandem HDT and allo-HSCT were part of the EICESS92 and Meta-EICESS protocols yielding long-term DFS in patients with advanced Ewing tumours (Burdach and Jürgens 2002).

Patients suffering a relapse generally have a poor prognosis with conventional chemotherapy. The role of HDT/auto-HSCT still awaits clarification in randomized controlled studies (Tenneti et al. 2018; Ferrari et al. 2015). A GvT or improved survival following allo-HSCT effect was highlighted in some reports, but a retrospective review (Thiel et al. 2011) could not identify benefits with either RIC or MAC or with either HLA-matched or HLA-mismatched grafts.

**92.2.4.1 EBMT Data** *(See Tables 92.2 and 92.3)*

The median age of 3019 (2970 autologous, 49 allogeneic) evaluable Ewing tumour patients is 12.5 years with 2161 patients who received HDT during primary treatment and 498 after relapse (disease status not specified in 360). BU/MEL HDT achieved better results in first-line settings, while TBI clearly was associated with poorer outcomes. Multivariate analysis of the EBMT data showed increased risks for patients >14 years, a remission status less than CR1, PR or CR2, BM as stem cell source and HDT other than BU/MEL.

**92.2.4.2 Indications 2018**

BU/MEL HDT for patients with a poor histological response after induction and/or a tumour volume ≥200 mL is now standard of care. Patients with primary metastatic disease at sites other than the lungs and a low-risk score may be considered good candidates in the absence of a controlled trial. Any metastatic relapse without prior HDT may be considered for controlled phase II HDT protocols.

**92.2.5 Soft Tissue Sarcoma (STS)**

Rhabdomyosarcoma (RMS) is the most common STS of childhood. A multivariate analysis of 269 patients with metastatic RMS found age (>10 years, p < 0.0001) and bone/BM involvement (p < 0.019) to be the most important predictors for fatal outcome (Thiel et al. 2013). In STS dose escalation with auto-HSCT produced only short-lived remissions with generally disappointing outcome data unless patients were chemosensitive and receiving HDT as consolidation in CR (Admiraal et al. 2010). Results of a recent review do not justify the use of HDC/HSCT as standard therapy for children with metastatic RMS (Admiraal et al. 2010).

A systematic review of HDT/auto-HSCT in locally advanced or metastatic non-rhabdomyosarcoma soft tissue sarcoma (NRSTS) was undertaken and evaluated 294 patients with 19 different subtypes of malignant NRSTS in 62 studies covering an age span between 10 and 46 years. This analysis found no advantage for HDT over standard chemotherapy (Peinemann and Labeit 2014).

The use of allo-HSCT in patients with advanced RMS is still experimental. No patients with residual disease before allo-SCT were converted to CR. In a subset of patients, it may constitute a valuable approach for consolidating CR, but this awaits prospective validation (Thiel et al. 2013).

**92.2.5.1 EBMT Data** *(See Tables 92.2 and 92.3)*

The median age of 1116 evaluable patients (1035 autologous, 81 allogeneic) is 9 years with 718 receiving HDT during primary treatment and 275 after relapse (disease status not specified in 123 patients).

**92.2.5.2 Indications 2018**

Currently there is no evidence-based standard indication for HDT/HSCT in STS.

**92.2.6 Brain Tumours**

Paediatric embryonal brain tumour patients treated with craniospinal irradiation (CSI) are at
risk for adverse effects, with greater severity in younger patients. Two publications in 2017 refer to this situation. Outcomes of CSI vs. HDT/auto-HSCT and delayed CSI were compared in 201 newly diagnosed patients [medulloblastoma (72%), supratentorial primitive neuroectodermal tumour (sPNET; 18%) or pineoblastoma (10%)]. Outcomes with adjuvant HD/HSCT followed by delayed CSI are comparable to upfront CSI for young paediatric embryonal brain tumour patients, but benefits regarding neurocognitive outcomes await future assessment (Raleigh et al. 2017).

The second report summarizing HDT/HSCT (29 with 3 tandem transplants and 15 with 2 tandem transplants) as irradiation-avoiding or irradiation-minimizing approach reported encouraging irradiation-free survival in children with newly diagnosed malignant brain tumours [medulloblastoma/primary neuroectodermal tumour (21 patients), atypical teratoid/rhabdoid tumour (8), high-grade glioma (5), malignant germ cell tumour (4), ependymoma (3) and choroid plexus carcinoma (3)] (Guerra et al. 2017). The PFS and OS for newly diagnosed patients were 68.9 ± 9.9% and 73.5 ± 9.3%, while it was only 11.8 ± 9.8% (p < 0.001) and 15.1 ± 12.3% (p = 0.0231) at relapse, respectively.

The Children’s Cancer Group 99703 study assessed 92 patients receiving 3 consolidation cycles of HDT (TT and CBP) and auto-HSCT after biopsy/resection and 3 conventional-dose chemotherapy cycles. Response rates to induction and consolidation were high in patients with residual tumour with 73.3% and 66.7%, respectively, resulting in 5-year EFS and OS of 43.9 ± 5.2% and 63.6 ± 5%. Gross total resection versus less than gross total resection was the only significant outcome comparison (Cohen et al. 2015).

The HIT97 national trial tested a stratified relapse protocol using either intensive chemotherapy, potentially high dose, or oral chemotherapy. Adding HDT in patients who responded to the initial courses of chemotherapy did not improve survival. Patients with relapsed cerebral PNET responding to conventional chemotherapy did not profit from HDT (Bode et al. 2014).

92.2.6.1 EBMT Data (See Tables 92.2 and 92.3)
The median age for 2818 evaluable brain tumour patients (2809 autologous, 9 allogeneic) is 6 years with 2039 receiving HDT during primary treatments and 442 after relapse (disease status not specified in 337).

Medulloblastoma is the leading indication with 69% followed by astrocytoma (7%), glioblastoma (7%), ependymoma (6%) and other non-specified CNS tumours (11%). Medulloblastoma patients’ outcome is better when submitted to HDT/SCT in first remission and if younger <3 years. A more detailed analysis by various brain tumours histologies and distinct risk factors is not possible in the current dataset.

92.2.6.2 Indications 2018
Patients with high-risk medulloblastoma (primary metastases/relapse) of any age older than 3 years are eligible for HDT/HSCT in combination with radiation, while in infants HDT/HSCT is used with the aim of reducing (volumes and doses) or avoiding radiation (Finlay and Massimino 2010).

Metastatic PNETs at diagnosis or with additional high-risk features such as incomplete resection or young age (younger than 3 or 5 years) as well as infants and young children (<4 years) with malignant brain tumours are further indications. Very controversial indications include high-grade glioma. Currently there is little or no indication for HDT/HSCT in ependymoma, brain stem glioma or pineoblastoma. More investigations are required to define the optimal HDT for each tumour type. Most groups use similar HDT regimens, i.e. BU/TT (SFOP, Spain), VP/TT/CBDCA (US/CCG, Germany, Spain) or a tandem approach Vp16/CBDCA - TTP/L-PAM (Italy).

92.2.7 Wilms’Tumour (WT)
Pooling data of 19 publications (5 HDT, 6 NoHDT, 8 both), an advantage to HDT with a hazard ratio (HR) of 0.87 for EFS and 0.94 for OS was observed. Further analyses of risk groups, defined by treatment and/or histology prior to first relapse,
suggested a HR for EFS of 0.90 for those of high- and 0.50 for the very high-risk patients. However, a great uncertainty persists in the absence of randomized trials concerning the role of HDT following relapse after treatment for WT (Ha et al. 2013).

The CIBMTR retrospective analysis on 253 relapsed WT receiving HDT/auto-HSCT reports 5-year EFS and OS rates of 36% (95% CI, 29–43%) and 45% (95% CI, 38–51%), respectively. Outcomes are similar to those reported in the literature. So far attempts to conduct a randomized trial comparing maintenance chemotherapy with consolidation versus HDT/auto-HSCT have failed in this indication (Malogolowkin et al. 2017).

92.2.7.1 EBMT Data (See Tables 92.2 and 92.3)
The median age in 625 patients with auto-HSCT (212 HDT during primary treatment; 348 after relapse) is 6 years. Reported superior results for patients receiving MEL alone may be correlated to the favourable response status prior HDT: 76% in CR1 and 64% in CR2.

92.2.7.2 Indications 2018
Experience of the SIOP, GPOH, NWTS, MRC and respective national groups over the last 20 years found the probability of cure of 30% at best in the presence of adverse prognostic factors. High-risk factors are unfavourable histology and metastatic disease (Presson et al. 2010) and are after relapse again unfavourable histology and one of the following criteria: extra-pulmonary relapse or abdominal relapse after radiation, stage IV, more than two drugs in the first-line regimen or relapse within 1 year. HDT is indicated if a response to second-line treatment is achieved.

92.2.8 Germ Cell Tumours
CNS germ cell tumours (GCTs) can be divided into major groups including germinomas (having a superior prognosis) and non-germinomatous GCTs (NGGCTs), with teratomas often considered a separate category- and represent approximately 3% of primary paediatric brain tumours. NGGCTs are less radiosensitive, but adjuvant chemotherapy improved survival.

CNS GCT relapses commonly occur at the primary tumour site, and in about 30% there is concomitant leptomeningeal spread. Salvage therapies include additional surgery, focal or CSI and HDT/auto-HSCT. For pure germinoma patients previously receiving radiation therapy, HDT/auto-HSCT is often recommended. HDT/HSCT showed curative potential for some relapsed systemic NGGCTs, in particular for those achieving a CR to chemotherapy (Echevarria et al. 2008).

The management of intracranial GCTs is complex because of varied clinical presentations, tumour sites, treatments and outcomes and the need for multidisciplinary input.

In an international Delphi approach, key areas of consensus were defined to guide and streamline clinical management of patients with intracranial germ cell tumours (Murray et al. 2015).

92.2.8.1 EBMT Data (See Tables 92.2 and 92.3)
The median age of 553 patients with HDT/ASCT (270 during primary treatment, 211 after relapse, disease status not reported in 72) registered as GCT and considered high risk is 13 years. However, differentiation of subgroups is poor.

92.2.8.2 Indications 2018
As paediatric patients with extracranial GCTs may expect an excellent outcome with conventional chemotherapy approaches, there is no standard indication for HDT/ASCT.

High-risk patients with extracranial GCTs are initial nonresponders or poor responders (no local control achieved) and patients after relapse failing to achieve second CR. In high-risk CNS GCT patients <18 years, the following criteria for HDT may be adopted: recurrent CNS GCT when biological remission is achieved prior to HDC and insufficient response to primary chemotherapy.

92.2.9 Osteosarcoma
Even in responding high-risk patients treated with HDT/HSCT in first or second remission, the
length of remission is short, and relapse occurs early after HDT. High-risk features include poor histological response or nonresponse of the primary tumour at the time of definitive surgery, inoperable, axial tumours (large volume), primary dissemination or relapse other than isolated, late lung metastases.

The French Society of Paediatric Oncology (SFCE) explored HDT with high-dose TT and auto-HSCT in 45 children with relapsed osteosarcoma (median age 15.9 years) after initial progression of metastatic disease (2), first relapse (26) and second or third relapse (17). Three-year OS was 40% and 3-year PFS 24%. A randomized study for recurrent osteosarcoma between standard salvage chemotherapy and high-dose TT with auto-HSCT is ongoing (Marec-Berard et al. 2014).

Earlier reports did not encourage HDT regimens (Sauerbrey et al. 2001) and included MEL and VP, with additional CBP by the Cooperative Osteosarcoma Study Group, or two courses of high-dose VP and CBP by the Italian Sarcoma Group (Boye et al. 2014; Fagioli et al. 2002).

92.2.9.1 EBMT Data (See Tables 92.2 and 92.3)
The median age in 294 evaluable patients (134 HDT during primary treatment; 130 after relapse, disease status not specified in 30; 288 autologous, only 6 allogeneic) is 14.3 years.

92.2.9.2 Indications 2018
There is no standard indication for HSCT based on published results or EBMT data.

92.2.10 Retinoblastoma
There is one systematic review on HDT/auto-HSCT based on 15 studies and a total of 101 patients (Jaradat et al. 2012). Following treatment for metastatic and relapsed disease, 44 of 77 patients (57.1%) were alive with no evidence of disease at the time of follow-up. However, a higher rate of local relapse developed in patients with CNS metastases (73.1%), which dropped to 47.1% in patients who received thiopeta. In patients with trilateral or bilateral advanced retinoblastoma, five of seven (71.4%) with reported outcome data as well as patients with tumour at the surgical margin of the optic nerve and/or extrascleral extension, six of seven patients (85.7%) were alive without evidence of disease at last follow-up. Durable tumour control was achieved in patients with non-CNS metastases, trilateral or bilateral advanced retinoblastoma, and with tumour at the surgical margin of the optic nerve and/or extrascleral extension. Patients with CNS metastases require TT to improve tumour control (Dunkel et al. 2010).

Advocated HDT/auto-HSCT approaches are CARBOPEC (CBP, VP, CY) (Jaradat et al. 2012), but for CNS-positive patients, TT or BU was introduced. Other groups used combinations including MEL and CBDCA and/or VP for metastatic retinoblastoma and reported promising survival results for patients without CNS involvement.

92.2.10.1 EBMT Data (See Tables 92.2 and 92.3)
The median age for 170 evaluable patients (99 during primary treatment (40% with localized/regional disease; 60% with metastatic disease); 54 after relapse; 17 disease status not specified; 169 autologous, 1 allogeneic) is 3.5 years.

92.2.10.2 Indications 2018
Future trials should take the following high-risk factors into consideration: involvement of the cut end or subarachnoidal space of the optic nerve after enucleation, orbital involvement and distant metastatic disease and CNS disease.

Key Points
- In neuroblastoma and Ewing sarcoma, there is clear evidence for the advantage of HDT/auto-HSCT with an increasing interest in tandem transplants.
- In other paediatric solid tumour, indication still lacks randomized trials, and indications are based on observational studies, case reports and EBMT database only.
92.3 Solid Tumours in Adults

Francesco Lanza

92.3.1 Auto-HSCT

Supported by a strong rationale from laboratory studies and apparently “convincing” results of early phase II studies, in the 1990s auto-HSCT was uncritically adopted as a potentially curative option for solid tumours. For this reason, randomized trials comparing high-dose therapy with conventional control arm were difficult to conduct. As a result, the number and size of clinical studies initiated (and often abandoned before completion) to prove or disprove its value were largely insufficient. Nowadays, after 25 years of clinical research and thousands of patients receiving auto-HSCT, the benefit of autotransplant in solid tumours, with the possible exception of selected patients with breast cancer (BC) and germ cell tumours (GCTs), is still unsettled (Fig. 92.1) (Sureda et al. 2015).

92.3.1.1 Breast Cancer (BC)

The role of auto-HSCT for primary breast cancer at high risk of recurrence (at least four involved axillary lymph nodes) has been assessed by several randomized trials, recently evaluated by a meta-analysis of individual patient data (Berry et al. 2011; Pedrazzoli et al. 2015). Overall, it was shown that auto-HSCT prolonged DFS when used as adjuvant therapy and showed a benefit on BC-specific survival and OS in selected cohorts of patients (Nitz et al. 2005; Pedrazzoli et al. 2015).

Whether auto-HSCT has benefit in the context of contemporary taxane-based regimens and targeted therapies is largely unknown. Seven phase III studies have been published in peer-reviewed journals. Most of these trials showed improved PFS in the auto-HSCT arm but only one OS advantage. Six randomized trials, including 866 metastatic breast cancer (MBC) patients, have been analysed in the parallel meta-analysis of individual patient data (Berry et al. 2011) showing a significant improvement in PFS but no improvement in OS.

Overall, based on the randomized studies so far, meta-analyses and retrospective studies, auto-HSCT may still represent a therapeutic option for younger patients harbouring HER2-negative tumours and having gross involvement of axillary nodes (adjuvant setting) or highly chemosensitive disease (advanced setting) (Martino et al. 2016).

92.3.1.2 Germ Cell Tumours (GCTs)

Auto-HSCT is not recommended as first-line therapy in GCT. In relapsed GCT high-dose therapy is considered a therapeutic option, especially when poor prognostic factors are present (Lorch et al. 2011; Necchi et al. 2015; De Giorgi et al. 2017a; b). A randomized study (Tiger study) comparing conventional-dose therapy with high-dose therapy is ongoing. Auto-HSCT is a standard of care for patients that are (primary) refractory to platinum-based chemotherapy or for those with a second or further relapse (Necchi et al. 2015). Multiple intensified cycles with CBP/VP are recommended as the standard HDT for GCT also due to concerns that using a three-drug regimen would require dose reductions of the two most active drugs in this disease.

Furthermore, auto-HSCT can be safely administered in high-risk patients older than 45 years. However, since the prognosis is poorer for older patients with non-seminoma histology, a comprehensive risk-benefit evaluation should include co-morbidities and the patient’s risk category.

The assessment of a large series of EBMT centres, including 46 cases with pure seminoma, seems to support the notion that auto-HSCT may represent a valuable therapeutic option after standard-dose chemotherapy failure in this patient category (Necchi et al. 2017).

EBMT conducted a retrospective analysis on 29 patients with refractory gestational trophoblastic neoplasia (GTN) treated with auto-HSCT. Data showed that HDT based on CBP seems to be active in this heavily pretreated patient population and that auto-HSCT represents a possible option for patients with refractory GNT (Necchi et al. 2016).

The role of auto-HSCT in mediastinal non-seminoma (MnS) GCT disease category is under evaluation. Data from EBMT confirmed that the
MnS was characterized by the poorest outcome with 5-year OS ranging from 40% to 45%. The use of auto-HSCT as both early intensification and at disease recurrence proved to be effective, given upfront, and may produce a 15–20% absolute improvement in survival compared with standard-dose CT.

92.3.1.3 Soft Tissue Sarcoma (STS)
STS accounts for about 1% of adult cancers. Based on the observation of a dose-response correlation for some drugs used in STS, e.g. DOX and IFO, HDT with auto-HSCT has been investigated in some, mostly non-randomized phase II trials. Most of these trials found few patients to possibly benefit from auto-HSCT but, owing to the small patient numbers of each of the included histologic subgroups, could not establish robust markers for identifying these patients. A recent meta-analysis on this subject found no evidence for a benefit of auto-HSCT but, again, did not sufficiently report on outcomes in the different histologic subgroups. However, taking into account that the current WHO classification differentiates more than 50 histological subtypes of STS, it might be hypothesized that clinical response to auto-HSCT may vary significantly from different histological varieties.

92.3.1.4 Other Solid Tumours
Data from randomized phase III studies comparing HDT vs. conventional-dose chemotherapy for first-line treatment of advanced ovarian cancer and limited or extensive small cell lung cancer have shown no statistically significant difference in PFS or OS. Limitations due to study design, difficulty in recruitment and toxicity may have accounted for the lack of favourable results that were expected based on previous phase II and retrospective analyses of such highly chemosensitive diseases.

In other chemosensitive histologies, including sarcomas and CNS tumours, data regarding auto-HSCT in adult patients are limited, again based on clinical trials without randomization and retrospective analyses. For this reason, auto-HSCT cannot be recommended as standard of care. High-dose therapy can be regarded as a potential clinical option in selected patients with Ewing’s sarcoma and medulloblastoma.

92.3.2 Allo-HSCT
Immune therapy for cancer is being pursued with extraordinary interest by researchers all over the world, given the recent scientific acquisitions on immune mechanisms that control cancer and the introduction in the marketplace of checkpoint inhibitor molecules, such as nivolumab/pembrolizumab (PD-1/PDL-1 inhibitors), ipilimumab (anti-CTLA4), etc. The paradigm for immune therapy of cancer is allo-HSCT, whose therapeutic effect is carried out by immunocompetent T cells of the donor, an effect known as GvT or graft-versus-tumour effect. Several studies of allo-HSCT in selected solid tumours, namely, renal cell cancer (RCC), ovarian cancer, BC, colorectal cancer and others, with some evidence of GvT and occurrence of transplant-related toxicities, mostly GvHD have been reported. In RCC, a long-term survival effect in a fraction (20%) of patients was documented. Since 2004, when molecularly targeted drugs were introduced into the clinic for renal cell cancer, patient referral for transplant dropped precipitously, and transplant rate evaluation for solid tumours from 2009 was limited to a few patients in Europe.

A recent survey provided a picture of the status of allo-HSCT for solid tumours in EBMT centres (Bregni et al. 2016). In contrast to our expectations, allo-HSCT for solid tumour indications has not been abandoned, even if its use has been markedly reduced. Based on these findings, allograft for solid tumours as adoptive immunotherapy is still being used in EBMT centres, in a few institutions and in a few selected indications, thus confirming the willingness of several centres to share data, adopt common protocols and continue to use this strategy in highly selected cases.

92.3.2.1 Renal Cell Cancer
There is no clinical experience of allografting in RCC, that is, TKI and mTOR refractory; nowadays, allo-HSCT should be considered only in the context of prospective studies.
92.3.2.2 Soft Tissues Sarcomas
The use of allo-HSCT has been investigated in paediatric sarcoma and rhabdomyosarcoma. Original data on allo-HSCT in adult STS is rare and stems from small case series (Sureda et al. 2015). In 2007, a retrospective study of the EBMT investigated the use of reduced-conditioning allo-HSCT in 14 STS patients. The authors concluded that an immune-mediated effect might have contributed to tumour control in some patients. Interestingly, the low number of patients examined did not permit a histotype-stratified analysis.

Key Points
- The benefit of auto-HSCT in solid tumours of the adults, with the possible exception of selected patients with breast cancer and germ cell tumours, is still unsettled.
- Despite the great potential, cell therapy programmes for cancer control still have a marginal role in the management of patients with solid tumours. This issue should be regarded as a priority for medical oncology and cell therapy/transplantation societies, also in view of the recent development of immune checkpoint inhibitors that represent a major breakthrough in cancer treatment and may well be incorporated in cell therapy programmes.
- The story of HSCT in solid tumours demonstrates the importance of adopting an internationally co-ordinated approach to the investigation of this treatment modality. There needs to be an increased emphasis on prospective trials that are statistically robust and have well-defined criteria for patient selection. Only these will be able to demonstrate whether HSCT, alone or incorporated into programmes with novel therapeutic modalities, is worthwhile in patients for whom conventional treatments have often limited impact on survival.

References


Appendix: EBMT Registry

Carmen Ruiz de Elvira
and  Shelley Hewerdine

Introduction

The EBMT maintains a Registry which encompasses all HSCT procedures for all indications. It also stores immunosuppressive treatments for bone marrow failure syndromes (i.e., aplastic anaemias), cell therapy treatments other than HSCT and donor information pertaining to collection and donor follow-up.

Content of the Registry

The clinical content of the EBMT Registry is decided by EBMT researchers through the Working Parties (WP). All requests have to be endorsed by the relevant WP Chair and must be accompanied by adequate definitions of the new data items. The final structure, format and clinical definitions of the data collection forms are supported by EBMT staff and important stakeholders of the Registry. This is done through recognised structures such as the Registry Committee, the Definitions Group and the Data Registries Group. For more details on these groups, please refer to the EBMT website. Final decisions are made by the Scientific Council and the Board of the Association.

Data Collection Forms

The EBMT has four main types of Data Collection Form which are implemented in the Registry IT system. For reference you can download data forms from the Data Management pages of the EBMT website:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MED A for HSCT</td>
<td>Minimum Essential Data. All EBMT member centres that perform transplants need to submit MED A for every HSCT to retain full membership. Transplant centres that do not report for 2 years or more will be demoted to associate members until they resume reporting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MED B for HSCT</td>
<td>Contains more data than MED A and is optimal for studies. Includes all items from the above MED A form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MED A for Cell Therapy</td>
<td>Contains the minimum essential data for this type of treatment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donor Outcome</td>
<td>Minimum essential data to follow stem cell donors.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IT System

At the time of writing the EBMT Registry is using ProMISE software designed by Ronald Brand, who worked as a Professor of Biostatistics at LUMC in the Netherlands prior to his retirement in 2017. The data is stored in an SQL server database based in the same location. During 2018, the EBMT Registry is continuing with an upgrade project and intends to switch to an electronic data capture system named MACRO, part
of the company Elsevier. Again, this will be a hosted environment and the server will abide by all standards in safety and security, and any other data protection standards required by the EU GDPR, that has become law in May 2018.

**IT Security**

The IT system uses all reasonable, appropriate, practical and effective security measures to protect our important processes and assets. The system utilises NEN7510 (2011) with the ISO27001 internal foundation as a framework for guiding our approach to managing security. The system provider continually reviews its use of security measures to improve the way in which we protect our systems, and the data entrusted to us.

**Data Protection**

The EBMT Registry follows EU directives regarding data protection. It is the responsibility of the EBMT to ensure that centres and donor registries are aware of this. The EBMT requests that all centres outside the EU sign an EU Regulations Statement declaring they will follow EU regulations regarding data safety. The most up-to-date information on EBMT data protection can be found on the Data Management pages of the EBMT website, in particular the full *Registry Function* document. As the Registry Office is located in London, the database has been registered with the Information Commissioner’s Office in the United Kingdom.

All EBMT centres must obtain informed consent from their patients and/or donors before the data can be submitted to the EBMT. Data is semi-anonymised: we store date of birth and usually the patient initials; never full names. Emailing, downloading or transferring EBMT data containing even semi-anonymous identifiers is NOT allowed, unless strong password protection or an EBMT approved secure server is used. In the unlikely cases of patients refusing consent to their data being stored, then fully anonymous, bare minimum data can be registered, purely to include these transplants in the centre counts.

**Registry Function**

The main function of the Registry is to collect pertinent and good quality clinical data. The main use of these data is clinical research, but it will also be used to support the mission of the EBMT in aspects such as the inspection, auditing and accreditation of transplant centres.

EBMT led studies is the single most important use of the Registry data. The EBMT registry can use all the data submitted to them. It is understood that data submitted to the EBMT can be used for research and published by the EBMT WP as long as the existing *Guidelines for the Conduct of Registry Studies using the EBMT Registry Database* and the *Authorship guidelines for EBMT publications* are followed. Both documents are mandatory reading for any WP investigator wishing to perform a registry study. Although the EBMT Registry Office has the primary responsibility for cleaning, and updating the data, the EBMT study coordinators contribute to this for specific studies.

**Registry Stakeholders**

**Centres**

Member centres use the Registry to store their own data while simultaneously making it available to the EBMT. Each EBMT member can be considered as the main owner of their data, although it is understood that the ultimate owner is the patient. Members submitting data can use their own data for their own purposes without having to require permission or notify the EBMT. Members have access to their own data at all times and can actively block access to selected patients by other authorised users. Member centres can also obtain aggregate anonymised data of the entire Registry, where neither the patient nor the centre is identifiable.
National Registries for HSCT

National registries operating in some countries, usually under the umbrella of a medical association, have become part of the EBMT data flow by mutual consent and are using the same central database. These national registries use their data for their own purposes, which may encompass national requirements for registration of transplants, research, demographics, etc. Where these registries exist, the responsibility of the EBMT Registry for data management may be partially devolved to them. That said, EBMT centres belonging to a National Registry have as much access to the EBMT Registry staff and services as any other centre member. We enjoy a close collaboration with a number of national societies and a list of partners can be found on the EBMT website.

Government Agencies

Registry data may be accessed by public agencies in one of two ways: (1) they can request direct access to data submitted by centres in their country. As with any other type of access, centres need to make the request to the Registry for their data to be accessed directly by these agencies. (2) National registries may collaborate with public agencies providing them with data extracted from the EBMT Registry.

Donor Registries

Donor Registries can use the EBMT Registry to store their own data while simultaneously making it available to the EBMT. Donor Registries submitting donor data can use their own data for their own purposes without having to require permission or notify the EBMT. Donor Registries have access to their own data at all times.

Donor registries may also request access to the Registry in order to follow the donors or the patients that have received donations from them. In the latter case, the centre has to give permission for the donor registry to be able to see selected patient data.

Study Groups

Groups of centres can set up studies and use the EBMT Registry as their database. The study group requests explicit permission from the Principal Investigator of each centre involved and forwards these to the EBMT. All centres must be members of the EBMT. Permission templates are available.

International Research Organisations

Centres that submit data to other organisations can request the EBMT to provide data access to these organisations, so they do not have to do double reporting. In these cases, the EBMT can set up “virtual registries” that replicate the scope of the organisation and provide access to a data manager of this organisation to access the permitted data. Such requests have to be submitted explicitly by the Principal Investigator of the involved centre. All centres must be members of the EBMT. Permission templates are available.

Corporate Sponsors

Corporate members can obtain aggregate anonymised data as part of their contract, where neither the patient nor the centre is identifiable. Sponsors cannot obtain outcome data. To safeguard centre anonymity, all countries with less than ten member centres appear under the label of “Other”.

Access to the Registry

All individuals must submit an Access request for internet access to the data. Accepted signatories are:

- Principal investigator of a transplant centre (centre’s data only) or donor registry (donor registry’s data only)
- Working Party chair (for access to data within the remit of that WP)
• The President of the EBMT (for data within the remit of an EBMT Committee)
• Director of an institution or study group with which we have a partnership. In this case, the partner must also submit a signed form from every centre involved granting access of their data to that institution or study group.
• Registry head for EBMT Registry staff

Individuals who by the nature of their work have direct access to the EBMT Registry databases (IT system/server managers) have no access rights to the data and would be in breach of contract if they manipulate it.

Some individuals work in multiple roles and it is possible to request multiple user roles and rights, as long as the above procedures are followed.

### Types of Access

Users of the Registry system can access their own data in which case they can request permission to do any of the following:

- Data entry*
- Lists of patient data*
- Data download*
- Tables with aggregated data (frequencies and cross tabulations)

The types of access marked with (*) are restricted since they may include identification of the patients. This type of access can only be requested by an accepted signatory for a set of nominated individuals. The access provided is personal and cannot be transferred to other individuals, not even within the same centre. The Central Registry Office reserves the right to cancel access without warning if it is felt that patient confidentiality might be at risk.

The unrestricted access, tables with aggregated data, is available to all members and sponsors. This statistical function does not allow patients or centres to be identified. Transplant centres who are members can access statistics of the entire registry as part of their database access. Aggregated data requests from other recognised groups should be made to the Central Registry Office.

### Data Flow

For MED A or B for HSCT, the first registration must be submitted on the day of transplant (day 0) or within a week of day 0. An update should be submitted when 100 days have elapsed from the date of transplant, or when the patient dies, whichever comes first. Regular annual follow-up data must be submitted for all patients from then onwards.

For MED A for cell therapy (without HSCT), the first registration must be submitted on the day of infusion (day 0) or within a week of day 0. An update should be submitted every 6 months.

For more detailed and up-to-date information, see document *Submitting data to the EBMT*

The data can reach the Registry through two channels:

(a) Direct data entry by a centre. This is the preferred and most common method.
(b) Direct data entry by a small number of national registries on behalf of specific centres that submit paper forms to them.

Centres can enter the data directly (option a), or fill in the MED A or MED B paper forms and send it to their national registry if available (option b).

When the data is entered directly by the centre into the EBMT database, this ensures immediate access by the EBMT and authorised users to the centre’s data. This is the preferred method. Centres who use this system may be approached by the national registry, if they belong to one, or by the EBMT registry with requests for data corrections or clarifications. All centres can request to view their data, even if it has been entered by a National Registry on their behalf.

### Support

The Registry has a small team of staff based in London who work on the database structure, form design, data quality, user support and documentation. Contact details can be found on the EBMT website.